

UNIVERSITY OF TORONTO



3 1761 00361306 4

UNIV. OF
TORONTO
LIBRARY

I

461

The Brut.

Early English Text Society.

Original Series, 131.

1906.

BERLIN: ASHER & CO., 13, UNTER DEN LINDEN.
NEW YORK: C. SCRIBNER & CO.; LEYPOLDT & HOLT.
PHILADELPHIA: J. B. LIPPINCOTT & CO.

¶ Here ben endyd the Cronycles of the Keame of England with their
 apperteignaunces. Imprentyd En the Duchye of Braband. in the towne
 of Andelwarpe En the yere of our lord .M.cccc.xciii. By maistir Gerard
 de leew. a man of grete wysedom in all maner of kunnyng: whych nowe
 is come from lyfe vnto the deth / which is grete harme for many a poure
 man. On whos sowle god almyghty for hys hygh grace haue mercy

A A E N



COLOPHON TO "THE CHRONICLES OF ENGLAND," PRINTED BY
 GERARD LEEW OF ANTWERP, 1493.

PHILOLOGIE nämlich ist jene ehrwürdige Kunst, welche von ihrem Verehrer vor Allem eins heischt, bei Seite gehen, sich zeit lassen, still werden, langsam werden —, als eine Goldschmiedekunst und Kennerschaft des Wortes, die lauter feine vorsichtige Arbeit abzuthun hat und Nichts erreicht, wenn sie es nicht lento erreicht. Gerade damit aber ist sie heute nöthiger als je, gerade dadurch zieht sie und bezaubert sie uns am stärksten, mitten in einem Zeitalter der "Arbeit", will sagen: der Hast, der unanständigen und schwitzenden Eilfertigkeit, das mit Allem gleich "fertig werden" will, auch mit jedem alten und neuen Buche:—sie selbst wird nicht so leicht fertig, sie lehrt *gut* lesen; das heisst langsam, tief, rück und vorsichtig, mit Hintergedanken, mit offen gelassenen Thüren, mit zarten Fingern und Augen lesen.¹

FRIEDRICH NIETZSCHE.

¹ Philology is that venerable art which demands one thing above all from its worshipper, to go aside, to take one's time, to become silent, to become slow —, as a goldsmith's art and connoisseurship of the word, which has to execute nothing but fine delicate work and which achieves nothing if it does not achieve it lento. Just that it is what makes it more necessary to day than ever, just by this it attracts and charms us most in the midst of an age of "work", *i. e.* of haste, of indecent and sweating hurry which wants "to have done" with everything in a moment, with any old and new book too:—while itself it is not so easily at an end; it teaches to read well; that means to read slowly, deeply, with consideration and carefully, with reservations, with open doors, with delicate fingers and eyes.

18

LIBRARY

2

The Brut

OR

The Chronicles of England,

EDITED FROM

MS. RAWL. B 171, BODLEIAN LIBRARY, &c.

BY

FRIEDRICH W. D. BRIE, PH.D.

WITH INTRODUCTION, NOTES, AND
GLOSSARY.

PART I. - 2

LONDON:

PUBLISHED FOR THE EARLY ENGLISH TEXT SOCIETY
By KEGAN PAUL, TRENCH, TRÜBNER & CO., LIMITED,
DRYDEN HOUSE, 43, GERRARD STREET, SOHO, W.

1906.

131845-
9/3/14

PR

1119

AZ

no. 131

Original Series, No. 131.

RICHARD CLAY & SONS, LIMITED, LONDON AND BUNGAY.

To
His Excellency Dr. Karl Schenkel,
GROSSHERZOGL. BAD. STAATSMINISTER,

THIS WORK IS INSCRIBED

BY THE EDITOR.

ERRATA.

- p. 92. The heading must be : *Edelf, Argentil and Curan.*
p. 121. " " *Edmund's* instead of *St. Edmund's.*
p. 122. " " *K. Edmund's* instead of *K. Edward's.*
p. 143. " " *Maude* instead of *Maud.*
p. 150. " " *Leave out the date* A.D. 1172.
p. 154. " " " " " " A.D. 1216.
p. 177, 178, 179. " *Henry III* instead of *Henry II.*

PREFACE.

I PROPOSE to include in a couple of volumes, of which the present is the first, an edition of the work commonly called *The Brut of England*, or *The Chronicles of England*. The entire Chronicle with its continuations embraces a period from the legendary time of Albina and Brutus to A.D. 1479, while the first part which forms the contents of this volume closes with the battle of Halidon Hill in 1333. The first part of our Chronicle is a mere translation of the French *Brut d'Engleterre*. Of this work there are two independent English translations, of which I have chosen the earlier and anonymous one for publication, for reasons which are fully explained in the general Introduction which will form the last volume of this edition.

After 1333 we have a certain number of original English continuations. The first of these, finishing with the death of Edward III in 1377, represents the same version in all MSS. But after that date we have several continuations which are quite independent of each other. Of these the most important ones have been chosen for publication.

Very few of these continuations can with any certainty be ascribed to a known author; most of them exist only in copies of MSS. which have perished or dropt out of sight. But the question of authorship ceases to be of paramount importance, when the information contained in the text can be thoroughly tested by contemporary writers, as is the case in the present Chronicle.—
 “The value of such portions of the narrative as are incapable of external authentication, depends on the generally faithful character of the context where it has been so proved.”

As history, the first part possesses much original value in its later parts after the accession of Edward II; while in several of the continuations the narrative becomes even that of a contemporary.

As literature, the Chronicle is as worthless—except a few

inserted poems—as a mediæval Chronicle possibly can be. But nobody will expect to stop a wedding-guest by reciting mediæval history.

For everything else, the reader of these pages is referred to the final Introduction. This will contain a list, description and classification of 167 MSS. in French, English and Latin, 147 of which I have been able to examine myself; and some remarks about the language of the most important English texts; then a history of the study of the *Brut*, an analysis of the different French versions and their sources, a description of the two English translations, and an examination of the original English continuations and their sources; finally, a list of the 13 printed editions between 1400 and 1528, a description of the Latin versions, and a chapter on the influence of the *Brut* on later writers.¹ Besides that, I shall give a fair number of notes, mostly containing illustrations from contemporary writers, to explain the historical value of the facts related in the *Brut*. A Glossary of the more uncommon words and an Index of Proper Names will form the end.

It now remains to describe the MSS. which have been used for the present volume. They are three in number, designated respectively by the letters R, O and D.

R = MS. Rowl. B. 171 (Bodl.), which forms the text of this volume, represents the oldest English copy of the *Brut* known to me. The hand shows the time of writing to be about 1400. As the MS. wants the first leaves, these have been taken from MS. Douce 323.

O = MS. Douce 323 (Bodl.), a late, but very accurate transcript written in the beginning of the second half of the 15th century. It has been used too for the collation of the whole text, as well as

D = MS. Trin. College, Dublin, 490, which was written in the beginning of the 15th century.

Appendix A which closes this volume contains the poetical description of the battle of Halidon Hill which forms the end of the second translation. The text is printed from the two only existant MSS. of this version, MS. Harley 4690 and MS. Arundel LVIII in the College of Arms in London.

¹ An abstract of this Introduction has appeared in German under the title: *Geschichte und Quellen der mittel englischen Prosachronik The Brute of England oder The Chronicles of England*. Marburg. N. G. Elwert. 1905.

Further details about the MSS. employed will be found in the final Introduction.

In conclusion, I have to record my obligations to those to whom I have been indebted for various acts of kindness and assistance in the course of the whole work. Their number is indeed very great. Among these I will mention in the first place Dr. Frederick J. Furnivall, whose kindness and most valuable experience are always placed so courteously at the service of those who require them. Much attention and help I have besides received from Professor Alois Brandl in Berlin. Nor must I omit publicly to acknowledge the useful hints forwarded to me by Professor Priebisch, Professor Brandin, Dr. Wylie and Dr. Imelmann. For the loan of their MSS., I am highly under obligation to the Earl of Leicester of Holkham, and to Mr. William Wynne of Peniarth (co. Merioneth). To Mr. John Edwards in Glasgow I am indebted for information about the MS. in his possession, and to the Rev. P. Henderson Aitken for information about the MSS. kept in the Hunterian Museum in Glasgow. Finally I have to thank the authorities of the British Museum,—that Mecca of all scholars which has become my second home,—the Bodleian Library, the University Library in Cambridge, various Colleges in Oxford and Cambridge, Trinity College, Dublin, Lambeth Palace, the College of Arms, the Society of Antiquaries, the Inner Temple, Lincoln's Inn, Stadtbibliothek Hamburg, Bibliothèque Nationale, Mazarine and Geneviève in Paris. To Mr. Falconer Madan of the Bodleian, and especially to Mr. John A. Herbert of the British Museum, I am under great obligations for the continuous and ready aid of their great paleographical knowledge.

FRIEDRICH W. D. BRIE.

Marburg a/L., December 1906.

SUMMARY OF CONTENTS.

The Prolog.

[KING DIOCLICIAN weds his 33 daughters to 33 kings. The daughters despise their husbands. When Dioclician scolds them, they kill their husbands. Albine and her sisters put to sea. They reach Albion, and breed giants by the devil] pp. 1-4

Chapters 1-10.

Of Eneas, his son Ascanius, and his grandson Sylveyn. Of Brut, Sylveyn's son. His banishment and his success in Greece. Brut wins Gennogen, King Pandras's daughter. He is bidden by Diana to go to the isle of Albion. He conquers Gascony, and builds Castle Tours. Landing at Totness. Cornwall is given to Coryn. Foundation of New-Troy. Albanak gets Scotland, Camber gets Wales. Death of Brut. King Lotryn drives out Humber and marries Guentolen, Coryn's daughter. Lotryn's death. Estrilde is drowned by Guentolen. King Madan. Menpris slays Manlyn, his brother. King Ebrac conquers France. King Brut Greneshal. King Leyl. King Lud Ludibras

pp. 5-16

Chapters 11-20.

King Bladud. King Leir and his three daughters. Cordeil becomes Queen of France. Leir's retinue is cut down by Corneil and Rigan. Leir goes to France to see Cordeil. Leir made king again. Cordeil reigns in England. Morgan and Conedag. King Raynolde. King Gorbodian. Porrex is slain by Ferrex. Ferrex is murdered by his mother. Four kings in Britain. Donewall becomes the only king

pp. 16-24

Chapters 21-30.

Belyn and Brenne. Brenne gets Norse help to invade Belyn. Belyn defeats King Gutlagh of Denmark. He makes four causeways across the country. He and Brenne invade France. Rome is conquered. King Corinbatrus subdues Denmark. Spaniards settle in Ireland. King Guentolen. King Seisel. His successors Kymor, Howan, Morwith, Grandobodian. The bad King Artogaile becomes good ... pp. 24-29

Chapters 31-40.

King Hesider and his Brothers. Thirty-three kings reign after him, the last being called Ely. King Lud. Origin of the name of London

and of Ludgate. King Cassibalam. He drives Julius Cæsar out of Britain, B.C. 55. The Earl of London calls him back. Cæsar subdues the English. King Androgen. King Kembelyn. Claudius invades Britain, and is beaten, A.D. 41. King Ginder is slain in the battle. Armogor weds Claudius's daughter, and is made king ... pp. 30-35

Chapters 41-50.

King Westmer of Britain. He gives Scotland to Berynger's men. They make a raid into Ireland for women. King Coil. King Lucie. Britain becomes Christian, A.D. 156. Britain a long time without a king. Astlepades chosen king. Coil slays him, and becomes his successor. King Constance. Constantine becomes Emperor of Rome. Octovian is made king. Maximian weds his daughter, and becomes his successor. He gives Little Britain to Conan Meriedok. Conan sends to Cornwall for maidens, in order to people his country. The Eleven Thousand British Virgins. They are driven to Cologne, and martyred by Gowan and Elga pp. 36-44

Chapters 51-60.

Gowan invades England. Gracian drives him out, and is crowned king after Maximian's death. Gowan comes back, but is slain by Constantine. Constantine made king. Britain turns Christian. Constance made king by Vortiger's help. Vortiger causes Constance to be murdered. Vortiger is made king. Constance's brothers are carried to Little Britain. Engist, Horn, and other Saxons, land in Kent. Engist's Thongcastle. His daughter Ronewenne. Wassail and Drinkhail. Vortiger weds Ronewenne. Vortimer made king by the Britons. Ronewenne causes Vortimer to be poisoned. Vortiger made king again. Engist's treachery, and his conquest of Britain. Britain called Engist's land. Vortiger goes to Wales pp. 44-56

Chapters 61-70.

Vortiger sends for the child Merlin. Merlin and his mother talk with Vortiger. Merlin explains the signification of the two Dragons under the Castle. His prophecy. Aurilambros and Uter arrive in Britain. Vortiger flees. Vortiger and Engist are slain. King Aurilambros. Merlin moves the Giants' stones from Ireland and makes Stonehenge. Guillomer of Ireland's invasion. Aurilambros poisoned. A star appears after his death. Merlin tells its signification. Uther Pendragon crowned. His two Dragons. Relief of York. The siege of Tintagel pp. 56-66

Chapters 71-80.

Uther begets Arthur on Igerne, and weds her. He defeats Octa and Ossa. He is poisoned by the Saxons. Arthur is made king. He defeats Cheldrik and Hoel. Their treachery. Arthur beats the Saxons at Bath. Merlin's prophecies. Arthur defeats Guillomer of Ireland,

and grants mercy to the Scots. He weds Gunnore, and conquers all Ireland. Fame of Arthur's Court. The foundation of the Round Table. Arthur fights and kills Frolle, and wins Paris. He divides France among his Knights. Arthur's feast. The Roman Emperor's summons to him pp. 66-82

Chapters 81-90.

Arthur's defiant answer. The Roman Emperor and he prepare to fight. Arthur's followers. He slays the Spanish Giant who ravished and killed fair Elyne. He beats the Romans, and buries his own slain. Mordred is traitorous, and rebels against Arthur. He fights Arthur at sea, and flees to Cornwall. He is beaten by Arthur and slain. Arthur himself wounded to death. He appoints Constantyne king. Constantyne's war with Mordred's sons pp. 82-91

Chapters 91-100.

King Adelbriht and King Edelf. Argentil married to Curan. King Conan. King Certif. The Saxons ask Gurmond for help. Gurmond and the Saxons drive out the Britons. Chichester taken. "Britain" changed to "England." The seven kingdoms. Pope Gregory and the English children. St. Austin lands in Kent, A.D. 596. Adelbriht baptized. St. Austin and the rays' tails. Wales refuses St. Austin and the Pope. It is to be invaded. King Breceval of Leicester slain. Cadwaladre made King of the Britons. He and Elfrid are friends. Quarrel between Edwyne and Cadwalayn pp. 91-101

Chapters 101-110.

King Oswold is killed, A.D. 642. Peanda seizes his land. Peanda beaten by Oswy, A.D. 655. Oswyn beaten by Oswy. Ossa becomes chief of all kings of England. King Alfred's Chronicles. King Osbriht rapes Buerne's wife. Buerne defies King Osbriht, and seeks Danish help. The Danes kill Osbriht, and take York. They ravage England, and martyr St. Edmund, A.D. 866. Hubba and Hungar take Reading. At last the Danes are beaten, and pray for peace. Danes at Chippenham, A.D. 877. Alfred defeats the Danes. The Danish king baptized, A.D. 878. Alfred's reign and books. Edward, his son, made king, A.D. 900. The Danes come again to England... .. pp. 101-112

Chapters 111-120.

The Kings Athelstan, Edmund, Eldred and Edwin fight the Danes. The good King Edgar sole king, A.D. 959. Ethelwold deceives King Edgar about Estrilde. Ethelwold is killed, and Edgar weds Estrilde. Edgar and Archbishop Dunstan. Edgar's death, A.D. 975. Edward the Martyr is murdered at Corfe, A.D. 978. Eldred crowned by Dunstan. Sweyn and the Danes invade England, A.D. 994. Death of Sweyn, A.D. 1014. King Eldred fights Cnut. Cnut and Edmund Ironside share England, A.D. 1016. Edmund is killed, and his murderer drowned.

Cnut sends Edmund's sons to Denmark to be murdered. Edward, Edmund's son, marries the daughter of the King of Hungary. Cnut conquers Norway, A.D. 1028. He tries to stop the Thames. His death, A.D. 1035 pp. 112-124

Chapters 121-130.

King Harold Harefoot reigns. Hardicanute succeeds him. He recalls his mother to England. His death, A.D. 1042. The English send into Normandy for Alfred and Edward. Godwin has Prince Alfred murdered. Accession of Edward the Confessor, A.D. 1042. He reproaches Godwin for the death of his brother. He forgives Godwin, and weds his daughter. His miraculous sight of King Sweyn. Miraculous appearance of St. John to pilgrims. Their journey to Edward. King Edward's death, A.D. 1066 pp. 125-134

Chapters 131-140.

Harold is made king. His oath to Duke William. He breaks it. William invades England and slays Harold, A.D. 1066. William crowned King of England. William the Conqueror dies, William the Red succeeds, A.D. 1087. Quarrel with Archbishop Anselm. The Dreams of and about the king. Rufus shot. Henry Beauclerc reigns, A.D. 1100. Henry's church disputes. He conquers Normandy. War with Louis of France, A.D. 1109-1113. Henry's sons drowned, A.D. 1120. His daughter Maud comes to England. Henry I's death. Stephen succeeds him, A.D. 1135. He takes Lincoln, A.D. 1141. The Empress Maude escapes from Oxford. Maude's son Henry gets Normandy, A.D. 1144, and arrives in England, A.D. 1149. King Stephen dies, A.D. 1153 pp. 134-147

Chapters 141-150.

Henry II's coronation, A.D. 1154. He invades Wales. Thomas à Becket made primate, A.D. 1162. Becket quits England, A.D. 1164. War between king and primate, A.D. 1165-1170. Thomas à Becket slain, A.D. 1170. Henry and his sons. Henry II dies, A.D. 1189. The loss of the Holy Land. The Crusade. Richard I and the Crusade. He is imprisoned, A.D. 1192. His return to England. He is wounded to the Death at Castle Gaillard, A.D. 1199. King John, his successor, loses Normandy. Langton becomes Archbishop, A.D. 1207. England interdicted by the Pope's order. Compromise between the Pope and King John. John refuses to restore the Church's goods, and ruins the Cistercians. The Pope's Demands. John's exceptions to them. The Pope's legates declare the Excommunication of England. A clerical coiner is set free by Pandolf. King John gives in to the Pope, A.D. 1213 pp. 147-163

Chapters 151-160.

King John's deed of surrender to the Pope. The exiled papists come back. The King welcomes Archbishop Langton. The seven

years' interdict is ended. The King's misdeeds. He grants Magna Charta, A.D. 1215. The Barons conspire against him. The crown offered to Louis of France. Louis invades England. King John poisoned by a Swineshead monk, A.D. 1216. Henry III succeeds him. Progress of the war. Wales is interdicted. Louis defeated at Lincoln, A.D. 1217. French fleet is destroyed [off Sandwich]. Treaty between Henry III and Louis. Henry confirms King John's Charter, A.D. 1217. Henry marries, A.D. 1236. Granting of new charters. The Barons' war. Battle of Lewes, A.D. 1264. Battle of Evesham, A.D. 1265. Battle of Chesterfield, A.D. 1266. Siege of Kenilworth. The exiled rebels are forgiven, A.D. 1267. Henry III's death, A.D. 1272. Merlin's prophecy of Henry III pp. 163-178

Chapters 161-170.

Edward I crowned. Coronation festivities. Edward's first campaign against Lewelyn of Wales, A.D. 1277. The second Welsh campaign, A.D. 1278. Bad coinage reformed. Lewelyn's third rebellion, A.D. 1282. Lewelyn is slain. David, Prince of Wales, rebels against Edward. Execution of David, A.D. 1283. Edward subdues Wales. Revolt of Rys ap Meriedok, A.D. 1287. Punishment of bad judges, A.D. 1289. Expulsion of the Jews, A.D. 1290. The claimants to the Scottish throne. Edward declares Balliol King of Scotland, A.D. 1292. The Normans at Dover, A.D. 1293. The defenders of Gascony taken by the French, A.D. 1294. Balliol rebels, A.D. 1295. Turberville's deceit. Siege of Berwick, A.D. 1296. Edward I and his long shanks. Balliol is beaten at Berwick Castle. English victory at Dunbar, A.D. 1296. Mock-song against the Scots. Edward forgives Balliol and the rebel Scots. The Scots choose Wallace their king, A.D. 1297. Wallace's truce with France. He defeats the English at Stirling Bridge. Edward ravages Scotland. He defeats the Scots at Falkirk, A.D. 1298
pp. 179-194

Chapters 171-180.

King Edward marries Margaret of France, A.D. 1299. The third campaign against Scotland, A.D. 1303. Stirling Castle surrenders, A.D. 1304. Ordinance of Trailbaston, A.D. 1305. Edward imprisons his son. Wallace is hanged, A.D. 1305. Robert Bruce claims the crown of Scotland, and repudiates Edward I. Comyn opposes Bruce. Bruce kills Comyn, and is crowned king, A.D. 1306. Edward prepares for a fresh conquest of Scotland pp. 194-200

Chapters 181-190.

Edward I invades Scotland. Bruce defeated [at Methven], A.D. 1306. Sir Symond Frisell is hanged, and the Earl of Athol taken. Bruce flees to Norway. Edward I prepares for his death, A.D. 1307. Merlin's prophecies about him. Edward II his successor. He weds Princess Isabel of France, and is crowned, A.D. 1308. Piers Gaveston. His

unpopularity and pride. He is sent to Ireland. Gaveston's return condoned by Parliament at Stamford, A.D. 1309. Murder of Gaveston, A.D. 1312. Bruce's return to Scotland. He defeats Edward II at Bannockburn, A.D. 1314. Mock-song of the Scotch maidens. John Tanner. Berwick taken, A.D. 1318. Two Cardinals robbed in England, A.D. 1317. Great Famine in England, A.D. 1315-1317. The Scots plunder Northumberland ... • pp. 200-210

Chapters 191-200.

Scotland interdicted, A.D. 1318. The younger Hugh le Spenser is made the King's chamberlain. Renewed attack on Scotland. The English defeated in the White Battle at Myton, A.D. 1319. Hugh le Spenser's pride. The harm done by the Spensers. The Spensers exiled, A.D. 1321. The father curses the son. Recall of the Spensers, A.D. 1322. Siege of Leeds, A.D. 1321. Thomas of Lancaster outlawed. Siege of Tickhill Castle raised by the King. Robert Holond's treachery. Thomas of Lancaster and the rebels go to Burbridge, A.D. 1322. Thomas tries to win over Sir Andrew Hercela. Battle of Burbridge. Humphrey de Bobun slain. Thomas of Lancaster taken. Mixt races in England. Thomas imprisoned at Pontefract. He is scandalously treated and beheaded, A.D. 1322. Other rebels executed. The triumph of the Spensers. They advise a renewed attack on the Scots. The English are defeated at Byland, A.D. 1322. Lord Carlisle taken and disgraced for his treachery. His execution, A.D. 1323 ... pp. 210-228

Chapters 201-210.

Miracles for the Martyr, St. Thomas of Lancaster. The pilgrimages to his tomb stopped by the advice of the Spensers. Sir Roger Mortimer escapes from the Tower, A.D. 1323. The King seizes the Queen's lands. He sends his Queen to France to make peace. His son Edward does homage to Charles IV. Edward II exiles his Queen and Prince Edward, A.D. 1325. The Spensers' conspiracy against Queen Isabel and her son. Queen Isabel proposes to invade England. Edward II's preparations against his wife and son, A.D. 1326. Landing of Isabel and Mortimer. Bishop Stapleton and his two Squires are beheaded. King Edward is taken prisoner. The Spensers are hanged, and other traitors beheaded. The Nobles agree to depose Edward II, A.D. 1327. The Nobles, Bishops and Knights disclaim him

pp. 228-242

Chapters 211-220.

Prophecies of Merlin about Edward II. Edward III crowned, A.D. 1327. England happy under him. Attempt to set Edward II free. Abortive Scottish campaign. Mock-song of the Scotch. The Scots invade England. A fine army opposes them. Through Mortimer's treachery, the Scots escape at Stanhope Park. Two moons appear. Two Popes elected. Edward II murdered in Corfe Castle, A.D. 1328.

Edward III weds Philippa of Hainault. The shameful peace of Northampton between the English and Scotch. Bruce's son to be King of Scotland. Queen Isabel becomes hated. Robert of Holand is killed. Demands of the objectors to Queen Isabel's doings. Her opponents give in. Henry of Lancaster and his followers exiled. Edward III does homage for Guienne. Mortimer's ambition. Contrast between the King of Folly and King Arthur pp. 242-262

Chapters 221-223.

Edmund of Woodstock gets leave to seek for Edward II, A.D. 1329. Sir John Daverel betrays him. Isabella appeals to Edward III to kill Edmund of Woodstock. He is arrested, tried for treason, and beheaded, A.D. 1330. Pride and avarice of Roger Mortimer. Edward III's council plan their defence. The secret passage into Nottingham Castle. Mortimer is taken and condemned to death, A.D. 1330. "Sir John Turnetabard." Edward Balliol is imprisoned in France. Preparations to make Edward Balliol King of Scotland. Edward III gives him leave to go to Scotland, A.D. 1332. He lands there, and routs the Earl of Fife. His speech to his men. He beats his Scotch opposers. A coming battle. Balliol routs the Scots. The Fleming pirate Crab. Balliol is crowned King of Scotland, and does homage to Edward III. Attempt to murder him. He and Edward III besiege Berwick, A.D. 1333. The Scots offer to surrender Berwick if help does not come soon. The Scots make ready to fight. The five wards of their army. The English rout them at Halidon Hill, 19 July 1333 pp. 263-286

The longer Romance of the Battle of Halidon Hill pp. 287-289

A shorter fragmentary version of the same p. 289



The Brut, a Chronicle of England.

[MS. Douce 323, Bodleian Library.]

[THE PROLOG.]¹

[How King Dioclisian wedded his 33 Daughters to 33 Kings whom they afterwards murdērd; and how these Widows came to England, & had children by the Giants of the land.]

4
 8
 12
 16
 20
 24

IN³ the noble lande of Surr⁴ ther was a noble kyng and myghty, & a man of grete renoun, þat me called Dyoclician, þat wel and worthily hym gouernede, & rewlede thurgh his noble chialrye, so þat he conquered alle þe landes abowte hym, so that almoste aȝ þe kynges of þe world to hym were entendaunt. ¶ Hyt befell thus, þat this Dioclician spoused a gentyl damysele þat was wondyr fayr, þat was hys Eemys doughter, Labana; & sche loued hym as reson wolde, so þat he gate vpon here xxxiij doughtres, of þe which þe eldest me called Albyne. And þese⁵ Damysels, whan þey comyn in-to⁶ Age, bycomen⁷ so fayre þat it was wondyr. ¶ Wherfore this Dioclician anon lete make A sompnyng, & comaundid by his lettres þat Alle þe kyngys þat heldyn of hym schulde come at A certayn day, as in his lettres was⁸ conteyned, to make A ryal feste. At which day, þedir þey comyn, & brought with hem Amyralles, Prynces & Dukes, & noble Chialrye. þe feste was ryally Arayd; & þere þey lyved in ioy and merthe y-now, that it was wonder to wete.

¶ And hit befelle þus, þat þis Dioclician þoughte maryen his Doughtres among aȝ þo knyghtys⁹ þat tho were at that solempnite;

¹ The text to the end of Chapter V is taken from MS. Douce 323, as it is wanting (except just the latter part of Chapter V, which is too blurred and indistinct to be copied) in MS. Rawlinson B 171. The collation following is of MS. Trin. Coll. Dublin 490 (D). ² leaf 1.

³ D has this heading: Her may a man hure How Engelande was first callede Albyon and through whome it hade the name.

⁴ Syrrie ⁵ þis ⁶ vnto ⁷ bicome ⁸ were ⁹ kynges

and so they speken¹ & dede, that Albyne, his eldest daughter, & alle here² sustres, richely were maryed vnto xxxiiij kynges³ that wer⁴ lordes of gret honour, & Also power, at pis solempnite. And whanne þ^e solempnite was done, euery kyng nome his wyf, & lad 4 hem into here owne cuntre, and there maad hem quene. ¶ And hit byfelle þus aftyrward, þat pis dame Albyne bycome so stoute & so sterne, þat sche told litel prys of her' lord, And of hym hadde scorne and dyspite, and wolde not done his wylle, but wolde haue 8 here owne wyf in diuerses⁵ maners. And aH her other sustres, eche on⁶ bere hem so euel a-yens here lordes, þat it was wonder to wete. ¶ And for-as-mych⁷ as hem thought⁷ þat here housebondes were not⁸ of so hye parage comen as here fadyr. ¶ But tho kynges 12 þat were her lordes, wolde haue chastysed⁹ with fayr speche & byhestes, & also for⁸ ziftes, and warnyd hem in fayr maner vpon aH loue and frenschipe þat þei schulde Amende hir¹⁰ lithir condicions; but al it was for nouzt, for they deden her owne wil in aH 16 þyng¹¹ þat hem lykede & hadde of power. wherfore þo xxxiiij kynges, vpon A tyme, and oftyntymes, beten here wyfes, for þey wende that þei wolde haue Amended here tacches and here wykkyd thewes; but of such condicions þei were þat, for fayr speche & 20 warnyng, þei deden the¹² wors, & for betynges¹³ eft-sone mych¹³ wors. Wherfore þ^e kyng þat hadde wedded Albyne, wrote þ^e tacches & þ^e8 condicions of his wyf Albyne, & þ^e lettre sent to Dioclician, her fader. ¶ And whenne þ^e8 other kynges herde that 24 Albynes lord had sent lettre to Dioclician, anon þey sente lettres enseled with here seeles [of] þ^e condicions and þ^e tacches of here wyfes.

¶ Whanne þ^e Kyng Dioclician saw & herde so many pleyntes 28 of his daughters, he was⁸ sore a-schamed, & bycome wonder Angry & wroth to-ward his daughters, & þought boþ^e nyght & day how he þo myghte amende hit þat þey so mysdede. ¶ And anon sente his lettres vnto þo xxxiiij¹⁴ kynges, þat þey schulde come to hym, 32 & brynge with hem here wyfes, euerychoñ at a certayn day, for he wolde þere chastise hem of here wikkydnes, if he myghte in eny maner wyse. So þat þ^e kynges comen aH at þe¹⁵ day & tyme þat

¹ spoken² her' opere³ knyghtes *struck out, and kynges written after it.*⁴ weren⁵ diuerse⁶ euerychoñ⁷ pouzt nouzt⁸ om.⁹ chastisede ham¹⁰ her' maners þat wer' so¹¹ þinges¹² leaf 1, back.¹³⁻¹³ eftesones michel¹⁴ xxx^{ti}¹⁵ her'

þo was sette bytween hem ; & þ^e Kyng Dioclician hem vndir-fenge¹
 with mychel honour, & made A solempne feste to aH þat were
 vndir his lordschipe. And þ^e thrid day of þat² solempnyte, þ^e
 4 kyng Dioclician sente for³ his xxxiiij doughtres, þat þei schulde
 come & speke with hym in his chambre. & whenne þey were
 comen, he spak vn-to hem of here wikkydnes & of here cruelte,
 & dispitously⁴ hem reprovde And vndirnam,⁵ & to hem he sayde
 8 þat, zif þei wolde not be⁶ chastiseð, þei schulde his loue lese for
 euermore. ¶ And whanne þ^e ladyes herd⁷ al this, þei becomen⁸
 abashed & gretly a-schamed ; & to here fadir þey seyð þat þei
 wolde make al amendes ; & so þey departed out from here fadres⁹
 12 chambre. and Dame Albyne, þat was þ^e eldest suster, lad hem aH
 into her chambre, & þo made voide al þat were þerin, so þat no
 lyf was among¹⁰ hem but sche & here sustres y-fere.¹¹ þ^e saide
 þis Albyne ¶ “ My fair sustres, ful weel ze¹² knowiþ þat þ^e kyng
 16 oure fadir, vs hath reprovyd, schamed & dispised,¹³ for encheson
 to make vs obedient vn-to oure husbandes ; but certes þat schal y
 neuere, whiles þat I lyve, seth þat I¹⁴ am come¹⁴ of a more hyere
 kynges blod þan my¹⁵ husband is.” & whan sche had so seyð,
 20 aH here sustres seyð þe same. ¶ And þo seyð Albyne : “ ful
 wel y wot, fayr sustres, þat oure husbandes haue playned vnto
 oure fadir vpon vs, wherfore he hath¹⁶ þus vs¹⁶ foul reprovde
 & dispised. wherfore, sustres, my counseil is þat, þis nyght,
 24 when oure husbandes ben abed,¹⁷ aH we with on assent cutten
 here throtes, & þan we mow be in pees of hem, & better we mowe
 do þis þing vndir our fadres power þan elles-where.” & anon
 AH þ^e ladyes¹⁸ consentid and graunted vnto þis counceil. ¶ And
 28 whan nyght was comyn, þ^e lordes & ladies wente to bedde, & anon
 as here lordes were in¹⁹ slepe, þei cutte²⁰ aH here husbandes
 throtes, & so they slouen hem aH.

¶ whan þat Dioclician²¹ her fader herd of þis þing, ²² he by-
 32 come²² hugely wroth A-zen his Doughtres, & anon wolde hem aH
 haue brent ; but Alle þ^e barouns & lordes of Sirrye conceilyd hym
 not so for-to don suche sternys to his owne doughtres, but onlych
 schulde voide þ^e land of hem for euermore, so þat þei neuere
 36 schulde come azen ; & so he dede. ¶ And anon Dioclician, þat

¹ vnderfong^t² þe³ after⁴ despitelly⁵ vndenam⁶ bene⁷ harden⁸ bicomme⁹ fader¹⁰ amonges¹¹ infere¹² we¹³ despitede¹⁴⁻¹⁴ comen¹⁵ myn¹⁶⁻¹⁶ vs þus¹⁷ in bedde¹⁸ leaf 2.¹⁹ on²⁰ cotten²¹ Dioclician þe kyng^t²²⁻²² om.

was here fadir,¹ commaundid hem to gon in-to schipe, & deliuryd to hem vitailles for half a² 3eer. and when þis was don, aH þ^e sustryn³ went in-to Shipe, & saylled forth in þ^e See, & be-toke alle her frendes to Appolyn, þat was her god. And so long þey sailled⁴ in þ^e See, til at þe laste þei come⁴ & aryued in an yle þat was aH wyldernes. ¶ And when dame Albyne was come to þat land, & aH her sustres, þis Albyne went ferst⁵ owt of þ^e shipe,⁵ & sayde to here oþer sustres: “for-as-mich,” quod⁶ sche, “as I am þ^e eldest⁸ suster of aH þis cumpanye, & ferst þis land haue takyn, & for-as-meche as myn⁷ name is Albyne, y wil þat þis land be called Albyon, after myn owne name;” & anon aH here Sustren³ her graunted with a² good wylle. 12

¶ Tho wenten owt aH þ^e Sustres of þ^e Shippe, & tokyn þ^e lond Albyon, as here Suster called hit; & þere þei wente vp and down, and founde neiþer man ne woman ne child, but wylde bestes of diuers⁸ kyndes. ¶ And whan here vitaih⁹ were dispendid, & hem 16 faylled, þei fedde hem with erbes & frutes in seson of þ^e 3eer, & so þey lyued¹⁰ as þei beste myght. And after þat, þei tokyn flessh of diuers⁸ beestys, and bycomen wondir fatte, and so þei desirid¹¹ mannes cumpanye and mannys kynde þat hem faylled; and for 20 hete they woxen wondir coraious of kynde⁵ þat hem faylled,⁵ so þat þey desirid more mannys cumpanye þan eny other solas or merthe.

¶ Whanne þe DeuyH that perceyued and wente by diuers⁸ contres, & nome bodyes of þ^e eyre & likyng natures shad of men, 24 & come in-to þ^e land of Albyon and lay by þe¹² wymmen, and schad tho natures vpon hem, & they conceiued, and after þei broughten¹³ forth Geauntes, of þe which on me called Gogmagog, and anoþer Laugherigan, & so þei were nompned by diuers¹⁴ 28 names; & in þis manere they comen forth, and weren¹⁵ boren horrible Geauntes in Albion; & þey dwellyd in Cauys & in hules at here wiH, & had þ^e lond of Albyon as hem liked, vn-to þ^e tyme þat Brut Arryved & come to Tottenesse, þat was in þ^e Ile 32 of Albyon. and þere þis Brut conqueryd & scomfyted these¹⁶ 17 geauntez aboueseyd.

Here endeth þe prolog of Albyon, þat þo was an Ile. and herkeneth¹⁸ now how Brute was geten, & how he slow, 36

¹ fader anon ² om. ³ sustres ⁴ comen ⁵⁻⁵ om.
⁶ quof ⁷ my ⁸ diuerses ⁹ vitailles
¹⁰ leueden ¹¹ desirden ¹² þo ¹³ brouzt
¹⁵ wer ¹⁶ þe ¹⁷ leaf 2, back. ¹⁸ herkep

ferst his Modir, & Afterward his fadir; & how he Con-
quered Albyon, þat After he nepned Brytaine, after his¹
name, þat now is y-calle² Engelon³, After þe name of
4 Engist of Saxoyne. *Capitulo Primo.*

IN the noble Cyte of gret Troye, þer was a noble knyght & ³a
myghty, & ³a man of gret power, þat me callyd Eneas. And
whan þ^e Cytee of Troye was lost & dystroyed thurgh hem of
8 Greek^t, þis Eneas, *with* al his mayn ⁴fled⁵ thens, & come in-to
Lumbardye, þat þo was lord & gouernour of þat land a kyng þat
me called⁶ Latyme, and another kyng^t þo was þat me called⁶
Turocelyn, þat stronglich⁷ werred vpon þis Kyng^t Latyme, þat
12 often-tymes ded hym moche⁸ sorowe & myche⁹ harm. ¶ And
whan þis Kyng Latyme herde þat Eneas was come,¹⁰ he vndirfonge
hym *with* myche¹¹ honour, and hym withhelde, for-as-myche as he
had herd of hym, and wyst wel þat he was a noble knyght, & a
16 worthy of body and of his dedes. ¶ This Eneas helpe Kyng
Latyme in his werre; & schortly for-to telle, so weel & worthyly
he ded, þat he slogh Turocelyn, & descomphyted^t al¹² his peple.
And whan al this was don, kyng Latyme 3af al þat land þat was
20 Turocelyns, & 3af it to Eneas in mariage *with* Lamane, his
doughter, the moost fayr creature þat eny manne wiste; & so þei
louede¹³ to-gider in ioy & myrthe aH here lyvys tyme.

¶ Hit bifel thus, þat Eneas dide, as God wolde. & whanne
24 that he was ded, Asquanius his Sone, þat come *with* hym from
Troye, vndirfenge¹⁴ þ^e land, and helde it al his lyvys tyme. ¶ And
after, he weddid A wyf, & vpon here¹⁵ begate A Sone þat me
callyd Sylveyn. And this Sylveyn, whan he conde¹⁶ some reson
28 of man, vnwetyng his fadir, & azens his wyl, aqueynted¹⁷ *with* a
damyseH þat was Cosyn to Lamane þat was Kyng Latymes
doughter, the quen þat was Eneas wyf, and brought þ^e damyseH *with*
Chylde. ¶ And whan Asquanius his⁹ fader ¹⁸yt wyste,¹⁸ anon he
32 lete enquere of the ¹⁹wyset maystres,¹⁹ & of þ^e ²⁰grettest Clerkys,²⁰
what child þ^e damysele schulde bryng forth. & þey Answered &
seyde þat sche schuld bryng forth a Sone þat schuld qwelle þoþ^e
fader & moder; & so he dede; for his modir dyde in beryng²¹ of

¹ his owen ² callede ³⁻³ om. ⁴ meny ⁵ MS. fledde fled
⁶ cleped ⁷ strongly ⁸ miche ⁹ om. ¹⁰ comen ¹¹ michel
¹² and aH ¹³ loueden ¹⁴ vnderfonge ¹⁵ her he ¹⁶ coupe
¹⁷ acqueynte him ¹⁸⁻¹⁸ wist þerof ¹⁹⁻¹⁹ gret clerkes
²⁰⁻²⁰ wisest men ²¹ bryngeng^t forth

hym. ¶ And whan þis Child was born, his fadir lete calle hym Brut; and þ^e maystres sayd¹ þat þe Child schulde do² mych harm & sorowe in many diuers³ places; & after, he schulde come to gret⁴ honour and worschipe. ¶ This Kyng Asquanius deide whan 4 god wolde; & Sylveyn his sone receyued þe land, & made hym wonderlich wel be-louyd among^t his puple. ⁵And⁶ whan Brut, þat was Sylveynes sone, was xv 3eer olde, he went vpon A day with his fadir to⁷ pley & solace; & as this Brut schulde schete⁸ 8 vnto an hert, his Arwe mys-happed & glacede; And so there Brut quelled his fader.

How Brut was dryue⁹ out of þ^e land, &¹⁰ held hym in Greke.

Capitulo ij^o.

12

And whan this myschaunce byfalle was, þ^e people of þ^e land made sorowe ynow, & were ¹¹an-Angryd¹¹; & for encheson þerof þei dreven Brut out of þ^e land, & wolde not suffre hym among¹² hem. and he Saw þat he moste¹³ not Abyde, & went 16 fro thens in-to þ^e¹⁴ Greekt; & þer he fonde vij^M men þat were of þ^e lynage & kynrede of Troy, þat ¹⁵weren come¹⁵ of gret block, as þ^e story telleth¹⁶ as of men and¹⁴ wommen & childryn, þe wheche weren¹⁷ aH holden in thraldom and bondage [by] ¶ the¹⁸ Kyng 20 Pandras of Greekt, for the deth of Achilles, þat was betrayed and slayn at Troye.

This Brut was a wondir fair man, & a strong, & A ¹⁹huge of his Age, & of glad chere and semblaunt, and also worthy of body, & 24 was wel beloued among his puple. This Kyng Pandras herde speke of his goodnesse & his condicions, & anon made hym dwell with hym, so þat Brut be-come wondir pryve & mych belouyd with þ^e kyng, so þat longtyme Brut dwellyd with þe kyng. ¶ So at²⁰ last 28 þei of Troy & Brut spoken to-gedre²¹ of kynrede & of lynage & of Aqueyntaunce, & þer¹⁴ pleynd hem vnto Brut of her sorowe &²² her bondeage, & of meny other schames þat þ^e [Kyng] Pandras²³ hem don. & to Brut þei seyde²⁴ vpon A tyme: “3e ben A lord of oure 32

¹ saiden ² done ³ diuerses ⁴ miche

⁵ leaf 3. *In the right hand top corner of this page is written, in a contemporary hand: ' Bonus es, domine, et in bonitate tua Iudicas terram.'*

⁶ A sic. ⁷ forto ⁸ shote ⁹ dryuen ¹⁰ And how he

¹¹⁻¹¹ sore agreuede ¹² amonges ¹³ mi3t ¹⁴ om.

¹⁵⁻¹⁵ wer comen ¹⁶ telleþ of ham ¹⁷ wer ¹⁸ MS. ¶ The

¹⁹ an ²⁰ at þe ²¹ to-gedere ²² and of

²³ Pandras hade ²⁴ saiden

lynage, & A strang^t man & a myghty. ¹be ^{3e}oure Avowe & oure lord^t, & we wyl become ^{3oure}men, & ^{3oure}comandementes² done in alle maner thyng³; and brynge ^{3e}vs out^t of this wrechidnes & ⁴bondage, & fyght we with ^{p^e}kyng; for thurgh ^{p^e}grace of ^{4p^e}grete⁴ god^t we schul hym ouercome; & we schul make ^{3ou}kyng^t of ^{p^e}land^t, & to ^{3ow}done homage, & of ^{3ow}we schullen holde⁵ euermore.”

8 Brut hadde ^{þo}gret pyte of hir bondage ^{þat}þei were brought Inne, And pryvyly⁶ went hym from ^{p^e}kynges Court; & a^hþo ^{þat}were of Troy went & put hem in-to wodes and Into Moun- teynes, and hem helde, & sent to Kyng Pandras ^{þat}he schulde ^{3eue} 12 hem leue safely for-to wende out of ^{p^e}londe, for ^{þei}nolde⁷ no lenger dwelle in his bondage. ¶ The Kyng Pandras wax so⁸ sore anoyed^t, & ^{þo}swore that he wolde sle hem echon,⁹ & ordeyned a gret power, & wente towards¹⁰ hem a^hfor-to fight. but Brut 16 & his men ¹¹anon manly¹¹ hem defended, & fersly foghten & quelled a^hþe kynges men, ^{þat}non¹² of hem Ascaped^t, & took^t ^{p^e}kyng, & hym helden¹³ in pryson, & ordeyned¹⁴counceyl betwen hem what ^{þei}myght do.¹⁵ Sum seyde ^{þat}he schuld be put to deth, & 20 summe seyde ^{þat}he schulde be exyled^t out of ^{p^e}land^t, & summe seyde ^{þat}he schulde be brent.¹⁶ ¶ And ^{p^o}spak a wyse knyght ^{þat}me cleped¹⁷ Menprys, & seyde to Brut & to¹⁸ a^hþo of Troy: “yf Kyng Pandras wold ^{3elde}hym, & haue his lyf, y counceyl ^{þat}he 24 ^{3eue}vnto Brut, ^{þat}is our^t Duke & oure souerayn, his daughter Gennogen to wyf, & in Mariage *with* here an hundrid Shippes wel arayed^t, & al his tresour of gold^t & of syluer, of corn,¹⁹ of wyn, & as myche as vs nedith¹⁸ for¹⁸ to haue of o thing & of oper; & þan go¹⁸ 28 we out of ^{þis}land, & ordeine we vs land elles-wher; for we, ne non of our^t kynrede ^{þat}comen²¹ after vs, schuld²² neuer haue pees in ^{þis}land amonges hem of Grek^t; for we haue sleyn so meny of her^t knyghtes & of oper frendes, ^{þat}euermor^t werre & conctect 32 schuld^t be Amonges vs.” ¶ Brut ^{þo}, & his folk, consentyd^t wel to ^{þis}counceyl; & ^{þis}þing ^{þei}tolden to²⁴ Kyng Pandras. ¶ And ^{p^e}kyng, for-to haue his lyf, *graunted* as meche as ^{þei}axed, & anon ^{3af}vn-to Brut, Gennogen his Doughter, to wyf, & ^{þe}hundred

1-1 bene 2 commandement 3 pinges 4-4 om.
 5 holde for 6 priueliche 7 wolde 8 po 9 euerchon
 10 towarde 11-11 manliche 12 noman 13 helde
 14 leaf 3, back. 15 done 16 bricide 17 callede
 18 om. 19 corn and 20 his 21 comeþ 22 shul
 23 þat 24 to þe

sheppes, with as myche as hem neded¹ of aH vitalles, as byfore was ordeyned.

Brut þo toke² his wyf, & aH his men þat forsokē þe lond of Greek, & wenten hem vnto þ^e see & hadden wedir at wyH, & 4 comen þ^e þrid day in-to An Ile þat me calleþ³ Loegers. ¶ Brut anon sent of his men a⁴ land, for-to aspye þ^e maner of þe⁵ Cuntre. & þey founden an olde Cyte al wasted & forlete, þat nas þer-in nor⁶ man ne woman, ne no thing dwellynge; & In þ^e Myddyl of þis 8 Cytee þey founden an olde Temple of a fayr lady þat me called Diane þ^e Goddesse. and þei ⁷comen aȝen vnto Brut,⁷ & told hym what þei had seyn & founden, & counceyled hym to go & do⁸ sacrifice to⁹ Dame Diane, for she was wont¹⁰ to ȝeue answeere of 12 what þing þat⁶ euere men prayed here, & namely vn-to hem þat her honoured with sacrifice. ¶ Brut went to þat ymage, & seyð: “Dyane, noble goddes, lady þat al þing hast in⁶ myght & in þy power, wyndes, watres, wodes, feldes, & al thinges of þe world, & 16 al maner bestes þat þer-In ben! to ȝow y make my prayer, þat ȝe me counceyle & telle where & in what place y schal haue a conuenable dwellynge for me & for my peple; & þer y schal make, in¹¹ honour of ȝow, a wel fayr temple, & a noble, wheryn ȝe schul 20 euermore be honoured.” ¶ When he had don his prayer, Dyane Answerid in this manere: “Brut,” quod sche, “go euenforth þy wey ouer þ^e see in-to Fraunce, toward þ^e west, & þer ȝe schul fynde an Ile þat is called¹² Albyon; and þat Ile is bycompassed al with 24 þ^e see, & no man may come þer-In but¹³ it be by schippes; and in þat lond were wont to be Geautȝ; but¹⁴ it is not so, but al wyldirnesse; and þat lande to ȝou is destynyed, & ordeigned for ȝow & for ȝoure peple.”

How Coryn bycome Brutes man, & how Kyng Goffar was discomfited. Capitulo iij^o.

Whan Brut herde þis Answere of Dyane þ^e Goddes, anon he lete þ^e Ancres wynd vp, & sayled in-to þ^e hye see. & 32 whan he & his men had sayled xx dayes & more, þei founden fast bysyde¹⁵ a coste of þ^e see thre hundred men of þe lynage & kynrede of Troy, & her souerayn & her mayster of aH, men¹⁶ Called Coryn.

¹ nedeth ² nome ³ callede ⁴ on ⁵ om.

⁶ neyther ⁷⁻⁷ come vnto brut aȝeyne ⁸ doñ ⁹ vnto

¹⁰ wonede ¹¹ in þe ¹² leaf 4. ¹³ but if ¹⁴ but now

¹⁵ bisides ¹⁶ me

¶ And when Brut wyste whens þei were, he þo vndirfong hem with mychel ioy in-to his Shepys, & hem lad forth with hym. This Coryn þo bycome Brutes man, & to hym dede fewte & homage. 4 & so long þei sayled forth þan¹ in þ^e See tul they come² to Gascoign; & anon þei arryued³ in þ^e hauene of Liegers, & þer þei dwellidde viij dayes, hem for-to rest,³ & her sayles to Amend, þer as⁴ nede was.⁴

8 Tydyng sone come to Kyng Goffar, þat was lord of þ^e land, how þat myche⁵ folk⁶ of straunge land weren Arryued in his land in þ^e hauene of Liegers; wherfore he was sore Angred⁷ & anoyed⁸ þat þey comen & aryued in his land withoute⁶ leue. and anon he 12 ordeigned⁹ power⁷ hem to dryven⁷ owt, & to⁸ shende; but Kyng Goffar was discomfyted, & al⁸ his folk⁷, & hym-self fledde in-to ffraunce to seche help & socour. ¶ And in þat tyme regned in Fraunce xij kynges; & þ^e elleueneth⁹ assembled a gret power for-to 16 helpe Goffar for-to fight azens Brut. Goffar dwelled with hem of Fraunce half a⁸ zere & more. And Brut in þ^e mene-tyme, & his cumpanye, destroyed⁸ al þ^e land of Gascoigne, & lete take al þ^e tresour þat Kyng Goffar hadde, & lete brynge it in-to his Shippes. 20 And þis Brut fonde in þat¹⁰ lond a fayr place & a couenable; & þer Brut¹¹ made a fayr CasteH & a strong. whan þat was don, Kyng Goffar come fro Fraunce, &¹² xj kynges with hym, & broughten¹³ xx M[†] men for-to fight with Brut & his cumpanye. And Brut 24 hadde but vij M[†] men & thre hundred. Netheles, whan þ^e to ostes metten to-gider,¹⁴ Brutes folk¹⁴—thurgh help of hym-self,¹⁵ & of Turyn his Cosyn, & of Coryn þat wel & manly¹⁶ hym defended & fought; so þat in litil tyme þei hadde quelled of þ^e Frenssh-men to 28 M[†] & mo; & þo þat were lyue¹⁷ fledden away. ¶ And in this batayle Turyn, þat was Brutes Cosyn, was sleyn, & Brut lete hym entere worthyly,¹⁸ ¹⁹whan he had space & leyser, in þ^e CasteH þat he had made, & þo lete [calle hit] Castel Tours ²⁰after his owne 32 name²⁰ þat þere was entered. & zit in-to þis day þer is a noble Cytee þat is called Tours.

Whan Kyng Goffar wiste þat Turyn was ded, he come azen with his men, & after 3af a strong battaylle vn-to²¹ Brut; but Brut & 36 his⁸ men were so wery ²²of fyghtynge²² þat þey myghte no lengere

¹ om. ² comen ³ resten ⁴⁻⁴ was nede ⁵ michel
⁶ wipoute is ⁷⁻⁷ him to dryue ⁸ om. ⁹ endeleueþ ¹⁰ þe
¹¹ Brus ¹² w[ith] ¹³ brouzt ¹⁴ togederes ¹⁵ ham-self
¹⁶ manliche ¹⁷ on lyf ¹⁸ worthelich ¹⁹ leaf 4, back.
²⁰⁻²⁰ for þe name of Turyne ²¹ to ²²⁻²² forfouzten

endure; but maugre hym & al his, Brut & his men went in-to his CasteH *with* aH his men, and made þ^e 3ates fast for-to saue hem-self, & for-to take counceiH amonges hem what were best to¹ done. ¶ Brut & Coryn nome counceiH, & ordeigned þat Coryn pryuyly 4 shuld gon out ²at a Posterne of þ^e CasteH,² *with* half his men, & schuld go³ & bussē hem in A wode til amorowe,⁴ so þat in þ^e mornynge, whan Brut schuld fyght with his enemyes, Coryn schulde come *with* hes folk in þat o⁵ syde, & sle and do aH þ^e harme þat he 8 myght. And amorow⁶ in þ^e dawnenge, Brut went out of þ^e CasteH, & faught *with* his enemyes, & þey hem fersly defendid. but *with*-Inne a litil tyme Brut & his folk hadden⁷ slayn viij C of Goffars men; And þo come Coryn fro þe busschement, & smote to grounde, 12 he & his Cumpanye, al þat wold stande or Abyde, so þat Kyng Goffar & his folk were discomfited, & faste they gunne to fle. ¶ And Brut & Coryn, with here companye, fresshly hem pursued, & quelled of hem mo in⁸ fleyng þan þei dede in⁸ batayH. And in 16 þat manere Brut hadde þ^e victorye. And nepeles Brut made myche sorowe for his Cosyn Turyn, þat þer was slayn, & for oþer also þat he had lost of his men, ⁹þat is to seyne,⁹ vij C and xv, þe which¹⁰ [he] noblich¹⁰ lete entere in þ^e CasteH of Tours, þer þat he had 20 entered Turyn his Cosyn.

How Brut Aryued at Tottenes in þe Ile of Albyon; & of þ^e Bataylle þat¹¹ was betwen Coryn & Gogmagog. Capitulo quarto.

24

Whan al þis was done, Brut wolde no lengere þer dwelle for to¹² fight, ne mo lese of his peple, for Kyng^t Goffarys peple myght euery day encrece mo & mo, & Brutes lassen; & therfore he nome aH his men, & went vnto þ^e See, & hadde wynd & wedir at 28 wille. and þ^e v day afterward they aryued in an hauene of Totnesse, & comen¹³ in-to þ^e Ile of Albion; & þer þey founde neiþer man ne woman, as þ^e story telleþ,¹⁴ but Geautz; & þey woned in hules and in¹⁵ Caues. Brut saw þ^e land was fayr, & at his likynge, 32 & good also for hym & for his folk^t, as Dyane þ^e goddes had hym behyght. þo was Brut wonder glad, & lete assemble vpon a day al his folk, to make a solempne sacrifice & a gret feste in honour

¹ for-to ²⁻² of the castel at a posterne ³ gone ⁴ on þe morw
⁵ on ⁶ amorn ⁷ hade ⁸ in þe ⁹⁻⁹ om. ¹⁰⁻¹⁰ nobliche he
¹¹ þai sic ¹² om. ¹³ come ¹⁴ telles ¹⁵ om.

& reuerence of Dyane,¹ þurght whas counceiþ he was come² in-to þat land.

And whan they had her solempnyte maad, as þey³ vpon a day
4 were⁴ at mete, þer come yn vpon hem sodenly xxx Geauntz, &
quellyd⁵ of Brutes men xxx. Brut & his men⁴ anon stertyn vp,
& his men⁶ foughten with þe^e Geauntz, & quellyd hem euerychon
but o⁷ Geaunt, þat was Mayster of hem aþ, þat me called Gogmagog,
8 þat was strengere⁸ & heyer þan eny of þe^e other Geauntz; & Brut
kepte hym, & sauýd his lyf, for encheson þat he schulde wrastle
with Coryn, for Coryn was grettere & hugere þan eny of Brutes
men fro⁹ þe^e gerdel stede vpwárd. ¶ Gogmagog¹ & Coryn vndirtok
12 ¹⁰to wrastelyn¹⁰ y-fere; & so to-gider þey wrasted¹ long tyme, but
at þe last Gogmagog helde Coryn so fast þat he brak ij rybbys of¹¹
his syde, wherfore Coryn was sore agreuyd¹, & nome þo Gogmagog¹
betwene his Armes, & cast hym down vpon a roche, so þat
16 Gogmagog¹ brak al to peces, & so he dyde in eviþ detþ; & þerfore
þe^e place is called 3it in-to¹² þis day 'þe sawte of Gogmagog¹.'

& þo 3af Brute al þat¹³ Cuntre to Coryn; & Coryn¹⁴ called
[hit]⁴ after his¹⁵ name 'Cornewayle'; & his men he called 'Corne-
20 wayles' & [so] schul¹⁶ men of þat Cuntre be called for euermore.
And in þat Cuntre dwellyd¹ Coryn & his men, & made Tounes
& houses,¹⁷ & enhabited¹⁸ þe^e land¹ at her¹⁹ wylle.

**How Brut made London, & Called þis land Brytaine, &
24 Scotland Albyne, & Walys Camber. Capitulo quinto.**

BRut and his men wenten forth & ²⁰sought aboute in diuers²⁰
places wher they myghte fynde a good place & a couenable
þat þey myghte [make] in a Cytee for hym and for his folk, so at þe^e
28 laste þey come²¹ by a fayr Ryuer²² þat is²³ called þe^e Tamyse; &
þer Brut be-gan a fayre Cyte ²⁴for hym & for his folk,²⁴ & lete calle
it 'þe new Troye,' in mynde & remembraunce of þe^e gret Troye, for²⁵
whiþ place aþ her lynage was comen. ¶ And þis Brut lete felle
32 adoun wodes, & lete eryl & sowe londes, & done mow medes²⁶ for
sustinaunce of hym & of his peple. & he departed þe^e land¹ to hem,
so þat eche²⁷ of hem had a certayn place for to dwelle vpon. And

¹ Diane þe Goddes ² comen ³ þai were ⁴ om. ⁵ leaf 5.
⁶ men and ⁷ on ⁸ stronge ⁹ fram ¹⁰⁻¹⁰ forto wrasted
¹¹ in ¹² vnto ¹³ þis ¹⁴ Coryn it ¹⁵ his owen ¹⁶ shulleþ
¹⁷ house ¹⁸ inhabite ¹⁹ his ²⁰⁻²⁰ sou3ten forthe in diuerses
²¹ comen ²² Ryuer side ²³ was ²⁴⁻²⁴ om. ²⁵ fram
²⁶ medowes ²⁷ eueryche

Brut lete Calle al¹ þis land Britaigne, after his owne name, & his folk he lete calle Britouns. ¶ And þis Brut had geten on² his wyf Gennogen iij sones þat were worthy of dedes:³ þ^e firste me⁴ callyd Lotryn, þ^e secounde Albanac,⁵ & þ^e thryd kambyr. ¶ And 4 Brut bare Crowne in þ^e Cyte of newe Troye xx 3eer after tyme⁶ the Cyte was made; & ther he made þe lawes þat þ^e Britouns holdep⁷: & þis Brut was wondirly weel byloued among aH men; & Brutes Sones also loueden wonderly¹ wel to-gydere.⁸ 8

¶ And whan¹ Brut had sowte aH þ^e lond in lengthe &⁹ brede, he fonde A land þat ioyned to Brytaigne in þ^e north; and þat land Brut 3af to Albanac his sone, and he lete calle yt Albanye after his¹⁰ name, þat¹⁰ now is called Scotland. ¶ And Brut 12 fonde anothir Cuntre toward þ^e west; & þat he 3af to Cambre his other¹¹ sone, & he¹ lete calle yt Cambre aftyr his name, & now is called Walys. And whan Brut had regnyd xx 3eer, as byfore¹² is sayd, he dyde in þ^e Cytee of newe Troy, & 16 þere his Sones hym entered with mychil honour. And Lotryn, Brutes sone, was Crowned kyng with myche¹³ solempnyte of aH þ^e land of Brytaigne. And after, whan he was Crowned, Albanak & Camber, his too brethryn, went a3en in-to here owne 20 Cuntre, & leuedyn with myche¹³ honour, & Lotryn here brother regned & was kyng and gouerned þ^e land wel & wysely, for he was a good man, & wondir wel belouyd of aH his land.

¶ And it befel so þat Albanac dwelde in his owne land with 24 myche¹³ honour & worschepe.

And so come Kyng Humbar of Hunland with a gret power & strengthe, & Arryved in Albanye, & wolde haue conqueryd þ^e land, & bygan to werre vpon Albanak, & hym quelled in bataylle. 28 Whan Albanac was slayn, þe folk of þ^e land flye vn-to Lotryn, & told hym, for he was Kyng of Brytaigne, how þat his brother was slayn, & prayed hym of help for-to Auenge his brotherys deth. Lotryn anon lete asemble aH þ^e Brytouns of Kent, of¹⁴ Douorre, 32 vn-to Derewent, of Northfolk & Southfolc, of Kestefen & of Lyndeseye; & whan they were aH Assembled, þei spedde faste toward her enemyes for to 3eue hem bataylle. ¶ Lotryn had sent to Camber, his Brother, þat he schuld come also to hym with aH 36 þ^e power that he myghit, hym for-to helpe; & so he dede, with good

¹ om. ² of ³ bodyes ⁴ m sic ⁵ albac ⁶ tyme þat
⁷ helden ⁸ togederes ⁹ and in ¹⁰⁻¹⁰ owen name and
¹¹ leaf 5, back. ¹² MS. fyfore ¹³ michel ¹⁴ fro

wiH.¹ So þei comen aH to-gedres, & nome her wey priuily² for to seche Humbar wher þey myghte hym fynde. ¶ And so it byfel þat þis Humbar was besides a water þat was a gret Ryuer, with
4 his folk, hym for to dysport; and þo come Lotryn & Camber his brother, with aH his³ folk sodeynly, or þat eny of þat oper it wyste.

¶ And whan Humbar saw hem⁴ come, he was sore adrad, 8 forasmyche as his men wist it not, & also þey were vnarrayed.⁵ And anon Humbar for drede, lept⁶ in-to þ^e water & drenchyd hymself, & so deide: he & his men weren⁷ aH y-slayn,⁸ þat non⁹ of hem ascaped. And þerfore is þat¹⁰ water called Humbar, & euer-
12 more schalbe, for encheson þat Kyng Humbar was þer-In drenched.

¶ And after þat, Lotryn wente to here shippes, & toke þer¹⁰ gold & siluer, and as myche as he fand vn-to hym-self; & aH þat other pylfre he 3af vn-to other folk of þ^e ost. & þei founden¹¹ in
16 oon of þo¹⁰ shippes A fayr DamyseH þat was Kyng Humberys doughter, & me called her Estrilde. ¶ And whan Lotryn saw here, he took here with hym for here fayrnesse, and for here, was on¹² taken for loue, & wolde haue weddid here. ¹³þis tydynges
20 come to Coryn: anon he thought to Auenge hym vpon Lotryn, for-as-meche as Lotryn had made couenaunt for-to spowsen¹⁴ Corynys doughter, þat me called Guentolen. ¶ And Coryn in haste wente to¹⁵ hym, vn-to¹⁶ þ^e Newe Troye, & þus sayd to Lotryn:
24 “¶ Now certes,” quod he, “3e rewarden¹⁷ me ful euel for aH þ^e paynes þat I suffryd & hadde many tymes for Brut, 3oure fader; & therefore I wyl now Auenge me vpon 3ow;” & drow his fauchon an hye, and wold haue slayn Lotryn, but þ^e DamyseH went
28 betwen hem, & made hem acorded in þis manere, þat Lotryn schuld spouse Guentolen, þat was Corynys doughter; and so Lotryn dede, and nepeles, þei he had spoused Corynys doughter pryuylich, he come to Estrilde, & brought here with childe, & gate
32 on here A doughter þat me called Abraham. ¶ hyt byfel anon after, þat Coryn dide; & anon as he was ded, Lotryn forsook Guentolen his wyf, & made Estrylde quene. And Guentolen went þens al in wrathe in-to Cornewaylle, & seised aH þ^e land
36 in-to her hand, for-as-myche as sche was here Fadrys eyr, & vndirfonge feautes & homages of aH þ^e men of þ^e land, and after

1 wille and 2 priueliche 3 her 4 him 5 vnarmede
6 lap 7 wer 8 slayne 9 noman 10 þe 11 fonde
12 ouere 13 leaf 6. 14 spouse 15 vnto 16 to 17 rewarde

Assembled a gret oste & a gret power, for-to be¹ vpon Lotryn auenged, þat was her' lord, and to hym come, & 3af hym A Strong' bataiH. & þer was Lotryn slayn, & his men descomfited, þ^e v 3eer of his Reigne. ¶ Guentolen lete take Estrilde, and Abraham here 4 dougter, and bynde² boþ^e hondes and fete, & caste hem in-to a water; & so þey were drenchyd; wherfore þat water was euermore called³ after, 'Abraham,' after þ^e name of þ^e damyseH þat was Estrildes doughter; & englissh-men called⁴ þat water Seuerne, & 8 Walssshimen ⁵called þat water⁵ Abraham, into þis day. ¶ And whan þis was don, Guentolen lete Crowne her quene of þat land, & gouerned þ^e land ful weH & wysely vnto þ^e⁶ tyme þat Madhon her Sone, þat Lotryn had begete vpon here, wer' of xx 3er Age, þat he 12 myght be kyng; so þat þ^e qwen regned xv 3eer; & þo lete she crowne here sone; & he regned & gouerned þ^e land wel & honourably; & sche wente in-to CornewaiH, & þer sche dwellid al her lyves⁷ tyme. 16

8 Of Kyng' Madhan, how he regnede in pees al his lif; and of Menpris and of Manlyn his sones; and how Menpris slough Manlyn his broþer, and how wolves drow him al to peces.

¶ **Capitulo Sexto.**

20

WHen Madhan hade regnede xxx^{ti} 3ere, he deide, and liþ⁹ at newe Troye, and he¹⁰ hade ij sones: þat on me callede Menpris, and þat oþere Manlyn; and þise ij breþerne, after here fadres deth, stryuen faste for þe lande; and Menpris, for enchesouñ 24 þat he was eldest, wolde haue hade al þat¹¹ Londe; and Manlyn wolde nouzt suffren¹² him, so þat þai token a day of loue and of accorde; and at þis day Menpris lete quelle his broþer þrouz tresouñ, and him-self afterward helde þe lande, and anone lete crowne him 28 kyng, and regnede, and after, he¹³ bicome so luper a man þat he destroyede in a while alle þe men of his lande. ¶ and at þe last he bicome so wickede and so leccherous, þat he forsoke his owen wif, & vsede þe synne of Sodomye; wherfore almighty God was 32 wroþ,¹⁴ and oppoñ him toke vengeance. ¶ ffor vppon a day, as he went in a wode in¹⁵ huntynge, he loste ¹⁶his folc,¹⁶ and went

¹ bene ² bonde ³ calle ⁴ callen ⁵⁻⁵ calleþ it.

⁶ that ⁷ lif

⁸ leaf 1, back. The text here is from MS. Rawlinson B. 171, and the collations are of MS. Trinity College, Dublin, 490 (D), and MS. Douce 323 (O).

⁹ leaf 2. ¹⁰ om. D. ¹¹ þe D. ¹² suffre O. ¹³ om. O.

¹⁴ wrot D. ¹⁵ on O. ¹⁶⁻¹⁶ MS. his folc his folc

allone vp and douñ cryng' after' his men; and þere come wolfes, and alto-drowe him into pecis; and þo he hade regnede xxiiij 3er'. and when his peple wist þat he was dede, þai made ioye ynow, and
4 anone made Ebrak¹ his sone kyng; and he regnede with michil honour'.

Of Kyng' Ebrac,¹ how he conquerede ffraunce, and bigate xx^{ti} sones and xxiiij douz'tres. ¶ Capitulo ¶ Septimo.

8 **T**his Ebrac regnede .lx. 3er', and² stronge man was, &² miȝty, and þis Ebrac, þrouȝ his miȝt, and helpe of his Britons, conquerede al ffraunce, and wan þere so miche golde and siluer' þat, when he come³ aȝeyne into þis⁴ lande, he made a noble citee, and
12 after' his name lete calle it Ebrac, ⁵after' his name,⁵ þat now is callede Euerwik'. and þis king⁶ Ebrac made þe castel of Maydenes þat now is clepede Edenburght. This kyng' hade xx sones and
16 as ȝe shul hure;⁸ ⁹Brut Greneshal, Margand, Seisel, Morghwith Flenghan, Bladud, Iakyn, Kymbar', Rocelyn, Spadogh, Godeherl, Thormnan, Eldaugh, Iorkanghut, Haybor, Ketyn, Rother', Kaier', & Assaruth. ¶ And þe doughtres highten as ȝe shul hur' after':⁹
20 Elegyne, Ymmogen, Oghdas, Guenbran, Guardiche, Angarel, Guentolde, Tangustel, Gorghoñ, Michel, Medham, Mailour', Ondur', Cambredan, Rogan, Reuthely, Neest', Cheghem, Scadud', Gladus, Heberhyn, Abalaghe, and Blandan: and þise were þo¹⁰ xxiiij
24 douz'tres; and þe breþerne bicom gode knyȝtes and worþi in meny contres.

Of þe¹¹ Kyng' Brut Greneshal, þe ferste sone of Ebrac the¹² kyng.¹³ ¶ Capitulo ¶ Octauo.

28 **A**fter' þe deth of Kyng' Ebrac, regnede Brut Greneshel, his sone xxx 3er',¹⁴ þat was¹⁵ Ebrakes ferst sone,¹⁶ þat wel and noblye regnede. and ¹⁷when tyme come,¹⁷ he deide, and ¶ liþ at ȝork'.

Of kyng Leyl. ¶ Capitulo. ¶ Nono.

32 **A**Nd when¹⁸ Brut Greneshal was dede, regnede his sone Leil xxij ȝere; and he made a faire toun, and lete calle it Karleil after his name, and was a worþi man, and miche bilouede

¹ Ebras D. ² and a DO. ³ came O. ⁴ þe D. ⁵⁻⁵ om. DO.
⁶ om. D. ⁷ leaf 2, back. ⁸ here after. ⁹⁻⁹ om. D. ¹⁰ þe D.
¹¹ om. D. ¹² om. O. ¹³ *The 2 eldest sons are here put into 1.*
¹⁴ ȝer and D. ¹⁵ om. D. ¹⁶ sone was D.
¹⁷⁻¹⁷ when tyme come D. þe tyme come O, when tyme R.
¹⁸ MS. when when

of his people, and when he hade regnede xxij [years]¹ he deide, and liþ at Karleil. ¶ And in his tyme reneðe Kyng Salamon in Jerusalem, þat made þe noble temple; and to him come to Ierusalem, Sibille, Quene of Saba, for-to hure and see if it were soþe þat 4 men spoken² of þe grete noble and³ wisdome, and of⁴ witte of Kyng⁵ Salamon: and she founde it soth þat men hade here tolde.

Of Kyng Lud Ludibras, þat was Kyng Leiles sone. ¶ *Capitulo*
x^{mo}.

8

⁵ **A** Nd⁶ after þis Kyng Leil, regnede his sone Lud Ludybras, þat made þe citee of Kaunterbery and of Wynchestre; and he regnede xij zere, and deide, and lith at Wynchestre.

Of þe kyng⁷ Bladuc,⁸ þat was Ludybras sone, regnede,⁹ and 12 was a gode man and a nygromancer'. *Capitulo xi^{mo}.*

A Nd¹⁰ after þis Lud Ludebras, regnede Bladud his sone, a grete nigromancer'; and prou3 his crafte of nigromancie he made þe meruailous hote bathe, as þe gest telleþ, & he regnede 16¹¹ xxj zere,¹¹ and he¹² lith at þe¹³ newe Troye.

Of¹⁴ Kyng⁵ Leir, and of þe ansuere of his zongest douzter', þat graciously was mariede to þe Kyng of Fraunce. *C. xij.*

A fter þis Kyng Bladud, regnede Leir' his sone; and þis Leir' 20 made þe toune of Leycestre, and lete calle þe toune after his name; and he gouernede þe lande wel and [nobly]. ¶ þis kyng Leir' hade iij doughtres: þe ferst highte Gonorille, þe secunde Rigan, and þe þridde Cordeile; and þe zongest doughter' was 24 fairest' and best of condiciouns. ¶ þe king' here fader' bicomē an olde man, and wolde þat his¹⁵ doughtres were mariede or þat he deide. but ferst he þoug't assaye whiche of ham¹⁶ louede him most' and best'; for she þat louede him best shulde¹⁷ best 28 bene¹⁸ mariede. and he axede of þe ferst dought[er] how miche she¹⁹ louede him¹⁹; and she ansuereðe and saide, 'bette þan here owen

¹ 3er D. 3eer O. ² spok D. ³ and of D. ⁴ of þe O. ⁵ leaf 3.

⁶ *In the margin is this note, in an ancient hand: Lud Ludibras y^t byldyd ca[n]terbery.* ⁷ om. O. ⁸ bladud^t D. bladud O. ⁹ regne D.

¹⁰ *In the margin, in an ancient hand: he mayd y^e hoyt b[ath].* *The edge of this page has evidently been cut off.*

¹¹⁻¹¹ om. D. ¹² om. D. ¹³ om. DO. ¹⁴ Of þe O.

¹⁵ his DO. here R. ¹⁶ his douztes D. ¹⁷ shul D. ¹⁸ be DO.

¹⁹⁻¹⁹ him louede D, hym loued' O.

lif.' "Now certes," quod¹ ²þe fader',² "þat is a³ grete loue." ¶ þo axede he of þe secunde doughter', how miche she him louede; and she saide, 'more, and passing al þe creatures leuyng⁴ of þe
 4 worlde.' "ma foy,"⁵ quod þe fader', "y may no more axen." ¶ And þo axede he of þe pridde doughter', how miche she him louede. "certes, fader'," ⁶quod she, "my sustres haue tolde
 8 3ow glosyng wordes; but for-soþe y shal tel 3ow⁷ treuþ: for y
 8 loue 3ow as miche as ⁸me oweþ⁸ to loue my fader; and⁹ forto
 bryng 3ow more in certeyne how loue goþ, I shal 3ow telle, for-as-
 miche as 3e bene¹⁰ worþe, as mucche¹¹ shal 3e bene¹² louede." ¶ The
 kyng here fader wende þat she hade scornede him, and bicome
 12 wonder wroth, and swore by heuen and erþe þat she shulde neuer
 haue goode of him; but his dou3tres þat louede him so miche
 shulde be wel auauuncede and mariede . and þe ferste dougter
 he mariede to Mangles, King of Scotlande; And þe secunde he
 16 mariede to Hanemos, Erl of Cornewaile; and so¹³ þai ordeynede
 and speke¹⁴ bituene ham þat þai shulde departe þe reaune bituene
 ham too, after þe dep of Leir'¹⁵ her' fader', ¶ So þat Cordeil his
 3ongest doughter shulde noþing¹ haue of his lande. but þis Cordeil
 20 was wonder' faire, and of so¹⁵ goode condicions and maners, þat þe
 Kyng of Fraunce, Agampe, ¹⁶herde of here¹⁶ speke, and sent to þe
 Kyng Leir', he[r] fader', for to haue her' vnto wif, and prayede him
 þerof. And Kyng' Leir here fader' sent him worde þat he hade
 24 departede the lande ¹⁷to his ij oþere¹⁷ dou3tres, and saide he
 nade¹⁸ no more lande wherwiþ ¹⁹her' forto¹⁹ marie.²⁰ ¶ And when
 Agampe herde þis ansuere, he sent anone a3eyne to Leir', and
 saide þat he axede noþing wiþ here, but oneliche²¹ heir' cloþing
 28 and oneliche heir' body; and anone³ Kyng' Leire here fader' sent
 here ouer þe see to þe Kyng' of France; and he resceyuede here
 wiþ michel²² worship and wiþ ²³michel solempnite,²³ & made here
 Quene of Fraunce.

¹ quod D.²⁻² he O.³ om. D.⁴ om. DO.⁵ fey O.⁶ leaf 3, back.⁷ 3ow soth and D.⁸⁻⁸ y owe D.

I owe O.

⁹ MS. and and.¹⁰ beth D. be O.¹¹ somiche D. so mych O.¹² be DO.¹³ þo O.¹⁴ spak D.¹⁵ om. O.¹⁶⁻¹⁶ Of her herde D.¹⁷⁻¹⁷ vn-to his oþer too O.¹⁸ hade D. hadde O.¹⁹⁻¹⁹ he mi3t her D.²⁰ maryen O²¹ only O.²² miche D. mych O.²³⁻²³ miche solempnite her spousesede D. mych solempnyte her spousesed O.

How Kyng Leir¹ was dryuen out of his lande prou² his owen² folye; and how Cordeil his zongest daughter halpe him in his nede. ¶ Capitulo ¶ Terciodecimo.

THus it bifel⁴ afterwarde, þat þo ij eldest doughtren⁵ wolde 4 nouzt abide til þat Leir¹ here fader were⁶ dede, but werrede oppon him whiles þat⁷ he leuede, and miche sorwe and shame him dede; wherfore þai binome him holly þe reaume, and bituene ham hade ordeynede þat one of ham shulde haue Kyng Leir¹ to⁸ soiourne 8 al his lif tyme, with xl kny³ztes and heir squyers, þat he might worshipfully gone⁹ & ryde whider þat he wolde, ¹⁰and into¹⁰ what contre þat him likede, to playe and to solacen. ¶ So þat Managles Kyng¹ of Scotlande, hade Kyng¹ Leir¹ with him in þe maner þat¹¹ is 12 aboue-saide,¹² and, or oþere half zere were passede, Corneil his eldest douzter, þat was Quene of Scotland, was so annoyed ¹³wiþ him and wiþ¹³ his peple, þat anone she and here lorde ¹⁴spoken to-gederes,¹⁴ wherfor his kny³ztes half,¹⁵ and his squyers,¹⁶ fram him were gone, 16 and nomo lefte but oneliche xxx. And when¹⁵ þis was done, Leire biganne forto¹⁷ make miche sorwe, for enchesoun þat his state was enpirede, and men hade of him more scorne and despise þan euer þai hade biforne; wherfore he nyst what forto¹⁸ done; and at þe 20 last þouzt þat he wolde wende into Cornewaile, to Rigan his oþere doughter. ¶ And when he was comen,¹⁹ þe erl and his wif, þat was Leires doughter, him welcomede, and with him made miche ioye; and þere he duellede with xxx kny³ztes and squyers. And he nade²⁰ 24 nought duellede þere scarsly tuelf moneþ, þat his doughter of him²¹ nas ful, and of his company; and her¹ lorde and she, of him hade scorne and despise, so þat fram²² xxx kny³ztes⁷ þai brouzten vnto x, and afterwarde v; and so þere lefte wiþ him nomo. ¶ þo 28 made he¹⁵ sorwe ynow, and²³ saide, sore wepyng, ‘allas þat euer he come into þat Lande!’ and saide, ‘zitte hade me bene bettere forto⁶ haue duellede with my ferst doughter [and anon went þens azeyne to his ferst douzter].’²⁴ But anone as she saw him come, 32 she swore by God²⁵ and²⁵ his holy names, and by as niche as she might, þat he shulde haue nomo wiþ him but one²⁶ knyzt, if²⁷ he

¹ þis O. ² om. DO. ³ leaf 4. ⁴ fel DO. ⁵ douzters D.
⁶ was D. ⁷ om. D. ⁸ forto D. ⁹ go DO.
¹⁰⁻¹⁰ in D. into O. ¹¹ as DO. ¹² above-yseyd O.
¹³⁻¹³ of DO. ¹⁴⁻¹⁴ spoken to-gidre O. ¹⁵ om. O.
¹⁶ Squyers half O. ¹⁷ to O. ¹⁸ to D. ¹⁹ come O.
²⁰ hade D. ²¹ his O. ²² fro D. ²³ leaf 4, back.
²⁴ supplied from D. ²⁵ and by D. & by O. ²⁶ o DO. ²⁷ if þat O.

wolde þere¹ abide. ¶ Þo bigan Leir' aʒeyn to² wepe, and made
 muche sorwe, and saide þo: "allas! now to longe haue y leuede, þat
 þis sorwe and meschief is³ now to me³ falle; for now⁴ y am⁴ poer',
 4 and⁵ some tyme y² was ryche; but now haue y no frende ne kyn
 þat me wil do⁶ eny maner' goode. ¶ But when⁷ y was ryche, alle
 men me honourede⁸ and worsshepede;⁸ and now euery man hath
 of me scorne and despite! and now y wote wel þat Cordeil, my
 8 ʒonge⁹ doughter', saide me treuþ when she saide 'as michel¹⁰ as y
 hade, ¹¹so michel¹¹ shulde y ¹²be louede';¹² and all þe while þat y
 hade goode, þo was y belouede and honourede for my rychesse; but
 my ij doughtres me glosede þo, and now of me þai sette litel pris,
 12 and soþ tolde me Cordeil, but y wolde nouzt bileue it, ne vnder-
 stonde, and perfore y lete here goñ¹³ fro me as a þing þat y sette
 litel pris of; and now wote y neuer' what forto done, seþ my
 ij doughtres have me¹⁴ þus desceyuede,¹⁵ þat y so michel¹⁶ louede;
 16 and now moste me¹⁷ nedes seche¹⁸ here þat is in an opere lande, þat
 lightly y lete here go fro me without¹⁹ eny reward of ʒiftes; and she
 saide þat¹⁴ 'she louede me as miche as she outh²⁰ here fader', bi al
 maner resouñ'; and þo y shulde haue axede of here no more; and
 20 þo þat me opere-wise bihiʒten prouʒ here faire²¹ speche, now haue
 me desceyuede!"

¶ In þis maner' Leir' longe tyme him bigan²² to make his mone;
 and at þe last he shoope him to þe see, and passede ouer into
 24 France, and axede and aspiede wher the Quene myʒt be founde;
 and men tolde wher þat she was. ²³¶ And when he come to²⁴ þe
 citee þat she was in, priueliche²⁵ he sent his Squyer'²⁶ vnto þe quene,
 to tel her' þat heir' fader' was comen²⁷ to²⁸ her' for grete nede. ¶ And
 28 when þe squyer' come to²⁸ þe quene, he tolde her' euery dele of heir'
 sustres fram þe bigynnyng vnto þe ende. ¶ Cordeil þe Quene
 anone nome golde and siluer, grete plente, and toke it to²⁸ þe squyer',
 iñ conseile þat he shulde go and bere it vnto here fader', and þat he
 32 shulde go into a certeyn Citee, and him arreyen, baþen and wessen,

1 om. O. 2 om. DO. 3-3 to me now DO.
 4-4 am y D. am I O. 5 pat O. 6 done D.
 7 whan þat O. 8-8 om. D. 9 ʒongest D.
 10 as mich D. as mych O. 11-11 as miche D. so mych O.
 12-12 bene bilouede D. be belouyd O. 13 go DO.
 14 om. D. 15 destroyed D. 16 miche D. mych O.
 17 y O. 18 sechen O. 19 withouten D.
 20 ought D. owt O. 21 fals O. 22 gan D. 23 leaf 5.
 24 into D. 25 priuely D. pryuyly O. 26 Squyer DO. Squyers R.
 27 come O. 28 vnto D.

and þan come ¹azeyne² to¹ her', and bryng^t with him an honest company of knyghtes, xl. at þe leste, with here meny; and þenne he shulde³ sende to⁴ here lorde þe kyng^t, and sayen þat he ⁵was comen⁵ forto speke with his douzter', and him to⁶ seene. ¶ And when þe ⁴kyng and þe quene ⁷herde þat,⁷ wip michel⁸ honour ⁹þai comen,⁹ and him resceyuede.¹⁰ þe kyng of Fraunce¹¹ lete sende þo¹² þrouz al his reaume, and commandede þat alle men ¹³to him shulde¹³ bene¹⁴ entendaunt', to Leire, þe Quenes fader, in al¹⁵ maner þing^t as it were ⁸to him-self^t. ¶ when Leir hade duelledede þere a monþe and more, he tolde to¹⁶ þe kyng and to þe Quene his doughter', how his ij¹⁷ eldeste douztres hade him seruede. ¶ Agampe anone lete ordeyne a grete hoste of Fraunce, and sent it into Britaigne with Leir', þe ¹²Quenes fader', forto conquere his lande azeyne, and his kyngdome; and Cordeil also come with her¹⁸ fader into Britaigne, forto haue þe reaume after' her' fadres deth. And anon þai went to shippe, and passede þe see, and come into Britaigne, and fauzt¹⁹ wip þe felons, ¹⁶and ham scomfitede²⁰ & quelledede. And Leir' þo hade his lande azeyne, and after' leuede iij zere, and helde²¹ his reaume in pees, and afterwarde deide; & Cordeil his doughter him lete entere wip michel²² honour at Leycestre. 20

²³**How Morgan and Conenedag^t²⁴ þat were Neveus to Cordeil, werrede oppon here, and put here into prison. C. xiiij.**

When þat Kyng Leir' was dede, Cordeil his zongest douztre helde and hade þe lande v zere; and in þe mene tyme ²⁴deide here Lorde Agamp, þat was Kyng of Fraunce; and after his deth she lefte²⁵ widue. ¶ And þo come Morgan and Conenedag^t, þat were Cordeiles sustres sones, and to here hade enuy, for-asmiche þat²⁶ her' aunt' shulde haue þe lande; so þat bituene ham þai ²⁸ordeynede a grete power', and vppoñ here werrede gretlich; and

¹⁻¹ vnto D. ² After azeyne MS. has with he *underlined for erasure.*

³ shal D. ⁴ vn-to O. ⁵⁻⁵ wer' come O. ⁶ & O.

⁷⁻⁷ harde tel þat he come D. herd þat he come O.

⁸ mych O. ⁹⁻⁹ om. DO.

¹⁰ resceyuede wip michel honour' D. receyued with mych honour O.

¹¹ ffrance þo D. fraunce þo O. ¹² om. DO.

¹³⁻¹³ shulde to hym O. ¹⁴ be D. ¹⁵ MS. al al.

¹⁶ om. O. ¹⁷ tweyne O. ¹⁸ her O. him R.

¹⁹ fouzten D. foughtyn O. ²⁰ descomfitede D.

²¹ hade D. ²² myche O. ²³ leaf 5, back.

²⁴ Conedag throughout DO. ²⁵ lyued' O. ²⁶ as DO.

neuer¹ þai rest¹ til þat þai hade here taken,² and put her³ vnto deth.³ ¶ And þo Morgan and Conenedag⁴ seisede al þe lande, and departede⁴ bituene ham, and þai helde it xij zere. ¶ And ⁵when the⁵ xij zere were gone,⁶ þere bigon bituene ham a grete debate, so þat þai werrede strongly in-fere,⁷ and eueryche⁸ of ham dede oþere miche disese, ffor Morgan wolde haue hade alle þe lande fram⁹ bizende Humber, þat Conedag⁴ helde; but he come azeynes him ⁸with a strong¹ power, so þat Morgan derst nouzt abide, but fley awaye into Walys; and Conenedag pursuede him, and toke him, and quelde him. ¶ þo come Conenedag azeyne, and seisede al þe lande into his hande, and helde hit, and regnede after, xxxij¹⁰ 12 zere, and þo deide, and lij at New Troye.

¹¹Of Rynallo,¹¹ þat was Conedagus sone: ¹²how he¹² regnede after¹ his fader; and in his tyme it raynede bloode iij daies, in ¹³tokenyng of gret¹³ deth. ¶ Capitulo ¶ Quinto-
16 desimo.

ANd after þis Conenedag,¹⁴ regnede Rynallo¹⁵ his sone, an¹⁶ Wise knyzt, and an¹⁷ hardy and¹⁸ curteise, þat wel and nobly gouernede þe lande, and wonder¹ wel made him bi¹⁹louede of al 20 maner¹ folc. and in his tyme it raynede bloode þat lastede²⁰ iij dayes, as God¹ wolde; and sone after¹ þere come a²¹ gret deth of peple, for hostes with-out noumbre of peple fouzten til þat þai were dede, Wherof no man myzt ham lette til þat almiȝty God¹ þerof 24 tok mercy and pitee; and tho gan it cesse. and þis Raynolde regnede xxij zere, & deide, & ¶ lij at ȝork.

How Gorbodian regnede in pees, þat was Rynallo²² sone; and after, he²³ deide, and lij at ȝork¹ C. xvj^o.

28 **A**fter þis Ryuallo,²⁴ regnede Gorbodyan²⁵ his sone xv zere, and deide and lith at ȝork¹.

¹⁻¹ rest neuer D. þey restyd O.

² take D.

³⁻³ into prisouñ deth D. to deth O. ⁴ partede it D.

⁵⁻⁵ when þo D. þo O. ⁶ ygone D. ⁷ y-fere O. ⁸ eche O.

⁹ fro D. ¹⁰ xxx D. ¹¹⁻¹¹ How Raynolde D. How regnold O.

¹²⁻¹² om. DO. ¹³⁻¹³ tokene of O.

¹⁴ Raynolde *in error for* Conedag D. ¹⁵ Reynolde D. Regnold¹ O.

¹⁶ a DO. ¹⁷ a D. ¹⁸ and a D.

¹⁹ leaf 6.

²⁰ last O. ²¹ om. O. ²² Raynaldes D. reynoldes O. ²³ om. O.

²⁴ Raynolde D. Regnold¹ O. ²⁵ Gordobodian D.

How Gorbodian¹ hade ij sones, & how² þat on slough þat oþere, forto haue þe heritage; & how Ydoyne her' moder quellede þat oþere, wherfore þe lande was destroyede. ¶ Capitulo ¶ xvij^{mo}.

4

When þis Gorbodian¹ was dede, ³his ij sones³ þat he hade, bicome⁴ stoute men⁵ and proude, & euer' werrede to-geder' for þe lande: þat one, men⁶ called Ferrez,⁷ and þat oþere Porrex; and þis Ferrez wolde haue hade al the lande, but þat oþere wolde nouzt⁸ suffren⁸ him. Ferrez hade a felounes her't, and þouzt þrouz tresoun⁵ slee his broþere; but priuely⁹ he went into Fraunce, and þere abode with þe ¹⁰kyng Syward¹⁰ til oppoñ a tyme þat he come azeyne, and fauzt wiþ his broþer Ferrez¹¹; but ful euel it hapede þo, for he was ¹²slayn ferst. ¶ When Ydoyne, here¹² moder, wist þat Porrex was dede, she made grete sorwe, for enchesouñ þat she louede him more þan ¹³þat oþere,¹³ and þouzt him forto¹⁴ quelle. priuely¹⁵ she come to here sone oppon a nyzt wiþ ij knyfes, and þerwiþ cotte his þrote, ¹⁶and þe body also into smale pecis. Who herde euer² soche a cursede moder', þat quellede with here ¹⁶owen hondes here owen sone! and Longe tyme after' Laste þe reprofe¹⁷ & shame to þe moder' þat, for enchesouñ of þat o sone, mordrede þat oþere, and so loste ham ²⁰bothe.

How iij kynges curteisely¹⁸ helde al Britaigne; and whiche beth¹⁹ here names. ¶ Capitulo ¶ Octodesimo.

When þise ij breþerne were so dede, þai nade Leste bihynde ²⁴ham noo²⁰ sone ne daughter', ne none oþere of þe kynrede þat might haue þe heritage. &²¹ for-asmiche as þe strongest men dryuen and descomfitede²² þe feblest', and token²³ al here landes, so þat in euery contre þai hade grete werre and stryfe. ¶ But amonge²⁴ ²⁸alle oþere þinges, þere were amonges ham in þe contre þat ouercome²⁵ alle þe²⁶ oþere; and þrouz heir' strengþ and²⁷ myzt þai nomen and token²⁸ al þe landes; and eueryche²⁹ of ham tok a certeyne contre; and in his contre lete calle him kyng'. ¶ And on of ham, men³⁰ ³²

¹ Gordobodian D. ² om. O.

³⁻³ Written twice in MS. and struck out the second time.

⁴ bycomen so O. ⁵ om. D. ⁶ me D. ⁷ Ferrez DO.

⁸ suffre DO. ⁹ priueliche D. ¹⁰⁻¹⁰ kynges Styward^t O.

¹¹ Porrez O. ¹² his D. ¹³⁻¹³ þe toþer O. ¹⁴ for O.

¹⁵ priuely and priuely D. pryuyly And priuyly O. ¹⁶ leaf 6, back.

¹⁷ repreft^t O. ¹⁸ curteisliche D. ¹⁹ ben O. ²⁰ neyþere D. nother O.

²¹ and for and D. ²² Scomfitede D. scomfited^t O. ²³ toke D.

²⁴ amonges D. ²⁵ ouercomen O. ²⁶ þo D. ²⁷ and here D. her O.

²⁸ tok D. ²⁹ eche O. ³⁰ me DO.

called Stater¹; and he was Kyng¹ of Scotland; and þat opere me
 callede Dunwal,² and he was Kyng¹ of Loegers, and of alle þe
 landes³ þat was Lotrynes, ⁴Brutes sone.⁴ ¶ þe þridde, men⁵ callede
 4 Rudak¹, and he was Kyng of Walys; and þe iii^j^{te} me callede Cloten,
 and he was Kyng¹ of Cornewaile. ¶ But þis Cloten shulde haue
 hade al þe lande, be⁶ resouñ for þere was no man þat wist none so
 ryzthful heire⁷ as he was; but þo⁸ þat were strongest sette litel by
 8 ham þat were of lasse estate, and þerfor þis Cloten hade no more
 lande amonges ham þan onliche⁹ ¶ Cornewaile.

**Of Kyng Donewall,¹⁰ þat was Clotene; sone, and how he hade
 wonne þe lande. ¶ Capitulo xix^o.**

12 **T**His Cloten hade a sone þat me clepede¹¹ Donewal, þat, after¹ þe
 deth of his fader¹, bicom an hardy man, and a faire and a
 curteise, so þat he passede alle þe kynges of Britaigne of fairenesse
 and of worþinesse. ¶ And¹² as he was knyght, he ¹³Wiste wel¹⁴
 16 when his fader¹ leuede¹⁵ he was moste ryghtful heire of al⁷ þe lande,
 and shulde haue hade it by resouñ; but opere kynges þat were of
 more strengþ þan he, binome him¹⁶ his lande. ¶ And afterwarde þis
 Donebande ordeynede him powere, and ferst conquerede al þe lande
 20 of Loegers; and after¹⁷ he wolde haue conquerede al⁷ Scotland
 and Walys; and Stater¹⁸ wiþ his men come, and 3af him¹⁹ bataile;
 and Rudak come a3eyne wiþ his Walshemen forto helpe him; But
 so it bifel þat Rudak¹ was slayn,²⁰ and Skater¹ also, in pleyn bataile;
 24 and so Donewal hade þe victorie, and conquerede al þe lande, and²¹
 wel mayntenede it in pees and²² quyete, þat neuer¹ bifore it was so
 wel mayntenede.

**How Donewal was þe ferst kyng þat euere Werede crone of
 28 golde in Britaigne. ¶ Capitulo ¶ Vicesimo.**

THis²³ Donewal lete ²⁴make him²⁴ a crone of golde, and werede
 þe croune oppon his heuede, as neuer¹ kyng dede bifore; and
 he ordeynede a statute þat, ²⁵hade a man done²⁵ neuer so miche

¹ Scater D. Skater O. ² Dawallier DO. ³ lande D. land O.

⁴⁻⁴ that was Brute; sones D. þat was Brutes sones O.

⁵ me DO. ⁶ by DO. ⁷ om. D. ⁸ þai D. þei O. ⁹ only O.

¹⁰ Donebande throughout DO. ¹¹ callede D. called¹ O.

¹² And anon DO. ¹³ leaf 7. ¹⁴ wel þat O. ¹⁵ leuede þat D.

¹⁶ om. O. ¹⁷ aftyrward O. ¹⁸ Skater DO.

¹⁹ ham D. ²⁰ quelled D. queld¹ O. ²¹ and þo D. ²² & in D.

²³ In the margin is written by an ancient hand: Donwall we . . . y^e first
 croune . . . ordeyned y^e temp[le] a savgard for m . . . The edge of the page has
 been cut away. ²⁴⁻²⁴ hym done make O. ²⁵⁻²⁵ a man do O.

harme, and he might come into þe temple, þere¹ shulde no man him misdo, but gone² þerin sauf and in pees, and aftre gone² into what contre þat he wolde, withouten³ eny harme; and if eny man sette hande oppoñ⁴ him, he þan shulde lese his lif. ¶ And þis Donewal⁴ made þe toune of Malmesbury, and þe toune of þe Vise; & when he hade regnede wel and nobly⁵ .xl. ȝere, he deide, & liþ at newe Troye.

How Brenne and Belyn departede bituene ham þe lande, after⁸ þe deth of Donewal, hir⁸ fader⁸; & of þe werre. Capitulo xxj^o.

ANd after⁸ þat þis Donewal was [dede],⁶ his sones þat he hade, departede þe lande bituene ham as her⁸ fader hade ordeynede; 12 so þat Belyn, his eldest sone, hade al the lande⁷ a þis halfe Humber, and his broþer⁸ Brenne hade al⁹ þe lande fram Humber⁸ vnto¹⁰ Scotland; but for-asmich as¹¹ Belyn hade þe better⁸ parte, Brenne þerfor wax wroþ, and wolde haue hade more of þe lande; and 16 Belyn his broþer wolde graunt him nomore; Wherfor contak and werre aroos bituene¹² ham ij. But Brenne þe ȝonger broþer hade no myȝte ne strengþ aȝeynȝ Belyn; and þerfor Brenne, þrouȝ conseil of his folc, went fram¹³ þens into Norway, to þe Kyng⁸ Elsinges, and 20 prayede him of helpe and of socoure forto conquere al þe lande¹⁴ of Britayn¹⁴ vppon Belyn his broþer, oppoñ þat couenaunt, þat he wolde haue his douȝter to wyf; and þe Kyng⁸ Elsinges¹⁵ him grauntede. ¶ Belyn, anone as his broþer was gone to¹⁶ Norway, he 24 seisede into his hande al þe lande of Northumberland, and toke al þe castelles,¹⁷ and lete ham arraie, and also kepe þe costes of þe see, þat Brenne shulde nouȝt arryue in no side but þat he were take. ¶ The Kyng Elsinges lete assemble a grete hoste, and delyuerede 28 his doughter⁸ to Brenne, and alle þe peple þat he hade ordeynede. And þis damisel, Samye, hade longe tyme louede a kyng⁸ þat me callede Gutlagh¹⁸; and to him she tolde al here counsil, how þat Brenne shulde here haue, and here lede wiþ him for euermore, and 32 so he¹⁹ shulde her lese, but if þat she myȝt forsake Breune. ¶ And

¹ om. DO.² go D.³ with-oute O.⁴ on D.⁵ worthelye D. worthyly O.⁶ dede DO. om. R.⁷ lande of brytayn D. land of Britaigne O.⁸ om. O.⁹ leaf 7, back.¹⁰ into D.¹¹ þat O.¹² bituenes D.¹³ fro DO.¹⁴⁻¹⁴ om. DO.¹⁵ Elsyng⁸ O.¹⁶ vnto D.¹⁷ casteff O.¹⁸ Gutlaghen D.¹⁹ corrected from ȝe in MS.

when Gutlagh herde þise tydynges,¹ he lay forto asprie Brenne, wiþ
 also² meny shippes as he myzt haue, so þat þo³ ij fletes⁴ metten
 to-gederes,⁴ and longe tyme foughten, so þat Brenne and his shippes
 4 turnede aþeyne, and were descomfitede; and Kyng Gutlagh toke
 Samye, and put here into⁵ shippe, and Brenne shamefully fleye⁶
 þens as a man descomfitede. ¶ And Gutlagh wolde haue went into
 his⁷ countree; but þere come oppoñ⁸ him a stronge tempest, þat .v.
 8 dayes Laste, so þat þrouz þat tempest¹ he was dryuen into Britaigne
 with iij shippes, and wiþ no mo. and þo þat kepte⁹ þe costes of
 þe see token Gutlagh and Samye, and alle his folc, and ham pre-
 sentede vnto¹⁰ Belyn, and he³ put ham into¹¹ prousoñ.

12 How Belyn¹² delyuerede¹³ out of þis lande Kyng Gutlagh of
 Dennemarc, and Samye. ¶ Capitulo ¶ Vicesimo Secundo.

H It¹⁴ was nouzt longe after, þat Brenne ne come aþeyne with a
 15 stronge meny,¹⁵ and sent to his broþer Belyn, þat he shulde
 16 zelde aþeyne his lande to his wif and to his folc, & his castelles¹⁶
 also, or elles he wolde destroye his lande. Belyn drade no þing
 his¹⁷ manace, and wolde no þing done¹⁸ after þat he saide. Where-
 fore Brenne come with his folc, and fauzt with him¹⁹; and Brenne
 20 was descomfitede, and his folc slayne, and him-self fleede wiþ xij
 men into Fraunce. ¶ And þis Belyn, þat was Brennes broþere,
 went²⁰ þen vnto²⁰ 3ork, and toke²¹ counseil what he myzt done,²²
 wiþ Kyng Gutlagh; for Kyng Gutlagh proferede²³ to bicomē²³ his
 24 man, and to holde his lande of him, zeldyng by zere²⁴ M^t ti of siluer²⁴
 for euer²-more; and for sikernesse of þis couenaunt¹ to bene holde,
 Gutlaghe shulde bryng him gode hostages, and to him shulde done
 homage, and al his folc, and zitte he³ shulde suere oppon the book¹
 28 þat þise couenauntes shulde²⁵ nouzt bene broken²⁵ ne falsede.
 ¶ Belyn þo, by counseil of his folc, grantede him his axing¹; and so
 Gutlagh bicomē his man; and Belyn vnderfonge of him his homage
 by othe, and by wrytyng¹ þe same couenauntz. ¶ And oppoñ

¹ tidyng¹ D. tydyng O. ² as DO. ³ om. O.

⁴⁻⁴ mettes to-geder D. mettyn to-gidere O. ⁵ in-to his O. ⁶ fly O.

⁷ his owen D. his owne O. ⁸ leaf 8. ⁹ kepten O. ¹⁰ to O.

¹¹ om. D. in O. ¹² Brenne O. ¹³ drof DO. ¹⁴ Syt sic O.

¹⁵⁻¹⁵ grete nauye D. gret meyne O. ¹⁶ casteff DO.

¹⁷ his nalyce ne his O. ¹⁸ do D. ¹⁹ Belyn D. hym Belyn O.

²⁰⁻²⁰ þo to DO. ²¹ nome DO. ²² do O.

²³⁻²³ Gutlagh forto ben D. ²⁴⁻²⁴ a M^t pound¹ O.

²⁵⁻²⁵ neuer be broke D. neuere be brokyn O.

¹pis Couenant¹ King¹ Gutlagh tok² Samye and his folc, and went pennes, and turnede azeyn³ to Dennemarc. ¶ Euermore after³ were the couenautes Halden, and þe truage paiede, til þe tyme þat Haelok was Kyng of Denmarc, and also of þis lande, þrouz his wif⁴ 4 Gildeburghe, þat he hade spousesede, for she was þe ryzt heire of þis lande. ¶ þis Belyn duelledede þo in pees, and worshepliche⁴ him helde amonges⁵ his barons; and he made iiij real waies, one fram⁶ þe Est into⁷ West, and þat was callede Watlyngstrete; and anoþere⁸ fram⁶ þe North into þe South, þat was callede Ikenyle strete; and ij oþere waies he made in bossinge þrouz-oute the lande: þat one is callede Fosse, and þat oþere Fossedik; and he mayntenede wel þe gode Lawes þat Doneban⁹ his fader⁹ hade made and ordeynede in 12 his tyme, as bifore is saide.

How accorde was made bituene Brenne and Belyn, through Cornewenne, hire moder'. ¶ Capitulo ¶ Vicesimo Tercio.

BRenne, that was Belynes⁸ broþer, hade longe tyme duelledede in 16 Fraunce, and þere hade conquerede a grete lordeship þrouz mariage, for he was Duc of Burgoyne þrouz þe douzter of þe⁹ due Fewyn þat he hade spousesede, þat was right heire of þe lande. and þis Brenne ordeynede a grete power⁹ of his folc and also of Fraunce, 20 and come into þis lande forto feight with Belyn his broþer. and Belyn come azeynes him with a stronge powere of Britons, and þo wolde haue zeue¹⁰ him bataile; but heir⁹ moder⁹ Cornewenne, þat tho Leuede,¹¹ 12 herde þat¹² þe o¹³ broþer wolde¹⁴ haue destroyede¹⁴ þat 24 oþere, and went bituene here sones, and¹⁵ ham made¹⁵ accordede wijþ miche peyne; so þat at þe laste, þo ij breþerne, with miche¹⁶ blisse, went to-geder into newe¹⁷ Troye, þat now is callede Londoñ, and þere þai duelledede al a zere; and after⁹, þai toke¹⁸ 19 Heire conseile 28 forto go conquere al Fraunce; and so thai deden,²⁰ & brent tounes, and destroyede al²¹ þe lande boþe in lengþ and in Brede. and þe Kyng of Fraunce 3af ham bataile wijþ his powere; but he was ouercomen,²² and 3af truage vnto²³ Belyn and to his broþer. ¶ And 32

¹⁻¹ pis couenautes D. these couenautes O. ² nome DO.

³ leaf 8, back. ⁴ worshipfullich D. worschipfully O.

⁵ amonge D. Among O. ⁶ fro O. ⁷ into þe DO.

⁸ Belyn his O. ⁹ om O. ¹⁰ zeuen O.

¹¹ leuede hade D. lyved^t had O. ¹²⁻¹² MS. herde þat herde þat.

¹³ to O. ¹⁴⁻¹⁴ destroye D. dystroye O. ¹⁵⁻¹⁵ made hem O.

¹⁶ michel D. ¹⁷ grete D. gret O. ¹⁸ nome DO. ¹⁹ leaf 9.

²⁰ dede O. ²¹ om. DO. ²² ouercome DO. ²³ to DO.

after þat, þai¹ went for þe¹ to Rome, and conquerede Rome, and al
Lumbardy and Germayne, and toke homages and feautees of ²þe
folc of þe Erles,² barons, and³ alle oþere; and after, þai comen⁴
4 into þis lande of Britaigne, and duellede with here Britounes in
ioye and reste. and þo made Brenne þe toune of Bristow; and siþ
he went ouer þe⁵ see into his owen lordeshippe, and þere duellede
al his lif. and Belyn duellede atte Newe Troye; and þere he made
8 a faire gate þat is clepede⁶ Billyngesgate, after his owen name. and
when þis Belyn hade regnede noble⁷ xj ȝere,⁸ he deide, & ¶ liþ at
newe Troye.

How Kyng Corinbatrus quellede þe Kyng of Dennemarc, for
12 enchesouñ þat he wolde nouȝt paye him his truage.
¶ *Capitulo xxiiij^{to}.*

ANd after þis Belyn, regnede his sone Corinbatrus, a gode man
and ⁹a worþi. and⁹ þe Kyng of Denmare wolde nouȝt paye
16 him his truage, þat is to seyn, ¹⁰M¹ ti,¹⁰ as he ¹¹hade sworne¹¹ by
oth forto paye hit, and also be writyng ¹²of¹² recorde,¹² to Belyn his
fader. wherfore he was euel¹³ paiede and wroþ, and assemblede a
grete hoste of Britons, and went into Dennemarc and slough þe
20 Kyng Gitclagh, and brouȝt þe lande in subieccioun al new, and toke
of folc feautes and homages, and after went aȝeyne into his lande.
¶ And as he come forthe bi Orkeneye, he fonde xxx shippes ful of
men and of wymmen, bisides þe coste¹⁴ of þe see, and þe kyng
24 axede what þai were.¹⁵ an Erl, that was maistre of ham¹⁶ alle,
curteisely ansuerede vnto the kyng, and saide þat þai were exilede
oute of Spaygne,¹⁷ and so þai hade trauailede half¹⁸ ȝere and more
in þe see, to weten¹⁹ if þai myȝt fynde eny kyng, or²⁰ eny lorde,²¹
28 þat of ham wolde haue pitee or mercy, to ȝeue ham eny lande in
eny contre wherin þai might duelle and haue reste, and bicomme his
liege men, and to him wolde done²² homage and feautes²³ whiles
þat he leuede, and to his heires after him, and of him and of his
32 heires holde²⁴ þat londe ²⁵for euermore.²⁵ ¶ And when þe kyng þis

1-1 wenten boþe D.

2-2 Erles and D. erls O.

3 and of DO.

4 come O.

5 per O.

6 callede D.

called O.

7 nobli D. nobly O.

8 ȝer and iiij monupes D. ȝeer & iiij monethes O.

9-9 worthi D.

10-10 a M¹ pound O.

11-11 swore O.

12-12 recordede D.

recorded O.

13 ylle O.

14 costes O.

15 were And O.

16 them O.

17 leaf 9, back.

18 half a O.

19 wete O.

20 in O.

21 lande O.

22 do D.

23 feaute DO.

24 holden DO.

25-25 om. DO.

herde, he hade pite of ham, and 3af ham an Ile al wilderness, þere þat noman was duellyng, saf oneliche¹ wilde bestes. and þe Erl þanked miche þe kyng, and bicom his man, and dede him feaute and homage, and tok² alle his fole, and went into þe same⁴ Ile. and þe Erl³ me callede Irlanyal; and þerfore⁴ he lete calle þe lande Irlande, after his owen name. ¶ The kyng þo, Corinbatrus, come aʒeyne into þis Lande, and regnede xxv ʒere; & after, he deide, and lip at newe ¶ Troye. 8

How þe Kyng¹ Guentolen regnede in godenesse,⁵ & wel gouernede þe lande al his lifyme.⁶ ¶ Capitulo vicesimo Quinto.

ANd when Corinbatrus was dede, regnede Guentolen his sone, a man of goode condicions, and wel bilouede; and he¹² gouernede þe lande wel and wiseliche,⁷ and he regnede xxvj ʒere, and after, deide, and lith at newe Troye.

How Kyng Seisel regnede, and wel gouernede þe lande after Guentolen. ¶ Capitulo xxvj^{to}. 16

ANd after þis⁴ Guentolen, regnede his sone Seisel wel and worþely, and wel gouernede þe lande as his fader had done biforne him; and he regnede xv ʒere, and after,⁸ deide, and lith at newe Troye. 20

How Kymore regnede after Seisel his fader; and he bigate Howan, þat⁹ regnede after him.⁸ ¶ Capitulo ¶ Vicesimo ¶ Septimo.

ANd after þis⁸ Seisel, regnede his sone Kymor wel and nobly¹⁰ 24 xix ʒere in pees; and Howan his sone x ʒere, and deide, and lip at Herboldouñ.

How Kyng¹ Morwith deide þrouʒ meschaunce, þrouʒ¹¹ a beste for his wickednesse. ¶ Capitulo ¶ Vicesimo ¶ Octauo. 28

ANd⁸ after þis Howan, regnede Morwith; and he⁴ bicom wicked, and so sterne, til at þe laste, grete vengeance come to him; for as he went on¹² a tyme bi þe seeside,¹³ he mette a grete

¹ only O. ² nome DO. ³ kyng O. ⁴ om. O. ⁵ pees O.
⁶ lyf O. ⁷ wysely O. ⁸ om. DO. ⁹ leaf 10.
¹⁰ nobliche D. noblich O. ¹¹ of O. ¹² vppon D. vpon O.
¹³ syde O.

beste, þat was blac, and horrible and hidouse; and he wende þat it hade bene a whale of þe see, and bent an Arweblast,¹ and wolde haue slayne þat² best wip a quareH; but he miȝt nouȝt smyte hit. 4 and when he hade shotte alle his quarelles,³ þe beste anone come to him in grete haste, and him deuourede alif; and so he deide for his wickednesse, prouȝ vengeance of Gode, after þat he hade regnede ix ȝere.

8 Of Grandobodian, þat was Morwithes sone, þat made the toune of Cambruge. ¶ Capitulo ¶ Vicesimo Nono.

A fter þis Morwith was dede, þe Britouns cronede Grandobodian his sone; ⁴and þis Grandobodian⁴ longe tyme regnede in 12 godenesse, and made temples and tounes; and þis Grandobodian made þe toune of Cambrugge and þe toune of Grantham, and was wel bilouede of ryche and of pore, ⁵for he⁵ honourede þe riche and halpe þe poer'. ¶ This Grandobodian hade iiij sones, Artogaile, 16 Hesider', Higamus, and Petiter', and when he hade regnede xj ȝere, he deide, & liþ at newe Troye.

Of Artogaile, þat was Grandobodianus sone: how he was made kyng⁶, & siþ put adoune for his⁶ wickednesse. ¶ Capitulo 20 Tricesimo.

A fter Grandobodian, regnede his sone Artogaile v ȝere; and he bicom so wickede and so sterne, þat þe Britons wolde nouȝt suffre him to bene⁸ kyng⁶, but put him adoune, and made 24 Hesider' his broþer kyng⁶; and he bicom so gode and mercyable þat men him callede 'kyng of pitee.' and when he hade regnede v ȝere, he hade so[miche]⁹ pitee of his broþer Artogaile, þat was kyng bifore; and anone he forsoke his dignite, and toke his broþer þe 28 crone aȝeyne, and made him kyng⁶ aȝeynes¹⁰ al þe ¹¹barons wille of Britaigne.¹¹ and afterwarde, þis Artogaile bicom so gode of condiciouns þat he was wel bilouede of al þe lande; for he bicom so debonoure and free, and dede right and resouñ to alle maner' 32 man; ¹²and he regnede vj ȝere, and deide, and lith at Grauntham.

¹ arweblaster D. ² þ^o O.

³ corrected from querelles in MS. quareH O.

⁴⁻⁴ om. D. & þis Grandobodyan his sone O.

⁵⁻⁵ for he DO. for R. ⁶ om. O. ⁷ leaf 10, back.

⁸ be DO.

⁹ gret O. ¹⁰ aȝen O.

¹¹⁻¹¹ britons wille D. brytoñs wyH O. ¹² of men DO

How Hesider was made kyng^r after^r þe deth of Artogaile ¹his
¶ broþer.¹ Capitulo xxxj^o.

After þe deth of Artogaile, the Britounes crounede an-opere
tyme Hesider^r; but his ij breþern Higamus and Petiter^r 4
haden of him grete despite, and eke scorne, and ordeynede ham
helpe forto werre oppoñ þe kyng her^r broþer. and so þai token him,
and put² him into prisoun, the secunde zere of his regne; and þai
departede al Britaign bituene ham ij. but Higamus leuede but vij 8
zere; and þo hadde Petitur^r al þe lande; and he made þe toune of
Pikeryng^r, and after deide, þe secunde zere of his regne, & liþ at
Pikeryng^r,

How þe Britouns token³ Hesider^r oute of Prisoune, and made 12
him kyng þe þridde tyme. ¶ Capitulo ¶ ⁴Tricesimo
Secundo.⁴

ANd when þis Petitur was dede, the Britons toke⁵ anone right^r
Hesider, and made him kyng þe þridde tyme, and þo 16
⁶regnede he⁶ in pees xiiij zere, & after deide, and liþ at Karleil.

How xxxiiij kynges regnede in pees, eche after^r opere, after ⁷þe
deth of Hesider^r. ¶ Capitulo ¶ Tricesimo Tercio.

After⁸ þe deth of Hesider^r, regnede xxxiiij Kynges, eche after^r 20
opere, in pees; and wiþout eny longe tariyng^r y shal ⁹tel
ham alle,⁹ and how longe euery¹⁰ of ham regnede, as þe story
telleþ. ¶ The ferste kyng^r of þo xxxiiij me elepede¹¹ Gorbodia,
and he regnede xij zere. ¶ and after^r him regnede Morgan ij 24
zere; ¶ and after^r him regnede Eigamus¹² vj zere; ¶ and after^r
him regnede Idwalan viij zere; ¶ and after^r him regnede Rohugo
xj zere; ¶ and after^r him regnede Voghen xiiij zere; ¶ and
¹³after him regnede¹³ Katil xv zere; ¶ and after^r him regnede¹⁴ 28
Porrex ij zere; ¶ and after^r him regnede Cheryn xvij zere;
[; & after him regned Coil xij zer^r]¹⁵ ¶ and after^r him regnede
Sulgenis xiiij zere; ¶ and after him regnede Estdad xx^{ti} zere;

¹⁻¹ om. D. ² om. D. puttyn O. ³ nomen DO. ⁴⁻⁴ xxxiiij D.

⁵ nome DO. ⁶⁻⁶ regned he DO. regnede R. ⁷ leaf 11.

⁸ And aftir O. ⁹⁻⁹ hem aft telle O. ¹⁰ eueryche D. eche O.

¹¹ callede D. Called O.

¹² *It is impossible to distinguish n and u in these MSS. This might be Eigainus, Eiganius, Eigamus, etc. D and O have Eighnans or Eighnaus.*

¹³⁻¹³ after him regnede D. after him regned O. after R.

¹⁴ om. O. ¹⁵ supplied from D.

¶ And after him regnede Andragie xvij zere; ¶ And after him regnede Vran¹ v zere; ¶ and after him regnede Elind ij zere; ¶ and after him regnede Eldagan xv zere; ¶ and after him regnede
 4 Claten xij zere; ¶ & after him regnede Quirgund vij zere; ¶ and after him regnede Morian vj zere; and after him regnede Bledaghe iij zere; ¶ and after him regnede Caph j zere; ¶ and after him regned Gen ij zere; ¶ and after him regnede Seisel and Kyng
 8 Bled xxj zere; ¶ and Kyng Grabreth² xj zere; ¶ and Archinal xiiij zere; ³and Erol xxx zere; ¶ And Rodengu ⁴xxxij zere; and⁴ Herter v zere,³ ¶ and Hampir vj zere, And Carpoir vij zere, ¶ and Digneile iij zere, ¶ and Samuel xxiiij zere, ¶ and Rede
 12 ij zere, ¶ and Ely vij mouneps; and þis Ely hade iij sones, Lud, Cassabilam, and Enymyõ.

How Lud was made kyng after þe deþ of Ely his fader.

¶ Capitulo ¶ Tricesimo ¶ Quarto.

16 ⁵ A fter þe deþ of Ely, regnede Lud his sone, and gouernede wel þe lande, and miche honourrede gode folc, and temprede and amendit wickede folc. ¶ This Lud louede more to duelle at Troye þan at⁶ eny oþere place of þe lande; Wherefore þe name of
 20 Troye was lafte,⁸ and þo⁹ was callede þe citee of⁹ Ludstan; but now¹⁰ þat name is chaungede þrouz variance of *lettres*, and now is callede London. ¶ and¹¹ þis kyng made in the citee a faire gate, and callede it Ludgate, after his name; and þe folc of þe citee lete
 24 hight¹² Loundres, and when he hade regnede xj zere, he deide, and liþ at London. and he hade ij zonge sones, Andraghen and Gormace¹³; but þai couþ neiþere speke ne go, for zeugeþ; & þerfore þe Britons crounede a stronge knyzt þat me called ¹⁴Lud, þat was
 28 Cassibalamus¹⁴ broþer, and made him kyng of Britagne.

How þe Britons grantede to Cassibalam, þat was Ludes broþer, þe land: ¹⁵in whas time Iulius¹⁶ come ij tymes forto conquere þe lande.¹⁵ ¶ Capitulo Tricesimo ¶ quinto.

32 A fter þe deþ of Kyng Lud, regnede his broþer Cassibalam, and bicome a goode man, and miche bilouede of his Britons, so þat, for his godenesse and curtesye, þai grantede him þe reame for-

¹ vrian D. Vryan O.

² Trabreth DO.

³⁻³ om. O.

⁴⁻⁴ xxxij zer D. xxxij and R.

⁵ leaf 11, back.

⁶ in O.

⁷ of the new D. of newe O.

⁸ lafte D. left O. laste R.

⁹⁻⁹ þe citee callede D. was þe Citee cald O.

¹⁰ om. DO.

¹¹ om. D.

¹² hit D. yt O.

¹³ Tormace DO.

¹⁴⁻¹⁴ sic in all three MSS.

¹⁵⁻¹⁵ om. O.

¹⁶ Iulius Ceser D.

euermore, to him and to his heires. ¶ And the kyng, of his gode-
 nesse, lete norisshe worþiliche boþe ¹his broþeres sones, þe childerne
 of Lud¹; And after, made þe eldeste sone Erl of Cornwaile, and þat
 oþere Erl of Londoñ. ¶ And while þis kyng Cassibalam regnede, ⁴
 come Iulius Cesar, þat was Emperoure of Rome into þis lande, with
 a power of Romayns, and wolde haue hade þis lande þrouz strengþ;
 but Cassibalam him ouercome in bataile, þrouz helpe ²of þe³
 Britons, and drof him oute of þis Lande; and⁴ went azeine to ⁸
 Rome, and assemblede⁵ grete power anoper tyme, and come azeine
 into þis lande forto zeue bataile to Cassibalam; but he was des-
 comfitede þrouz strengþ of þe Britons, and þrouz⁶ helpe of þe erle of
 Cornwaile, and⁷ þe Erl of londoñ, his broþer, and þrouz helpe of ¹²
 Gudian, Kyng of Scotland, and of⁸ Corbande, Kyng of north Wales,
 and of Bretaile, Kyng of Southwalys. and in þis bataile was slayne
 Nemion, þat was Cassibalamus broþer, wherfore he made miche
 sorwe; and so went Iulius Cesar' oute of þis lande with a fewe of⁹ ¹⁶
 Romayns þat were lefte a-lif; And þo Cassibalam went azeine to
 Londoñ, and made a fest vnto alle his folc þat þo hade ¹⁰him
 holpen¹⁰; and when þe¹¹ fest was done, eche man went into here¹²
 owen contree. 20

Of þe debate þat was bituene Cassibalam and þe Erle of
 Londoñ; ¹³& of þe truage þat was payede¹⁴ to Rome.¹³

¶ Capitulo xxxvj^{to}.¹⁵

ANd after, hit bifelle þus oppoñ a day, þat ¹⁶þe gentil-men¹⁶ of ²⁴
 þe kynges householde and ¹⁷þe gentelmen¹⁷ of þe Erles house-
 holde of Londoñ, after mete went in-fere¹⁸ forto playe; and þrouz
 debate þat arose amonges¹⁹ ham, Enelyn, þat was þe erles broþer²⁰
 of Londoñ, quellede Irenglas þat was þe kynges cosyn; wherfore þe ²⁸
 kyng swore þat Enelyn shulde bene²¹ honget; but þe Erle of
 Londoñ, þat was Enelynes lorde, wolde nouzt suffren²² hit; wher-
 fore þe kyng' was wroth towarde²³ þe Erl, and þouzt him²⁴ destroye.
 and priuely²⁵ þe Erl sent lettres to Iulius Cesar' þat he shulde come ³²

¹⁻¹ sones that wer Lud his broþeres D. Sones þat were lud his broþerys O.

² leaf 12. ³ om. O. ⁴ and he DO. and R. ⁵ Assembled a O.

⁶ þurgh þe O. ⁷ and of D. ⁸ om. DO. ⁹ of his D. om. O.

¹⁰⁻¹⁰ help him D. hym holpe O. ¹¹ þat DO. ¹² his DO.

¹³⁻¹³ om. O. ¹⁴ paye D. ¹⁵ xxxvj^{to} D. ¹⁶⁻¹⁶ a gentelman D.

¹⁷⁻¹⁷ a gentil-man D. gentylmen O. ¹⁸ y-fere D. ¹⁹ among O.

²⁰ cosyn D. Cosyn O. ²¹ be DO. ²² soffre D. ²³ towarde O.

²⁴ hym to O. ²⁵ prinlich D.

into þis lande forto ¹helpe him, and ¹helpe avenge him ²oppon þe Kyng^t; and he wolde helpe him with al his myzte. ¶ And when þe Emperoure herde þis tydynges,³ he was ful glade, and ordeynede ⁴a stronge power^t, and come azeine þe þridde tyme into þis land^t; and þe Erl of Londone halpe him wiþ vij M^t men. and at þe þridde tyme was Cassibalam ouercomen⁴ and descomfitede, and made pees to þe Emperoure for⁵ iij ⁶M^t ti⁶ of siluer^t, zeldynge by zere for ⁸truage for þis lande for euermore. and after⁷ half⁷ zere passede, the Emperoure went to Rome, and þe Erl of Londoñ wiþ him, for he derste nouzt abide in þis lande. and after, Cassibalam regnede xvij zere in pees, and þo⁸ deide, þe xxvij zere of his regne, and lithe atte ¹²3ork^t.

How þe lordes of þe lande, after⁷ þe deth of Cassibalam, for enchesoñ þat he hade none heire, made Andragen kyng^t.
Capitulo ¶ xxxvij^{mo}.

¹⁶ **A**fter þe deth of Cassibalam, for-asmiche as he hade none⁹ heire of his body, þe lordes of þe lande, by commune assent, cronede Androgen, Erl of Cornewaile, and made him kyng^t; and he regnede wel¹⁰ worthely, and was a gode man, and wel gouernede ²⁰þe lande. and when he hade regnede viij zere, he deide, & liþ at Londoñ.

Of Kymbalyn, þat was Andragen^{us} sone, a gode man, ¹¹and wel gouernede þe lande.¹¹ *Capitulo xxxvij.*

¹²Natiuitas Christi¹²

²⁴ **A**fter þe deth of Andragen, regnede Kembelyn his sone, þat was a gode man, and wel gouernede þe lande in miche prosperite and in¹³ pees al his lifes¹⁴ tyme. ¶ And in his tyme was born Ihesus Crist oure saueoure, of þat swete virgine Marie.¹⁵ ¶ þis ²⁸Kyng¹⁶ Kembelyn hade ij sones, Ginder^t and Armoger^t, gode knyzttes and worthi. ¹⁷And when þis Kyng Kembelyn hade regnede xxij zere, he deide, and liþ at Londoñ.

³² Of Kyng Gynder^t, þat was Kembalynes sone, þat wolde nouzt paye þe truage to Rome ¹¹for the lande þat Cassibalam hade grantede¹¹; & how he was slayne of a Romaine.
Capitulo xxxix^o.

¹⁻¹ om. D.

² leaf 12, back.

³ tydynges O.

⁴ ouercom D. ouercome O. ⁵ with D. ⁶⁻⁶ M^t of ti O.

⁷ half a DO. ⁸ þo he O. ⁹ no O. ¹⁰ wel and DO.

¹¹⁻¹¹ om. O. ¹²⁻¹² om. DO. ¹³ om. O. ¹⁴ lif D. lyve O.

¹⁵ Marie y-blessede mot she be Amen D. ¹⁶ om. D. ¹⁷ leaf 13.

And after þe deþ of þis Kembalyn, regnede Ginder^r his sone, a gode man and a worpi; and ¹he was of so hie¹ hert þat he wolde nouzt paye to Rome þat truage þat Kyng Cassibalam hade grantede vnto Iulius Cesar^r; wherfore þe Emperoure þat was þo, þat² 4 me callede³ Claudius Cesar^r,⁴ was sore annoyede, and ordeynede a grete power^r of Romay[n]s, and come into þis lande forto conquere þe truage þrouz strengþ, and haue it of þe kyng^r; but þe kyng Gynder^r, and Armoger^r his broþer, gadrede a grete hoste ifere of 8 Britouns, and 3af bataile to þe Emperour Claudius, and quellede⁵ of Romains grete plente. ¶ The Emperour hade a Stiwarde þat me clepede⁶ Hamon, þat saw þat her^r peple was faste slayne⁷: priuely⁸ he² caste awai his owen armes, and toke⁹ the Armes of a 12 dede Briton, and armede him wiþ his armure, and come into þe bataile to þe kyng^r, and saide in þis maner: “Sire, beth of gode hert, for Godes loue, for þe Romayns þat beþe¹⁰ 3our^r enemys anone shullen¹¹ bene¹² slayn and descomfitede euerychon.”¹³ ¶ and þe 16 kyng 3af no kepe ne rewarde to his speche, for enchesoñ of þe armes þat he hade oppoñ him, and wende it¹⁴ hade bene¹⁵ a Britoune; but þe traitoure¹⁶ euer^r helde him¹⁶ nexte þe kyng^r, and priueliche,¹⁷ vnder^r þe shulders¹⁸ of his armure,¹⁹ he smote þe kyng, 20 Wherfore he was dede anone,²⁰ and fel doune vnto²¹ þe erþe.

When Armoger^r saw his broþer dede,²² he caste away his Armez, and toke²³ to him his broþeres Armes, and come into þe bataile amonge þe Britons, and bade hertly forto²⁴ fyght^r, and faste laide²⁵ 24 adoune þe Romaignes. and for þe armes, þai wende²⁶ it hade bene²⁷ Kyng⁵ Gynder^r, þat arst was slayne, þat þai wist nouzt, and þo gonne þe Britons hertly feizten,²⁸ and quellede þe Romayns; so²⁹ at þe last^r þe Emperour forsoke³⁰ þe felde, and fley as faste as þai³¹ mizt 28 into þe citee of Wynchestre. and þe false traitour Hamonde, þat hade quellede þe kyng^r, faste anone gane forto flee in³² al þe haste þat he mizt^r; and Armoger^r, þe kynges broþer, pursuede him ful fersly³³ wiþ a ferse herte, and drof him vnto³⁴ þe water^r, and þere 32

1—1 so hye of D. 2 om. O. 3 clept O. 4 Cesar & he O.
5 om. D. 6 called DO. 7 y-slayn O. 8 pryueliche D.
9 nome DO. 10 ben O. 11 shul D. schul O.
12 be O. 13 echeon O. 14 he DO. 15 be O.
16—16 helde hym euer O. 17 priuely D. pryuely O. 18 shulder D.
19 Arnes DO. 20 om. DO. 21 to D. 22 leaf 13, back.
23 nome DO. 24 om. D. to O. 25 lay D. ley O.
26 wende that D. 27 be þe O. 28 fyght O. 29 so þat O.
30 took O. 31 he DO. 32 with O. 33 fast D.
34 in-to O.

he¹ toke him, and anone smote of ²boþe heuede,² hendes, and feete, and hewe þe body halto pecis, and þo caste it into þe water³; Wherefore þat water was callede Hamondeshauen; and after,³ þere
4 was made a faire toune þat 3itte [standeth] þat⁴ is callede Southamptõ. ¶ And afterwarde, Armogor⁵ went to Wynchestre forto⁵ seche Claudius Cesar⁶ þe Emperour; and þere Armogor⁶ him toke.

¶ And Claudius þe Emperour, þrouz conseil of his Romayns þat
8 with him were lefte alyf⁷, made pees wip Armogor⁷ in þis maner as 3e shulleþ⁷ hure, þat is to seyne, how⁸ þat Claudius þe emperour shulde 3eue to Armogor⁸, Gennen⁸ his⁹ douzter, forto haue to wif, so þat þis lande fro þat tyme afterwarde shulde be in þe Emperoure³
12 power⁸ of Rome, oppoñ suche couenant⁹, þat¹⁰ none Emperour of Rome shulde take none oþere truage of þis lande, but oneliche feaute; and so þai were accordede. ¶ And oppoñ¹¹ þis couenant,¹¹ Claudius Cesar¹¹ sent to Rome for his douzter Gennen; and when
16 she was comen,¹² ¹³Claudius Cesar¹³ 3af her¹³ to Armogor to Wif; and Armogor¹⁴ spoused here at Londoñ with michel¹⁴ solempnite and merþe; and þo was Armogor cronede, and made Kyng¹ of Britaigne.

20 Of Kyng¹ Armogor, in whas¹⁵ tyme seynt Peter prechede in Antyoche, wip oþere apostlis in diuerses¹⁶ contres. ¹⁷Capitulo xl.¹⁷

THis Kyng Armogor¹ regnede wel, and worthely¹⁸ þe lande
24 gouernede, and Claudis Cesar¹, in remembrance of þis¹⁹ accorde, and for reuerence and honour of¹ his daughter, made in þis lande a fare toune and a faire castel, and lete calle²⁰ þe toune²⁰ after¹ his owen²¹ name 'Claucestre,' þat now is callede
28 Gloucestr¹. and when þis was al done, þe Emperoure toke²² his leue, and²³ went a3eyne to Rome; and Armogor²⁴ was þo²⁴ kyng¹, and gouernede þe lande wel and nobli al his lif tyme. ¶ and this Armager¹ gete a sone on his wif, þat²⁵ was callede²⁵ Westmere. and

¹ thay D. ²⁻² boþe heede D. his hed O. ³ afterward O.

⁴ and D. ⁵ to O. ⁶ om. D. ⁷ shul D. schul O.

⁸ Gelmen or perhaps Gelingen or Gelnien O. ⁹ his fair D. his fayre O.

¹⁰ that neuer afterwarde D. þat neuere aftirward¹ O.

¹¹⁻¹¹ þese couenautes O. ¹² come O. ¹³ leaf 14.

¹⁴ miche D. mych O. ¹⁵ who D. ¹⁶ diuerse D. diuers O.

¹⁷⁻¹⁷ xl^o Capitulo O. ¹⁸ worthely and D. worthyly & O. ¹⁹ his O.

²⁰⁻²⁰ MS. þe lande toune, with lande *underlined for erasure.* yt O.

²¹ om. DO. ²² nome DO. ²³ and þo DO. ²⁴⁻²⁴ þo was DO.

²⁵⁻²⁵ Called was O.

whiles þat þis Armoger^r regnede, seynt Peter¹ prechede in Antioche; and þere he hade² made a noble cherche, in þe whiche he satte ferste in his chier^r, and þere he duellede vij zere.³ after^r, he² went to Rome, and was made Pope, til þat Nero þe Emperour lete him 4 martre. & þo prechede openly al þe Apostlis, in diuerses⁴ landes, þe ryzt fay.⁵ ¶ And when Armoger hade regnede xxiiij zere, he deyde, and lith at Londoñ.

**How Kyng^r Westmer zaf to Berynger^r an Ilande forlete; and 8
þere þis Beringer^r made þe toune of Berwik. Capitulo xlj.**

ANd after^r þis Armoger^r, regnede his sone Westmer^r, a gode man, and a worþi of body, and wel gouernede þe lande. ¶ Hit bifelle so þat tydynges⁶ come to him oppoñ⁷ a day, þat þe Kyng⁸ 12 Rodrik^r of Gascoigne was comen⁹ into þis lande wiþ an huge noubre of peple, and was duellyng^r in Steynesmore. and when Kyng Westmer^r herde þo tydyngus, he lete assemble¹⁰ a grete¹⁰ host of Britons, and come to þe⁸ Kyng^r Rodrik^r, and zaf him bataile. and 16 Kyng Westmer^r quellede Rodrik wiþ his owen hondes in pleyne bataile; and when þat² kyng Rodrikes men saw þat here Lorde was dede, þai zolden ham alle to þe⁸ Kyng Westmer^r, and bicom his men for euermore; and he zaf ham a contre þat was forlete, wher-in 20 þai myzt duelle; and þider^r þai went, and duellede þere al here lifes¹¹ tyme; and ix C men þere¹² were of ham, and nomo¹³ lefte alif at þat bataile. Here gouernour and her^r prince, me callede Berynger^r; and anone he biganne a toune, þat þai myzt þerein duelle¹⁴ and haue 24 resecyt, and lete calle þe toune Berwik^r vp¹⁵ Twede; and þere þai duellede, and bicom riche. but þai nade¹⁶ no wymmen amonges ham, and þe Britons wolde nouzt zeue here douztres to þo¹⁷ Straungers; Wherefore þai went ouere þe see into Irland, and brouzt 28 with ham Wymmen, and ham þo spousede; but þe men couþe¹⁸ nouzt¹⁹ vnderstonde²⁰ þe langage²¹ ne þe speche of þe wymmen, neyþer²² þe wymmen of þe men, and þefore þai²³ spoken to-gederes²³ as scottes; and aftirwarde, þrouz changeyng of her^r 32

¹ In the margin in a contemporary handwriting: Peter was at Rome in nero[s] ty[me]: the edge of the page has evidently been cut off.

² om. DO. ³ zeer & O. ⁴ diuerse D. diuers O.

⁵ feyth O. ⁶ tydyng DO. ⁷ leaf 14, back. ⁸ om. O.

⁹ come O. ¹⁰⁻¹⁰ an huge O. ¹¹ lif D. ¹² þat O. ¹³ noman D.

¹⁴ om. D. ¹⁵ vpon O. ¹⁶ hadde O. ¹⁷ þe D.

¹⁸ coude O. ¹⁹ nouzt þo D.

²⁰ vndirfonge O. ²¹ lange D. ²² ne O.

²³⁻²³ spoken to-geder^r D. speke to-gidere O.

langages,¹ in al Fraunce þei were callede þo² Scottes: and so ³ þai shal be callede³ for eüermore.

How Kyng Westmer^r Lete arere a stone in þe entryng⁴ of Westmerland^r, þere þat he slouzt Rodrik^r; & þere he biganne ferste Housyng^r. ¶ Capitulo ¶ Quadragesimo⁵ ¶ Secundo.

ANd after^r this bataile þat is aboue-saide, when Rodrik ⁶ Was dede, Kyng Westmer^r, in remembraunce of his Victorie, lete arere þere, bisides þe way, a grete stone⁷ in⁸ hye,—& zitte it standeþ,⁹ and eüermore shal stande,—and Lete graue in þe stone lettres þat þus saide: ‘The Kyng Westmere of Britaigne quellede in þis place Rodrik^r his enemy.’ ¶ And þis Westmere was þe ferst man þat made tounes¹⁰ and hous in England^r. and at þat stone bigynneth¹¹ Westmerland^r, þat Westmer^r lete calle after^r his owen name. and¹² when Westmer^r hade so done,¹³ he duellede al his Lif tyme in þat contre of Westmerland^r, for he louede þat contre more¹⁴; and when he hade regnede xxv zere, he deide. & liþ at ¶ Karleile.

Of Kyng Coil, þat was Westmeres sone, þat helde his lande in pees¹⁵ his lif-tyme. ¶ Capitulo xl Tercio.

After þis Kyng Westmer^r, regnede his sone Coil, a goode man and a worþi, and of gode condicions, and wel gouernede his lande, and of alle¹⁶ men he hade loue and pees; and in his tyme was neuer kontak, debate, ne werre in Britayn; and he regnede and was kyng^r in pees al his lif-tyme. & When he hade ¹⁷bene kyng¹⁷ xj zere, he deide, and liþ at 3ork^r.

How Kyng Lucye regnede after^r Coel¹⁸ his fader^r, þat¹⁹ was a gode man; and after^r, he¹² bicom cristen. ¶ Capitulo xl ¶ Quarto.

After Kyng²⁰ Coel, regnede Lucie his sone, þat was a gode man to God^r and to al þe peple. he sent to Rome, to Apostle Eulenchie, þat þo was, and seide þat he wolde bicom a cristen man, and reseuyue baptisme²¹ in þe name of^r God^r, and turne to þe

¹ langagage sic D. ² om. D. þ^o O.

^{3—3} shulleþ þe folc of that contraie D. schul þat folk of þat Cuntre O.

⁴ Entre O. ⁵ Quinquagesimo D. ⁶ leaf 15. ⁷ toune D.

⁸ an O. ⁹ stant D^o. ¹⁰ Toun O. ¹¹ bigynnes D.

¹² om. O. ¹³ y-done O.

¹⁴ more þan eny opere contre D. more þan eny oper Cuntre O.

¹⁵ pees al D. ¹⁶ aH his O. ^{17—17} bene kyng^r D. be kyng^r O. bene R.

¹⁸ om. D. ¹⁹ & O. ²⁰ þis D. ²¹ bapteme O.

ryzt bileue. ¶ Eulenchie sent ij legates, þat me callede Pagan and Elibrayne, into þis lande, and baptisede þe kyng¹ and alle his menyne,¹ and after² went fro² toune³ to toune, and baptisede þe peple til⁴ al þat⁴ Lande was baptisede, and þis was in þe c. lvj 4 3ere after³ þe Incarnacion⁴ of Ihesu Crist⁴. and þis kyng⁵ Lucye made þo in þis lande ij erchebisschoppes, on at Kaunterbery and anopere at 3ork⁵, and opere meny bisshopes þat 3it bene in þis lande. ¶ And when þise⁶ ij legates hade baptisede al þe⁷ lande, 8 þai ordeynede⁸ prestes forto baptisen⁹ childern and forto make þe Sacrament⁸; and after⁸, þai went a3eyne to Rome, and þe kyng duelledede in his lande, and regnede with michel¹⁰ honour xiiij 3ere, and after⁸ deide, and lip at Gloucestre. 12

How þis lande was longe wiþouten¹¹ a kyng¹; and how þe Britons chosen¹² a kyng¹. ¶ Capitulo ¶ Quadragesimo. ¶ Quinto.

THis kyng¹ Lucie hade none heire of his body bigeten,¹³ þat was 16 afterwarde grete harme and sorwe to þe lande; ffor, after þis kyng Lucies deth, none of þe grete lordes¹⁴ of þe lande wolde suffren¹⁵ an-opere to bene¹⁶ kyng¹, but leuede in werre and debate amonges ham l. 3ere wiþouten¹⁷ kyng. but þo it bifel¹⁸ aftirwarde 20 þat a grete Prince¹⁸ come fro Rome into þis lande þat me callede Seurey; nouzt forto werr¹, but forto saue þe ryght¹ of Rome. ¶ But noþeles, he nade¹⁹ nouzt duelledede half²⁰ 3ere in þis lande, þat þe Britons ne quellede him. when þo of Rome wiste þat Seurey 24 was so slayn, þai sent anopere grete lorde into þis lande, þat me callede Allec, þat was a stronge man, and a myzty of body, and duelledede in þis lande Longe tyme, and dede miche sorwe to þe Britons, so þat after, for pure malice, þai chosen ham a kyng 28 amonges ham, þat me callede Astlepades, and assemblede a grete host of þe Britouns, and went to London²¹ seche Allec; and þere þai founde²² ²³him, and quellede him and alle his felawes þat

¹ mene D. meyne O. ² leaf 15, back.

³ a marginal note in an ancient hand: [fir]st cristes Kyng.

⁴⁻⁴ þat alle þe D. ⁵ om. D. ⁶ þe O. ⁷ þat O.

⁸ ordeigneden O. ⁹ baptisen D. baptisede R. ¹⁰ mych O.

¹¹ with-oute D. tyme with-oute O. ¹² Chose hem O.

¹³ bygete D. begete O. ¹⁴ om. DO. ¹⁵ soffre D. suffre O.

¹⁶ be DO. ¹⁷ with-oute DO.

¹⁸⁻¹⁸ afterwarde that a grete Prince D. afterward¹ þat a gret prince O. afterwarde R. ¹⁹ had O.

²⁰ half a O. ²¹ forto D. ²² founden O. ²³ leaf 16.

were wip him, but one of his felawes, þat me clepede¹ Waloun, defendet him fersly, and fauzt longe with þe Britouns, but at þe laste he was descomfitede; and þe Britons token² him, and bounde 4 him³ Hondes and feete, and caste him into a water; wherfore þat water afterwarde was clepede⁴ ⁵euermore Walbroke.⁵ ¶ Þo regnede þis³ Astlepades in quiete, til one of his erles þat me callede Coel, made a faire toune aʒeynes þe kynges wille, and lete calle þe toune 8 Colchestre after his name, wherfore þe kyng was ful wroth, and þouzt destroye þe erle, and bigan to werre vppoñ him, and brouzt grete power, and ʒaf bataile to⁶ þe erl. and þe erl defendede him fersly with his power, and slough þe kyng¹ him-self in þat bataile; 12 and þo was Coel cronede, and made kyng of þis land. ¶ Þis Coel regnede and gouernede þe lande wel and nobly, for he was a⁷ noble man, and wel bilouede amonges⁸ þe Britons. ¶ When⁹ þo of Rome herde þat Astlepades was slayne, ¹⁰þai were¹⁰ wonder glade, and sent 16 anopere grete prince of Romayns, þat me callede Constance; and he come to þe¹¹ Kyng Coil ¹²for to chalange¹² þe truage þat was wont ¹³to bene¹³ paiede to Rome; and þe kyng ansuerede wel and worþely,¹⁴ and saide þat he wolde paye to Rome al þat ryzt and 20 resouñ ¹⁵wolde, wip godewil¹⁵; and so þai accordede þo wip goode wil, and wipouten¹⁶ eny kontak; and boþe þai duellede togeder¹⁷ in loue. ¶ The Kyng¹ Coel ʒaf his douzter Elyne to Constance, for to haue here for his spouse, þat was boþe faire, wise, and gode, and 24 wel lettrede: and þis Constance spousede here þere³ with michel¹⁸ honour. and it bifelle sone afterwarde, þat þis kyng¹ Coel ¹⁹deide in the ʒere of his regne xiiij, & Lith at Colchestre enterede.

Of Kyng Constance, þat was a Romayn, þat was chosen²⁰ kyng
28 **after ²¹þe deth of²¹ Coel, ²²for-asmiche þat²² he hade spousede Elyn, þat was Kyng Coeles douzter. Capitulo xlvj^o.**

32 **A**fter þis¹¹ Kyng Coel, Constance was made kyng¹, and cronede, for-asmiche as he hade spousede Kyng Coeles³ douzter, þat was heire of þe lande. þe whiche Constance regnede and worþely

1 callede D. called O. 2 nome D. toke O.
3 om. O. 4 callede D. called O. 5-5 Walbrok euermore O.
6 vnto D. 7 an O. 8 among O. 9 And D.
10-10 than were þai D. 11 om. D. 12-12 and chalangede D.
13-13 be DO. 14 wiselich D. wysely O. 15-15 wil D.
16 with-oute O. 17 to-gederes D. 18 mych O.
19 leaf 16, back. 20 chose O. 21-21 om. O.
22-22 for-asmiche as D. for as O.

gouvernede þe lande; and he bigate on his wif Elyn, a sone þat me callede Constantyn. and þis kyng bare trew fay, and trewly dede to ham of Rome al his lif. & when he hade regnede xv ȝere, he deide, and liþ atte ȝork!

How Constantyne, þat was Kyng Constance¹ sone, & þe sone of seynt Elyne, gouvernede and rewlede þe lande, & was² Emperour of Rome. ¶ Capitulo xl Septimo.

After Kyng Con[s]tance³ deth, Constantyne, his sone of seynt 8 Elyne, þat founde þat⁴ croice in þe⁵ holy londe, and how Constantyne bicomē Emperoure of Rome. ¶ Hit bifel so⁶ in þat tyme þere was an Emperour atte Rome, a sarasynē, a tyraunt, þat me callede Maxence, þat put to þe² deth alle þat bileuede in God, 12 and destroiede holy cherche by alle his power, and slought Cristen men þat he myzt fynde; and amonge alle opere, he lete martre Seynt Kateryne, and meny opere cristen peple þat hade drede of deth, þai⁷ fledden⁸ and comen⁹ into þis lande to Kyng Constantyne, and 16 tolde him of þe sorwe þat Maxence dede to al cristiente.¹⁰ Wherof Constantyn hade pite, and grete sorwe made, and¹¹ assemblede a grete hoste and¹² grete power, and went ouere see¹³ to Rome, and toke¹⁴ þe citee, and quellede al þat¹⁵ þerin were mescreaunt,¹⁵ þat 20 he myzt fynde. ¶ And þo was he made Emperoure,¹⁶ And was a gode man, and gouvernede him so wel, þat al þe¹⁸ Landes to him were entendaunt¹⁷ forto be vnder his governaile. ¶ And þis deuel tyraunt Maxence, þat þo was in þe lande of Greke, when¹⁸ he 24 herde þis tydynges,¹⁹ he bicomē wode, and sodeynely²⁰ deide, and so he² endede his lif.

When Constantyne went fro þis land to Rome, he toke²¹ wip him his moder Elyn, for þe michel²² wisdome þat she couþe,²³ and 28 þre opere grete lordes þat he moste louede: þat one me callede Hoel, anopere me callede Taberne, and þe þridde Morhyn²⁴; and toke al his lande to kepe vnto²⁵ þe Erl of Cornwaile, þat men²⁶ callede Octouyan. ¶ anone²⁷ as þis Octouian wiste þat his lorde was 32 duellyng at Rome, he seisede al þe lande into his honde, and þerwip

¹ Constance D. Constaunce O. ² om. O. ³ Constance D.

⁴ þe D. ⁵ þat O. ⁶ so þat O. ⁷ þat DO.

⁸ fled O. ⁹ come O. ¹⁰ Cristene O. ¹¹ made and DO. made R.

¹² and a DO. ¹³ om. DO. ¹⁴ nome O.

¹⁵⁻¹⁵ wer þerin D. þer-In were mysbeleued O. ¹⁶ leaf 17.

¹⁷ attendaunt O. ¹⁸ þo DO. ¹⁹ tydyngē O. ²⁰ sodeynlich D.

²¹ nome O. ²² miche D. mych O. ²³ coude O.

²⁴ Morlyn D. ²⁵ to D. ²⁶ me D. ²⁷ And anon D.

dede al his wil amonges¹ heye and law, & þo helde him for kyngt.
 ¶ when þis tydyng come to Constantyne þe Emperoure, he woxe
 wonder' wroþe towarde þe Erl Octouyan, and sent Taberne with xij
 4 m¹ men forto² destroye the erl for his falsenesse, and arryuede at
 Portesmouth. ¶ And when Octouyan wiste þat, he assemblede a
 grete power' of Britons, and descomfitede Taberne. ¶ And Taberne
 fledde þens into Scotlande, and ordeynede þere a³ grete power', and
 8 come aʒeyne into þis lande forto ʒeue bataile anoþere tyme to⁴
 Octouyan. ¶ When Octouyan herde telle þat, he assemblede a
 grete power', and come towarde Taberne as miche as he myʒt', so
 þat þo⁵ ij hostes metten oppon Staynesmore, and strongly⁶ smyten
 12 to-gederes.⁷ and þo was Octouyan descomfitede, and fledde þens
 into Norwaye; and Taberne seisede al þe lande into his hande,⁸
 Tounes, castelles, and⁵ as mich as þai þere hade. ¶ And siþenes⁹
 Octouyan come aʒeyne fro Norway wiþ a grete power', & slough
 16 Taberne, & seisede¹⁰ al þe lande aʒeyne³ into his honde, & drof
 oute alle þe Romayns,¹¹ and was þo made Kyng, and regnede.

**How Maximian, þat was þe Emperoure; cosyn¹² of Rome
 spousede Octouyane; douʒter, and was made kyngt,**

20 ¶ **Capitulo xlvij^o.**¹²

THis Kyng⁵ Octouian gouernede þis¹³ lande wel and nobly¹⁴;
 but he¹⁵ nad¹⁶ none heire, saf a douʒter þat was a ʒonge
 childe, þat he louede as miche as his lif'. and forasmiche þat he wax
 24 sike, and was in¹⁷ poynt of deþ, and myʒt no lenger' regne, he wolde
 haue made one of his Neveus to haue bene¹⁸ kyngt, þe whiche was
 a¹⁹ noble knyʒt' and²⁰ stronge man, þat me callede Conan Merchedok',²¹
 and he shulde haue kepte þe kynges douʒter, & haue¹⁵ mariede
 28 her' when tyme hade bene; but þe lordes of þe lande wolde nouʒt
 suffre hit, but ʒaf here conseile to bene²² mariede to some hye man
 of great honour, and þan myʒt she haue al her' wille at²³ þe conseile
 of þe Emperoure Constantyne, here Lorde. and at þis conseile, þai
 32 accordede and chose²⁴ þo Cador, Erl of Cornewail, forto²⁵ wende

¹ among O. ² to O. ³ om. DO. ⁴ vnto O. ⁵ om. O.

⁶ strongliche D. ⁷ to-gider' O. ⁸ handis O. ⁹ seth O.

¹⁰ seisede aʒeyn D. seised aʒen O. ¹¹ leaf 17, back.

¹²⁻¹² conquerede the lande of American and ʒaf it to Conan Meriedok' D.

¹³ þe O. ¹⁴ wisely D. ¹⁵ om. D. ¹⁶ ne had O.

¹⁷ oppo[n] D. vp O. ¹⁸ be O. ¹⁹ an O. ²⁰ and a DO.

²¹ Meriedok D. Meridiok' O. ²² be DO. ²³ and DO.

²⁴ chosen O. ²⁵ to O.

to þe Emperour to¹ done² þis³ message. and he toke⁴ þe way, and went to Rome, and tolde þe Emperour þis tydynges⁵ wel and wiselich.⁶ and þe Emperoure sent þo into þis lande with him his owen cosyn, þat was his Vncles⁷ sone, a noble knyzt and⁸ 4 stronge, þat me callede Maximian; and he spousede Octouyanus douzter, and was cronede kyng of þis lande.

How Maximian, þat was þe Emperourres cosyn, conquerede the Lande of American, and gaf it to Conan Meriedok. 8
¶ **Capitulo xlix.**

THis Kyng Maximian bicom so real, þat he þouzt conquere þe lande of American for þe grete richesse þat he harde⁹ telle þat was in þat lande; so þat¹⁰ he ne¹⁰ lefte¹¹ man þat¹² was of worpi- 12 nesse—knyzt,¹³ squyer, ne none opere man—þat he ne toke ham¹⁴ with him, to grete damage and harme to al þe lande,¹⁵ but nome ham with him fram¹⁶ þis lande, xxx M¹ knyztes þat were doughty mennes bodyes, and went ouer¹⁷ into þe lande of American, and þere slough 16 þe kyng þat me callede Imbal, and conquerede al þe lande. ¶ And when he hade so done,² he callede Conan, and saide: “For-asmiche as þe Kyng Octouyan wolde haue made þow kyng¹ of Britaigne, and prouz me þe were lette and destourblede, þat þe were nouzt kyng¹, 20 I þeue þow al þis lande of American, and þow þerof make kyng¹. ¶ And for-asmiche as þe beth¹⁷ a Britouñ, and þoure men also, and bene comen fram¹⁸ Britaigne, I wille þat þis lande haue þe same name, and nomore bene¹⁹ callede American, but bene¹⁹ callede ‘litel 24 Britaigne’; and þe lande fro whens þe²⁰ beþe comen²⁰ shal bene²¹ callede ‘michel Britaigne’; and so shul²² men know þat one²³ Britaigne fram²⁴ þat opere.” Conan Meriedok¹ þankede him hendeliche²⁵; and so was he made kyng¹ of litel Britaigne. and when 28 al þis was done,² Maxence²⁶ went þens to Rome, and þere was²⁷ made Emperour after Constantyne. ¶ Conan Meriedok duellede in²⁸ litel Britaigne with michel²⁹ honour, and lete ordeyne ij M¹

¹ forto DO. ² do O.

³ MS. þis homage, with homage *underlined for omission.*

⁴ nome DO. ⁵ tydyng¹ D. tydyng^e O. ⁶ wysely O.

⁷ Vnkel O. ⁸ and a DO. ⁹ hade D. ^{10–16} om. D.

¹¹ leaf 18. ¹² om. O. ¹³ knyzt ne D. ¹⁴ om. DO.

¹⁵ lande for he lefte at home bihynde him no man to kepe the lande D. land for he left at home behynde hym no man to kepe þe land¹ O.

¹⁶ fro DO. ¹⁷ be O. ¹⁸ fro O. ¹⁹ be DO.

^{20–20} beth come D. be come O. ²¹ be DO. ²² schuld O.

²³ o DO. ²⁴ fro O. ²⁵ hendely D. hyndly O. ²⁶ Maximian DO.

²⁷ was þo DO. ²⁸ in the D. in þe O. ²⁹ mych O.

ploughmen of þe lande forto erie þe lande,¹ to harwe ²it and sowe,² and feffede ham alle rychele, after þat þai were. ¶ and³ for-asmiche þat Kyng Conan, ne none of his knyghtes, ne none of his
 4 opere peple, wolde nouzt take wifes of þe nacioñ of Fraunce, he þo sent into grete Britaig[n]e, to þe Erl of Cornewaile þat me callede Dionotho, þat chees þrouz-oute alle þe lande xj M⁴ of maydenes, þat is to seyne, viij M⁴ for the mene peple, and iij M⁴ for þe
 8 grettest lordes þat schulde ham spouse. ¶ And when Dionotho hade tak⁵ þis commandement,⁶ he lete þo seche þrouz-out al grete Britaigne as meny as þe nombre come to, for noman derst wiþstande his commandement,⁷ for-asmichel⁸ as al þe lande was taken⁹ him
 12 to warde and kepe, to do¹⁰ al þing⁴ þat him þo likede.⁷ ¶ And when alle þe maydenes were assemblede, he lete ham comme bifore him to Londoñ, and lete ordeyne for ham shippes hastely, as miche¹¹ as ham nedet to þat viage, and toke¹² his owen doughter
 16 þat me callede Vrsula, þat was þe faireste creature þat eny man wist, and wolde haue sent her to Kyng Conan, þat schulde haue spousesede here, and made here quene of ¹³litel Britaigne¹³; but she hade made priuely¹⁴ to God a vow of chastite, þat here fader wiste
 20 it¹⁵ nouzt, ne noman ¹⁶elles¹⁷ þat was leuyng oppoñ erþe.¹⁶

How Vrsula, and xj M⁴ of maydenes þat were in here company, went towarde litil Britaigne, & al¹⁸ were martrede at Coloigne. ¶ Capitulo ¶ Quinquagesimo.

24 **T**His Vrsula chees into her¹⁹ company xj M⁴ maydenes²⁰ þat of al opere she was lady and maistres; and alle þai went²¹ into þe shippis at on²² tyme, in þe water þat me calleþ²³ Tamise; and commandede her kyn and alle her frendes to almyzty God, and
 28 sailede forþ towarde litel Britaigne. But when þai were comen²⁴ in þe hye see, a stronge tempest⁴ arose, as it was Goddes wil; and Vrsula, wiþ her shippis and here company, was²⁵ dryuen, and þo xj M⁴ maidenes, toward²⁶ Hundelande, þrouz tempest, and arryuede in þe

¹ om. D. ²⁻² and to sowe D. ³ om. O. ⁴ leaf 18, back.

⁵ vnderstonde D. vndirfonge O.

⁶ comandement for-as-miche as al þe lande was tak him to warde and kepe to done alping⁴ þat him þo likede D.

⁷⁻⁷ om. D. ⁸ for-as-mich O.

⁹ take O. ¹⁰ done O.

¹¹ as meny O. ¹² nome DO. ¹³⁻¹³ the lande D. þ^e land⁴ O.

¹⁴ priueliche D. ¹⁵ MS. his ¹⁶⁻¹⁶ þat leuede D. ¹⁷ et O.

¹⁸ alle þai D. alle þey O.

¹⁹ her company D. here Cumpanye O. her R.

²⁰ of maydeyns D. of Maydenes O. ²¹ wenten O. ²² o O.

²³ called þ^e O. ²⁴ come O. ²⁵ were O. ²⁶ towards O.

hauen of ¹þe citee of Coloigne. ¶ The kyng of þe lande, þat me callede Gowan, was þo in þe citee; and when he wist þo² tydynges, þat so meny faire maydenes were þere arryuede, he tok³ Elga his broþer, and opere of his householde, wiþ him, and went to þe ⁴shippes to see þat fair company. and when he sawe ham so faire,⁴ he and his company wolde haue ham ouerlayne, and bynome⁵ here maydenhode. ¶ but Vrsula, þat gode mayde, conseilede, prayede, warnede, and tauzte ham þat were here felowes,⁶ þat þai ⁸shulde defende ham wiþ al her myzt, and raþer suffre deth þan suffre here ⁷bodies bene⁷ defouled. ¶ So þat alle þe maydenes bicomme so stedefast in God, þat þai defendede ham þrouz his⁸ grace, so þat none of ham hade power to done ham eny shame; ¹²wherfore þe kyng was⁹ so sore annoiede, þat he, for wrap, lete slee ham euerychoñ¹⁰ anone ryght; and so were alle þe maidenens martrede for þe loue of God, and ligget¹¹ at Coloyne.

How Kyng Gowan come forto destroye þis lande; and how ¹⁶aman of grete power, þat me callede Gracian, defendede þe lande. ¶ Capitulo ¶ Qui[n]quagesimo ¶ Primo.

WHen al þis was done,¹² Kyng Gowan, þat was a sarasyn, callede his broþer Elga, and saide to him þat he shulde ²⁰gone¹³ to conquere þe lande þat alle þo¹⁴ faire maydenes were borne¹⁵ in. and he ordeynede þo a grete power of Peihtes, of Denmarc, of Orkeneye, and of Norwaye, and þai comen into þis lande, and brent tounes, and slough folc, and caste adone cherches and houses¹⁶ of ²⁴religiouñ, and robbede the lande in lenth and in¹⁷ brede, and put to deth alle þo þat wolde noght forsake þe ryght bileue and cristen-dome, for-asmiche as þere was none¹⁸ souerayne in the lande þat myzt ham helpe or ¹⁹defende. ¶ For þe Kyng Maximian hade ²⁸taken²⁰ wiþ him alle þe worþi men, when he went to conquere lital Britaigne. and in þe same tyme þat ze hure now telle, was Seynt Albone martrede þrouz þe wode tyraunt Diodician in þe same place, wherin is now an Abbay made of Seynt Albone, whiles þat he was ³²a paynyme. ¶ But he conuertede him towarde God, þrouz þe pre-diaciouñ of a grete clerc and a wyse, þat me callede Ancibeñ,²¹ þat

¹ leaf 19. ² þe O. ³ nome DO. ⁴ fayne sic O.
⁵ bynomen O. ⁶ felawes D. ffelaws O. felow R. ⁷⁻⁷ body to be O.
⁸ his O. here R. ⁹ Gowan wox D. Gowan wax O. ¹⁰ echeon O.
¹¹ liggen D. ¹² do O. ¹³ go DO. ¹⁴ þe D. ¹⁵ bore O.
¹⁶ house O. ¹⁷ om. O. ¹⁸ no DO. ¹⁹ leaf 19, back.
²⁰ take O. ²¹ Affabett O.

was herburghede a nyght in his house; and þis was after þe Incarnacion^{xx} of Ihesu Crist .ij C. iij. vj 3ere. and men shullen¹ vnder stonde þat Seynt Albone soffrede his martredome bifore þat² Seynt Edmunde was martrede; and þerfore is seynt Albone callede þe ferst^t martre of Engelande. ¶ This Gowan^{us} broþer, & his folk^t, þat³ were Sarasynes,⁴ went þrou3-oute þe Lande, and destroyede al þing þat þai fonde; and no þing þai ne sparede. ¶ When þis tydyng come to Rome, how þat Kyng Gowan hade bigonne forto destroye þis lande, þe Emperour and þo of Rome sent a stronge man, and of grete power^t, þat me callede Gracian, w[ith] xxiiij⁵ M^t men wel feightyng^t, forto caste oute Sarasynes of þis lande, and alle þai arryuede⁶ at Portesmouthe. Maximian myzt nouzt come him-self,⁷ for-asmiche as he was chosen Emperoure after þe deþ of Constantyn, þat was Seynt Elynes sone. ¶ When þis Gracian was arryuede wip his host^t, he lete asprie priuely⁸ wher^t þe⁹ Kyng Gowan myzt¹⁰ bene founden¹⁰; and he come vppoñ¹¹ him sodeynly,¹¹ as þai Lay in her^t beddes,¹² and descomfitede ham, and sloughe¹² echeon,¹⁴ þat non of hem Ascaped^t saf Gowan, þat fledde with mych sorowe in-to his cuntre. Sone aftir yt byfel þat Maximian was slayn at Rome, þurgh¹⁵ treson^t; And when Gracian wyst þe tydyng, he let Crowne hym kyng of þis land^t.

How Gracyan made hym kyng whan Maximian was slayn; & after,¹⁶ þe Brytouns quelled^t hym for his wikkydnesse.

24 **Capitulo quinquagesimo ij^o.**

This Gracian,¹⁷ when he gan¹⁷ forto regne, he bycome so wykked & so sterne, & so mych sorow wrought to þe Britouns, þat þey slow hym amonges hem. ¶ Tho Kyng Gowan had vnderstande þat Gracian was do¹⁸ to detþ, he Assembled a gret power, & come azen in-to þis land^t; & yf he had arst don^t a¹⁹ grete harme, þe dede he mych more; for þe destroyed he al this land, & al²⁰ Crysten peple þat was in Myche Brytaine, so þat no man was so¹⁹ hardy for-to nempne God^t; & ho þat dede, anon he was put to strong detþ.

¹ shul D. Shulden O. ² om. O. ³ þai D. ⁴ Sarasines & D.

⁵ xxiiij O. ⁶ arryueden O. ⁷ him D. ⁸ pryueliche D. ⁹ that D.

¹⁰⁻¹⁰ be founde DO. ¹¹⁻¹¹ ham sodeynliche D. hem sodeynly O.

¹²⁻¹² and slow ham in her^t beddes D. om. O.

¹³ *MS. Rawl. B. 171 has two leaves missing here. They have been supplied from MS. Douce 323 (O). [MS. Douce 323, leaf 17.]*

¹⁴ eueryche on D. ¹⁵ with D. ¹⁶ afterwarde D.

¹⁷⁻¹⁷ when he biganne D. he began O. ¹⁸ done D. ¹⁹ om. D.

²⁰ alle þe D.

¶ But þe bysshop of London þat was þo, þat me called Gosselyn, scaped, & went þens to hem of Rome, to seche socour for-to helpe dystroye þe Sarazins þat had dystroyed þis land. ¶ And þe Romayns seyde¹ þat þey hadde be² so ofte anoyed for her sendyng⁴ after folk in-to Brytaine, al for-to helpe þe Britouns, & þey wold no more so do.³ And so þe Bysshop Gosselyn went þens with-out⁴ ony Socour or helpe; & þo went he to þe Kyng of litil Brytaine, þat me called Aldroye, & þis was þe iij kyng after Gowan Meridiok,⁸ as bifore is sayd. The bysshop prayed this Kyng Aldroye of socour & of helpe. the kyng hadde⁵ herd how þe bysshop fledde, & how þat⁶ þe⁷ Crystene men were slayn in gret Brytaine þurgh Paynys & Sarazins, & he graunted hym Constantyn his broþer, hym⁶ for-to¹² helpe, with Poer of folk, & hem dede arraye hors armure, & schippes, & al thing þat hem nedeð to þat viage. and when al thing was redy, he called þe bysshop, & to hym seyð: “I take þou here to helpe & socour Constantyn my broþer, vpon this couenaunt,¹⁶ þat 3if God 3ife hym grace, þe Paynys & Sarazins to schende & discomfite, þat þaune 3e make hym kyng of þe land”: & þe bysshop yt graunted with good wyH. ¶ Constantyn & þe bysshop⁸ nome leue þo of þe Kyng Aldroye, & by-took hym to⁹ God, & nome her²⁰ men xij M^l, & went in-to her schippes, & sayled toward þe gret Brytaine, & Arryued in Tottenesse. whan þe Britouns herd¹⁰ þe tydyng¹⁰ þat to hem come socour, þey¹¹ were stronglich holpyn, & ordeigned hem an huge nombre of peple,¹² & come to hem, & hem²⁴ vndirfongen with mychel honour. ¶ Gowan, anon as he wyste of this þyng, he Assemblyd aH þe Sarazins, & come azens hym,¹³ & 3af batayH. And Constantyn slow hym with his owne hand; & aH þe othere Sarazins were discomfited & slayn, þat non aschaped but þe²⁸ þat were⁶ conuerted vnto God.

How Constantyn, þat was þe kynges broþer of litel Britaigne, was Crowned¹⁴ kyng, for his worþines, of mych Bretaine.¹⁴
Capitulo liij^o.

32

Anon, aftir þe batayH, alle þey went to London, & crowned þere Constantyn, & made hym kyng of þis lond. And þe bysshop Gosselyn sette þe Crowne vpon his hed,¹⁵ & anoynted hym, as

¹ sayden D. ² bene D. ³ done D.⁴ wip-uten D. ⁵ hade grete pitee in hert when he D.⁶ om. D. ⁷ MS. þe Chi, with Chi underlined for erasure.⁸ bisshop tho D. ⁹ him to D. hym O. ¹⁰⁻¹⁰ tydynges D.¹¹ ther D. ¹² leaf 17, back. ¹³ ham D.¹⁴⁻¹⁴ kyng of michel britaigne for his worþinesse D. ¹⁵ heuede D.

fallet̄ to¹ A kyng ²for-to be²; & þ^o bygan Crystendom. This³ Constantyn,⁴ whan he was Crouned, anon aftir he spoused his wyf þurgh counceyl of þ^e Britouns; & he begate iij Sones on her: 4 þ^e ferst me called Constaunce,⁵ þat other Aurylambros, & þ^e iij Vter. ¶ Constance, þ^e eldest brother, when he come to Age, made⁶ hym a monke at Wynchestre. Constantyn here fadir was slayn þurgh tresow; for it byfeh vpon a tyme þat a Pohete come to hym 8 vpon a day, in Message as yt were, & seyde þat he wolde speke with þe kyng pryuyly⁷ in Counceyl. The kyng lete voyde his Chambre of þ^o men þat were with-Inne; & þo Abide⁸ þere nomo⁹ but þ^e kyng & þe Pohete, & made a Contenaunce as þey¹⁰ wolde 12 speke to-gidere¹¹ in his ere; & þere he qwelled hym with a long knyf; & after, went qweyntly out of þ^e Chambre in-to anoþer Chambre; so at þe laste no man wyst wher he was bycome.¹² ¶ When þ^e kynges men it wyste, þat here lord was so ded, þei made 16 so mych sorowe¹³ þey nyst ¹⁴ah what for-to¹⁴ done, for-as-mych as his ij sones, Aurylambros & Vter, weren so yenge þat non of hem myght be kyng; & þ^e iij¹⁵ broþer was monke at Wynchestre, as ¹⁶I sayd before.¹⁶ ¶ But Vortiger, þat was Erl of Westsex, þought 20 pryuyly¹⁷ in his herte, thurgh queyntise, to be¹⁸ kyng; & went to Wynchestre þer þat Constaunce was¹⁹ monk, & to hym seyde: “Constaunce,” quod he, “þoure fadir is ded, & þour ij breþerin þat 24 þat non of hem may be kyng; wherfore y counseyle þat þe forsake þoure Abyte, & come²⁰ with me, & I schal do so to þ^e Brytouns þat þe schul be made kyng.”

Of Constaunce, þat was²¹ Constantynus sone, þat was Monk at 28 Wynchestr; & how he was made kyng after his faders deth, þurgh Councelh of Vortiger, þat was Erle of Westsex, for-as-mych as Aurilambros & Vter, his ij breþerin, were but of yonge age, & ²²was slayn.²² *Capitulo liiij^o.*

32 **T**his Vortiger counceyled þis Constaunce so mych tyl he forsook his Abyte, & went with hym. & anon aftir, he was Crouned and made kyng by Assent of þ^e Brytouns. This kyng Constance,

¹ for D. ²⁻² to bene D. ³ This kyng D.

⁴ MS. has Constantyn her fadir, with her fadir struck out.

⁵ Constance and D. ⁶ he made D. make O. ⁷ pryueliche D.

⁸ abode D. ⁹ noman D. ¹⁰ thouz he D. ¹¹ with þe kyng^t D.

¹² bicomen D. ¹³ sorw that D. ¹⁴⁻¹⁴ what to D. ¹⁵ eldest D.

¹⁶⁻¹⁶ is saide biforne D. ¹⁷ pryueliche D. ¹⁸ ben D.

¹⁹ was made D. ²⁰ comeþ D. ²¹ was kyng^t D.

²²⁻²² Vortiger lete him slee to ben kyng^t himself^t D.

whan he was crowned & made kyng, he wyst ne knew but litil of þ^e world, ne cowde¹ ²no thing as knyghthoode axed, he made Vortiger his maister & his chef Councellour, & gaf hym all his power, for-to ordeigne & do as myche as to þ^e reaume perteyned, so 4 þat hym-self no þing¹ entraelled, but only³ bare þ^e name of kyng.

¶ Whan Vortiger saw þat he had al þ^e⁴ land in his warde & gouernayle, at his owne wyll, he þought A pryue Treson, & þought to sle Constance þ^e kyng, þat he myght hym-self⁵ be 8 Crowned & made⁵ kyng & regne, & lete sende after a⁶ C knyghttes of Pehetes, þ^e worthiest of⁷ þ^e land, & hem helde⁸ with hym, ⁹to duelle wif him, ¹⁰and⁹ to bene¹⁰ Kepers of his body, as he wolde wende þrouz þe lande to ordeyne þinges þat perteynede to a Kyng. 12

¶ And þis Vortiger honourede so miche þo C knyghtes, and so miche gaf ham of golde and siluer, & so ryche rewel, ¹¹ robes, hors, and opere noble plente, wherfore þai helde him more lorde þan þai deden¹² þe kyng. ¶ And Vortiger tolde ham, if þat he ¹³moste 16 bene¹³ kyng, he, ⁶ as it were þrouz tresoun, he wolde make ham¹⁴ richest of þe lande. so¹⁵ at the laste, þrouz grete ziftes þat he¹⁶ hade zeue largely, þai crieden¹⁷ þrouz þe court þat Vortiger were better worþi ben¹⁸ kyng þan Constance; wherfore Vortiger made sem- 20 blant as þauz¹⁹ he hade bene²⁰ wroþ, and departede þens fro þe court, and saide he most ²¹gone elles-where²¹ for þing þat he hade to done; and so þe traitoure zede²² for²³ enchesoun þat þai²⁴ shulde slee ²⁵him, þat is to seyne,²⁵ Constance. ¶ When þis Vortiger was 24 gone, hit bifelle sone after þat þo C knyghtz of Peightes breken²⁶ þe dores of þe kynges chambre, and þere þai him slough and smoten²⁷ of his heuede,²⁸ and bare it to Vortiger þere þat he duellede. and when Vortiger saw þat heuede,²⁸ he wepte ful tenderly wif his eye; 28 and nopelese he was some dele glade of his deth, and anone lete take þo²⁹ C knyghtes of Peightes, & bonde³⁰ here hondes bihynde ham, and lade ham to London; & þere þai were dampnede to deth

¹ coupe D.² leaf 18.³ onliche D.⁴ þis D.⁵⁻⁵ ben cronede D.⁶ om. D.⁷ of al D.⁸ with-helde D.⁹⁻⁹ om. D.

[MS. Rawl. B. 171, leaf 20.]

¹⁰⁻¹⁰ as to be O.¹¹ Jewels O.¹² þai deden D.

þey dede O. deden R.

¹³⁻¹³ miȝt ben D.

must be O.

¹⁴ hym O.¹⁵ So þat O.¹⁶ þai D.¹⁷ criede D.

Cryede O.

¹⁸ to be O.¹⁹ om. DO.²¹ be O.²¹⁻²¹ gone elles-whider D.

go elles-whedir O.

²² saide D.

seyde O.

²³ MS. for tresoun, with tresoun underlined for erasure.²⁴ MS. þat.²⁵⁻²⁵ om. D. hym þat is to sey O.²⁶ broken D.²⁷ smyten O.²⁸ heed O.²⁹ þe D.³⁰ bynde O.

as false traitoures. ¶ and anone after, al þe britons of þe lande, by commune assent, cronede þere Vortiger, & made him kyng of þe¹ lande.

4 How þe wardeynes þat hade þo² ij³ childerne to kepe, þat were
 4 Constantines sones, lade ham to litel Britaigne, for the
 tresouñ and falsnesse of Vortiger. ¶ Capitulo ¶ Quin-
 quagesimo ¶ Quinto.

8 **T**His kyng Vortiger, when he was cronede, þo þat⁵ hade þe ij⁵
 childerne in kepyng, Aurilambros and Vter, prou3 ordenance
 of Gosselyn, þat was bisshop of Londoñ at his deþ, derst nouzt
 duelle in the lande wiþ þe childerne,⁶ but lade ham to þe kyng of
 12 litel Britaigne, forasmiche as he þo wiste þe tresouñ of Vortiger, þat
 þo was made Kyng, prou3 wham Constance here broþer was slayn,
 wherfore þo C kny3tes of Peightes were put to þe³ deth, and bare
 al þe blame, as þei3t Vortiger⁷ hade nouzt wiste⁷ þerof, noþer þerto
 16 consentede; and so þe Kepers of þo ij childerne drade⁸ laste
 Vortiger wolde put ham to deth, prou3 his tresouñ and falsnesse, as
 he hade done⁹ her' broþer biforne; and þerfor þai wer' ladde ouer
 into litel Britaigne, and þe kyng ham reseceyuede wiþ michel¹⁰
 20 honour, and lete ham to norisshe; and þere þai duelled til þai
 bicome fair' kny3tez, &³ st[r]ong and ferse, and þouzt¹¹ euer' to
 bene¹² avengede of¹³ þe deth of Constantyne¹⁴ here broþer, when
 þai saw here tyme; and so þai deden,¹⁵ as þe¹⁶ shul hur'¹⁷ aftirward.
 24 ¶ Hit was nouzt long after, þat¹⁸ þe tydynges ne¹⁸ come ouer' þe see,
 to þe kynrede of þe C kny3tez of¹⁹ Peightes þat were dampnede and
 put to þe²⁰ deth prou3 Vortiger' in þis lande; þerfore þai²¹ weren
 wonderly²¹ wroþe, & sworn þat þai²² [²³would be²³ avenged of her
 28 kins death,] and comen into þis lande wiþ a grete power, & rob-
 beden²⁴ in meny places, & slou3,²⁵ & dede²⁶ al þe sorw þat²⁷ þai
 myzt. ¶ When Vortiger hit wiste, he²⁸ made²⁹ sorw ynow²⁹ and

¹ þis D. ² om. O. ³ om. D. ⁴ leaf 20, back.

⁵⁻⁵ hade þo D. ij sic O.

⁶ MS. childerne of þe lande, with of þe lande *underlined for erasure*.

⁷⁻⁷ wist nouzt D. ⁸ dradden O. ⁹ do O.

¹⁰ mych O. ¹¹ boughten O. ¹² be O. ¹³ vpon O.

¹⁴ Constaunce O. ¹⁵ dede O. ¹⁶ 3e DO.

¹⁷ her' tel D. her' telle O.

¹⁸⁻¹⁸ tydynge O. ¹⁹ of þe O. ²⁰ om. DO.

²¹⁻²¹ weren wonder D. were wonderly O. ²² MS. þai wonderly wroþ.

²³⁻²³ wolde ben D. wolden ben O. ²⁴ robbed O.

²⁵ quelled in meny places D. quelled O. ²⁶ deden D. ²⁷ as O.

²⁸ leaf 21. ²⁹⁻²⁹ miche sorw D. mych sorowe O.

sore was annoyede; and in a-noþer partie also tydynges¹ come² þat Aurilambros & Vter³ ordeynede ham,⁴ and assemblede a grete hoste forto⁵ come into michel⁶ Britaigne, þat is to seyne, into þis lande, to bene⁷ avenged of Constance⁸ deþ her' broþer⁸; so þat⁴ 9 in one⁹ half and in þat oþer he was brouȝt into so¹⁰ miche sorwe þat he nyst whider' to wende.

How Engist and xj M¹ men come into þis lande, to whom Vortiger ȝaf a place þat¹¹ is callede¹¹ Thongecastel. 8
Capitulo lvj^{to}.

ANd sone after' þis¹² sorw, tidynges¹² come to Vortiger, þat a grete nauye¹³ of straungers were arryuede in¹⁴ Kent; but þai wist nouȝt whens¹⁵ þai were, ne wherfore þai were comen.¹⁶ ¶ The Kyng sent anone messagers¹⁷ þider', þat somme of ham shulde come and speke wiþ him, forto wete what folc þai werne, and what þai axede, and into what contre þai wolde gone.¹⁸ ¶ þere were ij breþerne, Prynces and maistres of þat straunge company: 16 þat on me callede Engist, and þat oþere Horn. Engist went þo¹⁰ to þe kyng, & tolde to him encheson wherfore þai were þere arryuede in his¹⁹ lande, and saide: "sire! we beth²⁰ of a contre þat²¹ is callede²¹ Saxoyne, þat is, þe Lande of Germanyn, wherein is²⁰ so¹⁰ miche sorw, þat²² þe peple is²³ so myche þat þe lande may²⁴ nouȝt ham²⁴ sustene ne suffice. ¶ The maystres & Prynces þat haueþ²⁵ þe lande to gouerne and rewele, shul done come bifore ham men and wymmen, þe²⁶ boldest²⁷ þat bene amonges ham²⁴ and best mowen²⁷ trauaile into diuersez²⁸ londes; and so þai²⁹ shal³⁰ ham ȝeue Horse and harneyse, armure, and al þing þat ham nedeþ; and after' þai³¹ say to ham þat þai go into anoþer contre, wher þat⁴ þai³² mowen leue,³² as here auncestres deden³³ 28 biforne ham. and þerfore, sire kyng, if³⁴ ȝe haue ouȝt to

¹ tydyng' O. ² come to him D. come to hym O.

³ Vter' his broþer DO. ⁴ om. D. ⁵ for D. ⁶ Mich O.

⁷ be O. ⁸⁻⁸ hir' broþeres deth D. here broþers deth O.

⁹⁻⁹ on o O. ¹⁰ om. O. ¹¹⁻¹¹ Called is O.

¹²⁻¹² sorwe tydyng D. tydyng O.

¹³ meny D. meyne O. ¹⁴ in the contre of D. in þe Cuntre of O.

¹⁵ what D. ¹⁶ come O. ¹⁷ a messenger D. a messenger O.

¹⁸ go O. ¹⁹ þis O. ²⁰ be O. ²¹⁻²¹ called is O. ²² þat yf O.

²³ be O. ²⁴⁻²⁴ hem not O. ²⁵ hauen DO. ²⁶ that bene D.

²⁷⁻²⁷ amonges ham forto fiȝt þat best mow D. þat ben among hem for-to fight þat best mow O.

²⁸ diuerse D. diuers O. ²⁹ leaf 21, back. ³⁰ shullen D.

³¹ þai shul D. þey schul O.

³²⁻³² mow leuen D. mow lyue O. ³³ dede O. ³⁴ and D.

done wip oure company, we ¹ bene comen¹ into 3oure lande; and wip gode wille 3ow wil *serue*, and 3our¹ lande helpe, kepe, & defende fram² 3oure enemys, if þat 3ow nedep." ¶ when Vortiger⁴ herde þis tydynges,³ he saide he wolde gladeliche⁴ wiphalde ham, oppoñ soche couenant, if þai myzt delyuer⁵ his lande of⁶ his enemys, he wolde 3eue ham resonable landes, wher⁷ þai shulde duelle for euermore. ¶ Engist þankede him godeliche; and in þis maner⁸ he and his company, ¶ xj. M¹ men, shulde duelle wip þe Kyng Vortiger; and so miche þai deden⁵ þrouz here boldenesse, þat þai delyuerede þe lande clene of here⁶ enemys. ¶ þo praiede Engist þe Kyng⁸, of so miche lande þat he myzt make to him a citee, for
12 him and for his menyne.⁷ ¶ The kyng ansuerede⁸ & saide,⁸ 'it was nouzt forto done⁹ wipouten¹⁰ conseile of his Britons.' ¶ Engist prayede him eftesones of as miche place as he myzt compassse wip a twonge of a skyn, wher¹¹-oppoñ he myzt make him
16 a maner¹¹, and for his to duelle in¹¹; and þe kyng grantede it¹² frely. ¶ þo tok¹³ Engist a bole skyn, and cotte it as smale as he myzt, al¹⁴ into a twonge al rounde, & þer-wip compassede as miche lande as he¹⁵ compassede; wher-oppoñ he¹⁵ made¹⁶ a faire castel.
20 and when þis castel was ymade,¹⁷ he lete calle it Twongecastel, for-asmiche as þe place was merkede wip a twonge.

Of Ronewenne, þat was Engistes daughter¹⁸, and how¹⁹ Kyng¹⁹ Vortyger [spou]sede her²⁰ for here beaute.²⁰ C. lvij^{mo}.

24 **W**hen þis castel was makede,²¹ and ful wel arraiede, Engist priuely sent bi lettre into þe contre þat he come of, after²² an²² hundrede shippis filledde with strange²³ men þat were bolde and wel feiztyng²³ in alle batailes; and þat þai shulde bryng²³ wip
28 ham Ronewenne, his douzter, þat was þe fairest creature þat eny²⁴ man myzt see. ¶ And when þe peple was comen, þat he hade²² sende after²⁵, he toke²⁵ ham into þe castel wip michel²⁶ ioye; and him²⁷ him-self, vppoñ a day, went vnto þe kyng²⁷, and prayede him
32 derworly²⁸ þat he wolde come and see his new maner²⁸, þat he hade made in þe place þat he hade compassede wip þe²⁹ twong of þe

1—1 be come O. 2 fro O. 3 tydyng^t DO. 4 gladly DO.
5 dede O. 6 his DO. 7 meyne O. 8—8 om. DO. 9 do O.
10 wip-oute D. with-oute O. 11 on DO. 12 him D. hym O.
13 nome DO. 14 om. O. 15—15 om. DO. 16 made vpon O.
17 made D. 18 leaf 22. 19 how þe D. 20—20 om. O. 21 made O.
22 om. D. 23 stronge D. 24 a DO. 25 nome DO. 26 mych O.
27 om. DO. 28 derworly D. deworly O. 29 a D.

skyn. þe kyng anone *grantede*¹ him frely, and wiþ him went pider², and was wel payede wiþ þe castel & wiþ þe faire werk³; and togederes þere þai eten and dranken⁴ wiþ michel⁵ ioye. ¶ And when nyzt come, þat⁶ þe kyng shulde go into his chambre forto⁷ 4 take þere his nyztes reste, Ronewenne, þat was Engistes douzter⁸, come wiþ a coupe of golde in here honde, and knelede bifore þe kyng⁹, and saide to him “Whatsaile!” and þe kyng wist nouzt what it was forto¹⁰ mene, ne what he shulde ansuere, for-asmiche as 8 himself¹¹ ne none of his Britons zitte coupe¹² none Engilsshe speke, ne vnderstonde it, but speken¹³ þo þat¹⁴ same langage þat Britons zitte done. ¶ Noþeles, a Latymer¹⁵ tolde þe kyng¹⁶ þe fulle vnderstandyng¹⁷ þerof ‘whatsaill’; and 9 þat oper¹⁸ shulde¹⁹ ansuere²⁰ 12 ‘drynkehaile’: and þat was þe ferst tyme þat ‘whatsaile’ and ‘drynkehaile’ come vp into þis lande; and fram²¹ þat²² tyme into²³ 13 this tyme it Hap bene wel vsede. ¶ The Kyng Vortiger²⁴ saw²⁵ þe fairenesse of Ronewenne, and his²⁶ armes layde aboute here 16 nek²⁷, and þries²⁸ swetely cussede hir²⁹; and anone ryzt he was vnarmede oppoñ hire, þat he desirede to haue here to wyf, and axede of Engist³⁰ hir³¹ fader³². and Engist *grantede*,³³ oppoñ þis couenaunt þat þe kyng shulde zeue him al the³⁴ 19 contre of Kent³⁵, þat 20 he myzt duelle in, and al his³⁶ peple. þe kyng hym *grantede* priuely with a gode wille; and anone after³⁷ he spousede þe damiseß. þat was miche *confusion* to himself³⁸; and þerfor al þe Britouns bcome so wroþ, for enchesouñ þat he hade spousede a womman of mysbileue, 24 wherfore þai went al from³⁹ 21 him, and noþing⁴⁰ 22 to him toke kepe, ne helpe him in þinges þat he hade to done.

How Vortymere, þat was Vortigers sone, was made kyng¹, & Engist dryuen oute; & how Vortymer² was slayn þrouz 28 Ronewenne. ¶ *Capitulo lviii*º.

THis Engist went into Kent, and seisede al þe lande into²³ his hande, for him and for al²⁴ his men; and bcome in⁴ a litel while of so grete power³, & so miche peple hade, þat men wist 32 nouzt in litel tyme, whiche were þe kynges men, & whiche were

¹ graunt O. ² drunken O. ³ mych O. ⁴ om. D.

⁵ to DO. ⁶ coude O. ⁷ spoken D. ⁸ þe O.

⁹⁻⁹ þe oper shul D. þat other O. ¹⁰ Answere schul be O.

¹¹ fro O. ¹² leaf 22, back. ¹³ to D.

¹⁴ MS. has Ronewenne; om. D. ¹⁵ þo saw D. whan he saw O.

¹⁶ altered from hir by the same hand. ¹⁷ iij DO. ¹⁸ om. O.

¹⁹ him al the D. hym al þe O. him R. ²⁰ MS. his his.

²¹ fro O. ²² þo þing sic D. ²³ in O. ²⁴ om. DO.

Engistes men. wherfore al Britaigne hade of ham¹ drede, and saide amonges ham þat, if þai ne toke oþere counseil bituene² ham, al þe lande shulde be bitrayede þrouz Engist and his peple.

4 ¶ Vortyger þe kyng hade bigeten³ on his ferst wif⁴ iij sones: þe ferst me callede Vortymer⁵; þe secunde, Catagren; and þe þridde, Passent. þe Britons, euerychoñ⁴ by one assent⁵, chosen⁵ Vortymer forto bene⁶ here lorde, & here souerayne, and hir⁷ consailer⁷ in 8 euery⁷ bataile, and cronede him, and made him Kyng⁸, and Wolde⁸ soffre Vortiger⁸ no longer⁸ to regne, for enchesouñ of þe alliance bituene Engist and him. ¶ þe Britons ordeynede a grete host to drif out Engist and his company of þe lande, and 3af him iij 12 batailles: þe ferst was in Kent, þere þat he was lorde; þe secunde was att Tetteford⁸; and þe þridde was in a shire a þis half Cool, in a more. & in þis batail ham mette Cattedren and Horn, Engistes broþer, so þat eueryche⁹ of ham slouz oþer; but for-asmiche as¹⁰ þe 16 contre was 3euen¹¹ longe bifore to Horn, þrouz Vortyger, þo he hade spousede his cosyn; þere he hade made a faire castel þat me callede Horncastel, after⁹ his owen name. ¶ And Vortymere was so annoiede for his broþeres deþ, Cattedren, þat he was dede in soche 20 a maner⁹; wherfore anone he lete felle þe castel to þe¹² grounde, and after⁹ þat,¹² he ne lefte nyzt ne day til he hade dryuen¹³ out Engist and aþ his peple of þe lande. ¶ And when Engist was dryuen¹³ away, Ronewenne his douzter made sorwe ynow, and 24 queyntly spake to ham þat were nexte þe kyng Vortymere,¹⁴ and priueest wiþ him. and so miche she 3af ham of 3iftes, þat he was apoysenede, & deide at Londoñ þe iiii 3ere of his regne; & þere he lith.

28 How þe Britons chosen¹⁵ a-noþere tyme Vortyger to bene¹⁶ here king⁹; and Engist come into þis lande a3eyne, & þai fouzten to-gedres.¹⁷ ¶ *Capitulo lix^o.*

32 **A**fter⁹ Vortymeres deþ,¹⁸ þe Britons, by here commune assent, Eftesones made Vortyger here kyng⁹, vppoñ þis couenaunt, þat he shulde neuer after⁹ soffren¹⁹ Engist, ne none of his, eftesones shulde²⁰ come into þis lande. ¶ And when al þis was done,

¹ MS. ham a, with a underlined for omission. him D. hym O.

² bituenes D. ³ bygete O. ⁴ echeon O. ⁵ closen sic D. ⁶ be DO.

⁷ leaf 23. ⁸ wolde nouzt D. ⁹ eche O. ¹⁰ þat O. ¹¹ 3eue D. yeue O.

¹² om. O. ¹³ dryve O. ¹⁴ Vortiger O. ¹⁵ chose O. ¹⁶ be O.

¹⁷ to-gidere O. ¹⁸ deth the britouns D. deth þe brytouns O. deþ R.

¹⁹ soffre D. suffre O. ²⁰ om. DO.

Ronewenne þe Quene¹ sent priuely¹ by lettre to Engist, that she hade enpoisenede Vortymer², and þat Vortyger³ her³ lorde² aʒeyne bare þe croune and regnede, and þat he shulde come aʒeyne into³ þat lande, wel arraiede wiþ miche peple, forto avenge him vpon⁴ þe Britons, and to wynne his lande aʒeyne. ¶ of þis tydyng Engist made grete ioye, and apparailede him hastely wiþ xv M¹ men þat were douʒty en euery batail. And when Vortyger herde telle þat Engist was comen⁴ aʒeyne wiþ a grete power⁵ into þis lande, he⁸ assemblede his Britons, and þo went aʒeyns Engist forto haue ʒeue him bataile, and his folc; but Engist drade him sore of þe Britons, for þai hade descomfitede⁵ him biforn-hand, and dryuen him⁶ out by⁷ strengþ; wherfore Engist prayede him⁸ of a loue-day, and¹² saide he was nouʒt comen⁹ forto fiʒt, but forto¹⁰ haue his lande aʒeyne of Kent, if he might accorde wiþ þe Britons, and of ham haue grace. ¶¹¹ The Kyng¹ Vortiger,¹¹ prouʒ conseile of his Britons,¹² grauntede a loue-day¹²; and þus it was ordeynede prouʒ þe Britons,¹⁶ þat þilk¹³ loue-day shulde¹⁴ ben holden¹⁴ faste bisides Salesbury, vpon¹⁵ an¹⁵ huʒ; and Engist shulde come þider¹⁶ wiþ iii^c knyʒtes, wiþouten¹⁶ mo, and þe kyng wiþ as meny of þe wisest of þis¹⁷ lande. ¶ And at þat day þe kyng come wiþ his conseil, as it was²⁰ ordeynede; but Engist hade warnede his knyʒtes priueliche,¹⁸ and¹⁹ ham commandede þat eueryche²⁰ of ham shulde put a Longe Knyf in his hose; and when he saide, “faire sires! now is tyme forto²¹ speke of loue and pees,” eueryche²² anone, eueryche⁸ shulde draw²⁴ his knyf & slee a Britouñ. & so þai quellede xxx M¹ & lxj of knyʒtes; and wiþ miche sorwe meny of ham ascapede; and Vortyger him-self was taken²³ and Lade to Twongecastel, and put into prisouñ; and somme of Engistes men wolde þat þe kyng²⁸ hade bene²⁴ brent al quykt. ¶ And Vortiger³⁰ þo, to haue his lif, grauntede ham as miche as þai²⁵ wolde axen,²⁵ and ʒaf vp aʒ þe lande, tounes and castelles, citees and Burghes, to Engist and to his folc. and alle þe Britons fledde þenns into Walys, and þere³² helde ham stille. and Engist went prouʒ þe lande, and seisede alle þe lande with ffraunchises; and in euery place lete caste adoune

¹⁻¹ priueliche sent D. priuily sent O. ² leaf 23, back. ³ to O.

⁴ MS. cocomen; come O. ⁵ scomfitede D. scomfited O.

⁶ om. O. ⁷ with DO. ⁸ om. DO. ⁹ come into þis lande DO.

¹⁰ to O. ¹¹⁻¹¹ And kyng¹ Vortiger graunt a loue-day D. The kyng O.

¹²⁻¹² om. D. ¹³ þat same D. þ^e same O.

¹⁴⁻¹⁴ be holde D. be hold O. ¹⁵ a D. ¹⁶ without DO.

¹⁷ his DO. ¹⁸ priuily O. ¹⁹ & to D. ²⁰ eche O. ²¹ to DO.

²² eche O. ²³ leaf 24. ²⁴ be O. ²⁵⁻²⁵ wolden axe O.

cherchez and houses of religioun, and destroyede Cristendome
 prouz þe lande, and lete chaunge þe name of þe lande, þat no man
 of his were so hardy after þat tyme to calle þis¹ lande Britaigne,
 4 but calle it Engistes lande; and he² departede alle þat lande to his
 men, and þere made vij kynges forto strengþ þe lande, þat þe
 Britons shulde neuer after come þerin. ¶ The ferst kyngdome
 was Kent, þere þat Engist him-self regnede, and was lorde &
 8 maystre ouer al þe² oþere; ¶ An oþere kyng hade Southseġ, where
 now is Chichestre; ¶ The þridde kyng hade Westseġ; The ferþe
 kyng hade Esseġ; ¶ The v kyng hade Estangle, þat now is callede
 Northfolc,³ Southfolc,⁴ Merchemeriche, þat⁵ is to seynt, þe Erl dome
 12 of Nichol; ¶ þe sixte hade Leycestreshire, Northamptonshire,
 Hereford and Huntyngdoun; ¶ The vij hade Oxenford, Gloucestr,
 Wynchestre, Warwik and Darby-shire.

How Vortiger went into Walis, and biganne þere a castel, þat
 16 **wolde nouzt stande wipouten⁶ mortar temprede wip**
mannes⁷ blode. ¶ Capitulo ¶ Sexagesimo.

WHen Engist hade departede al þe lande in this maner
 bituene his men, he delyuerede Vortiger out of prison,
 20 and soffrede hym frely⁹ to gone⁹ whider þat² he wolde. and he
 toke¹⁰ his way, ¹¹and went¹¹ into Walys, þere þat¹² his Britons
 duellede, for-asmiche as þat lande was strong and wikkede to
 wynne. and Engist ¹³neuer come¹³ þere, ne knew¹⁴ neuer bifore
 24 þat Lande. ¶ Vortiger helde him þere wip his Britons, and axede
 conseil what him⁴ was best al⁴ forto done; and þai 3af him conseil
 to make a stronge castel þat he myzt him-self þerin kepe and
 defende¹⁵ if it² nede were. Masounes in hast þere¹⁶ were fette, and
 28 bigonne þe werk oppoñ þe huft of Breigh; but certes þus it bi-felle,
 þat⁷ al the werk þat⁴ þe masounes made¹⁷ aday, adoune it felle
 anyzt; and þat ferede so iij tymes or iiij, wherof þai hadden¹⁸ grete
 wonder what it myzt bene¹⁹; & þerof þe kyng was sore annoiede of
 32 þat chaunce, and wist nouzt what to done; wherfore he lete sende
 after þe wisest clerkes, and also lewede men þat weren²⁰ prouz-out
 Walys, þat myght bene²¹ fonde, for þai shulde telle wherfore þe

¹ þat D. ² om. O. ³ Northfolk & O. ⁴ om. D.

⁵ þat now O. ⁶ with-oute DO. ⁷ om. DO. ⁸ leaf 24, back.

⁹⁻⁹ go D. to go O. ¹⁰ nome DO. ¹¹⁻¹¹ om. D. ¹² as D.

¹³⁻¹³ come neuer D. ¹⁴ knew it D. knewe yt O. ¹⁵ defende yt O.

¹⁶ þo DO. ¹⁷ masouns made DO. masounes R.

¹⁸ hade D. had O. ¹⁹ be O. ²⁰ were O. ²¹ be DO.

foundement so failede vnde[r] þe werk, and þat þai shulde him telle what was best to done. and when þe wisest men¹ longe tyme hade studiet, þai saide to þe kyng¹ þat 'he shulde done² sike a childe borne of a woman þat neuer hade wiþ man to done,² & þat 4 childe he shulde sleen,³ & temper wiþ his⁴ blode þe mortar of þe werk, & so shulle⁵ þe werke⁶ endure euermore⁶ wiþouten ende.'

How þe kyng¹ lete seche Merlyn⁷ þrouz al Walys forto speke wiþ him. *Capitulo lxj.* 8

WHen þe kyng herde þis, he commandede his messagers anone to wende þrouz-out al Walys, to seche þat childe if þai myght⁸ him fynde,⁸ and þat þai⁹ shulde¹⁰ brynge him forthwiþ ham vnto him. and in recorde and witesse of þis þing, he toke¹¹ 12 ham his *lettres*,¹² þat þai¹ ne were¹³ destourblede of no man, ne lette. ¶ And so faste¹⁴ spede ham¹⁴ the messagers, þat þai come vnto¹⁵ a toune þat me callede Kermerdyn; and as þai passede fourth in¹⁶ here way, þai fonden ij childerne of xiiij zere age¹⁷ chiddyng togeder¹⁷ 16 wiþ hastif wordes; and one of ham saide to þat oþer "Donebat," *quod* he, "ze¹⁸ done al wronge to chide or strif wiþ me, for ze haue no witte ne resouñ as I haue." ¶ "Certes, Merlyn," *quod*¹⁹ þat oþere,¹⁹ "of zoure witte and²⁰ of zour' resouñ y make no forse, for men²⁰ 21 telleþ *communeliche*²¹ þat ze haue no þing of god, siþ ze hade neuer' fader', but alle men weten²² wel ho is zoure moder'." ¶ The kynges messagers, when þai herde þis strif bituene þo ij gromes, þai axede of men þat²³ stoden bituene²³ ham, whens þat Merlyn was born,²⁴ &²⁴ who him norisshe; and þe folc ham tolde þat a grete gentil-woman him bare in Kermerdyne, þat me callede Adhan, but neuere myzt men²⁵ wete who was²⁶ þe childes fader'. ¶ When þe messagers herde þis tydynges,²⁷ þai went anone to him þat was wardeyne of þe²⁸ toune, and tolde him þe kynges wille and his *lettres*,²⁸ wherfore þai were comen²⁹ þider'. ¶ Merlyn and his moder' anone were sent³⁰ bifore þe wardeyne of þe toune, and he commandede ham⁹ þat þai

¹ om. O. ² do D. ³ slee D. sle O. ⁴ þe O. ⁵ schuld O.

⁶⁻⁸ euer' endur' D. euere endure O. ⁷ seche Merlyn DO. seche R.

⁸⁻⁸ fynde hym O. ⁹ om. D. ¹⁰ leaf 25. ¹¹ had take O.

¹² lettre O. ¹³ weren O. ¹⁴⁻¹⁴ þo spede D. þo spedde O.

¹⁵ in-to O. ¹⁶ om. DO. ¹⁷⁻¹⁷ chidden ifere D. chidden y-fere O.

¹⁸ MS. ze beþ, with beþ underlined for erasure. ¹⁹⁻¹⁹ þe toþer O.

²⁰ ne DO. ²¹⁻²¹ telle comunly O. ²² wot O.

²³⁻²³ stode bisides D. stoden by-sydes O. ²⁴ and also DO.

²⁵ man O. ²⁶ mizt be D. myght be O. ²⁷ tyding D. tydyng O.

²⁸ lettre DO. ²⁹ come O. ³⁰ sent after D.

shulde gone¹ to þe kyng^t, as hit was ordeynede by his² messagers. ¶ Merlyn and his moder^r come³ vnto⁴ þe kyng^t, and were vnderfonge wiþ michel⁵ honour^r; and þe kyng axede of þat lady ‘if þat childe were her^r sone, and who him bigate.’⁶ ¶ The lady ansuerede, ful tender⁷ wepyng^t, and saide she hade neuer^r company of man⁸ worldely^r; “but, sire,” *quod* shee, “as y was a zonge maiden in my faderes chambre, and opere of⁹ grete lynage were in my 8 company, þat ofte were wont to playe and to solacen, I beleste allone in my chaumbre¹⁰ of my fader^r,¹⁰ & wolde nouzt goñ¹¹ out, for brennyng of þe sone. ¶ And oppoñ a tyme þere come a faire bachiler^r, and entrede into my chaumbre þere þat I was allone; but 12 how he come into me, & wher^r, I wiste neuer^r,¹² ne zitte wote, for þe dores were fast barrede; and wiþ me he dede game of loue, for I¹³ nade noþer¹³ myzt ne power^r him to defende fro me; and ofte he come to me in the forsaide maner, so þat he bigate one me þis same 16 childe; but neuer^r myzt y wete of him what he was, ne whens he come, ne what was his name.”

Of þe ansuere of Merlyn, wherfore þe kyng axede whi his werkt myght nouzt stande þat he hade bigonne,¹⁴ myzt nouzt proue.¹⁴ *Capitulo lxi*º.

20 **W**Hen Merlyn hade herde al þat his moder^r hade saide, he spake¹⁵ to þe kyng in this maner^r: “sire, how y was bigeten, axe ze no more, for hit falleþ nouzt to zow ne to none 24 opere¹⁶ forto wete¹⁶; but¹⁷ telle me þe¹⁷ enchesone wherfore I ame to zow brouzt, and wherfore ze haue sent after^r me.” ¶ “Certes,” *quod* þe kyng^t, “my wise concelers hauen¹⁸ done¹⁹ me to vnderstonde þat þe morter of a werkt þat I haue done bigonne biheueþ,²⁰ ben²¹ 28 temperede wiþ zour^r blode, or þe fundement shal faile for euer^rmore.” ¶ “Sire,” *quod* Merlyn, “wille ze slee me for my blode forto temper wiþ zoure morter^r?” “Ze,” *quod* þe kyng, “or elles shal neuer my castel stonde, as my conselers done²² me to vnderstonde.” 32 ¶ þo ansuerede Merlyn to þe kyng^t: “sire,” he saide, “late ham come bifore²³ me, þo wise²⁴ conselers, and I wil proue þat þai say

¹ go O. ² þe O. ³ comen DO. ⁴ to O. ⁵ mych O.

⁶ gate D. ⁷ tendirly O. ⁸ leaf 25, back.

⁹ MS. of god^t, with god^t underlined for erasure.

¹¹ go O. ¹² neuer wher^r D. ¹³ neuer where O. ¹⁰⁻¹⁰ om. D. ¹³⁻¹³ hade no D.

¹⁴⁻¹⁴ om. D. ne prove O. ¹⁵ spok^t D. ¹⁶⁻¹⁶ om. O.

¹⁷⁻¹⁷ telleþ me D. telleth me O. ¹⁸ haue DO. ¹⁹ do O.

²⁰ bihoueth D. byhoueþ O. ²¹ to be O. ²² do O.

²³ leaf 26. ²⁴ om. D.

nouzt wel ne trewely. and when þe¹ wise were comen, Merlyn axede if his blode were þe enchesouñ to make þe² werke stande to³ endure. Alle þise⁴ wise were abasshede, and couþ nouzt ansuere. ¶ Merlyn þo saide to þe kyng^t: “sire, I shal telle 3ow þe encheson⁴ wherfore 3our^t werk^t þus faileþ⁵ and may nouzt stande. þere is vnder þe mountaigne þere þat⁶ 3e haue bigonne 3our^t tour^t a grete ponde of water; and in þe botume of þe ponde, vnder^t þe water, þere beþ ij dragons,—þat one is white, and þat oþere⁷ rede,—þat⁸ fei3ten to-geder ageyne⁸ 3oure werk^t. Doþ myne depe til 3our^t men come to the ponde, and doth 3our^t men take away þe water al out, and þan 3e shul see þe dragons, as I haue 3ow tolde, ⁹þo togederes⁹ fei3ten ageyne¹⁰ 3our^t werk; and þis is þe¹¹ ¹²enchesouñ, certes, wher-¹² fore¹² 3our^t¹³ fundament faileþ.¹⁴” ¶ the kyng^t anone lete degge vnder^t, til þat men come to þe¹⁵ ponde, & lete do¹⁶ away al þe water; and þere þai fonde ij dragons, as Merlyn hade tolde, þat egrely fou3ten togederes¹⁷; þe white dragouñ egrely assailede þe rede, and ¹⁶ laide on him so strong^t¹⁸ þat he myzt nouzt endure, but wiþdrowe him, & hidde him in the same Cafe, and restede. ¶ And when he hade awhile restede, he went bifore, and assailede þe rede dragouñ angrely, and assailede¹⁹ him so sore þat he myzt nouzt a3eynes him ²⁰ endure, but with-drow him and restede. And after^t come a3eyne þe white dragouñ, and strongly fouzt wiþ þe reede dragoune, and bote him euel, & him ouer-come, þat he fley þens, and nomore come a3eyne. 24

²⁰ Of þe significacions²¹ of þo ij dragounes þat were in þe botume of þe ponde, þat fou3ten togederes.²² *Capitulo Sexagesimo tercio.*

THe Kyng Vortiger^t and his men, þat saw ²³þis bataile,²³ hade²⁴ ²⁸ grete mervaile, and praede Merlyn to telle him what it myght bitoken. “Sire,” quod Merlyn, “y shal 3ow telle: the rede dragouñ bitokeneþ²⁵ 3oure-self^t, & þe white bitokeneþ þe folc of Saxoine, þat ferst 3e toke and helde²⁶ in þis lande, þat now fei3ten a3eines 3ow, ³²

¹ pise D. ² 3our O. ³ and D. ⁴ þe O.

⁵ faille3 D. falleþ O. ⁶ om. D. ⁷ oþere is D. oþer is O.

⁸ a3eynes D. a3ens O. ⁹⁻⁹ þat to-geder D. ⁹ þat togider O.

¹⁰ a3eynes D. ¹¹ om. O. ¹²⁻¹² cause whi that D. ¹³ þe O.

¹⁴ failles D. ¹⁵ þat DO. ¹⁶ done DO. don O. ¹⁷ to-gidere O.

¹⁸ strongelich D. strongly O. ¹⁹ helde D. held O. ²⁰ leaf 26, back.

²¹ significaciouñ D. significacion O. ²² togider O.

²³⁻²³ that batail þai D. þe batayñt O. ²⁴ hadden O.

²⁵ bitokenes D. ²⁶ helden D.

and 3ow haue¹ dryuen and enchacede.² ¶ But þe Britons þat bene
of 3our' lynage ouercome³ ham, and dryuen ham awhile; and siþen,⁴
at þe comyng a3eyne of þe Saxoynes, þai recouerede þis lande, and
4 helde hit for euermore, and dryuen⁵ oute þe Britouns, and dede wiþ
þis lande al her' wille, & destriede cristendome þrouzoute þis lande.
¶ 3e hade ferst' ioye of here⁶ commyng', but⁶ now it is turnede to
3ow grete damage & sorwe; ffor þo ij breþerne of Constance þat was
8 kyng, þat⁷ 3e lete slee, ⁸shul comen⁸ bifore a Quinzime passede wiþ
a grete power' fram litel Britaigne, and shul avenge þe deþ of hire
broþer⁹: þai shal brenne 3ow ferst wiþ sorwe, & after' þai shul sle
a grete partie of þe¹⁰ Saxoynes, and shul dryue al þe remanent¹¹
12 oute¹⁰ of the lande; and þerfore abide 3e¹² no longer' to¹³ make no
casteH ne none oþere werk', but anone gone¹⁴ ellez-where, 3oure lif¹⁵
forto saue. to God I 3ow bitake, for treuþ I haue ¹⁶I-saide to 3ow¹⁶
of þing' þat shal bifalle. And vnderstonde¹⁷ wel þat Aurilambros
16 shal bene¹⁸ kyng', but he shal bene¹⁸ enpoisenede,¹⁹ and litil
while²⁰ regne."

Of Kyng' Aurilambros; how he persuede Vortiger and Engist,
and how þai deiden. *Capitulo Sexagesimo Quarto.*

20 **M**Erlyn and his moder' departede fro þe kyng', and turnede
²¹a3eyne to Kermerdyn. and so after' tydynges²² come to
þe Britons þat Aurilambros and Vter' his broþer' were²³ arryuede at
Tottensesse wiþ a grete host, and þe Britouns anone assemblede
24 ham, & went to vnderfong Aurilambros and Vter' wiþ grete nobleye,
& ladde ham to Londoñ, and cronede þere Aurylambros, and
made him kyng', and deden²⁴ to him homage. and he axede
wher' Vortiger þat was kyng myght ²⁵bene founden,²⁵ for he⁷ wolde
28 bene²⁶ avengede of²⁷ his broþeres deþ, and after' he wolde werre
oppon paynymes: and þai tolde him þat Vortiger' was in Walis;
and so þai ladde him²⁸ piderward.²⁹ ¶ Vortiger' wist wel þat þo ij
breþerne come³⁰ him to conquere, & fleye þens into a castel þat me⁷

¹ hauen O. ² enchacen O. ³ ouercomen O. ⁴ seþ O.

⁵ dryue O. ⁶⁻⁶ company and D. ⁷ om. D.

⁸⁻⁸ shul come D. schullen come O. ⁹ broþer and D. broþer and O.

¹⁰ om. O. ¹¹ remaunte D. remnaunt O. ¹² 3e her' D. 3e here O.

¹³ MS. tok. ¹⁴ goþ D. goth O. ¹⁵ lif al D. lyf al O.

¹⁶⁻¹⁶ 3ow saide D. seyð to 3ow O. ¹⁷ vndirstondþ O. ¹⁸ be DO.

¹⁹ poysenede D. ²⁰ tyme DO. ²¹ leaf 27.

²² tydyng D. dydyng sic O. ²³ weryn O. ²⁴ dede DO.

²⁵⁻²⁵ be founde DO. ²⁶ be O. ²⁷ on O. ²⁸ hem O.

²⁹ pider D. ³⁰ comen O.

callede¹ Generth, þat stode vppon an hye mounteyne, & þere him
 helde. ¶ Aurylambros, and Vter² his broþer, and hire folc, hade
 bisegede þe castel² longe tyme, for þe castel was stronge and wel
 arraiede; so at þe laste þai cast wilde fire, and brent hous and men,⁴
 and al here arraye, & as miche as was wipin þe castel, so þat Vortiger
 was brent amonge alle opere; and so deide he *with* michel³ sorwe.
 ¶ Þo was Engist in Kent, and regnede þere, and herde þis tydynges⁴
 and anone fledde, and wolde haue wende⁵ into Scotland⁶ forto haue⁸
 hade socour; but Aurilambros and his men mette wip him in the
 North contre, and 3af him bataile, & Engist and his men ham
 defendede whiles⁶ þai⁷ myght, but he and his folc were descom-
 fitede and slayn, and Otta his sone⁸ fley⁹ vnto¹⁰ 3ork, & Aurilam-
 12 bros him folwede egrely. Otta, a litel while a3eynes him stode, but
 afterwarde he put him to¹¹ his mercy, and Aurilambros vnderfonge
 him; & to him and to his men he⁸ 3af þe contre of Galway in
 Scotland⁶, and þere þai duellede. ¶ The Kyng Aury¹²lambros went¹⁶
 þo þrouz þe lande, and put awaye þe name of Engistes lande, þat
 E[n]gist, after his owen name hade callede bifore, þo lete he¹³ it calle¹³
 a3eyne Grete Britaigne, and lete make a3eyne cherches,¹⁴ houses of
 religioun, castelles,¹⁵ citees, and burghes and tounes þat þe Saxoynes²⁰
 hade destroiede, and come¹⁶ to Londoñ, and lete make a3eyne the
 Wallis of þe citee, whiche Engist & his folc hade caste adoune.
 ¶ Þe Britons ladde him to þe mount of Anbrian, wher² some tyme
 was an house of religioun þat þo was destriede þrouz paynemys,²⁴
 whe[re] of a knyght þat⁸ me callede Anbry, þat some tyme was
 foundour of þe hous, and þerfor þe hulle¹⁷ was callede þe mount
 of Bryan,¹⁸ and after was callede Ambresbery, and shal for
 eueremore.

28

**How Aurilambros dede redresse þe lande of Grete Britaigne,
 þat was destroiede þrouz Saxoynes. ¶ Capitulo ¶ Sexa-
 gesimo ¶ Quinto.**

THe¹⁹ Kyng Aurilambros lete amende and redresse þe hous of³²
 Ambresbery, and þerin put monkes, but now þere beth²⁰
 nonnes; a litil fram²¹ þe place þat me calleþ²¹ Salesbury, þere þat

¹ calleþ DO. ² castelle ful D. Castel ful O. ³ mych O.
⁴ tydyng O. ⁵ went O. ⁶ while D. ⁷ þat y sic O.
⁸ om. D. ⁹ fly O. ¹⁰ into D. ¹¹ into D. ¹² leaf 27, back.
¹³⁻¹³ calle yt O. ¹⁴ cherches and DO. ¹⁵ castell D.
¹⁶ comen DO. ¹⁷ mont D. ¹⁸ Anbriañ D.
¹⁹ How the D. How þe O. ²⁰ ben DO. ²¹⁻²¹ om. D.

þe Britouns were¹ quellede² in þat place þat² ³Vortiger' & Engist³ shulde haue made a loueday, in whiche place⁴ þere were slayne⁵ xxx M⁵ knyȝtes þrouȝ tresouñ of Engist. ¶ þe kyng þerof hade⁴ grete pitee, & þouȝt to make, in mynde of ham, a monument of stone þat myȝt endure to⁶ þe worldes ende. and of þis þing þai tok⁷ here conseile what þerof was best to done. ¶ þo spake to þe kyng þe bishop of Londoñ þat me called Ternekyn, þat he shulde enquere⁸ after' Merlyn, for he couȝe best telle how þis þing miȝt bene⁸ made. and merlyn after' was souȝt⁹ and founde, & come to þe kyng'; and þe kyng tolde him his wille of þe monument þat he wolde haue made. ¶ þo ansuerede Merlyn to þe kyng',¹⁰ and saide: "þere beþ¹² grete stones in Irlande, and longe vpon the hulle of Kyan þat men calleþ¹¹ þe geant¹¹ caroH; and if þai were put in þis place as þai beþ¹² þere, here þai wolde endure euermore, in remembraunce of þo knyghtes þat here beþ enterede." "Par ma foy," quod þe kyng',¹⁶ "as herde stones beth in my londe as beth in Irland." "soþ," quod Merlyn, "but in aH þour lande beth non soche, for Geaunteȝ sette ham for grete gode of hamself, ffor atte euery tyme þat þai were wonded, or in eny maner' hurt, þai wasshen þe stones wiþ hote²⁰ water, & þan wosshen¹³ ham þerwiþ, and anone þai were hole."

How þe Britons went forto seche þe grete stones in Irland.
Capitulo lxvj^{to}.

When þe¹⁴ Britons hade herde of þis þing', þai went and²⁴ sworn¹⁵ ifere amonges ham, þat¹⁶ þai wolde gone¹⁷ to seche þe stones; and toke¹⁸ wiþ ham Vter', þe kynges broþer, to bene¹⁹ here cheueteȝne, & xv M¹ men; and Merlyn conseilede ham forto gone²⁰ into Irlande, and so þai deden.²¹ ¶ And when þe Kyng²⁸ of Irland, þat me callede Guillomer', herde telle þat straungers were arryuede in his lande, he assemblede a grete power', and fouȝt aȝeyns ham; but he & his folc were descomfitede. the Britons went fourþ²² til þai come to þe mount of Kylyan, and clymede vnto þe³² mount; but when þai saw þe stones, and þe maner' how þai stoden,²³ þai hadden²⁴ grete mervail, and saide bituene ham þat 'noman shulde

¹ om. O. ²⁻² where D. om. O. ³⁻³ Vortymer wher Engist and he O.

⁴ tyme O. ⁵⁻⁵ xxx M¹ lxij D. xxx M¹ and lxj O.

⁶ vn-to O. ⁷ nome DO. ⁸ be DO. ⁹ sent O.

¹⁰ leaf 28. ¹¹⁻¹¹ geaunts DO. ¹² ben DO.

¹³ wosshede D. wessh O. ¹⁴ þis D. ¹⁵ om. D. swore O.

¹⁶ swore D. ¹⁷ go DO. ¹⁸ nome DO.

¹⁹ MS. bene þe kyng, with þe kyng *underlined for erasure.* ²⁰ go O.

²¹ dede O. ²² biforn D. before O. ²³ stod O. ²⁴ hadde D. had O.

ham remeve, for no strenghe ne engyne, so huge þai weren,¹ and so long.⁷ But Merlyn, þrouz his crafte and queyntise, remevede ham, and brouzt ham into hire shippis, and come azeyn into þis lande. and Merlyn sette þe stōnes² þere þat³ þe Kyng wolde haue ham,⁴ and sette ham in þe same maner as⁴ þai stoden in Irland. and when þe kyng saw þat it was made, he þankede Merlyn, and ryhely him rewardede at his owen wille; & þat place he lete calle⁹ Stonhynges⁵ for euermore. 8

How Passent, þat was Vortiger; sonne, & þe Kyng³ Guillomer', come into þis land; and how a traitoure þat me callede Coppa, enpoisenede⁶ þe Kyng Aurilambros. ¶ Capitulo ¶ Sexagesimo Septimo. 12

ANd men shul vnderstonde þat Passent, þat was Vortigers sone, leuede in þe same tyme, and come into þis lande wiþ a grete power', and arryuede in þe Northcontre, & wolde bene⁷ avengede of his fadere; deþ Vortiger, and stronglich⁸ trust vppon⁹ þe com- 16 pany þat he hade brouzt wiþ him oute of þe lande of Germaine, and hade conquerede al þe Northcontre vnto 3ork'. ¶ And when Kyng Aurilambros herde þis, he assemblede a grete power' of Britons, and went forto feizt wiþ him; and Passent¹⁰ and his peple 20 were descomfitede. But Passent ascapede þens, wiþ some of his folc, and fledde þennes into Irland, and come to¹¹ Kyng Guillomer', and praede him of helpe and socoure. ¶ The kyng grantede him wiþ gode wil, and saide: "I wolde helpe 3ow oppoñ þat¹² couenaunt, þat 24 I my-self moste goñ¹³ wiþ 3ow wiþ al my power' into Britaigne, and I wolde me avenge vppoñ þe Britons,¹⁴ ¹⁵for þai comen¹⁶ into my londe.¹⁷ and¹⁵ token¹⁸ þe stōnes wiþ strengþ þat¹⁹ is callede Geant¹⁹ Caroil." þe Kyng Guillomere lete ordeyne his shippis, and went to 28 þe see wiþ xv M^t men, and arryuede in Walis, and bigonne to robbe and miche sorwe to done.²⁰ hit bifelle so þat Kyng Aurilambros lay sike at Wynchestre, and myght nouzt helpe²¹ himself, so þat he sent in his name Vter' his broþere, with a grete power', forto help 32 Walys; and þiderwarde²² he went as miche as he²² myzt. ¶ þe

¹ wer' D. were O. ² leaf 28, back. ³ om. D. ⁴ þat DO.

⁵ Stonehenge D. Stonehenge O. ⁶ poyssound O. ⁷ be O.

⁸ strongly D. strongly O. ⁹ of D. ¹⁰ he DO. ¹¹ to þe O.

¹² þe O. ¹³ go DO. ¹⁴ britouns the rapere D.

¹⁵⁻¹⁵ rapere þan þei in-to my land' comen and O. ¹⁶ come D.

¹⁷ lorde sic D. ¹⁸ toke D.

¹⁹⁻¹⁹ was callede Geant; D. called is Geant; O. ²⁰ do O.

²¹ leaf 29. ²²⁻²² þai went as fast as þai D.

Kyng of Irland, and Passent,¹ herde telle þat Aurylambros was sik²; and to ham² come a sarasine þat me clepede³ Coppa, and saide: “sire,⁴ duelle 3e here al⁵ in pees wiþ 3oure hoste, and y⁵ bihote
4 3ow, þrou3 my queyntise, þat I shal slee þe Kyng Aurylambros þat liþ sike.” “If 3e do,⁶” quod Passent, “y shal 3ow richely auauunce.” ¶ This traitoure Coppa put oppoñ him an habite of religioun, and lete shaue him a brode crone, and come to þe
8 kynges court, and saide þat he was a gode ffisician, and saide þat he wolde hele þe kyng of his malady. ¶ Tho saide þe traitour Coppa
7 vnto þe kyng⁷: “sire, beþ of gode comfort, for y shal 3eue 3ow soche a medecyne þat 3e shulle swete anone ry3t, and soft⁸ slepe,
12 and haue gode reste.” & þe traitour 3af him soche a poysoun þat he slepte⁹ anone ryght, and deide in his slepyng. and þe traitoure saide þat¹⁰ he wolde gone¹¹ oute into þe felde til þe kyng were awakede; and so scapede he away, for noman¹² to him hade¹²
16 suspesioñ, for enchesoun of his habit þat he was in cloþede, and also for his brode crone. ¶ But when þe kynges meny wist þat he was dede, þai bicome¹³ wonder' sory, and fast sou3t þe traitour; but¹⁴ þai mi3t nou3t hem fynde, for Coppa turnede a3eyne to þe
20 host fro whens that¹⁰ he come.

When Aurilambros was dede, a sterr in¹⁵ the morne¹⁶ was seyne with a clere light; & at the bou3te of þe beeme was
17 seye þe heuede of an horrible¹⁷ Dragouñ. ¶ Capitulo
24 ¶ Sexagesimo ¶ Octauo.

W Hen the Kyng Aurilambros was þus dede & enpysenede¹⁸ at Wynchestre, a morn,¹⁹ after' þat he was dede, aboute þe tyme of prime, þere was seyn a sterr' grete and clere; and þe beeme
28 of þe²⁰ sterr' was brighter þan þe sone; and at þe bou3t of þe beeme apperede a dragounes heuede,²¹ and oute of his mouþ²² comen ij huge li3te3 þat were as li3t²³ as²² eny fire brynnyng. ¶ And þat o²⁴ beeme went²⁵ towarde Fraunce, and strau3t ouere þe see þiderward; and
32 out of þat beem comen²⁶ vij beemes ful clere and longe, as it were þe li3t of fire. ¶ þis sterre was seyne of meny man²⁷; but none of

¹ Passent had O. ² him D. hym O. ³ callede D. Called O.

⁴ sir' D. sire quod' he O. ⁵ om. O. ⁶ done O. ⁷⁻⁷ om. D.

⁸ softly D. ⁹ slepe D. ¹⁰ om. D. ¹¹ go DO.

¹²⁻¹³ had to hym O. ¹³ bicomen D. bycomen O. ¹⁴ for D.

¹⁵ on D. ¹⁶ morwe D. ¹⁷⁻¹⁷ seyn þe hed of a O. ¹⁸ leaf 29, back.

¹⁹ a morowe O. ²⁰ that D. þat O. ²¹ heed' O.

²²⁻²² apperede ij li3tes huge and as bright as D. ²³ bright O.

²⁴ on D. ²⁵ it helde D. tilde O. ²⁶ come D. ²⁷ a man DO.

ham wist what it bitokenede. ¶ Vter¹, þat was þe kyngus broþer, þat was in Walys wiþ his hoste of Britouns, saw þat sterre, and þe grete lizt þat it¹ 3af. he wondrede þeron gretly, what it myzt bitoken; he² lete calle Merlyn, & praiede him ³forto telle³ what it 4 myzt bitokene.

Of þe bitokenyng of þat⁴ sterr¹. ¶ Capitulo Sexagesimo ix^o.

MErlyn saw þat sterre, and bihelde hit⁵ longe tyme, and siþenes⁶ he quok¹ and wepte tenderly; & saide: “allas, 8 allas! þat so noble⁷ kyng¹ and worþi is dede. and I do 3ow to vnderstonde þat Aurilambros, 3our broþer, is enpoysenede, and þat I se wel in þis sterre. and 3oure-self bitokeneþ bi þe heuede⁸ of þe dragoun þat is⁹ seyne at þe bouzt of þe beeme: þat is 3oureself, þat 12 shal bene¹⁰ kyng, and regne. and by þe beam þat stode¹¹ towarde þe Est, is vnderstonde þat 3e shal geten¹² a sone þat shal conquere al Fraunce and alle þe landes þat ¹³beþ longeyng¹³ to þe Kyng¹⁴ of Fraunce, þat shal bene¹⁵ a worþier¹ Kyng, and ¹⁶more of¹⁶ honoure 16 þan euer¹ was eny of his ancestres. ¶ And by þe beam þat stracchet¹⁷ towarde Irland¹, is bitokenede ¹⁸þat 3e shul bigete¹⁹ a douzter þat shal be quene of Irland¹; and þe vij beemes bitokenes²⁰ þat 3e²¹ shul haue vij sones; and eueryche²² of ham shal ²³bene kyng, 20 and²³ regne wiþ michel²⁴ honououre. and abide 3e no longer¹ here, but go²⁵ and 3if²⁶ batail to 3oure enemys, and feizt²⁷ wiþ ham boldely, for 3e shul ouercome ham and haue þe victorie.” Vter þankedede hertly Merlyn, and tok²⁸ his men, and went towarde his 24 enemys; and þai fouzten togeder¹ mortailly; and so ²⁹þai descomfitede²⁹ his enemys alle, & destroyede ham³⁰; & him-self quellede Passent, þat was Vortiger³ sone; and his Britons quellede Guillomer¹, þat was Kyng of Irland¹, and alle his men. and Vter 28 anone after¹ þat bataile tok his way toward¹ Wynchestre fort[o] done³¹ entier¹ Aurilambros kyng, þat was his broþer; but þo was þe³² body born³³ to Stonhyng¹ wiþ michel³⁴ honoure, þat he hade

¹ he O. ² and D. ³⁻³ om. D. ⁴ þe O. ⁵ him D. hym O.

⁶ Netheles O. ⁷ noble a D. nobly a O. ⁸ hede D. hed O.

⁹ is to O. ¹⁰ be DO. ¹¹ stondeth D. ¹² gete D. be-gete O.

¹³⁻¹³ longeþ D. ben longyng¹⁴ O. ¹⁴ croune D. croune O.

¹⁵ be DO. ¹⁶⁻¹⁶ of more DO. ¹⁷ stracches D. stretcheþ O.

¹⁸ leaf 30. ¹⁹ gete D. ²⁰ bitokenes D. betokeneth O. om. R.

²¹ sche O. ²² eche O.

²³⁻²³ be a kyng¹ and shullen D. be kyng and schul O. ²⁴ mych O.

²⁵ goþ DO. ²⁶ 3eueþ O. ²⁷ fighteth O. ²⁸ nome DO.

²⁹⁻²⁹ he descomfite D. he descomfited O. ³⁰ om. D. hym O.

³¹ do O. ³² his D. ³³ bore O. ³⁴ mych O.

¹done made¹ in remembrance of þe Britons þat þere were slayn þrouz tresoune of Engist, þat same day þat þai shulde haue bene accordede; & in the same place² þai enterede Aurilambros, þe
4 secunde zere of his regne, wiþ al þe worship þat myght ³bene longyng³ to soche a kyng, of whos soule God haue mercy!

Of Vter Pendragouñ; and wherfore he was callede so, after⁴ zþe shal⁴ here; &⁵ he was ouertake for þe grete loue of Igerne,
8 þat was þe ⁶Erles wif⁶ of Cornwaile.⁶ ¶ Capitulo ¶ Septuagesimo.

After þe deth of Aurylambros, Vter⁷ his broþer was cronede, and regnede wel and worþily; and in remembraunce of þe
12 dragons⁷ þat he was likenede to, he lete make ij dragounes þrouz conseile of his Britouns: þat one to ⁸bene borne⁸ bifore⁹ him when he went into bataile, & þat opere to abide at¹⁰ Wynchestre in the bisshoppes cherche; And for þat enchesouñ he was callede
16 euermore after⁷, Vter⁷ Pendragouñ. ¶ And Octa, þat was Engistes sone, commendet lital Vter⁷ þat was made newe kyng, and azeynes him biganne forto¹¹ meue werr, and ordeynede a grete company of his frendes & of his kynne, and of⁴ Ossa his broþer, and hade take¹²
20 al þe lande fro Humber⁷ vnto 3ork; ¹³but þo of 3ork¹³ helde strongely¹⁴ agayne ham, and nolde soffre ham come into þe toune, neyþer to zelde þe citee to ham; and he bisegede þe toune anone ryzt, and 3af þerto a stronge assaut,¹⁵ but tho¹⁶ of þe citee ham keped⁷ wel
24 and strongely. ¶ And when Vter herde þerof, he come þider⁷ wiþ a stronge¹⁷ power⁷ forto helpe and rescue þe toune, and put away þe sege, & 3af a stronge bataile; and Octa & his company ham defendede as wel as þai myzt, but at þe² last þai were descomfitede,
28 and þe moste part⁷ of ham quellede; and Octa & Ossa were taken,¹⁸ and put into prisouñ at London. ¶ And Vter⁷ him-self duellede awhile at 3ork, and after⁷, he went to Londoñ. and at¹⁹ Ester after²⁰ sewyng, he wolde bere crone, and helde²¹ a solempne feste, and
32 ²²lete sompne alle þe²³ Erles and barons, þat þai shulde come to þat

1-1 done make D. do made O. ² om. O.
3-3 bilonge D. be-longen O. ⁴⁻⁴ MS. me shal; men may D.
5 and how D. ⁶⁻⁶ Erle of Cornewalys wyf O. ⁷ dragoun DO.
8-8 be borne D. be bore O. ⁹ MS. bifore bifore; tofore O.
10 leaf 30, back. ¹¹ to DO. ¹² taken D. ¹³⁻¹³ supplied from D.
14 strong D. ¹⁵ saut D. ¹⁶ þai D. þey O.
17 grete D. gret O. ¹⁸ take O. ¹⁹ at the D. at þe O.
20 om. D. ²¹ holde D. hold O. ²²⁻²² om. O. ²³ his D.

feste; and²² alle þai¹ comen at² þe kynges commandement,³ as þai were commanded.³ ¶ The feste was richely holden,⁴ and alle worþely sette to þe⁵ mette after þat þai were⁶ of state,⁷ so þat⁸ þe Erl⁸ of Cornewaile & Igerne his wif⁴ setten alþer' next þe kyng⁴. and þe kyng⁴ saw þe fairenesse of þat lady þat she hade, and was rauisskede for here beaute; and after,⁹ he made towarde here nyce¹⁰ semblant in loking⁴ and leizhyng⁴. so at þe laste þe Erl perseuede þe priue¹¹ loking and Laughing⁴, and þe loue bituene 8 ham, and arose vp⁵ fram þe table al in wrap, and tok his wif, and callede to him his knyghtes, and went þens al in wrap, wiþouten¹² takyng⁴ Leue of þe Kyng⁴. þe kyng anone sent after him þat he schulde come azeyne, & go nouzt þens in despite of him; and þe 12 Erl wolde nouzt come azeyne in no maner wise. ¶ Wherfor þe kyng was ful wroþ, & in wrap him defiede as his dedelich¹³ enemy. and þe Erl went þens into Cornewaile wiþ his wif, into þe castel of TyntageH. and þe kyng lete ordeyne a grete host, & come into 16 Cornewaile forto destroie þe erl, if he myzt; but he hade put him in¹⁴ soche a castel þat was stronge and wel arraiede, of TyntageH, and wolde nouzt zelde him to¹⁵ the Kyng⁴. ¶ The kyng anone bisegede þe castel, & þere duelled x v daies, þat neuer myzt spede, 20 and euer þouzt so miche of¹⁶ Igerne, and oppoñ her' laide so miche loue, þat he nyst what to done. ¶ So at þe⁵ laste he callede to him a knyzt þat me¹⁷ callede Vlfyne, þat was priue wiþ him, and tolde him al hes conseile, and axede of him what was best to done. 24 ¶ "Sire," quod he, "doþ sende after Merlyn, for he can telle 30w þe best consel of eny man leuyng⁴." Merlyn anone was sent after, and come to þe kyng⁴, and þe kyng tolde him al his wille. "Sire,"¹⁸ quod Merlyn,¹⁸ "I shal do so miche þrouz crafte þat I can, þat I 28 shal make 30w come þis nyzt into þe castel of TyntageH, & shal haue al 3oure wille of þat Lady."

**How Vter' bigate on¹⁹ Igerne, þat was þe Erlez wif of²⁰ Corne-
waile, Arthure þe kyng⁴. ¶ Capitulo Septuagesimo primo. 32**

¹ þo þat hade wyfes schulde bryng⁴ ham also to þat fest & alle D. þo þat hade wyues schuld bryng hem also to þat fest & aft O.

² to O. ³⁻³ om. D. ⁴ hold O. ⁵ om. O. ⁶ werne D.

⁷ astat O. ⁸⁻⁸ þe Gorlois D. Gorloys O.

⁹ ofte D. oft O. ¹⁰ MS. nyci. ¹¹ leaf 31.

¹² withoute DO. ¹³ dedely D. dedly O. ¹⁴ into D.

¹⁵ vnto D. ¹⁶ vpon D. vpon O. ¹⁷ he D.

¹⁸⁻¹⁸ MS. has quod Merlyn quod, with 2nd quod underlined for erasure.

¹⁹ in D. ²⁰ om. D.

MErlyn,¹ prou3 crafte þat he coupe,² chaungede þe kyngus³ figure into þe likenesse of Vlŷyne his chaumberleyn, and⁴ to þe figure of Iordan þat was þe erlez chaumberleyn, so þat eche⁴ of ham was transfigured into⁵ opere likenesse. and when Merlyn hade so done,⁶ he saide to þe kyng: ⁷“sire, now may⁷ 3e gone⁸ sodeynely to þe castel of Tyntagel, and axen⁹ entre þere, and haue 3oure wille.” the kyng tok priuelich,¹⁰ al þe host to gouerne &¹¹ lede,⁸ to a knyzt þat he miche louede, and toke¹² his way toward þe castel; and wiþ him went¹³ Vlŷyne and Merlyn. and when¹⁴ þat he¹⁴ come pider, þe Porter wende¹⁵ þat it¹⁵ hade bene¹⁶ his owen lorde. and when tyme come forto gone¹⁷ to bedde, the kyng went to bedde¹² wiþ¹⁸ Igerne, þe Erlez wif, and dede wiþ her¹ al his wille, and þo bigate on¹⁹ here a sone þat me clepede²⁰ Arthure. ¶ Oppoñ þe morwe þe noble myzty kyng¹ toke²¹ his leue of þe lady, and went azeyn to his hoste. and þe same nyzt þat þe kyng lay by Igerne in¹⁶ bedde ifere wiþ þe erlez wif, þe kynges men 3af a strong¹ assaute to þe castel. and þe Erl and his men manliche²² ham defendede; but at þe²³ laste hit bifelle so þat at þat assaut þe erl him-self²³ was slayn, and þe castel was¹³ taken. and þe kyng anone turnede azeyne²⁰ to TyntageH, and spousede Igerne wiþ michel²⁴ honoure, & made hir¹ Quene. & sone after, tyme come þat she shulde bene²⁵ delyuerede, and bare²⁶ a sone þat²⁷ was callede²⁷ Arthure. and after²⁸ he gate²⁸ on here a douzter þat me clepede²⁹ Amya; and³⁰ 24 when she come to age, ³¹she was nobly³¹ mariede to a noble Barouñ þat me callede Aloth, þat was lorde of Leones.

¶ When Vter¹ longe tyme hade regnede, þere come vppoñ him a grete sikennesse, as it were a sorwe. & in þe mene³² tyme þo þat²⁸ haden³³ to kepe Octa, þat was Engistes sone, and Ossa his proper, þat þo were in prisouñ, men lete ham gone³⁴ for grete 3iftes þat þai ham 3af, and went³⁵ wiþ ham.³⁵ ¶ And when þo ij breþerne were escaped, and comen³⁶ azeyne into hier¹ owen contre, þai ordeynede³² ham a grete host & a³⁷ grete power, & bigon to werre eftesones vppoñ þe kyng.

¹ Helyn sic D. ² coupe he D. coude O. ³ leaf 31, back.

⁴ in O. ⁵ to DO. ⁶ y-do O.

⁷⁻⁷ Sir quod he now mowe D. Sir quod he now mow O. ⁸ go O.

⁹ axe O. ¹⁰ priuily O. ¹¹ & to O. ¹² nome DO. ¹³ om. DO.

¹⁴⁻¹⁴ þai D. þey O. ¹⁵⁻¹⁵ þat he D. he O. ¹⁶ be O. ¹⁷ go DO.

¹⁸ to D. ¹⁹ vpon O. ²⁰ callede D. called O. ²¹ nome DO.

²² manly DO. ²³ om. O. ²⁴ mych O. ²⁵ be DO.

²⁶ bare a childe D. bare a child O. ²⁷⁻²⁷ callede was D. Called was O.

²⁸⁻²⁸ begate O. ²⁹ Called O. ³⁰ & sche O. ³¹⁻³¹ nobly was O.

³² leaf 32. ³³ hadde D. had O. ³⁴ go DO. ³⁵⁻³⁵ hem with O.

³⁶ come O. ³⁷ om. D.

How Kyng Vter¹ chees¹ Aloth to kepe þe lande of Britaigne
whiles þat he was sik.² ¶ Capitulo ¶ Septuagesimo
¶ Secundo.

ANd for-asmiche as Kyng Vter¹ was sik¹, and myzt nouzt helpe⁴
him-self³, he ordeynede Aloth, þe sone of Elyne,³ þat þo
was to bene⁴ wardeyne and chyueteyne of al his folc; & he anone,
and his Britons, assemblede a grete host¹, & 3af bataile to Octa and
to his folc; but Octa at þe laste was descomfitede.⁵ ¶ Hit bifelle⁸
þus afterwarde, ⁶þat þise Britons⁶ haden⁷ indignacioun⁸ ⁹at þis⁹
Aloth, & wolde nouzt to him bene¹⁰ entendant; wherfore þe kyng
was annoyede wonder¹ sore, and lete put him in a liter in þe hoste
amonges¹¹ his folc; and þai ladde him to Veroleyne, þat þo was a 12
faire citee, þere þat seynt Albone was martrede; and after¹ was þat
citee destroiede þrouz paynemys & þrouz werre. and þider¹ went¹²
¹³Ossa and Octa¹³ & her¹ peple, & entrede into þe toune, and lete
¹⁴make faste¹⁴ þe 3ates, & þere þai¹⁵ helde ham. & þe kyng come, 16
and ham bisegede, & made a stronge assaut; but þo þat were
wipin, manliche ham defended. ¶ The kyng ¹⁶lete ordeyne¹⁶ his
gunnes & his engynes forto breke þe wallys; & þe wallis were so
stronge þat noþing myzt ham misdo. ¶ Octa & his peple hade 20
grete despite þat a kyng liggyng in a liter ¹⁷¹⁸ham hade¹⁸ bisegede,
& þai token¹⁹ conseil amonges ham, forto stande vp in þe morwe, &
come oute, and 3eue bataile to þe kyng¹; and so þai deden.²⁰ and in
þat bataile were boþe Octa & Ossa slayne; & al þe opere þat 24
ascapede alif, fledde þens²¹ into Scotland, and made²² Colegryne
her¹ cheueteyne. & þe Saxoynes þat were alif, and²³ ascapede fro þe
bataile, brouzt²⁴ a3eyne a²⁵ grete strengþ, & amonges ham²⁶ saiden
þat, if the¹⁵ Kyng Vter were dede, þai shulde wel conquere þe lande; 28
and amonges ham þai þouzt²⁷ enpoysone þe kyng, and ordeynede
men forto done²⁸ þis dede, & 3af ham of 3iftes grete plente, þis þing
to done. & þai ordeynede ham þiderward¹ þere þat þe kyng was

¹ chose D.

² syke for-asmiche as he myzt nouzt trauaile for his sikenesse D. sike
for-as-mych as he myght not for siknes O.

³⁻³ he ordeynede Aloth sone of Elyne D. he ordeyned Aloth sone of
Eleyne O. þe sone of Elyne R.

⁴ be O. ⁵ descomfite D. ⁶⁻⁶ om. D. ⁷ had DO.

⁸ dedignacion sic O. ⁹⁻⁹ of DO. ¹⁰ be O. ¹¹ among O.

¹² þai hade seynt D. þey had sent O. ¹³⁻¹³ Octa and Ossa O.

¹⁴⁻¹⁴ fast make O. ¹⁵ om. D. ¹⁶⁻¹⁶ ordeigned O.

¹⁷ leaf 32, back. ¹⁸⁻¹⁸ hade ham D. had hem O. ¹⁹ took O.

²⁰ ded O. ²¹ om. DO. ²² maden DO. ²³ that D.

²⁴ broghten O. ²⁵ om. O. ²⁶ ham þai D. hem þey O.

²⁷ þoughten O. ²⁸ do O.

duellyng¹, & cloþede ham in pore wede, þe better¹ forto spede hire luper purpos; but nopelesse, for al her falsenesse & queyntise, þai myzt neuer come ney þe kyng. But² at þe laste þai aspiede þat 4 þe kyng drank none opere licoure but ³oneliche water³ of a clere welle þat was ney³ bisides; and þise false traitoures⁴ vppoñ a day priueliche⁵ went to þat wel, and put þerin poisonñ, so þat al þe water was enpoysenede. And anone after' as þe Kyng hade dronke 8 of þat water', he biganne to swelle, & sone after'⁶ deide; & also meny as drank⁷ of þat water' deide⁸ also. And anone as þis falsenesse was aspiede, folc of þe toune lete stoppe þe welle for euermore. ¶ When ⁹þe Kyng⁹ was dede, his¹⁰ folc bare him to 12 Stonehyng wip grete solempnite of bisshoþþ; and barons þat were þere, þat buriede him bisides Aurilambros his broþer; and after turnede azeyne þo euerycheoñ, & lete sende after' Arthure his sone; and þai made him Kyng of þe lande wip ¹¹Michel¹² reuerence, after 16 his faderes deþ, þe xvij zere of his regne.

How Arthure, þat was þe sone of Vter', was cronede after his faderes deþ; & how he drof Colegryn & þe Saxoynes, and Chelduc¹³ of ¹⁴Almayne, out of¹⁴ þis lande. Capitulo 20 lxxiij^o.

When Arthure was made kyng¹ of þe lande, he was¹⁵ but zonge, of xv zere age, but he was faire, and bolde, & douzti of body, & to meke folc he was gode & curteise, & to prout 24 folc he was stout & sterne; & also he was ¹⁶gentil and curteise,¹⁶ and large of spendyng', & ¹⁷made him¹⁷ wel bilouede ¹⁸of al men þere þat¹⁸ it was nede. And when he biganne to regne, he swore þat Saxones neuer¹⁹ shulde haue pees ne reste til þat²⁰ he hade drif²¹ 28 ham out of his²² lande. & he lete assemble a grete host, & fauzt wip Colegrin, þat,²⁰ after' tyme þat Octa was dede, þe Saxones mayntenede. And þis Colegryne was descomfitede, & fley²³ to 3ork', & tok þe tone, & þere helde him. And þe Kyng bisegede þe tone; 32 but he mizt noþing²⁴ spede, for¹⁹ þe toune was so strong, & þai wipin

¹ better al DO. ² But so DO. ³⁻³ water onlych D. only water O.

⁴ traitous sic D. ⁵ pryuyly O. ⁶ after he DO.

⁷ dronken D. drunken O. ⁸ deiden D. diden O.

⁹⁻⁹ kyng Vter D. ¹⁰ om. O. ¹¹ leaf 33. ¹² mych O.

¹³ Sheldruk kyng¹ D. cheldrik out O. ¹⁴⁻¹⁴ om. O. ¹⁵ nas O.

¹⁶⁻¹⁶ curteise & gentile D.

¹⁷⁻¹⁷ made him D. made hym O. made R.

¹⁸⁻¹⁸ amonges al men þere þat D. among al men þat þer O.

¹⁹ om. D. ²⁰ om. O. ²¹ dryuen D. dryve O. ²² þis O.

²³ come D. fly O. ²⁴ nouzt D.

kepte þe toune wel & horpedly. ¶ And in þe mene tyme Colegryne lete þe toune to Bladulf, & fley¹ him-self to Cheldrik, þat was Kyng of Almaigne, forto haue of him socour. and þe Kyng assemblede a grete power, and come & arryuede in Scotland wip 4 v. C. shippis. & when Arthure wist of þis tydyngus,² þat he hade nouzt power ne³ strengþ ynow to feizt azeyne⁴ Sheldrik, he lete bene⁵ þe sege, and went to Londoñ, and sent anone his lettres to þe Kyng of Lital Britaigne, þat me⁶ callede⁷ Hoel, his⁸ neveu, his 8 sustres⁸ sone, þat he shulde come to him wip⁹ al þe power þat he myzt. And he assemblede a grete hoste, & arryuede at South-amptoñ. ¶ And when Kyng Ar[t]hure hit wiste, he was glade ynow, & went azeynes ham,¹⁰ & ham resceyuede wip michel¹¹ honour, 12 so þat þo ij hostes ham assemblede, and toke¹² her way euen to Nichole, þat¹³ Cheldrik hade bisegede but nouzt zitte taken. And þai comen¹⁴ vppon Cheldrik & vppon¹⁵ his peple or þai hit wiste, þere⁷ þat þai werre,¹⁶ and ham egrely assailede. þe Kyng Cheldrik 16 and his meny defendede ham manly by here power, but Kyng Arthure and his men¹⁷ quelledde so meny Saxones, þat neuer er¹⁸ was seyne soche a slauzter; and¹⁹ his men þat were lefte alif, fledden away, and Arthure ham pursuede, and drof ham into a 20 wode þat þai mizt no ferþer passe. ¶ Cheldrik and his men saw wel þat þai were brouzt into miche disesse, & ham zolden to Arthure in þis maner wise, þat he shulde take here horse and Here armure, & al þat þai hadde, þat þai most oneliche gone on fote to here 24 shippes, and so þai wolde gone²⁰ into here owen lande, & neuer come azeyne into þis lande. And vppon assuraunce of þis⁷ þing, þai zeuen²¹ him gode hostages; and Arthure, þrouz conseile of his men, grauntede þis þing, and resceyuede þe hostages. & oppoñ þis, 28 pise oþer went vnto²² here shippes: and when þai werne²³ in þe hye see, hir wille chaungede, as þe deuel it wolde, & þai retournede hire nauye, & come azeyne into þis land, & arryuede at Tottensesse, & went out of here shippis, & toke²⁴ þe lande, & clene robbede hit, 32 & michel²⁵ peple slouz, & token²⁶ al þe Armure þat þai myzt fynde; & so þai wenten²⁷ forthe²⁸ til þai comen²⁸ to Bathe; but þe men of

¹ fly O. ² tidyng^t D. tydyngge O. ³ and D. ⁴ azens O.
⁵ be DO. ⁶ he D. ⁷ om. O. ⁸⁻⁸ newews souster O.
⁹ leaf 33, back. ¹⁰ hym O. ¹¹ mych O. ¹² token O.
¹³ MS. has þat pat. ¹⁴ come D. ¹⁵ on D. ¹⁶ were þere O.
¹⁷ meny D. ¹⁸ tofore D.
¹⁹ & sheldrik & D. And Cheldrik & O. ²⁰ go D. ²¹ 3af D.
²² to DO. ²³ were DO. ²⁴ nome DO. ²⁵ mych O.
²⁶ leaf 34. ²⁷ went DO. ²⁸⁻²⁸ om. D. tyl þey come O.

þe toune shitten faste here ȝates, and wolde nouȝt suffren¹ ham come þer in² þe toune, and þai defendede ham wel and horpedly aȝeynȝ ham.

4 ³How Arthure ȝaf bataile to þe Saxones when þai comen⁴ aȝeyne, and bisegede þe toune of Bape, & ⁵ham ouercome.⁵
¶ *Capitulo lxxiiij^{to}.*³

8 **W**Hen Arthure herde þis tydynges,⁶ he lete honge anone þe hostages, & lefte Hoel of Britaigne, his newew, forto kepe þe Marche toward Scotland wip half his peple, and him-self went⁷ helpe rescue þe toune of Bathe. And when he come þider, he ȝaf a strong batail to Cheldrik, and quelde almost al þe peple þat he
12 hade; for no man myȝt⁸ him wipstande,⁸ ne endure vnder þe stroke of his swerde; and þere boþe were slayn, Colegrin and Bladud his broþer. ¶ And Cheldrik fledde þens, and wolde haue gone to his shippis; but when⁹ Arthure hit wist, he tok xv¹⁰ M^t knyȝtes to
16 Cador, þat was erl of Cornewaile, forto lette and stoppe his com- myng^t; and Arthure him-self went aȝeyne towarde þe Marche of Scotland, ffor messagers tolde him þat þe¹¹ Scottes hade bisegede Hoel of Britaign þere þat he lay sike; and þefore he hastede
20 þiderward; & Cador persuede after Cheldrik, & toke him or þat he myȝt¹¹ come to his¹² shippis, & quellede Cheldrik & his peple. And when Cador hade done þis viage, he hastede him¹³ aȝeyne, as faste as¹³ he myȝt, towarde Arthure, and founde him in Scotland
24 þere þat he hade res¹⁴cuede Hoel of Britaigne. But þe Scottes were al feire wipin Mounref, and þere þai helde ham awhile; but Arthure ham persuede, and þai fledde þens fourþ into Lymoigne, þat were in þat contre lx Isles, & grete plente of briddes, & grete
28 plente of Egles, þat were wont to crie and feiȝten¹⁵ to-gederes, and make grete noise when folc come¹⁶ to robbe þat lande, and weren as miche as þai miȝt; and so þai deden, for þe Scottes were so grete rauenours þat þai token al þat þai myȝt fynde in þe lande of
32 Lymoigne wip-outen¹⁷ eny sparyng^t; and þerwip þai chargede aȝeyne þe folc, into Scotland forto wende.¹⁸

¹ suffre DO. ² with-in D. with-Inne O. ³⁻³ om. O.

⁴ come D. ⁵⁻⁵ ouercome ham D. ⁶ tydyng^t DO. ⁷ went to O.

⁸⁻⁸ with hym stande O. ⁹ when kyng D. ¹⁰ x DO.

¹¹ om. D. ¹² here O. ¹³⁻¹³ al þat D. ¹⁴ leaf 34, back.

¹⁵ fight O. ¹⁶ comen D. ¹⁷ withoute O.

¹⁸ *MS. Trin. Coll. Dubl.* 490 (*D*) has several pages missing here, and does not continue until f. 39 of the Rawlinson *MS.*, p. 78 below.

How Kyng Arthure axede of *Merlyn* þe adventures of vj the laste kynges þat weren to regne in Engeland, and how þe lande schulde ende. ¶ *Capitulo* ¶ *Septuagesimo* ¶ *Quinto.*

“*S*ire,” quod *Merlyn*, “in þe 3ere of Incarnacioun of ¹oure Lorde¹ 4 *Ihesu Crist* *M^t CC xv þere²* shal come a lambe oute of *Wynchestre* þat shal haue a white tong and trew lippis, and he shal haue wryten in his hert ‘*Holynesse.*’ ¶ This lambe shal make meny Goddes house,³ and he shal haue pees þe most parte of his 8 lif, & he shal make one² of þe faireste places of þe worlde þat in his tyme shal nouzt fully ben⁴ made an ende. And in þe ende of his lif, a wolf of a straunge lande shal do him grete harme⁵; but at þe ende þe lambe shal be maistre, prou3 helpe of a rede Fox þat shal 12 come out of þe Northwest, and him shal ouercome; and þe wolfe shal dye [in] water; and after þat tyme þe lambe shal leue no while þat he ne shal⁶ dye. ¶ His sede⁷ þan shal bene⁷ in strange lande, and þe lande shal bene⁴ wiþout a gouernoure a litil tyme. 16

“*A*nd after him⁸ shal come a dragon mellede wiþ mercy and *ek⁹* wodenesse, þat shal haue a berde as a goot, þat shal 3eue in Engeland shadewe, and shal kepe the lande from¹⁰ colde and hete; and his o foote shal be sette in Wik, and þat opere in 20 *Londoñ*; and he shal vnbrace¹¹ iij habitacions,¹² and he shal oppen his mouþ toward Walys, and þe trembling^t of þe hidure of his mouþe, his heres shal strecche towarde meny habitaciouns and contres, and his þreþ shal bene⁴ ful suete in straunge landes¹³; & 24 in his tyme shal ryuers renne wiþ bloode and wiþ brayne, & he shal make in¹⁴ places of his lande, walles, þat shal done¹⁵ miche harme to¹⁶ his seede after his tyme.

¶ Than shal þere come a peple out of þe Northwest duryng his 28 regne, þat shal bene⁴ lade prou3 an¹⁷ wickede hare, þat þe dragon shal done² crone Kyng, þat afterwarde shal flee ouer þe see wiþout comyng a3eyne, for drede of þe dragon. ¶ In¹⁸ þat tyme þe sonne shal bene⁴ also rede as blode, as meny² men shul see² prou3 al þe 32 worlde: þat shal bitoken grete pestilence, and deþ of folc prou3 dent of swerde; and þis¹⁹ peple shal bene⁴ faderles til þe tyme þat þe dragon shal dye prou3 an hare þat shal meue²⁰ a3eynes him werr

¹⁻¹ om. O. ² om. O. ³ houses O. ⁴ be O.

⁵ harm þurgh O. ⁶ leaf 35. ⁷⁻⁷ schal be O.

⁸ his tyme O. ⁹ eek with O. ¹⁰ fro O. ¹¹ vnbracen O.

¹² habitacions & cuntres O. ¹³ lond O. ¹⁴ in al O. ¹⁵ do O

¹⁶ vn-to O. ¹⁷ a O. ¹⁸ And in O. ¹⁹ þat O. ²⁰ neuere O

in þe ende of his lif, þat shal nouzt ¹bene fulliche¹ endede in his tyme. ¶ This dragoun shal ²bene holden² in his tyme þe best body of al þe worlde; & he shal dye bisides þe Marche³ of a ⁴straunge lande; and þe lande shalle ⁴duelle fade[r]lesse, wipouten⁵ a gode gouernoure; and me shal wepe for his deþ fram þe Ile of Shepe vnto þe hauen of MarciH; wherfore, 'allas' shal bene⁶ þe *commune* songe of faderles folc, þat shal ouerleuen in his land ⁸destroiede.

“ **A** Nd after' pis dragone shal come a gote oute of a ⁷Kar', þat shal haue hornes & ⁸berde of siluer'; and þere shal come out of his noseþrelles⁹ a drop þat shal bitoken hunger' & sorw, & grete ¹²deþ of þe peple; and miche of his lande in þe bigynnyng' of his regne shal be wastede. ¶ This goot shal go¹⁰ ouer' into Fraunce, & shal oppoñ¹¹ þe floure of lif and of deþ. In his tyme þere shal arise an Egle in Cornewaile þat shal haue feþeres of golde, þat' ¹⁶pride shal ¹²bene wipouten¹² pere of alle þe lande; and he shal despise lordes of blode; and after', he shal flee shamefully by a Bere at Gauersiche; and after' shal bene⁶ made brigges of men oppoñ þe costes of þe see; and stones shal falle ¹³fram castelles,¹³ ²⁰and meny oþere tounes shal ben⁶ made pleyne¹⁴; and a bataile shalle ¹⁵bene done vppoñ an Arme¹⁵ of þe see in a felde ordeynede as a shelde¹⁶; and at þat¹⁷ bataile shal dye meny white hedes; wherfore þat¹⁸ bataile shal bene⁶ callete 'þe white bataile.' ¶ And þe ²⁴forsaide Beere shal done¹⁹ pis goote michel²⁰ harme, and it shal bene⁶ oute of þe Southwest; & of his bloode þan shal þe goote lese miche of his lande til at þe tyme þat shendeship shal him ouercomen²¹; & þan shal he clopen²² him in a lyone; skyn; and þan ²⁸shal he wynne þat he hade loste, and more þerto, ffor a peple shal ²³come out of þe northwest þat shal make þe goot sore to bene⁶ adrade; and he shal avenge him oppon²⁴ his enemys, þrouz conseil of²⁵ ij oweles, þat ferst shal bene⁶ in peril forto bene vndone²⁶; but ³²þe olde owel shal wende ouer þe se into²⁷ a st[r]aunge lande, and þere he shal duelle vnto a certeyne tyme; and after', he shal come azeyne into þis lande. ¶ Þise ij oweles shullen²⁸ do grete harme

1—1 *MS.* has bene fulliche bene; fully be O. 2—2 behold O. 3 marches O.

4 leaf 35, back. 5 withoute O. 6 be O. 7 om. O. 8 & a O.

9 nostreit O. 10 gon O. 11 i. e. open. 12—12 be withoute O.

13—13 fro Castell O. 14 playn In his tyme schal seme þat þe bere schal

brenne O. 15—15 be do vpon þe Armes O. 16 Child' O. 17 þe O.

18 his O. 19 do O. 20 mych O. 21 ouercome O. 22 clope O.

23 leaf 36. 24 on O. 25 of þo O. 26 vndo O.

27 *MS.* has into fraunce, with fraunce underlined for crasure. 28 shul O.

to meny on; and so þai shullen¹ counseil þe gote þat he shal arere werre azeynes þe forsaid bere; and at þe last, þe goot and þe oweles shullen² come atte Bur' vp Trent, and shullen³ wende ouer; and for drede, þe Bere shal flee, and a swan wiþ him, for⁴ his company, 4 to Bur' towarde þe North, & þere þai shal bene⁵ wiþ an harde shoure. And þan þe swan shal bene⁵ slayne wiþ sorwe, and þe Bere taken & biheuedede,⁶ alþer' nexte his neste, þat shal [stand] vppoñ a broken brigge, vp wham þe sone shal caste his beemes; 8 and meny shal him seche, for vertu þat fro⁷ hym shal come. ¶ In þat same tyme shal dye, for sorwe and care, a peple of his lande, so þat meny⁸ shal bene⁸ oppoñ him þe more bolder' afterward. And þo ij oweles shullen² do miche harme to þe forsaide floure of lif, 12 and here shul lede in distresse, so þat she shal passe ouer into Fraunce, forto make pees bituene þe gote & þe flour' delice; and þere she shal duelle to⁹ a tyme þat her' sede shal come to seche here; and þere þai shul bene⁵ stille til a tyme þat þai shul ham 16 cloþe with grace: and þai shul seche¹⁰ the¹¹ Owelyn, and¹¹ put ham vnto¹² despitous dep. And after' shal þis goot bene⁵ brouzt to disese; and in¹³ grete anguisshe and sorwe he shal leue al his lif. 20

“ **A**ftre þis goote, shal come out of Wyndesore a Boor', þat shal haue an heuede¹⁴ of witte, a lyons hert, a pitouse lokyng; his vesage shal be reste to sike men; his brep¹⁵ shal bene⁵ stanchyn of þerst to ham þat bene aþreste þerof shal¹⁶; his worde shal bene⁵ 24 gospelle; his beryng shal bene⁵ meke as a Lambe. In þe ferste zere of his regne he shal haue grete payne to iustifien¹⁷ ham þat bene vntrew; and in his tyme shal his lande bene⁵ multipliede wiþ Aliens. ¶ And þis Boor, prouþ fersenesse of hert þat he shal 28 haue, shal make wolfes bicombe lambes; & he shal bene⁵ callede prouþ-oute¹⁸ þe worlde 'Boor of holynesse and¹³ of fersenesse, of nobeleye and of mekenesse,' and he shal do mesurabli al þat he shal haue to done¹⁹ vnto þe Burgh of Ierusalem; and he shal whet 32 his teiþ vppoñ þe zates of Parys, and vppoñ iiij landes. Spayne shal tremble for drede of him; Gascoyne shal swete; in Fraunce he shal put his wynges; his grete taile shal reste in Engeland' softly; Almayn shal quake for drede of him. ¶ þis Boor shal 36

¹ schutt O. ² shul O. ³ schul O. ⁴ fro O. ⁵ be O.
⁶ byheded' O. ⁷ for O. ⁸⁻⁸ landes shul be O. ⁹ tul O.
¹⁰ leaf 36, back. ¹¹⁻¹¹ owles & schul O. ¹² to O. ¹³ om. O.
¹⁴ heed' O. ¹⁵ brest O. ¹⁶ shul haue O. ¹⁷ iustifye O.
¹⁸ þurght O. ¹⁹ do O.

3eue mantels to ij tounes of Engeland, and he shal make þe ryuer
 rynne wip blode & wip brayn, and he shal make meny¹ medowes
 reede, and he shal gete as miche as his auncestres deden; & er' þat
 4 he bene² dede he shal bere iij cronas; and he shal put on³ lande
 into gret subieccioun; and after' hit shal bene² releuede, but nouzt
 in his tyme. ¶ This Boor, after' þat he is dede, ⁴for his douzty-
 nesse shal bene² enterede at Coloigne, and his lande shal bene² þan
 8 fulfillede wip⁵ al goode.

“ A fter' þis Boor shal come a lambe, þat shal haue feete of leede,
 an heuede⁶ of bras, an hert of a loppe, ⁷and a swynes skyn,
 and⁷ herde; and in his tyme his land' shal bene in pees. þe first 3ere
 12 of his regne he shal do make a citee, þat al þe worlde shal speke
 þerof. þis lambe shal lese in his tyme a grete parte of his lande
 prou3 an hidouse wolf; but he shal recouer it, an 3if an⁸ Lordeship
 to an Egle of his landes; and þis Egle shal wel gouerne hit, til þe
 16 tyme þat pride shal him ouergone,—allas þe sorwe!—for he shal
 dye prou3 his broþeres suorde.⁹ and after shal þe lande falle to þe
 forsaide lambe, þat shal gouerne¹⁰ in pees al his lifes tyme; and
 after', he shal dye, and þe lande bene² fulfillede wip⁵ al maner
 20 gode.

“ A fter' þis lambe shal come a Moldewerpe acursed¹¹ of Godes
mouþ, a caitif, a cowarde as an here. he shal haue an
 elderliche¹² skyn as a goot; and vengeance shal fal vppon him for
 24 synne. In þe first 3ere of his regne he shal haue of al gode grete
¹³plente in his lande, and toward him also; and in his lande he shal
 haue grete¹³ praising til þe tyme þat he shal soffre his peple lyuen¹⁴
 in to miche pride wipouten¹⁵ chastisyng', wherfore God' wil ben²
 28 wroþ. ¶ Than shal arisen¹⁶ vp a dragoun in⁵ þe North, þat shal
 bene² ful fers, and shal meue werre a3eynes þe forsaide Moldewerpe,
 and shal 3eue him bataile vppon a stoñ. þis dragoun shal gadre
 a3eyne into his company a wolf' þat shal¹⁷ come oute of the West,
 32 þat shal bygynne werre a3eynes þe forsaide Moldewerp in his
 side; & so shal¹⁸ þe dragoun and he bynde here tailes to-geder.

“ ¶ þan shal come a lyon oute of Irlande, þat shal fal in
 company wip ham; and þan shal tremble¹⁹ þe lande, þat þan shal
 36 bene² callede Engeland, as an aspe²⁰ lef, and in þat tyme shal

¹ MS. nemy. ² be O. ³ o O. ⁴ leaf 37. ⁵ of O.
⁶ heed O. ⁷⁻⁷ a Swynes skyn & an O. ⁸ a O. ⁹ deth O.
¹⁰ gouerne þe land O. ¹¹ cursed' O. ¹² erdelich O. ¹³⁻¹³ om. O.
¹⁴ lyve O. ¹⁵ withoute O. ¹⁶ aryse O. ¹⁷ leaf 37, back.
¹⁸ schullen O. ¹⁹ tremblen O. ²⁰ Aspyn O.

¹castelles bene¹ fellede adoune vppoñ Tamise; and it shal semen² þat Seuerne shal bene³ drye, for þe bodyes þat shal ⁴fallen dede þerin.⁴ ¶ Þe iij chief¹ flodes of Engeland¹ shal rynne in blode; and grete drede shal bene,³ and anguisshe, þat shul arisen after¹ þe ⁴Moldewerpe shal fle for drede; and þe dragouñ, þe lyouñ and þe wolf¹, him shal dryuen away, and the lande shal bene³ wiþout ham, and þe Moldewerpe shal haue no maner power¹, saf onely a shipp¹ wherto he may wende; and after þat, he shal come⁵ to lande when ⁸þe see is wiþdraw. ¶ And after¹ þat he shal zeue þe þride part of his lande forto haue þe ferþe part in pees & reste; and after¹ he shal leue in sorw al his lif-tyme⁶; and in his tyme þe hote bapes ⁷shullen bicomē⁷ colde; and after¹ þat shal þe Moldewerp dye ¹²aventurly and¹ sodeynely,—allas þe sorwe!—for he shal ⁸bene drenchede⁸ in a flode of þe see, his seede shal bicomē pure⁹ faderles in straunge lande for euermore, and þan shal the lande bene³ departede in iij parties, þat is to seyn, to the Wolf, to þe ¹⁶dragoune, & to þe liouñ; and so shal it bene⁹ for euermore. And þan shal þis¹⁰ land bene³ callede ‘þe lande of conquest,’ & so shal þe riȝt¹¹ heires of Engeland¹ ende.”

¹² How Arthure ouercome Guyllomer¹ þat was Kyng of Irland¹ ²⁰& how þe Scottes bicomen¹³ his men. *Capitulo lxxvj^{to}.*

WHen Guillomer¹, þat was Kyng¹ of Irlande, hade tidynges¹⁴ þat Kyng¹ [Arthur] was entrede at Glastenbery, he ordeynede a grete power¹ of Irisshe men, & come to þe see wiþ his ²⁴Yrisshe peple, and so come into Scotteland¹ ouer þe see, and arryuede faste ¹⁵by þere þat Kyng Arthure¹⁵ was wiþ his hoste. and anone as he herde þerof, he went towarde¹⁶ him & ȝaf him bataile, and ouercome him anone ryȝt; and Guillomer¹ fledde wiþ his men ²⁸azeyne into Irland¹, and when þis scomfiture¹⁷ was done,¹⁸ Arthure turnede him azeyne þere þat he was, into þe place þat he hade lefte þe Scottes, & wolde haue ham al slayne. But þe bisshoppes, Abbotes, & oþere folc of þe contre, and Ladies, ³²openheuedede, ³²comen¹⁹ bifore Kyng Arthure, and criede him mercy, & saide:

¹—¹ Castell be O. ² seme O. ³ be O. ⁴—⁴ falle þerin ded¹ O.

⁵ go O. ⁶ liues-tyme O. ⁷—⁷ schul be-comen O.

⁸—⁸ be dreynt O. ⁹ om. O. ¹⁰ þe O. ¹¹ riȝtful¹ O.

¹² leaf 38. ¹³ become O. ¹⁴ tydyng O.

¹⁵—¹⁵ *MS. has* by þere þat kyng Arthure þere þat kyng Arthure; þerby as kyng Arthure O.

¹⁶ towarde O. ¹⁷ discomfytur¹ O. ¹⁸ do O.

¹⁹—¹⁹ openhede come O.

“sire, gentil kyng¹ & myȝty, haue mercy & pitee of¹ vs! and as
 3oure-self² is² of þe riȝt lawe, to holde and mayntene cristendome,
 ful grete dishonour it shulde be to quelle ham þat leueþ in almyȝty
 4 Gode as ȝe done. & for Godes loue haue mercy and pitee of vs,
 and suffren³ vs forto lyuen,⁴ for we haue hade michel⁵ sorwe and
 pyne; for þe Saxones hauen meny tymes þrouȝ oure lande⁶ passede;
 but þat is nouȝt ynouȝt to ȝow; for often-tymes þai haue done vs
 8 miche sorwe & disese. ¶ ffor oure⁷ castelles þai hauen⁷ taken, &
 oure bestes slayne & eten, & mich harme þai hauen⁸ vs done; and
 if ȝe wolde vs now quelle, hit were⁹ none Honoure to a Kyng¹ to
 quelle¹⁰ ham þat crien him¹¹ mercy; for ynow ȝe haue¹² y-done vs,
 12 & vs ouercomen euerycheoñ¹²; & for þe ¶ loue of God, soffre¹³ vs
 forto lyue, & haueþ¹⁴ mercy of¹ Cristen peple þat bileueþ¹⁵ in God
 as ȝe done!” ¶ when Kyng¹ Arthure herde þis sorwe, he hade pite
 of ham, and ȝaf¹⁶ ham lif and lyme; and alle þai felle adoune to his
 16 feete, and bicome¹⁶ his lege men, and he toke of ham homages.
 ¶ And after¹⁷ þat, Kyng Arthure turnede aȝeyne wiþ his host, and
 come aȝeyne to ȝorke, and þere he abode duryng þat Viage.
 ¶ And þo ȝaf he al¹⁷ Loegers to Loth, þat hade spousede his sustre,
 20 and oþere ȝiftes grete plente. and þo was Gaweyn, his cosyn,¹⁸ but
 ȝong of¹⁸ age; and to alle his oþere men þat him hade seruede in
 his werr¹, he ȝaf riche ȝiftes, & he þankede ham miche of here gode
 seruise.

24 **How Kyng Arthure spousede Gunnore, þat was Cadoreȝ cosyn,
 Erl of Cornewaile; & after¹ he conquereð of Guillomer¹ aȝ
 Irland. ¶ Capitulo Septuagesimo ¶ Septimo.**

28 **W**hen Arthure hade brouȝt his lande in pees and reste, & in
 gode state, & reste was in euery contre, þo¹⁹ toke he and
 wedede a wif¹⁹ þat me callede Gunnore, & made here quene, a
 faire lady and a gentil, þat Cador þe erle of Cornewail hade longe
 tyme norissheðe in his chaumbre, þat was his owen cosyn; but
 32 neuer¹ þai²⁰ hadn childe to-gedres,²⁰ and nopelesse Kyng Arthure
 louede her¹ wonder wel and derlich. ¶ And anone as wynter was
 passede, he lete assemble a grete hoste, & alle his barons, and saide

¹ on O. ² be O. ³ suffre O. ⁴ leue O. ⁵ mych O.

⁶ lond & O. ⁷⁻⁷ Casteñ þey haue O. ⁸ haue O.

⁹ leaf 38, back. ¹⁰ quellen O. ¹¹ hem O.

¹²⁻¹² don) & vs ouercome O. ¹³ suffreþ O. ¹⁴ hath O.

¹⁵ beleuen O. ¹⁶ bycomen O. ¹⁷ om. O. ¹⁸⁻¹⁸ but of ȝonge O.

¹⁹⁻¹⁹ nome he a wedded wyf O. ²⁰⁻²⁰ had childryn to-gidere O.

pat he wolde wende into Irland¹ forto conquere¹ the Lande; and he tarede nouzt ful² longe pat he ne passede ouer into Irland¹. ¶ And Guillomer³, þe Kyng of Scotland³, lete assemble a grete hoste, and 3af batail to Kyng Arthur³; but Guillomer³ was descom-⁴ fitede, & zelde him to þe Kyng Arthure, and bicom his man, and to him dede feaute & homage, and of him helde al þat lande fro þat tyme forward. and after passede Kyng³ Arthur³ ferþer⁴, and conquerede Gutland³ and Irland³, and toke homages of fole of þe 8 lande, and þere duelled xij 3er in pees, & regnede wiþ⁵ ioie and merþe, & werrede vppoñ no maner man, ne no man vppoñ him. ¶ And he bicom so curteys and⁶ large, and so⁶ honourable, þat þe Emperourez court of Rome, ne none þrouz-out al þe worlde, was 12 none acountede to Kyng³ Arthures, þat eny man wist⁷, ne none so⁷ preisede⁸; and þefore þe beste knyzttes of al maner² landes comen to him forto duelle, &⁹ ham reseceyuede wiþ gode wille and reuerence¹⁰; and alle þe knyzttes weren¹¹ so gode þat no man knew 16 12 þe werst¹²; and þefore Kyng³ Arthure made þe rounde table, þat when þai shulde sitte to þe² mete, alle shulde bene¹³ aliche hye, and euenlich¹⁴ seruede¹⁵ at þe table, þat none myzt maken¹⁶ auant þat none were hyer¹ þan oþere.¹⁷ and Kyng Arthure hade at þat table 20 ¶ Britoñs, Fraunchemen, Normannes, Flemynges, Burgoyners, Mansers, Loherinz, and of alle þe⁶ landes a þis half þe mount of² Gorie, and of his lande of Britaigne, and of þe⁶ grete Cornwaile, of Walys, & of Irland³, & of Scotland³; and shortely to telle, of alle 24 þe landes þat wolde¹⁸ worshiþe and¹⁹ chyualry seche, comen to Kyng Arthurus court.

How Kyng Arthure come into Fraunce, & conquered pat²⁰londe of Froh, þat was a Romayn, & ²¹him quelled.²¹ Capitulo 28 lxxviij^o.

Sith hit bifelle þat Kyng Arthure, þrouz conseile of his barons and lordes, wolde gone²² to conquere al Fraunce, þat þo was clepede Galle, þrouz Romayns þat þo helde²³ þat lande in here 32 powe[r] & in here lordeshipe. and þe Romayns²⁴ hade take þat

¹ leaf 39. ² om. O. ³ Irland³ O. ⁴ ferthermore O.

⁵ MS. Trin. Coll. Dublin 490 (D) continues again here.

⁶ om. D. ⁷ so well DO. ⁸ preferred³ O.

⁹ & he O. ¹⁰ reuerencede D. ¹¹ were DO. ¹²⁻¹² ne wyst O.

¹³ be DO. ¹⁴ euenly D. ¹⁵ y-serued³ O. ¹⁶ make DO.

¹⁷ another O. ¹⁸ wolden DO. ¹⁹ or D. ²⁰ leaf 39, back.

²¹⁻²¹ quelled him D. ²² go DO. ²³ helden O.

²⁴⁻²⁴ hade tak þat lande D. hade take þat land O. om. R.

lande²⁴ to a noble knyzt, and a worþi¹ of body, þat me calle² Frolle. and when he wist þat Arthure come, he ordeynede an host &³ grete power', & fauzt wiþ þe kyng'; & he & his folc weren⁴ descomfitede; and þens þai fledde vnto Parys, and entrede þe touñ, & closede þe gates, & þere ham helde. Arthure wist þat FroH was gone to Parys, he pursuede after', & come þider', & him bisegede; but þe citee was so strong and wel arraied; & þo þat were wiþin defendede ham wel and manliche.⁵ ¶ Kyng Arthu[r]e duelledede þere more þan a mounþe; & þere was so miche peple in þe citee, & hade despendede al her' vitailles þat were wiþin, & so grete hunger bicome amonges ham, þat þai ⁶deide⁷ wonder þik wiþin the citee⁶ for hunger, and comen⁸ to FroH, & prayede him to bene accordede wiþ Kyng Arthure forto haue pees; & þai wolde zelde ham to him, & þe touñ also. ¶ FroH saw⁹ þat ¹⁰no longer he¹¹ myzt¹⁰ holde þe touñ azeynes her¹² wille, and truste greteli oppoñ¹³ his owen strengþ, & sent to Kyng Authure þat he shulde come to¹⁴ feizt wiþ him, body for body, and so ¹⁵þai shulde¹⁵ departe Fraunce bituene ham ij. ¶ Kyng Arthure anone⁹ graunte¹⁶ hit, and wolde þat none of his peple vndertoke þe batail for him. ¶ And oppon þe morwe, boþe comen¹⁷ wel armede wiþouten¹⁸ Parys, þere þat þai shulde fizt; and anone þai smyten togederes¹⁹ so fersely; and so wel, þai fouzten in boþe si²⁰des, þat no man couþe deme þe bettere of ham. and so Hit bifelle²¹ þat FroH 3af Arthure soche a stroke þat he knelede to þe grounde, wolde he nolde he. & as FroH wiþdrow his suerde, he wonded Kyng Arthure in þe forheuede, þat þe blode felle adoune by his eyen and²² face. ¶ Arthure anone sterte vp hertly, when he felede²³ him hert, as a man þat semede almoste wode; & he toke²⁴ Tabourn, his gode suerde & drowe⁹ it vp an hye, & 3af FroH soche a stroke þat þerwiþ he ²⁵cleuede his heuede²⁵ down to þe shuldres, so þat his helme myzt nouzt bene²⁶ his warant; & so he felle adouñ dede þere in þe place, and þo of þe citee maden²⁷ grete sorwe for FroH; and anone euerycheoñ zelde ham to Kyng Arthure, & þe toune also, and

¹ worthy DO.² callede D. called O.³ & a O.⁴ were D. wer O.⁵ manly O.⁶⁻⁶ deiden *with*-in the citee wonder þik D. ⁷ dyden O.⁸ come D. ⁹ *om.* D. ¹⁰⁻¹⁰ he myght no longer D. ¹¹ he ne O.¹² her D. her O. *om.* R. ¹³ in D. ¹⁴ & O.¹⁵⁻¹⁵ shul þai D. shul þey O. ¹⁶ grantede D. graunted O.¹⁷ come D. ¹⁸ with-oute DO. ¹⁹ to-geder D. to-gydere O.²⁰ leaf 40. ²¹ felle D. ²² & his D. & by his O.²³ felt O. ²⁴ nome DO.²⁵⁻²⁵ cleuede heuede R. cleue his heuede D. cleft his heed O.²⁶ be DO. ²⁷ made O.

become¹ his men, and deden² to him homage & feaute, & he vnderfonge ham & toke of ham gode hostages. & Kyng Arthure, after þat, went forþe wiþ his host, ³and conquereð³ Angoñ & Aungers, Gascoigne, Peihto, Nauerne, Burgoyne, Bery, Loherne, Turyn⁴ and 4 Peihters; and alle þe opere landes of Fraunce he conquereð hollich. and when he hade alle conquereð, & taken bi homages & feautes, he turnede azeyne to Parys, & þere⁵ duelled longe tyme, and ordeynede pees⁶ ⁷ouer al the contrey, & ⁷prouz-out al 8 Fraunce. ¶ And when pees was made oueral, þrouz his noble kny3thode þat he hade, & also for his owen worþynesse, and no man, were he neuer⁸ so grete a lorde, derst nouzt meve⁸ werre azeynes him, noþer to arise and forto make þe lande of Fraunce in 12 quiete & pees, he wonede þere ix⁹ zere, & dede þere meny grete wonders, & reproveð meny prout men & luper tyrauntez, & ham chastisede after⁹ her⁹ deseruise.⁹

¹⁰How Kyng Arthure auauuncede alle his men þat hade trouailed 16 in his seruise. ¶ Capitulo ¶ Septuagesimo Nono.

ANd after,¹¹ hit bifelle þus at Ester¹¹, þere þat he helde a feste at Parys; richely he gan¹² auauunce his kny3tes for here seruise þat¹³ him hade holpen¹⁴ in his conquest; he 3af to his stywarde þat 20 men¹⁵ cleped¹⁶ Kay, Angoñ & Angers, and to Bedeler his boteler¹⁷ he 3af Normandy, þat þo was callede Neustrie; and to Holden his chamberleyn he 3af Flaundes and Mance; and to Doreñ his cosyn he 3af Boloyne; and to Richard his Neveue he 3af Pountif¹⁸; 24 And to alle opere he 3af largely¹⁷ landes & fees after¹⁹ þat þai were of state. ¶ And when Arthur¹⁸ hade þus his kny3tes feffede, at 18 April after¹⁸ nexte sewyng he come azeyne into Britaigne, his owen lande. And after,¹⁹ atte Whitsontide next sewyng, by conseil 28 of his barons, he wolde bene²⁰ cronede Kyng of Glomergoñ, and halde a solempne fest²¹, & lete sompne kynges, Erles and barons, þat þai shulde come þider euerycheoñ.²¹ Ther²¹ was Skater²¹, kyng of 32 Scotland; Cadwere, kyng of South-walys; Guillomer, king of 32 North Walys; Madede, kyng of Irland; Malgamus, kyng of

¹ bycomen O.

² dede D.

³⁻⁵ MS. has and conquereð and conquereð.

⁴ Tulyñ O.

⁵ þere he D. þer he O.

⁶ pees longtyme O.

⁷⁻⁷ om. D.

⁸ om. O.

⁹ deseruyng¹ D.

¹⁰ leaf 40, back.

¹¹ afterward¹ D. aftirward¹ O.

¹² began to O.

¹³ MS. þan.

¹⁴ help D.

¹⁵ me DO.

¹⁶ called O.

¹⁷ MS. has langely; large D.

¹⁸⁻¹⁸ Aueriñ D.

Aueriñ after O.

¹⁹ om. D.

²⁰ be DO.

²¹ echeoñ O.

Gutland; Achilles, kyng of Ikeland; Aloth, kyng of Denmerc; Gonewas, kyng of Norweye; and Hoel his cosyn, kyng of Dorke-
 neye; Cador, kyng of litel Britaigne; ¶ Morwiþ, erl of Cornne-
 4 waile; Mauran, erle of Gloucestr; Guerdon, erl of Wynchestre;
 Boel, erl of Herford; Vrtegi,¹ erl of Oxenford²; Cursal, erl of
 Bathe; Ionas, erl of Chestre; Eueral, erl of Dorcestre; Kymar, erl
 of Salesbury; Waloth, erl of Kaunterbery; Igern, erl of Checestre;
 8 Aral, erl of Leycestre, & þe Erl of ³Warwik, & ³opere riche ⁴Lordes.
 Britons also þere were ynow, þat is to seyn,⁵ Dippon, Donand,
 Genuz; and meny opere þat beþ⁶ nouzt here nempnede⁷ weren at
 þat fest; and meny anopere⁸ faire feste Kyng Arthure hade holden⁹
 12 biforn, but neuer none soche, ne so solempne; and þat laste xv
 dayes ¹⁰wiþ michel¹⁰ Honoure and merþe.

Of þe lettre þat was sent fram¹¹ þe Citee of Rome for pride to
 Kyng Arthure ¶ Capitulo ¶ Octogesimo.

16 **T**He þridde day, as kyng Arthure satte at his¹² mete amonges¹³
 his kynges, & amonges¹⁴ ham þat seten at þe fest biforne ham,
 comen¹⁵ in xij elderne men of age, rychele arraiede, and curteisly
 saluede þe kyng, and saide¹⁶ þat¹⁷ þai comen fro Rome, sent
 20 messagers fram þe Emperour, and tok to him a lettre þat þus
 miche¹⁸ was to vnderstoude: ¶ “Gretely vs mervailles,¹⁹ Arthure,
 þat þow art on²⁰ so hardy, wiþ eyen in ²¹þi heuede,²¹ to maken²²
 oppen werr²³ and contak azeyns vs of Rome, þat owen al þe worlde to
 24 deme;²³ for þow haste neuer zitte bifore²⁴ þis tyme prouede ne
 assaiede þe strengþ of þe²⁵ Romayns, and þerfor, þow it shalt²⁶ in²⁷
 litil tyme. For Iulius Cesar²⁸ conquerede al þe lande of Britaigne,
 and tok²⁹ þerof truage, and oure folc longe tyme haue it hade; and
 28 now, þrouz þi pryde, þow hit withholdes²⁸; wherfore we commande
 þe þat þow zelde²⁹ azeyne. ¶ and ³⁰zitte haste þow³⁰ more folye
 done, þat þow hast slayn FroH, þat was oure baron of Fraunce, al
 wiþ wrong³¹; and þerfore alle þe communes of Rome warnen and
 32 commanden þe, oppon lif and Lyne, þat þow in haste bene³¹ at

¹ Vrtegy DO.

² Oxon D.

³⁻³ Warwik⁴ and meny D. Warwyk⁴ & meny O. Warr⁴ & R.

⁴ leaf 41.

⁵ say D. sey O. ⁶ ben D. be O. ⁷ ynempned⁷ O.

⁸ a DO.

⁹ holde D. hold⁹ O. ¹⁰⁻¹⁰ withel sic D. ¹¹ fro D.

¹² the D.

¹³ among¹³ O. ¹⁴ amonge D. among O. ¹⁵ come D.

¹⁶ seyden O.

¹⁷ om. DO. ¹⁸ mych yt O. ¹⁹ merveylleþ O.

²⁰ ones D. onys O. ²¹⁻²¹ þine hede D. þy heed O.

²² make O.

²³ demen D. ²⁴ afore D. ²⁵ om. O. ²⁶ shal D.

²⁷ in a O.

²⁸ withholdest O. ²⁹ zelde it D. yt zelde O.

³⁰⁻³⁰ zif þou hast O. ³¹ be O.

Rome, amendes to make of þe¹ misdede; that þow haste done; and if hit so be þat þow come nouzt,² we shul passe þe huft of Ioye wiþ strengþ, and we shul³ þe seke³ wher'euer þow may⁴ ben⁵ founde, and þow shalt nouzt haue a⁶ foote of lande of⁷ þyn⁸ owen 4 þat we ne shal destroy; and aftirward wiþ þi body we shal done⁹ oure wille." ¶ When þis lettre was rade, & alle men hit herde, þai were annoyede, alle þat were at þe¹⁰ solempnite; and þe Britons wolde haue slayne þe messagers, but Arthure wolde nouzt soffre 8 hit, and saide þat þe messagers shulde haue none¹¹ harme, and mow by resouñ none deserue; but he commanded¹² hem to bene worþely¹² seruede. and after mete he toke¹³ conseil of kyngus, Erles and Barons, what ansuere me myzt zeue¹⁴ to þe messagers; and þai 12 conseilede¹⁵ at ones¹⁶ þat he shulde¹⁶ assemble a grete power of alle þe landes of þe whiche he hade lordeshipe, & manliche avenge him oppoñ þe Emperour, of þe despite þat he hade¹⁷ sent to him soche a lettre; and þai suoren bi God and by his names þat þai wolde¹⁸ 16 him pursue & brenne in-alsemiche¹⁹ as þai²⁰ myzt, & saide þat þai wolde²¹ neuer faile²² Kyng Arture, and rapere to bene²³ dede: and þai lete writen²⁴ a lettre to sende to þe Emperour by þe same messagers in þis maner: 20

Of þe bolde ansuere²⁵ þat Kyng Arthure²⁵ sent to þe Emperour of Rome & to þe Romainys. Capitulo ¶ ^{xx}iiij primo.

“**U**V[n]derstonde²⁶ amonges þow of Rome,²⁷ þat I am Kyng Arthure of Britaigne, and frely hit²⁸ holde, and shal holde; 24 and at Rome hastely y²⁷ shal be, nouzt to zeue þow truage, but forto axen truage²⁷; ffor Constantyne, þat was Elynus sone, þat was Emperour of Rome²⁹ and of al þe honour þat þereto bilongede³⁰; ffor Maxinian³¹ conquerede al Fraunce and Almaigne, & mount 28 Ioye passede, & conquerede al Lumbardye; and þise ij were myn ancestres; and þat þai hade and helde, I shulde³² haue, þrouz ¶ Godes wille.”

¹ þi D. þyn O. ² leaf 41, back. ³⁻³ seke þ^e O. ⁴ myght O. ⁵ be DO.

⁶ oo O. ⁷ o D. ⁸ þi O. ⁹ do DO. ¹⁰ þat DO. ¹¹ no O.

¹²⁻¹² ham to ben worshiply D. hem to be worshipfully O. to bene worþely R. ¹³ nome DO. ¹⁴ zeue DO. ^{3e} R.

¹⁵ conseilede him D. counseyled hym O.

¹⁶⁻¹⁶ MS. has þat he shulde þat he shulde. ¹⁷ hathe D.

¹⁸ shulde D. schuld O. ¹⁹ in-as-mychel O. ²⁰ þai D. þey O. he R.

²¹ nolde O. ²² fayle þ^e O. ²³ be O. ²⁴ write D.

²⁵⁻²⁵ om. O. ²⁶ Understondeþ D. Undirstondip O.

²⁷ om. D. ²⁸ y O. ²⁹ leaf 42. ³⁰ bilongeth D.

³¹ Maximian Kyng of Britayne D. Maximian kyng of Brytaigne O.

³² shal D. schal O.

Of þe reuerence þat Kyng Authure dede to þe Emperourre;¹
messagers of Rome. Capitulo ¶ ^{xx}iiij Secundo.

4 **W**Hen þis lettre was made and enselede, Kyng Arthure to þe
messagers 3af grete 3iftes; and after þat, þe messagers
toke² here leue, & went þens³ to þe court of Rome a3eyne, and
tolde þe Emperour how worþely þei were vnderfonge,⁴ & whiche⁵
real company he [K. Arthur] hade him forto⁶ serue, & how he was
8 more really seruede þan þe Emperour, or eny kyng leuyng in þe
worlde. ¶ And when þe Emperour hade seyne⁷ þe lettre of
Arthure, & herde what was þerin, and saw þat Arthure wolde
nouzt bene⁸ rewelede by⁹ him, he lete assemble & ordeyne an huge
12 hoste forto destroye Kyng Arthure if¹⁰ he myzt. and Kyng
Arthure, as tochyng his partye, ordeynede his power¹¹ of kny3tes¹¹
of þe rounde table.

Of þe kynges & lordes þat comen to helpe¹² Kyng Arthure
16 a3eyne; þe Emperour of Rome. Capitulo Octogesimo
¶ Tercio.

THe kynges¹³ of Scotland, & of Irland, & of Gutland, of
Denmarc and of Almaigne, eueryche¹⁴ of ham hade x M¹⁵ of¹⁵
20 men. ¶ Thei of Normandy, Gascoigne¹⁶ & Spaigne,¹⁶ Flaundres &
Pehito, & of Boloigne, hade iiij M¹. Geryn of Chartres hade x M¹;
Hoel of Britaigne hade¹⁷ xij M¹, and him-self [Arthur]¹⁸ hade¹⁷ of
his owen Londe xij M¹, & of Arblasters and of Archires,¹⁹ & of opere
24 folc on foote, þat noman couþe ham nombre. and when²⁰ þai
weren al²⁰ redy forto wende, Kyng Arthur, his lande & Gunore his
wif, ²¹he bitoke²¹ to one of his Neewes þat was a wise knyzt, &
an herdy, þat me callede Mordrede; but he was nouzt al trewe,
28 as 3e shul here afterwarde. Kyng Arthure toke al his reame to þis
Mordrede, saue oneliche þe crone. ¶ And after þat, kyng Arthure
tok²² his host and went to Southamptoñ, þere þat þe shippes
were brouzt. and þe folc assemblede, and²³ þai deden ham to þe

¹ Kynges D. ² nomen D. nome O.

³ þens and comen D. þens & come O. ⁴ vndirfongen O.

⁵ which a O. ⁶ to DO. ⁷ sey O. ⁸ be DO. ⁹ after DO.

¹⁰ if þat D. ¹¹⁻¹¹ and kny3te D. & knyghtes O. ¹² helpen O.

¹³ kyng D. ¹⁴ euery D. eche O. ¹⁵ om. O.

¹⁶⁻¹⁶ & D. Almaigne O. ¹⁷ om. DO. ¹⁸ leaf 42, back.

¹⁹ Arches O. ²⁰⁻²⁰ þai al were D. aft weren O.

²¹⁻²¹ tok to kepe D. toke to kepe O. ²² nome DO. ²³ as O.

see, and hade gode wynde & weder' at wille. and as sone as þai myzten,¹ þai arryuede at Berflete, & wenten² oute of here shippis, and spraden al þe contreye.

**How Kyng Arthure fau3t wiþ a Geaunt in Spaigne, þat me 4
callede Denab3, þat quellede Elyne, þat was³ Kyng Hoele3
Cosyne, of litel Britaigne. Capitulo ^{xx}iiij iiij^{to}.**

KYng Arthure hade⁴ duellede in þe contre but a litil while, þat men ne tolde him þat þer was comen a grete Geaunt into 8 Spayne, and hade rauesshede faire Elyne, þat was cosyn to Hoel⁵ of Britaigne, & hade brou3t here vppon an hu3t þat is clepede⁶ þe Mount of seynt Barnard; & þere was noman in þat contre so bolde, ne so hardy, þat derst wiþ him to⁷ fei3t, ne come ney3 þe place 12 þere⁸ þe Geaunt duellede; and men⁹ callede him Dynab3, þat miche sorwe dede in þe contre. ¶ When Kyng Arthure herde þis tydynges,¹⁰ he callede Kay & Bedewer', & commaundede ham þat þai shulde ¹¹gon ¹²pryuely,¹¹ and asprie Where þe ¹³Geaunt my3t bene¹³ 16 founde. and þai come¹⁴ to þe Ryuage þere þat³ men shulde gon¹⁵ to þe mount, þat was al enclosede about wiþ water, and 3it is and euer¹⁶ shal be; and þai saw a brynyng fire oppoñ¹⁷ þe Hu3t; and þere was also anoþer hu3t ney3, þat þere was oppon anoþere fire 20 brynyng'. ¶ Kay and Bedewer' comen¹⁸ to þe nexte hu3t, and founden¹⁹ a widowe openheuede,²⁰ sitting bisides a tounbe, sore wepyng, & grete sorwe made; and ofte she saide "Elyn! Elyn!" and Kay & Bedwere axede what her' ailede,²¹ & wherfore she made 24 so miche sorwe, & who lay in þat tombe. ¶ "O," quod she, "what sorwe and what mysaventure, faire lordes, make²² 3e here? for if þe Geant may 3ow here fynde, 3e worþ dede anone." ²³"ben stille,²³ gode wif," quod þai, "þerof dismai þe nou3t, but tel vs þe soþe whi 28 þow makes²⁴ so myche²⁵ sorwe & wepyng'." ¶ "Sires,"²⁶ quod she, "for a damiselle þat I norisskede wiþ my brest, þat me callede²⁷

¹ myght O.

² as sone as þai mi3t þai wenten D. as sone as þey myght þey went O.

³ om. D. ⁴ nad nou3t D. had not O. ⁵ Hoel kyng' D.

⁶ callede D. called' O. ⁷ om. DO. ⁸ þer þat O.

⁹ me DO. ¹⁰ tydyng' DO.

¹¹⁻¹¹ go priuelich D. go pryuely O. ¹² leaf 43.

¹³⁻¹³ Geauntes mi3ten be D. Geaunt myght be O. ¹⁴ comen D.

¹⁵ go DO. ¹⁶ euermore D. euermor' O.

¹⁷ on O. ¹⁸ come O. ¹⁹ founde D. ²⁰ openhed' O.

²¹ was O. ²² seke DO. ²³⁻²³ Bistill D. Be styht O.

²⁴ makest DO. ²⁵ michel D. ²⁶ Sire D. ²⁷ calles D.

Elyne,—þat was nece to Hoel, Kyng of litel¹ Britaigne, and here lip þe bodye in þis tombe,—þat to me was bitaken² to norisshē. so þere come a deuēl, a Geaunt, & rauasshede here, & me Also, & lade vs
 4 boþe away; and he wolde haue³ forleyn þis³ maide þat was so
 3onge & tendre of age, but she myzt hit nouzt soffren, so grete and
 so huge þe Geant is. and if he now⁴ come as he was⁴ wont to
 done, certes he wille 3ow quelle, boþe ij; and þerfore faste wende
 8 3e hens.” “and wherfore,” saide þai, “go 3e nouzt hens?”
 ¶ “Certes, Sires,⁵” quod she, “When þat Elyne was dede, þe
 Geaunt made me to abide,⁶ to done and haunt his wille, and me
 most nedes⁷ it soffren.⁷ and God⁸ hit wote, I do hit nouzt wiþ my
 12 gode⁸ wille, for leuer me were to bene⁹ dede þan wiþ him to dele,
 so miche payne I haue when he me forleiz.”¹⁰ ¶ When Kay and
 Bedwere hade herde al þat þis woman hade tolde, þa turnede a3eyne,
 and comen to Kyng Arthure, & tolde him al þat þai¹¹ hade seyne¹¹ &
 16 harde. ¶ Arthure anone toke¹² ham boþe with him, and went
 priuely by nyzt, þat none of his hoste it wiste, and come¹³ on þe
 morne¹³ to þe Geaunt, and fauzt wiþ him strongely, and at þe laste
 him slou3. and Arthure bede¹⁴ Bedwere smyte of hes heuede,¹⁵ and
 20 bryng¹ it to þe hoste to¹⁶ shewe ham for a wonder¹, for it was so
 grete & so huge. ¶ When þai comen¹⁷ a3eyne to þe hoste, þai tolde
 wherfore þai hade bene out, and shewede to ham þe heuede;¹⁸ &
 euery man was glade & ioyful of þe worþi dede þat Kyng Arthure
 24 hade done, her¹ lorde. ¶ And Hoel was ful sorweful¹⁹ for his nece
 þat was so loste; and after¹, when he hade space, he lete make a
 faire chapel of oure Lady ouer Elynez Tumble.

**How Kyng Arthure 3af bataile to þe Emperour, in þe whiche
 28 bataile þe Emperoure was slayn. Capitulo Octogesimo v^{to}.**

Arthure and his peple hade tydynges²⁰ þat þe Emperour hade
 assemblede²¹ grete power¹, as wel of Sarasynes and of¹
 paynemys²² as of²² Cristen men, ^{xx}23 Wherof þe noumbre was iij M^t
 32 of horsemen and of⁸ fote men.²³ Arthure and his peple ordeynede²⁴

¹ om. DO. ² betake O. ³⁻³ forlaide þe D. forleyn þat O.
⁴⁻⁴ as he is O. ⁵ Sire D. ⁶ leaf 43, back. ⁷⁻⁷ y-suffren O.
⁸ om. D. ⁹ be O. ¹⁰ forlith DO. ¹¹⁻¹¹ seye D. ¹² nome DO.
¹³⁻¹³ in þe morwe erly D. on þ^e morowe erly O. ¹⁴ bad^t O.
¹⁵ heed^t O. ¹⁶ & D. ¹⁷ come O. ¹⁸ heed O. ¹⁹ sory O.
²⁰ tydyng O. ²¹ assemble a D. Assembled^t a D.
²²⁻²² and D. as O. ²³⁻²³ om. O.
²⁴ ordeynede D. ordeigned^t O. om. R.

ham¹ fast forþ in² ³here Way towarde þe Emperour, and passede Normandy & Fraunce vnto Burgoyne, and wolde euen haue gone⁴ to þe host, for men tolde him þat þe Emperourez host⁵ was comen⁵ to Lucy. ¶ The Emperour and his host, in þe byginning of 4 August, remevede frain Rome, and come fourth ryzt þe way toward þe host. ¶ tho⁶ comen Kyng⁶ Arthures aspriez, and saide, if þat Arthure wolde, he shulde fynde þere faste bisides, þe Emperour; but þai saiden⁷ þat þe Emperoure hade so grete power⁸ wip him of kynges of þe lande, & of Paynemys yfere, & also cristen peple, þat it were⁸ but grete folie to Kyng Arthure forto mete wip⁹ him, for þe espies tolde þat¹⁰ þe Emperour hade v men or vj azeynes one of his. ¶ Kyng Arthure was bolde and hardy, and for noþing 12 him dismaiede, & saide: “go we forþ¹¹ in Goddes name azeynes þe Romayns, þat wip ham ledeþ¹² Sarasines & Paynemes þat no maner truste þai hauen¹³ to God, but oneliche¹⁴ oppoñ here strengþ! Go we now, and seche ham sharpely¹⁵ in þe name of almyzty God, 16 and slee we þe paynemys and Cristen men þat bene enemys wip ham forto destroe Cristen men; and God shal vs helpe, for we haueþ¹⁶ the ryzt, & þerfore haue we gode trust in God; & done¹⁷ we so þat þe enemys þat bene¹⁸ to Cristendome & to Gode mow 20 bene¹⁹ dede & destroyede, & þat men mow recorde þe worþinesse of knyzthode!” ¶ When Kyng Arthure hade þus saide, þai criden²⁰ al wip an hye voice, “God, fader almyzty, ²¹Worsheppede be þine²² name Wipouten²³ ende, Amen! and grant vs grace wel to done,²⁴ and 24 to destrieoure enemys þat beþ²⁵ azeynes Cristendome! In þe name of þe fader & ²⁶of þe sone and of þe²⁶ holy gost, Amen! And God zeue ham²⁷ neuer grace ne worshiþþ in the worlde, ne mercy of him to²⁸ haue, þat þis day shal feynten wel forto smyte, and 28 egrely!” and so þai riden softly, and ordeynede her wenges wel and wisely.

¶ The Emperoure herde telle þat Kyng¹ Arthure & his folc were redy arraiede forto feizt wip him; and þider ²⁹þai comen,²⁹ wher he 32 ordeynede his wenges in þe best manere þat he myzt, and more

¹ om. DO.² on O.³ leaf 44.⁴ go O.⁵⁻⁵ wolde come D. wold come O.⁶⁻⁶ come D. come kyng O.⁷ seid O.⁸ nere DO.⁹ MS. wip wip.¹⁰ om. O.¹¹ boldely D.¹² boldly O.¹² ledes D. lede O.¹³ haue DO.¹⁴ only O.¹⁵ scharplich O.¹⁶ haue O.¹⁷ do DO.¹⁸ beth D.¹⁹ be O.²⁰ cryede O.²¹ leaf 44, back.²² þi D. þy O.²³ withoute O.²⁴ do O.²⁵ ben O.²⁶⁻²⁶ sone & D.²⁷ hym O.²⁸ for-to D.²⁹⁻²⁹ þai come D. heiz come O.

trust oppoñ his strengþ þan¹ in God almyzty. and þat was seyn
 afterward, ffor when þo ij hostes metten,² the Emperour loste soche
 foure of his³ folc as dede Kyng⁴ Arthur⁵; and so meny were slayne,
 4 what in o⁴ side and⁵ in þat oþere, þat³ hit was grete pite to wete
 and to seen.⁶ ¶ In þis bataile were slayn þrouz Kyng Arthure, v
 kyngz of⁷ paynemys, & of oþere, Wonder⁸ miche peple. ¶ And
 Kyng Arthures men fouzten so wel, þat þe Romaines and⁹ paynemys
 8 hade no¹⁰ more power¹⁰ ne strengþ¹⁰ to wipstande ham,¹¹ þan xx
 shepe azeynes v. wolfes. ¶ And so hit bifelle¹² þat in þis bataile,¹²
 in a shoure þat was wonder herde and longe duryng¹², in þat o¹³
 side and in þat oþere, þe Emperour, amonges ham þere was slayn;
 12 but noman wist forsoþ who him slouz.

**How Kyng Arthure lete entere his knyzttes þat he hade Loste in
 bataile; and how he sent þe Emperourrez body¹⁴ to Rome,
 þat þere was slayne in bataile. Capitulo Octogesimo vj¹⁰.**

16 **W**hen þe Romayns wist þat þe Emperour was dede, þai for-
 soke þe felde, and þe paynemys also; and Kyng⁴ Arthure
 after ham chasede¹⁵ til it was nyzt, and so meny of ham quellede
 þat hit was wonder¹⁶ to telle; and þo turnede Kyng Arthure azeyne
 20 ¹⁶when it¹⁶ was nyzt, and þankede almyzty God¹⁶ of his Vittorie. And
¹⁷on þe morwe¹⁷ he lete loke¹⁸ & seke¹⁸ al þe felde for his knyzttes
 þat he hade þere lost,¹⁹ þat is to seyne, BoreH, erl of Maans; Bed-
 were & Kay, and²⁰ Lygers, Erl of Boloigne; Vrtegi,²¹ erl of Baat,²²
 24 Aloth, erl of Wynchestre; Cursale, erl of Chestre; and²³ Holdeyn,
 erl of Flaundes: þise were þe grete Lordes þat Kyng⁴ Arthure Loste
 in þat bataile amonges²⁴ oþere worþi knyzttes; and somme he lete
 entere in²⁵ Abbayes by þe contre,²⁶ and some he lete bene²⁷ borne
 28 into here owen contre²⁶; and þe Emperourres body he lete take
 and put oppon a bere, & sent hit to Rome, and sent to say to þe
 Romaynes þat ‘as for Britaigne & Fraunce whiche þat he helde,
 oþere truage he wolde none²⁸ paie; and if³ þai²⁹ axend him eny
 32 oþere,²⁹ rizt suche³⁰ he wolde ham paye.’ ¶ Kyng³¹ Arthur³¹ lete

¹ MS. þat. ² mette DO. ³ om. O. ⁴ þat one D. on O.
⁵ & what O. ⁶ see O. ⁷ of þe O. ⁸ om. D. ⁹ & þe O.
¹⁰⁻¹⁰ power¹⁰ D. more strengþe O. ¹¹ om. DO. ¹²⁻¹³ om. D.
¹³ on D. ¹⁴ leaf 45. ¹⁵ I-chacede D. ¹⁶⁻¹⁶ þo it DO. when R.
¹⁷⁻¹⁷ in þe Morne O. ¹⁸⁻¹⁸ om. D. ¹⁹ ylost O. ²⁰ om. D.
²¹ Vrgeti DO. ²² Baak¹ O. ²³ & aftir O. ²⁴ amonge D. among O.
²⁵ at D. ²⁶⁻²⁶ om. D. ²⁷ be O. ²⁸ not O.
²⁹⁻²⁹ axede him eny oþere truagez D. axed ony oþer truage O.
³⁰ such truage O. ³¹ þe kyng O.

bere Kay to Kenen, his owen castel, and þere he was enterede; and Ligers was born¹ to Boloyn, þere þat he was lorde; and Holdeyn was borne¹ to Flaundes, & þere he was enterede; and alle the opere he lete entier² wiþ michel honour² in Abbayes & in⁴ house; of Religiouñ in þe contrey þere þat þai were dede. ¶ And Arthure him-self sojournede þe³ same 3ere in Burgoigne⁴ wiþ his⁵ host, and þouzt þat⁶ same 3ere followyng⁴ passe þe mount⁷ Ioye, & haue gone⁸ to Rome,⁹ forto haue¹⁰ take þe citee, and haue put þe⁸ Romayns in subieccioñ; but þe wickede tiraunt Mordrede him lettede,¹¹ as after 3e shul here.

How Mordrede þe traitour¹ to whome Kyng¹ Arthure tok his lande to kepe, and his castelles,¹² and helde hit a3eynes¹² 12 him. ¶ Capitulo ¶ Octogesimo ¶ Septimo.

When¹³ Kyng Arthure¹³ hade taken¹⁴ to Mordrede his reame to kepe, and was gone a3eynes þe Emperoure of Rome, & was passede þe see, Mordrede anone toke homages and feautes of al¹⁶ ham þat were in þis lande, and wolde haue hade þe lande¹⁵ to his owen vse, and¹⁶ toke castelles about,¹⁶ and lete ham arraie; and after his falsenesse he dede anoþere grete wrong¹, ffor, a3eynes þe law of Cristiente, he toke¹⁷ his owen Emes wif, as a *traitour* shulde,²⁰ and ordeynede him a grete hoste a3eynes Arthures comyng, to halde the lande a3eyns him wiþ strengþ for euermore, and to slee Kyng Arthure yf¹⁸ he myzt; and lete sende by þe Cee and lande, and lete assemble Paynymes and cristen peple; and he sent to Saxones and²⁴ to Danoy¹⁹ forto help him. and also Mordrede sende²⁰ to Cheldrik, to done²¹ men come to him out of Saxoyne, þat was a worþi Duc, and bihizt²² him, if þat he brouzt wiþ him²³ peple,²⁴ he wolde graunt him²⁵ al þe lande fram bizonde Humber¹ vnto Scotland, and²⁸ al þe lande þat Engist hade²⁶ of Vortigers 3ifte, When þat he hade spousede his douzter. And Cheldrik come wiþ grete strengþ²⁷ and power²⁷ of Peple: and Mordrede him²⁸ assemblede also in his half, þat þai hade xl M¹ of stronge knyzttes when þat⁵ þai hade nede. 32

¹ bore O. ²⁻² om. D. with mych honour O. ³ þat O.
⁴ leaf 45, back. ⁵ om. D. ⁶ þe DO. ⁷ mount of DO. ⁸ go O.
⁹ Rome al DO. ¹⁰ om. DO. ¹¹ lette DO. ¹² castell D.
¹³⁻¹³ Arthure the kyng¹ D. Arthur þe kyng O. ¹⁴ take O.
¹⁵ lande al D. ¹⁶⁻¹⁶ nome castell D. nome Castels aboute O.
¹⁷ nome DO. ¹⁸ yf þat O. ¹⁹ Danes O. ²⁰ sent O. ²¹ do D.
²² behete O. ²³ him miche D. hym mych O. ²⁴ om. O.
²⁵ him in heritage for euermore D. hym in herytage for euermore O.
²⁶ leaf 46. ²⁷⁻²⁷ om. D. ²⁸ hade D. had O.

How Arthure enchacede¹ Mordrede þe traitour, and how he was slayne, and ²Kyng Arthure also² wondede to þe³ dethe. ¶ Capitulo ¶ Octogesimo ¶ Octauo.

4 **W**Hen þis tydynges⁴ come to Kyng Arthure þere þat⁵ he was in Burgoyne, he was ful sore annoiede, and toke al Fraunce to Hoel forto kepe, wiþ haluendele⁶ his men, & praiede him þat he wolde hit kepe til þat he comen⁷ aþeyne, ffor him-self
8 wolde wende into Britaigne and avenge him oppoñ Mordrede þat was his traitoure; and ⁸fourþ went⁸ his waye, and come to Swit-sand, & made his men to⁵ gone⁹ into shippe, & wolde haue arryuede at Sandewiche, and brouzt wiþ him an¹⁰ grete hoste of Fraunce also
12 wiþ his owen lande. but er' þat he myght come to lande wiþ his peple þat were comen¹¹ out of þe shippis, Mordrede was comen wiþ aH his power, and 3af a stronge bataile, so þat Kyng Arthure loste meny a man er' þat he mizt ¹²comen to land¹²; ffor þere was Gaweyn
16 his Nevewe slayne, and Anguissel þat helde Scotland, and meny opere, wherof Kyng¹ Arthure was ful sory. ¶ But after þat þai were comen¹³ to lande, Mordrede myght nougt aþeynes him endure, but anone was ¹⁴descomfitede, and fiede þens þat¹⁵ same nyzt Wiþ
20 his men, and oppon þe morwe¹⁶ come to London; but þo of the citee wolde nouzt soffre ham¹⁷ come in; and fro þens he fledde to Wynchestre, and þere¹⁸ helde him wiþ his peple þat ¹⁹with him come.¹⁹ Kyng Arthure²⁰ lete take þe body of²¹ Gaweyn his cosyn,
24 & þe body of Anguissel, and lete ham ²²bene borne²² into Scotland into²³ her' owen contre, and þere þai were enterede.

¶ And ²⁴anone after' þat,²⁴ Kyng Arthur' toke²⁵ his wey to destroie Mordrede; and he fledde fro þens into Cornewaile. ¶ The
28 Quene Gunnore, þat was Kyng Arthures wif, þat þo soournede at 3ork, and herde þat Mordrede was ²⁶fledde þens þat he was,²⁶ and mizt nouzt endure aþeynes Kyng Arthure, she was sore adrade, and hade grete doute, and wist nouzt what was best al forto done,²⁷ for
32 she wiste wel²⁸ here lorde Kyng¹ Arthure wolde nouzt²⁹ of her' haue

¹ enchase D. ²⁻² also þat Kyng Arthure was DO. ³ om. DO.

⁴ tydyng¹ DO. ⁵ om. D. ⁶ haluendele of D. haluendel of O.

⁷ come DO. ⁸⁻⁸ went forth D. ⁹ go O. ¹⁰ a DO. ¹¹ come O.

¹²⁻¹² come to Lande with his peple D. come to londe O.

¹³ come O. ¹⁴ leaf 46, back. ¹⁵ the D. þe O. ¹⁶ morne D.

¹⁷ him D. hym O. ¹⁸ þere he O.

¹⁹⁻¹⁹ come with him D. with hym comen O. ²⁰ om. O.

²¹ MS. has of Arthur' with Arthur' scratched out. ²²⁻²² be bore DO.

²³ in O. ²⁴⁻²⁴ after anon D. aftir anon O. ²⁵ nome DO.

²⁶⁻²⁶ fley D. ²⁷ do O. ²⁸ wel þat DO. ²⁹ neuer D. neuere O.

mercy, for þe grete shame þat she to him hade done; and toke¹ her' wai priuely² wiþ iiij men ³and wiþ no mo,³ & come to Kerliouñ, and ⁴þere she⁴ duelled al her' ⁵lifes tyme, þat⁵ neuer was seyn amonges folc, her lif duryng'. ¶ Arthure wist þat⁴ Mordrede was fledde into Cornewail. he⁶ lete sende after his men into Scotland, & into⁷ Northumberland vnto Humber', and lete assemble folc wiþout noubre, & come⁸ fro þens into Cornewaile to seche and pursue after Mordrede. and Mordrede hade assemblede⁹ al þe folc of¹ Cornwayle, and hade peple wiþoute nombre, & wist þat¹⁰ Arthure Was ¹¹comyng'. he¹¹ hade leuer' to¹² Dye and tak his chaunce, þan lenger' flee, and abode and 3af an harde bataile to Kyng Arthur' & to his peple, so þat so miche peple was slayn,—¹² What in þat' one halfe¹³ and in þat oþer,—þat noman wiste who þat¹² hade þe better partie. ¶ But so hit bifelle at the laste, þat Mordrede was slayn, and al his folc, and al þe gode chialry þat Kyng' Arthure hade gaderede and norisskede of diuerse¹⁴ landes; ¹⁶ and also þe noble Knyghtes of þe rounde table, þat so miche¹⁵ were preisede þrouz al þe worlde, weren¹⁶ þere slayn; and Arthure himself was wondede to þe deth. but he lete him bene¹⁷ born in a liter to Auyouñ, to bene¹⁷ helede of his wondes; and zitte þe Britons ²⁰supposen þat he leueþ in a-noþere lande, and þat he shal come zit and conquere al Britaigne; but certes þis is þe prophecie of Merlyn: he saide þat his deþ shulde bene¹⁷ dotous; and he saide sothe, for men þerof zitte hauen¹⁸ doute, and shal¹⁹ for euermore, as ²⁴me²⁰ saiþ, for men weten²¹ nouzt wheþer þat he leueþ²² or is dede. ¶ Arthure was born²³ to Auyouñ þe xxij²⁴ zere of his regne After þe Incarnaciouñ of oure lorde Ihesu Crist' v. C̄ and xlvi²⁴ zere.

How Kyng Arthure delyuerede þe²⁵ reame to Constantyn, þe ²⁸son of Cadore, his newew. ¶ Capitulo ¶ Octogesimo ¶ Nono.

WHenne Kyng Arthure wist þat he miȝt no longer' regne, he lete come bifore him Constantyne, þat was Cadorez²⁶ sone, ³²erl of Cornwail, his cosyn, and to him bitoke al his reame, and to

¹ nome DO. ² pryuelych D. ³⁻³ wiþ-out mo D. withoute mo O.
⁴⁻⁴ þere D. þere nome & þere sche O. ⁵⁻⁵ lif and D. lyf þat O.
⁶ and DO. ⁷ om. DO. ⁸ went D. comen O.
⁹ assemblede to him D. Assembled' to hym O. ¹⁰ leaf 47.
¹¹⁻¹¹ Comyng' & D. comynge & O. ¹² om. D. ¹³ side D.
¹⁴ dyuerse D. diuers O. ¹⁵ michel D. ¹⁶ were O. ¹⁷ be DO.
¹⁸ haue O. ¹⁹ om. O. ²⁰ he O. ²¹ wete DO. ²² leue O.
²³ bore O. ²⁴ xij D. ²⁵ þis D. ²⁶ Cadore O.

him saide, & bade him þerof to bene¹ Kyng¹ til þat he come azeyne, for-asmiche as he hade none heire of his body bigeten: and grete harme was hit þat ²soche a noble² Kyng¹, and so doughty, hade ⁴none³ childe of his body bigeten⁴; ⁵but al þing þat God wil haue done,⁶ moste ⁷bene done,⁷ Whos name ben⁸ blessedede wiþouten ende! Amen.

How Kyng Constantyne was werrede of Mordredus ij sones.
8 **Capitulo Nonogesimo.**

THis Constance⁹ was a noble knyght¹ and a worpi of body; and þo ij sones þat Mordrede hade bigeten,¹⁰ hade grete en[u]y to Constantyne, þat þo was cronede kyng¹; and so þat¹¹ þai bigonne to ¹²meve werr¹ azeynes him, and assemblede a grete hoste of ham þat ¹²were to-fore¹² wiþ Mordrede, and¹³ hade bene dryuen away.¹⁴ þai deden¹⁵ miche sorwe ¹⁶þrouz al þat¹⁶ lande: þat o¹⁷ broþer ordeynede him to Londoñ forto take þe citee, and þat opere to ¹⁶Wynchestre; but Constantyn come ¹⁸to Londoñ¹⁸ and slough him þat was þere; and after, he went to Wynchestre, and slough him þat þere was also, so þat boþe his enemys were dede. and when Constantyn had regnede worþely iiij 3er, he deide, & lip at Londoñ.

20 **Of ¹⁹þe Kynges¹⁹ Adelbright and of Edelf. Capitulo Nonogesimo primo.**

After Kyng Constantynus deth þere were ij kynges in Britaigne: þat on me callede Adelbright, þat was a Danoys, þat²⁰ helde ²⁴þe contre of Northfole and Southfole; þat¹ opere hiȝt Edelf, and was a Britoun, þat²¹ helde Nichole, Lyndeseye, and al þe lande vnto Humber. ¶ þise ij kynges faste werrede to-gederes,²² but afterwarde þai were accorded, and louede to-geder²³ as þai ²⁴haden ²⁸bene borne of o body.²⁴ ¶ The Kyng Edelf¹ hade a sustre þat me callede Orewenne, and he ȝaf here þrouz grete frendship to Kyng Adelbright to wif, and he bigate on²⁵ here a doughter þat me callede Argentih. and in þe þridde ȝere after, him come vpon²⁶ a stronge

¹ be DO. ²⁻² so noble a DO. ³ no DO. ⁴ begete O.
⁵ leaf 47, back. ⁶ do O. ⁷⁻⁷ be done D. be do O. ⁸ be D.
⁹ Constantyne D. Constantyn O. ¹⁰ biget D. bygete O.
¹¹ om. O. ¹²⁻¹² wern bifore D. ben byfore O. ¹³ þat D.
¹⁴ away & DO. ¹⁵ dede O. ¹⁶⁻¹⁶ þrouz-oute þe D. ¹⁷ on D.
¹⁸⁻¹⁸ om. D. ¹⁹⁻¹⁹ Kyng D. ²⁰ and DO. ²¹ & DO.
²² to-gidere O. ²³ to-gederes D.
²⁴⁻²⁴ hade bene borne breþerne D. had be bore of o body O.
²⁵ in DO. ²⁶ vpon hym O.

1sikenesse, þat nedes he moste dye; and he sent to Kyng Edelf his brother-in-lawe, that he shulde come and speke with him; & he come to him with gode wille. ¶ Tho praiede he the [king], and coniurede also in the name of God, þat after when he were dede, he 4 shulde tak¹ ArgentiH his douzter, & þe lande, & þat he kepte here wel, and norisshe² in his Chaumbre, and when she were of age he shulde ³done here bene³ marede to þe strongest and worþieste man þat he myzt fynde, and þan he shulde zelde⁴ vp her' lande 8 azeyne. Edelf hit grauntede, and by oth hit confermede ⁵at his power.⁵ ¶ And when Adelbriht was dede and enterede, Edelre toke þe damisel Argenti, and norisshe² her' in his chaumbre, and she bicom^e þe faireste creature þat⁶ eny man ⁷myzt fynde.⁷ 12

How þe⁸ Kyng Edelf⁴ mariede þe damisel Argenti to a knaue of his Kechyne. *Capitulo iij^{xx} &⁸ xij^o.*

THis Kyng Edelf, þat was Vncle to the Damisel Argenti, bipouzt how þat he myght falseliche⁹ haue þe lande fram his 16 nece for euermore; & falsely, azeynes his oth, pouzt to desceyu þe damiseH, and mariede here to a knaf of his kechyne þat me callede Curan¹⁰; and he bicom^e þe worþiest man⁸ & strongest¹¹ of body þat eny man wiste in eny lande þat þo leuede; and to him he pouzt 20 here shendefully haue mariede forto haue hade hir' lande afterward; but he was elene desceyu^e. ¶ ffor þis Curan¹² was Haulockes sone, þat was Kyng of Kirkelane in Denmark; and þis Curan conquerede his wifes landes, and slough Kyng Edelf þat was his wifes 24 Vncle, & hade al here lande as ¹³in anoþer stede hit telleþ more oppenly; and he ne regnede but iij zere, for Saxoynes and Danoys¹⁴ him quelled; and þat was grete harme to al Britaigne; and Britons bere him to Stonehyng, and þere þai⁸ him enterede wiþ 28 michel¹⁵ honoure and solempnite.

Of¹⁶ Kyng Conan. Capitulo Nonogesimo Tercio.

After þis Curan, regnede Conan, ¹⁷þat was¹⁷ his cosyn, þat was a wonder proude knyzt¹⁸ and regnede.¹⁹ he coupe²⁰ haue no 32 maner loue, but euer' he was medlyng wiþ his owen peple, and toke

¹ leaf 48. ² norisshe here D. ³⁻³ do her' be D. do here be O.

⁴ zeue DO. ⁵⁻⁵ his prayer DO. ⁶ þat myght lyue or O.

⁷⁻⁷ wist D. fynde O. ⁸ om. DO. ⁹ falsely D. falsly O.

¹⁰ Hykke Curan O. ¹¹ strongest man D. strengest man O.

¹² Curan þat O. ¹³ leaf 48, back. ¹⁴ Danes O.

¹⁵ om. D. mych O. ¹⁶ Of þ^e O. ¹⁷⁻¹⁷ om. D. ¹⁸ man O.

¹⁹ regnede & D. regned^t & O. ²⁰ coude not O.

his Vncle wiþ werre, and helde¹ his ij childerne.² ¶ The Saxoynes werrede azeynes him oftetymes, but he ham³ ouercome at þe laste; & so he was in pees al his lifes⁴ tyme; and he regnede xiiij ȝere, 4 and after,⁵ he⁶ deide, and ¶ liþ at Londoñ.

Of Kyng Certif; and of Gurmonde, þat come prou; paynemys⁷ into Britaigne. *Capitulo Nonogesimo Quarto.*

8 **A**fter þis Conan, regnede his cosyn Certif, þat was bihatede of aþ his peple, and noþing bilouede. and þis Certif loste al Britaigne prou; werre. And in his tyme felle þat⁸ grete meschief in⁹ Britaigne, þat Cristendome was destroede, and alle þe Britons were dryuen oute, &⁹ þe lande loste¹⁰ wiþouten¹¹ eny recoueryng¹²; 12 but afterwarde lefte þe lande to Saxoynes, as ȝe shul afterwarde hure. ¶ For in þat tyme þere was a paynyme þat me callede Gurmonde, þat was þe Kynges sone Daufrik, of þe Paynymes folc, þat hade þe reaume after his fader, and was kyng, saf he biquaþ & 16 ȝaf hit to his broþer, and saide þat⁶ he wolde¹³ neuer bene¹⁴ kyng but³ if he might¹⁵ conquere and gete¹⁵ a reaume in a¹⁶ straunge contrey; for he was bolde, and ek³ stronge of body. & of him¹⁷ prophecied Merlyn, and saide þat 'he shulde bene¹⁴ a wolf of þe 20 see'; and¹⁸ lete assemble paynymes wiþout¹⁹ nombre, and lete apparaile shippis, and went by meny londes, and toke homages and feautes of meny. and so he went by þe¹⁶ see fram lande to lande, & conquerede diuerses²⁰ landes, so þat he come to²¹ Irland, 24 and conquered þat²² lande, þat²² ofte-tymes werrede vpon Britaigne,²³ and Britons²⁴ vpon ham; and often²⁵ ²⁶wonnen, & ofte²⁶ losten,²⁷ and ȝeuen hostages to Britons. and so þai senten²⁸ to Gurmond, þere þat he was in Irland, þat he shulde come into 28 Britaigne, and helpe ham azeynes²⁹ þe Britons, to helpe ham deliuere³⁰ þat lande of ham; and þai wolde³¹ him holde³¹ gladly for her lorde; for he was a paynyme, and þai were paynemes, and þe Britons were cristen: wel auzt him³² þan ham forto helpe, so as

¹ quelde D. welde O. ² sones D. ³ om. O. ⁴ lif D. lyf O.

⁵ aftirward O. ⁶ om. DO. ⁷ Parys O. ⁸ þe D. ⁹ of D.

¹⁰ lost D. y-lost O. ¹¹ with-oute O. ¹² retourne D. recouere O.

¹³ nolde O. ¹⁴ be DO. ¹⁵ gete and conquere D. ¹⁶ om. D.

¹⁷ leaf 49. ¹⁸ and he DO. ¹⁹ withouten D.

²⁰ diuerse D. diuers O. ²¹ into DO. ²²⁻²² om. D.

²³ Brytonys O. ²⁴ britayne D. ²⁵ ofte D. ²⁶⁻²⁶ om. O.

²⁷ lost D. ²⁸ senden D. sent O. ²⁹ ȝens O.

³⁰ MS. has deliuere with the last de underlined for erasure.

³¹⁻³¹ holde hym O. ³² he O.

þai weren¹ of on law. ¶ When Gurmond herde þis praier, he hastede him as miche as he miȝt, and arryuede in Scotland, and come into Northumberlond þere þat þe Saxones were duellyng; & þai confermede þe couenaunteȝ bituene² ham, þat were made by oþes⁴ and by hostages, forto beren³ him trew fay, & halde him for lorde, and paye to him truage by zere. ¶ Tho bigonne þe Saxoynes & þe Aufricans to⁴ destroye, robbe and brenne tounes, and destroye⁵ al þing, as michel⁵ as þai myȝt, and sparede⁶ neiþere man, woman, 8 ne childe, Lewede ne lernede,⁷ þan⁸ alle þai quellede, & caste adouñ tounus, & castelle,⁹ & cherches, & so put þai al þe lande to¹⁰ grete destrucciouñ. ¹¹And as sone as the Britons¹¹ myȝt ¹²flee,¹³ þai fledde þens, as wel poer' as ryche, Bisshoppis, Abbotes, Chanons, ¹²& alle oþere, grete and smale; somme into litel Britain, & some into Cornwail; alle þo þat shippis miȝt haue.

How¹⁴ Kyng Gurmonde drof þe⁴ Kyng Certif to Chichestre, and quellede þe Britons, & prouȝ;⁴ quey[n]tise ¶ gete¹⁶ the toune. [Capitulo nonagesimo quinto.]

Sertif þe⁴ kyng, fleye þens into¹⁵ Chichestre, þat þo was a gode cite and a⁴ strong, and þere helde him xx daies. and þis Gurmonde hit bisegede; but þe citee was so strong' þat he miȝt ²⁰nouȝt ¹⁶hit gete¹⁶ be no maner' engyne þat he myȝt done.¹⁷ þo biþouȝt þai oppoñ a grete queyntise forto brenne the toune: þai maden¹⁸ engynes of¹⁹ glew and of nettes, and token²⁰ peces of tunder' &²¹ fire, and bonde to²² sparwe²³ feet, & afterward lete ham flee; ²⁴and þai ²⁴fley anon ryȝt,²⁴ and loggede ham in þe toune þere þat her' nestes were, and in stackes & in euesynges of house²⁵; & þe fire biganne anone to tende and brenne²⁶ al þe toune. and whenne þe Britons saw þe toune brenne on²⁷ euery side, þai hiede ham out, and ²⁸fauȝt; but anone þai were slayn & descomfitede. and whiles þe bataile durede, þe kyng priuely ²⁸hud him, &²⁸ stale away into Walys, & men wiste neuer where²⁹ he bicome; & so was þe toun

¹ were O. ² bituene D. between O. bitue R. ³ ber' D. bere O.

⁴ om. D. ⁵⁻⁵ as michel D. al thing in-as-mych O. ⁶ spare D.

⁷ lered' O. ⁸ þat D. þat O. ⁹ Castels O. ¹⁰ in D.

¹¹⁻¹¹ & as fast as þei D. & as sone as þey O. ¹² leaf 49, back.

¹³ fleen D. ¹⁴ How þe D. ¹⁵ vnto D. to O.

¹⁶⁻¹⁶ get þat citee D. gete þat Cytee O. ¹⁷ do O.

¹⁸ made D. ¹⁹ with DO. ²⁰ tok D. ²¹ & of DO.

²² to þe D. hem to þe O. ²³ sparowes O.

²⁴⁻²⁴ anone ryȝt fley D. anon right fley O. ²⁵ houses O.

²⁶ brenne D. brent O. ²⁷ in DO. ²⁸⁻²⁸ om. D. ²⁹ qwer sic O.

of Chichestre taken¹ & destroyed. and after, went Gurmonde, & destroyed cities & townes þat neuer were afterward made aȝeyne, as it is seen ȝitte in meny stedes.

4 How þis lande was clepede Engeland for þe name of Engist; and how meny Kynges² were³ made² after in þe Londe.

¶ Capitulo Nonogesimo Sexto.

8 **W**hen Gurmonde had⁴ wasted and destroyed al þe lande þrouȝ-out, he ȝaf þe londe to þe⁵ Saxones; and⁶ þai toke hit wiȝ gode wille, for þe Saxones longe tyme had desirede hit, for-as-miche as þai were of Engistes Kynrede, þat first had al þe lande of Britain; and þo lete ham bene⁷ callede Englisshemen,⁸ for-as-miche
12 as in his tyme hit was callede Engistes lande, when he had conquerede it of⁹ Vortiger þat had spousede his douȝter. but fram¹⁰ þe tyme þat Brut come¹¹ ferst into¹² Engeland, þis land was callede Britaigne, & þe folc Britons, til þe tyme þat þis Gurmond eftesones
16 conquerede hit & ȝaf it vnto¹³ Saxonus, and þai anone riȝt chaunged þe name, as¹⁴ bifore is¹⁴ saide. ¶ And when þis was done, Gurmond passede ouer into Fraunce, & þere conquered meny londes, & destroyed aȝ¹⁵ cristen peple þere þat he come. and þe Danois¹⁶
20 duelled in þis¹⁷ lande, & bigonne faste hit¹⁸ inhabit at here owen wille; and þai wolde haue made newe kynges and lordes, but þai myȝt neuer assenten¹⁹ to haue onelich o kyng, forto bene⁷ to him entendaunt: and þefore þai²⁰ maden meny²⁰ kynges²¹ in diuerses²¹
24 shires, as hit was in Engistes tyme. ¶ The ferst kyngdome was Kent, and þat²² opere Southsex,²³ and þe þridde Westsex, and þe ferþ Estsex, and⁵ þe fifte Northumberland, and þe sixte Estangle, þat is to seyn Northfolc & Southfolc, and þe seueneþ Merchenoroth, and
28 þat is þe Erl²⁴dome of Nichole,²⁵ Huntyngdoñ and²⁶ Hereford, Gloucestre, Wynchestre, Warrwyk²⁷ and Darby; and so departede²⁸ þe Englisshemen²⁸ al Engeland into²⁹ vij parties. ¶ And after,³⁰ hit

¹ tak^t D. ²⁻² weren y-made O. ³ leaf 50. ⁴ hast O.

⁵ om. O. ⁶ anon DO. ⁷ be DO.

⁸ Englisshmen for encheson of Engistes name & þe lond þey lete Calle Ingelond in here langage & þe folk ben called Englisshmen O.

⁹ of kyng O. ¹⁰ fro D. ¹¹ MS. cocome.

¹² MS. has into fr, with fr underlined for omission; in D.

¹³ vnto þe DO. ¹⁴⁻¹⁴ it is afore O. ¹⁵ om. D.

¹⁶ Saxoynes D. Danes O. ¹⁷ the D. ¹⁸ it to D. ¹⁹ assent DO.

²⁰⁻²⁰ made diuerse D. ²¹⁻²¹ in al D. in diuers O. ²² þer D.

²³ Sussex O. ²⁴ leaf 50, back. ²⁵ Lyncolne D. ²⁶ om. DO.

²⁷ Warwyk DO. Warr R. ²⁸⁻²⁸ Englyssh O. ²⁹ in O.

³⁰ after þat D.

bifelle þat þo kynges werrede ¹to-gederes ofte-tymes¹; and euer he þat was strongest binome ham² þat were³ feblest; & so hit was longe tyme þat þai nade no kyng⁴ cronede amonges ham, ne no cristen men was þo amonges ham, ne cristendome neipere, but were⁴ pay- 4 nemys l. 3ere, til þat seynt Gregori was pope⁵ of Rome, þat hade seyne childerne of þe naciouñ in þe citee of Rome, þat were wonder⁶ faire creatures, & hade grete wille and desire ham forto⁶ biholde, and axede of þe marchauntes whens þai were, & of what naciouñ; & 8 men⁷ tolde him þat þai were of Engeland, & Engliſſhe⁸ þai were callede; but þai and aH þe peple of Engeland were paynemes, & bileuede nou3 in⁹ God. ¶ “Allas,” quod seynt Gregori, “wel mow þai ¹⁰bene callede¹⁰ Engliſſh, for þai haue þe visages¹¹ of 12 Angeles; and þerfor wel au3t ¹²ham þen ben cristen men.¹²” And for þis enchesouñ seynt Gregor sent seynt Austyne into Engeland, and xl. goode men wiþ him, þat were of gode lif, and holy men, to preche and¹³ teche, and to conuerte þe Engliſſhe peple, and ham 16 turne to God: and þat was in þe vj 3ere þat seynt Gregor hade bene Pope,¹⁴ þat is to seyne, after þe Incarnaciouñ of oure Lorde Ihesu Crist, v. C. iij and¹⁵ vij 3ere, as þe cronicles telleþ.¹⁶

**How Seynt Austyne baptisede & conuertede Kyng Adelbriht, 20
and ij bisshopis þat he callede¹⁷ his felawes. Capitulo
iij xvij^{xx}o.**

WHen Seynt Austyne come ferst into Engeland, he ¹⁸arryuede ¹⁹in þe Ile¹⁹ of Tenet, and so passede fourth, & come vnto 24 Kaunterbery, and pere sojournede. And Kyng Adelbriht of Kent, þat was of þe lynage of Engist, faire vnderfong seynt Austyn & his felowes wiþ michel²⁰ honour, & ²¹ham fonde²¹ al þat ham nedede; & ferþermore he 3af ham a faire place þat now is callede 28 þe Abbay of seynt Austynus, in whiche place he lip him-self shrinede. ¶ This Kyng⁴ Adelbriht was a gode man, and wiþ godewel herde seynt Austynus predicaciouns, and 3af him leue to

¹⁻¹ ofte-tyme togedre D. often-tymes to-gidere O.

² hym O. ³ was O. ⁴ weren O.

⁵ O has pope struck out, and bisshope written in margin, in same (?) hand.

⁶ to D. ⁷ þai D. ⁸ engliſſhe-men D. ⁹ vpon O.

¹⁰⁻¹⁰ called be O. ¹¹ visage D. vysage O.

¹²⁻¹² þa þan bene cristen D. þey þat be cristene O. ¹³ & to O.

¹⁴ O has pope struck out, and bisshope written over. ¹⁵ om. D.

¹⁶ telles D. ¹⁷ made D. made of O. ¹⁸ leaf 51.

¹⁹⁻¹⁹ at Totten sic O. ²⁰ mych O. ²¹⁻²¹ fonde ham D.

preche prou3¹ al his lande of Kent, to tourne & to² conuerte³ to him al þe peple³ þat he miȝt. ¶ Hit bifelle⁴ so afterwarde, prou3 Goddes grace, þat in litel tyme þe kyng him-self was conuertede 4⁵ to Gode,⁵ and aȝ his peple of his⁶ lande was⁶ baptisede. And in the⁷ mene-while þat⁷ þe peple turnede ham to God, seynt Austyn come to Rochestre, and þere prechede Goddes worde.⁸ þe paynemys perfor him scornede, and caste on⁹ him righe tailles, so þat al his 8 mantel was hongede ful of righe tailles; and for more despite þai¹⁰ caste oppon him¹¹ þe guttes of ryghe & of ffishe; wherfore þe gode man seynt Austyn was sore agreuede,¹² and prayede to God¹³ þat alle þe childerne þat shulde¹⁴ bene borne¹⁴ afterwarde in þat citee of 12 Rouchestre moste haue tailles. ¶ And when þe Kyng herde and wist of þis vengeance þat¹⁵ was falle prou3 seynt Austynus praier, he lete make an house in þe² honoure of God, wher-in wymmen shulde haue childerne at þe bruges ende, in¹⁶ whiche hous wymmen 16 17 ȝit bep delyuere¹⁷ of childe. ¶ When¹⁸ seynt Gregory hade¹⁹ herde tel þat²⁰ þe Englyshe-men were turnede to Gode, and conuertede, He sent to seynt Austyn his Pallyouñ, by a bisshop þat me callede Paulyn, and made him primate & Erchebisshop²¹ of al Engeland, 20 And sent him²² worde þan²² þat he shulde²³ make bisshopis in þe land. And anone as seynt Austyn hade þe Palliouñ of þe²² dignite of þe erchebisshop, he made ij bisshoppes of his felawes þat come wijp him fram²⁴ Rome: on þat me² callede Mellite, & he duelled 24 at Londoñ, And þat opere me callede Iustyn, þat helde þe dignite of Rouchestre. ¶ And þis²⁵ bisshop Mellyt²⁶ went to preche into Essex, & baptisede þe kyng of þe contre, þat me callede Sicwith, þat was Kyng Adelbrightȝ cosyn, his sustres²⁷ sone. ¶ This 28 Iustyne went to preche in Southsex, & turnede miche of þe peple to²⁸ god; and seynt Austyne went him-self prechyng prou3-oute 29 þe lande.²⁹

¹ purgh-out O. ² om. O. ³⁻³ þe peple vn-to hym al O.

⁴ fel D. ⁵⁻⁵ om. D. ⁶⁻⁶ house-holde & of the lande weren D.

⁷⁻⁷ mene-tyme whil D. mene-tyme whyle O. ⁸ MS. wrorde.

⁹ vppon D. ¹⁰ the sic D. ¹¹ oppon him D. on hym O. oppon R.

¹² annoyede & greuede D. anoyed O.

¹³ MS. gode with the e underlined for omission.

¹⁴⁻¹⁴ be borne D. be bore O. ¹⁵ þat þus D. ¹⁶ in the D.

¹⁷⁻¹⁷ ȝit of the Citee beth delyuere D. ȝyt of þe Cytee be deliuered O.

¹⁸ And when D. ¹⁹ om. D. ²⁰ how DO.

²¹ leaf 51, back. ²² om. DO.

²³ shulde þan ordeyne & D. þan schuld ordeyne & O.

²⁴ fro O. ²⁵ þe O. ²⁶ Mellite þo D. Mellyt þo O.

²⁷ suster D. Suster O. ²⁸ vnto O. ²⁹⁻²⁹ Engeland DO.

How seynt Austyne went into Walys, pere pat pe Britouns were; & how¹ pai nolde nouzt bene² obedient to pe Erchebisshō of Kanterbury. Capitulo ^{xx}iiij^o xvij^o.

WHen al Engeland was baptisede and turnede to God, seynt 4 Austyn went into pat lande pere pat pe Britons were, and forto kepe ham fro³ Englisshe-men, pat is to seyn,⁴ into Walys, & pere⁵ he founde monkes & Abbayes, & vij bisshoppes; for pe Britons destroyede⁶ alwai⁷ pe cristen peple pat seynt Austyne had⁸ baptisede,⁸ & saide to pe bisshoppes pat 'he was a legate of Rome, & primat of al Engeland, & pat pai shulde⁹ by al resouñ to him bene¹⁰ obedient.' And pai saide pat 'pai nolde but to pe Erchebisshop of Kerlyouñ'; & saide 'pai nolde neuer, for no maner 12 ping, bene obedient vnto pe Englisshe-men'; "ffor pe Englisshe-men," pai saide, "bep¹¹ oure aduersaries & oure enemys, and hauen¹² dryuen vs out of oure owen contre; & we bep¹¹ Cristen men, and euer hap¹² bene; & pe Englisshe-men ^{13 14}hauep euermore¹⁴ bene 16 Paynymes, but now late pat pai bep¹⁵ conuertede." ¶ Seynt Austyne myzt¹⁶ of ham¹⁶ none opere ansuere haue,¹⁷ but saide¹⁸ apertely pat 'pai nolde neuer ¹⁹ham meke¹⁹ to him ne to pe²⁰ peple²¹ of Rome.' And seynt Austyne turnede po azeine to Kyng 20 Adelbriht, pat was kyng of Kent, and tolde him pat pis²² folc ²³wolde nouzt²³ to no man bene²⁴ obedient²⁵ but to pe Erchebisshop of Kerlyouñ. and when pe Kyng herde pis, he was sore annoiede, and saide pat he wolde ham destroye, & sent to Elfride,²⁶ 24 Kyng of Northumberland, pat was his²⁰ frende, pat he shulde come to him wip²⁷ al pe power²⁸ pat he myzt, & pat he wolde²⁹ mete him at Leycestre, and fro³⁰ pens pai wolde gone³¹ into Walys, & destroye pe Erchebisshop of Kerlyouñ, & alle po³² pat hade refusede 28 seynt Austyn.

1 pat O. 2 be D. 3 from O. 4 say O.
5 pere he fonde DO. pere R. 6 dystroyeden O. 7 alwayes D.
8 conuertede D. conuerted^t O. 9 shulde be D.
10 om. D. be O. 11 ben O. 12 haue DO.
13 leaf 52. 14-14 haue euere D. han euermore O.
15 bene D. ben O. 16-16 om. O. 17 haue of hem O.
18 sayden D. seyden O. 19-19 meke hem O. 20 om. O.
21 pope D. pope struck out and bisshop written in the margin O.
22 his O. 23-23 nolde nouzt bene D. nold^t not be O.
24 om. DO. 25 obedient ne to non oper man O. 26 Elbriht D.
27 in D. 28 hast D. 29 shulde D. schulde O.
30 from O. 31 go D. 32 om. D.

How Kyng Adelbr[i]ght and þe¹ Kyng Elfride quellede Brecyual, þat was a Kyng of Britons þat helde þe contre of Leicestre. *Capitulo Nonogesimo ix^o.*

4 **H**It bifelle so þat þere was a Kyng Britoun þat helde þe contre of Leycestre, and al þe cuntre aboute him, of Brecyual. And þis Kyng Briton herde telle þat þo ij Engliſshe kyngz wolde² mete þere at Leycestre, forto wende into Walys.³
 8 he lete ordeyne al þe power þat he hade, forto feizt wiþ þise ij kynges; but litil hit auailede him, for his folc þat he hade was⁴ slayn, & him-self fledde, & loste his landez for euermore. ¶ And þise ij kynges, Adelbright and⁵ Elfride, duellede⁶ awhile at
 12 Leycestre,⁶ & departede þe lande amonges ham, & toke⁷ homages & feautes of þe⁸ folc of þe cuntree; and after, þai wenten⁹ towarde Walys, & ¹⁰þo of Walys hade herde telle of þe scomfiture of¹¹ Brecyual hade at¹² Leycestre, and were wonder' sore adrade of þo ij
 16 kynges, and toke¹³ and chose amonges ham gode men & holy, of heremytes, monkes and prestes, and ¹⁴opere folc grete plente, þat wenten¹⁵ bare-fote and wolward, forto haue mercy of þo ij kynges.
 ¶ But þo¹⁶ kynges were¹⁷ so sterne and so wickede þat þai nolde
 20 neuer speke with ham, but quellede ham euerychoñ—Allas þe sorwe!—for þai ne sparede ham nomore þan ¹⁸þe wolfe doth þe¹⁸ shepe, but smyten of ¹⁹þe heuedes of¹⁹ euerychoñ; & so al were þere martrede þat to ham come, þat is to vnderstonde, v^c. & xl.
 24 ¶ And after,²⁰ þo ij kynges went²¹ to Bangor, forto quelle al þo¹ þat þai ²²myzt þere²² fynde of þe Britons. And when þe Britons þat herde, þai assemblede & ordeynede al here power' forto fize wiþ ham. ¶ þo was þere a Britoun²³ in Walys, þat me callede Bledrik'
 28 of Cornwaile, þat somme-tyme was lorde of Deuenshire, but þe Kyng Adelbright hade dryuen him into Walys, and zeue²⁴ him bataile; and at þat bataile was Kyng Adelbright slayne, & Elfride²⁵ woundede sore, & forsoke þe felde, & þe most parte²⁶ of his folc
 32 slayn; and Elfride fleye²⁷ into Northumberland, þat was his owen

¹ om. D. ² wolden O. ³ Walys and D. ⁴ weren D. were O.

⁵ MS. and Edelf, with Edelf *underlined for omission*; om. D.

⁶⁻⁶ at Leycestre awhile D. ⁷ token DO. ⁸ om. O.

⁹ went D. wente O. ¹⁰ leaf 52, back. ¹¹ þat DO.

¹² of O. ¹³ nome O. ¹⁴ & of DO. ¹⁵ wenten O. weren R.

¹⁶ the D. ¹⁷ weren D. ¹⁸⁻¹⁸ wolves done D.

¹⁹⁻¹⁹ here hedes O. ²⁰ afterwarde D. afterward DO.

²¹ went fro þens DO. ²²⁻²² þere mizt D.

²³ baroñ DO. ²⁴ 3af D. ²⁵ Eldryd O. ²⁶ partye D.

²⁷ fleye O.

lande; and afterwarde þe peple of Leycestreshire made wiþ strengþ Cadwaladre, þat was Brecyuale; sone, Kyng of Leycestre, & he after¹ regned nobli & wiþ grete² honoure.

How Cadewaladre, ³þat was³ Kyng^t of Leycestre, and Elfride, ⁴Kyng of Northumberland, weren⁴ frendes; & of þe debate þat after was bituene Edwyne & Cadewalayn, þat were ⁵boþe here⁵ sones. Capitulo Centesimo.

ANd after þat⁶ þis bataile was done, þe Britons ⁷assemblede ⁸ham, and went þens, and come⁸ vnto Leicestre, & made Cadwaladre, þat was Brecyuales sone, kyng of Leicestr' and of aH þe contre. and ⁹he toke homages & feautes of¹⁰ þe folc of þat¹¹ contre; and after þat, he assembled¹² a grete hoste, and saide 'he ¹³wolde go¹³ into Northumberland forto¹⁴ destroi Kyng Elfride, & slee him, if þat he myght.' and when he was comen¹⁵ þider, frendes¹⁶ went so bituene ham, & made ham accordede in þis maner', þat Elfride shulde holde at þe lande fram Humber' vnto¹⁷ ¹⁸Scotlande, and Cadwalader' shulde halde¹⁸ al þe lande apis half Humber' vnto¹⁹ þe South; and after' þat þai bicome²⁰ gode frendes al here lif duryng', & louede to-gedre as [they] hade bene²¹ ij breþerne. ¶ And þis Elfride hade a sone þat me callede Edwynne, ²²þat hade and helde al þe lande of Northumbreland' after' his fadres deth, as his fader' hade holde al his lif-tyme.²² ¶ And Cadwaladre hade anopere sone þat me callede Cadwalayn, þat helde his fadres lande as he it helde while he was alif'; and þai louede to-gedre as ²³þai hade bene breþern. and þe loue laste bituene ham but onely ij zere, and after biganne debate bituene ham þrouz a luper eneuious cosyne of²³ Cadwalayn, þat men²⁴ callede Briens, so þat þai assemblede a grete²⁵ hoste in boþe parties; & at þe laste hit bifelle ²⁶þat Cadewalayn was descomfitede, & Edwyne him pursuede, and drof' fram²⁶ place to place. so at þe²⁷ laste he flewe into Irlande; and þis opere destroyede his lande, & caste adoune ²⁸his castelles,²⁸ and brenned²⁹ his maneres, and departede al Cadwalaynes ³⁰lande ³¹amonge his frendes.³⁰ ¶ And longe tyme after come Cadwalayn

¹ afterward O. ² gode D. ³⁻³ om. DO. ⁴ were DO.
⁵⁻⁵ her boþe O. ⁶ om. D. ⁷ leaf 53.
⁸ comen O. ⁹ and after þat D. ¹⁰ of al DO. ¹¹ þe DO.
¹² assemblede D. assembled' O. assemble R. ¹³ gon O. ¹⁴ to DO.
¹⁵ come O. ¹⁶ frende D. ¹⁷ in-to O. ¹⁸ haue DO. ¹⁹ into D.
²⁰ becomen O. ²¹ be O. ²² lyuystyme O. ²³ MS. of of.
²⁴ me D. ²⁵ stronge D. ²⁶ him fro D. hym fro O. ²⁷ om. O.
²⁸⁻²⁸ castell D. castels O. ²⁹ brent O. ³⁰⁻³⁰ amonges his frende D.

aʒeyne fram Irlande, with a stronge power, and in pleyne bataile
 1 quellede Edwynne and alle his frendshippes, & namely þo þat
 wiphelde his landes þrouz Edwynes ʒifte.

4 How Kyng Oswolde was quellede þrouz Kyng² Cadwaleyne and
 Peanda; & how Oswy, þat was seynt Oswoldes, broþer,
 regnede after him, & quelde Peanda. *Capitulo Centesimo*
primo.

8 **W**Hen þat Edwynne was slayn, Offris his sone vnderfonge³
 þe werr' aʒeyns Cadwaleyn his Eme, so þat þis Offris
 deide duryng þe werre. and after þe deþ of Offris, þo regned a
 gentile Cristen man þat miche louede God,—þat hade aH þe lande
 12 of Northumberland by⁴ herytage,—þat me [called] Oswolde, and
 he was kyng of al þat lande. but for-asmiche as he was frende to
 Edwyne, and helde a grete parte of þe lande of Cadwalyñ, þe same
 Cadewalyn werred oppoñ him, and drof him toward Scotland.
 16 and when Cadwalyn saw þat he wolde⁵ nouzt abide, Cadwalyn
 woldē no longer him pursue, but toke some of his folc to Peanda,
 his broþer-in-law, & praiede Peanda to pursue Oswolde til þat he
 were take and slayne; and Cadwalyn turnede þo⁶ home aʒeyn.
 20 ¶ When Oswolde herde þe tidynges⁷ þat Cadwaleyn turnede home
 aʒeyne, he wolde no longer flee, but abode Peanda, & ʒaf him
 bataile; & Peanda was descomfitede and fley,⁸ and come aʒeyne to
 Cadwaleyn, & saide þat² 'he wolde neuere holde a⁹ foote of lande
 24 of him but¹⁰ if it were so þat¹⁰ he wolde avenge him oppoñ¹¹
 Oswolde.' Cadwaleyne lete assemble a grete host forto fiʒt wiþ
 Oswolde; so þat he and Peanda come into Northumberland,¹² and
 ʒeuen bataile vnto Oswolde; and in þat same bataile was Oswolde
 28 slayn,¹³ & his heuede¹⁴ smyten of; & after he was enterede at þe
 Abbay of Berdeneye, in whiche place¹⁵ God haþ wrouzt for him
 meny a faire miracle, boþe þere and elles-where.

¶ And anone Oswy¹⁶ his¹⁷ broþer seisede into¹⁸ his hande al
 32 þe¹⁹ lande þat was Oswoldes; & þe folc of Northumberlande louede
 him wonder wel, and helde him for here lorde; but he hade men
 of his kyn worþi ynow þat wolde haue departede þe lande; & þai

¹ leaf 53, back.

² om. D.

³ vndertok! D. vndirtoke O.

⁴ by þ^e O.

⁵ nolde O.

⁶ þo home D. þo hoom O. þo R.

⁷ Tydyngge O.

⁸ fled O.

⁹ o O.

^{10—10} om. D.

¹¹ of DO.

¹² leaf 54.

¹³ y-slayn O.

¹⁴ heed O.

¹⁵ places D.

¹⁶ Oswyne D.

¹⁷ MS. him.

¹⁸ vn-to O.

¹⁹ his O.

werrede to-gedre.¹ & for-asmiche as þai were nouzt stronge ynow,² þai come to Peanda, & praiede him of helpe and socour, & bihight him of þat lande largely, oppoñ þat³ couenant þat he wolde ham⁴ ghye, helpe,⁴ & conseile. ¶ Peanda herde her' praier', & so spake 4 wiþ þe Kyng Cadwalyñ þat he shulde ordeyne a grete hoste, and faste ordeyne him into Northumberland⁵ forto fiȝt wiþ Oswy. and Oswy was a meke man, & miche louede pees and⁵ charite, & prayede Peanda of loue and pees, &⁵ proferede him² of golde &⁶ 8 siluer' grete plente. ¶ And⁷ þis Peanda was so proude þat he wolde⁸ graunt him no³ pees for no maner þing, but for al þing h[e] wolde wiþ him⁹ feiȝt. so at þe² laste þere was sette a day of ba[ta]jille; and Oswy euere hade truste oppoñ Gode, & þis 12 Peanda triste to miche oppoñ his pride & oppoñ his host þat he hade. and to-gedre þai smyten egrely; but Peanda anone was descomfitede & slayn. And þat was after þe Incarnaciouñ of oure lorde Ihesu Criste¹⁰ V. C. & lv.¹⁰ ¶ And þis Oswy þo regnede 16 xxviiij¹¹ ȝere. ¹² And a kyng¹³ þat me callede Oswyn, þat was Peandaeȝ cosyn, werrede oppoñ Kyng Oswy, and to-gedre fouȝten; but Oswy hade þe victorie; and Oswyne was descomfitede & slayn, and lith at Tynnemouthe. 20

**Of Kyng Ossa, þat was souereyne of alle þe kynges of Engeland¹²;
& how eueryche¹⁴ werrede oppoñ opere in his tyme.
Capitulo Centesimo Secundo.**

HIt bifelle so þat alle þe kynges in þat tyme þat were in þe 24 londe, as þo of Westseȝ, Mercheneriche, Est Angle, of Kent, & of Southseȝ & of opere costes, eueryche¹⁴ werrede oppoñ opere; and¹⁵ þai þat were¹⁵ moste myȝtiest¹⁶ toke þe lande of ham þat were moste feblest.¹⁶ ¶ But þere was a kyng amonges ham 28 þat me callede Ossa, þat was seynt Oswoldes broþer. þis Ossa conquerede alle þe kynges of þe lande, & regned aboue ham alle. ¶ And so grete was þe werr' in euery contre bituene kyngus, þat no man myȝt wete how þe lande went. But Abbotes, prioures, & 32 men of religiouñ, writen þe lifes and¹⁷ dedes of kynges, & how

¹ togederes D.² om. O.³ om. DO.⁴⁻⁴ helpe lede D. gye & helpe O. ⁵⁻⁵ om. D. ⁶ & of D.⁷ But D. ⁸ nolde DO. ⁹ hem O. ¹⁰⁻¹⁰ D. & lv ȝeer O.¹¹ xviiij D. ¹² leaf 54, back. ¹³ kyn D. ¹⁴ eche O.¹⁵⁻¹⁵ he þat was DO.¹⁶⁻¹⁶ bynomen ham þat were most feblest þe lande D. byname þe lond of hym þat was feblest O. ¹⁷ & þe O.

longe ¹ eueryche hade regnede,¹ & in what contre; & in what
² maner eueryche ² kyng deide, and of ³ bisschoppis also, and perof ⁴
made grete bokes, & lete calle ham þe Cronicles: and þe goode
4 Kyng Alurede hade þat boke in his warde, and lete brynge hit to
Wynchestre, & lete hit faste bene ⁵ tackede to a piler', þat men
myzt hit ⁶ nouzt remeve ne bere ⁷ penns, so þat euery man mizt hit
see and pereoppoñ loke, for þerin bep ⁸ þe lifes of alle þe Kynges
8 þat euer wer' in Engeland.

**How þe Kyng of Northumberlonð, Osbright, forleye þe wif of
Buerne Bocarð þrouz strengþ; & after þis Buerne con-
querede þe ⁹ Kyng wiþ stronge power.⁹ Capitulo Centesimo
12 tercio.**

A Nd þus hit bifelle in the same tyme, þat pere was a kyng in
¹⁰ Northumberlonð þat me callede Ossebright, & soiournede
in 3ork, and þis kyng wente him oppoñ a day into a wode, him
16 forto¹¹ desporte; and when he come azeyne, he went priuely⁶ into
a gode manus house þat me callede Buerne Bocarð.⁶ & þe gode
man of þat¹² place was gone þat tyme to þe see, for ofte-tymes he
was wonede¹³ pere asprie¹⁴ þeues & robboures, þat ofte-tymes¹⁵ were
20 wont to⁶ come into þe londe to robbe & ⁶ brenne and slee. ¶ Þe
lady þat was þis Buernes wif, was a⁶ wonder' faire woman, and
welcomede þe Kyng wiþ michel¹⁶ honour, and worþely him seruede
in al ping'. ¶ When þe Kyng hade ¹⁷ eten, he toke¹⁷ þe lady by
24 þe hande, and lad her' into chaumbre, & saide þat he wolde speke
wiþ here a counsele. and al þe folc fram¹⁸ þe chaumbre he made
voyede, saf onely¹⁹ þe lady and he. but þe Lady wiste nouzt
wherfore he it dede, til þat he hade done wiþ here his wille. and
28 when he hade done þis dede, he turnede azeyne to 3ork', & þe lady
he lefte pere wonder' sore wepyng' for þe dede þat he hade ydone.
¶ And when here lorde was come ²⁰ home, & saw here wepe, and
soche mornyg make, he axede of here what she hade done, &
32 whi she made soche sorwe. ¶ "Sire," quod she, "queyntly and

¹⁻¹ eueryche regnede hade D. eche had regned O.

²⁻² manere-wyse eche O. ³ of his O. ⁴ perof þai D. perof þey O.

⁵ be O. ⁶ om. DO. ⁷ here it DO. ⁸ ben O.

⁹⁻⁹ lande wiþ strengþ D. kyng wiþ poer & strengþe O. ¹⁰ leaf 55.

¹¹ to O. ¹² þe DO. ¹³ wont DO.

¹⁴ asprie & awayte D. aspye & awayte O. ¹⁵ oftyn-tyme O.

¹⁶ mych O. ¹⁷⁻¹⁷ ete he nome O. ¹⁸ fro DO. ¹⁹ onlich D.

²⁰ comen D.

falsely þe Kyng¹ Osbright me hap done shame and vilonye, aʒeynes my wille"; and tolde him treuþe, How the kyng¹ hade her¹ forleyne wip strengþ; wherfore she¹ saide she hade leuer¹ to dye þan leue. ¶ "Faire leef, bistille," quod he, "for aʒeynes strengþ² [febleness]⁴ is litel worþ; & þerfore of me³ shal yow³ neuer þe lesse bene⁴ Louede, and namely for yow⁵ haste tolde me treuþe. and if Almyghty God⁶ grant⁶ me lif, y shal þe wel avenge."

¶ This Buerne was⁷ a gret man and⁷ a miȝty lorde, and was⁸ wel bilouede, & grete frendes hade, and lete sende for þe greteste lordes of þe lande, & to ham made his compleynt of þe⁸ despite pat þe kyng to him hade done, & saide pat he wolde bene⁹ avengede, how¹⁰ pat euer it were. and alle his frendes¹¹ conseilede¹² 12 and grantede to wende towarde ʒork¹, þere pat þe kyng was. & Buerne toke¹³ his menyne, &¹⁴ come to¹⁴ þe kyng¹. and when þe kyng him saw, he callede him curtesly Buerne by¹⁵ name; and Buerne him ansuerede &¹⁶ saide: "Sire, y ʒow defye, & ʒelde op¹⁶ 17 feautes, homages, and¹⁷ londes, and as miche as y haue holde of ʒow; and so, fro¹⁸ pis tyme afterwarde, y wil no þing of þe holde." & so he departede fram¹⁹ þe kyng with-outen²⁰ more speche or eny abidyng¹, & toke²¹ leue of his frendes, and went to Denmarc, 20 and pleynede to þe Kyng Godryn,²² & tolde him of þe dispite pat Kyng¹ Osbright to him hade done of his wif, & praiede him of socoure & of helpe, him to avenge. ¶ When Kyng Godrin²³ of Denmarc & þe²⁴ Danoyes, when pai²⁴ hade herde þe pleynt of²⁴ 24 pis Buerne & of þe praer¹ pat he bade, pai were wonder¹ glade in hert, for-asmiche as pai myȝt fynde cause forto gone²⁵ into Engeland¹ forto werr¹ oppoñ þe Englysshe-men, & also forto avenge Buerne of þe despite pat þe²⁶ kyng hade done²⁷ to his wif, & for- 28 asmiche as Buerne was sib to þe Kyng of Denmarc. ¶ Anone²⁸ pai lete ordeyne a grete hoste of men, & lete ordeyne shippis, and as miche as²⁹ was nede²⁹ to pat Viage. and when alle þe hoste was

¹ he sic D. ² strengþe þe O. ³⁻³ shalt þow D. þou shalt O.

⁴ be DO. ⁵ þow D. þou O.

⁶ leaf 55, back. ⁷⁻⁷ om. D. ⁸ om. O. ⁹ be D.

¹⁰ how so O. ¹¹ frende D. ¹² counceilled hym O.

¹³ nome O. ¹⁴⁻¹⁴ went towarde D. ¹⁵ by his O.

¹⁶ and to him D. & to hym O.

¹⁷⁻¹⁷ feautes & homages and D. feautes homages & O. feautes, homages R.

¹⁸ fram D. from O. ¹⁹ fro DO. ²⁰ withoute DO.

²¹ nome O. ²² Gordryne D. ²³ Gordyn D.

²⁴⁻²⁴ Danoyes D. Danes whan þey O. ²⁵ go DO.

²⁶ MS. has þe englysshe men, with englysshe men underlined for omission.

²⁷ y-done O. ²⁸ And anone D. ²⁹⁻²⁹ nedede D.

redy, þe kyng made ¹his ij breþerne cheueteys, þat Were noble Knyztes and bolde: þat one me callede Humber',² & þat opere Hubba.

4 How þe ³Danoys toke ³ʒork' & quellede⁴ Kyng Osbright, and afterwarde⁵ Kyng Elle. ¶ *Capitulo* ¶ *Centesimo* ¶ *Quarto*.

8 **W**Hen al þing was aredy,⁶ þo ij breþerne tok' leue of þe Kyng Godrin, and went towarde þe see, forto wende into Engelande as faste as þai myzt spede. ¶ Now is Buerne so⁷ wel comfortede, & faste hiede him wiþ þe ⁸Danoys; and þai arryue⁸ in þe Northcontre, & ⁹come prou3-out⁹ Holdernesse, & destroiede al
12 þe contre,¹⁰ and brent tounes and robbede folc, & quellede al þat þai myzt take, til þat þai come to ʒorke. ¶ And when Kyng Osbright saw ham come, he toke¹¹ þe¹² peple þat he hade, and come out of þe citee, & with ham fauzte; but no foysoun he nade¹³
16 aʒeynes ham; & miche was þe peple þat pere was slayn in boþe parties; and Kyng Osbright himself¹⁴ pere was slayn, and þe citee anone was take, & þe ¹⁴Danoys wenten¹⁴ in. ¶ And pere was also anopere kyng in Northumberlonð þat Buernes frendes hade chosen,
20 & helde him for kyng, a man þat me clepede¹⁵ Elle, for-asmiche as þai nolde¹⁶ nouzt to Kyng Osbright bene¹⁷ entendant, for þe despite þet he hade done to Buerne here cosyn. ¶ Hit bifelle þus, þat þe¹⁸ Kyng¹ Elle was goñ to þe¹⁸ wode him¹⁹ forto desporte: and of
24 venysouñ somdele he hade tak'. and as he satte in the wode at mete, to a knyght he saide: "we haue wel y²⁰spedde, & michel²¹ venysoun taken.²²" and wiþ þat worde pere come²³ in¹⁸ a man, ²⁴& to him²⁴ saide: "Sire, if ʒe so miche of venysouñ haue y-wonne,²⁵
28 an C. tymes so miche pere aʒeyns ²⁶ʒe hauen²⁶ loste; for al þis contre þe Danois hauen²⁷ gete, & take²⁸ þe cite of ʒork; & aʒeynes ʒow shal it holde, þat neuer ʒe shul come perin; & forsothe þai

¹ leaf 56.

² altered from Humber, or perhaps Humber altered from Hunger; Humber D. Hungar O.

³⁻³ Danes token O.

⁴ quellede the D.

⁵ after O.

⁶ redy D. ⁷ om. D.

⁸⁻⁸ Danoys and arryuede D. Danes þat þei beþ aryued¹ O.

⁹⁻⁹ comen prou3 D. comen þurgh-out O. ¹⁰ land D.

¹¹ nome O. ¹² his DO. ¹³ hade D. ¹⁴⁻¹⁴ Danes went O.

¹⁵ callede D. called O. ¹⁶ wolde D. wold O. ¹⁷ be D.

¹⁸ om. DO. ¹⁹ him al D. ²⁰ leaf 56, back.

²¹ miche D. mych O. ²² take O. ²³ cam O. ²⁴⁻²⁴ om. D.

²⁵ wonne DO. ²⁶⁻²⁶ haue ʒe D. ʒe haue O. ²⁷ han D.

²⁸ taken D.

¹hauen slayn¹ Kyng Osbright." ¶ And when Kyng Elle pise wordes herde, he lete assemble al þe folc of þe cuntre, & ordeynede al þe power þat he miȝt haue,² and wold haue gete³ þe toune of ȝork wip strengþ. but þe ⁴Danois comen⁴ out anon & ȝaf ham bataile, ⁴ & quellede⁵ þe kyng¹ & þe moste part⁶ of his men þat he hade⁷ brouȝt wip him: and þe same place þere þat þai were slayne shal euer⁸ bene⁹ callede Ellecrofte; and þat place is a litel fram ȝork. and þo⁷ abode¹⁰ þe ¹¹Danois neuer,¹¹ til þai hade conquerede al ⁸ Northumberland. and in þat contre þai made Werdeynes, & went ferþer into þe lande, and token Notyngham. and þere þai abiden al þe wynter, and deden¹² al þe sorwe þat þai myght. and after, when somer⁷ tyme come, þai remevede fram Notyngham, & ¹³come ¹² vnto¹³ Nichole, & to Lyndessey, & to Holanð, for no man miȝt ham withstande, so miche power & strengþ ¹⁴þai hade.¹⁴

How Seynt Edmunde þe Kyng was martrede. Capitulo Centesimo v^{to}.

16

ANd so ferre ¹⁵hade þe Danois¹⁵ passede fram¹⁶ contre vnto¹⁷ ¹⁸contre, & euermore brennyng & robberyng, & destroiede¹⁸ al þat þai miȝt, til þat¹⁹ þai come vnto²⁰ Tetteford. & in þat²¹ contre þai fonden a Cristen Kyng²² þat miche louede God and²³ his ²⁰ Werkes, þat me callede Edmunde; & he was Kyng of Northfolc and²⁴ Southfolc.²⁵ ¶ þis Seynt Edmunde þe kyng ordeynede as miche folc as he myȝt, & fauȝt wip þe Danois²⁶; but he and his folc were scomfitede,²⁷ & ²⁸þe kyng²⁸ him-self dryuen vnto a²⁹ castel ²⁴ of Framelyngham. & þe Danois²⁶ him pursuede, & comen³⁰ vnto þe same castel. and when Kyng Edmunde saw þat þe castel myst nouȝt ham³¹ wipstonde, he comen³² aȝeynes ham. with whame þe Danois²⁶ ferst speken³³; and anone þai axede of him where Kyng ²⁸ Edmunde was. "now forsoth," quod he, "when y was in þe casteH, ³⁴y was³⁴ kyng; & when y went oute⁷ of þe castel, he went out also; and ³⁵wheþer þat³⁵ he shal ascape or dye, at Godes wil

¹⁻¹ haue slayn the D. han slayn O.

² haue and wolde haue D. haue & wold haue O. haue R.

³ y-gete O. ⁴⁻⁴ Danoys come D. Danes comen O. ⁵ quelle D.

⁶ party D. partye O. ⁷ om. D. ⁸ euermore O. ⁹ be DO.

¹⁰ abide neuer O. ¹¹⁻¹¹ Danes O. ¹² dede O. ¹³⁻¹³ comen to D.

¹⁴⁻¹⁴ om. D. ¹⁵⁻¹⁵ þe Danoys had D. had þe Danes O.

¹⁶ fro O. ¹⁷ to D. ¹⁸ destroyng D. ¹⁹ om. DO. ²⁰ to D.

²¹ the same D. ²² leaf 57. ²³ and al D. ²⁴ & of D.

²⁵ Suffolk O. ²⁶ Danes O. ²⁷ descomfitede D. ²⁸⁻²⁸ om. D.

²⁹ the D. þe O. ³⁰ come D. ³¹ hym O. ³² come DO.

³³ spoken D. ³⁴⁻³⁴ þer was þe O. ³⁵⁻³⁵ whedir O.

most¹ hit be." ¶ When Seynt Edmundede hade nempnede Godk, by pat² worde pai wiste² alle pat it³ was he him-self. and anone Hubba & Hungar⁴ tok⁵ him, & saide pat he shulde God forsake,
 4 & al cristen law, as alle⁶ opere hade⁷ done prouz ham biforn. and Seynt Edmundede saide pat⁸ 'he wolde⁹ neuer, but raper¹⁰ he wolde suffre deth¹⁰ for Godes sone,¹¹ and his law¹² to kepe.' ¶ po tok¹³ pai Kyng Edmundede, & bounde him vnto¹⁴ a tree, and made¹⁵
 8 Archires¹⁶ to him¹⁶ shote with Arwes, til pat his body stickede also¹⁷ ful of Arwes as an hirchone is ful of prickes; but for alle þe payne pat he hade, he wolde¹⁸ neuer' God forsake. & in⁸ þe same pyne¹⁹ he deide wip pat *turmentyng*,¹⁹ & bitoke his soule to²⁰
 12 *almyzty* Godk. & when pai saw pat he was dede, pai smyten of his heuede²¹; & in þis maner' was Seynt Edmundede martrede.

22 How Hubba & Hungar' toke þe toune of Redyng. Capitulo Gentesimo vij^{to}.

16 [W] Hen sent Edmundede was martrede, Hunguar' and Hubba went pens, with al here Danoyz,²³ vnto Redyng'. and as pai went piderwarde, pai brent tounes & citees, & quellede al Cristen peple pat wolde nouzt Godk²⁴ forsake, and caste adouñ²⁵
 20 cherches, and comen²⁶ to Redyng, and toke²⁷ þe touñ, and pere holde²⁸ ham til pat þe Kyng Edelf' of Westsex come pider' wip al his power' forto take þe toune. ¶ po come²⁹ oute þe Danoyz²³ forto zeue bataile to Kyng' Elfride³⁰; and at pat bataile was quellede an
 24 Erl of Danoyz²³ pat me callede Gydrak'. ¶ Oppoñ þe morwe come þe Kyng Eldrede, and his broþer Alurede, with a stronge power' and³¹ grete host. and þe Kyng Edelf' come azeyne (pat hade³² fouzten wip þe Danois³² þe day toforne³³) to pat bataile. & þe
 28 Danois²³ po comen³⁴ out forto feizt wip ham. and pat³⁵ bataile was wonder strong, for meny a man was pere slayn³⁶; and þe Danois²³ pat day hade þe vittori; and þe Kyng Eldrede & his broþer

¹ inizt D. mote O. ²⁻² pai wisten D. þei wysten O. ³ pat D.

⁴ *D has Humber with ber struck out.* ⁵ nomen O. ⁶ meny DO.

⁷ hadden O. ⁸ om. D. ⁹ nolde O.

¹⁰⁻¹⁰ suffren deth he wolde D. ¹¹ loue D. ¹² lawes O.

¹³ nome O. ¹⁴ to D. ¹⁵ made her' D. made here O.

¹⁶⁻¹⁶ him to D. ¹⁷ om. D. ¹⁸ nold O.

¹⁹⁻¹⁹ and *turment* he deide D. & *turnement* he dide O. ²⁰ vn-to O.

²¹ hed' O. ²² *leaf 57, back.* ²³ Danes O. ²⁴ om. O.

²⁵ doune D. ²⁶ come D. ²⁷ token O. ²⁸ helde D. held O.

²⁹ comen O. ³⁰ Edelf' D. Edilf O. ³¹ and a D. & a O.

³²⁻³² fouzten D. fought O. ³³ tofore D. byfore O. ³⁴ come D.

³⁵ the D. ³⁶ y-slayn O.

Alurede pat day were descomfited. but þe xiiij day afterwarde, þe Danois¹ and þe Engliſſhe-men fouzten to-gederes² oppoñ Elkelden, & þere was slayne a kyng of Denmarc þat was callede Rasyng³, and iiij Erles of grete power⁴; and þat day hade þe 4 Danoys¹ shame, for þai were dryuen³ vnto Engelfilde. and þe xv day after⁵, þe Danois¹ & þe Engliſſhemen fouzten⁴ anopere tyme at Rasyng⁵ [*sic*], and þere were þe Engliſſhe-men descomfitede. and fram⁶ pens a Danois, þat me callede Roynt, went to Redyng⁴ wiþ 8 his hoste, & destroiede al þat 7 he myght tak⁴; and⁸ Kyng Eldrede fauzt wiþ him, but he was 9 woundede so, wherfore⁹ he was dede; and he¹⁰ nade regnede but v. 3ere, and 11 deide, and¹¹ liþ atte Wonburne.

12

Of Kyng Alurede; & how þe Danoys¹ in his tyme praiede him of mercy, þat þai moste gone¹² out of þe lande. Capitulo Centesimo vij^o.

After þe deth of þis Eldrede, regnede his broþer Alurede, þat 16 Dolfynes was callede. þo went þe Danois,¹ & assemblede ham, and went forto seche Alurede, þat þo was þe new¹³ kyng of Southseġ. and þere þai fonde¹⁴ him at Wiltoñ,¹⁵ wiþ a litel peple; & noþeles he fauzt with ham; but at the laste he fledde pens 20 fram¹⁶ þe felde, and went vnto Westseġ, and ordeynede so miche peple of his owen¹⁷ reaume & also of opere, so 18 til þat¹⁸ he hade a stronge host, so þat þe Danois¹ hade non¹⁹ power²⁰ a3eynes him²⁰ to stande. and he come to Londoñ wiþ his host, 21 þere as²¹ þe Danois 24 soiournede; and þere 22 wolde he haue fouzten²² wiþ ham, but þe Danois²³ derste nouzt wiþ him²⁴ fei3t, but praiede him of pees, & þat þai most gone²⁵ a3eyne into her²⁵ owen contre, & neuermore into Engeland forto come a3eyne, eny harme forto²⁶ done, and oppoñ þis 28 couenant þai shulde 3eue²⁷ him to plegge,²⁷ gode hostages, & soche as þe¹⁰ Engliſſhe²⁸ men wolde axen.²⁸

1 Danes O. 2 togeder another tyme D. to-gidere anoper tyme O.

3 dryue O. 4 fouzt D. 5 Rafyng⁴ D. Rasyng O. 6 fro D.

7 leaf 58. 8 but D. 9-9 wondeth so wherthou3 D. 10 om. D.

11-11 om. DO. 12 go O. 13 mewe sic D. 14 fonden D.

15 corrected from Waltoñ. 16 fro O. 17 om. O. 18-18 þat til O.

19 no DO. 20-20 MS. a3eynes him a3eynes him.

21-21 and þere D. & þere were O. 22-22 he wolde haue fouzt D.

23 Danes ne O. 24 him þo D. hem tho O. 25 go DO.

26 to DO. 27-27 to hym O.

28-28 om. D., Engliſſhe ends a page, and the following page continues with How Hubba, &c.

**How Hubba & Hunguar¹ were quelled at Chippenham; & how
pe Danoy¹ brouzt hir kyng vnto² oure kyng¹. *Capitulo
Centesimo Octauo.***

4 **A**Nd pe same day pat³ pe Danois¹ departede fram⁴ Londoñ, so
faste pai riden, bope⁵ nyght and day,⁵ and neuer⁶ toke reste
of goyng¹ til pat pai⁶ comen vnto⁷ Excestre, and token⁸ pe toune,
& pere helde ham. ¶ When Kyng Alurede herde⁹ þo tidynges,⁹
8 anone he lete tak pe hostages, and went fram¹⁰ pens vnto¹¹ Excestre
wip al pe power¹ pat he hade. ¶ And when pe Danois¹ herde tel of
his¹² comyng¹, pai went fro pens forth into Westsex, and comen to
Chippenham; and pere pai deden miche harme in pe contre; pai
12 robbede folc, & brouzt¹³ ham into¹⁴ prisouñ. The Kyng Alurede
ham pursuede, &¹⁵ come oppon ham, and fersly¹⁵ ham assailede; &
pere were¹⁶ slayn bope Hubba, and Hunguar¹ his broþer, and Buerne
Bocard. and in pat¹⁷ bataile was michel¹⁸ folc slayn in pat¹⁹ o partye
16 and in¹⁹ pat opere, but pe gree of pe felde lefte wip pe Danois,¹ for-
asmiche²⁰ as pe kyng¹ þo²⁰ come but with litel company.²¹ ¶ The
Kyng Hastede him as miche as he myght, forto wende aþeyn; and
when pe Danois²² fonden²³ Hubba his bodye²³ liggyng dede, pai
20 enteredede hit, & made oppoñ him a grete logge, and lette calle hit
Hubbeslaw; & so it is called into pis day; and pat place is in
Deuenesshire. ¶ þe barons of Westsex,²⁴ Wilteshire and Dorset,
harde telle how pat here²⁵ kyng was descomfitede; and ordeynede
24 al pe power pat pai miȝt haue, and come to pe kyng¹ pere pat he
was, & pankede God pat pai hade²⁶ him fonden²⁶ alif¹, for pai wende
pat pe Danois¹ hade him slayne. ¶ þo toke²⁷ pai a³ conseil, pe
kyng and his barons, &²⁸ pai wolde²⁹ gone seche²⁹ pe Danois,¹
28³⁰ with ham forto feizt.³⁰ and so pai riden al pat nyȝt³¹ ham forto
seche,³¹ and come³² amorw,³³ about prime, to Abyngdoñ, þere pat
pe Danois¹ were.

¶ þe kyng þo, Alurede³⁴ and his barons, assemblede, and pere

¹ Danes O. ² to O. ³ om. D. ⁴ fro O. ⁵⁻⁵ day & nyght O.
⁶ leaf 58, back. ⁷⁻⁷ come to DO. ⁸ toke O. ⁹⁻⁹ þe Tydyng O.
¹⁰ fro DO. ¹¹ to D. ¹² þis O. ¹³ put D. ¹⁴ in DO.
¹⁵⁻¹⁵ fressheliche D. ¹⁶ was O. ¹⁷ this D. ¹⁸ þis O. ¹⁸ mych O.
¹⁹ om. O. ²⁰⁻²⁰ tho as the kyng D. ²¹ meny D. ²² Danes had O.
²³⁻²³ Hubbaus body D. Hubba his body O. Hubba his bodyes R.
²⁴ Somerset D. Somersete O. ²⁵ MS. here here.
²⁶⁻²⁶ founden him D. founde hym O. ²⁷ nome O. ²⁸ þat O.
²⁹⁻²⁹ go sechen D. go to seche O.
³⁰⁻³⁰ forto fyzt with ham D. with hem al for-to fight O.
³¹⁻³¹ forto seche ham D. hem al for-to seche O. ³² comen O.
³³ in the morwe D. ³⁴ leaf 59.

assailed pe Danois¹ egrely,² and pere 3af ham a stronger³ bataile pan euere he dede bifore; and pe Danois¹ nobli put ham of, longe tyme, pat no man wist in wheper partie more peple were⁴ slayn. ¶ But pus hit bifelle, as God⁵ wolde, pat⁵ Kyng Alurede hade pe 4 vittorie with michel⁶ honoure; for pe Danois¹ were so dryuen⁷ pat pai⁷ wist nouzt⁸ whider⁸ to wende.⁹ xv dayes pe kyng ham pursuede at his wille, pat glade & fayne¹⁰ pai were forto speken¹⁰ of pees & of accorde, & toke¹¹ him gode hostages, & saide pat pai⁸ wolde¹² neuer¹³ oppoñ him werre, ne¹⁴ debate arere. ¶ And moreouer pai bihight to pe Kyng Alurede pat pai wolde go and brynge her owen kyng vnto him, and pat her⁸ kyng⁸ & pai aH shulde¹⁵ bene¹⁶ baptisede. & oppoñ pis condicioun, Kyng Alurede¹⁷ ham¹² grauntede¹⁷ lif and lyme, and saide to ham pat pai shulde goñ¹⁸ here kyng forto fecche,¹⁹ and at a certeyne day to come a3eyne, pat to ham was sette. ¶ And so pai went forþ fast, and come²⁰ a3eyne at here day pat was assignede, and alle pe Danois¹ brouzt here kyng¹⁶ wip ham. ¶ The Kyng Alurede anone lete ham ben¹⁶ baptisede, and here names chaunged²¹, so pat pe kyng of²² Danois was callede²² Athelstoñ, & xxx^{ti} of his felawe3 names²³ were chaungede also, & pe opere were baptisede to pe right bileue; and at pis was²⁰ done²⁴ at Westmynstre.²⁵ and after,²⁶ Kyng Alurede helde wip him Kyng Athelstone & alle his Danois¹ xij daies at soiune²⁷ wip miche²⁸ solempnite, and 3af ham grete 3iftes after²⁹ pat pai were overcome,²⁹ and so pai departede. ¶ Tho was³⁰ Kyng Alurede²⁴ al at ese when he hade his enemys³¹ ouercomen,³² & pat pai were turnede to pe³³ bileue of almizty God.

How pe Danois¹ pat comen³⁴ into Fraunce wip Gurmonde, come³⁵ a3eyne into Engeland; & of pe dep of Kyng²⁸ Alured. ¶ Capitulo ¶ Centesimo ¶ Nono.

¹ Danes O. ² egreliche O. ³ strong O. ⁴ was O.
⁵ pat pe O. ⁶ mych O. ⁷⁻⁷ MS. pat pai pat pai; pat pei ne O.
⁸ om. O. ⁹ wende and D. turne and O.
¹⁰⁻¹⁰ they . . speke D. pey . . speke O. pai om. R. ¹¹ token DO.
¹² pai nolde D. pei nold O. nolde R. ¹³ neuere-more O.
¹⁴ ne no DO. ¹⁵ schulden O. ¹⁶ be DO.
¹⁷⁻¹⁷ grantede ham D. ¹⁸ go to D. go O. ¹⁹ fecche him D.
²⁰ comen O. ²¹ change DO.
²²⁻²² Danoys callede was D. Danes called was O. ²³ om. D.
²⁴ do D. ²⁵ Wynchestre O. ²⁶ after pat the D. after þ^e O.
²⁷ soioune O. soionne or soioune R. ²⁸ michel D.
²⁹⁻²⁹ om. D. pat pai were R. ³⁰ was pe O. ³¹ leaf 59, back.
³² ouercome DO. ³³ pe right D. ³⁴ come D.
³⁵ comen DO.

A Nd þus hit bifelle afterwarde, þat þe Danoy¹ of Northumber-
 land, þat were paynemys, comen² with a grete host of
 Fraunce, þat is to vnderstonde, with ham þat went into Fraunce
 4 with Gurmonde of Aufrik, when he hade conquerede Engeland, &
 it 3af vnto Saxonus. and þo þat come fro Fraunce arryuede in
 Kent, and sent into Northumberlande þat pai shulde come to ham.
 and whan þo ij hostes were comen³ & assemblede, anone pai went
 8 to destroie þe Cristen peple of Engeland fram⁴ place vnto⁵ place,
 and deden⁶ miche sorwe. ¶ Hit bifelle þus, as almighty God hit⁷
 wolde, an harde chaunce in Engeland; ffor þe gode Kyng Alurede,
 þat was wont to abate þe Danois,¹ deide in þe mene-tyme. þis
 12 Alured regnede xxx^{ti} 3ere, and a gode kyng had bene, and ⁸wel
 coupe⁸ chastice his enemys; And⁹ was a gode clerc, and lete mak
 menye bokes. & on¹⁰ boke he made of Engliſſhe, of Auentures of
 kynges and of batailes þat hade bene¹¹ done in þe lande; and
 16 meny opere bokes of gestic, he lete ham write, þat were of grete
 wisdom and of gode lernyng,¹² prou; whiche bokes meny man¹³
 may him amende þat wille¹⁴ ham rede and oppoñ lok; oppon
 whos soule almighty⁷ God haue mercy! & þis Kyng Alurede
 20 lip at Wyncheſtr'.

Of Kyng Edward, þat was Kyng Aluredus sone. *Capitulo Gen-
tesimo x^{mo}.*

15 **A** Nd after þis Alurede, regnede Edward his sone, þat was a gode
 24 man & a wise, þat men callede [Edward], þat was⁷ wonder
 curteise. ¶ The ¹⁶Danois deden¹⁶ miche sorwe in þe lande, and her'
 power encreſede, ¹⁷and biganne forto wexe¹⁷ fram¹⁸ day to day, for
 þe Danois¹ comen ofte wip here companies into þis lande. and
 28 when þe kyng saw þat⁷ he ¹⁹miȝt no¹⁹ bettre ²⁰done, he tok²⁰ trewes
 with ham, and granted ham his pees. ¶ And nopelesse þe trewes
 durede nouȝt longe, þat þe Danois¹ ne⁷ bigonne ²¹strongliche forto
 were²¹ oppon þe Engliſſhe-men, & dede ham miche sorwe. Wher-
 32 fore Kyng Edward dede assemble a grete hoste forto fiȝt with

¹ Danes O. ² come D. ³ come O. ⁴ fro O.
⁵ to DO. ⁶ dede O. ⁷ om. D. ⁸⁻⁸ couthe wel D.
⁹ and he D. for he O. ¹⁰ o O.
¹¹ be O. ¹² lyuyng O. ¹³ may sic D. ¹⁴ wole O.
¹⁵ leaf 60. ¹⁶⁻¹⁶ Danes dide O. ¹⁷⁻¹⁷ om. D. ¹⁸ fro DO.
¹⁹⁻¹⁹ ne myȝhte O. ²⁰⁻²⁰ do he nome DO.
²¹⁻²¹ forto werr strongliche D. strongly for-to werre O.

ham ; and þo pis¹ Kyng Edwarde deide when God² wolde. This Kyng Edward regnede ³xxiiij zere,³ & lip at Wynchestre bisides⁴ his fader^r.

Of Kyng Athel[s]tone, & of Edmunde, Eldrede, & of⁵ Edwynne 4 his broþer. ¶ Capitulo Centesimo ¶ Vndecimo.

After þis Edward, regnede Athelstoñ his sone ; & when he hade regnede iiij zere, he helde bataile azeynes þe Danois,⁶ and drof Kyng Gaufride, þat was kyng of þe Danois,⁶ and al his hoste 8 vnto þe see, & restede by Scotland, & nomen⁷ strongliche⁸ þe contrey al a zere. ¶ And after þat, þo of Cumberland, & þe Scottes of Westmerlande, bigonne to werre oppon Kyng Athelstoñ ; and he ham 3af so strong^t bataile þat he quelledde so meny of ham þat no 12 man coupe telle þe nombre⁹ of ham.⁹ and after þat he ne regnede but iiij zere ; & he regnede in al xxv zere and lip at Malmesbery.

¶ And after pis¹⁰ Athelstoñ, regnede Edmund his broþer, for-as-miche as Kyng Athelstoñ hade none¹¹ sone. and pis Edmu[n]de 16 was a worpi knyzt, and a douzty man¹ of body, ⁹and a noble knyght.⁹ and þe¹² pridde zere after¹ þat he was kyng^t, he went ouer Humber^r, in whiche place he hade ij Kynges¹³ of Danois¹⁴: þat one me callede Enelaf, and þat¹⁵ oper Renaud. ¶ This Kyng 20 Edmund drof ham boþe fram¹⁶ þe lande, and after went and tok^r grete preye in Comberland. ¶ This Edmund^t ne⁵ regnede but vij zere^r, and lip at Glastynbery.

¶ And after þis Edmunde, regnede¹⁷ Eldrede his broþer,¹⁸ þat 24 vengede Edwarde his fadre of his enemys þat him quelde ; and affir-ward¹⁹ he seisede²⁰ Northumberland into²¹ his hand^t,²² and made þe Scottes abowe and meke vnto his Wille. ¶ And þe secunde zere²³ þat he hade regned²³ [come] Arnalaf Quyran, þat was kyng 28 of Denmarc, and seisede al Northumberland, and helde þat lande ij zere. and after þat come Kyng Eldrede wip^a a¹ grete power, and drof him oute of pis²⁴ lande. ¶ And pis Kyng Eldrede was a²⁵ noble man and a goode, of whos godenesse seynt Dunstoñ prechede. 32 & ²⁶pis Kyng Eldrede²⁶ regnede xj zere, & lip at Wynchestr^r.

¹ om. D. ² MS. gode with the e underlined for omission.

³⁻³ xiiij D. ⁴ bysyde O. ⁵ om. O. ⁶ Danes O. ⁷ nome DO.

⁸ strongly O. ⁹⁻⁹ om. D. ¹⁰ leaf 60, back. ¹¹ no DO.

¹² and the D. & þ^o O. and R. ¹³ knyghtes O. ¹⁴ Danes O. ¹⁵ þe O.

¹⁶ fro O. ¹⁷ regne D. ¹⁸ sone D. ¹⁹ after þat O.

²⁰ sesed aH O. ²¹ in O. ²² honde D. hond O. land^r R.

²³⁻²³ of his regne D. after þat he had regned^r O. þat he hade reg R.

²⁴ his O. ²⁵ was a DO. was R. ²⁸⁻²⁸ he O.

¶ And after pis Eldrede, Edwynne his proper regnede, & was a¹ luper man towarde Godd and to pe peple; for he hatede folc of his owen land, and louede & honourede ²strange men,² & sette litel 4 by holy cherche, and ³bynom⁴ of holy cherche aH pe tresoure pat he myzt haue: pat was grete shame and velonye to himself, and perile of his soule, & perfore Godd wolde nouzt pat he shulde regne no longer than iiij zer,⁵ and after⁶ deide, and Lith at Wynchestre.

8 Of Kyng Edgare, pat regned aboue pe kyngus⁷ of Scotland & of Walys; & how he was bigilede prou; takyngt of his wif. ¶ Capitulo ¶ Centesimo ¶ Duodecimo.

12 **A**Nd after' pis Edwynne, regnede Edgare his sone, a man pat ⁸miche louede⁸ God, and pees, & holy cherche also, and was a worpi lorde, bolde and myghty, & maytenede wel pis land in pees. ¶ And pis Edgare was ⁹Kyngt and lorde aboue⁹ alle pe kynges of Scotland and of Walys: fram¹⁰ pe tyme pat Arthure 16 was gone,¹¹ neuer was sipen¹² kyng of¹³ his power. ¶ And pis Edgare was seynt Edwardes fader'. And when Edgarus wif was dede, pat was seynt Edwardes moder, & enterede, he herde speke of pe fairenesse of Estrilde, pat was Orgarus douzter, a barouñ of 20 Deuenshire, pat was so faire a woman pat alle men spake¹⁴ perof. He callede one of his knyzttes pat he miche louede & trust oppoñ, and tolde him: "Go," quod he, "to pe noble Baroñ Orgar' of Deuenshire, and se if his douzter be so faire as men speke¹⁵ of; & 24 if it be sop, y wil haue here vnto¹⁶ my wif." ¶ pis knyzt, pat me callede¹⁷ Edelwolde, went forp¹⁸ pere pat¹⁹ pe lady po²⁰ was; & when he saw her' so faire, he pouzt haue her' himself to wif, and perfore²¹ spake to Orgar' here fader'. and Orgar was an olde²² man, 28 & hade no mo childerne but here on; and saw pat Edelwolde was a faire zonge knyzt, and worpi and riche, & was wel with pe kyngt. & pouzt his douzter shulde wel ²³bene²⁴ mariede, & wel bisette oppoñ him, and grauntede him his douzter, if pe gode lorde pe 32 Kyng wolde assent²⁵ perto. ¶ pis Edelwolde come azeyn to pe

¹ om D. ²⁻² Straungers O. ³ and DO. ne R.

⁴ MS. bynoman with an underlined for omission. ⁵ leaf 61.

⁶ om. DO. ⁷ kyng O. ⁸⁻⁸ loued mych loued sic O.

⁹⁻⁹ lorde and kyngt of D. lord & kyng aboue O. ¹⁰ fro O.

¹¹ gone & D. agoo & O. ¹² seth O. ¹³ of Walys of O.

¹⁴ speke O. ¹⁵ speken D. ¹⁶ to DO. ¹⁷ clepede D.

¹⁸ forth his way & come DO. ¹⁹ as D. ²⁰ om. O. ²¹ perof O.

²² MS. holde, with h underlined for omission.

²³ leaf 61, back. ²⁴ be DO. ²⁵ consent D. consente O.

Kyng^t, and saide¹ ‘she was faire ynow oppoñ to see, but of body she was wonder² lopy.’ ¶ po ansuerede þe Kyng, and saide pat he toke of her litel charge. ¶ “Sire,” quod Edelwolde po, “she is her faderes heire, and y am nouzt riche of londes,³ and if ze wolde⁴ consent and grant⁴ pat y most her haue, þan shulde y be riche ynow.” “In Godes name,” quod þe Kyng, “I assent⁵ þerto.” ¶ Edelwolde pankede po michel⁶ þe Kyng, and went azeine into Deuenshire, & spousede þe damisel, and in⁷ pat contre⁸ duelleded. 8 ¶ And þus hit bifel oppoñ a tyme, pat he tolde his conseil & al þis ping^t vnto his wif, how & in what maner^t he hade bigilede his lorde þe Kyng^t, pat wolde haue hade her^t to⁹ wif. and anone as she it wist, she louede him neuermore afterwarde¹⁰ as she hade 12 done bifore. ¶ þis lady conseyuede by him a sone; and when tyme was pat þis¹¹ childe¹² shulde ben born,¹² Edelwolde come to þe Kyng^t, & praede him to heue a sone of his at þe fountstoñ. þe Kyng him grantede, and lete calle him Edgare, after^t his owen 16 name. ¶ And when þis was ydoñ, he pouzt pat he was siker^t ynow of þe Kyng, for bifore pat tyme þis Edelwolde him¹³ drede lest Kyng Edgare wolde haue taken¹⁴ his wif, forasmiche¹⁵ as his lorde was a Ioly man and an Amerus. 20

How þat¹⁶ Kyng Edgare wedede Estrilde afte¹⁷ þe deth of Edelwolde. ¶ Capitulo ¶ Centesimo ¶ terciodecimo.

THUS hit bifelle, pat al men in Kyng Edgares court po speken, and saide pat ‘Edelwolde was richely auansede prouzt þe 24 mariage pat he hade by his wif^t; ‘and zit,’ þai saide, ‘he was auauuncede an hundred-folde more, for he hade spousede þe fairest woman pat euer^t was seyn.’ and when þe Kyng herde speke so miche of here beaute, he pouzt þo pat Edelwolde¹⁸ hade him 28 desseyuede & bigilede, & pouzt priuely¹⁹ in his hert pat he wolde gone²⁰ into Deuenneshire, as it were forto hunt for hert and hynde and opere wilde bestes, and þan he shulde see²¹ þere þe lady²¹ or he departede þens. ¶ And þis lady was duellyng at a manere²² bisides 32

¹ tolde him þat D. told^t hym þat O. ² om. O. ³ om. D.

⁴ grant þerto D. ⁵ consent D. consente O. ⁶ myche D. mych O.

⁷ in DO. om. R. ⁸ contre he D. Cuntre he O. ⁹ MS. to to.

¹⁰ after O. ¹¹ þe DO. ^{12–12} shulde be be borne sic D. was bore O.

¹³ hade D. had O. ¹⁴ tak D. take O. ¹⁵ leaf 62.

¹⁶ þat Estrilde sic D. ¹⁷ after DO. ¹⁸ Edelde D. ¹⁹ priuelich D.

²⁰ go DO. ^{21–21} þan the lady þere D.

²² maner^t D. Manere O. mane R.

pe forest^r pere pat pe Kyng wolde hunte, and at pat maner was herburghede al¹ nyght. and when tyme come pat pe Kyng shulde sope, and pe sonne shoone, pe Kyng^r axede after^r his Gossib and
 4 after his godsonne, and Edelwolde made here² come bifore pe Kyng^r; and nopeles, ³and it³ oper myzt haue bene, she shulde nouzt haue comen⁴ in his sight bi his wille. ¶ pe lady welcomede⁵ pe Kyng, and suetely him kisede; and he⁶ toke⁷ her^r by⁸ pe
 8 hande, & po⁹ nexte him¹⁰ her^r sette, and so⁹ soppede pai togeder^r. ¶ And po was a custume and an vsage pat, when a man drank^r vnto¹¹ anoper, pe drynker^r ¹²shulde say ‘Wassaile,’ and pat opere shulde ansure⁸ ‘drynkhale’: and pus dede¹³ pe Kyng¹³ & pe lady
 12 meny tymes, & also kiste. ¶ And after soper^r, when tyme was to gone¹⁴ to bedde, pe Kyn[g] went vnto his bed, hertly¹⁵ penkyng oppoñ pe¹⁶ ladies fairenesse; and po was ouercomen¹⁷ for here loue, pat him pouzt he wolde¹⁸ dye, but of here his wille he hade.
 16 ¶ Oppoñ pe morwe pe Kyng aroos, and into pe fforeste went, him pere to desporte¹⁹ & salace¹⁹ wip hertes²⁰ and hyndes, and alle oper wilde bestes; & of pe⁶ hertes grete plente, to pe²¹ lady he sent; and prise²² he went to salace²³ and speke wip pat lady whiles he
 20 duelledede in pat contre. ¶ And after^r pat, pe Kyng remevede pens, and pouzt how he myghte best delyuer^r Edelwolde²⁴ f[r]am his wif^r, as he hade him ferste desceyuede. and pe Kyng anone, after^r viij dayes, lete ordeyne a parlement at Salesbury of al his baronage,
 24 conseile to haue, & forto ordeyn how pe contre of Northumberland^r mizt beste bene²⁵ kepte,²⁶ pat pe Danoy^s²⁷ come nouzt pere, the londe forto destroye. ¶ And pis Edelwolde come also to²⁸ pe Kynges Parlement; and pe Kyng sent him to 3ork^r forto bene²⁵ keper^r of
 28 pat contre. ¶ And pus hit fel,²⁹ pat men pat knew³⁰ him nouzt, slow him by pe waye. ¶ And anone as pe Kyng herde pat he was dede, he lete sende after pe lady Estrilde, pat she shulde come to pe citee of Londoñ, and pere bene³¹ weded^r to³² pe Kyng wip grete³³
 32 solempnite & worshipe; and^r ³⁴helde a solempne fest; and he werede³⁵ a crone of [gold], and ³⁶pe Quene³⁶ anoper. ¶ And seynt

¹ al a O. ² here to O. ³⁻³ if it D. if pat O. ⁴ come O.
⁵ welcomed^r po D. ⁶ om. D. ⁷ name O. ⁸ om. O.
⁹⁻⁹ she sate next by him and D. ¹⁰ hym by O. ¹¹ to O.
¹² leaf 62, back. ¹³⁻¹³ om. D. ¹⁴ go DO. ¹⁵ hert sic D.
¹⁶ pat O. ¹⁷ ouercome DO. ¹⁸ shulde D. schulde O.
¹⁹⁻¹⁹ om. DO. ²⁰ herte D. ²¹ pat DO. ²² iij O. ²³ solacen O.
²⁴ Edwolde D. ²⁵ be O. ²⁶ kepede D. ²⁷ Danes O.
²⁸ vnto O. ²⁹ byfett O. ³⁰ knew D. knewe O. know R. ³¹ be DO.
³² vnto O. ³³ miche D. ³⁴ leaf 63. ³⁵ wer^r D. ³⁶⁻³⁶ sche O.

Dunstoñ¹ on þe morwe¹ come vnto þe Kyng¹ into þe Kyngus² chaumbre, and fonde þe Kyng¹ abed, & þe quene also in fere³; and seynt Dunstoñ axede who pat she was. ¶ þe Kyng ansuerede, “pis is þe Quene Estrilde.” and þe Erchebisshop seynt Dunstañ⁴ saide pat ‘he dede grete wrong¹, and azeyns Godes wille to tak a woman to wif, whos childe he hap⁴ take at þe funtstoñ’; and þe Quene for pat worde neuer after¹ louede seynt Dunstoñ; and nopeles þe gode man⁵ warnede ham ofte-tymes⁶ þat folie to⁸ lete; but his warnyng auailede litel, for þe loue bituene⁷ ham was so miche. ¶ þe Kyng bigate oppon her⁸ a sone pat me callede Eldred¹; and when⁹ pis childe was vj 3er¹ olde, þe Kyng his fader¹ deide; & aboute þat tyme he hade regnede xvij 3er¹, and lith¹² at Glastynbery.

Of seynt Edward þe Martir¹; how Estrilde his stepmoder¹ lete him quelle, forto make Eldred¹, her¹ owen sone, Kyng¹.¹⁰
Capitulo¹¹ Centesimo xiiij^o.¹¹ 16

ANd after pis Edgare, regnede Edward¹ his sone, þat he bigate in¹² his ferst wif, þat wel and noble¹³ gouernede þe lande; for he was ful of al maner¹⁴ godenesse, and lað ful holy lif¹; & aboute¹⁵ al ping he louede God¹ & holy cherche. & þe quene²⁰ Estrilde, his stepmoder¹, lete him slee, for enchesouñ to make her owen sone Eldred¹ kyng¹; and þus was he slayn,¹⁶ as afterward 3e shul her¹. ¶ Hit bifelle þus oppoñ a day, þat pis Kyng Edwarde went him into a wode forto play in þe Southcontre, bisides a toune²⁴ þat is callede Warham; in þe whiche forest was grete plente of Hertes & of hyndes. and as he hade bene awhile pere him forto playe, he pouzt¹⁷ him¹⁸ oppoñ his broþer Eldred¹, þat Was wip his moder¹ þe quene, for her place was ney3 þe forest¹; & pouzte forto²⁸ go¹⁹ visite & see his broþer; and tok²⁰ wip him but²¹ a litel meny,²¹ and went him þo toward¹ his Stepmoders house, þat in þat tyme soiournede in þe castel of Corft. and as he rode in þe pickenesse of þe wode, to asprie his game, hit bifelle þat he went amys, &³² loste his meny þat were wip him.²² & at þe last he come out of þe

1—1 amorowe O. 2 om. DO. 3 y-fere O. 4 hade D. had O.

5 man often-tymes O. 6 om. O. 7 bitue D.

8 þis womman D. þis woman O. 9 þo O. 10 MS. kyng¹ kyng¹.

11—11 cxv^{to} O. 12 on DO. 13 nobly DO. 14 manere of O.

15 aboþe sic D. 16 y-slayn O. 17 leaf 63, back.

18 MS. he; om. DO. 19 and forto sic D. go & O. 20 nome O.

21—21 litil meny D. a litil mayne O. 22 him comen D. hym come O.

wode; & as he lokede about, he saw *pere* faste¹ bisides him¹ pe maner¹ pat his Stepmoder¹ duelled¹ in; & piderward he went² alloñ. and anone hit was tolde pe Quene how pat pe Kyng was comen³
 4 allone wipout⁴ company; and *perfore*⁵ she made ioye ynow, & pouzt how⁶ she myzt do⁶ pat he were⁷ slayn as priuely as she myzt. ¶ And anone⁸ priuely she called⁸ to her⁸ on of here knyzttes, to whom she hade tolde miche of here consel bituene⁹ ham. and
 8 bope pai come¹⁰ to pe Kyng¹, and curtesly him resceyuede; & pe Kyng tolde pat he was com¹¹ her¹ to Visite, & also forto speke wip Eldrede his broper. ¶ pe Quene meny tymes him þankede, and him *praiede* to¹² aliȝt and herburgh wip her¹³ forto haue¹³ al pat
 12 nyght. pe Kyng saide pat he myght nouzt, but aȝeyne he wolde wende vnto his folc, if he myght ham fynde. ¶ And when pe Quene¹⁴ saw pat he wolde nouzt abide, she *praiede* him pat he wolde ones drynk¹; & he *grauntede* her¹⁵ and anone as pe drynk
 16 come, pe Quene drank¹ to pe Kyng¹, & pe Kyng toke¹⁶ pe coppe & sette hit to his moup. & in pe mene-tyme whiles pat he drank, pe knyzt pat was wip pe Quene, wip a knyf smote euen pe Kyng to¹⁷ pe hert, & *pere* he felle adoune dede of his palfray¹⁸ vnto pe
 20 erpe. ¶ the Quene, for pis dede, ȝaf to pe Knyzt golde & siluer grete plente, and of *oper* richesse ynow. and pe knyzt, anone as pis was do,¹⁹ went him *ouere*²⁰ pe see; & so ascapede he oute of pis²¹ lande. ¶ When pis Kyng Edward þus was martrede, Hit was in
 24 pe ȝere²² after pe²² Incarnaciõ of²³ oure Lorde Ihesu Crist, ix C. & iij ȝer^{xx}, and he hade regnede xij ȝere & an half, & lith at Glastenbery.

Of Kyng Eldrede; & how pe²⁴ Kyng Swyñ of Denmare helde Engelond; & how Eldrede, þat was seynt Edwardes broper, was nouzt bilouede in his²⁵ reme, and *perfore* fledde into Normandye. ¶ *Capitulo* ¶ *Centesimo* ¶ *Quintodecimo*.

After¹ pis Kyng Edward, regnede Eldrede his²⁶ broper; and seynt Dunstañ cronede him. & pis seynt Dunstan
 32 deide sone after pat he hade forȝeue pe Quene her¹ *trespasse*,

¹⁻¹ bisides D. beside allone O. ² rode D. ³ come O.

⁴ withouten D. ⁵ perof D.

⁶⁻⁶ þat she miȝt done D. þat sche myghte done O. she ne myzt do R.

⁷ nere DO. ne were R. ⁸⁻⁸ she callete to her¹ priuely D.

⁹ bituene D. betwen O. bitue R. ¹⁰ comen DO. ¹¹ comen D.

¹² forto D. al for-to O. ¹³⁻¹³ om. D. ¹⁴ kyng O. ¹⁵ om. D.

¹⁶ nome DO. ¹⁷ vnto DO. ¹⁸ leaf 64. ¹⁹ done D. I-done O.

²⁰ ouer DO. *opere* R. ²¹ the D. ²²⁻²² of D. of of pe¹ sic O. ²³ aftir O.

²⁴ om. O. ²⁵ pe O. ²⁶ MS. his cosyn *with* cosyn *underlined* for omission.

Estrild, for enchesouñ pat she was cause of Kyng Edwardes deth. and seynt Dunstañ hade her' assoilede, and penaunce her' enioynede; and she leuede after, chaste lif & clene. ¶ pis Kyng Eldrede wedede an Engliſſhe-woman; & on¹ here he² bigate 4 Edmunde Irenside, and anoper sone³ pat me callede Edwynne; and after', deide pe Quene his⁴ moder'. ¶ And in pat tyme come into Engeland Swyn, pat was Kyng of Denmarc, forto chalange and⁵ conquere al pat his Ancestres hade⁶ bifore pat tyme. & so 8 he conquerede, & hade it al at⁷ his axing'; ffor pe gode Erle Cuthbert of Lyndeseye, and al pe peple of Northumberlonð, & almost al pe grete of Engeland, helde with Swyne pat was² Kyng of Dennemarc, for-asmiche as pai louede nouzt Kyng Eldrede, 12 ffor cause⁸ pat his gode broper Edward was slayn falsely⁹ for enchesouñ of him²; and perfore no man sette but lital bi hym; Wherefore Kyng Swyn hade al his wille, and toke al pe lande. ¶ And Eldrede pe Kyng¹⁰ þo fledde¹⁰ into Normandy,¹¹ and so¹² 16 spak to pe Duk', pat pe Duc 3af him his sustre to wif; oppoñ pe whiche he bigate ij sones: pat on me callede Alrud, & pat opere Edward. And when Swyn hade conquerede al pe lande, he regnede nobli, & leuede but xv 3er', & deide, and lip at 3ork'. 20

How Kyng' Eldrede come a3eyne fram¹³ Normandy; & how Knoth¹⁴ pe Danoy¹⁵ regnede; & of pe weri' bituene him & Edmunde Irenside. ¶ Capitulo ¶ Centesimo ¶ Sexto decimo.

24

After' pe dep of Swyne, pat was a Danois, Knoght,¹⁶ his sone, duellede in Engeland, and wolde haue bene¹⁷ kyng'. and þo come a3eyn Eldrede out of Normandy, with miche¹⁸ peple & wip¹⁹ stronge meny,¹⁹ pat Knoght derst nouzt abide, but fley 28 pens into Denmarc. ¶ pe Kyng Eldrede hade a3eyn his reume, & helde so grete lordeshiþ pat he bigan to destroi al²⁰ pat hade holpen²¹ Swyn, pat was a Danois, a3eynes him.²² ¶ And afterwarde come a3eyn pis Knoght' fram Denmarc, with a grete power', 32 so pat Kyng Eldre[de] derst nouzt wip him fi3t, but²³ fley fro²³

¹ in O. ² om. D. ³ broper D. ⁴ her O. ⁵ & to O.

⁶ haden D. ⁷ after D. ⁸ enchesoun D. encheson) O.

⁹ leaf 64, back. ¹⁰⁻¹⁰ fled þo O. ¹¹ Norway D. ¹² þo O.

¹³ fro DO. ¹⁴ Knogh D. Knoght O. ¹⁵ Danes O.

¹⁶ knyght O. ¹⁷ be O. ¹⁸ michel D.

¹⁹⁻¹⁹ a strong' nauye D. a strong meyny O. ²⁰ alle ham D. aft þo O.

²¹ holpe O. ²² hym & his reume O. ²³⁻²³ fledde D. fledde fro O.

pens vnto¹ Londoñ, & pere helde him. ¶ po come Knoght, and him bisegede so longe til² Kyng Eldrede diede in pe cite of Londoñ, and lip at seynt Paules ; & he regnede ix zere.

4 Of Kyng Knoght. ¶ Capitulo ¶ Centesimo ¶ Septuagesimo.³

After pe deth of pis Eldred⁴, Knoght, pat was a Danois, bigan po forto regne, but Edmunde⁵ Ireinside, pat was Kyng Eldredus sone by his ferst wif, ordeynede a grete host, & bigan to werr⁸ oppoñ Kyng Knoght ; and so he dede meny tymes and ofte ; and pe werre was so st[r]onge and harde, pat wonder⁶ hit was to wete. ¶ And pe Quene Emme, pat duelled⁷ po at Wynchestre, hade grete drede of her⁸ ij sones, for⁸ pe werr⁶ of Alured & Edward, leste pai shulde ben⁹ defouled & misdoñ prou³ pis¹⁰ werre, wherfore she sent ham ouer pe se into Normandy, to pe duc¹⁰ Richard her Vncle ; and pere pai duelled¹¹ in safte and pees longe tyme. ¶ pis Edmunde¹² Ireinside¹³ & Knou³t¹⁴ werrede strongliche to-geder¹⁴ ; but at pe laste pai were accorded⁸ in pis maner⁸, pat pai shulde departe pe reaume bituenes¹⁵ ham ; and so pai deden ; & after⁸, pai bicome¹⁶ gode frendes, and so wel louede¹⁷ togederes as pai¹⁸ hade bene briper¹⁸, geten¹⁹ of o²⁰ body, & of²¹ o moder borñ.

20 How Kyng Edmunde Ireinside traiterously²² was slayn, prou³ a tratour⁸ pat me callede Edrith²³ of Stattoñ. Capitulo Centesimo xvij^{mo}.

And after⁸, po regnede Kyng Edmunde Ireinside and Knoght pe Danois. but pus it fel²⁴ aftirward, and in pe same zere pat pai were accorded⁸, and somiche loueden²⁵ togeder, wherof²⁶ a false pef traitoure hade enuy vnto pe loue pat was bituene ham, and frendship, whos name was Edrith²⁷ of Strattoñ, pat was a grete lorde, pat²⁸ was Edmunde Ireinside's man, & of him helde aH pe londe pat he hade. ¶ And nopeles he pou³t his lorde to bitraie,

¹ in-to O. ² til pat D. ³ Sextodesimo D. ⁴ leaf 65.

⁵ Ireinside's O. ⁶ om. O. ⁷ dwelt O. ⁸ of DO. ⁹ be DO.

¹⁰⁻¹⁰ om. D. ¹¹ dwelt O. ¹² Edward D. ¹³ Ireinside's O.

¹⁴⁻¹⁴ werrede strongly togederes D. werreddyn strongly to-gidere O.

¹⁵ betwen O. ¹⁶ becomen O.

¹⁷ loued pat pai bicome sworen breperne and so wel loueden D. loued⁸ pat pei becomen swore bretheryn & so wel loued O.

¹⁸⁻¹⁸ hadene ben breperne D. had ben brethryn O. ¹⁹ gotyn O.

²⁰ on O. ²¹ om. D. ²² om. D. traytoursly O.

²³ Edrik D. Edrich O. ²⁴ bifel D. ²⁵ loued O. ²⁶ wherfore D.

²⁷ Edrik D. ²⁸ & D.

& make Knoght kyng¹ of þe lande, ¹to þat¹ entent¹ richely to ben
 auauuncede, & wip him bene² wel bilouede. ¶ Wherfore he praiede³
 his lorde, Edmunde⁴ Ireinside,⁵ ⁶oppoñ a day⁶ wip him forto eten,
 and wip him duelle. and þe kyng curteisly him grantede, & to ⁴
 him come at his praier³; and at þe mete þe kyng richely⁷ was
 seruede with diuerse metis & drynkes. ¶ And when nyght come
 þat he shulde gone⁸ to bede, ⁹þe kyng⁹ tok¹ his owen meny, & went
 into chambre. & as he lokede¹⁰ aboute, he saw¹¹ a wonder faire ⁸
 ymage, & wel made,¹² & in¹³ semblant ¹⁴as it were¹⁴ an Archire,
 wip a bowe bent in his honde, & in þe bowe a fyne Arwe. ¶ Kyng
 Edmunde went þo neir³, to biholde hit bettr³, what it miȝte bene¹⁵;
 and anone as his honde tochede þe Arwe, anone þe arwe him smote ¹²
¹⁶prouȝ þe¹⁶ body, & pere slough þe kyng¹; for þat engyne was made
 to quelle his¹⁷ lorde traiterously.¹⁸ ¶ And ⁶when þe ⁶Kyn[g]
 Edmund¹⁹ þus was dede & ¹⁹slayn, he nad²⁰ regnede but .x. ȝere.
 his peple for him made miche sorw, and his body pai bare to ²¹
 Glastenbury and pere pai him enterede. ¶ And þus²² traitour
 Edrik²³ anone went to þe Quene, þat was Kyng Edmundes wif, þat
 wiste of here lordes dep. anone he ²⁴toke fram her³ hir³ ²⁴ij sones,
 þat were faire and ȝong¹, þat her³ lorde hade oppoñ hier³ geten,—& ²⁵
 þat on me calleded ¶ Edward, & þat oper Edwyn,—& lade ham wip
 him to ²⁶London, and toke ham vnto Kyng Knoght, þat he shulde
 done²⁷ with ham what his willes²⁸ were; & tolde him how queyntly
 he hade ²⁹quellede Kyng Edmunde,²⁹ for enchesouñ & loue of him, ²⁴
 so þat Kyng Knoght aH Engeland³⁰ in his power³ holly³¹ miȝt haue.
 ¶ “O pow false traitoure! haste pow my trewe wedbroper³² slayn
 for cause³³ ³⁴of me? a man þat y moste Louede in þe Worlde. now,
 be myn³⁵ heuede,³⁶ I shal for þi trauail þe wel reward³ as pow hast-²⁸
 deseruede!” and anone ³⁷lete him take and bynde,³⁷ hondes & feete
 in maner of a traitour³, & lete caste him into³⁸ Thamise; and in þis

1—1 in O. ² be D. ³ praiede oppon a day D. ⁴ leaf 65, back.

⁵ Ireinside O. ^{6—6} om. D. ⁷ realy D. rially O. ⁸ go DO.

^{9—9} om. O. ¹⁰ MS. lokede lokede. ¹¹ say O. ¹² y-made DO.

¹³ in the D. ^{14—14} of D. ¹⁵ be O. ^{16—16} proutoute his D.

¹⁷ his owen D. his owne O. ¹⁸ treitously O.

^{19—19} was dede & þus D. ²⁰ had O. ²¹ vnto DO.

²² þis false D. þis fals O. ²³ Edrith O.

^{24—24} toke fram sic D. nome fro here O. ²⁵ om. DO.

²⁶ vnto DO. ²⁷ do DO. ²⁸ wil DO.

^{29—29} quellede Edmund¹ Ireinside D. y-qwelled Kyng Edmund¹ O.

³⁰ Engeland¹ holich D. ³¹ om. D. hollych O.

³² wedded¹ broper D. brother O. ³³ enchesouñ DO. ³⁴ leaf 66.

³⁵ my O. ³⁶ om. D. hed O. ^{37—37} lete bynde him D.

³⁸ into the D. in-to þe O.

maner' þe false¹ traitour' endede his lif. ¶ þe Kyng² tok¹ þo ij childerne to² þe Abbot of Westmynstr',³ to warde³ and to kepe til he wiste what was beste⁴ wip ham to done.⁴

4 How Kyng Knoght sent Edmundes sones⁵ bope into Denmarc forto slee; & how⁶ þai were sauede. Capitulo Centesimo xix^{mo}.

HIt bifelle sone after' þat Kyng Knoght hade al þe lande into⁷
 8 his hande and spousede þe¹ Quene Emme prou3 consent of his baronage, for she was a faire womman, & was Eldredes wif, and þe dukes suster' of Normandye: & þai⁸ leueden to-geder'⁸ with miche⁹ loue, as resoun wolde. ¶ þe Kyng axede oppon a day conseile
 12 of þe Quene, what was beste forto¹⁰ done¹¹ wip the sones þat wer'¹² Edmundes Irenside.¹² ¶ "Sire," quod she; "þai¹³ bep þe¹³ right heir's of þe londe; & if þai leuen, þai wille do 3ow miche sorwe with¹⁴ wer'; and þerfor lete sende ham into a strange lande aferr',¹⁵ to some
 16 man þat may ham defoule¹⁶ & destroie." ¶ The Kyng anone lete calle a Danois þat me callede Walgar', and commandede him þat he shulde lede¹⁷ þo ij childerne into Denmarc, and so do for ham¹⁸ þat neuer'¹⁹ þai herde¹⁹ more tydyngus²⁰ of ham. "Sir," saide þis
 20 Walger, "gladely 3oure commandement shal bene²¹ done," ¶ And tok²² þo²³ ij childerne, & lad ham into Denmarc. & for-asmiche as²⁴ he saw þat þe childern were wonder' fair', and also meke,²⁵ he had of ham grete pitee and reuthe, & wolde nou3t ham slee,
 24 but lade ham to þe Kyng of Hungrie forto norisshe: For this Walgar' was²⁶ wel knowen²⁶ wip þe Kyng, and²⁷ wel bilouede.²⁷ ¶ Anone þe Kyng axede whens þe childern were. ¶ And Walger tolde him, & saide þat 'þai were þe right heir's of Engeland, &
 28 þerfor men wolde ham destroye'; "and þerfore, sire, to 3ow þai²⁸ bep comen,²⁸ mercy & helpe to biseche; & forsop²⁹ if þai mowen leue,²⁹

¹ om. O.

²⁻² nome þe ij chelderne & tooke ham D. nome þo ij Childryn & took hem O.

³⁻³ forto norisshe D. ⁴⁻⁴ to done with hem O.

⁵ sones Irenside D. ⁶ bope D. ⁷ in DO.

⁸⁻⁸ leueden togederes D. louted to-gidere O. ⁹ mychel O.

¹⁰ to D. ¹¹ do O.

¹²⁻¹² Edmundes Irensides D. Edmund' Irensides O.

¹³⁻¹³ beth D. ben O. ¹⁴ sorwe with D. sorow with O. sorwe R.

¹⁵ wel ferre D. ¹⁶ defoyle O. ¹⁷ lete O.

¹⁸ hem & ordeyne O. ¹⁹⁻¹⁹ we her' D. ²⁰ tydynges O.

²¹ be O. ²² nome O. ²³ the D. ²⁴ leaf 66, back. ²⁵ om. D.

²⁶⁻²⁶ wel biknowen D. y-knowen O. ²⁷⁻²⁷ beloued wel O.

²⁸⁻²⁸ ben come O. ²⁹⁻²⁹ and þai mow leuen D. if þey now lyve O.

3our¹ men pai shullen¹ becomen, and of 3ow pai² ³shal holde³ al hire lanck. ¶ The Kyng of Hungrie ham⁴ vnderfonge with michel⁵ honour, and lete ham worthely to bene⁶ kepte.

¶ And pus hit bifelle afterwarde, pat Edwyne, pe 3onger broper, ⁴ deide, and Edward pe elder⁷ broper leuede, a fair⁸ man, a stronge, & a⁹ large of body, and gentil and curteise of condicions, so pat alle men him louede. ¶ And pis Edward, in pe cronicles is callede amonges¹⁰ Englisshemen, 'Edward¹ pe outelaghe.' And when he ⁸ was made knyght, pe Kyngus doughter of Hungary so miche him louede, for his godenesse and his fairenesse, pat she made & callede him her¹ derlyng¹. ¶ The Kyng pat was her¹ fader¹, perceyuede wel pe loue pat was bituene ham too, And hade non heir¹ but pat ¹² doughter. And pe Kyng fouchede his douzter to no man so¹¹ wel as he dede vnto him pat her¹² louede, & she him; & he 3af here to him wip gode wille; and Edward¹ her¹ spousede wip michel¹³ honour. ¶ The Kyng of Hungrie sent after¹ al his baronage, & ¹⁶ made a solempne ¹⁴fest and¹⁵ ryche weddyng¹, and made al men to¹⁶ vnderstonde pat he shulde ben¹⁷ Kyng when¹⁸ he were dede; and ¹⁹perof pai maden al¹⁹ gret ioye; and of pat tydyng²⁰ pai wer¹ ful glade. ¶ pis Edwarde bigate oppon pis lady a sone ²⁰ pat me callede Edgar Helyng¹, and afterward, a doughter pat me callede Margarete, pat afti[r]ward was Quene of Scotland¹; and, by pe Kyng of Scotland pat me callede Maucolom, she hade a douzter pat was²¹ callede Maude, ²²pat afterwarde was Quene²² ²⁴ of Engeland¹ prou3 Kyng Henry, pat was pe ferst sone of pe Conqueroure, pat her¹ weded¹; & he bigate on her¹ a douzter¹ pat me callede Maude, pat afterward was Emperesse of Almaign¹; and of pis Maude come Henry²³ pe Kyng of Engeland, pat into pis ²⁸ day is callede 'Henry, pe Emperesse sone.' ¶ And 3it hade pis Edward anoper¹ douzter¹⁶ by his wif, pat me called¹ Cristian, and she was a none.

¹ shul D. ² *MS.* pai sla, with sla underlined for omission.

³⁻³ schullen holden O. ⁴ hem vndirtook¹ & O.

⁵ mych O. ⁶ be O. ⁷ eldest D. ⁸ man & DO.

⁹ om. O. ¹⁰ among¹ O. ¹¹ as O. ¹² he DO.

¹³ mych O. ¹⁴ leaf 67. ¹⁵ and a DO.

¹⁶ om. D. ¹⁷ be O.

¹⁸ when pat D. whan pat O.

¹⁹⁻¹⁹ perfore alle pai maden D. perfore alle pey made O.

²⁰ tydynges D. ²¹ me DO.

²²⁻²² pat was quene afterwarde¹ D. pat was qwen afterwarde¹ O.

²³ om. DO.

How Kyng Knoght, pat was a proude man, conquere¹ **Norway**; & how he bicomme afterwarde¹ meke.² *Capitolo Centesimo ¶ xx^{mo}.*

4 **N**ow haue ze³ herde of Edmundes⁴ sones wij pe⁴ Irenside, pat Kyng Knoght wende⁵ pai hade ben dede, as he hade commandede Walger bifor'. ¶ And this Knoght⁶ hade in his honde al Engeland⁷ and Denmarc. And after⁷ pat, he went to⁷ Norwaye, 8 pat londe to conquere. ¶ But pe Kyng of pe lande pat me callede Elaf, come with his peple, & wende his lande wel⁸ haue kepte & defendede; & so³ pere he fauzt with ham, til at pe laste he was slayn in pat bataile; & po³ pis Knoght toke⁹ al pat lande¹⁰ into his 12 hande. ¶ And when he hade conquerede al⁶ Norwaye, and taken¹¹ feautes & homages pere, he come after³ azeine into Engeland⁷, and helde him-self⁴ so grete¹² lorde, pat him pouzt in al pe worlde¹³ no man his pier¹³ was; & bicomme so prout & hauten pat hit was grete 16 wonder'. ¶ And so³ hit bifelle, oppoñ a day as he hade herde masse at Westmynstre, and wolde haue gone¹⁴ into his palice, pe 15 water of¹⁵ Tamise so swiftly¹⁶ azeynes him comen,¹⁶ pat Almost hit¹⁷ tochede his fete. po saide pe Kyng with a prout hert, “y com- 20 mande pe water¹⁸ turne azeyn, or elles¹⁹ y shal pe make.” pe wawys for his commandement wolde nouzt²⁰ spare, but²¹ flowede euer²¹ on²¹ hye more & more. ¶ The Kyng was so prout of hert pat he wolde nouzt flee pe water, but abode stille in pe water, and bete pe water 24 wij a smal zerd pat he helde in his hande, & comandede pe water pat it shulde wende no ferpere; but for al his commandement pe water wolde nouzt cesse, but euer²¹ waxe more & more an hye, so pat pe Kyng was al wete, and stode depe in pe water. ¶ And when he 28 saw pat he hade abide pere or²² longe, & pe water wolde noþing done²³ his commandement, po sone he wipdrowe him, and po stode²⁴ oppoñ a stone & helde his hondes³ an hye, & saide pis worde²⁵ in heryng⁴ of al pe peple: “¶ pis God pat makeþ pe see²⁶ þus arise an²⁷

1-1 Normandy & after become O.

2 mek and milde D. meke & mylde O.

4-4 sones with O. sone wij pe R.

7-7 he went into D. 8 weel to O.

11 tok D. 12 stronge a D. gret a O.

13-13 nomas sic D. his pere no man O.

15-15 wawys of the D. wawys of O.

17 pai D. pei O. 18 water to DO.

20 wolde nouzt D. wold not O. wolde R.

21-21 folwede euer on D. flowed in O.

23 do D. 24 stepe D. 25 wordes DO.

3 om. D.

5 went þat O.

6 om. O.

9 nome DO.

10 leaf 67, back.

14 go O.

16-16 aroos azens hym O.

19 eft O.

22 ouere to D. to O.

26 water D. 27 a D.

hye, he is Kyng¹ of alle Kynges, & of myghtes most; & y ame a caitif and a man dedly, & he¹ may neuer² dye; & alle ping² doth his commandement, & to him is obedient. ¶ To pat God³ Y praye³ pat he be my waraunt, for y knowliche me caitif feble, & of none⁴ 4 power; and *perfore* y wil gone⁵ to Rome wipout eny lettyng⁵, my Wickednesse⁶ forto⁷ punisse, and me to amende; ¶ ffor of pat God³ y cleyme my landes⁸ forto holde, and of none *opere*”; and anone made his heir, and him-self¹ [went]⁹ to Rome wipouten¹⁰ eny 8 lettyng¹, & by pe way dede meny almes dedes, & when he come to Rome also. ¶ And when he hade bene¹¹ *pere*, and for his synnes done penaunce, he come azeine into Engeland¹, and bicomme a gode man and an holy, and leste al maner pride & stoutenesse, & leuede an 12 holy lif al his lif¹ after, and made ij Abbayes⁹ of seynt Benet, one in Engeland¹ & 12 pat *opere*¹² in Norway, for-asmiche as he louede specialy¹³ seynt Benet bifore al *opere* seyntes; and miche he louede also seynt Edmunde pe kyng¹; & ofte he 3af grete 3iftes to pe hous, 16 wherfore it¹⁴ was made ryche. and when he had regnede xx 3ere, he deide, & lip at Wynchestr¹.

Of Kyng Harolde, pat leuer¹ hade gone in¹⁵ foot pan ryde on hors. *Capitulo Centesimo xx*[i]^{mo}. 20

THIS Knoght, of whom y¹⁶ haue spoken¹⁷ bifor¹⁸,¹⁸ hade ij sones by his wif¹; & pat on me callede Herdiknoght, & pat *opere* Harolde; and he was so¹⁹ lip of¹⁹ fote pat men callede him *perfore*²⁰ Harolde Harefote. & pis Harolde hade noþing pe²¹ condicions ne 24 maners²¹ of Kyng Knoght pat was his fader¹, for he sette but litil pris of chyualry ne of curtesye, neyper of worship, but onely by his owen wille; & he bicomme so wickede pat he exilede his moder¹. & po²² she went²² out of pe²³ land into Flaundres, & pere she²⁴ 28 duelled²⁵ wip pe Erl; wherfor after *pere* was neuer gode loue bituene him & his broþer, for his broþer him hatede dedely; and when he hade regnede ij [yere] & a litil²⁶ more,²⁷ he deide, & lip at Westmynstre. 32

¹ and he DO. and R. ² ping DO. pis R. ³ leaf 68. ⁴ no DO.

⁵ go DO. ⁶ wyknesse O. ⁷ to DO. ⁸ londe D. land O.

⁹ om. D. ¹⁰ with-oute O. ¹¹ be O. ¹²⁻¹² another D.

¹³ specialy R. ¹⁴ specialy seynt Benet D. ¹⁵ specialy seynt Benet O.

¹⁴ is sic D. ¹⁵ on DO. ¹⁶ we DO. ¹⁷ spoke O.

¹⁸ tofore D. ¹⁹⁻¹⁹ light on D.

²⁰ *perfore* comuneliche D. *perfore* comunlich O.

²¹⁻²¹ maners ne condicions D. ²² Condicions in pe manere O.

²²⁻²² went she D. went O. ²³ this D. ²⁴ om. DO.

²⁵ dwelt O. ²⁶ leaf 68, back. ²⁷ MS. mory.

Of Kyng^r Hardiknought, þat was Haroldes broþer. Capitulo Centesimo xx[i]j^{mo}.

4 **A**fter þis Harolde Harefoot, regnede his broþer Hardiknought, a noble Knyght & a worpi, & miche louede chiuallrye and al maner^r godenesse. ¶ And when þis Hardiknought¹ hade regnede a litil while, he lete vncouere his broþer Harolde, and ²smote of his Heuede² þat was his broþer, at Westmynstr^r, and lete caste þe 8 heuede³ into a gonge, and þe body ⁴into þe⁴ Tamyse. and after^r come fisshers, & toke⁵ þe body wip her^r nettes by nyght, and bere him vnto⁶ seynt Clement³ cherche, & þere him buryede; and in þis maner^r avengede him Hardeknought of his broþer, for in none opere 12 maner^r pai⁷ mygh nouzt ⁸hym avenge.⁸ ¶ This Kyng Hardiknought was so large zeuer^r of mete and of⁹ drynk^r, þat his tables were sette ¹⁰euer^r pre tymes ful¹⁰ wip real¹¹ metes for his owen mayne¹², & for al þat ¹³comen to¹³ his court^r to bene¹⁴ rychely seruede of¹⁵ real metes. 16 ¶ And þis Kyng^r Hardeknought sent after^r Emme his moder^r, & made hir^r come azeyne into Engeland^r, ffor she was dryue¹⁶ out of Engeland^r whiles þat Harolde Harefote regnede, þoru³ conseil of þe Erl Godwyne, þat þo was þe grettest lorde of al Engeland^r next þe kyng^r, 20 and moste myght done¹⁷ what he wolde ¹⁸prou³ al¹⁸ Engeland^r ¹⁹prou³ his commaundement,¹⁹ for-asmiche as he hade spousede þe doughter of þe gode Kyng Knoght þat was a danoy, whiche doughter he hade by his ferst wif. ¶ And when þis quene was dryuen²⁰ out of 24 Engeland^r, & come to þe Erl of Flaundres þat me callede Baldewynne, her²¹ cosyne, ²²he fonde here þere al þing^r þat hir nedede,²³ Vnto the tyme þat she²⁴ went azeyne into Engeland^r, þat þe Kyng^r Hardiknought hade sent for²⁵ her^r, þat was her^r sone, & made here 28 come azeyn wip michel²⁶ honour. ¶ This Kyng Hardeknought,²⁷ when he hade v zere regnede, he deide, & lip at Wynchestre.

Of þe Vylonye þat þe Danoy^s ²⁸dede to þe ²⁹Englisshe-men; wherfore fro þat tyme afterward^r was none ³⁰Danoy^s ²⁸made Kyng ³¹of Engeland^r.³¹ ¶ Capitulo ¶ Centesimo Vicesimo iij^o.

¹ MS. Harolde. ²⁻² smyte of his heed^r O. ³ heed O. ⁴⁻⁴ in O.

⁵ to sic D. ⁶ to DO. ⁷ he DO.

⁸⁻⁸ bene avenged^r D. be auenged O. ⁹ om. DO.

¹⁰⁻¹⁰ euery tyme prise ful D. eueryday iij tymes O. ¹¹ ful ryal O.

¹² maymen R. meny D. meyne O. ¹³⁻¹³ come vnto D. ¹⁴ be D.

¹⁵ with D. ¹⁶ dryuen D. ¹⁷ do D. ¹⁸⁻¹⁸ prou³-oute D.

¹⁹⁻¹⁹ om. D. ²⁰ dryve O. ²¹ his RO. her^r D. ²² leaf 69.

²³ nedeth D. ²⁴ he D. ²⁵ after D. ²⁶ miche D. mych O.

²⁷ Harolde D. ²⁸ Danes O. ²⁹ om. O. ³⁰ no DO. ³¹⁻³¹ om. O.

After þe deth of þis Kyng^r Hardeknoght, forasmiche as he nad
¹non heire¹ of his body bigeten,² þe Erles and barons
 assembled and maden³ a counseil; and neuer^r-more after pat tyme
 no man pat was a Danois, pouz he⁴ were ner^r⁴ so grete a man⁴
 amonges ham, he shulde neuer^r bene⁵ Kyng of Engeland, for þe
 despite pat þe Danois⁶ hade done to þe⁷ Englisshemen. ¶ For
 euermore biforne-honde,⁸ if it were so pat Englisshemen & Danois⁹
 hapden to mete oppoñ a bruce, þe Englisshemen¹⁰ shulde nouzt⁸
 bene¹¹ so herdy to meve ne stere on¹² foot, but stande stiH, til¹³ pat
 þe Danois¹³ were passede forth. ¶ And more-ouer, if þe Englisshemen
 hade nouzt bowede adouñ here heuedes,¹⁴ to done reuerence
 vnto þe Danois,⁹ pai shulde haue bene bete & defouled; & soche¹²
 maner^r despites and Vilonyes deden þe Danois⁹ to oure Englisshemen;
 Wherefore pai were dryuen out of þe lande after þe¹⁵ tyme pat
 Kyng Herdeknoght was dede, for pai¹⁶ had non¹⁶ lord pat ham
 myght mayntene. In þis maner^r voided þe Danois⁹ Engeland, pat¹⁶
 neuer^r pai comen¹⁷ azeine. ¶ þe Erles and barouns, by here com-
 mune assent & conseile, senten¹⁸ into Normandy forto seche þo ij
 brepern Alurede & Edward, pat were duellyng wip þe duk^r Richard
 pat was here eme,¹⁹ to pat¹⁹ intent forto crone Alurede þe elder^r²⁰
 broper, & him make Kyng^r of Engeland, and of þis þing to make
 an ende, þe erles & barons made²⁰ her^r oth; But þe Erl Godwyne of
 Westsex falsly²¹ pouzt to slee þo ij breperne anone as pai shulde
 come into Engelande,²² to pat²² entente forto make his sone Harolde²⁴
 Kyng^r, þe whiche sone he hade bigete oppoñ his wif, pat was Kyng
 Knoghtes daughter, pat was a Danoys. ¶ And þis Godwyn pryue-
 liche²³ went him to Southampton, forto mete þere þo ij brepern
 when pat pai shulde come to lande. ¶ And þus hit bifelle, pat þe²⁸
 messagers pat wenten²⁴ into Normandy, fonden²⁵ nouzt but onely
 Alurede, pat was þe eldest²⁶ broper; for Edward, his zonger^r²⁷
 broper, was gone²⁸ to Hungrie forto speke wip his cosyn Edward þe
 outelaw, pat was Edmondes sone wip þe Irenside.²⁹ ¶ þe messagers³²

¹⁻¹ none childe D. no Child^r O. ² bigete D. begete O.

³ made D. ⁴⁻⁴ wer^r neuer D. neuere were O. ⁵ be DO.

⁶ Danys O. ⁷ om. DO. ⁸ biforne-honde D. ⁹ Danes O.

¹⁰ *MS. Trin. Coll. Dubl. 490 (D) has a page cut out here, and does not continue until leaf 70, back, of the Rawlinson MS.*

¹¹ be O. ¹² o O. ¹³⁻¹³ þe Danes O. ¹⁴ hedes O. ¹⁵ om. O.

¹⁶⁻¹⁶ nad non O. ¹⁷ come O. ¹⁸ leaf 69, back. ¹⁹⁻¹⁹ en O.

²⁰ maden O. ²¹ falsly & traytously O. ²²⁻²² in O. ²³ priuily O.

²⁴ wente O. ²⁵ founde O. ²⁶ Eldere O. ²⁷ om. O.

²⁸ went O. ²⁹ Irensides O.

tolde & saide to Alurede, how pat þe Erles & barons of Engeland senten¹ after him, and pat he boldeliche shulde come into Engeland and vnderfonge þe reaume; for Kyng Herdeknoght was dede, & 4 alle þe ²Danois were dryuen² out of þe lande.

How Godewyne, þe false traitoure, tok Alurede oppon Gildesdoun, when he come fro Normandye to bene³ Kyng of Engeland, & dede him bene³ martrede in þe Ile of Ely.

8 *Capitulo Centesimo xxiiij^{to}.*

WHen Alurede herde pis tydynges,⁴ he þanked God, & into shipp went, wiþ al þe hast pat he myght, and passede þe see, & arryuede at Southampton, þere pat Godewyne þe traitour⁵ 12 was. And when⁵ pis tr[a]itoure⁶ saw pat he was comen,⁷ he welcomede him & vnderfonge him wiþ michel⁸ ioye, and saide pat he wolde lede him to Londoñ, þere pat al þe ⁹lordes & barons⁹ of Engeland him abode, forto maken¹⁰ him kyng. and so þai wenten¹¹ 16 in her way toward Londoñ. & when þai comen⁷ oppon Gildesdoun, þo saide þe traitoure Godwyne to Alurede,¹² “takeþ kepe,”¹³ quod he, “aboute 3ow, boþ on¹⁴ þe lefte side & in þe ryght side; and of aH 3e shul bene³ kyng, & of suche an hundrede more.” 20 ¶ “Now forsoþe,” quod Alurede, “I behote, & if y be kyng, I shal ordeyn & make soche lawes wherof God & aH folc shullen ¹⁵holden ham wel paid.”¹⁵ ¶ Now hade þe traitoure comaunded alle his men þat were wiþ him, þat when þai were comen⁷ oppon 24 Gildesdoun, þat þai shulde slee alle þo þat were in Aluredes company þat comen wiþ him fram¹⁶ Normandye, and after þat, taken¹⁷ Alurede, & lede him into þe Ile of Ely, & þere put out boþe his eyne of his heuek,¹⁸ and afterward bryng him vnto þe¹⁹ deth. & so 28 þai deden, ffor þai quellede al his company þat xij [hundred] were in nombre,²⁰ of gentil-men þat were comen⁷ wiþ Alurede fram¹⁶ Normandye; And after token²¹ Alurede, & lade him into þe Ile of Ely, & put out his²² eyen of his heuede,²³ & rent his wombe, & token²⁴ 32 þe chief of his bowailes, & put a stake into þe gronde, & an ende of his²² bowailes þerto fastenede, & wiþ nedles of Iren²⁵ pricked þe body of²⁵ þe gode childe, and so made²⁶ him gone²⁷ aboute þe stake

¹ sent O. ²⁻² Danes dryven were O. ³ be O. ⁴ tydynge O.

⁵ þo O. ⁶ leaf 70. ⁷ come O. ⁸ mych O.

⁹⁻⁹ barons & lordes O. ¹⁰ make O. ¹¹ went O.

¹² Alured & seyð O. ¹³ heed O. ¹⁴ in O. ¹⁵⁻¹⁵ hem wel paye O.

¹⁶ fro O. ¹⁷ take O. ¹⁸ heed O. ¹⁹ om. O. ²⁰ Cumpanye O.

²¹ nomen O. ²² þe O. ²³ heed O. ²⁴ nomen O.

²⁵⁻²⁵ priken O. ²⁶ maden O. ²⁷ go O.

til pat his bowales were ¹alle drawn¹ out : & so deide pere Aluredē,
 prouȝ tresōn of pe Erl Godwyne. ¶ When pe lordes of Engeland²
²hade herde & wist how Alured, pat shulde have ben her kyng,
 was put to³ deȝ prouȝ pe false traitoure, pe Erl Godwynne, pai
 weren⁴ al wonder⁵ wroth, & swore bituene ham, by⁵ God⁶ & ⁶by
 his⁶ names, pat he shulde die in mor worse deth pan dede Edrik of
 Stratton, pat hade bitraiede his Lord⁷ E[d]munde Irenside.⁷ and
 pai wolde haue taken him, & put him vnto pe deȝ, but pe pef⁸
 traitoure fley⁸ pens into Denmare, & pere helde him iiij ȝere &
 more, & loste aH his londes⁹ in Engeland.

Of Seynt Edward⁸ pe Confessoure, pat was Aluredes broȝer ;
¹⁰How he was Kyng ¹¹of Engelande.¹¹ ¶ *Capitulo ¶ Cen- 12*
tesimo ¶ xxv^{to}.¹²

ANd when pis ¹³was done,¹³ alle pe Barons of Enge[land] senten
 anoper tyme into Normandye, for pat Edward shulde¹⁴ come
 into Engeland with michel¹⁵ honour. And pis Edward in his 16
 childehode louede al-mygthy God¹⁶, & ¹⁶him drade,¹⁶ & in honeste
 and clennessē leued¹⁷ his lif, and hatede synne as deȝ. ¶ And
 when he was cronede¹⁸ and annoyntede wip¹⁹ real power², he forȝate
 nouȝt his gode maners & condicions ²⁰& custumes²⁰ pat he ferst 20
 vsede,²¹ for no maner⁵ honour, ne for no⁵ richesse, ne for no maner
 hyennesse, but euer more &²² more ȝaf him to godenesse, and wel
 louede God & al mekenesse, & louede God & holy cherche passyng
 al maner ping¹, & pore men also, & ham²³ helde as pai hade bene 24
 his owen breȝerne, & to ham ofte ȝaf grete almesse wip gode wille.

Of pe ferst specialte pat God⁸ shewede for seynt Edwardes²⁴
loue by his lif. ¶ Capitulo ¶ Centesimo ¶ xxv[j]^{to}.

²⁵**H**It bifelle oppoñ a day as he went fram²⁶ pe che[rch] of 28
 Westmynstre, & hade herde masse of seynt Iohan
 Euaungelist, for-asmiche as he louede seynt Iohan Euaungelist

¹⁻¹ drawn al O. ² leaf 70, back. ³ vn-to O. ⁴ were O.

⁵ om. O. ⁶⁻⁶ his holy O. ⁷ Irensides O. ⁸ fledde O. ⁹ lond⁸ O.

¹⁰ MS. Trin. Coll. Dubl. 490 (D) continues here.

¹¹ MS. xxiiij^{to}; Secundo D. ¹²⁻¹² Traytour had al þus ydone O.

¹³ shul D. schuld O. ¹⁴ mych O. ¹⁵⁻¹⁵ drad hym O.

¹⁶ lade D. lad O. ¹⁷ crowned⁸ kyng¹ D. ¹⁸ with a O.

¹⁹⁻¹⁹ om. DO.

²⁰ vsede ne forȝate nouȝt alle gode custumes D. vsed & forȝate not al good
 Custumes O.

²¹ om. D. ²² ham louede & D. hem loued & O. ²³ Edward⁸ O.

²⁴ leaf 71. ²⁵ fro O.

most¹ specialy after God and oure lady, þan he dede eny oþer seynt. ¶ And so þere come to him a pilgrime, & praede him, for þe loue of God & of seynt Iohan Euaungelist, some god him forto
 4 zeue. And þe Kyng² priuely toke² þe ryng of his fenger, priuely³ pat no man perceyuede hit, & ʒaf it þe pilgrime; & he it vnderfonge, & went þens. þis goode Kyng Edward made alle þe gode lawes of Engeland pat ʒitte bep⁴ most holden, &⁵ was so mercyable
 8 &⁶ ful of pite pat no man myzt bene⁷ more.

How þe Erl Godwyn come aʒeyn into Engeland, & hade aʒeyne al his land, & afterward⁸ Seynt Edward wedede his douzter. Capitulo ¶ Centesimo xxv[i]j^{to}.

12 **W**Hen þe Erl Godwyn, pat was⁹ in Denmarc duellyng,⁹ hade michel¹⁰ herd of þe godenesse of Edward, & pat he was ful of mercy & of¹¹ pitee, & pouzt pat he wolde goñ¹² aʒeyn into Engeland forto seche and¹³ to haue¹³ grace of him, & pat he myght
 16 haue þe¹⁴ lande aʒeyn in pees, & arraiede him as miche as he might, & put him toward þe see, & come into Engeland, to London, þere pat þe Kyng was pat tyme, & al þe¹⁵ lordes of Engeland, & helde¹⁶ parlement. ¶ Godewyn sent to ham pat were his frendes, & were
 20 ¹⁷þe moste¹⁷ gretteste lordes of þe londe, & praiede ham to biseche þe Kynges grace for him, and¹⁸ pat he wolde his¹⁹ pees & his londes¹⁹ graunt²⁰ him. his²¹ frendes Lade²¹ him bifore þe Kyng forto biseche²² grace. ¶ And anone as þe Kyng him saw, he appelede
 24 him of tresouñ, & of þe dep of Alurede his broþer, and pise wordes vnto²³ him saide: ¶ “Traitor Godwyn!” quod²⁴ þe Kyng, “I þe appele, pat þow haste bitraede & slayne my broþer Alurede.” ¶ “Certes, sire,” quod Godwyn, “saf ʒour grace,²⁵ ʒour pees &
 28 ʒoure²⁶ lorde-shippe, y neuer him bitraede ne sloughe; and þerof²⁷ y put me [in] rewarde of ʒour cou[r]t.” ¶ “Now, faire lordes,²⁸ ʒe pat bep²⁹ my lieges, erles & barons of þe lande, pat here bene alle

¹ more þan D. more O. ²⁻² priueliche nome D. priuely nome O.

³ om. DO. ⁴ ben O. ⁵ & he O. om. R. ⁶ and so DO. ⁷ be DO.

⁸ afterward seynt Edward D. after seynt Edward O. afterward R.

⁹⁻⁹ duellyng in Denmarc D. dwelling in Denmark O.

¹⁰ miche D. ¹¹ om. O. ¹² go DO. ¹³⁻¹³ haue mercy and D.

¹⁴ his DO. ¹⁵ the gret D. ¹⁶ helde a gret D. held a gret O.

¹⁷⁻¹⁷ þe the sic D. ¹⁸ om. D.

¹⁹⁻¹⁹ londe and his pees D. pees & his land O. ²⁰ graunten O.

²¹⁻²¹ enemyes ladden O. ²² seche DO. ²³ to D. ²⁴ leaf 71, back.

²⁵ grace & D. grace & O. ²⁶ ʒour D. ʒoure O. þoure R.

²⁷ þerof O. ²⁸ lordes quod þe kyng DO. ²⁹ bene D. ben O.

assemblede,—¹wel 3e hauen¹ herde myn appele, and pe ansure² of Godwyn; & perfore y wil pat 3e award and do ryght.” ¶ pe erles and³ barons po drowen ham⁴ al to-geder,⁴ forto done⁵ pis award by ham-self. and so pai⁶ spoken diuerseliche⁶ amonges ham; for 4 somme sayde pat⁷ pere was neuer⁷ allyaunce by homage, serment,⁸ seruise, ne by⁷ lordeship, bituene Godwyn & Alurede, for which ping pai might him draw. ¶ And at pe laste pai demede pat he shulde put him into⁹ pe Kynges mercy altogeders. ¶ po spake pe 8 Erl Leueryche of Couentre, a gode man to God & to alle pe worlde, & tolde his resouñ in pis maner, & saide: “pe Erl Godwyne is pe best frendede man of Engeland after⁷ pe kyng; and wel myzt it nouzt behe¹⁰ gaynsaide pat, wipout consel of Godwyn, Alurede was 12 neuer⁷ put vnto¹¹ dep; Wherefore y awarde, as tochyng my part, pat him-self¹² and his sone, and eueryche¹³ of vs xij Erles pat bep¹⁴ his frendes, wende bifore pe Kyng⁷ chargede wip alse miche¹⁵ golde and siluer⁷ as we mowe bere bytuene oure hondes, & prayng pe 16 Kyng for3eue his euel wille to pe Erle Godwyn, and resecyue his homage, & his landes¹⁶ zelde a3eyn.” & alle pai accordede vnto pat awarde, and ¹⁷comen in pis¹⁷ maner as¹⁸ is aboue-saide, eueryche¹⁹ of ham wip golde & siluer⁷, ²⁰as miche as pai myght bere bituenes²¹ 20 here hondes, bifore pe Kyng⁷; and pai saiden²² pe fou[r]me and pe maner⁷ of her⁷ accord and of her awarde. ¶ The Kyng wolde nouzt ham²³ gayne-saie; but alse miche²⁴ as pai ²⁵wolde ordeyne,²⁵ he²⁶ grauntede & confermede; And so was pe Erl Godwyn accordede 24 wip pe Kyng⁷, & hade a3eyne al²⁷ his lande; and aftirward he bar⁷ him so wel & so wiseliche²⁸ pat pe Kyng louede him wonder⁷ myche, & with him was ful priue. And²⁹ wipin a litel tyme³⁰ pe Kyng louede him so miche pat he spousede Godwynus doughter, and 28 made her⁷ Quene; and neuer³¹peles,³¹ for al pat, pou3 pe Kyng⁷ hade a wif, he leuede euermore in chastite & in clenness of body, wipouten³² eny fleshely dede⁷ doyng⁷ with his wif; & pe Quene also, ³³in her⁷ Halfe,³³ lade holy lif³⁴ ij zere, and deide; & afterward pe 32

¹⁻¹ ful wel 3e haue D. ful weel 3e haue O.

² ansuere also D. answer also O. ³ & the D.

⁵ do D. ⁶⁻⁶ speken diuersly O. ⁷ om. D. ⁸ seriant D. om. O.

⁹ in DO. ¹⁰ be O. ¹¹ to D. to pe O.

¹² MS. him-self and him-self. ¹³ euery DO. ¹⁴ ben O.

¹⁵ as mych O. ¹⁶ lande D. land O. ¹⁷⁻¹⁷ come in the D.

¹⁸ pat DO. ¹⁹ eche O. ²⁰ leaf 72. ²¹ bituene D. betwene O.

²² seid O. ²³ hym O. ²⁴ asmiche D. as mych O.

²⁵⁻²⁵ ordeynede D. ²⁶ & O. ²⁷ om. O. ²⁸ wisely D. wysly O.

²⁹ and so D. ³⁰ while D. ³¹ nopelesse D. netheles O.

³² with-oute DO. ³³⁻³³ om. D. ³⁴ lif on hir half D.

Kyng leuede al his lif wipouten¹ eny wif. ¶ The Kyng 3af þe Erldome of Oxenford² to Harolde, þat was Godwynes sone, & made him Erle; and so wel þai were² bilouede, boþe þe fader and ³þe 4 sone,³ ⁴& so pryue wip þe Kyng⁴, þat þai myght⁴ do⁵ what ping⁶ þai wolde by righte, for⁷ aþeynes ryght he wolde nouzt⁸ done⁹ for no maner' man, so gode and trew he was of consciens; and perfore our' Lorde Ihesu Crist', grete special¹⁰ loue to him shewed.

8 How seynt Edward saw Swyn, Kyng of Denmarc, drenche¹¹ in þe see at¹² þe sacrament, as he stode & herde¹³ masse. *Capitulo Centesimo.* ¶ xxvij^{mo}.¹⁴

12 **H**It bifelle oppoñ¹⁵ Whitsonday, as Kyng Edward herde his masse in þe grete cherch of Westmynstre, ryght at þe leuaciouñ of Ihesu Cristes body, and as al men were gaderede into þe cherche, & comen neyer¹⁶ ¹⁷þe auter,¹⁸ sacring forto see, ¶ The ¹⁹Kyng¹⁹ his¹⁹ hondes lifte vp an hye, and a² grete laughter toke op; 16 wherfore all þat aboute him stode, gretly gon wonder²⁰; & after masse þai axede whi þe kyngus laughter was.²¹ ¶ “Faire lordes,” quod þe Kyng, “Swyn þe 3onger²², þat was Kyng of Denmarc, come into þe see wip al his power' forto haue comen²³ into 20 Engeland², oppoñ vs forto haue werrede; and y saw him and aþ his folc drenche²⁴ in þe hye²⁵ see: & al þis saw y in þe²⁵ eleuacioun of Ihesu²⁶ Cristes body bytuene þe prestes hondes; & y hade perof so miche ioye, þat y myght nought my laughter wipholde.” 24 ¶ And þe Erl Leueriche bisides him stode at þe leuaciouñ, & openlich he saw þe fourme of brede turne into þe²⁷ lickenesse of a ²⁸knaf childe 3ong,²⁸ and toke²⁹ op his right hande, & ferst² blessede þe Kyng, and afterward þe Erle. And þe Erle³⁰ turnede him 28 anone³¹ toward þe Kyng¹, to make him see þat holy sight. ¶ And þo³² saide þe Kyng¹: “sir' Erle,” quod he, “I see ³³wel þat 3e seeþ,³³

¹ withoute O. ² om. D. ³⁻³ he O.

⁴⁻⁴ þat þai wolde D. & so pryue with þe kyng boþe þe fadir & þe sone þat þei myght O.

⁵ done O. ⁶ ping þat D. ⁷ and D. ⁸ no ping O.

⁹ do D. ¹⁰ specialte & O. ¹¹ drenched¹ DO. ¹² in O.

¹³ herde his D. ¹⁴ herd his O. ¹⁴ MS. has xxvij^{mo}. ¹⁵ oppon a D.

¹⁶ ney3 D. ¹⁷ ny O. ¹⁷ leaf 72, back. ¹⁸ Auter' þe D.

¹⁹⁻¹⁹ kynges O. ²⁰ wondryn O.

²¹ lau3ter was D. ²¹ laughter was O. ²¹ laughter R. ²² wonger' sic D.

²³ come O. ²⁴ drenched¹ O. ²⁵ om. O. ²⁶ om. D. ²⁶ Ihesus O.

²⁷ om. DO. ²⁸⁻²⁸ 3onge childe D. ²⁸ Child 3ong O. ²⁹ nome DO.

³⁰ Erle anone D. ³⁰ Erle anon O. ³¹ om. DO. ³² þus O.

³³⁻³³ þet 3e see ry3t wel blessede be god¹ D. ³³ wel þat sight O.

pankede be God[†] pat y haue honourrede my God, my saueoure, Visibili ¹Ihesu Crist¹ in fourme of man, whos name bene² blessedde in al worldes! Amen!"

**How þe ryng þat Sent Edward hade zeuen³ to a pore pilgrime, 4
for þe loue of seynt Iohan Euaungelist, come azeyn vnto⁴
Kyng[†] Edward. Capitulo Centesimo xxix^{mo}.**

THis noble man Seynt Edward regnede xiiij zere. & þus hit bifelle oppoñ a tyme biforne⁵ er he deide, þat ij men of 8 Engeland[†] were went to þe Holy Lande, & haden done her' pilgrimage, & wer' goyng azeyne toward her' owen contre. ¶ And as þai went in þe way, þai⁶ mette a pilgrime þat curtesly ham ⁷Saluede, and axede of ham in wh[a]t lande & in What contre þai ¹²were born; & þai saide "in Engeland." ¶ þo axede he⁸ who was Kyng of Engeland[†]; and þai ansuerede & saide "þe goode Kyng Edward." "Faire frendes," þo saide þe pilgrime, "when þat ze come into zour' contre azeyne, y praye zow þat ze wolde⁹ gone¹⁰ ¹⁶vnto¹¹ Kyng Edward, and ofte-tymes him grete in my name, & ofte-tymes þank him of his grete curtesye þat he to me hap done, A[nd] nameliche¹² for þe ryng þat he zaf me when he hade herde masse at Westmynstre, for seynt Iohnes loue Euaungelist," and ²⁰¹³toke þo¹³ þe Ryng¹⁴ to þe pilgrimes, and saide, "y pray zow forto ¹goñ & ¹bere pis ryng, & take hit to Kyng Edward, & telle him þat y sende hit¹⁵ him; and a ful ryche¹⁶ zift y wil him zeue; for oppoñ þe tuelfep¹⁷ day he shal come to me, & euermore duelle in ²⁴blisse wipouten ende." ¶ "Sir," saide þe pilgrimes, "what man bep¹⁸ ze, & in what place is zour' duellyng¹?" ¶ "Faire frendes," quod he, "I ame Iohan Euaungelist & am duellyng¹ wip Almyghty¹⁹ God[†]; & zour' Kyng Edward is my frende, & y loue him specialy ²⁸for enchesoñ þat he hap euer' Leuede in clenness, and is clene maide; and y pray zow my message al forto done as y haue to⁸ zow saide." ¶ When seynt Iohan Euaungelist hade þus ham chargede, sodeynly²⁰ he voidede out of her sight. 32

þe pilgrimes þo þankede Almyghty Gode, & went forþ in her' way. ¶ & when þai hade gon ij or iij myle, þai bigon to waxen²¹

1—1 om. D. 2 be DO. 3 zeue DO 4 to O. 5 byfor O.
6 MS. þat. 7 leaf 73. 8 om. O. 9 wol O. 10 go DO.
11 to þe O. 12 namely D. 13—13 þo toke D. nome þo O.
14 ryng & toke it O. 15 om. D. 16 rychere O. 17 xij O.
18 be DO. 19 almyzt D. 20 sodenlich O. 21 wax D. wexe O.

very, & sette adoune ham forto reste; & so pai felle ¹and slepte.¹
 ¶ And when² pai hade slepte³ wel, one of ham ⁴awoke, & lifte vp
 his heuede⁵ & lokede aboute & saide vnto⁶ his felaw, "arise op, and
 4 wende we in oure way." "What," saide pat on⁷ felaw to pat
 oper, "where be we nowe?" ¶ "Certis," saide pat opere ⁸felawe,
 "it semep⁸ me pat it² is nouzt þe same contreye pat we laide vs in
⁹forto reste & ⁹slep, for we were þo fro Ierusalem but iij mile."¹⁰
 8 ¶ þai tok¹¹ op her' hondes, and blessedede ham, & went forþ in her'
 waye. & as þai went in here way þai saw sheperdes goyng
 wiþ her' shepe, þat spoken¹² none opere langage but Englishe.
 ¶ "Leue frendes," quod on of þe pilgrimes, "what contre is þis, &
 12 who is lorde þerof?" and one² of þe sheperdes ansurede: "þis is
 þe cuntre of Kent, in Engeland, of þe whiche þe gode Kyng
 Edward is lorde." ¶ þe pilgrimes ¹³þankede þo¹³ Almyghty God &
 seynt Iohan¹⁴ euaungelist, & went forþ in her way, & come to
 16 Kaunterbery, & fro þens vnto¹⁵ London; and þere þai fonden¹⁶ þe
 Kyng, & tolde him¹⁷ fro þe bigynny[n]g vnto þe ende as miche as
 seynt Iohan hade ham chargede, & of al þingus how þai spedden¹⁸
 by þe way, & toke þe ryng to¹⁹ Kyng Edward; & he vnderfonge
 20 hit, & þankede Almyghty God & seynt Iohan Euaungelist, & þo
 made him aredy euery day, ²⁰fram day to day, ²⁰forto wende out of
 þis lif when God wolde for him sende.

How seynt Edward [de]ide on the xij²¹ day. Capitulo ¶ Cen-
 24 tesimo ¶ Tricesimo.

ANd after hit bifelle²² þus in Cristenmasse²³ eve: as þe
 holy man Edward was at Godes seruice, matynes forto²⁴
 hure of þat holy²⁵ fest, he bicome ful ²⁶sik, and in þe morwe
 28 ²⁷endurede wiþ michel payn²⁷ masse forto here, & after lete him
 bene²⁸ lade into his chaumbre, þere forto resten²⁹ him; but ³⁰into
 his³⁰ halle amonges³¹ his barons and his knyghtes myght he nouzt

¹⁻¹ aslepe DO. ² om. D. ³ sleped D. ⁴ leaf 73, back.

⁵ hed O. ⁶ to D. ⁷ o O. ⁸⁻⁸ it semes D. it semeth O.

⁹⁻⁹ to O. ¹⁰ miles D. myles O. ¹¹ nomen DO. ¹² speke O.

¹³⁻¹³ þo þankede D. ¹⁴ om. O. ¹⁵ to O. ¹⁶ fonde D. founde O.

¹⁷ him al D. hym al O. ¹⁸ spedde DO. ¹⁹ to þe O.

²⁰⁻²⁰ om. D. fro day to day O. from day R.

²¹ twelfe O. ²² fel O. ²³ cristemasse DO.

²⁴ MS. has forto done, with done underlined for omission.

²⁵ hye DO. ²⁶ leaf 74.

²⁷⁻²⁷ durede with miche payne the D. endured with mych payne þe O.

²⁸ be DO. ²⁹ rest DO.

³⁰⁻³⁰ MS. into his into his. ³¹ among O.

come, ham forto comfort and solace, as he was ¹wonte forto¹ done at þat worþi feste; Wherefore al his² merþ & comfort amongus alle þat were in þe halle was turnede into³ care and sorwe, for enchesouñ þat þai drade⁴ forto lese⁵ her' gode Lorde þe Kyng^t. 4 ¶ And oppoñ seynt Iohñes ⁶day Euaungelist⁶ þat þo come next, þe Kyng^t vnderfonge his rightes of holy cherche, as falliþ to euery Cristen man, & abode þe mercy & ⁷wille of God. ¶ And þo ij pilgrimes he lete bifore him come, and 3af ham riche 3iftes, & 8 bitoke ham vnto God. And also þe Abbot of Westmynstre he lete bifore him come, & toke him þat ryng in honour of Gode & ⁸of Seynt Iohan^s Euaungelist. And þe Abbot ⁹toke hit & ⁹put hit amonge opere reliques, so þat it is at Westmynstre, & 12 euer¹⁰ shal be. and so lay þe Kyng sike to¹¹ þe xij eve; ¹²& þo deide þe gode Kyng Edward at Westmynstre; & þere he liþ, for whos loue God haþ done meny miracles. And þis was in þe 3ere of¹³ Incarnaciouñ ¹⁴of oure Lorde Ihesu Crist,¹⁴ M^t .lxv. 3ere; & 16 after he was translatede, & put into þe shryne, prou3 þe noble Martir Seint ¶ Thomas of Kaunterbery.

How Harolde, þat^t was Godwynus sone, was made Kyng^t; & how he scapede¹⁵ fro þe Duc of Britaign. Capitulo Cen- 20 tesimo xxxj^o.

When Seynt Edward was gone oute of þis worlde, & was gone to God, & worþely enterede, as ¹⁶pertheynede to¹⁶ soche a lorde forto bene,¹⁷ þe barons ¹⁸of þe Land Wolde haue 24 hade Edward Helyngus, sone¹⁹ to Edward þe Outlaghe, þat was Edmundus sone²⁰ Irencyde, to bene¹⁷ Kyng^t, for-asmiche as²¹ he was moste kyndest kynges blode of þe reaume. ¶ But Harold,²² sone prou3 þe Erle Godwyn,²³ & þe strengþ of his fader' Godwyn, & prou3 28 opere grete lordes of þe reaume þat were of here²⁴ Kyn & vnto him sib, seisede al Engeland²⁵ into his Honde, & anone lete crone him Kyng^t, after þe enterement of Seynt Edward. ¶ This Harolde,

¹⁻¹ woned to O. ² here O. ³ vnto D. ⁴ dradden O.

⁵ lesen O. ⁶⁻⁶ Euaungelist day O. ⁷ & þ^o O.

⁸⁻⁸ seynt Marie and of seynt Iohan the D. seynt Marye & of seynt Iohn) þ^o O.

⁹⁻⁹ om. D. nome & O. toke & hit & sic R. ¹⁰ euermore DO.

¹¹ til DO. ¹² euen O. ¹³ of the D. ¹⁴⁻¹⁴ om. D. ¹⁵ ascaped^t O.

¹⁶⁻¹⁶ apperteynede D. pertheyneþ to O. ¹⁷ be O. ¹⁸ leaf 74, back.

¹⁹ Helyngus sone D. Helyngis sone O. Helyngus R.

²⁰ Edmundus sone D. Edmundes sone O. Edmundus R. ²¹ for D.

²² MS. has Haroldes, with es underlined for omission; Haroldis O.

²³ Godwynne D. Godwyn O. Godwy R. ²⁴ his DO. ²⁵ þ^o lond^t O.

þat was Godwynus sone, þe secunde¹ zere after þat Seynt Edward
 was dede, Wolde haue gone into Flaundres, but he was dryuen²
 þrouz tempest into þe contre of Pountif, & þere he was take &
 4 brouzt vnto³ Duc William. ¶ And þis Harolde wende þo þat þe
 Duc William wolde haue bene avenged oppoñ him, for encheson
 þat þe Erl Godwyn, þat was Haroldes⁴ fader, ⁵hade done⁵ quelle
 Alurede, þat was Seynt Edwardus broþer, and principaly for
 8 Alurede,⁶ Quene Emmes sone, þat was Richardes moder, Duk⁷ of
 Normandy, þat was Aile to þe Duc William. ¶ And noþeles,
 when þe⁷ Duc William hade Harolde in prisouñ & vnder⁸ his
 power,⁷ for-alse⁸-miche as þis Harolde was a noble knyght, wise, &
 12 worþi of Body, & þat his fader & he were accordede-wiþ þe gode
 Kyng Edward, & þerfore⁹ wolde nouzt¹⁰ mysdone¹¹ him,¹⁰ but al
 maner þingus þat bituene ham were spoken & ordeynede, Harolde
 by his gode Wille suore oppon a boke & oppoñ Holy seyntz, þat he
 16 shulde¹² spouse and wedde Duc Williamus douzter after þe deþ of
 Seynt Edward, and þat he shulde besely¹³ done His deuer¹⁴ forto¹⁴
 Kepe & saue þe reaume of Engeland, to þe profite & auantage of
 Duc William. ¶ And when Harolde hade þus made his oth vnto¹⁵
 20 Duc William, he lete him gone,¹⁶ & zaf him¹⁷ riche ziftes; And ¹⁸he
 þo¹⁸ went þens, & come into Engeland, & anone dede in þis maner¹⁹
 when Seint Edward was dede; and as¹⁹ man falsely forsoure, he
 lete crone him Kyng of Engeland, & falsely brac þe²⁰ couenauntz
 24 þat he hade made bifore²¹ wiþ Duc William; wherfore he was
 wiþ him wonder wroþe, & swore þat he wolde²² oppoñ him bene⁷
 avengede, ²³whateuer so²³ him bifelle. ¶ And anone William²⁴
 lete assemble a grete hoste, and come into Engeland, to avenge
 28 him oppon Harolde, & to conquere þe lande if þat he myght.
 ¶ And in þe same zere þat Harolde was cronede, Harolde Hare-
 strenge, Kyng of Denmarc, arryuede in Scotland, and þouz[t] haue
 be²⁵ kyng of Engeland. & he come into Engeland, & quellede &
 32 robbede, & destroyed al þat he might, til þat he come to 3orke;
 & þere he quellede meny men of Armys M^t,²⁶ & an²⁷ C prestes.

¹ ij O. ² dryue D. dryve O. ³ into the D. to þe O.

⁴ Harold O. ⁵⁻⁵ lete D. had lete O.

⁶ enchesouñ þat Alured was D. encheson þat Alured was O.

⁷ om. D. ⁸ as DO. ⁹ þerfore he O. ¹⁰⁻¹⁰ hym mysdone O.

¹¹ mysdo D. ¹² wold O. ¹³ leaf 75. ¹⁴ to O. ¹⁵ vn-to þe O.

¹⁶ go DO. ¹⁷ him meny D. hym meny O. ¹⁸⁻¹⁸ tho he D.

¹⁹ as a DO. ²⁰ his O.

²¹ MS. has bifore þis, with þis underlined for omission. ²² wolde be D.

²³⁻²³ what-so-euere O. ²⁴ William bastard O. ²⁵ bene D. ben O.

²⁶ a þousand D. a M^t O. ²⁷ om. O.

¶ When þis tyding come to þe Kyng, he assemblede a strong power, and went forto feizt wip Harold of Denmarc, & wip his owen honde him quellede, and þe Danois¹ were descomfitede; & þo þat² lafte alyue,² wip myche sorwe went³ to her³ shippes; and þus Kyng Harolde of Engeland quellede Kyng Harold of Denmarc.

**How William Bastard, Duc of Normandy, come into Engeland,
& quellede Kyng Harold. Capitulo^{xx} 4 vj xij.⁴**

ANd when þis bataile was done, Harolde bicom⁵ so prout, and wolde⁶ nouzt departe⁶ with his peple of þing⁶ þat he hade gete, but helde it al toward⁷ him-self; Wherfore þe most part⁸ of his men were wroþ, and fram⁹ him departede, so þat oneliche wip him lefte no mo but his soudeours. ¶ And oppon a day, as¹² he sate at þe¹⁰ mete, messagers¹¹ comme to him, & saide þat William Bastard, Duc of Normandy, was Arryuede in Engeland wip a grete host, and hade taken¹² al þe lande aboute Hastyng, & hade also mynede þe castel. ¶ When þe Kyng hade¹³ herde þis tydynges,¹⁴ 16 he went pider wip a litil peple in¹⁵ al þe hast þat he myght, for¹⁶ a litel peple was wip him lefte. ¶ And when he was comen¹⁷ pider, he ordeynede forto zeue bataile to þe Duc William; but þe Duc axede him of pise iij þingus: 18if þat¹⁸ he wolde haue his doughter²⁰ to wif, as he hade made¹⁹ & swore¹⁹ his othe¹⁹ & bihight¹⁹; or þat he wolde halde þe lande of him in truage; or þat he wolde determine þis þing bi²⁰ bataile. ¶ þis Harold was a prout man & a stout, and truste wonder²¹ miche oppon his owen strengþ, & fauzt wip²² the²⁴ duc & wip his peple; but Harold & his men were descomfitede, & himself²³ was pere²³ slayn. & þis bataile was endede at Tonbrigge, in þe secunde zere¹⁹ of his regne,¹⁹ oppon seynt Kalixtes day; and he lip at Waltham. 28

**Of Kyng William Bastard, & how he gouernede him²⁴ wel &²⁴
wisely; & of þe wer²⁴ bituene him &²⁵ þe Kyng of Fraunce.
Capitulo Centesimo xxxij.^o 26**

¹ Danes O. ²⁻² were left on lyf D. ³ fley D. fled O.

⁴⁻⁴ centesimo tricesimo tercio D. ⁵ leaf 75, back.

⁶⁻⁶ noþing parte DO. ⁷ toward DO. ⁸ partye O. ⁹ fro O.

¹⁰ om. O. ¹¹ a messenger D. a messenger O. ¹² y-take O.

¹³ om. D. ¹⁴ Tydyng O. ¹⁵ with O. ¹⁶ and D. ¹⁷ come O.

¹⁸⁻¹⁸ it sic D. ¹⁹⁻¹⁹ om. D. ²⁰ purgh O. ²¹ om. D.

²² wip the D. with þ^o O. wip R. ²³⁻²³ pere was O. ²⁴⁻²⁴ om. O.

²⁵ or D. ²⁶ xij^o sic O.

When William Bastard, Duc of Normandy, hade conquere
 al pe land, oppoñ Cri[s]tenmasse¹ day po next sewyng¹ he
 lete crone him kyng at Westmynstre, & was a worpi kyng, & 3af²
 4 to Engliſshemen largely landes, & to his knyghtes. ¶ And after
 ward he went³ ouer pe see, ⁴& come⁴ ⁵into Normandy, & pere
 duelled a while; & in pe secunde zere of his regne he come azeyne
 vnto⁶ Engeland, and brouzt ⁷wip him⁷ Maude his wif, and lete
 8 crone here ⁸quene of Engeland, on⁸ Whitsonday. ¶ And po anone
 after, pe Kyng¹ of Scotland pat me callede Mancolum, bigon to
⁹werr¹ and stryue⁹ wip¹⁰ Duc William; and he ordeynede him po
 toward Scotland wip his men, bope by laude and by see, forto
 12 destroy pe Kyng¹¹ Mancolum. but pai were accordede, & pe Kyng
 of Scotland, Mancolum, bicom his man, and helde al his lande of
 him; and Kyng¹ William reseyuede of him his Homage, and come
 azeyne into Engeland. ¶ And when Kyng William hade bene¹²
 16 Kyng xvij zere, Maude pe Quene deide, on whom Kyng William
 hade geten meny faire cheldern, pat is forto seyne, Robert Curthose,
 William le Rous, Richar' also pat deide, Henry Beauclerc, & Maude
 also, pat was pe Erles wif of Bleyens, and opere iiij doughtre.¹³
 20 ¶ And after his wifes deth, grete debate bigan bituene him & pe
 Kyng of Fraunce, Philippe; but atte pe laste pai were accordede;
 and po duelled pe Kyng of Engeland in Normandy, and no man
 him werrede, ne¹⁴ he no man, longe tyme. and pe Kyng of Fraunce
 24 saide oppoñ a day in scorne of Kyng William, & saide pat 'Kyng'
 William hade longe¹⁵ leyen a¹⁶ childe beð, & longe tyme hap¹⁷
 restede him.' ¶ And pis worde come to pe Kyng of Engeland pere
 pat he laye in Normandy, atte Roen; and for pis word¹⁸ was po
 28 euel¹⁹ paide ⁴for pat worde,⁴ & ek¹ wonder² wrothe toward pe
 Kyng of Fraunce, and swore po by God¹ pat, when he were arise
 of his gisyne, he wolde list a pousand¹ candelles to pe Kyng of
 Fraunce. ¶ And anone lete assem²⁰ble a grete hoste of Normandy
 32 and of Engelisshe-men; and in pe bigynnyng¹ of Heruest¹ he come
 into Fraunce, & brent²¹ alle pe tounes pat he come by, prouz alle pe
 contre, & robbeð, & dede al pe euel pat he might prouz-out al

¹ cristusmasse D. Cristesmasse O. ² om. D. ³ sent D.

⁴⁻⁴ om. D. ⁵ leaf 76. ⁶ into D. ⁷⁻⁷ hym with O.

⁸⁻⁸ kyng [sic] at D. qwene of Engeland in O.

⁹⁻⁹ stryue and were D. ¹⁰ with pe O. ¹¹ om. O. ¹² be O.

¹³ douzterz D. doughters O. ¹⁴ & O.

¹⁵ longe tyme D. long tyme O. ¹⁶ in DO. ¹⁷ had O.

¹⁸ word he O. ¹⁹ ille O. ²⁰ leaf 76, back. ²¹ brenned D.

Fraunce. & at þe laste he ¹brent þe touñ¹ of Mandes, & commandedede his peple forto bere wode, & as miche as² myght brenne; & him-self halpe þerto, al pat he myghte, wip³ gode wille. ¶ And þere was grete hete, what of fyre pat was so grete, & of þe sone pat ⁴þo was wonder⁴ hote, pat al stuffed⁴ him-self was,⁵ & felle into a⁶ grete sikenesse. and when he saw þat he was so stronge sike, he ordeynede and assignede al Normandy vnto⁷ Robert Curthese, his sone, and al Engeland⁸ to William þe Rous, & biquap to Henry⁸ & Beauclerc al his tresoure. ¶ And when⁹ he hade þus done,¹⁰ he vnderfonge alle his sacrament³ of holy cherche, & deide, þe xxij zere of his regne, & lip at Caam in Normandye.¹¹

Of¹² Kyng William Rous, þat was William Bastardes sone, þat ¹²destroiede ¹³tounes & hous of religioun¹³ fort[o] make þe¹⁴ new Foreste. *Capitulo ¶ Centesimo xxxiiij^{to}.*

ANd after pis William Bastard, regnede his sone William¹⁵ Rous, &¹⁶ was a wonder⁴ contrarious man to God and to holy ¹⁶cherche, & lete amende & make þe toune of Cardeys pat þe paynemys hade destroied.¹⁷ ¶ This Kyng William destroiede holy cherche⁶ and alle here possessions, in what partye¹⁸ he miȝt ham fynde; and þefore þere was so miche debate bituene him & þe ²⁰Erchebisshope of Kaunterbery, Ancelyn, for enchesouñ þat he ¹⁹vnderfonge him of his Wickednesse,¹⁹ þat he destroiede Holy cherche; & for enchesouñ þerof, þe Kyng to him bare grete wrap; & for þat cause he exilede him out of þe lande; & þe erchebisshop ²⁴þo ²⁰Went to þe courte of Rome, and þere du[e]llede wip þe Pope. ¶ & pis Kyng made þe new Forest²¹, and caste douñ²¹ & destroiede xxvj tounes & iij house²² of religiōn, al forto make his foreste longer & broder²³, & bicome wonder glade & prout of his wode & of his ²⁸Forest, and of þe wilde bestes þat wer⁴ þerin, þat it was mervailous forto²⁴ wete, so þat men callede him ‘keper’ of wodes & of pastures.’ & þe lenger þat⁶ he leuede, þe more Wikkede he bicome, boþe to

¹⁻¹ brenede the citee D. brent þe Cytee O. ² as he D.

³ with a O. ⁴ stuffed O. ⁵ bicome D. bycome O. ⁶ om. D.

⁷ to D. ⁸ Herry O. ⁹ þo DO. ¹⁰ do D. ¹¹ Northfolc D.

¹² How D. ¹³⁻¹³ houses of Regilion [sic] & tovnes O. ¹⁴ om. O.

¹⁵ William þe O. ¹⁶ and this William D. & pis William O.

¹⁷ destruede D. ¹⁸ parte D.

¹⁹⁻¹⁹ vnderfonge him for his wickednesse and D. vnderfonge hym for his wickednesse O.

²⁰ leaf 77. ²¹ adoune D. adoun) O. ²² houses O.

²³ wider D. ²⁴ to D.

God & to holy cherche, & to alle his men. & þis kyng lete make þe grete halle of¹ Westmynstre; ²and so² oppon a³ Whitsunday ⁴he helde þerin⁴ his ferste feste, he lokede aboute him,⁵ & saide ⁴þat⁶ þe halle was to litel by haluendele. ¶ And at þe laste he bicom so contrarious, þat al þing þat plesede God, displede him; and al þing þat gode men louede,⁷ he hatede dedly.⁷ ¶ And so hit befel þat he dremede⁸ & mette⁸ oppon a nyzt, bifore a litil or ⁸þat⁶ he deide, þat he was⁹ bloode, & bledde a grete quantite of bloode, and a streme of blode lepte¹⁰ an hye toward Heuen more¹¹ þan an hundred Venithe¹²; and þe clerenesse of þe⁶ day was turnede al to¹³ derkenesse, and þe firmament also. ¶ And when he ¹²awoke, he hade grete drede, so þat he nyste what to done; & tolde his dreme to meny of his conseile, & saide þat he hade grete drede, & supposede þat him was some meschaunce to come. ¶ And þe secunde nyght bifore,¹⁴ a monke dremed of þe household, þat þe ¹⁶kyng went into a cherche wiþ miche peple; and he was so prout þat he despisede al þe peple þat was wiþ him; & so¹⁵ he toke¹⁶ þe ymage of þe crucifixe, &¹⁷ shamefully bote hit with his teiþ; and þe crucifix mekely soffrede al þat he dede; but þe kyng, as a wode ²⁰man, rent of þe Army^s ¹⁸of þe¹⁸ ¹⁹crucifixe and caste it vnder his feete, & defouled it and þrewe it al²⁰ brode²¹; and a grete flame of fire come out of þe ²²crucifixe; mouthe²²; of þe whiche dreem, meny a man²³ hade grete wonder. ¶ The gode man þat ²⁴dremede þis dreem²⁴ tolde it to a knyght þat þo was moste priue wiþ þe Kyng^t of al men; & þe knyght me callede Hamundus sone; & þe monke and he tolde þe dreem to²⁵ [the] Kyng, & saide þat it shulde bitoken oþere þing þan gode; and nopelesse þe Kyng^t lauhede ²⁸þerat ij²⁶ or iij,²⁷ & litil sette þerof^t; ¶ And þouzt þat he wolde gone²⁸ Hunte & pleye in þe forest^t. and his men ²⁹conseiled^t him²⁹ þat he shulde nouzt þat day, for no maner^t þing, come in þe wode,

¹ at O. ²⁻² so þat DO. ³ a day of O.

⁴⁻⁴ þerin he helde D. & held þerin O. ⁵ om. DO. ⁶ om. D.

⁷⁻⁷ hated he dedlich O. ⁸⁻⁸ om. D. ⁹ was lete DO.

¹⁰ lappe D. ¹¹ mo D. ¹² Vedine O. ¹³ in-to O. ¹⁴ to-fore D.

¹⁵ that D. þat O. ¹⁶ nome O.

¹⁷ & cast it vndir his feet & defouled it & threw it al abroad & O.

¹⁸⁻¹⁸ MS. of þe of þe. ¹⁹ leaf 77, back.

²⁰ MS. has al adouñ, with adouñ underlined for omission; om. O.

²¹ abroad DO.

²²⁻²² crucifix mouth of the crucifix sic D. Crucifix mouthe O.

²³ men DO. ²⁴ dreme hade D. dreme had O. ²⁵ vnto D.

²⁶ twyes O. ²⁷ iijes D. thryes O. ²⁸ go D.

²⁹⁻²⁹ hym Counceyled^t O.

so þat he abode at home bifore mete. ¶ But anone as he hade eten,¹ noþing² might him lette ³but he wolde go³ to þe wode forto haue his disporte. ¶ And so hit bifelle þat one of his knyghtes þat hight Walter Tyrel, wolde haue shotte to⁴ an⁵ herte; & his 4 Arwe glasede oppoñ a braunche, & þrouz misaventure smote þe Kyng⁴ to þe hert⁵; & so he felle doune dede to⁶ þe grounde, wiþ-
outen⁷ eny worde spekyng⁸, & so he endede his lif. ¶ And it was ⁸non grete⁸ wonder⁹, for þat⁹ day þat he dede, he hade late to ferme 8 þe Erchebisshoppriche¹⁰ of Kaunterbery, and xij Abbays also, & euermore dede grete destruccioun to holy cherche þrouz wrongeful takynges and askyngus; for no man derst wiþsayen¹¹ þat he wolde haue done; & of his lufnesse he wolde neuer wiþdrawe¹² neyþer, 12 to¹² amende his lif; and þerfore God wolde suffre him no longer regne in his wickednesse. & he hade bene¹³ kyng⁴ xiiij 3ere and vj wokes, & lip¹⁴ at Wynchestre.¹⁵

Of Kyng⁴ Henry Beauclerc, þat was William ¹⁶17le Rousus¹⁷ 16 broþer; & of þe debate bituene him & Robert Curthose, ¹⁸his broþer.¹⁸ *Capitulo Centesimo ¶ xxxv.*

ANd when¹⁹ þis William Rous²⁰ was dede, Henry Beauclerc his broþer³ was made kyng⁴, for enchesouñ þat William Rous ²⁰hade non²¹ childe ²²bigeten of his body.²² & þis Henry Beauclerc²³ was cronede kyng⁴²⁴ at London, þe ferþe day after þat his broþer was dede, þat is to seyne, þe v day²⁴ of August. ¶ And anone as²⁵ Ancellyn, þat was Erchebisshop of Kaunterbery, þat was at þe ²⁴court of Rome, herde þat William Rous was dede, he come a3eyne into Engeland; & ²⁶Kyng Henry Beauclerc welcomede him wiþ michel²⁷ honoure. ¶ & þe ferst 3er³ þat Kyng⁴ Henry was cronede, he spused Maude, þat was Margaretes douzter, þe Quene of Scot- ²⁸land; & þe Erchebisshop²⁸ Ancellyn²⁹ wedede ham. ¶ And þis Kyng⁴ bigate oppoñ his wif ij sones & a douzter, þat is to seyne, William, Richard, and Maude; & þis Maude was afterward

¹ ete O.² noman DO.³⁻³ þat he ne wolde goñ D. þat he nolde goñ O. ⁴ vn-to O.⁵ on D. ⁶ vnto DO. ⁷ with-oute O. ⁸⁻⁸ no D. no gret O.⁹ the D. ¹⁰ bisshoppriche D. ¹¹ withsay D. with-sey O.¹²⁻¹² ne D. neither O. ¹³ be O. ¹⁴ om. DO.¹⁵ Wynchestre he lith O. ¹⁶ leaf 78. ¹⁷⁻¹⁷ Rous DO.¹⁸⁻¹⁸ om. D. ¹⁹ om. O. ²⁰ Rous whan he O. ²¹ no DO.²²⁻²² of his body bigete D. begete of his body O.²³ Altered from Beauclerc in MS. ²⁴ om. D. ²⁵ þis O.²⁶ and the D. & þe O. ²⁷ miche D.²⁸ Erchebisshop of Kaunterbery D. ²⁹ Ancelyn of Caunterbury O

Emperesse of Almayne. ¶ And in þe secunde¹ zere of his regne, his broþere Robert Curthose, þat was duc of Normandye, come wiþ an huge nauy² into Engeland, forto chalange þe land; but þrouz
 4 conseile of þe³ wise men of þe land, þai were accordede in þis maner: þat þe Kyng shulde zeue þe Duc his broþer a þousand⁴ ti⁴ euery zere; and whiche of ham longeste leuede, shulde bene oþeres heire; & so bituene ham shulde⁵ bene none⁵ debate ne stryf.
 8 ¶ And when þai were þus accordede, þe Duc went home azeyn into Normandy. And when þe Kyng hade regnede iiij zere,⁶ aros a grete debate bituene him & þe Erchebisshop of Kaunterbery, Ancellyn, for cause þat þe Erchebisshop wolde⁷ nouzt graunt þe
 12 Kyng⁸ forto take taliages of⁸ Holy cherche⁸ at his wille; and þerfore⁹ þe Erchebisshop eftesones¹⁰ went ouer þe see vnto¹¹ þe court of Rome, & þere duelled¹² wiþ þe Pope. ¶ And in þe³ same zere þe Duc of Normandye come into Engeland forto speke wiþ his broþer.
 16 And amonges¹³ oþere þinges, þe duc of Normandy forzaf to þe Kyng, his broþer, þe forsaide¹⁴ M^t ti¹⁵ by zere þat he shulde¹⁶ paie him¹⁶; & wiþ gode loue þe Duc went þo¹⁷ into Normandye azeyn.¹⁰
 20 ¶ And when þo ij zere were gone, þrouz enticement of þe deuel & of¹⁸ a luper man,¹⁸ a grete debate aros bituene ham, þe Kyng & þe duc, so þat þe Kyng, þrouz conseile, went ouer¹⁹ into Normandye. And when þe Kyng of Engeland was comen²⁰ into Normandye,
 24 alle þe grete lordes of Normandye turnede þo³ to þe Kyng of Engeland, & helde azeyns²¹ þe Duc, here owen lorde, & him forsoke, & to þe Kyng ham zolden,²² and alle þe castelles &²³ gode tounes of Normandye. And sone after was þe Duc taken, & lad
 28 wiþ þe Kyng into Engeland, and þe Kyng⁸ lete put þe Duc into prisouñ. & þis was¹⁴ þe vengauce of God; for when þe Duc was in þe Holy Land God zaf him suche might & honour þere, wherfore he was chose²⁴ to ben Kyng²⁵ of Ierusalem; and he³
 32 wolde nouzt²⁶ bene hit, but²⁶ forsoke it; & þerfore God sende²⁷

1 ij O. 2 meynye O. 3 om. O. 4 pound O.

5-8 be no D. be non O. 6 3er þere D. 3eer þer O.

7 leaf 78, back. 8-8 cheres D. Chirches O.

9 þerfore eftesones D. þerfore eftsone O. 10 om. DO. 11 to DO.

12 he dwelt O. dullede R. 13 amonge al D. among^t O.

14 om. D. 15 pound O. 16-16 him pay D.

17 þo azeyn D. þo azen O. 18-18 luper men D. lither men O.

19 ouere the see D. ouer þe see O. 20 comen ouere the see D. Come O.

21 azeyne D. 22 zelden O. 23 and the D. & þe O.

24 chosen DO. 25 lord D. 26-26 and D. 27 sent O.

him þat shame & despite, forto bene¹ put into his broþeres prisouñ. ¶ þo seisede Kyng Henry² al Normandye into his hand, & helde hit al his lifes³ tyme. &⁴ þe same 3ere come þe bisshoþ Ancellyn fram⁵ þe court of Rome into Engeland, aʒeyne, & þe Kyng⁶ & he 4 were accorded. ¶ And in þe 3ere nexte comyng⁷ after,⁸ þere bigan a grete debate bytuene Kyng⁷ Philippe of Fraunce & Kyng Henry⁸ of Engeland. Wherfore Kyng Henry⁸ went into Normandye; and þe werr⁹ was⁹ stronge bituene⁹ ham ij; and þo deide þe Kyng⁸ of Fraunce; & Lowys his sone was made Kyng⁸ anone after his deþ; and þo went Kyng Henry⁸ aʒeyne into Engeland, & mariede Maude his doughter to Henry,¹⁰ þe Emperour of Almayn.

Of þe debate þat was bituene¹¹ Kyng Lowys¹¹ of France & ¹² Kyng Henry¹² of Engeland; & how Kyng Henrie; ij sones were loste in þe hye see. ¶ Capitulo ¶ Centesimo ¶ Tricesimo ¶ Sexto.

WHen Kyng Henry had bene¹ Kyng xvij 3ere, a grete ¹⁶ debate aroos bitue[n]¹³ him &¹³ Kyng Lowys of Fraunce,¹⁴ for enchesouñ þat þe Kyng hade sent into Normandy to his men, for¹⁵ þai shulde bene¹ helpyng to þe Erle of Bleyne as miche as þai myght, in werre aʒeynes¹⁶ þe Kyng¹ of Fraunce, and þat þai ²⁰ were as redy vnto him as þai wolde bene¹ vnto¹⁷ here owen lord, for enchesouñ þat þe Erle hade spousesed his sustre, Dame Maude; for whiche enchesouñ þe Kyng of Fraunce dede miche harme¹⁸ &¹⁹ sorwe⁶ to Normandye. wherfore þe Kyng of Engeland was ²⁴ wonder wroþ, & in hast went ouer þe see ²⁰ into Normandye wiþ a grete power,²⁰ forto defende þat londe; & þe werre bituene ham laste ij 3ere, til at þe laste þai ij fouʒten to-geder,²¹ & þe Kyng of France was descomfitede, & vnneþe²² scapede away wiþ miche ²⁸ peyn; and þe moste part²³ of his men were taken, &²⁴ dede wiþ ham what him liked; and some of ham he lete goñ²⁵ freliche,²⁶ &

¹ be D. ² Harry O. ³ lif^t D. ⁴ and in DO. ⁵ fro D.

⁶ om. D. ⁷ leaf 79. ⁸ Herry O.

⁹⁻⁹ so strong^t bituene D. strong betwen O.

¹⁰ om. D. Herry O. ¹¹⁻¹¹ Lowys the kyng^t D.

¹² Herry here, and elsewhere in O. ¹³⁻¹³ om. DO.

¹⁴ France and Kyng Henry of Engeland^t D. Fraunce & Kyng Herry of Engeland^t O.

¹⁵ that D. ¹⁶ aʒen O. ¹⁷ to O. ¹⁸ om. O. ¹⁹ om. DO.

²⁰⁻²⁰ with gret^t power^t and come into Normandye D. with a gret power & come in-to Normandye O.

²¹ togederes D. ²² vnneþes D. ²³ partye O.

²⁴ and þe kyng^t DO. ²⁵ go DO. ²⁶ frely O.

some he lete put to dep; but afterward þo ij kyngus were accordede. ¶ And when Kyng Henry hade holiche¹ al þe land² of No[r]mandye, and scomfitede his enemys of Fraunce, he turned azeyne into Engeland wip michel³ honour. and his ij sones, William and Richard, wolde come after her' fader', and went to þe se wip a grete company of peple; but er þat⁴ þai might come to lond, þe shipp come⁵ azeyn a grete⁵ roche, and brake⁶ al into⁶ 8 pices; and alle were drenched þat were⁷ þerin, saf one⁷ man þat was in þe same shipp þat ascaped; and þis was on seynt Katerynes⁸ day. ¶ And þise were þe names of ham þat were drenched, þat is to seyn: William, þe Kynges sone, Richarde his broþer, þe Erl 12 of Chestre, Octouyle his broþer, Geffray Ridel, Walter Emurcy, Gedfreye Erchedeken, þe Kynges doughter, þe Countesse of Perches, þe Kyngus nece, þe Countesse of Chestre, and meny oþer. ¶ When Kyng Henry and oþere lordes arryued were in Engeland, 16 and harde þise tidyngus, þai made sorwe ynow; & al her' merþe & ioye was turnede þo⁹ into sorwe⁹ & care.

How Maude þe Emperesse come azey[ne] into Engeland; and how she was afterward wedded to Gaufrey,¹⁰ þe Erl of Angoy. Capitulo Centesimo xxxvij.

ANd when þat¹¹ ij zere were gone, þat þe Erl hade duelledede wip þe Kyng, þe Erl went þo fro þe Kyng, and biganne to werre oppoñ him, & dede miche harme in þe lande of Normandye. 24 Wherefore Kyng Henry was sore annoiede when he herde þe tydynges.¹² wip al þe haste þat he myght, he passede þe see, and come into Normandye, and toke þere a stronge castel, & þere¹³ helde him¹³ al þat zere. And þo come to him tydynges¹⁴ þat 28 Henry, ¹⁵ þe Emperour of Almaigne, þat hade spousesede Maud¹⁶ his douzter, was dede, and þat she duelledede no longer' in Almaigne, and þat she wolde come azeyne into Normandy to her' fader'. ¶ And when she was comen¹⁷ to him, he toke¹⁸ her' þo wip¹⁹ him, 32 and come azeyne into Engeland, & made þe¹⁰ Englisshemen to¹⁶ done²⁰ oth & feaute²¹ vnto þe Emperesse. ¶ And þe ferst man þat

¹ holly D. holy O. ² leaf 79, back. ³ mych O.
⁴ MS. þat þat; om. D. ⁵⁻⁵ azeynes a D. azens a O. ⁶⁻⁶ alto D.
⁷⁻⁷ within saf o D. þerin saf o O. ⁸ Kateryne O.
⁹⁻⁹ in mornyng D. into Mornyng O. ¹⁰ om. O. ¹¹ þo O.
¹² tydyng O. ¹³⁻¹³ he duelledede D. he dwelled O. ¹⁴ tydyng O.
¹⁵ leaf 80. ¹⁶ om. D. ¹⁷ come O. ¹⁸ nome O. ¹⁹ to O.
²⁰ do O. ²¹ feautes D.

made þe oth was William þe Erchebisshop of Kaunterbury, and þat oþere Kyng Dauid of Scotland, & after him, al þe ¹Erles & barons¹ of Engeland. ¶ And² after þat,³ þe noble man, þe Erl of Angoy, a worþi knyzt, sent to þe Kyng of Engeland þat he wolde ⁴grant him forto haue his doughter to spouse, Maude þe Emperesse. ¶ And for enchesouñ þat her' fader' wist' þat he was⁴ a noble man, þe Kyng grauntede him, & consentede þerto, and þo tok⁵ his doughter, and ladde her' into Normandye, & come to þe noble ⁸knyzt ⁶þe Erl⁶ Gaufrid; & he spousede þe forsaide Maude wiþ michel honoure; & þe Erl bigate ⁷oppon her'⁷ a sone þat men⁸ callede 'Henry, þe Emperesse sone.' ¶ And after, when al þis was done, Kyng Henry duelleded al þat zere in Normandy. and ¹²after þat, longe⁹ tyme, a grevous sikennesse toke him, wherfore he deide. & þis Kyng Henry regnede xxxv zere & iiij mounþes; & after he³ deide, ¹⁰as bifore is¹⁰ saide, in Normandy; & his hert was entereded in þe grete cherche of oure Lady of Roen, & his body was ¹⁶brouzt wiþ michel¹¹ honour into Engeland, & entereded ¹²at Redyng' in þe Abbay; &¹² of þe which Abbay he was ¹³bigynner &¹³ Foundoure.

¹⁴How Stephene, Kyng Henryes suster³ sone, Was made Kyng^t ²⁰of Engeland. Capitulo ¶ Centesimo ¶ Tricesimo ¶ Octauo.

After þis Kyng Henry þat was þe ferst', was made Kyng his Newew, his sustres¹⁵ sone, Stephen,¹⁶ Erl of' Boloigne; For anone as he harde þe tidynges¹⁷ of his Vncles¹⁸ deth, he passede þe ²⁴see, and come into Engeland, þrouz conseil & ¹⁹strengþ & helpe¹⁹ of meny grete Lordes²⁰ of Engeland (aʒeynz heir' oth þat þai hade made to Maude þe Emperesse), tok²¹ þe reaume, & lete crone Stephen Kyng^t of ²²þe land.²² ¶ And þe erchebisshop²³ William of ²⁸Kaunterbery,²³ þat ferst made þe²⁴ oth to²⁵ Maude þe Emperesse, sette þe crone ferst opoñ Kyng Stephenus heuede, & him annoyn- tede; and Bisshop Roger of Salesbery mayntenede þe Kyngus

¹⁻¹ barouns & Erles O. ² And also O. ³ om. D.

⁴ wist' þat he was DO. wist R. ⁵ nome O.

⁶⁻⁶ erle of D. Erle O. ⁷⁻⁷ on his wif' D. ⁸ me DO.

⁹ a longe D. ¹⁰⁻¹⁰ as is before O. ¹¹ mych O.

¹²⁻¹² in the Abbay of Redyng' D. at Redyng in þe^e Abbey O.

¹³⁻¹³ om. D. ¹⁴ leaf 80, back. ¹⁵ suster O. ¹⁶ Stephenene sic O.

¹⁷ tydyng O. ¹⁸ broþeres D. ¹⁹⁻¹⁹ helpe & strengþ D.

²⁰ londes sic D. ²¹ nome O. ²²⁻²² Engeland D.

²³⁻²³ of Kanterbery William D. ²⁴ om. O.

²⁵ of feaute vnto D. & feaute vn-to O.

partye in-as-miche as he¹ might. ¶ The ferst zere þat Kyng¹ Stephen biganne forto regne, he assembled^d a grete host, & went him² toward Scotland^d, forto haue þo³ werrede oppoñ þe Kyng of Scotland^d; but he come azeynes him in pees & in gode maner¹, & to him trust; but he made⁴ to him none homage, for-asmiche as⁴ he hade made⁵ homage to⁵ þe Emperesse Maude. ¶ And þe iiij zere of his regne, Maude þe Emperesse come into Engeland; & þo⁸ bigan debate bituene⁶ Kyng Stephen and Maude þe Emperesse. þis Maude went vnto þe citee of Nichole; and þe Kyng¹ her⁷ bisegede longe tyme, & might nouzt spede, so wel þe cite was kepte and defendede. and þo þat were wiþin þe citee queyntly scapede⁸ away wiþouten⁹ eny maner¹ harme; and þo tok þe Kyng þe citee, & duellede þer in to¹⁰ Candelmasse. ¶ And þo come þe barons þat helde¹¹ wiþ þe Emperesse, þat is forto seyn, ¹²þe Erl Randulf of Chestre, þe Erl Robert of Gloucestre, Hughe Bigot, Robert of Molleye,¹³ & brouzt wiþ ham a stronge¹⁴ power¹.

How Maude þe Emperesse Went fram¹⁵ Wynchestr¹ vnto¹⁶ Oxenford^d; and after she ascapede¹⁷ to¹⁸ Wallyngford^d; & what sorwe & disese ¶ she hade. *Capitulo Centesimo xxxix^o.*

20 **W**hen þe Kyng¹ was taken¹⁹ & brouzt²⁰ into warde in²⁰ þe Castel²¹ of Bristow,²¹ þis Maude þe Emperesse anone was ²²lady of Engeland, & alle men helde her for²² lady of þe lande. ¶ But¹ þo of Kent helde wiþ Kyng²³ Stephenes wif; and also William of Pree & his retenue halpe ham, and helde werre azeynes Maude þe Emperesse. & anone after¹, þe Kyng of Scotland come to ham wiþ²⁴ a grete²⁴ nombre of peple; and þo went þai in fere vnto Wynchestre, þere þat þe Emperesse was, & wolde haue take²⁵ here; but þe Erl of Gloucestre come wiþ his power¹, & fouzt wiþ ham; & þe Emperesse, in þe menewhile þat þe bataile durede, scapede fro þens, & went vnto Oxenford^d, & þere her²⁶ helde. & in þat batail was þe Erl of Gloucestre descomfitede & taken,¹⁹ & wiþ him meny opere lordes. ¶ And for his delyueraunce was Kyng³ Stephen

¹ þey O. ² om. DO. ³ om. D.
⁴⁻⁴ vnto [him] homage bicause þat D. ⁵⁻⁵ vnto sic D. homage vnto O.
⁶ bituene the D. between þ^o O. ⁷ hem O.
⁸ ascapede D. ascaped^d O. ⁹ with-oute DO. ¹⁰ tul O.
¹¹ helden O. ¹² leaf 81. ¹³ Morley O. ¹⁴ stronge D.
¹⁵ fro DO. ¹⁶ to O. ¹⁷ schaped O. ¹⁸ vnto D. ¹⁹ take O.
²⁰⁻²⁰ in warde into D. ²¹⁻²¹ om. O. ²²⁻²² made D.
²³ kynges O. ²⁴⁻²⁴ an huge O. ²⁵ taken DO. ²⁶ he O.

delyuerede out of¹ prisoun. ¶ And when he was delyuerede out of¹ prisoun, he went þens to Oxenford, & ²bisegede þe Emperesse þat was þo at Oxenford; & ²þe sege endurede fro Michelmasse vnto Seynt Andrewus tyde. ¶ And þe Emperesse ³lete þo³ cloþe⁴ her⁵ 4 al in white lynen cloþ, for enchesouñ þat she wolde nouzt bene⁶ knowe, for in þe same tyme þere was michel of snowe; and so she scapede⁷ by þe⁸ Tamyse ⁹fram ham awaye⁹ þat were her⁹ enemys; & fro þens she went to Wallyngford, & ¹⁰þere here helde.¹⁰ ¶ And 8 þe Kyng wolde haue bisegede her⁹; ¹¹but he hade so miche to done wip þe Erl Randulf of Chestre, & wip Hugh Bigot, þat strongelich¹² werrede oppoñ him in euery place, þat he ne wist whider to¹³ turne; and þe Erl of Gloucestre halpe¹⁴ ham wip his power. 12

How Gaufride, Erl of Angoy,¹⁵ 3af vp vnto¹⁶ Henry, þe Emperesse sone, al Normandy. *Capitulo Centesimo xl.*

ANd after þis, þe¹⁷ Kyng went vnto Wilton,¹⁸ & wolde haue made a castel þere; but þo come to him þe Erl of Gloucestre 16 wip a stronge power, & almost hade take þe Kyng; but 3it þe¹⁹ Kyng ascapede wip miche payn; & William Marcil²⁰ þere was take, & for whos delyuerance þe Kyng¹ 3af to²¹ þe Erl of Gloucestre þe gode castel of Shirburn þat he hade tak. ¶ And when þis was 20 done, þe Erl Robert, & alle þe Kynges enemys, went to Faryndon, & bigonne ²²forto make þere a stronge²² castel; but þe Kyng¹, wip a stronge power, drof ham þens.

In þat same 3ere ¶ The Erl Randulf of Chestre was²³ accorded 24 wip þe Kyng¹, and come to his²⁴ court at his commandement; and þe Erl went²⁵ haue saffiche²⁶ comen²⁷; & þe Kyng anone lete²⁸ take him, and put him into prisoun, & most neuer for noþing come out perof til þat he hade 3elde op to²⁹ þe Kyng¹ þe castel of Nichole, 28 þe whiche he hade tak fro þe Kyng wip strengþ in þe xv 3ere of þe³⁰ regne of Kyng Stephene. ¶ & Gaufride, þe Erl of Angoy,³¹ 3af vp to Henry³² al Normandy. In þe 3ere þat next sewede,

¹ MS. of of. ²⁻² om. D. ³⁻³ þo lete D. ⁴ cloþen O.

⁵ MS. her her. ⁶ be D. ⁷ ascaped DO. ⁸ om. O.

⁹⁻⁹ away fram ham D. ¹⁰⁻¹⁰ helde her þere D. ¹¹ leaf 81, back.

¹² strongly O. ¹³ for-to O. ¹⁴ holpe D. ¹⁵ Angon O.

¹⁶ to O. ¹⁷ þis the D. þis þe O. þis R. ¹⁸ Walton D. ¹⁹ þo O.

²⁰ Macyþ D. ²¹ vnto DO.

²²⁻²² þere to make a fair D. þere for-to make a strong O.

²³ was made O. ²⁴ the Kynges D. ²⁵ wende D.

²⁶ safly D. sauely O. ²⁷ come O. ²⁸ le sic D. ²⁹ vnto O.

³⁰ his O. ³¹ Angon DO. ³² Henry his sone D. Herry his sone O.

¹deide þe Erl¹ Gaufrid²; and Henry² þo anon *turnede aȝeyn to Angoy*,³ & þere was made Erl wip ⁴Michel ioye & ⁴honour' of his men of þe lande; & to him deden feaute & homage þe most parte⁵ of his land. ¶ And þo was þis Henry, þe Emperesse sone, Erl of Angoy⁶ & Duc of Nor⁷mandye.

¶ And⁸ in þe same ȝere Was made deuorse bituene þe Kyng of Fraunce & þe quene his wif, þat was ryght heir' of Gascoigne, for ⁸encheson þat it⁹ was knowe¹⁰ & prouede þat þai wer' sib & ney of blode; & þo spousede her', Henry þe Emperesse sone; & þo was he⁸ Erl of Angoy,⁶ Duc of Normandy, & Duc of Gascoigne. ¶ þe xvij ȝere of þe¹¹ regne of Kyng Stephen, þis Henry come into ¹²Engeland wip a¹² stronge power', and bigan¹³ forto werre oppoñ Kyng¹ Stephen, & toke þe castel of Malmesbery, & dede miche harme. And þe¹² Kyng Stephen hade so miche werre þat' he ¹⁴wist nouȝt¹⁴ whider' to¹⁵ wende; but at þe laste þai wer' accorded, ¹⁶prouȝ þe Erchebisshope Theobalde and þrouȝ *oper* worþi lordes of Engeland, oppoñ þis condicioun, þat þai shulde departe þe reaume of Engeland bituene ham, so þat¹² Henry, þe Emperesse sone, shulde haue holliche halfe þe reaume, and when Kyng Stephen ²⁰were¹⁶ dede, he shulde haue al þe lande of Engeland; & þus þai were accordede, & pees criede¹⁷ þrouȝ-out al Engeland. ¶ And when þe accord was made bituene þo ij lordes, Kyng Stephen bicome so sori, for cause þat he hade loste half Engeland, & felle ²⁴into soche a malaldy, & deide in þe xix ȝer', viij wokes & v dayes of his regne, al in werr' & in kontak'; & he lip in þe Abbay of Feuersham, þe whiche he lete make,¹⁸ þe vj¹⁹ ȝere of his regne.

Of Kyng Henry þat was þe Emperesse²⁰ sone, in whos tyme ²⁸²¹Seynt Thomas of Kaunterbery²¹ was Chaunceller.²²

¶ Capitulo ¶ Centesimo xl primo.

ANd after þis Kyng¹ Stephen, regnede Henry²³ þe Emperesse sone, þat²⁴ Was cronede²⁵ of þe Erchebisshop Theobalde ³²þe xvij day bifore Cri[s]tesmas.²⁶ And in þe same ȝere Thomas

¹⁻¹ om. D. ² Henry his sone D. Herry his sone O. ³ Angoñ DO.

⁴⁻⁴ miche D. mych O. ⁵ party D. partye O. ⁶ Angon' O.

⁷ leaf 82. ⁸ om. DO. ⁹ is sic D. ¹⁰ knowen O. ¹¹ his O.

¹² om. D. ¹³ bigonne D. ¹⁴⁻¹⁴ nyst D. nyste O. ¹⁵ for-to O.

¹⁶ was D. ¹⁷ ycryed' O. ¹⁸ mak in D. make in O.

¹⁹ sixte O. ²⁰ Emperesses D.

²¹⁻²¹ the words seynt & of Cauntirbury are struck out, & Beket is inserted after Cauntirbury, in O. ²² Ch[a]unceller of Englonde' O.

²³ leaf 82, back. ²⁴ and DO. ²⁵ Crowned' kyng O.

²⁶ Cristemasse O.

Beket of London, Erchebisshop of Kaunterbery, was made þe Kyngus Chancellor of Engeland. ¶ þe secunde zere þat he was cronede, he lete caste douñ alle þe newe castelles¹ þat were longyng vnto þe crone, þe whiche Kyng Stephen hade zeue² vnto diuerse³ 4 meñ, & ham hade made erles & barons forto holde wiþ him, & ⁴him helpe⁴ azeyns Henry,⁵ þe Emperesse sone. ¶ And þe iiij zere of his regne he put vnder his⁶ lordeship þe Kyng of Walys. And in þe same zer, when þe Kyng of Scotland had in his owen hande, þat is 8 to seyne, þe citee of Kerlil, þe castel of Bamburghe, þe newe castel op⁷ Tyne, and þe Erldome of Lancastre, þe same zere þe Kyng, wiþ⁸ gret power, went into Walys, & lete caste adouñ⁹ wodes, & make¹⁰ waies, and made stronge þe castel¹¹ of Rutland & Basyng- 12 werc; and amonge þe castelles¹² he made an house of þe temple. ¶ And in þe same zere was Richard his sone born, þat afterward was Erl of Oxenford.

¶ And þe iiij zere of hes regne, he made Gaufride, Erl of 16 Britaigne; & in þat zere he chaungede his mone.¹³ And þe vj zere of his regne he lade ¹⁴an huge¹⁴ host vnto Tolouse, & conquerede hit. And þe vij zer of his regne, deide Theobalde, þe⁵ Erchebissho[p] of Kanterbery; and þo al þe citee of Kaunterbery, ¹⁵prouz 20 meschief, almost¹⁵ was brent.

[*Thomas a Becket is made Archbishop of Canterbury, and quarrels with the King.*]

þe ix zer of his regne, Thomas Beket, his Chaunceller, was 24 chosen to ¹⁶ben Erchebisshop of Kaunterbery; and oppoñ seynt Bernardes day he was sacrede. ¶ And in þat zere, born was Alienore, þe Kynges douzter. ¶ And þe x zere of his regne, seynt Edmund þe Kyng was translatede wiþ miche¹⁷ honour. ¶ And 28 þe xj zere of his regne he helde his parlement at Northampton; & fro þens fled Seynt¹⁸ Thomas, Erchebisshop¹⁹ of Kaunterbery,²⁰ for þe⁵ grete debate þat was bituen²¹ þe Kyng and him; for if he hade bene²² fonde on²³ þe morwe, he hade bene²² slayn; & þefore he 32

¹ castel D.² zeuen D.³ diuers O.⁴⁻⁴ help him D. helpe hym O. ⁵ om. O.⁶ his owen D. his ovne O. ⁷ vpon O. ⁸ with a DO.⁹ doune D. ¹⁰ made O. ¹¹ cast sic D. ¹² castel D.¹³ mony D. ¹⁴⁻¹⁴ MS. has an huge an huge.¹⁵⁻¹⁵ almost pouz meschif D. almost þurgh myschef O. ¹⁶ leaf 83.¹⁷ michel D. ¹⁸ seynt struck out in O. ¹⁹ om. D.²⁰ Caunterbury fro þe kyng O.²¹ bituene D. betwen O. bitue R. ²² be O. ²³ in DO.

fledde þens wiþ iij felawes, in¹ fote oneliche,² þat no man wist wher he was, and went ouer þe see to þe Pope³ of Rome. ¶ And þis was þe principal enchesouñ, forasmiche as þe Kyng wolde haue put 4 clerkes to⁴ deth þat were atteint of felonye, wipouten⁵ eny pryuelege of holy cherche. ¶ And þe xij zere of his regne, was Iohñ, his sone, bore.⁶ And þe xiiij zere of his regne deide Maude þe Emperesse, þat was his moder; And in þat same zere was Iohane 8 his daughter born.⁷ ¶ þe xiiij zere of his regne, þe Duc Henry of Saxoyne spoused Maude, his daughter; & he bigate on here iij sones, Henry,⁸ Othus, & William. ¶ And in þe xv zere of his regne, deide þe gode Erle Robert of Gloucestre, þat foundede þe 12 Abbay of Nonnes of Etoñ. ¶ And in⁹ þe same zere, Marik, Kyng of Ierusalem, conquerede Babiloñ. ¶ þe xvj zere of his regne, he lete crone his sone Henry at Westmynstre; & him cronede, Roger, þe Erchebisshop of 3ork, in harmyng of Thomas þe Erchebisshop of 16 Kaunterbery; wherfore þe same Roger was acursede of þe Pope.³

¹⁰Of Kyng¹ Henry, þat was þe Emperesse sone; & of þe debate þat was bituene him & his fader' whiles¹¹ þat he was in Normandye. *Capitulo Centesimo xliij^{do}.*

20 **A**fter þe coronaciouñ of Kyng¹ Henry, þe sone of Kyng Henry, the¹² Emperesse sone, þat same Henry þe Emperesse¹³ sone went ouer into Normandye; and pere he lete marie Elianore, his douzter, vnto Dolfynes,¹⁴ þat was Kyng of¹⁵ Almaine. And in þe 24 vij zere þat þe Erchebisshop Seynt¹⁶ Thomas hade bene outlaghed, þe Kyng of Fraunce made þe Kyng & ¹⁷þe Erchebisshop¹⁷ accorded; and þo come Thomas þe Erchebisshop, to Kaunterbery azeyne to his owen cherche. And þis accord was made in þe bigynnyng¹ of 28 Aduent, and afterward he was quellede & ³ martirede,³ þe v day of Cristusmasse¹⁵ þat⁹ þo next comme. For Kyng¹ Henry þouzt oppoñ 19 a day of¹⁹ Thomas, Erchebisshop of Kaunterbery, oppoñ Cristesmasse²⁰ day as he sate²¹ at þe²² mete, and þise wordes saide: þat if 32 he hade eny gode knyzt with him, he hade bene,²³ meny day go,⁹

¹ on O. ² onely D. only O. ³ struck out in O. ⁴ to the D.

⁵ withoute O. ⁶ borne D. ⁷ bore O. ⁸ Hen sic D.

⁹ om. O. ¹⁰ leaf 83, back. ¹¹ while DO. ¹² MS. the þe.

¹³ emperesse; D. ¹⁴ Delfines D. ¹⁵ MS. of of.

¹⁶ om. D. struck out in O.

¹⁷⁻¹⁷ seynt Thomas D. O. has seynt Thomas, with seynt struck out.

¹⁸ cristesmasse D. Cristemasse O.

¹⁹⁻¹⁹ seynt D. seynt struck out in O. ²⁰ Cristemasse O.

²¹ set D. ²² his D. om. O. ²³ be O.

avengede of¹ the Erchebisshop Thomas. ¶ And anone Sir' William [Breton], Sire Hughe Morvile, Sir' William Tracy, & Sir' Reynold Fitz-Vrse, Beressone in Engelisshe,² went into³ þe see, and come into Engeland, to þe cherche of Kaunterbery, & him pere pai⁴ matrede, at seynt Benetes auter in þe moder' cherche; And þat was in þe 3ere of þe⁴ Incarnacioun of⁵ Ihesu⁶ crist, M¹. C. lxxij⁷ 3ere.⁸ ¶ And anone after, Henry, þe new Kyng, biganne forto make werr' oppon⁹ Henry, Kyng,⁹ his fader', & eke oppoñ¹⁰ his breþern.¹¹ 8 ¶ And so oppon a tyme þe Kyng of Fraunce and al þe Kynges sones, & ek⁴ þe Kyng of Scotland & þe gretest lordes of Engeland, were arisen a3eynes Henry þe fader'; & at¹² last, as God wolde, he conquerede¹³ his enemys; and þe Kyng of Fraunce & he were¹² accorded. and þo sent Kyng Henr', þe fader' specialy vnto þe Kyng of Fraunce, and praede him hertly, for his loue, þat he wolde sende to him by lettre þe names of ham þat bigonne þe werr' oppoñ him. ¶ And þe Kyng of France¹⁴ sent a3eyn to him¹⁴ by lettre þe names¹⁶ of ham þat bigon þe werr': ferst' was Iohn his sone, and Richard his broþer,¹⁵ & Henry his sone,¹⁵ þe newe Kyng. ¶ Þo was Henry þe Kyng wonder wrop, & cursede þe tyme þat¹⁶ euer' he ham¹⁶ bigate. And¹⁷ while þe werre durede, Henry his sone,¹⁸ þe newe kyng,²⁰ ¶ deide, sore repentyng his mysdede; and moste sorw made of eny man for cause of Seynt¹⁹ Thomas dep of Kaunterbery; & prayede his fader, wip miche sorwe of hert, mercy of²⁰ his trespasse; and his fader' for3af it him, & hade of him grete pite; & aft[er], he²⁴ deide, þe xxxvj 3ere of his regne, and lip at Redyng.

How þe Cristen men loste þe Holy Land in þe forsaid Kyngus tyme, prou3 a²¹ false Cristen man þat bicom a¹⁷ Sarasyne. Capitulo Centesimo xliij^{to}.²²

28

ANd while þat Kyng Henry, þe Emperesse sone, leuede & regnede, þe grete batail was in þe Holy Land bituene þe Cristen men & þe Sarasyne; but þe Cristen men were pere quelled poru3 grete tresoun of þe Erl of Trype, þat wolde haue hade to wyf³²

¹ oppoñ D. vpon O. ² Englysshe priuely D. Englyssh pryuely O.
³ vnto DO. ⁴ om. DO. ⁵ of oure lorde D. ⁶ Ihesus O.
⁷ lx and xij DO. ⁸ om. O. ⁹⁻⁹ kyng' Henry D. kyng Herry O.
¹⁰ leaf 84. ¹¹ breþern also D. breþerin also O.
¹² at the D. at þe O. ¹³ conquerede alle D. conquered aft O.
¹⁴⁻¹⁴ sent to him a3eyne D. ¹⁵⁻¹⁵ om. D. ¹⁶⁻¹⁶ he hym euere O.
¹⁷ om. D. ¹⁸ om. sic D. ¹⁹ struck out in O. ²⁰ for DO.
²¹ o DO. ²² MS. has xliij^o.

pe Quene ¹of Ierusalem, pat somme tyme was Baldewynus wif; but she forsoke him, & toke to her² lorde a Knyzt, a worpi man pat me called Sire Gy Perchez. ³Wherfore pe Erle of Trip³ was wrop, and went anone ryght to Saladyne, pat was Soudan of Babiloñ, & bicome Saresyn,⁴ & his man, & forsoke⁵ Cristendome and aH Cristen law; and pe Cristen men wiste⁶ nouzt ⁷of pis dede,⁷ but wende⁸ forto haue⁹ hade grete helpe of him, as pai were wont to⁹ haue ⁸bifore. And when pai comen¹⁰ to pe batail, pis false Cristen man turnede vnto pe Sarasynes, and forsoke his owen naciounes¹¹; & so were pe Cristen men pere quelled wip pe Sarasynus; and pus wer¹ pe Cristen men slayne & put to horrible dep, and pe citee of ¹²Ierusalem destroyed, & pe holy croice born away. ¶ pe Kyng of Fraunce ¹²& al pe grete¹² Lordes of pe land lete ham croice ¹³forto go into the Holy Lande; and among ham went Richard, Kyng Henries sone, ferst after the Kyng¹ of France pat tok the crois¹³ of ¹⁶pe Erchebisshop of Toures; but he toke¹⁴ nouz[t] pe viage at pat tyme, for enchesouñ pat he was lette by opere maner¹ waies ¹⁵pat nede¹⁵ moste¹⁶ bene¹⁷ done. ¶ And when Kyng Henry pe¹⁸ fader¹ hade regnede xxxv^{ti} zere &¹⁹ v mounpes and iiij dayes, he deide, ²⁰& lip [at] Founteuerard.

Of Kyng¹ Richard, pat conquerede aH¹⁹ pe Holy Land pat Cristen men hade loste. Capitulo Centesimo Quadragesimo quarto.²⁰

²⁴ **A**Nd after¹ ²¹pis Kyng²¹ Henry,²² regned Richard his sone, a stronge man & a worpi, & also bolde; & he was cronede at Wynchestre²³ of pe Erchebisshop Baldewynne, Erchebisshop²⁴ of Kaunterbery, ²⁵the prid day of Septembre; and the secunde zar¹ of ²⁸his regne Kyng Richard him-self¹ and Baldewyne the Erchebisshop of Caunterbury,²⁵ & Huber[t], Bisshop of Salesbery, & Randulf, Erl

¹ leaf 84, back. ² here a O.

³⁻³ MS. has Wherfore pe Erle of Trip Wherfore pe erl of Trip.

⁴ a sarasyn D. ⁵ forsok his D. ⁶ wist it D. ⁷⁻⁷ om. D.

⁸ went O. ⁹ om. O. ¹⁰ come O. ¹¹ naciõn O.

¹²⁻¹² MS. has & al pe grete & al pe grete.

¹³⁻¹³ forto . . crois D. for-to gon in-to þe holy land; & among hem went Richard, kyng Herry's sone, ferst aftir pe kyng of fraunce pat toke þe Cros O. om. R.

¹⁴ nome O. ¹⁵⁻¹⁵ and nedes DO. ¹⁶ to O. ¹⁷ be DO.

¹⁸ his DO. ¹⁹ om. D. ²⁰ MS. has quinto.

²¹⁻²¹ om. D. pis O. ²² Herry kyng O. ²³ Westmynstre DO.

²⁴ MS. has erchebisshop; om. DO.

²⁵⁻²⁵ the . . Caunterbury D. þe ij day of Septembre & þe ij zeer of his regne Kyng Richard hym-self & Baldewyn Erchebisshop of Caunterbury O. om. R.

of Gloucestre, & opere meny lordes of Engeland, went into pe Holy Land. And ¹in pat viage deide pe Erchebisshop ²of Kaunterbery; and Kyng Richard went bifore into pe Holy Lond, & ¹reste³ nouzt til pat⁴ he come forpe in his way vnto⁵ Cypres, and toke Cipres ⁴wip grete force. & sipen⁶ he went fourp toward pe Holy Land, & gete azeyn as miche as pe Cristen men⁷ haden⁸ loste bifore, Kyng Richard ⁹conquered & gete hit azeyn,⁹ saf onely pe Holy Croice. ¶ And when Kyng Richard come to pe tounne¹⁰ of Acres, forto gete ⁸¹¹pe citee,¹¹ a grete debate aroos bituene him and pe Kyng of Fraunce, so pat Kyng Richard went azeyne into France, & was wrop toward¹² pe Kyng of Fraunce; but ¹³er¹³ pat¹³ Kyng Richard went azeyne, he toke pe Citee¹⁴ of Acres. ¶ And when he hade ¹²taken ¹⁵pe citee, he duellede perin¹⁵ awhile; but to him come tydynges¹⁶ pat pe Erl Iohn of Oxenford, his broper, wolde haue seisede al Engeland into his honde, & Normandy also, and wolde crone him Kyng¹ of pe lande. ¶ And when Kyng Richard herde ¹⁶pis tydynges,¹⁷ he went azeyn toward Engeland wip¹⁸ al pe spedde pat he myght¹; but pe Duc of Estriche mette wip¹⁹ him & tok him, & brouzt him to²⁰ pe Emperoure of Almaign; & pe Emperour brouzt him into²¹ his prisouñ. And afterward he was delyuerede ²⁰for an huge Raunsouñ, ²²pat is, for to paien²² an .C^M. ii.²³ ¶ And for whiche ransouñ to bene²⁴ payede, eche opere chalice of Engeland was molten²⁵ & made into monye. And alle pe monkes of pe ordre of Cisteaux²⁶ zeuen alle her²⁷ bokes prouz²⁷ Engeland, to ²⁴done ham forto selle, and to²³ pat ransouñ forto paye.

How Kyng Richard come azeyn fro pe Holy Lande, & avenged him of his enemys. Capitulo Centesimo Quadragesimo quinto.²⁹

28

³⁰ **W**Hiles pis¹⁹ Kyng Richard was in prisouñ, pe Kyng of Fraunce werrede oppoñ him strongeliche³¹ in Normandye, and Iohn his broper werrede oppoñ him³² in Engeland; but pe

¹⁻¹ om. D. ² leaf 85. ³ rested O. ⁴ om. D.

⁵ to [sic] he come to D. ⁶ sip D. ⁷ peple O. ⁸ hade D.

⁹⁻⁹ get it & conquered it prouz grete strengþ D. gete it and conquered it azeyn burgh gret myghte O.

¹⁰ Citee O. ¹¹⁻¹¹ it O. ¹² wip D. ¹³⁻¹³ or DO. ¹⁴ tounne D.

¹⁵⁻¹⁵ it he duellede in the Citee D. it he duellid in pe Citee O.

¹⁶ tydyng DO. ¹⁷ tydyng O. ¹⁸ in D. ¹⁹ om. O.

²⁰ vnto DO. ²¹ to D. ²²⁻²² forto paye D. pat is for-to paye O.

²³ pound O. ²⁴ be DO. ²⁵ meldede D. molte O.

²⁶ Cistenaux D. ²⁷⁻²⁷ boker [sic] prouzoute D. bokes burgh O.

²⁸ om. DO. ²⁹ MS. has Sexto. ³⁰ leaf 85, back.

³¹ strongly O. ³² hym strongly O.

bisshoppis & þe barons of Engeland wipstode¹ ham² wip al þe³ power þat þai hade & myght geten,⁴ & helde⁵ þe castel of Wyndesore and alle opere castelles. ¶ And þe forsaide Iohñ saw þat he hade
 4 no might ne power⁶ aʒeynes þe barons of Engeland forto feiʒt; but anone him went ouer⁷ þe see to⁸ þe Kyng of Fraunce. ¶ And when Kyng Richard come out of prisouñ, and was delyuerede, and come into Engeland, anone after Candelmasse, in grete haste he
 8 went vnto⁹ Notyngham, and¹⁰ þe castel of Notyngham to him was ʒolden; and þo disheritede¹¹ he Iohñ, his broþer, and alle þat wip him helde; and after, he went vnto þe citee of Wynchestre, and þere he lete him crone Kyng estesones; and after, he went into
 12 Normandy forto werr¹² oppon þe Kyng of Fraunce. ¶ And þe Kyng of France come wip vj C. knyʒtes toward Gisers; and¹³ Kyng Richard mette him, & þo wolde haue ʒeue him bataile, but þe Kyng of Fraunce fledde; & an C. knyʒtes of his were take, & ij
 16 C. stedes were trappede wip yren. ¶ And anone after, went Kyng¹⁴ Richard forto bisege þe castel of Gaillard. ¶ And as he rode oppoñ a day by þe castel, forto take auisement of þe castel, an¹⁵ Arweblaster¹⁵ smote him wip a quarel þat was e[n]venymede; and þe Kyng
 20 drow out þe shaſte of þe quarel, but þe quarelle hede abode stille in his heuede,¹⁶ & hit bigan forto¹⁷ rancele, þat he might nouʒt helpe him-self¹⁷ ne¹⁸ meue his Armes. ¶ And þo he wist þat he hade dethe¹⁸ Wounde, þat he might nouʒt bene¹⁹ hole for no maner þing.
 24 He commandedede anone¹⁹ alle his men¹⁹ sharply forto²⁰ assaile þe castel, so þat þe castel was taken²⁰ or þat²¹ he deide. And so manliche²¹ his men deden,²² þat þe peple þat were in þe castel were al taken; and þe Kyng dede wip ham what þat²¹ he wolde, & com-
 28 mandede his men þat þai shulde bryng²² tofore²⁴ him þe man þat him so hade²⁵ hurte & so hade²⁵ wondede. ¶ And when he come bifore þe Kyng²³, þe Kyng axed²³ what was his name; & he saide “Sire,
 26 my name is²⁶ Bertram Gurdoñ.” “Wherfore,” saide þe Kyng,
 32 “hast þow me slayn, siþ þat y dede þe neuer²⁷ none harme?” ¶ “Sire,” said²⁷ he, “þouʒ ʒe dede me neuer²⁷ harme, ʒe haue done²⁸ to my frendes miche harme; For ʒour²⁸-self, wip ʒour owen honde,

¹ withstonden O. ² him D. ³ here D. ⁴ gete DO.

⁵ geten DO. ⁶ vnto O. ⁷ into O. ⁸ ad sic D.

⁹ disherite O. ¹⁰ & þ^o O. ¹¹ om. O. ¹² hike O.

¹³ heede D. heed O. ¹⁴ to O. ¹⁵ leaf 86. ¹⁶ dethes D. dethis O.

¹⁷ be DO. ¹⁸⁻¹⁸ om. DO. ¹⁹ om. D. al his men for-to O.

²⁰ take O. ²¹ om. D. ²² manly O. ²³ dede O.

²⁴ bifore D. byfor O. ²⁵ om. DO. ²⁶⁻²⁶ om. O.

²⁷ neuere non O. ²⁸ do D.

quellede my fader¹ & my broþer; and þerfor now y han¹ 3ow quytte 3oure trauaile." ¶ þo saide Kyng Richard: "He pat deide oppon þe croice to bryng mannus soule² fram þe² pyne of helle, forþeue 3ow my dep¹ and y also forþeue hit þe." þo commandede⁴ þe Kyng pat no man shulde him misdone³; but for al þe kyngus defendyng, ¶ Somme of his men⁴ him folwed,⁴ & priuely him quellede. And þe vj day after, þe Kyng deide shryuen, and sore⁵ repentance hauyng⁵ of his misdedes,⁶ & was houselede &⁸ annoyntede. And þis kyng ne⁷ regned but ix 3ere & xxxix wokes, & ⁸deide, & lip bisides⁸ his fader¹ at Founteuerard.

Of Kyng Iohn, pat in þe⁹ ferst 3ere of his regne loste al Normandy. *Capitulo Centesimo xlvj^{mo}.*¹⁰ 12

WHen Kyng Richard was dede, for enchesouñ pat¹¹ he hade none heir¹, noþere¹² sone ne doughter, his broþer Iohan was made Kyng¹, an[d] cronede at Westmynstre of Hubert, pat was þo Erchebisshoþ of Kaunterbery. ¶ And when he biganne forto¹⁶ regne, he bicom so mervailous a⁷ man, and went ouer into Normandy, & werrede oppoñ þe Kyng¹ of France. And so longe þai werrede to-gedre, til att þe laste Kyng Iohn loste Normandy & Angoy¹³; wherfor he was sore annoiede, & was none¹⁴ mervaille. ²⁰ ¶ þo lete he assemble byfore him at Londoñ, Erchebisshoppis, bisshoppus, Abbotes & Pryours, Erles & barons, and helde þere a grete Parlement, & axede þere of þe clergie¹⁵ þe tenþe of euery cherche of Engeland, forto¹⁶ conquere & gete a3eyne Normandy & ²⁴ Angoy¹⁷ pat he hade loste. and þai wolde nouzt graunt pat þing¹; wherfore he was wonder¹ wrop. ¶ And in þe same tyme deide þe Erchebisshop¹⁸ Hubert. And þe Priour & þe Couent of Kaunterbery chosen, a3eynes þe Kyngus wille, to bene Erchebisshop, ²⁸ Maistre Stephen of Langetoñ, a goode clerik pat wonede at þe court of Rome, & sende¹⁹ to þe Pope²⁰ here ellecciouñ; & þe Pope²⁰ confermede hit, and sacred hit²¹ at Viterbe. ¶ When þe Kyng wiste þis tydyngus,²² he was wonder¹ wrop, & drof þe Priour & þe ³² couent fro Kanterbery, & exilede ham²³ out of Engeland, &

¹ haue D. ²⁻² oute of D. ³ mysdo D. ⁴⁻⁴ folewede him D.

⁵⁻⁵ repentyng¹ D. repentaunt hauyng O. ⁶ mysdede D.

⁷ om. DO. ⁸⁻⁸ lith beside O. ⁹ the D. þe O. om. R.

¹⁰ MS. has xlvij^{mo}. ¹¹ leaf 86, back. ¹² neþer D. neþer O.

¹³ Angon DO. ¹⁴ no DO. ¹⁵ MS. cheryge; Clergie of Engeland O.

¹⁶ forto DO. for R. ¹⁷ Angoñ DO. ¹⁸ bisshop D. bysshop O.

¹⁹ sent DO. ²⁰ struck out in O. ²¹ hym O. ²² tydyng O.

²³ hym O.

commandede¹ pat no maner² lettre pat come fro þe court of Rome, ne no² comandement,³ shulde be⁴ vnderfong¹ ne pledede⁵ in Engeland. ¶ When pise tydyngus⁶ come to þe Pope,⁷ he sent 4 vnto Kyng Iohn by his lettre, & prayede him wip gode wille & gode hert pat he wolde vnderfonge Stephen, ⁸ Erchebisshop of Kaunterbery, vnto His cherche, & soffre þe Priour & his monkes to⁹ come azeyn to¹⁰ her¹ owen duellyng¹; but þe Kyng¹ wolde nouzt 8 grant hit for noþing.¹¹

How Kyng Iohan wolde ¹² nouzt do¹² for⁹ þe Popes¹³ comandement; wherfore al Engeland was enterdite¹⁴ ¹⁵ & suspended.¹⁵ Capitulo Centesimo xlvij^o.¹⁶

12 **A** Nd at þe¹⁷ laste, þe Pope⁷ sent by his autorite, and ennioynede to¹⁸ bisshoppis of Engeland pat, if þe Kyng¹ wolde nouzt vnderfonge þe Prioure of Kaunterbery and his monkes, pat þai shulde do¹⁹ general enterdityng¹ prou3-oute al Engeland; & grantede 16 ful power¹ to iiij bisshopis to pronounce þe enterdityng, if²⁰ it were nede: ¶ þe ferst was Bisshop William of London, & pat oper Eustace, Bisshop of Ely; þe þridde²¹ was Walter, þe Bisshop of Wynchestre; And þe ferþ²² was Giles, þe Bisshop of Herford.²³ 20 ¶ And pise iiij bisshoppis praiede þe Kyng¹, knelyng on here knees & sore wepyng¹, pat he wolde do²⁴ þe Popis²⁵ comandement¹, and shewede him þe bullis of the⁹ enterdityng¹; but, for no prayer¹ pat þai myght praye, he wolde nouzt consent þerto. And when þe 24 bisshopes saw pis, þai went fro²⁶ þe Kyng¹; ¶ And in¹⁷ þe morwe²⁷ after¹ þe Annunsiacion of oure Lady, þai pronouncede þe general enterdytyng¹ prou3-oute al Engeland, so pat þe cherchedores were shitte²⁸ wip Keyes & wip²⁹ oper fastnyng¹, and wip²⁹ wallys. ¶ And 28 when þe enterdytyng was pronouncede, þan þe Kyng bigan forto³⁰ wax al out of mesure, and toke³¹ into his honde³² alle þe possessions of þo³³ iiij bisshopis, and of al þe clergie prou3-out³⁴ al þe lande,

¹ commandede D. Comaunded¹ O. commande R. ² none D.

³ mandement D. maument O. ⁴ þai D. ⁵ plede D.

⁶ tydyng¹ D. ⁷ struck out in O. ⁸ leaf 87. ⁹ om. D.

¹⁰ vnto D. ¹¹ nomaner þing¹ D. ¹²⁻¹² no-þing done O.

¹³ MS. has Pope struck out; it is also struck out in O.

¹⁴ enterditede D. entirdited O. ¹⁵⁻¹⁵ om. O.

¹⁶ MS. has xlvij^o; D has xxxvij^o. ¹⁷ om. O.

¹⁸ to þe O. ¹⁹ don O. ²⁰ if þat D. ²¹ þirde O. ²² iiij O.

²³ Hereford¹ O. ²⁴ don O.

²⁵ Popes struck out, and bysshoppes inserted by another hand in O.

²⁶ from O. ²⁷ morne DO. ²⁸ shitte in D. ²⁹⁻²⁹ om. D.

³⁰ to O. ³¹ nome O. ³² hondes D. ³³ the D. þe O.

³⁴ prou3 D. þurgh O.

and ordeynede men forto kepe ¹ham, þat¹ þe clerkes might nouzt haue here leuyng^t. Wherefore þe biss[hopis curs]jede ²ham aþ þat put, or shulde medle² wip, holy cherche³ godes, azeins ⁴the Wille of ham þat ham⁵ owede. 4

¶ And Whe[n] þe Kyng Wolde nouzt cesse of his malice for no maner ping^t, þe⁶ iiij bisshoppis aboue-saide⁷ went ouer þe see, and went to þe Erchebisshoþ⁸ of Kaunterbery, and tolde him al þe tidyngus.⁹ ¶ And þe Erchebisshop to ham saide, þat þai shulde ⁸go¹⁰ azeyn to Kanterbery, and he wolde come pider^t to ham, or elles he wolde sende pider^t certeyn persones in his stede, þat shulde done¹¹ as miche as him-self were pere. ¶ And when þe bisshopis herde þis, þai turnede azeyne vnto¹² Engeland^t, & come¹³ vnto K[a]un- 12 terbery. ¹⁴¶ the tydynges comen to the kyng^t þat þe bisshoppes wer^t come azeyne to Kanterbery,¹⁴ and [as] him-self might nouzt come pider^t þat tyme, he sent pider¹⁵ bisshopes, Erles, Abbotes, forto trete wip ham, þat þe Kyng shulde vnderfonge þe Erchebisshop 16 Stephen, & þe priour^t and alle¹⁶ þe monkes of Kaunterbery, and þat he shulde neuer^t after^t þat tyme noping take of Holy Cherche azeynes þe wille of ham þat owede¹⁷ þe godes; and þat þe Kyng shulde make ful amendes to ham of whame he hade eny godes 20 taken, & þat holy cherche shulde haue alle here Fraunchises as ferforþ¹⁸ as she hade in Seynt Edwardus tyme þe Confessoure.

How Stephen of Langetone comme into Engeland prouþ þe Popis¹⁹ commandement, & the[n]²⁰ went azeyn. Capitulo 24 Centesimo xlvij^o.²¹

WHen þe fourme of accorde þus was ordeynede,²² hit was in a peire of endentures; & þai put her^t selx²³ to þat²⁴ o party,²⁴ and þai þat comen²⁵ in þe Kyngus name put her^t selx²⁶ to þat opere 28 parte¹⁶ of þe endentures. And þe iiij bisshoppus aboue-saide toke

¹⁻¹ it for D. it þat O.

²⁻² al men þat ham medlede D. al hem þat put or schuld medle O.

³ Cherche O. ⁴ leaf 87, back. ⁵ it D. ⁶ þo D.

⁷ aforesaide D. ⁸ Bisshope O. ⁹ doying^t D. doynge O.

¹⁰ goñ D. ¹¹ do D. ¹² to O. ¹³ comen O.

¹⁴⁻¹⁴ the . . Kanterbery D. The tydynges come to þ⁹ kyng þat þ⁹ Bisshopes were come azen to Cauntirbury O. om. R.

¹⁵ pide sic D. ¹⁶ om. O. ¹⁷ owen D. owe O.

¹⁸ alseferforth D. as ferforþ O. afferforþ R.

¹⁹ MS. has Popis struck out; struck out also in O. ²⁰ he D. om. O.

²¹ MS. has xlix^o; D has xxxviiij^o; O has lxxviiij^o.

²² ordenede D. ordeyned^t O. ordeyne R. ²³ sealles D. seesles O.

²⁴⁻²⁴ one parte D. ²⁵ come D. ²⁶ seesles O.

pat o¹ parte² of þe endentures³ wip ham; And þe oper parte of þe endenture pai³ bare wip ham forto shew þe Kyng. ¶ When þe Kyng saw⁴ þe fourme, and hit⁴ ⁵vnderstode, he helde him ful wel 4 paiede⁶ of al maner þing þat⁷ pai hade ordeynede, saf as tochyng þe restitucioñ of þe godes⁸ forto make⁸ aʒeyne; to þat þing⁹ he wolde⁹ nouzt accorde; and so he sent worde aʒeyne to þe¹⁰ forsaide iiij bisshoppis,¹⁰ þat pai shulde done¹¹ out and put away þat o pynt 8 of restitucioñ; and pai ansuerede þat pai nolde¹² nouzt done⁴ ¹³out a word.¹³ ¶ þo sent þe Kyng¹ to þe Erchebisshop by þo iiij bisshopes, þat he shulde come to Kaunterbery forto speke wip him pere, and sent vnto him saf condit, vnder' plegges, þat is to seyn, 12 his Iusticeʒ, Gilbert Peyteuyn, William de la Breuer', & Iohn le fi[t]z Hugh, þat in here condit safly he shulde come, & goñ aʒeyn at his wille; & in þis maner' þe Erchebisshop Stephen come vnto Kaunterbery. ¶ And when the Erchebisshop was [come],¹⁴ þe 16 Kyng¹ come to Chilham, for he wolde come no nyer'¹⁵ Kaunterbery at þat tyme; but he sent by his tresorer', þe¹⁶ bisshope of Wynchestre, þat he shulde done¹⁷ out of þe endentures þe clause of restitucioñ forto make of þe godes. ¶ And þe Erchebisshop made his oth per, 20 þat¹⁸ he wolde neuer' do¹⁹ oute a²⁰ worde þerof, ne chaunge of þat þe bisshopes²¹ hade spoken²² & ordeynede. & so þe Erchebisshope went aʒeyn to Rome, wip-uten²³ eny more doying'. ¶ Kyng¹ [Iohn] was þo²⁴ miche wroper²⁵ þan euer he was bifore, and lete make a 24 comen²⁶ crie prouʒ-out al Engeland, þat al þo þat haden²⁷ holy cherche rentes, and wenten²⁸ ouer þe see, þat pai shulde come aʒeyn into Engeland at a certeyn day, and elleʒ pai shulde lese her' rentes²⁹ for euermore; and þat he commandedede to⁴ euery shirryf prouʒout 28 Engeland, þat pai shulde enquer' if eny bisshop, Abbot,³⁰ Pryoure, or eny oper prelate of Holy cherche, ³¹fro þat day afterward' resceyuede eny mandement þat come fro þe Pope,³² þat pai shulde tak þe body, & brynge hit bifore him; & þat pai shulde take into 32 þe Kynges hande al her' londes³³ of holy cherche³⁴ þat were ʒeuen

¹ one D.² partye O.³⁻³ and D. with hem & þat opere partye of þe endentures þey O.⁴ om. D. ⁵ leaf 88. ⁶ apayed D. ⁷ as DO. ⁸⁻⁸ om. D.⁹ nolde O. ¹⁰⁻¹⁰ iiij bysshopes aforseid' O. ¹¹ do D. ¹² wolde D.¹³⁻¹³ out o word' D. o word' O. a word R. ¹⁴ comen D.¹⁵ neire D. ner O. ¹⁶ om. D. ¹⁷ do D. ¹⁸ that D. þat O. at R.¹⁹ don O. ²⁰ o O. ²¹ Archebisshop D. ²² spoke O.²³ withoute DO. ²⁴ om. D. so O. ²⁵ wroper þo D.²⁶ comune O. ²⁷ hade D. had O. ²⁸ went DO. ²⁹ Rente O.³⁰ Abbot or D. ³¹ leaf 88, back. ³² struck out in O.³³ godeʒ D. ³⁴ che sic D.

to¹ eny man prou3 þe Erchebisshop Stephen or by þe Pryour¹ of Kaunterbery, fram þe tyme of þe eleccioun of þe erchebisshope; ¶ And commandede þat alle þe wodes þat were þe erchebisshopus schulde² bene³ cast adouñ to¹ þe grounde, and aH solde. 4

How Kyng Iohñ destroyed þe ordre of Cisteaux. Capitulo Centesimo xlix^o.⁴

ANd in þe same tyme þe Irisshe-men bigoñ to⁵ werr' oppoñ Kyng Iohñ; and Kyng Iohñ ordeynede him forto⁶ wende 8 into Yrland, and lete arere an huge tax⁷ prou3-out al Engeland,⁷ þat is to seyn, xxxv M^t mar3⁸; & sent prou3-out⁹ al Engeland to þe monkes of þe ordre of Cisteaux, þat þai schulde helpe him of vj M^t marc of Siluer¹; and þai ansuerede¹⁰ & saide¹⁰ þat þai derst¹² noping done wipouten¹¹ her' chief Abbot of Cisteaux. Wherefore Kyng Iohñ, when he come¹² a3eyne¹³ fram Irland,¹³ he dede ham so miche sorwe & care, þat þai nist wher' forto abide; for he toke so miche ransouñ of euery hous of ham,¹⁴ þe somme amountede ix M^t 16 & iij C mar3,¹⁵ so þat þai were clene loste¹⁶ and destroyede, & voidede her' hous & her' landes prou3-out al Engeland. ¶ And the Abbot of Wauersey¹⁷ drade so miche his manace, þat he forsoke al his¹⁸ Abbay, & went pens, and pryuely¹⁹ ordeynede him ouer' þe 20 see²⁰ to þe hous of Cisteaux. ¶ When þe tydynges²¹ come to þe Pope,²² þat þe Kyng¹ had done so miche malice, þo was he toward' þe Kyng¹ ful wroþ, and sent ij legates to¹ þe Kyng¹,—þat on me callede Pandolf, & þat opere Duraunt,—þat þai²³ schulde warne þe 24 Kyng¹, in þe Popis²² name, þat he schulde cesse of' his persecucioñ þat he dede vnto holy cherche, & amende þe²⁴ wrong¹ and trespasse²⁴ þat he hade done to þe Erchebisshope of Kanterbery, &²⁵ vnto þe²⁵ monkes of Kaunterbery, & to al þe clergie of Engeland, and þat 28 he schulde restore þe godes a3eyn þat he hade taken²⁶ of ham a3eyns her' wille, & elles²⁷ þai schulde curse the²⁸ Kyng¹ by name; and to done²⁹ pis ping¹,³⁰ & to conferme,³⁰ þe Pope²² toke ham his lettres in

¹ vnto O. ² schul O. ³ be DO. ⁴ MS. has lmo. ⁵ forto DO.

⁶ foro sic D. ⁷⁻⁷ om. O. ⁸ Mark¹ O. ⁹ prou3 D. þurgh O.

¹⁰⁻¹⁰ om. D. ¹¹ with-oute DO. ¹² come home O.

¹³⁻¹³ into Engeland D. fro Irland O. ¹⁴ ham þat D. hem þat O.

¹⁵ Mark O. ¹⁶ ylost O. ¹⁷ Waruersey O. ¹⁸ þe O. ¹⁹ om. D.

²⁰ see pryuely D. ²¹ tydyng D. tydyng O. ²² struck out in O.

²³ leaf 89. ²⁴⁻²⁴ trespas and wrong D. wrong and þe trespas O.

²⁵⁻²⁵ to the Priour and D. to þe Priour & to þe O.

²⁶ take O. ²⁷ eft O. ²⁸ the D. þe O. om. R. ²⁹ do D.

³⁰⁻³⁰ om. D.

bulles patent. ¶ Ise ij legates comen¹ into Engeland, and comen to þe Kyng^t to Northampton, þere pat he helde his parlement; & ful curteisely pai² him salued^t,³ and saide: "Sire, we bepe⁴ comen 4 fro⁵ þe Pope⁶ of Rome, þe pees of holy cherche &⁷ þe lande forto amend^t; and we monest 3ow ferste in þe Popis half^t, pat 3e make ful restitucioun of þe godes pat 3e haue rauisskede of holy cherche & of þe land^t, & pat 3e vnderfonge Stephen,⁸ Erchebisshop of 8 Kanterbery, into his dignite, and þe Priour^t of Kaunterbery & his monkes, & pat 3e 3elde a3eyn to⁹ þe Erchebisshope alle his landes & rentes, wipout eny wipholdyng. ¶ And Sire,¹⁰ more-ouer^t, pat 3e¹¹ soche restitucioun ham¹² make, as holy cherche shal holde her^t 12 paiede."

¶ þo ansuerede þe Kyng^t; "as tochyng^t þe Priour & his monkes of Kaunterbery, al pat 3e haue saide, y¹³ wille gladelyche¹³ do, & al ping^t pat 3e wille ordeyne. ¶ But as tochyng^t þe 16 Erchebisshop, y shal telle 3ow in¹² myn hert as it lip, pat þe Erchebisshop lete his bisshopriche, & pat þe Pope⁶ 14 pan for him¹⁴ wolde praye, & pan oppoñ aventure me shulde like some opere bisshopriche¹⁵ forto 3eue him¹⁵ in Engeland^t; and oppoñ¹⁶ pis 20 condicioun y wil¹⁷ him resceyue and vnderfonge. ¶ And nopeles in Engeland, as Erchebisshop yf¹⁸ he abide, he shal neuer^t haue so gode saf condit pat¹⁹ he ne shal ben⁴ tak." ¶ þo saide Pandolf vnto þe Kyng^t: "holy cherche was neuer^t wont to disgrade²⁰ 24 Erchebisshop wipouten²¹ cause resonable; but euer she was wont to chastice Pry[n]ces pat to God^t & holy cherche were in-obedient." ¶ "What! how now?" quod þe Kyng, "manace 3e me?" ¶ "Nay," saide Pandolf, "but 3e²² now openly haue tolde as it stondep²² in 28 3our hert; & to 3ow we wil tel what is þe Popis⁶ wille; & þus it stant: pat he hap 3ow holiche²³ enterditede & accursedede for þe wronges pat 3e haue done to holy cherche & to þe clergie. & for-as-miche as 3e duellip & beþ in wil to abide in 3our^t malice, and 32 wil nouzt come to none emendement,²⁴ 3e shal vnderstond^t pat fro pis tyme afterward þe centence is oppoñ 3ow 3euen, & halde²⁵ stede

¹ come DO. ² om. D. ³ saleded hym O. ⁴ be O.

⁵ fram D. ⁶ struck out in O. ⁷ & of DO. ⁸ Stephen the D.

⁹ vnto DO. ¹⁰ Sir 3itte D. sir 3it O. ¹¹ 3e hem O. ¹² om. O.

¹³⁻¹³ wolde gladly D. wold gladly O. ¹⁴⁻¹⁴ for him þan D.

¹⁵⁻¹⁵ him forto 3eue D. ¹⁶ MS. oppoñ oppoñ. ¹⁷ wolde DO.

¹⁸ leaf 89, back. ¹⁹ MS. þak. ²⁰ descharg D. ²¹ withoute O.

²²⁻²² haue tolde openly how it stondes D. haue now openlich haue told as it standith O.

²³ holy DO. ²⁴ amendement O. ²⁵ holdep D. halt O.

& strengþ; and all¹ þo þat wip 3ow hap² communede or³ þis tyme, Wheþer þat þai bep⁴ Erles or⁵ barons,⁶ knyghtes or eny oper, what-so-⁷euer þat⁷ þai bene, we ham assoile safly vnto þis day. And fro þis tyme afterwarð, of what condicioñ so-euer⁸ he⁹ be, we 4 ham acurse þat wip 3ow communen, and¹⁰ do we sentence oppoñ hañ openly & specialy. ¶ And we assoile quyte¹¹ Erles &¹² baroñs, knyztz, & al oper maner' men, of her' homages, seruices & feautez, þat þai shulde vnto 3ow done. ¶ And þis þing to conferme, We 8 3eue¹³ pleyñ power' to þe Bisshop of Wynchestre & to þe Bisshop of Norwich; ¶ And þe same power we ¹⁴3eue into¹⁴ Scotland to þe Bisshop¹⁵ of Rouchestre & of Salesbery; & in Walys we 3eue¹⁶ þe same power' to þe Bisshop¹⁷ of seynt Daud, ¹⁸of Landa & of¹⁹ 12 Assa. ¶ And more-ouer we sende²⁰ prou3 al Cristendome, þat al þe bisshopis bi3end þe see, þat þai²¹ ²²acurse alle þo þat helpeþ 3ow, or in¹² eny conseile 3eue²³ in eny maner nede þat 3e haue forto done in eny party of the world; and ²⁴we assaile²⁴ al ham þat a3eynes 3ow 16. meueþ²⁵ eny maner' werre. ¶ And we assoile ham al also, by þe autorite of þe Pope,²⁶ & commanden²⁷ ham²⁸ also wip 3ow forto werr', as wip him þat is enemy to²⁹ al holy cherche." ¶ þo ansuered þe Kyng, "what mow 3e done³⁰ more?" ¶ þo saide³¹ 20 Pandolf: "we seyn³² to 3ow 'in verbo Dei,' þat 3e, ne none heir' þat 3e haue, neuer after' þis day may be cronede." ¶ Tho saide þe Kyng: "by Him þat is Almyghty God, & y hade wist of þis þing' er' þat 3e come into my land, þat 3e me¹² hade brouzt³³ soche 24 tidynges,³⁴ y shulde haue made 3ow ride³⁵ al an hool 3ere." ¶ þo ansuerede Pandolf: "ful wel wende we, at oure ferst comyng', þat 3e wolde haue ben obedient to God and to⁵ holy cherche, & haue fulfillede þe Popys²⁶ commandement; and nowe we haue shewede 28 & pronuncede vnto³⁶ 3ow þe Popis²⁶ wille, as we were chargede perwip. ¶ And as now 3e haue saide þat, if 3e hade wist þe cause of oure commyng, þat 3e wolde haue made vs ryde al an hool 3ere,

¹ oppoñ alle D. vpon añ O. allo R. ² hauen D. haue O.
³ bifore D. before O. ⁴ be D. ben O. ⁵ om. D. ⁶ Baroñs or O.
⁷⁻⁷ om. D. ⁸ þat euer D. euer þat O. ⁹ þei O.
¹⁰ and so DO. ¹¹ quyte D. quyte O. ¹² om. DO. ¹³ 3euen O.
¹⁴⁻¹⁴ 3eueñ in O. ¹⁵ bysshops O. ¹⁶ 3euen D. yeueñ O.
¹⁷ bisshoppis D. bysshopes O. ¹⁸ Daud and DO.
¹⁹ of seynt DO. ²⁰ sendeþ D. sendith O.
²¹ þai do D. þey don O. ²² leaf 90. ²³ 3eueñ D.
²⁴⁻²⁴ assoile D. þat assoille O. assoile R. ²⁵ meue O.
²⁶ struck out in O. ²⁷ commande D. ²⁸ om. O. ²⁹ vnto O.
³⁰ do me D. don me O. ³¹ answered O. ³² saie D.
³³ broght me O. ³⁴ Tydyng O. ³⁵ riden O. ³⁶ to D.

and as wel 3e myght haue saide pat 3e wolde haue take¹ an hool zere of respite by pe Popys² leue. ¶ But forto suffre what dep³ pat 3e coupe ordeyne, we shulle nouzt spare forto tel 3ow holliche⁴ al pe Popis² message, & his wille pat we⁴ wer⁴ chargede with.”

How Pandolf¹ delyuerede a clerc pat hade falsede⁵ & contrefetede pe Kyngus monye⁵ ⁶bifore pe⁶ Kyng⁷.⁷ *Capitulo Centesimo* 1^o.⁸

8 **A** Non po commandede pe Kyng to⁸ the Shirrif⁹ & bailifs¹⁰ of Northampton pat¹¹ were in pe Kynges presence, pat¹¹ pai shulde bryng¹ forth alle¹² pe prisoners, pat¹³ pai myzt bene¹⁴ done to depe bifore Pandulf, for encheson pe Kyng wende pat pai¹² wolde haue gaynesaide here dedes for cause of dep, al ping pat pai¹⁵ hade spoken bifore.¹⁶ ¶ When pe prysoners were comen¹⁷ bifore pe Kyng¹, pe Kyng¹ commanded¹⁸ somme to bene honget, & some to bene¹⁹ drawe, & somme to draw out her¹ eyen of her¹⁶ heued.²⁰ and amonge alle oper, pere was a clerc pat hade falsede pe Kynges monye; & pe Kyng commaundede pat he shuld²¹ bene honged & drawe. ¶ And when Pandolf herd pis commandement of pe Kyng¹, he stert²² op smertly, and anone axed²⁰ a book¹ & candel, ²³and wolde haue²³ cursed alle ham pat sette oppon pe clerc eny honde. ¶ And Pandolf him-self went forto seche a croice; and pe Kyng folwede him, and delyuerede him pe clerc by pe honde, pat he shulde do²⁴ wip him what-euer¹ pat he²⁴ wolde. And pus was the clerc delyuerede, and went pens; and Pandolf & Duraunt²⁵ went po fro²⁶ Kyng Iohn, & come a3eyne to pe Pope²⁷ of Rome, and tolde him pat Kyng Iohn wolde nouzt amendede ben, but euer¹ abide so acursede. ¶ And noþeles pe Pope²⁸ graunted¹ pat 3er¹ prou3-out Engeland¹, pat men might synge masse;²⁸ in couenable cherches, & make Godes body, and 3if it to sik¹ men pat²⁹ shulde passe²⁹ out of pe³⁰ worlde, & also pat men might cristen

¹ tok D. ² *struck out in O.* ³ *om.* DO. ⁴ he D.

⁵⁻⁵ the kynges mony and contrefetede it D. & contrefete pe kynges money O.

⁶⁻⁶ *om.* O. ⁷ Kyng¹ himself D. *om.* O. ⁸ *MS. has ljo.*

⁹ Shereves O. ¹⁰ baliez D. ¹¹⁻¹¹ *om.* D. ¹² leaf 90, back.

¹³ pat wer¹ in the kynges prisoun pat D. ¹⁴ be DO.

¹⁵ he O. ¹⁶ afore DO. ¹⁷ Come O.

¹⁸ *MS. has to bene commamanded¹, with to bene underlined for omission.*

¹⁹ be O. ²⁰ heed O. ²¹ be DO. ²² sterte him D.

²³⁻²³ *MS. has and wolde haue & wolde haue.* ²⁴ done O.

²⁵ Durant his felaw D. Duraunt his felawe O. ²⁶ fro pe O.

²⁷ *struck out here and everywhere in O.* ²⁸ masse D.

²⁹⁻²⁹ passe shulde D. passe schuld¹ O. ³⁰ pis O.

childern oueral. ¶ And when þe Pope wist & sawe þat þe Kyng wolde nouzt bene¹ vnder þe rewele of holy cherche for no maner ping, þe Pope² þo sent² to þe Kyng of France, in remissioun of his synnes, þat he shulde take wiþ him al þe power þat he myght, & 4 wende into Engeland forto destroye Kyng Iohan.

[*King John gives in to the Pope.*]

When þis tydyngus³ come to Kyng⁴ Iohā, þo Was he sore annoyede, & sore drade Laste þat he shulde lese his reaueme, and 8 him-self⁵ be done vnto þe⁵ dep. ¶ þo sent he to þe Pope messagers,⁶ & saide þat he wolde bene⁷ iustifiede, & come to amendent in al maner pinges, atte his owen wille. þe messagers comen⁸ to þe Pope, & tolde him⁹ þe Kyngus wille, & saide þat he wolde 12 come to emendement in al maner¹⁰ pinges, & wolde make satisfaccioñ to al maner men after þe Popys ordenaunce. ¶ þo sent þe Pope aþeyne into Engeland, Pandolf and opere messagers, & comen to Kaunterbery pere þe Kyng abode. and þe xiiij day of 16 May, þe Kyng made¹¹ an hoth forto stande to þe Popes ordenaunce, bifore Pandolf þe legat, in al maner pingus for þe whiche he was accursed; & þat he shulde make ful restitucioñ to alle þe¹⁰ men of holy cherche and of religioun, of þe gode¹² þat he hade take of ham 20 aþeyn3 heir wille. And alle þe grete lordes of Engeland suore oppoñ a¹³ book & by þe holy dome, þat if þe Kyng wolde nouzt holde his oth, þai saide þat¹⁴ þai wolde make him¹⁵ holde hit bi strengþ. ¶ And¹⁰ þo put þe Kyng him to þe courte of Rome & to 24 þe Pope, and þo 3af vp þe reaueme of Engeland & of Irland, for him & for his heires for euermore þat shuld come after him, so þat Kyng Iohan & his heires shulde tak þo ij reauemes of þe¹⁶ Popis Hand, & shulde holde þo ij reauemes of the Pope¹⁶ as to ferme, pay- 28 ing euery 3er to þe court of Rome a þousand marc of siluer. And þo toke¹⁷ þe Kyng þe croune of his Heued, and sette him¹⁸ on his knees, and pise wordes¹⁹ saide in heryng²⁰ of alle þe²¹ grete²² lordes of Engeland: “Here y resyngn) op þe crone of²³ þe reaueme 32 of Engeland into þe Popis Hande, Innocent þe þridde, and put 24 me Holliche²⁵ in his mercy &²⁶ ordenaunce.” ¶ þo vnderfonge

¹ be D. ²⁻² sent þo O. ³ Tydyng O. ⁴ leaf 91.

⁵⁻⁵ ben done to D. to be don to O. ⁶ messagers DO. messenger R.

⁷ be DO. ⁸ come DO. ⁹ him D. hym O. ham R. ¹⁰ om. DO.

¹¹ made & swore O. ¹² godes D. goodes O. ¹³ þe O. ¹⁴ om. D

¹⁵ hem O. ¹⁶⁻¹⁶ Pope D. ¹⁷ nome O. ¹⁸ it O. ¹⁹ worde D

²⁰ audience D. ²¹ peple O. ²² gre sic D. & O. ²³ and DO

²⁴ leaf 91, back. ²⁵ holy O. ²⁶ and in his DO.

Pandolf¹ þe crone of Kyng Iohñ, and kepte hit v dayes, as for seising-takyng¹ of þo ij reames of Engeland and of Yrland, and confermede al maner¹ þinges by his chartre þat foleweþ after¹.

4 Of þe lettre obliga[to]rie¹ þat Kyng Iohñ made to þe court of Rome; wherefore þe Petrus pens bep¹ gadrad þrouz al Engeland. *Capitulo Centesimo Quinquagesimo primo.*²

8 **T**O³ alle⁴ Cristen peple þrouz-out⁵ the worlde duellyng¹, Iohñ, by þe grace of God, Kyng¹ of Engeland, gretyng to zour¹ vniuersite! and knowen⁶ þing¹ it be þat, for-asmiche as⁷ we haue greuede & offendede⁸ God & our¹ moder¹ cherche⁹ of Rome, and forasmiche as we haue nede to þe mercy of oure lord Ihesu Crist, and we may noþing so worþi offre competent satisfacciouñ to make to God & to holy cherche, but if it were our¹ owen body, as wip oure¹⁰ reames of Engeland and of Irland, Thanne, by þe grace of God,¹¹ we desireñ forto meken¹² vs for þe loue of Him þat meked Him to þe dep of þe Croice, þrouz conseil of þe noble erles & barons, we soffren¹³ and frely granten to God, and to þe Apostoilz seynt Petre & seynt Paule, & to oure moder¹ cherche of Rome, & to our¹ Holy fader þe Pope, Innocent þe þridde, & to alle þe Popis þat comeþ¹⁴ after him, al þe reame &¹⁵ patronages of cherches¹⁶ of Engeland¹⁶ and of Irland, wip alle þe appurtenances, for remissiouñ of oure synnes, and helpe & help of oure Kyn¹⁷ soules, and of all Cristen soules, so þat fro¹⁸ pis tyme afterward, we wille reseceyue & holde of oure moder che[r]che of Rome, as fee ferme, doyng¹ feaute to our¹⁹ holy fader²⁰ þe Pope, Innocent þe þridde, and to alle þe Popes þat comeþ²² after him, in²³ maner¹ abouesaide. ¶ And in presence of þe wise man Pandolf, þe Popis Suthdekne,²⁴ we makeþ²⁵ liege homage, as it were in þe Popes presence, & bifore him were; and we shul²⁶ do al maner¹ þinges²⁷ aboue-saide; and²⁸ þerefore we byndeþ²⁸ vs, and al þat comen after¹ vs, & oure heirs for-euer-more, wipouten²⁹ eny gaynsaying, to þe Pope, & eke þe ward³⁰ of

¹ ben D.² MS. has *secundo*.³ So *sic* D.⁴ MS. alle al; alle the D.⁵ þrouz-out al D.⁶ knowe D.⁷ þat DO.⁸ offende D.⁹ MS. has *cherche* of *cherche*.¹⁰ MS. has *oures*.¹¹ the holy gost D.¹² þe holy gooste O.¹³ meke D.¹⁴ offren DO.¹⁵ comen DO.¹⁶ of Engeland of O.¹⁷⁻¹⁸ om O.¹⁹ Kynes D.²⁰ from O.²¹ om. D.²² fader *sic* D.²³ leaf 92.²⁴ comen O.²⁵ in the D. in þe O.²⁶ Sudekene O.²⁷ make DO.²⁸ MS. has *shulde*, with *de* underlined for omission.²⁹ þing¹ O.³⁰⁻³¹ þerefore we bynde D. þerefore we byndeþ O.³² withoute O³³ wardes D.

cherche¹ vacaunt³. and in token² of pis ping euer forto last, we wille, conferme &³ ordeyn, pat our⁴ special rent³ of pe forsaide Reaumes, sauyn^g seynt Petrus pens, in al⁴ ping to pe moder cherche of Rome, paying by ^{3er}⁵ M⁺ mar³⁶ of siluer⁷ at ij termes of 4 pe zere, for al maner custumes pat we ⁷ shulde do to ⁷ pe forsaide Reaumes, pat is to seyn, at Mighelmesse & at ⁸ Ester⁸, pat is to ⁸ seyn,⁹ vij C mar³¹⁰ ¹¹ for Engeland¹¹, & iij C mar³¹² for Irland¹², sauyn^g to vs and to oure heires, oure³ Iustice³ and oure oper ⁸ ffraunchisis, and oper realtes pat apperteynep¹³ to¹⁴ pe crone. And alle pise pinges pat ¹⁵ bifore ben¹⁵ saide, we wille pat hit be ferme & stable wipouten ende; and to pat obligaciõn we, and alle our¹⁶ successoures & oure heires,¹⁶ in pis maner bep¹⁷ bonde, pat if we, or ¹² eny of our heires, prouz¹⁸ presumpciouñ falle¹⁹ in eny poynt azeyne pise pingus abouesaide, & he bene²⁰ warnede, & wille nouzt²¹ rízt amende him, he shal þan lese pe forsaide³ reaumes for euermore. and pat³ pis chartre of ²² obligaciouñ, & oure warant,²² for euermore ¹⁶ be ferme and Stable wipouten²³ gaynsaying¹, we shul fro pis day afterward be trewe to God & to pe ²⁴ moder⁷ cherche of Rome, and to pe Pope Innocent pe þrid²⁵, and to al pat²⁶ comeþ²⁷ after him; and pe reaumes of Engeland & of Irland¹² we shul mayntene ²⁰ trewely²⁸ in al maner poynt³ azeyn³; al maner men by oure power⁷, prouz²⁹ pe grace of God.²⁹

How pe clerkes pat werne³⁰ outlawed¹ of Engeland¹², come azeyn, & how Kyng Iohn was assoiled¹. *Capitulo Centesimo lij^o*.³¹ ²⁴

WHen pis chartre³² was made and enselede, pe Kyng Vnderfonge azeyn his crone of Pandolfes hondes, and sent anone vnto³³ pe Erchebisshop Stephen, and to al his oper clerkes and lewed men pat he hade exilede out of his³⁴ lande, pat pai ²⁸ shulde come azeyne into Engeland¹², & haue azeyn her⁷ londes & heir⁷ rentes, & pat he wolde make restituciouñ of pe godes pat he

¹ Cherche O. ² tokenyng¹ D. ³ om. D. ⁴ al maner D.
⁵ zere a O. ⁶ marc D. Mark¹ O.
⁷⁻⁷ shal do for D. schul don for O. ⁸⁻⁸ Estren for Engeland¹² O.
⁹ say D. om. O. ¹⁰ marc pat is to sayn D. ¹¹⁻¹¹ om. O.
¹² marc D. Mark¹ O. ¹³ perteyne D. pertynep⁷ O.
¹⁴ vnto O. ¹⁵⁻¹⁵ biforne be D. ¹⁶⁻¹⁶ heires and successoures D.
¹⁷ ben O. ¹⁸ prouz eny D. þurgh ony O. ¹⁹ faille D.
²⁰ be O. ²¹ no O.
²²⁻²² waraunt and our obligaciouñ D. ²³ withoute O. ²⁴ our D.
²⁵ þirde O. ²⁶ leaf 92, back. ²⁷ comen O. ²⁸ trewlich O.
²⁹⁻²⁹ godes helpe D. goddes helpe O. ³⁰ were DO.
³¹ MS. has lij^o. ³² lettre D. ³³ to D. ³⁴ him sic D.

hade ¹ take of heres,¹ azeyns her' wille. ¶ þe Kyng him-self þo, and Pandolf, & Erles & barons, went þo² vnto Wynchestre azein; þe Erchebisshop Stephen. & when he was comen,³ þe Kyng went ⁴ azeynes him, & felle adouñ vnto⁴ his feet', & saide vnto⁴ him: "faire sir, 3e bep welcomen⁵; and y crie 3ow mercy, for enchesouñ þat y haue trespassede azeyn; 3ow." ¶ þe Erchebisshop toke him vp þo in his Armes, & cussede him curteisely ofte-tymes, and after ⁸ lad him to þe dore of Seynt Swythynus cherche by þe honde, & assoilede him of þe centence, and him reconselede to God and to holy cherche; and þat was on seyn[t] Margarites day; and þe Erchebisshop anone went forto synge þe masse, and þe Kyng offred ¹² at þe masse a mark of golde. ¶ And when þe masse was done, alle þai went forto vnderfonge⁶ her' londes, wipouten⁷ eny maner' gaynesaying; and þat day þai made aĥ merþe and ioye ynow; but 3itte was nouzt þe enterdit⁸ relessede, for enchesouñ⁹ þai hade sent ¹⁶ þat þe enterdityng⁸ shulde nouzt bene vndone⁹ til þe Kyng⁸ hade made ful restituciouñ of þe godes that he¹⁰ hade take of Holy cherche, and also þat him-self shulde done¹¹ homage to þe Pope by a certeyne ligat þat he shulde sende into¹² Engeland.

²⁰ ¶ þo toke¹³ Pandolf his leue of¹⁴ þe Kyng⁸ and of þe Erchebisshop, and went azeyne vnto¹⁵ Rome. And þe Erchebisshop anone lete come bifore him prelates of holy cherche at Redyng⁸, forto trete and conseil how miche and what þai shulde¹⁶ axe of þe ²⁴ Kyng⁸ forto make restituciouñ of þe godes þat he hade take¹⁷ of ham. ¶ And þai ordeynede and saide, þat þe Kyng shulde 3eue to þe Erchebisshope iij M⁺ mar; ¹⁸ for þe wronge þat þe Kyng hade done to¹⁹ him, and also to oper clerkes ²⁰ xv M⁺ marc, by porcyons.²⁰

²⁸ and in þe same tyme Nicholas, ²¹ bishop of²¹ Tuscan, Cardynal Penitauncer' of Rome, come into Engeland prou; þe Popis commandement, þe v kalend of Ottobre, and come to Londoñ þe v None of Octobre, for enchesouñ þat Kyng Iohn, and alle þe ³² kynges þat comen after him, shulde euermore halde þe reaumes of Engeland and of Irland of God & of þe Pope, paing' to þe Pope by 3er' as²³ is aboue saide.

1—1 taken of ham D. take of hem O. ² om. D. ³ come O.

⁴ to D. ⁵ welcome O. ⁶ vndirfonge al O.

⁷ with-out D. withoute O. ⁸ Entirdytinge O.

^{9—9} om. D. þat he had sent þat þe entirdyting schuld not ben vndon O.

¹⁰ leaf 93. ¹¹ do D. ¹² vnto O. ¹³ nome DO. ¹⁴ fro O.

¹⁵ to O. ¹⁶ miȝt D. ¹⁷ taken D. ¹⁸ marc D. Mark' O. ¹⁹ vnto DO.

^{20—20} by porcions xv M⁺ marc D. by porcions xv M⁺ Mark' O.

^{21—21} om. D. ²² om. O. ²³ as it O.

How þe enterditing was vndone in Engeland; and of þe debate
pat was bituene Kyng Iohñ & þe barons of þe reaume.

¶ *Capitulo Centesimo liij*.¹

When Kyng Iohñ² hade done his² homage to þe legat pat 4
shewede him þe Popes³ lettre, pat he shulde paye to Iulyan
and 3elde a3eyn, pat was Kyng Richardes⁴ wif, þe þridde part⁴ of
þe londe of Engeland & of Irland⁴ pat he hade wipholde siþ pat
Kyng deide,—¶ when Kyng Iohñ herde þis, he was wonder' wroþ, 8
for vtterliche⁵ þe enterdityng might nouzt bene⁶ vndone til pat he
hade made gree & restitucioñ to⁷ þe forsaide Iulian of pat she⁸
axed. ¶ The legat went þo a3eyn to þe Pope⁹ after¹⁰ Cristesmasse,
and þe Kyng sent þo messagers¹¹ ouere¹² see to Iulian, pat was Kyng 12
Richardes wif, forto haue a relesse of pat she axede¹³ him. ¶ And
so hit bifelle¹⁴ pat Iulian deide anone after' Ester', and insomiche þe
Kyng was quyt of¹⁵ pat she axede; but þo, at þe feast¹⁶ of Seynt
Iohñ pat¹⁷ come next¹⁷ after', prou3 þe Popis¹⁸ commandement þe 16
enterdytyng was ferst' relessede prou3¹⁹ al Engeland þe vij day of
Iuñ;—and seuen 3ere almost²⁰ was þe londe enterditede,—and on²¹
þe morwe men ron3e,²² & songe masses prou3-out Londoñ, and so
after prou3-out²³ aH Engeland. 20

¶ And þe next 3ere after, þere bigan a grete debate bituen²⁴
Kyng Iohñ & þe lordes of Engeland, for enchesoñ pat he wolde
nou3[t] graunt þe lawes, & halde, þe²⁵ which Seint Edward had
²⁶ordeyned, and hade ben²⁶ vsede & holde vnto pat tyme pat²⁷ he 24
hade ham broken; for he wolde none²⁸ lawe holde, but dede al
þing pat him likede, & disheritede²⁹ meny men wip-outen³⁰ consent
of lordes & pirez of þe land; And he wolde haue disheritede³¹ þe
gode erle Randolf of Chestre, for encheson pat he vndername him 28
of his wickednesse. & for cause pat he dede so miche shame &

¹ MS. has liij^o. ²⁻² om. D.

³ popes struck out and Bisshopes written over in a different hand in O.

⁴⁻⁴ wyves þe iij partye O. ⁵ onliche D. ⁶ be D.

⁷ of O. ⁸ he O.

⁹ Pope atte sic D; struck out, and Bisshope written over in a different hand in O.

¹⁰ leaf 93, back. ¹¹ MS. has messagers messagers.

¹² ouere the D. ouer þe O. ¹³ axede of D. axed of O.

¹⁴ felle D. ¹⁵ of thyng^t D. of þing O. ¹⁶ MS. has ferst.

¹⁷⁻¹⁷ next come D.

¹⁸ popes struck out, and Bisshoppis written over in a different hand in O.

¹⁹ þou3 D. ²⁰ om. DO. ²¹ in O. ²² rong belles O.

²³ prou3 D. þurgh O. ²⁴ bituene D. betwen O. bitwe R.

²⁵ om. D. ²⁶⁻²⁶ made and ordeynede and D. ²⁷ and D.

²⁸ no DO. ²⁹ disherite O. ³⁰ withoute O. ³¹ disherite O.

vilony to God¹ & holy cherche, & also for he helde & hauntede his owen broperes wif¹, & lay also by meny opere wymmen, grete lordes douzters,—for he sparede no womman pat him likede forto² 4 haue,—wherfore alle þe lordes of þe lande wer³ toward³ him wonder wrop, and went⁴ wip him⁴ to Londoñ, & toke þe citee.

[*King John grants the Great Charter.*]

¶ And forto cesse pis debate and sorwe, þe Kyng¹ and þe 8 Erchebisshop, and opere grete lordes of⁵ Engeland¹, assemblede ham bifore þe fest¹ of Seynt Iohñ þe Baptiste, in a medowe bisides⁶ þe toune of Stanes pat is callede⁷ Rome⁸-mede. And þe Kyng made ham pere a chartre of ffraunchise⁹, soche as þai wolde axen; 12 & in soche maner¹⁰ þai were acordede; and pat accordement laste nouzt ful longe, for þe Kyng him-self¹¹ sone after¹¹ dede azeynes þe poyntes of þe same chartre pat he hade made. Wherfore þe moste 12 party of þe¹² lordes¹⁸ of Engeland¹⁴ assemblede ham, & bigoñ to 16 were oppoñ Kyng Iohñ, and brent his tounes & robbede his fole, & dede al þe sorwe pat þai myght¹⁵, and made ham else¹⁶ stronge as þai might¹⁷, wip aH her¹⁷ power¹⁷, & pouzt¹⁸ to dryuen¹⁸ him out of Engeland, and make Lewys, þe Kynges sone of France, Kyng¹ of 20 Engeland. ¶ And Kyng Iohan sent þo ouer¹⁹ see, and ordeynede so miche peple of Normannes & of Picard³, and of Flemynges, so pat þe lande mizt nout ham sustene, but wip miche²⁰ sorw. ¶ And among Alle pis²¹ peple pere was a Norman²² pat me callede²³ Frankes 24 of Brent²³; and pis Norman & his company sparede neyper cherche ne house of Religioñ, pat þai ne brent & robbed hit, & bare away alle pat²⁴ þai might tak¹, so pat þe land¹ was al destroiede, what²⁵ in o²⁵ side & in²⁶ pat opere. ¶ þe barons & þe²⁷ lordes þo of Enge- 28 land ordeynede amonges²⁸ ham þe best spekers & wisest men, & sent ham ouer þe¹⁹ see to Kyng Philip of Fraunce, & prayed him pat he wolde sende Lowys his sone into Engeland, to ben²⁹ Kyng of Engeland, and vnderfonge³⁰ þe crone.

¹ and to D. ² to D. ³ wip D. with O. ⁴⁻⁴ om. DO.

⁵ of the lande of D. of þe land¹ of O. ⁶ biside D.

⁷ y-Called O. ⁸ leaf 94. ⁹ ffraunchise D. ¹⁰ a maner D.

¹¹⁻¹¹ om. D. ¹²⁻¹² parte of D. ¹³ land¹ O.

¹⁴ the lande D. lordes O. ¹⁵ myght with al her power O.

¹⁶ as DO. ¹⁷⁻¹⁷ om. O. ¹⁸⁻¹⁸ dryue DO. ¹⁹ om. D.

²⁰ michel DO. ²¹ thi sic D.

²² man of Normandy D. man of Normandye O.

²³⁻²³ faukes of Brute O. ²⁴ MS. pat pat.

²⁵⁻²⁵ in that on D. on þe on O. ²⁶ on O. ²⁷ om. DO.

²⁸ among O. ²⁹ be DO ³⁰ haue D.

How Lowys, þe Kynges sone of Fraunce, come into Engeland
wip stronge¹ power¹ of peple, to ben² Kyng of Engeland.

Capitulo Centesimo liij^{to}.³

WHen Kyng Philip of Fraunce herde pis tydynges,⁴ he made 4
certeyn aliance bituene ham by her' commune eleccioñ, þat
Lowys, Kyng¹ Philippis sone of Fraunce, shuld⁵ gone⁶ wip ham
into Engeland, & dryue out Kyng¹ Iohñ of þe land. And alle þo⁷
þat were in presence of Lowis made to⁸ him homage, and bicome 8
his men.⁹ And þe barons of Engeland¹⁰ helde ham¹⁰ stille at
Londoñ, & abode¹¹ pere Lowys, þe Kyngus sone of Fraunce. And
þis was þe nexte Saturesday¹² bifore þe Ascenciouñ of our' Lord¹ þat
Lowis come into Engeland wip a¹³ stronge power¹; & þat tyme 12
Kyng Iohñ hade take alle þe castelles¹⁴ of Engeland into Aliens
hondes. ¶ And Lowys come þo to Rochestre, and bisegede þe
castel, & tok¹ hit wip strengþ, & þe þoresday in Whitson weke,¹⁵
lete honge alle þe Aliens þat were þerin. And þe þoresday þo next 16
sewyng¹, he come to Londoñ; & pere he was vnderfong wip
michel¹⁶ honour¹ of þe lordes þat aboden¹⁷ him pere; & alle to him
þai maden¹⁸ homage. ¶ And¹⁹ afterward, in þe Tywesday þo next
sewyng¹ þe¹⁹ Trinitee Sunday,²⁰ he toke þe castel of Ryegate, and 20
in þe morwe after, þe castel of Gildesford, & þe Friday²¹ þo next
sewyng¹,²¹ þe castel of Farnham; and þe Moneday next after, þe
cite of Wynchestre to him²² was 3olden²³; and in þe morwe nexte¹³
after seynt Iohñs day, þe maner¹ of Wolneseye; And þe Tiwesday 24
next after þe viij^{tas}²⁴ of Seynt Petre & seynt Poule, þai token²⁵ þe
castel of Odyham. ¶ And þe Moneday next after seynt Margaretes
day, he ordeynede him toward Beaumer,²⁶ forto bisege þe²⁷ castel;
& pere he duellede xv dayes, & might nouzt gete þe castel; & 28
þo²⁸ went he²⁹ þens, and come to Londoñ, & þe Toure to him
was 3olde.

¹ strengþ & D. a strong O.

² be O.

³ MS. has lv^{to}; D has liij^e.

⁴ tydynges O.

⁵ leaf 94, back.

⁶ go D.

⁷ om. DO.

⁸ vnto D.

⁹ men DO. man R.

¹⁰⁻¹⁰ hem held¹⁰ O.

¹¹ abiden D.

¹² Satirday O.

¹³ om. D.

¹⁴ castel D.

¹⁵ MS. weke &.

¹⁶ mych O.

¹⁷ abiden O.

¹⁸ made D.

¹⁹⁻¹⁹ on þe Tywesday next after þe D. after in þe tewsday next aftir O.

²⁰ day D.

²¹⁻²¹ nexte after D. next aftir O.

²² MS. him him.

²³ 3olde D. yolde O.

²⁴ viij O.

²⁵ toke DO.

²⁶ Bremer O.

²⁷ MS. þe þe.

²⁸ þai D.

²⁹ om. D. þey O.

¹And in þe same tyme¹ þe Pope² sent into Engeland a legate þat me callede Swalo; & of Kyng Iohnes dep. *Capitulo Centesimo lv^{to}.*³

⁴ **A**Nd in þe same tyme þe Pope⁴ sent into Englonde a legate þat me callede Swalo, and he was ⁵prest Cardinal of Rome, forto mayntene Kyng Iohnes cause azeynþ þe barons of Engeland; but þe barons hade so huge partye and help þrouþ Lowys, þe ⁸Kyngus sone of Fraunce, þat Kyng Iohn wist nouþt whider forto turne ne go.⁶ ¶ And so it bifel,⁷ þat he wold haue goñ to Nichole; and as he went piderward, he come by⁸ þe Abbay of Swyneshede,⁹ and þere he abode ij dayes. ¶ & as he satte at þe¹⁰ mete, he axede ¹²a monk of þe hous, ‘how miche a lofe was worþ, þat was sette bifore him oppon¹¹ þe table.’ & þe monk saide þat¹² ‘þe lof was worþ but an halpeny.’ “O,” quod he, “þo here is grete chepe of brede. ¶ Now,” quod þe Kyng, “and y may leue, soche a lof ¹⁶shal bene¹³ worþ xx s., or halfe zere be gone.”¹⁴ and when he hade saide þis word, michel¹⁵ he þouþt, and ofte-tyme sichede, and toke¹⁶ & ete of þe brede, & saide: “by God, þe worde þat y haue saide,¹⁷ hit shal ben¹³ soth.” ¶ þe monk þat stode bifore þe Kyng,¹⁸ for þis ²⁰word was¹⁹ ful sory in hert, and þouþt[t], raþer he wolde him-self soffre pitouse dep, & þouþt to²⁰ ordeyn þerfor somme maner remedy. ¶ And anone þe monk went to his Abbot, and was shryuen of him, and tolde þe Abbot al þat þe Kyng saide, and praiede his ²⁴Abbot forto assoile him, for he wolde zeue þe Kyng soche a wassaile þat al Engeland ²¹shal be þerof glade²¹ and ioyful. ¶ Tho went þe monk into a gardeyn, & founde a grete tode þerin, & tok²² her vp, & put here in a coppe, & ²³prickede þe tode þrouþ¹² wiþ a ²⁸broche meny tymes, til þat þe venyme come out on²⁴ eueryche²⁵ side¹² into þe coppe. and þo tok²² he¹² þe coppe, and ²⁶fellede hit wiþ god ale, & ²⁶brouþ[t] hit bifore þe Kyng, & knelyng²⁷ saide:

¹—¹ How O.

² struck out in MS.; also struck out in O. and Bisshop of Rome written over in a different hand.

³ MS. has lvj^{to}.

⁴ struck out, and Bisshope of Rome written over in a different hand in O.

⁵ leaf 95. ⁶ gon D. ⁶ gone O. ⁷ felle O. ⁸ to O.

⁹ Swynesheuede D. Swynesheued O. ¹⁰ om. O.

¹¹ on D. at O. ¹² om. D. ¹³ be DO. ¹⁴ agon O.

¹⁵ miche D. myche O. ¹⁶ nome O. ¹⁷ spoke D.

¹⁸ kyng was DO. ¹⁹ om. DO.

²⁰ is he myzt sic D. if he myghte O.

²¹—²¹ shulde be glade þerof D. shuld be glad þerof O. ²² nome O.

²³ & felled it with good ale & O. ²⁴ of D. in O. ²⁵ eche O.

²⁶—²⁶ om. O. ²⁷ knelyng & O.

“Sir,” quod he, “Wassaile! for neuer, dayes of 3our lyue,¹ dranke² 3e of soche³ a⁴ coppe.” “Bygynne, monk,” quod þe Kyng, and þe monk dranke a grete drau3t, and toke þe Kyng þe coppe; &⁵ þe Kyng⁶ drank also⁶ a grete drau3te, and sette doune þe coppe.⁴ ¶ Þe monk anone right went⁷ into þe fermory, & þere deide anon, oñ whos soule God haue mercy, Amen! & v monkes singeþ⁸ for his soule,⁹ & shal whiles¹⁰ þat¹¹ Abbay stant. ¶ The Kyng aros vp anone ful euel at ese, & commanded anon¹² to remeve þe table, 8 & axede after þe monk; and men tolde him þat he was dede, for his wombe was broken¹³ in sondre. ¶ When þe Kyng herde þis tidynges,¹⁴ he comandede forto trusse; but al it was for nou3t, for his bely biganne¹⁵ to swelle, for þe drynk þat he drank, þat he¹² deide wipin ij daies,¹⁶ þe morwe after Seynt Lukes day. ¶ And þis Kyng Iohñ hade fair childerne of his body bigeten,¹⁷ þat is to seyn, Henry his sone, þat was Kyng after his fader, & Richarde, þat¹⁸ was Erl of Cornewail, and Isabeł, þat was Emperesse of 16 Rome, and Alienore, þat was Quene of Scotland. ¶ And þis Kyng Iohñ, when he had regnede xvij 3ere v mounþes & v dayes, he deide in þe castel of Newerc, & his body was buried¹⁹ at Wynchestre. 20

Of Kyng Henry²⁰ þe þridde, þat was cronede at Gloucestre.

Capitulo Centesimo lvj^{to}.²¹

ANd after þis Kyng Iohñ, regnede Henry his sone, & was cronede at Gloucestre when he was ix 3ere olde, on seynt²⁴ Symondus day & Iude, of Swalo þe legat, þrou3 conseile of alle þe grete lordes²² of Engeland²² þat helde wip Kyng Iohñ, his fader, þat is to saien, þe¹⁸ Erl Randolf of Chestre, William, Erl Marchal, William Erl of Penbrok,²³ & William²³ Breuere,²⁴ Erl of Ferers,²⁸ Serl de Maule, baron; & alle oþere grete²⁵ lordes of Engeland helde with Lowys, þe Kynges sone of Fraunce. & anone after, when Kyng Henry was cronede, Swalo the legat helde his conseil at

¹ lif ne D. lyf ne O. ² dronk O. ³ leaf 95, back.

⁴ At the top of this page is written in faint ink, by a different [?] hand:—A lambe.

⁵ a sic D. ⁶⁻⁶ also drank D. also dranke O. ⁷ MS. went went.

⁸ syngen O. ⁹ soule specialich D. soule speciallich O.

¹⁰ while O. ¹¹ the D. þe O. ¹² om. DO. ¹³ broke O.

¹⁴ tydyng O. ¹⁵ began so O. ¹⁶ dayes after O. ¹⁷ geten O.

¹⁸ om. O. ¹⁹ y-buried O. ²⁰ Herry here, and elsewhere in O.

²¹ MS. has lvij^o. ²²⁻²² om. DO.

²³⁻²³ William þe D. William þe O. ²⁴ leaf 96. ²⁵ gete sic D.

Bristow, at Seynt Martynes fest¹; & þere wer' xj bisshopis of Engeland & of Walys, & of oþer prelates of holy cherche a¹ grete nombre, & Erles & barons, & meny knyȝtes of Engeland; and alle
4 þo þat were at þat conseil swore feaute vnto² Henry þe Kyng, þat was Kyng Iohnes sone.

¶ And anone after,³ þe ligate enterditede Walis, for enchesouñ þat þai helde with þe barons of Engeland; and also alle þo þat
8 ⁴holpen or ȝaf conseil⁴ to meve wer' aȝeyn; þe new Kyng Henry, he acursede ham; And in the bigynnyng he put in þe ⁵sentence þe⁵ Kyngus sone of Fraunce Lowys. ¶ And noþeles þe same Lowys⁶ wolde nouȝt spare forto werr' for al þat, but went anone,
12 & tok þe castel of Berkhamstede, & eke⁷ þe castel of Hertford. ¶ And fram⁸ þat day aftirward, þe barons ⁹dede miche⁹ harme þrouȝ al Engeland, and principaly þe Frenche-men þat wer' comen¹⁰ wiþ Lowys; wherfore þe grete lordes ¹¹of Engeland,¹¹ & alle þe
16 *commune* peple,¹² lete ham croice forto dryue out¹³ Lowys & his company out of Engeland. ¶ But somme of þe barons, & ek of þe Frenchemen, were gone¹⁴ to þe cite of Nichole, & tok¹⁵ ¹⁶þe Cite,¹⁶ & helde hit to Kyng¹ Lowys profite. But þider' come¹⁷ Kyng
20 Henryes¹⁸ men wiþ ¹⁹a grete¹⁹ power', þat is to seyne, þe Erl Randolf of Chestre, and William Erl Marchal, & William de la Bruer', Erl of Ferers, & meny oþer lordes wiþ ham, & ȝaf²⁰ Bataile ²¹vnto Lowyse men. ¶ And þere was slayn þe Erl of Perches; and
24 Lowys men ²²were þere²² foule descomfitede²³; and þere was taken²⁴ Serl, Erl of Wynchestre, & Humfray de Bouñ, Erl of²⁵ Herford, & Robert, þe sone of Walter; & meny oþer þat hade bigonne werr' aȝeyn; þe Kyng¹ þere were taken,²⁶ and lad to²⁷ Kyng Henry ²⁸þat was²⁸ Kyng Iohnes [son]. ¶ When þe tydyng of þis scomfiture come vnto² Lowys, he remevede þens, & went²⁹ vnto Londoñ, and lete shette þe ȝates fast' of þe citee. ¶ And anone after', þe Kyng sent to³⁰ þe³¹ burgeys of Londoñ, þat þai shulde ȝelde ham
32 vnto him, & þe citee also, and he wolde ham graunt alle þe

¹ om. D. ² to D. ³ afte D. ^{4—4} ȝaf conseil and halpen D.

^{5—5} om. D. ⁶ MS. has Lowys Lowys. ⁷ also D. ⁸ fro D.

^{9—9} de somiche sic D. dede so myche O. ¹⁰ Come O. ^{11—11} om. DO.

¹² peple of Engeland' D. peple of Engeland' O. ¹³ om. O.

¹⁴ go O. ¹⁵ token O. ^{16—16} it D. ¹⁷ Comen O.

¹⁸ Henryes men D. Herryes men O. Henryes R.

^{19—19} MS. has a grete a grete. ²⁰ ȝeuen O. ²¹ leaf 96, back.

^{22—22} þere were O. ²³ scomfited' O. ²⁴ tak D. take O.

²⁵ MS. has of of. ²⁶ tak D. ²⁷ vnto DO. ^{28—28} om. DO

²⁹ come D. ³⁰ vn-to O.

³¹ MS. has þe bisshop, with bisshop underlined for omission.

Fraunchises¹ þat² þai were wont forto haue, & wolde conferme ham by his³ new chartr⁴ vnder⁵ his grete sele. ¶ And in the same tyme a gret Lorde, þat me callede Eustace þe monk⁶, come out of Fraunce wip a grete company of Lordes, & wolde haue come 4 into Engeland forto haue holp Lowys, þe Kyngus sone of Fraunce. ¶ But Hubert of Burgh⁵ and⁶ þe v portes, wip viij shippis, & no mo, mette wip ham in þe hye see, and assailede ham egrely, & ouercome ham þrouz strengþ, and smyten of Eustace-þe-monkes 8 heuede,⁷ & token also x grete Lordes of Fraunce, and put ham into prisouñ, & quellede almost alle þe men þat comen⁸ wip⁹ ham; and anone drenchede¹⁰ þe shippis in þe see.

How Lowys turned azeyn into Fraunce; and of þe confirm- 12
aciouñ of Kyng Iohñes chartre. ¶ *Capitulo Centesimo* 1
*Septimo.*¹¹

WHen Lowys herd þis tydynges,¹² he drade sore to ben¹³ dede and loste, and lete ordeyne, & spok¹⁴ bituene þe Kyng 16 and Lowys¹⁵ by þe legat Swalo, and þoruþ þe Erche¹⁶bisshop of Kaunterbery, and þrouz¹⁷ opere grete lordes, þat alle the prisoners of¹⁸ þat one halfe and of¹⁸ þat oper shulde bene¹⁹ delyuerede, & gone²⁰ quit¹, and Lowys him-self shulde haue for his costages²¹ a 20 M¹ ti²¹ of siluer, & shulde gone out of Engeland, and come neuer perin azeyne. and in þis maner¹ was þe accord made bituene²² Kyng Henry & Lewys. And þo was Lowys assoilede of þe Popis²³ legat þat me²⁴ callede Swalo, of þe sentence þat he was in, and þe barouns 24 of Engeland also. ¶ And after þis, Kyng Henry & Swalo þe legat, & Lowys, went vnto Mertoñ; and pere was þe pees confermede, & bituen²⁵ ham ordeynede. and afterward Lowys went fro þens vnto Londoñ, & tok²⁶ his leue, & was brouzt wip miche²⁷ honoure at 28 þe²⁸ see wip þe Erchebisshop of Kaunterbery & wip opere bisshoppis, and also wip erles and²⁹ barons; and so went Lowys into Fraunce.

¹ fraunchise D. ² þat euere O. ³ his gret DO.

⁴ Chartre and D. ⁵ Brugh DO. ⁶ in O. ⁷ heed^d O. ⁸ come O.

⁹ MS. has wip wip, and the second wip is underlined for omission.

¹⁰ drenched aft O. ¹¹ MS. has Octauo. ¹² tidynge O. ¹³ be O.

¹⁴ speke O. ¹⁵ him D. ¹⁶ leaf 97. ¹⁷ om. D. ¹⁸ on D.

¹⁹ be DO. ²⁰ go O.

²¹—²¹ an þousande pounce D. a þousand^d pound^d O.

²² bituene D. betwene O. bitwe R.

²³ Popes struck out, and bisshope of Rome written over in a different hand

in O.

²⁴ men D. ²⁵ betwen O. bitue R. ²⁶ nome O. ²⁷ michel D.

²⁸ om. O. ²⁹ and with D.

¶ And aftirward þe kyng & þe Erchebisshope, & Erles & barons, assembled ham at Londoñ, at Michelmasse ¹ þat next þo sewede,¹ & helde *pere parlement.*² & *pere* were þo renewede alle þe Fraunchises þat Kyng Iohñ hade³ grauntede at Romemedede; and Kyng Henry þo confermede ham by his chartre, þe which 3itte bep holden prou3-out⁴ Engeland. ¶ And in þat tyme þe Kyng toke of euery ploughe of ⁵ londe ij s; and Hubert of Burgh⁶ was made þo chief Iustice of⁷ Engeland. ¶ And þis was in⁸ þe iij zere of Kyng Henryes regne; & in þe same zere was ⁹seynt Thomas⁹ of Kanterbery translatede þe ¹⁰ zere after his martredome.¹¹ ¶ And after, it was ordeynede by alle þe Lordes of Engeland, þat alle Aliens shulde gone out of Engeland, & come nomore perin.

And þe Kyng¹² þo toke¹² alle þe castelles into his honde, þat ¹³ Kyng Iohn his fader hade zeue & taken¹⁴ vnto Aliens forto kepe, þat helde wip him. ¶ But þe prout ¹⁵ Frankes of Brent,¹⁵ Richely lete arraie his ¹⁶ castel of Bedford, whiche he had of þe Kyngus¹⁷ 3ifte Iohñ¹⁸; & he¹⁹ helde þat castel azeyns Kyng Henryes wille wip might and strengþ. ¶ And the Kyng come pider wip a streng power, & biseged þe castel. And þe Erchebisshop ²⁰ Stephen of Langetoñ come to þe Kyng²⁰ wip a faire company of kny3t3,²¹ him forto helpe; and fra þe Ascenciouñ vnto þe Assumpcion of our Lady, laste þe sege: & þo was þe castel wonne & tak, and þe Kyng lete honge aH þo þat were wipin²² þe castel, þat²³ wip her gode wille ²⁴ helde þe castel azeyn3 þe Kyng,²⁴ þat is ²⁵ forto seyn, foure score²⁵ men. ¶ And þo afterward Fra[n]kes²⁶ himself was fonde in a cherche of Couentre; and *pere* he forsuore al Engeland wip miche shame, and went²⁷ þo azeyn into his owen contre.

¶ And whiles þat Kyng Henry regned, Edmund of Abyndoñ, þat was tresorer of Salesbury, was consacrede²⁸ Erchebisshop of

¹—¹ þo next sewyng¹ D. þat next þo Come sewyng¹ O.

² a parlement DO. ³ om. O. ⁴ prou3-out¹ al D. þurgh-out al O.

⁵ om. DO. ⁶ Brugh O. ⁷ of al DO. ⁸ om. DO.

⁹—⁹ O. has seynt struck out, and Beket written after Thomas in a different hand.

¹⁰ fiftipe O. ¹¹ MS. has martredomo. ¹²—¹² nome þo O.

¹³ leaf 97, back. ¹⁴ tak D. ¹⁵—¹⁵ Faukes of Brut O. ¹⁶ the D.

¹⁷ kyng¹⁷ D. ¹⁸ Iohn his fadir O. ¹⁹ om. D.

²⁰—²⁰ of Kaunterbury D. of Caunterbury Maister Stephene of Langeton O.

²¹ kny3t3 come to the kyng D. knyghtes come to þo kyng O.

²² went into O. ²³ and D. om. O.

²⁴—²⁴ azeynes him hit held D. for-to hold¹ þe Castel O.

²⁵—²⁵ for seyn iij sic O. ²⁶ faukes O. ²⁷ MS. went went.

²⁸ Sacrede D. Sacred¹ O.

Kanterbery. And þis Kyng Henry sent ouer¹ see vnto þe Erle of Prouince, þat he shulde sende him his douzter into Engeland, þat me called Alienore, & he wolde wedde her. And so she come into Engeland after Cristes-masse,² and in þe morwe³ after seynt 4 Hillary, þe Erchebisshoþ' Edmunde⁴ spousede ham to-gedre⁵ att Kaunterbery; and at þe viij⁶ of seynt Hillary she was crounede at Westmynstre wip miche solempnite; & pere was a swete sight bituene ham, þat is to seyn, Edmund, þat was next Kyng¹ after 8 him, his broþer⁷, ⁷folour⁸ of curtessi and of Larges, and Margaret, þat was afterward Quene of Scotland, & Beatrice, þat was afterward Countesse of Britaign, & Katerine, þat deide maide in religioun.

Of þe quinzime of godes þat were granted for þe new charters; 12
& of þe puruyance of⁹ Oxenford. *Capitulo ¶ C^o lvij.*¹⁰

ANd þus hit bifelle¹¹ þat þe lordes of Engeland wolde haue somme addicions mo in the Chartre of Fraunchises þat þai hade of þe Kyng, & spoken þus bituene¹² ham; & þe Kyng 16 grauntede¹³ ham alle her' axing, and made to ham ij Chartres: þat on is callede 'þe grete¹⁴ Chartre of Fraunchises' & þat oper is callede 'þe Chartre of þe¹⁵ Forest'; and for þe grante of pise¹⁶ chartres, prelates, Erles and barons, & alle þe communes of Enge- 20 land, 3af to þe Kyng¹⁷ M^t mar³¹⁸ of siluer.

¶ When Kyng Henry hade bene¹⁹ Kyng xliij 3ere, þat same 3ere he and²⁰ his lordes, Erles, and barouns of þe reaume, went to Oxenford, & ordeynede a lawe in emendement²¹ of þe reaume, and²² suore 24 þe Kyng him-self, & after, alle þe lordes of þe reaume, þat þai wolde holde þat statute²³ euermore; and who þat it²⁴ brak shulde bene¹⁹ dede. ¶ But þe secunde 3er' after þat ordenance, þe Kyng, þrouz conseile of Sire Edward his sone, & of Richard his broþer, þat was 28 Erl of Cornwail, & also of opere, repentede him of þat ope þat he hade made forto holde þat lawe & ordynance, and sent to þe court of Rome to bene assoilede of pat oth þat he hade made. ¶ And in þat 3ere next comen²⁵ after, was²⁶ grete derp of corne in Engeland, 32

¹ ouer þe O.² Cristemesse O.³ morne D.⁴ om. D.⁵ togederes D.⁶ viijtas D.⁷ leaf 98.⁸ floure DO.⁹ om. O.¹⁰ C lvij^o O.¹¹ felle O.¹² bitue D.¹³ grantede to D.¹⁴ MS. has grete þe, with þe underlined for omission.¹⁵ of þe O. of R.¹⁶ pise ij D. þese ij O.¹⁷ kyng a O.¹⁸ Mark' O.¹⁹ be O.²⁰ & aft O.²¹ amendement O.²² and ferst DO.²³ statute for D. statut for O.²⁴ ham D. hem O.²⁵ was the D. was þe O.²⁶ comyng' D. commynge O.

for a quarter of¹ whete was worp xxiiij s,² & þe pore peple ete netles for hunger, and opere wedes; & ³deide meny M^t⁴ for defaute⁵ of mete.

4 ¶ And in þe xlvij zere of Kyng Henries regne, biganne werr and debate bituene him and his lordes, fo[r] enchesouñ þat he ⁶hade broken þe couenauntez⁶ þat were made bituene ham at Oxenford. ¶ And in þat⁷ same zer^t, in Lent, was þe ⁸castel of 8 Notyngnam⁸ tak, and þe folc slayne þat were þerin, for enchesouñ þat þai hade ordeyned wilde fire forto haue brent þe citee of London.

¶ And in the morwe⁹ of May þat come next after, oppoñ seynt Pancras day, was the batail at Lewes, þat is to seyne,¹⁰ þe Wednesday bfore seynt ¹¹Dunstanus day¹¹; and¹² þere was tak, Kyng Henry ¹³him-self^t, & ¹³Sire Edward ¹⁴his sone, & Sire¹⁴ Richard, Erl of Cornwail, & meny¹⁵ opere lordes. ¶ And in þat same zere next sewyng^t, Sire Edward, þe Kynges sone, brak out of 16 þe¹ ward of Sire Symond^t of Mountford^t, Erl of Leicestre, at Hereford,¹⁶ and went to þe barons of þe Marche; and þai vnderfong^t him wip michel¹⁷ honour. ¶ And in þe same tyme Gilbert of Clare,¹⁸ Erl of Gloucestre, þat was in þe ward also of þe forsaide Symond^t, 20 þrouz þe commandement of Kyng Henry, þat went fram him in¹⁹ grete wrap,²⁰ for enchesouñ þat he saide þat þe forsaide Gilbert was a fool in his conseile, wherfore he ordeyned him²¹ so, & helde wip Kyng Henry. ¶ And þe ²²Saturesday next²² after þe middes of 24 August^t,²³ Sir Edward, þe Kyngus sone, descomfitede Sire Symond^t de²⁴ Mountford^t at Kemworp; but þe grete lordes þat were þere wip him wer taken, þat is to seyn, Baldewyne Wake, William of Mounchesye,²⁵ and meny oper grete lordes: and þe Tywesday next after, 28 was þe bataile ²⁶done at²⁶ Euesham; & þere was quellede Sire Symond de²⁴ Mountford, Hughe þe Spenser^t, and Mountford, þat was Rauf Bassetz²⁷ fader of Dratton, & oper meny grete Lordes. ¶ And when pis batail was doñ, alle þe¹ gentiles þat had be²⁸ wip þe

¹ om. D. ² shilynges O. ³ leaf 98, back. ⁴ þousand O.

⁵ faute D.

⁶⁻⁶ wolde haue broke the couaunt D. had^t broke þ^e Couenauntes O.

⁷ þe O. ⁸⁻⁸ toune of Northampton D. Toun of Northampton O.

⁹ monthe D. monþe O. ¹⁰ say D. ¹¹⁻¹¹ Dunstaand sic D.

¹² MS. has bfore seynt and, with bfore seynt underlined for omission.

¹³⁻¹³ and his sone D. ¹⁴⁻¹⁴ and D. his sone & O. ¹⁵ mey sic D]

¹⁶ Herford^t DO. ¹⁷ mych O. ¹⁸ Clarence DO.

¹⁹ wip D. with O. ²⁰ hert^t D. herte O.

²¹ him afterward^t D. hym afterward^t O. ²²⁻²² Satirday O.

²³ Aust sic O. ²⁴ of D. ²⁵ Monchensy O. ²⁶⁻²⁶ of D.

²⁷ leaf 99. ²⁸ bene D. ben O.

Erl Symond, were disheritede; & ¹pai ordeyned¹ ham togedres,² and dede miche harme to³ al þe land, for þai destroyede her' enemys in al þat þai might.

¶ Of þe sege of Kemworþ; & how þe gentilmen werr' dis-⁴ heritede, prouþ conseil⁴ of lordes of þe reaume of Engeland⁴; & how þai comen⁵ aþeyn,⁴ & had her' landes.⁴
Capitulo Centesimo lix^{no}.

ANd in þe 3er' next⁶ sewyng', in May, ferst⁶ day bifore þe fest⁸ of Seynt Dunstan, was bataile and scomfiture at Chesterfeld, of ham þat were disheritede; & þere meny of ham were quellede; and Robert, Erl of⁷ Ferers, þere was take, and also Baldewyne Wake; & Iohn de la Haye, wip miche⁸ sorwe scaped pens. and¹² in⁹ Seynt Iohnes Eve¹⁰ þo next sewyng', bigan þe sege of þe castel of Kemworth¹¹; and þe sege¹² laste to¹² Seint Thomas Eve¹³ þe Postoil, in whiche day Sir' Hughe Hastyngus¹⁴ had þe castel forto kep, þat 3elde vp þe castel vnto¹⁵ þe Kyng' in þis maner', þat him-¹⁶ self and alle opere þat were wipin þe castel shulde haue her lif and lyme, and as¹⁶ miche þing as þai hade þerin, boþe hors & herneys, and foure dayes of¹⁷ respite forto delyuer' elene¹⁸ þe castel of hamself, & of al maner¹⁹ þing þat þai hade wipin þe castel; & so þai²⁰ went fram þe castel, and þe kyng & his men went þo into þe castel. ¶ and Sir' Symond þe Mounford þe 3onge,²⁰ and þe Countesse his moder, were fledde ouer þe²¹ see into Fraunce, and þere helde ham as peple þat were exilede out of Engeland²² for²³ euermore. ¶ And²⁴ sone after hit was ordeyned by the Legat Octoboñ, & by²⁴ opere grete lordes²⁵ of Engeland,²⁵ þe wisest of²⁶ þe land,²⁶ þat alle þo þat hade bene²⁷ aþeyns þe Kyng', & wer disheritede, shulde haue aþeyn her' londes, and by greuous ransoun,²⁸ after þat it was ordeyned; ²⁸ and þus þai were accorded wip þe Kyng, þo was pees criede prouþ al Engeland; and þus þe werr' was endede.

And when þis was done, þe legat toke²⁹ his leue at³⁰ þe Kyng',

¹⁻¹ gadered D. ² to-geder' D. to-gidere O. ³ til D.

⁴⁻⁴ om. O. ⁵ come DO.

⁶⁻⁶ comyng' þe iiij D. Comynge in Maij þe ferþe D.

⁷ o D. ⁸ michel D. ⁹ on D.

¹⁰ eve the Baptist D. Eue þe⁹ baptist O. ¹¹ Kenilworthe O.

¹²⁻¹² lasted' til O. ¹³ day O. ¹⁴ Hastyng' DO. ¹⁵ to D.

¹⁶ om. D. ¹⁷ or D. ¹⁸ clenliche D. clenlich O. ¹⁹ opere D.

²⁰ 3onger D. yonger O. ²¹ om. DO. ²² leaf 99, back.

²³ A lambe written in the margin at the head of this page, in faint ink.

²⁴ om. O. ²⁵⁻²⁵ om. DO. ²⁶⁻²⁶ Engeland' D. Engeland' O.

²⁷ be O. ²⁸ ransons D. ²⁹ nome DO. ³⁰ of D.

& of¹ the Quene, & of alle þe grete lordes of Engeland, & went þo to Rome, þe lv² 3ere of Kyng Henryes regne. ¶ And³ Edward, Kyng Iohnes sone of Britaigne, Iohn Vessy, Thomas of Clare, 4 Roger of Clifford, Othus Grauntsoñ,⁴ Robert le Brus, Iohn of Verdoñ, & meny oþer lordes of Engeland & of byzende þe see, token her way toward þe Holy Lond⁵; and þe³ Kyng Henry deide in þe mene-tyme at Westminster, ⁵when he hade ben Kyng¹ lv 3er⁸ & ix⁶ wokes,⁵ on⁷ seynt Edmundus day, þe Erchebisshop of Kaunterbery; and he¹ was enterede ⁵at Westminster⁵ on seynt Edmundes day, þe Kyng,⁸ ¶ In the 3er¹ of⁹ Incarnacioun of oure Lord Ihesu Crist¹ M¹ CC lxxij.

12 ¹⁰Prophecie of Merlyn¹⁰ of Kyng Henry, expounede, þat was Kyng Iohnes sone. ¶ *Capitulo* ¶ *Centesimo lx^{mo}*.

A Nd of pis Kyng Henry, propheciede Merlyn, & said þat ‘a lombe shulde come out of Wynchestre in þe 3ere of Incar- 16 nacioun of our Lord¹¹ M¹ CC &³ xvj, wiþ trew lippis, and holynesse wryten in his hert.’ And he saide sop, for þe gode ¹²Henry þe Kyng¹² was born¹³ ¹⁴in Wynchestre in þe 3ere abouesaide, and he spake¹⁵ gode wordes & swet, and was an holy man, and of god 20 conscience. ¶ And Merlin said þat ‘pis Henry shulde make þe fairest place of¹⁶ [the] world, ¹⁷þe whiche¹⁷ in his tyme shulde nouzt ¹⁸fulliche bene¹⁸ endede’; and he saide sop, for he made þe newe cherche¹⁹ of þe Abbay of seynt ²⁰Petre of²⁰ Westminster, þat is 24 fairer¹ of sight þan eny²¹ cherch þat men knoweþ²² prouþ al Cristen- dome; but Kyng Henry deide er þat were were ful²³ made, & þat was grete harme. ¶ And 3itte saide Merlyn, þat ‘pis Lambe shulde haue pees þe most tyme of his regne’; and he saide ful sop, for he 28 was ne[uer] annoiede prouþ²⁴ werr¹, ne disesede in no maner¹ wise, til a litel bifore his dep. ¶ And 3itte saide Merlin more in his prophecie, þat ‘in þe regne & ende of þe forsaide lambe, a wolf of a straunge²⁵ land¹ shulde do²⁶ him grete²⁷ harme prouþ his werr¹; and þat he

¹ om. O. ² fyve & fyfty O. ³ om. D. ⁴ of Graunstoñ O.

⁵⁻⁵ om. O. ⁶ xix D. ⁷ in D.

⁸ kyng and had¹ regned¹ lv 3eer & xix wokes O. ⁹ of the D.

¹⁰⁻¹⁰ And of Merlynus prophecie D. ¹¹ lorde Ihesu crist¹ D.

¹²⁻¹² kyng Henry D. ¹³ om. D. bore O. ¹⁴ leaf 100.

¹⁵ MS. has spakek. ¹⁶ of al D. ¹⁷⁻¹⁷ þat DO.

¹⁸⁻¹⁸ bene ful D. be ful O. ¹⁹ werk¹ D. werke O.

²⁰⁻²⁰ Petrus cherche at D. Petris Chirche at O.

²¹ eny oþere D. eny other O. ²² knowen O. ²³ fully DO.

²⁴ with D. ²⁵ stronge O. ²⁶ done O. ²⁷ miche D.

shulde at þe last be¹ maistre prou3 helpe of a reede ffox, þat shulde come oute of þe Northwest, and shulde him ouercome; & ²þat he² shulde dryue him vnto þe water': and þat prophecie ful wel was knowe, for wipin a litel tyme or þe Kyng deide, Symond^t of 4 Mountford^t, Erl of Leicestre, þat was bore in Fraunce, ³bigonne a3eyn³ him stronge werre; prou3 whiche doyng, meny a gode bachiler was shent and dede and disheritede. ¶ And when Kyng Henry hade þe vittori at Euesham, & Symond^t þe Erl was slayn 8 prou3 helpe & myght of Gilbert of Clare, Erl of Glou⁴cestre, þat Was in Kepyng ²and ward² of þe forsaide Symund^t, prou3 ordenance of Kyng Henry, þat went a3eyn to þe Kyng wip miche power, wherfore þe forsaide Symund^t was shent; and þat was grete harme 12 to þe communes of Engeland, þat so gode a man was shent for trup, & deide in charite, and for þe commune profite of þe same folc; and perfor Almighty God, ⁵for him hap sipennus⁵ shewede meny faire⁶ miracle to diuerse men and wýmmen, of þe sikenesse and 16 disesse þat þai haue had, for þe loue of him.

¶ And Merlyn also tolde ²& saide² in his prophesie, þat 'after þat tyme þe lambe shulde leue no⁷ while; and þan his sede shulde be⁸ in straunge land wip-out⁹ pasture'; and he said soþ, for Kyng 20 Henry leuede no while after þat¹⁰ Symund^t Mountford was ded, ¹¹þat Kyng Henry ne¹¹ deide anone after him. ¶ And in þe mene-tyme, Sir Edward his sone, þat was þe best knyzt of þe world of honour,¹² was þo in the Holy Land, and gete pere¹³ Acres. ¶ And 24 in [that] contre he bigate in¹⁴ Dame Alianore his wif, Iohne of Acres his doughter, þat aftirward was countesse of Gloucestre. And he made in þe Holy Land soche a viage, þat alle þe world spok¹⁵ of his¹⁶ knyghthode, & euery man drade him, hye and lowe, 28 prou3-out¹⁷ al Cristendome, as þe s[t]ory ¹⁸of him¹⁸ ¹⁹telleþ, as¹⁹ afterward^t 3e shul here more openly. ¶ And ²⁰fram the tyme þat²⁰ Kyng Henry deide, til þat Sire Edward was croned Kyng, alle þe gret Lordes of Engeland were as faderles children, wipout²¹ eny 32 socour þat ham might mayntene and ²²gouerne, and²² defende a3eyn³ her dedeliche²³ enemys.

¹ MS. be be. ²⁻² om. D. ³⁻³ began a3en O. ⁴ leaf 100, back.

⁵⁻⁵ hap sipens for him D. had for hym sethenes O.

⁶ a faire D. a fayre O. ⁷ non D. ⁸ ben O. ⁹ withouten D.

¹⁰ when O. ¹¹⁻¹¹ for he D. ¹² honour and D. ¹³ om. D.

¹⁴ on D. ¹⁵ spak D. ¹⁶ his worpinesse and D. his vyage & O

¹⁷ prou3 D. ¹⁸⁻¹⁸ om. O. ¹⁹⁻¹⁹ telles and D.

²⁰⁻²⁰ fro the tyme þat D. fram þe tyme þat O. fram R.

²¹ wipouten D. ²²⁻²² om. D. ²³ dedly O.

¶ Of Kyng^r Edward, þat was Kyng^r Henrie; sone. *Capitulo*
[Centesimo] lx¹ primo.

² **A** Nd after^r þis Kyng Henry, regned his sone Edward, þe
4 **w**orthiest knyght³ of ⁴þe worlde,⁴ of honour, for Godes
grace was in him, for he hade þe vittorie of his enemys. And
as sone as Kyng Henry deide, he come to Londoñ wip a faire com-
pany of prelates, &⁵ of Erles & barons; & al maner men dede him
8 michelle⁶ honour; for in euery place pere⁷ Sir Edward rode in
Londoñ, þe stretes wer^r couered ouer his heued⁸ wip riche clopes of
silk, ⁹wit[h] tapitz of⁹ riche coueryng^r. ¶ And for ioie of his
comyng, þe noble burgeys of þe cite¹⁰ of Londoñ¹⁰ cast out at¹¹ her^r
12 wyndowes, golde and siluer handes-ful,¹² in¹³ tokenyng of loue and
of⁵ worship, seruices & reuerence; ¶ And out of þe condit in¹⁴
Chepe ran reed¹⁵ wyne & white,¹⁶ as stremes dop¹⁷ of water; and
euery man¹⁸ might¹⁹ drynk þerof²⁰ at her^r owen wille. ¶ And þis
16 Kyng Edward was cronede and annointede as right heire of Enge-
land with michel⁶ honoure; and after masse þe Kyng went into his
palice, forto halde a real²¹ fest amonges²² ham þat him had done
honour. ¶ And when he was sette vnto his mete, the Kyng^r Alis-
20 ander^r of Scotland come forto done him honour²³ and reuerence wip
a queyntise²⁴: an hundred Knyghte;²⁵ wip him wel horsede and
arraiede; & when þai were light done²⁶ of her^r stedes, þai lete ham
goo whider²⁷ þai wolde; & þai²⁸ þat might tak ham, tok ham²⁹ at
24 her^r owen wille, wipout eny chalange. ¶ And afterward co[me] Sir^r
Symond^r, Kyng Edwardus broþer, a curteise Knyght, and a³⁰ gentil
of renouñ, and þe Erl of Cornewaile & þe Erl of Gloucestre; and
after ham come þe Erl of^r ³¹Penbrok and þe Erl of^r Garrein; and
28 eche of ³²ham by him-self³² lade in ³³his hond³³ an³⁴ hundred
knyghte; gayliche³⁵ disgisede in her^r Armes. ¶ And wen þai were
light of her^r horse,³⁶ þai³⁷ lete ham go³⁸ whider þat ham liked; and

¹ lxxx sic O. ² leaf 101. ³ MS. has kynght^r.
⁴⁻⁴ al the worlde D. al þ^r world O. þe worde R. ⁵ om. D.
⁶ mych O. ⁷ þer þat O. ⁸ heed O.
⁹⁻⁹ of tapytz and with D. of tapites & with O. ¹⁰⁻¹⁰ om. DO.
¹¹ of O. ¹² handfuht O. ¹³ in DO. & R. ¹⁴ of O.
¹⁵ white D. whit O. ¹⁶ rede D. reed^r O. ¹⁷ done D.
¹⁸ man therof D. ¹⁹ myght þerof O. ²⁰ om. DO. ²¹ riatt O.
²² among D. ²³ seruice O. ²⁴ queyntise and O. ²⁵ Knyzt D.
²⁶ adoun D. adon O. ²⁷ whider^r þat DO. ²⁸ who D. ho O.
²⁹ tok^r ham D. toke hem O. tok R. ³⁰ om. O. ³¹ leaf 101, back.
³²⁻³² herself O. ³³⁻³³ her^r hondes D. here hand^r O.
³⁴ a O. ³⁵ gaylist O. ³⁶ horses O. ³⁷ and DO.
³⁸ gon O.

who þat might ham take, holde¹ ham stille, with-outen² eny lette. ¶ And when al þis was done, Kyng Edward dede his diligence and his might forto emende³ and redresse þe wrongus⁴ of þe reame⁴ in þe beste maner þat he might, to the honour of God & holy cherche, ⁴ and to mayntene his honour, and to amende þe noyaunce of þe commune peple.

How Ydoyne, þat was Lewelynus douzter, Pri e of Walis, & Aymer⁵ þat was þe Erles broþer⁵ Mounford, wer taken⁶ 8 in þe see. Capitulo Centesimo lxij.⁷

THe ferst 3ere after⁸ þat Kyng Edward was cronede, Lewelyn, Prince of Walys, sent into Fraunce to þe Erl Mountford þat,⁹ prou3 conseile of his frendes, þe Erl shulde wedde his douzter. ¹² And þe Erl þo aviseded him of¹⁰ þis þing¹, and sent a3ein to Lewelyn, & saide þat he wolde send after¹ his douzter. And so he sent Aymer¹, his broþer, after þe damisel. And Lewelyn arraiede shippis for his doughter and for Sir¹ Aymer¹, & for her¹ faire company þat ¹⁶ shulde wende wiþ her¹. And þis Lewelyn dede grete wronge, for hit was couenant þat he shulde 3eue his doughter to no maner man wiþouten¹¹ consel and consent of Kyng Edward. ¶ And so hit bifelle,¹² þat a burgeys of¹³ Bristow come in þe see wiþ wyn lade,¹⁴ ²⁰ and mette ham, & ¹⁵ ham toke¹⁵ wiþ might & power¹⁶; and anone þe bu[r]geys sent ham to þe Kyng¹. ¶ And when Lewelyn herde this ¹⁷ tydynges,¹⁸ he Was Wonder¹ Wroþ & eke sorweful, and ¹⁹ bigon þo¹⁹ forto werre oppoñ Kyng Edward, & dede miche harme vnto²⁰ ²⁴ Engliſſhe-men, and bete adoune þe Kyngus castelles,²¹ & biganne fast to destroi Kyng Edwardes lande.²² ¶ And when tydyngus²³ come to Kyng Edward of þis þing¹, he went into Walys; and so miche he dede, by²⁴ Godes grace & his grete power¹, þat he drof ²⁸ Lewelyn vnto miche meschif, þat he fleye al maner strengþ, and come & 3elde him to Kyng Edward, and 3af him l M¹ mar3²⁵ of siluer forto haue pees, and toke þe damisel & al his⁹ heritage, and made an obligacion vnto²⁶ Kyng Edward, and²⁶ come to his ³² pa[r]lament ij tymes of þe 3ere.

¹ haue O. ² wiþout D. withoute O.

³ amende the realme D. amende þ^o reame O. ⁴⁻⁴ om. DO.

⁵ broþer of DO. ⁶ take O. ⁷ lxj^{mo} D. lxix R. ⁸ afterward O.

⁹ om. D. ¹⁰ oñ D. vpon O. ¹¹ wiþout D. withoute O.

¹² felle DO. ¹³ in D. ¹⁴ late O. ¹⁵⁻¹⁵ toke hem O.

¹⁶ strengthe O. ¹⁷ leaf 102. ¹⁸ tidyng O. ¹⁹⁻¹⁹ gan D. gan þ^o O.

²⁰ vnto the D. vnto þ^o O. ²¹ Castell O. ²² landes O.

²³ tiding¹ D. tydyng¹ O. ²⁴ þurgh O. ²⁵ Mark¹ O. ²⁶ to DO.

¶ And þe¹ secunde ȝere after þat Kyng Edward was cronede, he helde a general parlament at Westminster, and þere he made þe statutes for² defaut of lawe, by commune assent of al his baronage.
 4 And at Ester nexte sewyng³, þe Kyng sent by his lettre to Lewelyn, Prince of Walis, þat he shulde come to³ parlement for his londes⁴ and for his holdyng in Walys, as þe strengþ of þe lettre obligatorie witnessede. ¶ þo Lewelyn hade scorn and despite of þe Kynges
 8 commandement; & for pur wraþ biganne aȝeyn forto⁵ werr' opon Kyng Edward, & destroied⁶ [his lands]. ¶ And ⁷when Kyng Edward⁷ herd þis tydynges,⁸ he was⁹ wonder¹⁰ wroþ toward¹¹ Lewelyn, & in haste assembled¹² his peple, and went him toward
 12 Walys, and werred so oppoñ Lewelyn þe prince, til þat he hade¹² brouȝt him in miche sorw and disese; ¶ And Lewelyn saw that his defence myght nouȝt¹³ availe, and come aȝeyne, & ¹⁴ȝelde him to þe Kyngus¹⁵ grace, and criede him mercy, and Longe tyme knelede
 16 bifore þe Kynges feete. ¶ The Kyng hað of him pite, and commaundede him forto arise; and for his mekenesse forȝaf him his wraþ, and to him saide, ¹⁶that 'if¹⁶ he toke on amys aȝeyns¹⁷ him anoþer tyme, þat he wolde destroie him for euer¹⁸-more.' ¶ Dauid,
 20 þat was Lewelynus broþer, ¹⁸duellede þat¹⁹ same tyme¹⁸ wiþ²⁰ Kyng Edward, & was a felle man & a sotil, & enuyous, & ferre castyng¹, and miche tresoun þouȝt¹, and euermore helde him stille for[to] wete & asprie þe Kynges wille, and euermore made god semblaunt¹, and
 24 semede so trew þat no man myght perceyue his falsenesse.

How Lewelyn, þrouȝ enginge²¹ of Dauid his broþer, Werrede aȝeyne vppoñ Kyng¹⁰ Edward. Capitulo Centesimo lxiij^o.

28 **H**It was nought longe after¹ þat tyme, þat Kyng¹ Edward ne ȝaf vnto²² Dauid, þat was Lewelynus broþer, þe lordship of Frodesham, and made him a knyght; and so miche honour dede he neuer²³ to no man of Walys after,¹² for enchesoñ of him.

¶ Kyng Edward helde his parlament at Londoñ, when he hade
 32 done in Walys aȝ þat he wolde, and chaungede his mony, þat þo was²⁴ foule cotte & rounded¹; wherfore þe commune peple pleyne

¹ in the D. in þe O. ² in D. ³ to his D. ⁴ land¹ O.
⁵ to DO. ⁶ destroy D. ⁷⁻⁷ þe kyng sic O. ⁸ tydyng O.
⁹ wox D. ¹⁰ om. O. ¹¹ vnto DO. ¹² om. DO.
¹³ nouȝt him D. hym not O. ¹⁴ leaf 102, back. ¹⁵ Kyng D.
¹⁶⁻¹⁶ þf sic D. ¹⁷ aȝeyne D. aȝen O.
¹⁸⁻¹⁸ þat same tyme dwelled¹ O. ¹⁹ the D. ²⁰ with the D.
²¹ eggyng O. ²² to DO. ²³ neuer¹ after¹ D. neuere aftir O.
²⁴ was ful O.

ham wonder' sore, so þat þe Kyng lete enquere of ham þat soche trespasse deden; and iij C̄ were atteynt of soche maner' falsenes; wherfore somme were honged, and some¹ draw, and afterward² hongede. ¶ And afterward, the Kyng³ ordeynede þat þe sterlinge 4 halfpeny and ferthinge shulde go³ þrouz-out his lande, and comandede þat no man, fro þat day afterward, ⁴zaf ne feffede hous of Religiouñ with lande ⁵and tenementz wipouten⁵ special leue of þe Kyng⁴; and he þat dede hit,⁶ shulde ben⁷ punisshede att þe² 8 Kynges wille, and the 3ifte shulde be for nouzt.

¶ And hit was nouzt longe after, þat Lewelyn, Prince of Walys, þrouz ticement' of Dauid his broþer, and by boþe here consent, þai þouzt disherite Kyng Edward in-asmiche as þai might, so þat þrouz 12 ham boþe þe Kynges pees was broken.⁸ ¶ And when Kyng Edward herde þis, anone he sent⁹ his barons into Northumberland, and þe Shirreyues¹⁰ also, þat þai shulde gone¹¹ & take her Viage oppoñ þe traitoures¹² Lewelyn and Dauid. ¶ And wonder herde 16 was forto werr' þo, for it [is]¹³ wynter in Walis when in oper cuntres it is somer. And Lewelyn ¹⁴lete ordeyn¹⁴ and wel arraie¹⁵ his gode castel of Swandoñ, and was þerin an huge nombre of peple & plentee of vitailles, so þat Kyng Edward wist nouzt wher forto¹⁶ 20 entre. ¶ And wen þe Kynges men hit perceyuede, and also þe strengþ of Walys, þai lete come in þe see,¹³ barges¹⁷ and botes, and grete plankes, as meny as þai might ordeyn and haue, forto gone to the forsaide castell of Swayndoñ wip men on foot' and eke on hors. 24 But þe Walshemen hade so miche peple, and were so strong', þat þai dryuen¹⁸ þe Englysshe-men azein, ¹⁹so þat þere was so miche presse of peple at the turnyng azeine,¹⁹ þat þe charge & þe berdeyn²⁰ of ham made þe barges and botes synk'; and þere was drenchede 28 ful meny a gode Knyght, þat is to seyn: Sir' Roger of Clifford, Sir' William of Lyndesey, þat was Sire Iohnes sone Fitz Robert, and Sire Richard Tauny, and an huge nombre of opere folc; and al was ²¹þrouz her' owen folye; for yf þai had hed gode espies, þai had 32 nouzt bene harmed.

¹ some were O. ² om. O. ³ goñ DO.

⁴ leaf 103. ⁵⁻⁵ ne tenement with-out D. ne tenement withoute O.

⁶ om. DO. ⁷ be DO. ⁸ broke O. ⁹ sent his barons DO. sent R.

¹⁰ Shirreyues D. Surreys OR. ¹¹ go O. ¹² traitous D.

¹³ om. D. ¹⁴⁻¹⁴ lete & ordeyned O.

¹⁵ array and vitaille D. arrayd & vitailled O. ¹⁶ to D.

¹⁷ MS. barges barges. ¹⁸ drof D.

¹⁹⁻¹⁹ so þat þere was so miche presse of peple at the turnyng azeine D. so þat þer was so myche prese of peple at þe turnyng azen O. om. R.

²⁰ berthen D. berþene O. ²¹ leaf 103, back.

¶ When Kyng¹ Edward harde tel pat his peple were so ydrenchede,¹ he made sorwe ynow. ¶ But þo come Sir² Iohn of² Vessy fram³ þe Kyng¹ of Aragouñ, and brouzt with him miche² folc of
4 bachilers &² of Gascoignes,⁴ and wer³ soudiours, and duelledede⁵
wip þe Kyng¹, and tok⁶ of him wages, & wip him were wipholde,
& noble-men ; hit were forto fizte, & brenne meny tounes, & quelle⁷
miche peple of Walshemen, al þat þai myght take. ¶ And alle þo,
8 wip pure strengþ & might, maden⁸ assaute to þe castel of Swandoñ,
& gete the castel.

¶ And when Daid, þe Prynce⁹ broþer, herde¹⁰ þo tidinges,¹¹ he ordeined¹² him to flight.¹² ¶ And Lewelyn þe Prynce saw þat¹³ Daid
12 his broþer¹³ was flouen, [and]¹⁴ sore he was¹⁴ abasshed¹⁴, for he had none¹⁵ power¹⁵ þo, his wer¹⁶ forto mayntene. ¶ And so Lewelyn gan forto flee, and wend wel forto² haue scaped ; but on a¹⁶ morwe Sir Roger þe¹⁷ Mortymer¹⁷ mette wip him oneliche¹⁸ wip x knyȝtes, and
16 sette him rounde aboute, and to him went, and smote of his heuede,¹⁹ & presentede him vnto²⁰ Kyng¹ Edward : & in þis maner þe Prince of Walys was taken,²¹ and his heued²² smyten²³ of¹, and alle his heires disherited for euermore, þrouȝ right²⁴ dome of þe
20 lordes of þe reaume.

¶ How Daid, þat was Lewelynes broþer, Prynce of Walys,²⁵ was put to²⁶ deþ. *Capitulo ¶ Centesimo lxxiiij^{to}.*

24 **D**Auid, þat was²⁷ Lewelynus broþer,²⁷ þrouȝ pride²⁸ wende forto haue bene²⁸ Prince of Walis after his broþeres deth ; and oppoñ þat, he sent after Walshemen to his parlement at Denbegge, and fulliche²⁹ made Walys³⁰ arise aȝeynes the Kyng¹, and biganne to meve Werr³¹ aȝeynes þe Kyng¹,³¹ and dede al þe sorwe and dissesse
28 þat he myght by his power.

¶ When Kyng¹ Edward harde of þis þing,² he ordeyned men to pursue oppoñ him ; and Daid ferseliche³² him defended til þat he

¹ drenchede D. drenched¹ O. ² om. D. ³ fro DO.
⁴ Gascoyng sic D. ⁵ dwellyng O. ⁶ vndirfong O. ⁷ queld⁷ O.
⁸ made DO. ⁹ Prynces O. ¹⁰ herde þo D. herd¹⁰ þat O. herde R.
¹¹ tydyng O. ¹² flight O. fight R.
¹³⁻¹³ his broþer Daid¹³ O. ¹⁴⁻¹⁴ was sore D. sore awas O.
¹⁵ no DO. ¹⁶ þe O. ¹⁷ om. D. le O. ¹⁸ only O. ¹⁹ heed O.
²⁰ to D. ²¹ take O. ²² heed O. ²³ smet D. smyte O.
²⁴ riztful O. ²⁵ MS. Walys Walys. ²⁶ to þe O.
²⁷⁻²⁷ the Prince broþer of Walys D. þe Prynces brother of Walys O.
²⁸⁻²⁸ went haue be O. ²⁹ folylich O. ³⁰ leaf 104.
³¹⁻³¹ om. D. aȝen þe kyng¹ O. ³² fresly D. fersly O.

come to þe touñ of Seynt Morice; and þere was Dauid take as he fleȳ,¹ and lad to þe Kyng; & þe Kyng commanded þat he shulde ben² hongede & ydraw,³ & smyten⁴ of his heuede,⁵ & ⁶quarter him,⁶ & sende his heuede⁷ to Londoñ, and þe iij quarters sende to 4⁸ the iij⁸ ⁹chief tounes⁹ of Walys, for þai shulde take ensample, & þerof be-war¹.

¶ And afterward Kyng Edward lete crie his pees þrouz¹⁰ Walys, & seisede al¹¹ the londe into his honde; and alle þe grete lordes of 8 Walys þat were lefte alif, come þo to done¹² feaute and homage vnto¹³ þe Kyng¹ as to her¹ Kynde Lord¹; and þo lete Kyng Edward amende þe lawes of Walys þat were¹⁴ defectif. ¶ And after, he sent to¹⁵ alle þe lordes of Walys, by his lettre patent, þat¹⁶ þai 12 shulde comme alle to his parlement. And when þai were comen,¹⁷ þe Kyng saide ¹⁸to ham ful curtesly: “Lordyng, 3e beþ wel-comen¹⁸; and me bihoueth 3our¹ conseile and 3our¹ helpe forto wende into Gascoigne, forto amende þe trespasse þat to me was 16 þere done when þat¹⁹ y was þere,¹⁹ and forto entrete of Pees bituene þe Kyng of Aragoñ & þe Prynce of Morrey.” ¶ And²⁰ alle þe Kynges lege²¹-men, Erles & barons, consentede ²²and granted²² þereto. And þo went þe Kyng¹ into Gascoign, and lete amende þe 20 trespasse þat him was ²³þere doñ,²³ and of þe debat þat was bituene þe Kyng of Arragoñ & the Prynce of Morrey, he cessede, & made ham accordede.

¶ And while the ²⁴Gode Kyng¹ Edward and Alianore his Quene 24 was²⁵ in Gascoigne, þe gode Erl of Cornwaile was made Wardeyn of Engeland¹ til þat Kyng¹ Edward come aȳeyn. And þo enquerede he of his traitoures þat coniectede falsenesse aȳeyn³ him; and eche of ham alle vnderfonge his²⁶ dome, after¹ þat þai hade deserued. 28 ¶ But in the mene-tyme, while²⁷ Kyng¹ Edward was bizonde þe see, to done²⁸ ham forto make amendes²⁹ þat aȳeyns him hade trespas-sede, a false þef³⁰ traitour þat mē callede ‘Rys ap Meriedok,’ bigan forto make werr¹ aȳeyns the¹⁹ Kyng¹ Edward; and þat was for 32 enchesouñ þat³¹ Sire Payn Tiptott¹ wrongefully greuede & disesede þe

¹ fled O. ² be DO. ³ drawe O. ⁴ smyte DO. ⁵ heed¹ O.
⁶⁻⁸ quartred¹ O. ⁷ heed O. ⁸⁻⁸ iij the D. ⁹⁻⁹ Tounys Chef O.
¹⁰ þrouz-out al D. þurgh-out al O. ¹¹ of O. ¹² do O. ¹³ to D.
¹⁴ weren O. ¹⁵ vn-to O. ¹⁶ om. O. ¹⁷ Come to þe kyng O.
¹⁸⁻¹⁸ ful curteysly lordynges 3e ben welcome O. ¹⁹ om. D.
²⁰ Anon O. ²¹ lieges D. ²²⁻²³ om. D.
²³⁻²³ done þere D. don¹ in Gascoigne O. ²⁴ leaf 104, back.
²⁵ were DO. ²⁶ her D. ²⁷ while þat O. ²⁸ do D.
²⁹ amende D. ³⁰ þef a O. ³¹ þat D. of R.

forsaid Rys ap Meriedok'. ¶ And when Kyng^r Edward herd al þis, he sent by his *lettres* to Rys ap Meriedok', þat he shulde bigin to¹ make non² werr', but þat he shulde be³ in pees, for his loue; and
4 when þat⁴ he come aʒeyn into Engeland, he wold vndertake þe querel, and wolde done⁵ amende al þat was misdone. ¶ The forsaide Rys ap Meriedok dispisede the Kynges commandement, and sparede nouʒt forto done⁵ alle þe sorwe þat he might to þe Kyngus
8 men of Engeland; but anone after^r he was taken,⁶ and lad to ʒorke, and þere he was drawe and hongede for his folye.⁷

Of þe redressing^r þat Kyng^r Edward made⁸ of his Iusticeʒ & ⁹of his clerkes, þat þai had done⁹ for her' falsnesse⁸; & how
12 he drof þe¹⁰ Gewes out of Engeland, ¹¹for her' Vsurye and her' mysbileue.¹¹ *Capitulo Centesimo lxx^{to}.*¹²

When Kyng^r Edward had duellede iij ʒer' in Gascoigne, ¹³ful
16 wel hit bicome vnto ¹³him forto Wende aʒeyn into Engeland. And when¹⁴ he was comen¹⁵ ¹⁶aʒeyne, he toke¹⁷ so meny pleyntes made to him of his Iusticeʒ and of his clerkes, þat had doñ so meny wronges & falsnessez,¹⁸ þat wonder' hit was ¹⁹forto wete¹⁹; ¶ and for whiche falsnesse, Sir Thomas of Weylond^r, þe Kyngus
20 Iustice, forsuore Engeland at the Toure of Londoñ, for falsnesse þat men put oppoñ [him]; wherfore²⁰ he was teint,²¹ & prouede false. ¶ And anone after, when þe Kyng had doñ his wil ²²of þe²² Iusticeʒ, þo lete he enquere & asprie how þe Gewys desceyuede & bigilede
24 his peple, þrouʒ here²³ synne & ²⁴falsnesse of²⁵ Vsurie; and lete ordeyn a priue parlement amonges²⁶ his lordes; and þai ordeynede amongus²⁶ ham þat 'alle þe Gewes shulde voide Engeland^r, for here misbileue, & also for her' false Vsurye þat þai deden vnto Cristen
28 men.' ¶ And forto spede and make an ende of þis þing^r, al þe communitē²⁷ of Engeland ²⁸ʒeue to²⁸ þe Kyng^r þe l.²⁹ peny of alle here Godes moeble: and so were þe Gewis dryuen out of Engeland^r; and þo went þe Gewis into Fraunce, [and there dwelled], þrouʒ þe⁴
32 leue of Kyng^r Philip þat þo was Kyng^r of Fraunce.

¹ forto DO. ² no DO. ³ by D. ⁴ om. DO. ⁵ do D.
⁶ take O. ⁷ felonye DO. ⁸ om. D. ⁹⁻⁹ clerkes O. ¹⁰ om. O.
¹¹⁻¹¹ om. O. ¹² lxxxv^{to} sic O. ¹³⁻¹³ wel come to D. wil come to O.
¹⁴ þo O. ¹⁵ come O. ¹⁶ leaf 105. ¹⁷ founde D. fond O.
¹⁸ falsnesse D. falsnes O. ¹⁹⁻¹⁹ to here O.
²⁰ wherof D. ²¹ atteynt D. atteint O.
²²⁻²² with his D. ²³ his O. ²⁴ of DO. ²⁵ and D. and of O.
²⁶ among O. ²⁷ communes D. Comunalte O.
²⁸⁻²⁸ ʒaf vnto D. ²⁹ xv D. fyfthe O.

How Kyng^r Edward was seisede in al þe lond of Scotland[†], þrouȝ consent & graunt of alle þe¹ lordes of Scotland. *Capitulum Centesimo ¶ l[x]vj^{to}.*²

HIt was nouȝt longe after, þat Alisander³, Kyng^r of Scotland, 4 nas dede, and Dauid Erl of Huntyngdoñ, þat was þe Kynges broþer of Scotland, axede and chalangede⁴ þe Kyngdome of Scotland[†], for enchesoñ þat he was rightful⁵ heir. ¶ But meny grete lordes of Scotland saide ‘nay’; wherfore grete debate arose 8 bituene⁶ ham & her⁷ frendes, for-asmiche as⁸ þai wolde nouȝt consent to his⁹ coronacioñ; and in the¹⁰ mene-tyme þe forsaid Dauid deide. ¶ And so hit bifelle þat þe⁸ same Dauid had iij doughtres, þat worpiliche¹¹ wer^r maried: þe ferst doughter was 12 mariede to Bailoille, þe secunde to Brus, þe pridde to Hastings. ¶ And þe forsaid Bailol & Brus chalangede¹² þe land of¹² Scotland; and grete debate and strif aroos bituene ham þre, for enchesouñ þat eche of ham wolde haue bene¹³ Kyng^r. ¶ & when þe lordes of¹⁴ þe 16 land¹⁴ saw þe debate bituene¹⁵ ham þre,¹⁶ þai come to Kyng Edward of Engeland, and seisede him in alle þe land[†] of Scotland[†] as [t]heir chief lord. ¶ And when þe Kyng was seisede of alle¹⁷ þe lordes of Scotland[†], þe forsaid Bailol, Brus, and Hastyngus, comen¹⁸ to 20 þe Kyngus court, and axede of þe Kyng^r ‘whiche of ham shulde be Kyng^r of Scotland[†].’ ¶ And Kyng^r Edward, þat was fulle¹⁹ gentil and trewe, lete enquire by þe Cronicles of Scotland[†], and of þe gret lordes of Scotland[†], whiche of ham was the Eldeste blood; 24 and it was founde þat Bailoil was þe²⁰ eldest,²¹ and þat þe Kyng of Scotland shulde holde of the Kyng^r of Engeland[†], and do²² him feaute and homage. ¶ & after þat²³ þis was doñ, Bailoil went into Scotland[†], and þere was cronede Kyng of Scotland[†]. 28

And þe same tyme was oppoñ þe see²⁴ grete strif²⁴ bituene þe²⁵ Englisshemen and the No[r]mannes. ¶ But oppoñ [a tyme] þe Normans arryuede²⁶ al at Douer^r; and þere þai martrede an holy man þat me calleþ²⁷ seynt Thomas of Douer^r. And aftirwarde²⁸ 32

¹ þe gret D. ² ^{xx}iiij vj^{to} sic O. ³ Alisander the D.

⁴ cleymede D. Claymed[†] O. ⁵ riȝt D.

⁶ bituene D. betwene O. bitue R. ⁷ MS. has her her. ⁸ þat D.

⁹ þis O. ¹⁰ leaf 105, back. ¹¹ worthily O. ^{12–12} om. D.

¹³ be O. ^{14–14} Scotland[†] DO. ¹⁵ of D. ¹⁶ om. O.

¹⁷ MS. has alle Londoñ, with Londoñ undertined for omission; om. DO.

¹⁸ come O. ¹⁹ bothe D. ²⁰ om. O. ²¹ eldest bloode D.

²² done O. ²³ om. DO. ^{24–24} strong wer^r D. stronge werre O.

²⁵ om. D. ²⁶ arryuued vp O. ²⁷ callede D. Called[†] O.

²⁸ afterwardes D.

were þe Normans quelled, þat þere¹ scapede none of ham.¹
¶ And sone afterward,² Kyng Edward shulde lese þe Duchee of³
⁴Gascoign,⁵ prouȝ Kyng Philipp of Fraunce, prouȝ false castyng⁶
⁴ of þe Dosseperez of þe lond; wherfore Sir Edmund, þat was sire⁷
Edwardes broþer, ȝaf vp his homage vnto⁸ the Kyng¹ of Fraunce.
And in þat tyme þe clerkes⁹ of Engeland [granted] vnto¹⁰ Kyng
Edward haluendel¹¹ holy cherche¹¹ godes, in helpyng¹ forto recouer⁸
⁸ his land aȝeyn in Gascoign. ¶ And þe Kyng¹ sent pider a noble
company of his bachilers; and¹² himself wolde haue went¹³ to
Portsmouth, but he was lette prouȝ on Maddok¹ of Walys, þat
hade seisede þe castel of Swandoñ into his honde. And for þat
¹² enchesouñ the Kyng¹⁴ turnede aȝeyn into Walys at Cristus-masse.¹⁵
¶ And for enchesouñ þat þe noble lordes of Engeland þat were sent
into¹⁶ Gascoign, had no¹⁷ comfort of here lord þe¹⁴ Kyng Edward,
þai wer' take of Sire Charles of Fraunce, þat is to seyn, Sir Iohn
¹⁶ of Britaigne, Sire Robert Tiptott, Sire Rauf Tauny,¹⁸ Sir Hughe
Bardolf, & Sir Adam¹⁹ of Cretingus.¹⁹ And ryȝt at þe¹⁴ Ascencioñ
was Maddok taken²⁰ in Walys, and anoþer þat me callede Morgan;
and þai were sent to þe Toure of Londoñ, and²¹ þai wer' honget.²²

²⁰ How Sir Iohn of¹⁴ Balol, Kyng of Scotland, wiȝsaide his
homoge²³; and of Sir Thomas²⁴ Tourbeluile. *Capitulo*
*Centesimo*¹⁴ lxxvij^o.²⁵

²⁴ **A** Nd when sir Iohn Bailol, Kyng of Scotland, vnderstode þat
Kyng¹ Edward was werrede in Gascoign, to whom þe
reaume of Scotland was delyuerede, falseliche²⁶ þo aȝeynȝ his oth,
wit[h]saide²⁷ homage, prouȝ *procuryng¹* of his folc, and sent to the
court of Rome, prouȝ a false suggesciouñ, to bene assoiled²⁸ of þat
²⁸ oth þat he swore²⁹ vnto the Kyng¹ of Engeland; and so he was,
by lettres enbullede. ¶ þo chose³⁰ þai of Scotland Dossepers forto
bynime Edward his right.

¹⁻¹ ascapede of ham neuer on D. scaped of hem not on O.

² after D. aftir O. ³ MS. of¹ of¹. ⁴ leaf 106. ⁵ Lancastre O.

⁶ tisyng¹ D. ⁷ kyng DO. ⁸ to D. ⁹ clergy D. ¹⁰ to DO.

¹¹⁻¹¹ of holy cherches D. of holy Cherche O. ¹² and þe kyng D.

¹³ goñ D. ¹⁴ om. D. ¹⁵ cristen-masse D. Cristemasse O.

¹⁶ vn-to O. ¹⁷ none D. ¹⁸ Tauny and D.

¹⁹⁻¹⁹ Cretyng¹ D. of Cretynge O. ²⁰ tak D. take O.

²¹ & þere O. ²² biheuedede D. beheded¹ O. ²³ homages O.

²⁴ Iohn D. ²⁵ MS. has lxxvij; O. has lxxxvij^o. ²⁶ falsly O.

²⁷ gaynesaide his D. withsayd his O. ²⁸ leaf 106, back.

²⁹⁻²⁹ to Kyng Edward D. ³⁰ chosen DO.

& in pat tyme com ¹ij Cardinalles¹ fro þe court of Rome, fram þe Pope² Celestyne, forto trete of accorde bituene þe Kyng of Fraunce & þe Kyng of Engeland. ¶ And as þo ij Cardinalles speken of accord³, Thomas Tourbeluile, pat was take³ at Ryouns, 4 made feaute and homage to the Wardeyn of Parys, and to him put his ij sones in hostage,⁴ for pat he pouzt⁵ goñ into Engeland forto asprie the contre, and telle ham when he come into Engeland, pat he hade broken þe Kynges prisouñ of Fraunce by nyght, and 8 saide pat he wolde done, pat alle Englisshe-men and Walshe-men shulde abowe to þe Kyng of Fraunce: and pis ping forto brynge to þe ende, he swore; and oppoñ pis couenaunt, dedes⁶ wer' made bituene⁷ ham, and pat he shulde haue by zere⁸ an hundrede 12 poundes⁸ worp of land⁸, to bryng⁸ pis ping⁹ to þe¹⁰ ende. ¶ This false *traitour* toke his leue, and⁸ went pens and come into Engeland vnto¹¹ þe Kyng⁸, & saide pat he was broken out of prisouñ, and pat he had⁸ put him in soche perile for his loue. Wherfore þe Kyng¹⁶ coup him miche¹² þank⁸, & ful glade was of his comyng⁸. ¶ And þe false þef *traitoure* fro pat day aspiede al the Doyng of þe Kyng⁸ and also his Conseile, for þe Kyng⁸ louede him ful¹³ wel, & was wip him ful priuee. ¶ But a clerk of Engeland⁸, pat was in the Kynges 20 hous of France, herde of pis *tresouñ* & of the falsenesse, and wrote to anopere¹⁴ clerk⁸ pat Was duellyng⁸ wip þe Kyng⁸ of Engeland, al how Thomas Tourbeluile hade done his false¹⁵ coniettyng⁸. And al þe Conseil of Engeland was writen¹⁶ forto haue sent vnto¹⁷ þe Kyng 24 of Fraunce; and prouz þe forsaide lettre pat þe clerc hade sent fro Fraunce, hit was founden¹⁸ oppoñ him; wherfor he was lade to Londoñ, & drawen & honged þere for his *tresouñ*; and his ij sones, pat he hade put in¹⁹ Fraunce for hostages, were²⁰ ²¹þo biheuedede.²¹ 28

Of þe Conquest of Berwik. *Capitulo Centesimo Sexagesimo*²² viij^o.

W Hen þo ij Cardinales wer' gone²³ azeyn into France, forto trete of²⁴ pees at Cambrey, þe Kyng sent pider' of his 32 Erles and baroñs, pat is to seyn, *Sire* Edmund⁸ his broper, Erl of

¹—1 to ham a Cardynal D.

² pope *struck out*, and bisshop *written over in a different hand in O.*

³ taken DO. ⁴ hostages D. ⁵ boghte haue O. ⁶ dede D.

⁷ bituene D. between O. bitue R. ^{8—8} a C ti O. ⁹ tydyngge O.

¹⁰ an D. ¹¹ to D. ¹² michel D. ¹³ om. DO. ¹⁴ leaf 107.

¹⁵ false D. fals O. falso R. ¹⁶ wryte O. ¹⁷ om. D. ¹⁸ founde O.

¹⁹ into O. ²⁰ weren O. ^{21—21} biheued⁸ D. þo byheded⁸ O.

²² lxxx sic O. ²³ went DO. ²⁴ of þe O.

Lancastre & of Leycestre, Sir' Hen' Lacy, Erl of Nichole, and William Vessy, a baron; & of opere baronettes, aboute xiiij of þe best and wisest of Engeland.

4 And in þe same tyme¹ Kyng Edward tok² his viage in³ Scotland, forto werr' oppoñ Iohn⁴ Bailol, Kyng of Scotland. ¶ And Sir' Robert Roos at⁵ Berwik' fley⁶ fro þe Engliſſhe-men, & went to þe Scottes. ¶ And Kyng Edward went him toward Berwik, and 8 bisegede þe touñ; and þo þat were wipin⁷ manliche⁸ ham defendede, and sette afire⁹ and brent ij of Kyng Edwardes shippis, and saide, in despite and in reprofe of him: "¶ Wenes¹⁰ Kyng Edward, wip his longe shankes, ¹¹for to wyn¹¹ Berwik', al our 12 vnþankes¹²? gas pikes him! and when ¹³he haþ hit, gas diche him¹³!" ¶ When Kyng Edward herd þis scorñ, anone þrouz his mightynesse he passede ouere þe diches, and assailede þe touñ, & ¹⁴come to þe zates, and gete¹⁵ and conquered þe toune, and, þrouz his 16 gracious power, quelledede xxv M^t & vij C of¹⁶ Scottes. & Kyng Edward loste of his men, no man of renouñ saue Sir'⁴ Richard of Cornwaile; and him quelledede a Flemynge^t out of the Reede Halle wip a quarel, as þe forsaid Richard dede of his helme; and 20 commandedede ham forto zelde ham, and put ham into¹⁷ the Kyngus grace; and þe Scottes wolde nouzt; wherfore þat halle was brent, ¹⁸and cast' adoune, and alle þo þat were within were brent.¹⁸ And Kyng Edward loste ¹⁹no man¹⁹ at þat viage, of simple State,²⁰ 24 but xxviij Engliſſhe-men; and þe wardeyn of þe castel zaf vp²¹ þe keyes wipouten²² eny assaut. And þere was take,²³ William Douglas, and Sir' Symond^t Frisel; and þe Erl Patrik' zelde him to þe pees; but Ingham of Hunfreuil and Robert of⁴ Brus, þat were 28 wip þe²⁴ Kyng Edward^t, forsoke Kyng Edward, & helde wip þe Scottes: and afterward þai were tak'^t,²³ and put into prysoñ; & afterward þe Kyng^t forzaf ham her' trespasse, & deliuered ham out of prisouñ; and þo lete Kyng Edward close in Berwik' wip wallis 32 and wip diches. ¶ And aftirward, Robert Brus²⁵ went to Tyndale, and sette Woxebryge afire, and Excelham and Lamerstok', and

¹ tyme þ^o O. ² nome D. ³ into D. to O. ⁴ om. D.

⁵ of DO. ⁶ fly O. ⁷ wip sic D. þerin O.

⁸ manly O. ⁹ on fir D. ¹⁰ wenide DO. ¹¹⁻¹¹ haue gete O.

¹² ovne þankes O.

¹³⁻¹³ haþ so do gas dikes D. he haþ gas dikes him O.

¹⁴ leaf 107, back. ¹⁵ gate DO. ¹⁶ om. O. ¹⁷ to DO.

¹⁸⁻¹⁸ and . . . brent D. & cast adon & aft þ^o þat were with-Inne were

brent O. om. R. ¹⁹⁻¹⁹ no mo D. no mo men O.

²⁰ estate D. ²¹ vp þ^o Castell & O. ²² with-oute D. with sic O.

²³ taken D. ²⁴ om. DO. ²⁵ Rous DO.

quellede & robbit þe folc of þe contrey; and aftirward he went fro þens vnto Dunbarr'.

¶ And þe ferst Wedenesday of Marche, þe Kyng sent¹ þe Erl of Garreine, Sir' Hughe Percy and Sir' Hught Spenser',² wip a 4 faire company, forto² bisege þe castel. But on þat me called Sir' Richard Siward, a *traitour*, a false man, ymagynede forto bigile³ þe Engliſſhe-men, & sent⁴ to⁵ the⁶ Engliſſhemen, ⁷ham forto desceyue,⁷ and saide þat he wold ʒelde to ham þe castel if⁸ þai 8 wolde graunt him viij dayes of respite, þat he might sende & telle to Sir' Iohn Bailol, Kyng¹ of Scotland, how⁹ þe Engliſſhe-men⁹ ferde,¹⁰ as þai¹⁰ werr in þe casteH, and sende him word¹¹ 'if þat he nolde¹¹ remeve þe sege of þe¹² Engliſſhe-meñ, þat¹³ 14 þai wolde þe 12 castel ʒelde to þe¹⁴ Engliſſhemen.' ¶ The messenger¹⁵ þo come to¹⁶ Iohn Bailol, Kyng of Scotland, þere þat he was wip his host; and ¹⁷þe messenger tolde him.¹⁸ ¶ And Sir' Iohn¹⁹ tok þo his host, and¹⁷ come in þe morwe erly toward þe castel. & Sir' Richard Syward 16 saw him come, þat was maistre of þe Conseile and keper' of þe castel, and saide vnto þe¹² Engliſſhemen: "O God!" quod he, "now y se of folc a fair' company, and wel apparailed, y wil go²⁰ aʒeynes ham, & ²¹wit[h] ham to²¹ mete and ham¹² assaile." ¶ And 20 Sir' Hugh þe Spenser' saw the falsenesse of him & þe tresouñ, and saide to him²²: "O traitour, tak and prouede,²³ ʒour' falsenesse shal nouʒt ²⁴ʒow availe."²⁴ ¶ And Hugh the Spenser' ²⁵com-mandede anon²⁵ forto bynde him, and in al haste went aʒeins²⁶ 24 her' enemys, & quelled of þe Scottes²⁷ xxij M^t; for þe Scottes²⁸ had ²⁹wip ham²⁹ þat tyme no man³⁰ of honour,³⁰ saf Sir' Patrik Graham, þat manliche³¹ fauʒt, and Longe tyme, and at þe last he was quelled. & þo saide þe Engliſſhe-men in reprof of þe Scottis: 28

¹ sent to D. ²⁻² to D. ³ desceyue D. ⁴ om. O.

⁵ vnto D. ⁶ leaf 108. ⁷⁻⁷ in desceyte D. ⁸ if þat O.

⁹⁻⁹ his men D. þat his men O.

¹⁰⁻¹⁰ MS. has as þai were as þai þat; þat D.

¹¹⁻¹¹ but if he wolde D. ¹² om. D. ¹³ MS. has þat þat; om. D.

¹⁴⁻¹⁴ he saide he wolde ʒelde the castel to D. þey wold ʒeld þe CastelH to þe O.

¹⁵ Messenger O. ¹⁶ to sire D. to sir O. ¹⁷⁻¹⁷ om. O.

¹⁸ him the message D. ¹⁹ Iohn Bailol D.

²⁰ gone O. ²¹⁻²¹ ham D. with hem O.

²² and saide to him D. & seyde to hym O. om. R.

²³ MS. has prouede is. ²⁴⁻²⁴ availe ʒow D. vayne ʒow O.

²⁵⁻²⁵ anone comandet D. ²⁶ aʒen O. ²⁷ Scottes DO. Scotte R

²⁸ Scotte D. ²⁹⁻²⁹ om. DO.

³⁰⁻³⁰ with ham D. with hem of honour O.

³¹ was of honour & manlich he D. manly O.

¶ Thus¹ staterand Scottes,
holde y for sottes,
of wrenches vnwar',
4 ¶ Erly in a mornyng',
in an euel tyming'
went 3e² fro Dunbarr'.

¶ þo³ þat wer' in the casteH saw þe scomfiture, and⁴ 3elde⁵ þe
8 castel to⁶ þe Englisshemen, and bonden her' bodyes, londes &
castelles to⁷ Kyng' Edward : and so þere⁸ wer' ⁹take in þe⁹ castel,
¹⁰iij Erles, and¹¹ vij barons, &¹¹ xxviij^{ti} Knyghtes, ¹²& xj clerkes,
and xij¹³ Picardes ; and alle were presentede vnto Kyng Edward,¹²
12 and he sent ham to þe Toure of Londoñ, ¹⁴to ben kepte¹⁴ þere.

How Kyng' Edward, of his grete grace, delyuered a3ein¹¹ þe
Scottes out of prison,¹⁵ þat were cheueteyns of the londe ;
and þay¹⁶ drow ham þo¹⁷ to þe Frenchemen, ¹⁸þrou3 conseil
16 of William Waleys.¹⁸ *Capitulo Centesimo Sexagesimo*¹⁹
Nono.

WHen Kyng Edward hade made²⁰ þo an ende of the werre,
and taken the chyueteyns of Scotland, þo come Sir' Iohn
20 Bailol, and 3elde him vnto²¹ Kyng Edward, and put ²²ham in²² his
grace ; and he was lad²³ to Londoñ. And when Kyng' Edward was
comen²⁴ þider, þai were brouzt bifore him ; and þe Kyng' axede of
ham how þai wolde make amendes of þat trespasse and losse þat þai
24 hade done him ; and þai put ham²⁵ in his mercy.

¶ "Lordynges," quod þe kyng, "y wille nouzt 3our' landes, ne
none of 3our godes, but y wille þat 3e make to me an oth, oppoñ
Godes body, forto bene²⁶ trewe to me, and neuer after' þis tyme
28 a3ens me bere Armes." And allé þai consentede to þe Kynges
wille, and swore oppoñ Godes body, ¶ þat is to seyn, Sir'¹¹ Iohn of
Comyn and þe Erl of Stratthorñ,²⁷ þe Erl of Carryk' ; and also iij
bisshopus vndertoke for alle¹¹ þe clergie ; & so þe Kyng delyuerede
32 ham, and 3af ham saf condit to wende into her' owen Land. ¶ And

1 This O. 2 þai D. 3 And þo D. When þo O. 4 þai D. þei O.
5 yolden O. 6 vnto O. 7 to the D. to þe O.
8 þey O. 9—9 taken in that D. take þer in þe O. 10 leaf 108, back.
11 om. D. 12—12 xj clerkes and vij Picardes D.
13 vij O. 14—14 forto bene kepede D. to ben y-kept O.
15 prisouñ a3eyne D. 16 om. O. 17 om. DO. 18—18 om. O.
19 lxxx sic O. 20 y-made O. 21 to D.
22—22 him vnto D. hym in O. 23 led O. 24 come O.
25 hym O. 26 be O. 27 Stratthorñ and D.

hit was nouzt longe after,¹ þat þai ne risen² azeyns³ Kyng Edward, for enchesouñ þat þai wist⁴ þat Kyng Edwardus folc⁵ were⁶ take in Gascoigne, as bifore is saide; but Sir' Iohn Bailloil, ⁷Kyng⁷ of Scotland, wiste wel þat his lande shulde haue ⁸sorwe and shame⁸ 4 for her' falsnesse, and in haste went him ouer' þe see vnto⁹ his owen londes, and þere helde him, and come neuer¹⁰ azeyne. Wherefore þe Scottes chosen to bene¹¹ her' kyng⁷, William Walis, a rybaude, an harlot, comen vp of nouzt, and miche harme dede to þe Englisshemen. 8

¶ And Kyng Edward þouzt how he myght haue deliuerance of his peple þat were tak¹² in Gascoigne, and in hast went ouer þe see into Flaundres, forto werr' oppoñ þe Kyng⁷ of Fraunce. And þe Erl of Flaundres vnderfonge him wip michel¹³ honour, and 12 grauntede him alle his landes at his owen wille. ¶ And when þe Kyng⁷ of¹⁴ Fraunce herde telle þat þe Kyng of Engeland⁷ was arryuede in Flaundres, and come wip an huge power', him forto destroye, he prayede him of trewes for ij zere, so þat Englishe 16 marchantz, and also Frenche, myzt saffiche¹⁵ goñ in bope sides. ¶ The Kyng Edward grantede hit, so þat he mizt¹⁶ haue his men out of prisouñ þat were take¹¹ in Gascoigne; and þe Kyng of Fraunce grauntede anone; and so þai wer' Delyuerede. 20

¶ And in the same tyme þe¹⁷ Scottes sent by þe Bisshoþ of seynt Andrewes into Fraunce, to þe Kyng⁷, and to Sir' Charles, his broþer, þat Sir' Charles shulde come wip his power', & þai ¹⁸of Scotland¹⁸ wolde come wip heir', and so þai shulde gone into Enge- 24 land⁷, þat lande forto destroye, fram Scotland⁷, til þat þai ¹⁹come into¹⁹ Kent. And þe Scottes truste²⁰ ful¹¹ miche oppon²¹ þe Frensshe-men; but of þat þing þai hade no maner graunt. and ²²noþeles þe Scottes bigoñ to robbe and quelle in Northumberlond⁷, 28 and dede²³ miche harme.

How William Wallis lete slee Sir' Hughe of Cressingham; and of þe batail of Foukirk. Capitulo Centesimo Septuagesimo.²⁴

32

¹ afterward D. ² aysen O. ³ azeyn D. azen O.

⁴ wist wel D. wist weel O. ⁵ men D. ⁶ was O.

⁷ leaf 109. ⁸⁻⁸ shame and sorwe D. ⁹ to DO. ¹⁰ neuer more D.

¹¹ om. DO. ¹² om. D. ¹³ mych O.

¹⁴ MS. has of Engeland, with Engeland *underlined for omission.*

¹⁵ safly D. sauely O. ¹⁶ must O.

¹⁷ MS. has þe kyng, with kyng *underlined for omission.*

¹⁸⁻¹⁸ om. D. ¹⁹⁻¹⁹ comen to D. come to O. ²⁰ trist O.

²¹ to O. ²² leaf 109, back. ²³ deden O.

²⁴ MS. Octogesimo; Octogesimo D. lxxxx^o O.

When þis tydyng was comen¹ to Kyng Edward, þat William Walis hade ordeynede soche a stronge power, and þat al Scotland to him was entendant, and redy to quelle Englisshemen & destroye his² lande, he was sore annoied, and sent anone by his³ lettres⁴ to þe Erl of Gerreïn, and to Sir Henry Percy and to Sir William Latomer, and to⁵ Sir Hugh of Cressingham his Tresorer,⁶ þat þai shulde take power, and wende into Northumberlond, & so forþ into Scotland, forto kepe þe contres. ¶ And when William Waleys herde of her comyng, he gañ⁷ forto flee; &⁸ Englisshemen him⁹ folwede, and drof him til þat he come to Streuelyn; & þere he helde him in þe casteH; and þe Walshemen euery day ham¹⁰ ascriede & manacede, & dede al þe despite þat þai myght.¹¹ ¶ So þat þe Englisshemen¹² oppoñ a tyme in a morwenyng,¹³ went out fram¹⁴ þe castel þe mountance¹⁵ of x mile, and passede ouer a bruge; and William Walys come wiþ a stronge power, and drof ham abak, for þe Englisshemen hade azeynes him þo no myght, but fledde; and þo þat might take þe brugge scapede. ¶ But Sir Hughe, þe Kyngus Tresorer, þere was slayn, and meny oþere also; wherfore was made miche¹⁶ sorwe.

þo hade Kyng Edward spedde alle his nedes in Flaundes, ¶ and was comyng¹⁷ azeyn into Engeland, ¹⁸and in haste toke¹⁹ his Way toward²⁰ Scotland, and come þider at þe Ascenciouñ; and al þat he founde, he sette ²¹on fire²¹ & brent. But þe pore peple of Scotland come to him wonder pik, and prayed him, for Godes loue, ²²þat he wolde²² haue³ on²³ ham²⁴ mercy and pitee; wherfore þe Kyng þo commandet þat no man shulde done²⁵ harme to ham þat were zolden²⁶ to ham, ne to no man of ordre, ne to no²⁷ hous of religioñ, ne no maner²⁸ cherche; ¶ But lete asprie²⁸ al þat he myght, where þat he myght fynde eny of his enemys. þo come an²⁹ espie to þe Kyng, and tolde wher³⁰ þe Scottes were assembled forto abide bataile.

32 And on seynt Marie Magdaleynus³¹ day, þe Kyng come to

¹ come O. ² the D. þ^o O. ³ om. O. ⁴ lettre D. ⁵ om. D.
⁶ fader & O. ⁷ bygan O. ⁸ and the D. & þe O. ⁹ hem O.
¹⁰ him D. hym O. ¹¹ miȝten D. ¹² MS. has Englisshemen went.
¹³ mornyng DO. ¹⁴ fro D. ¹⁵ montynaunce O.
¹⁶ michel D. ¹⁷ comen D. come O. ¹⁸ leaf 110.
¹⁹ nome O. ²⁰ into O. ²¹⁻²¹ afere O.
²²⁻²² MS. has þat he wolde þat he wolde. ²³ of D.
²⁴ hem haue O. ²⁵ do D. ²⁶ zolde O. ²⁷ non O.
²⁸ aspye in O. ²⁹ om. DO. ³⁰ wher þat D.
³¹ Magdaleyn D. Mauddeleyne O.

Foukirk¹, and 3af bataile to þe Scottes; and at þat bataiH þere¹ wer
 quellede of² Scottes³ xxxiiij M^t,⁴ and³ of Engliſshemen but xxviiij⁵
 and no mo; of þe whiche was a worþi Knyght⁶ slayn, þat was a
 knyght⁶ of the HospitaH,⁶ þat me called Frere Briañ Iay; for, when⁴
 William Waleys fley fram þe bataile, þat⁷ same Frere Briañ him
 pursuede fersly⁸; and as his hors⁴ ran, hit sterte into a mere⁹ of
 marreys⁹ vp to þe bely; and William Waleys turnede þo azeyn,
 and þere quellede þe forsaide Briañ; and þat was miche harme. 8
 ¶ And while Kyng Edward went þrouz Scotland^t forto enquire if¹⁰
 he might fynde eny of his enemys; and in þat lande he duellede
 as¹¹ longe as him likede, and þere was none enemy þat derst him
 abide. 12

¶ And so¹² aftirward Kyng Edward went to Southamptōn, for
 he wolde nouzt abide in Scotland^t in¹³ wynter sesoñ, for esement of
 his peple. ¶ And when he come to Londoñ, he lete amende meny
 misdedes þat were done azeynes¹⁴ his pees Whiles¹⁵ þat He Was 16
 in Flaundes.

**Of þe laste mariage of Kyng Edward; and how he went þe
 bridde¹⁶ tyme into Scotland. *Capitulo Centesimo Septua-
 gesimo*¹⁷ primo.** 20

ANd after¹⁸, hit was ordeynede þrouz¹⁹ þe court of Rome, þat
 Kyng Edward shulde wedde Dame Margarete, Kyng
 Philippus suster of France; and þe Erchebisshop Robert of
 Wynchelse spousede ham togedre; þrouz whiche mariage pees was 24
 made bituene Kyng Edward of Engeland^t and Kyng^t Philippe of
 Fraunce. ¶ Kyng²⁰ Edward²¹ went þo⁴ þe þridde¹⁶ tyme into
 Scotland^t; and þo, with-inne þe ferst zere, he had enfamenede þe
 land^t so þat þere ne²¹ lefte nouzt on²² but þai²² come to²³ his mercy, 28
 saf þo þat were in þe castel of Estreuelyn, þat was²⁴ vitalede &
 storede²⁵ for vij zere.

¹ om. DO. ² of the D. ³⁻³ xxx M^l iij M^l & O. ⁴ om. D.

⁵ Engliſſhe-men but xxviiij D. Engleſſh-men but xxviiij O. Engliſſhe-
 men R.

⁶⁻⁶ an hospitaler D. an hoſpyteler O. ⁷ þe D.

⁸ fersliche D. ⁹⁻⁹ om. O. ¹⁰ if þat O.

¹¹ alſe D. ¹² ſone DO.

¹³ þe O. ¹⁴ leaf 110, back. ¹⁵ and his lawe while DO.

¹⁶ iij O. ¹⁷ MS. has *Ottogesimo*; iij D. lxxx O.

¹⁸ afterward D aftirward O. ¹⁹ by O. ²⁰ And Kyng D.

²¹ om. O. ²²⁻²² þat þai ne D. þat þey ne O. ²³ vn-to O.

²⁴ was wel D. was weel O. ²⁵ aſtorede D. aſtored O.

How þe castel of Estreuelyn was bisegede. ¶ Capitulo Centesimo lxx¹ secundo.

4 **K** yng^r Edward come with an huge power^r to þe castel of
 Estreuelyn, and bisegede þe casteH; but hit litil auailede,
 for he myght do² the Scottes none harme, for þe castel was so
 stronge an[d] wel Kepte.³ ¶ And Kyng^r Edward saw þat, & pouzt
 8 him oppoñ a queyntise, and lete⁴ make þere anone⁴ ij peire of hye
 Galwes bifore þe toure of þe casteH, and made his oth þat, as meny
 as were in⁵ þe casteH, ⁶were he⁶ Erle or baroñ, and he were take
 wip strengþ, but if he wolde þe⁷ rap^rer him zelde, he shulde bene
 hongede on⁸ þo Galwes. ¶ And when þo þat were in þe castel
 12 herde þis, þai come and zelde ham alle to þe Kynges mercy & grace;
 and þe Kyng^r forzaf ham al his maletalent.⁹ And þere were alle
 þe grete lordes of¹⁰ ¹¹Scotland sworne to Kyng^r Edward, þat þai
 16 shulde come to Londoñ to euery parlement, and shulde stonde to
 his ordenaunce.

12 How Troillebastouñ¹² was ferste ordeynede. Capitulo Centesimo lxx¹³ iij^o.

20 **T** His¹⁴ Kyng^r Edward went þens to Londoñ, and wende haue
 hade¹⁵ rest and¹⁵ pees of his wer^r, wip whiche werre he was
 ocupiede xx^{ti} 3er, þat is to seyn, in Walys, in Gascoigñ, and in
 Scotland, and pouzt how he myght recouere his tresoure þat he
 hade spendede about his werre, and lete enquere þrouz þe reaume
 24 of alle þe¹⁶ mistakyngus and wrongus done þrouz misdoers in¹⁷ Engeland,
 of alle þe tyme þat he hade bene out of his realme, þat¹⁸ me
 callede¹⁸ ‘Troylebastoñ’; and ordeynede þerto Iustices. And in þis
 28 maner þe Kyng^r recouered¹⁹ tresoure²⁰ wipout noubre. ¶ And his
 encheson was, for he²¹ hade pouzt²² forto haue went into²² þe Holy
 Land forto²³ haue werrede²³ oppon Godes enemys, for enchesouñ
 þat he was croisede longe tyme bifore; and noþeles, þat law þat he
 had ordeynede dede miche gode þrouz al Engeland, to ham þat were

¹ MS. iijj; iijj D. lxxxx O. ² done O. ³ ykept O.⁴⁻⁴ make anone þere D. amake anon þere O. ⁵ with-Inne O.⁶⁻⁶ whedir he were O. ⁷ om. O. ⁸ oppon D.⁹ maletalent DO. ale talent R.¹⁰ MS. has of engel with engel underlined for omission. ¹¹ leaf 111.¹²⁻¹² Of Traillebastoñ how it D. ¹³ MS. has iijj; iijj D.¹⁴ The D. þe O. ¹⁵⁻¹⁵ om. D. ¹⁶ om. DO. ¹⁷ of O.¹⁸⁻¹⁸ men calles D. men Called O. ¹⁹ recouerede þo D. ²⁰ good O.²¹ om. D. ²²⁻²² goñ to D. ²³⁻²³ were D. werre O.

mysbode; for þo þat trespassede were¹ wel chastisede, and afterward þe meker² and þe³ better; and þe pore comunes were in þe³ more reste and in⁴ pees.

¶ And⁵ þe same tyme Kyng Edward enprisonede his owen sone 4 Edward, for encheson þat Walter of Langetoñ, Bisshop of Chestre, þat was þe Kyngus tresorer⁶, hade made oppoñ him compleynt, and saide þat þe forsaide Edward, þrouz conseil and procurment of on, Piers of Gauastoñ, a squyer⁷ of Gascoigne, ⁶had broke⁶ þe parkez of 8 þe forsaide bisshope, and þe forsaide Piers conseilede and ladde þe same Edward, þe kynges sone; and for þis cause ⁷Kyng Edward exiledede him⁸ out of Engeland for euermore.

Of þe deþ of William Waleys, þe false traitoure. *Capitulo* 12
Centesimo lxxiiij.

ANd when þis god Kyng Edward ⁹hade his enemys ouercome⁹ in Walis, Gascoign, & in Scotland, and destroyedede his traitoures, but¹⁰ oneliche¹¹ þat¹² rybaude William Waleys, þat neuer¹⁶ to þe Kyng¹ wolde him zelde. and at þe laste, in þe toune of Seynt Dominic, in þe 3er¹ of Kyng¹ Edwardus regne xxxiiij 3er¹, þat false traitoure was take, and presentede to þe Kyng; saf þe Kyng wolde nouzt seen¹³ him, but sent him to Londoñ to vnderfonge his iuge- 20 [ment].¹⁴ And on Seynt Bartholomeus Eve he was honget and drawe, and his ¹⁵heuede smyten¹⁵ of, & his bowailles take¹⁶ out ¹⁷of his body,¹⁷ and brent, and his body quartarede & sent to iij¹⁸ þe best townes of¹⁹ Scotland, and his heued²⁰ sette oppoñ a spere, and 24 sette oppoñ Londoñ Brugge, in sample²¹ þat þe Scottes shulde haue in mynde forto bere ham amys azeynz her²² lorde eftesones.

How þe Scottes come to Kyng Edward, forto amende here
trespasse þat þai had done azeyns him. [*Capitulo*] Cen- 28
tesimo lxxv^{to}.²³

ANd at Michelmasse þo next coming, Kyng¹ Edward helde his parlement atte Westmynstre; and þider come þe Scottes, þat is to seyn, þe Bisshop of Seynt Andrewus,²⁴ Robert þe Brus, Erl 32

¹ weren O. ² om. D. ³ om. O. ⁴ om. DO. ⁵ and in D.
⁶⁻⁶ hade broke DO. om. R. ⁷ leaf 111, back.
⁸ his sone O. ⁹⁻⁹ om. D. ¹⁰ saf D.
¹¹ only O. ¹² the D. ¹³ see D. se O. ¹⁴ Iugement þere D.
¹⁵⁻¹⁵ heed smyte O. ¹⁶ taken D. ¹⁷⁻¹⁷ om. D.
¹⁸ iij of D. foure O. ¹⁹ in D. ²⁰ heed O. ²¹ ensample DO.
²² her liege D. her lege O. ²³ lxxxv^{to} O. ²⁴ Andrew O.

of Carrik, Symond¹ FriseH, Iohn² Erl of AtheH³; and þai were accordede with⁴ þe kyng¹, ⁵and⁵ bonden⁵ by her⁶ oth sworn, þat after,⁷ if eny of ham ⁸misbare ham⁸ aʒeyns Kyng Edward, þat þai 4 shulde bene⁹ disheritede for euermore. And when here pees was þus made, þai toke her leue priueliche,¹⁰ ¹¹and went Home into Here owen¹² contree.

How Robert þe Brus chalanged Scotland. *Capitulo Centesimo*
8 lxxvj^{to}.¹³

ANd after,¹⁴ Robert¹⁵ þe Brus, Erl of Karrik, sent by his lettre to þe Erles and barons of Scotland, þat þai shulde come to him to Scone, in the morwen¹⁶ aftir⁷ þe concepcioun¹⁷ of oure Lady, 12 for hye nedes of þe land; and þe lordes come at þe day assignede. ¶ And at þe same day, Sir Robert þe Brus saide: “Faire lordes! ful wel ʒe wete¹⁸ þat in my persone du[e]lleþ þe ryght of þe reame¹⁹ of Scotland; and as ʒe weteþ²⁰ wel, as ryʒtful heir, siþ 16 ²¹þat Sir²¹ Iohn Bailoil, þat was our Kyng¹, ²²haþ vs²² forsak, & also lefte²³ his lande. ¶ And þouʒ it ²⁴so be²⁴ þat Kyng Edward of Engeland, wiþ wrongeful power haþ made me ²⁵to him²⁵ assent aʒeyns my wille,—yf þat ʒe wil grant þat y be Kyng¹ of Scotland, y 20 shal kepe ʒow aʒeyns Kyng¹ Edward & aʒeyns alle maner²⁶ men.” And wiþ þat worde, þe Abbot of Scone aros,²⁷ and bifore ham alle saide, þat hit was resoun forto helpe him, and þe lande to kepe and defende; and þo saide, in presence of ham alle, þat he wolde ²⁸ʒeue 24 him²⁸ a þousand²⁹ pound²⁹ forto mayntene þat land. and alle þe ³⁰opere grantede þe³¹ lande to him, and wiþ hir power him forto helpe, and defiede Kyng¹ Edward of Engeland, and saide þat Robert þe Brus shulde bene³² Kyng of Scotland.

28 How Sire Iohn³³ Comyn gaynesaide þe crounyng¹ of ³⁴ ³⁵Robert þe³⁵ Brus. *Capitulo Centesimo* ³⁶*Septuagesimo Septimo*.³⁶

¹ Symond the D. Symound þe O. ² Iohn þe O. ³ Athels O.
⁴ to O. ⁵⁻⁵ and bonden and D. & bound & O. bonden R.
⁶ om. O. ⁷ afterwarde D. aftirward O. ⁸⁻⁸ bere hem amys O.
⁹ be DO. ¹⁰ priuelys D. preuily O. ¹¹ leaf 112.
¹² om. DO. ¹³ lxxxxxvj^{to} O. ¹⁴ after þis D. aftir þis O.
¹⁵ ymage sic O. ¹⁶ morwe D. morne O. ¹⁷ Ascencioun D.
¹⁸ weteþ O. ¹⁹ me sic D. ²⁰ wote D. weten O. ²¹⁻²¹ om. O.
²²⁻²² vs hath DO. ²³ lost D. ²⁴⁻²⁴ be so O. ²⁵⁻²⁵ his O.
²⁶ maner of O. ²⁷ roos vp D. ²⁸⁻²⁸ hym ʒeue O. ²⁹ ti O.
³⁰ om. D. ³¹ þat O. ³² be D. ³³ Iohn of O.
³⁴ & O. ³⁵⁻³⁵ sir Robert D. ³⁶⁻³⁶ iij xvij^o O.

“L Ordynges,” saide Sir’ Iohn of Comyn, “þenketh oppoñ þe treuthe and þe¹ oth þat 3e² made vnto Kyng³ Edward of Engeland! and as tochyng⁴ myself, y Wil nouzt breke myn oth for no man.” And so he went fram⁵ þat cōpany at þat tyme; 4 wherfore Robert þe Brus, and alle þat to him consentede, were wonder’ wroþe, & þo⁶ manacede Sir’ Iohn of¹ Comyn. ¶ þo ordeynede þai⁷ anoþer conseil at Dumfrys, to þe whiche come þe forsaide Sir’ Iohn Comyn, 8 and duelled⁸ but ij mile fram⁵ 8 Dunfris, þere þat he was wont⁹ to sojourne and abide.

How Sir’ Iohn Comyn was traiterously slayn.¹⁰ Capitulo Centesimo lxxvij^o.¹¹

W Hen¹² Robert þe Brus wiste þat al þe grete¹³ of Scotland 12 were comen¹⁴ to Scone, saf Sir’ Iohn Comyn, þat sojourned þo ney; Scone, he sent after’ him specialiche,¹⁵ þat Sir’ Iohn Comen shulde com & speke wiþ him; and oppoñ þat he sent after’ him¹ Sir’ Iohn Comynus ij breþerne, and praiede him forto¹ come¹⁶ and 16 speke wiþ him atte þe Gray Freres at¹⁷ Donfris; and þat was þe Thoresday after Candelmasse; & Sir’ Iohn grauntede ham forto wende wiþ ham. And when he had¹⁸ herde masse, he toke a sop and drank¹, &¹⁸ afterwarde he bistrode his palfray and rode his way, 20 and so come to Dunfris. & Robert¹⁹ Bruys sawe him comme atte a wyndow, as he was in his chaumbre, and þo made ioye ynow, & come aþeyn²⁰ him, and halsed²¹ him aboute þe nek¹, & made wiþ him gode semblaunt. And when alle þe Erles & barons of 24 Scotland were present, Robert þe Brus spake and saide: “Sires,” quod he, “3e weten²² wel the²³ enchesouñ of þis comyng, & wherfore hit is: if þat 3e wil Graunt þat Y mote²⁴ be Kyng of Scotland, 25 26 as ryght heire of the londe.” And al þe lordes þat were þere, 28 saide wiþ on²⁷ voys þat he shulde bene²⁸ crowned Kyng¹ of Scotland,²⁶ and þat þai wolde him help and mayntene aþeyns al maner’ men on lif; and for him, if it wer’ nede, dye. ¶ þe Gentil knyzt þo,

¹ om. D. ² 3e DO. he R. ³ leaf 112, back. ⁴ MS. tothyng¹.

⁵ fro O. ⁶ so O. ⁷ þey þo O.

⁸⁻⁸ he duelled no D. dwelled¹ not O. ⁹ woned O. ¹⁰ queld¹ O.

¹¹ iij xvij^o O. ¹² Whenne þat O. ¹³ gret lordes D. ¹⁴ come O.

¹⁵ specially O. ¹⁶ kepe O. ¹⁷ of O. ¹⁸ om. O.

¹⁹ Robert þe D. Robert þe O. ²⁰ aþeynes D. aþens O.

²¹ colled¹ D. colled O. ²² wete D.

²³ the D. þe O. om. R. ²⁴ most¹ D. ²⁵ leaf 113.

²⁶⁻²⁶ om. D. ²⁷ o O. ²⁸ be O.

Sir¹ Iohñ of Comyn, ansuerede & saide: “certes, neuer² for me, ne forto haue of me as miche² helpe as þe value of a botouñ; for, þat oth þat y haue made to Kyng¹ Edward of Engeland, y shal holde þe¹ 4 while my lif laste.”³ And with þat worde he went fro þe company, and wolde haue went oppoñ his palfray. And Robert the Brus pursuede him wiþ a drawen⁴ sworde, and bare him þrouz the body, and Sir¹ Iohñ Comyn felle⁵ adoune vnto⁵ the Erþe. ¶ But when 8 Roger, þat was Sir¹ Iohñ Comines broþer, saw þe falsenesse, he⁶ stert vp⁷ to Sir¹ Robert the Brus, and smote him wiþ a knyft; but þe false traitoure was armed vnder⁷, so þat þe stroke myght done him none harme; and so miche helpe come aboute Sir⁸ Robert the 12 Brus, so þat Roger Comyn was þere quellede and alto-hewe into smale pices. ¶ And Robert þe Brus turnede azeyn þere þat Sir¹ Iohñ Comyn þe noble Baroñ lay⁹ woundede and pynede⁹ towards¹⁰ his deþ, bisides þe hye auter in the cherche of þe Gray Freres, and 16 saide vnto Sir¹ Iohñ Comyn: “O traitour! þow shalt be¹¹ dede, & neuer² after² lette myn avauncement¹¹”; and shooke his suorde at þe¹ hye auter¹, and smote him on¹² the heuede,¹³ þat þe brayn felle adoune¹⁴ oppoñ¹⁵ þe Gronde, and þe blode stert¹ vnto¹⁶ the 20 wallis; and 3itte into þis Day that¹⁷ blode¹⁸ is seyne þere,⁸ and¹⁹ no Water may wasshe it away; and so deide þat noble knyzt in holy cherche.

How Robert þe B[r]us was cronede, ²⁰ and made ²⁰ Kyng¹ of 24 Scotland. Capitulo Centesimo lxxix^o.²¹

ANd when þe intrusour²² Robert þe Brus saw þat no man þo wolde lete his coronaciouñ, he commandede alle ham þat were of power¹ shulde come to²³ his crownyng¹,²⁴ to Seynt²⁵ Iohnes 28 touñ²⁵ in Scotland. ¶ & so hit bifelle þat on¹ oure Lady Day, þe²⁶ Anunciaciouñ, þe Bisshop of Glascowe²⁷ and þe Bisshop of Seynt Andrewus²⁸ crownede²⁹ for her Kyng, Robert the Brus,²⁹ in Seynt Iohnes toune,³⁰ & made him Kyng¹. And anone after² he

¹ om. O. ² michel D. ³ lasteþ O. ⁴ draw DO.

⁵⁻⁵ douñ to D. doun vnto O. ⁶ all three MSS. have and.

⁷ om. DO. ⁸ om. D. ⁹⁻⁹ wounde and pynyng¹ D. ¹⁰ toward¹ O.

¹¹ bene D. ¹² oppoñ D. ¹³ heed¹ O. ¹⁴ doun O. ¹⁵ to D.

¹⁶ an hye oppoñ D. on hye in-to O. ^{xx} ¹⁷ the D. ¹⁸ leaf 113, back.

¹⁹ þat O. ²⁰⁻²⁰ om. O. ²¹ iiij ix^o O.

²² traitoure D. traytour O. ²³ vnto O. ²⁴ Corounyng¹ O.

²⁵⁻²⁵ Iohñ O. ²⁶ of O. ²⁷ Glastoñ DO. ²⁸ Andrew O.

²⁹⁻²⁹ for her Kyng Robert the Brus D. for her Kyng Robert þe Brus O. her¹ Robert R.

³⁰ MS. has toune toune, with the second toune underlined for omission.

drof out al¹ þe Englysshe-men out¹ of Scotland; & þai fledde,² and come & pleyne vnto³ Kyng^t Edward, how Robert þe Brus hadde dryuen⁴ ham out of the lande, & disherite⁵ ham.

How Kyng Edwarde dobit at Westminster xiiij score knyghte, 4
Capitulo Centesimo Ottogesimo.

ANd when Kyng Edward^t herde of þis meschief, he⁶ suore þat he wolde þerof bene avenged, and saide þat ‘alle þe traitours⁷ of Scotland shulde bene⁸ hongede and draw, and þat þai 8 shulde neuer bene⁹ raunsonede.’ ¶ And Kyng^t Edward þouzt oppoñ þis falsnesse þat þe Scottes hade done, and sende¹⁰ after alle¹¹ þe bachilers¹¹ of Engeland, þat þai shulde come to Londoñ at Whitsontyde; and he dobit¹² at Westminster iiij^{xx} knyghtes. 12

¶ þo ordeynede him þe noble Kyng Edward forto wende into Scotland, to werr^t oppoñ Robert þe Brus; and sent bifore him¹ into Scotland^t 14 Sir^t Aymer of¹⁵ Valance, Erl of Penbrok^t, & Sir Henry Percy,¹⁶ wip a fair^t company, þat pursewede þe Scottes and 16 brenede¹⁷ tounes & castilles; & afterwarde come the Kyng himself, wip Erles¹⁸ and barons a fair^t companye.

How Robert þe Brus was scmfitede in bataile; and how¹⁹
Symond FriseH was¹⁹ slayñ. Capitulo Centesimo Ottogesimo 20
primo.

THe²⁰ Fryday next bifore²¹ þe Assumpcion of our^t Lady, Kyng Edward mette Robert the¹ Brus bisides Seynt Iohnes touñ in Scotland, & with his company²²; of þe²³ whiche company¹ Kyng 24 Edward quelled^t vij Mt. ¶ When Robert þe Brus saw þis meschief, he²⁴ gan to flee, and hudde²⁵ him þat men myght nouzt him fynde; but Sir^t Symond FriseH persuede him so sore, so²³ þat he turnede²⁶ & abode bataile, for he was a worþi²⁷ knyzt and a bolde 28 of body²⁷; and þe Englysshe-men persuede him²⁸ sore on²⁹ euery

¹ om. O. ² fleý D. ³ to D. ⁴ dyve sic O. ⁵ disheritede D.

⁶ MS. has he sor with sor underlined for omission.

⁷ traitoures D. Traytours O. traitors R. ⁸ be O. ⁹ be DO.

¹⁰ sent^t DO. ¹¹—¹¹ bachelrye D. þe Bachelrye O.

¹² tobbet D. dubbed^t O. ¹³ fourtene score DO. ¹⁴ leaf 114.

¹⁵ om. D. þe O. ¹⁶ Percy barouñ D. Percy Baroñ O. ¹⁷ brent O.

¹⁸ erler sic D. ¹⁹ om. O. ²⁰ O the O.

²¹ before sic O. ²² Companye Kyng Edward^t O. ²³ om. D.

²⁴ and DO. ²⁵ hyd O. ²⁶ turnede azeýne D. turned azen O.

²⁷—²⁷ Knyzt of body and bold D. ²⁸ hym euere O. ²⁹ in O.

side, and quellede þe stede þat Sir' Symond FriseH roode oppoñ; and þai toke him and lade him into¹ þe hoste. ¶ And Sir' Symond bigan forto flater and speke faire, and saide: "lordes, y⁴ shal zeue zow iij M^t marz² of Siluer, and myn³ horse and myn³ herneys, and aH myn³ armure, and bicomme a begger." þo ansuerede Theobalde of Peuenes,⁴ þat was þe Kyngus Archir', "Now God me so helpe, hit is for nouzt þat þow spexte; for alle þe golde of Engeland y wolde⁵ nouzt lete þe⁵ gone⁶ with-out commaundement of Kyng Edward." And þo was he lade to þe Kyng⁷; but⁸ þe Kyng wolde nouzt⁹ see him, but commaundede¹⁰ him to ben ledde¹⁰ away to haue his dome at¹¹ Londoñ. In oure Ladies Eve, þe¹² Natiuitie, he was hongede¹³ and drawe, & his¹⁴ ¹⁵heuede smyten¹⁵ of, and hongede azein wiþ cheynes of yren oppoñ þe Galwes; & his heuede¹⁶ was sette¹² oppoñ Londoñ Brugge vppoñ a spere; and azeyns Cristenmasse¹⁷ þe body was brent, for enchesouñ þat þe men¹⁶ þat kepte þe body by nyght, saw meny deueles raumpande wiþ yren crokes rynnng oppoñ þe galwes, and horribliche turmentede þe body; and meny þat ham sawe, anone after þai deide for drede, or woxen made, or sore sikenesse þai had. ¶ And in þat bataile²⁰ was taken¹⁸ þe Bisshop of Glascowe,¹⁹ þe Bisshope of Seynt Andrewes,²⁰ þe Abbot of Scone, aH armede wiþ yren as men of Armes, &²¹ false traitoures and false prelatis azeyns her' oth; and þai were brouzt to þe Kyng, and þe Kyng sent ham to þe Pope of²⁴ Rome, þat he shulde done²² wiþ ham what his wille were.

How Iohñ, Erl of Atheles, was take, & put to²³ dep. Capitulo ¶ Centesimo Ottogesimo secundo.

ANd at þat bataile fledde²⁴ Sire Iohñ²⁵ Erl of Ateles,²⁵ and went²⁸ into a cherche, & pere hudde²⁶ him for drede. But he mizt haue pere no refute, for enchesouñ þat þe cherche was enterditede prouz a general sentence; and in þe same cherche he was take.²⁷ ¶ And pis Sir' Iohñ wende wel haue scapede fram²⁸ þe deth, for³² enchesouñ þat he cleymede kynrede of Kyng' Edward. And

¹ to D. vnto O.

² Mark O.

³ my O.

⁴ MS. has Peueneseye, with eye underlined for omission.

⁵⁻⁵ þe not lete O. ⁶ go DO. ⁷ om. O. ⁸ and DO.

⁹ leaf 114, back. ¹⁰⁻¹⁰ to lede him D. to lede hym O. ¹¹ to O.

¹² om. D. ¹³ honge O. ¹⁴ h sic D. ¹⁵⁻¹⁵ hed' smyte O.

¹⁶ heed O. ¹⁷ Cristemasse O. ¹⁸ take O. ¹⁹ Bastoñ DO.

²⁰ Andrewes and D. Andrews and O. ²¹ as O. ²² do D.

²³ to þe D. ²⁴ fley D. flye O. ²⁵⁻²⁵ of Atheles Erle O.

²⁶ hid O. ²⁷ taken D. ²⁸ fro D.

¹ Kyng^t Edward wolde¹ no longer ² bene taried² of his traitoures, and sent him to Londoñ in haste; & pere he ³ was ⁴ Hongede, and his ⁵ ⁶ Heuede smyten⁶ of, and his body brent⁷ al into smal⁷ asshes. ¶ But at þe prayer⁸ of þe ⁸ Quene Margarete, for ⁴ enchesouñ þat he cleymede ⁹ of Kyng Edward kynrede,⁹ his drawyng^t ¹⁰ was forzeuen him.¹⁰

How Iohñ, þat was ¹¹ William Waleys broþer,¹¹ was put to þe ¹² dep. *Capitulo Centesimo* ^{xx} *iiij* iij^o. 8

WHen þe gretteste maistres of Scotland^t ¹³ were þus¹³ done to euel depe, & shent for her^t falsenesse, Iohñ, þat was William Waleys broþer, was tak¹⁴ as Sir^t Iohñ, Erl of Atheles, was.

How Robert þe Brus ¹⁵ fley fro¹⁵ Scotland to ¹⁶ Norway. *Capitulo Centesimo ottogesimo* *iiij*^{to}. 12

ANd at¹⁷ þat same tyme, was Robert þe Brus miche hatede amonges¹⁸ þe peple of Scotland^t; so he¹⁹ wist nouȝt what to²⁰ doñ; and forto hide²¹ him, he went into Norway, to þe Kyng þat ¹⁶ had spousede his sustre, and pere helde him, socour²² forto haue. ¶ And when Robert þe Brus might nouȝt ²³ bene founde²³ in Scotland^t, Kyng^t Edward þo lette crye his pees þrouȝ²⁴ al þe land^t, & his were vsede, and his ministres seruede þrouȝ-out al¹⁷ þe land^t. 20

How Kyng Edward^t deide. *Capitulo Centesimo Ottogesimo quinto*.

WHen Kyng^t Edward hade abatede his enemys, he turnede aȝeyn Southward, and a maladye toke him at Burgh op²⁵ ²⁴ Sande, in þe Marche of Scotland^t. And he wiste wel þat his dep was ful neyȝ, and callede to him Sir^t Henry þe Lacy, Erl of Lyncoñ,²⁶ Sir^t Gy, Erl of Warrwyk, Sir^t Aymer^t Valence, Erl of Penbrok^t, and Sir^t Robert of Clifford, barouñ, and prayede ham, ²⁸ oppoñ þe faiȝe²⁷ þat þai to him owede, þat þai shulde make Edward^t

¹⁻¹ the kyng^t nolde D. þe kyng nold O.

²⁻² be trayede D. be taryed^t O. ³ leaf 115. ⁴ shulde ben D.

⁵ þe D. ⁶⁻⁶ heed smyte O. ⁷⁻⁷ alto DO. ⁸ om. O.

⁹⁻⁹ kynred of Kyng^t Edward D. ¹⁰⁻¹⁰ forzeue hym was O.

¹¹⁻¹¹ Williamus broþer Waleys D. ¹² om. DO. ¹³⁻¹³ þus were D.

¹⁴ tak and done to deth D. take & done to deth O.

¹⁵⁻¹⁵ fledde fram D. ¹⁶ in-to O. ¹⁷ om. D. ¹⁸ among O.

¹⁹ h sic D. ²⁰ forto O. ²¹ abyde O.

²² socoure al D. socour al O. ²³⁻²³ be fonden D. be founde O

²⁴ þrouȝ-out^t D. þurgh-owt O. ²⁵ oppoñ D. vpon O.

²⁶ Nichol D. Nichole O. ²⁷ fay O.

¹of Carnaryuan, Kyng¹ of¹ Engeland¹, his sone, as raþe as þai myght; ¶ and þat þai shulde nought suffre Piers of Gauastoñ come aþeyn into Engeland forto make his sone vse ryaute. And þai ⁴grantede him wiþ god wille; and þe Kyng toke his sacramentz of holy cherche, as a gode Cristen man shulde, and deide in Verray repentaunce. ¶ & when he hade bene² Kyng¹ lv 3er¹, he deide, & was buried at Westminster wiþ miche solempnite: oppoñ whos ⁸soule, God¹ haue mercy!

Of Merlynus³ prophecies, þat were³ declarede of Kyng¹ Edward, þat was Kyng¹ ^{xx}Henries sone. *Capitulo Centesimo iiiiij vj^{to}.*

¹² **A** Nd of þis Kyng¹ Edward,⁵ propheciede Merlyn, and callede him a dragoñ, þe secunde kyng¹ of þe vj laste kynges þat shulde bene⁶ forto regne in Engeland; and saide þat 'he shulde ⁷ben mellede⁷ wiþ mercy & also wiþ sternesse, þat shulde kepe Engeland¹ fram⁸ colde and fram⁸ hete; and þat he shulde oppen ¹⁶his mouþ toward Walys, and þat he shulde sette his on⁹ foot in Wyk¹, and þat he shulde closen¹⁰ wiþ Wallis, þat shulde do¹¹ miche harme to his seed¹'; and he saide soþ, for þe gode Kyng Edward was medled¹² wiþ mercy & with fersnesse; wiþ mercy aþeyns his ²⁰enemys of Walis, & after of Scotland¹; wiþ fersnesse, when he put ham to the¹³ deth for her¹ falsnesse & traiteri, as þai had diserued hit⁴; And wel kepte he Engeland fram¹⁴ colde and fram¹⁴ hete, siþ he kepte hit fram alle maner enemys þat ronne oppoñ ²⁴him to done him eny ¹⁵harme or¹⁵ wronge. ¶ And wel openede he his mouþ toward Walys, and made hit ¹⁶quake þrouz þe hidour of his mouthe, When he conquerede hit þrouz dent of suerd; for þe Prynce Lewelyn, and ¹⁷ ¹⁸his broþer¹⁸ Daud¹³ Rys and Morgan, ²⁸wer¹ put vnto¹⁹ deþ for her¹ falsnesse and her¹ folie. ¶ And he sette his one⁹ foot in Wik¹, and conquered Berwik¹; at þe whiche conquest was ²⁰slayn xxv M^t and vij C[̄], out-take ham þat wer¹ brent in þe Rede Halle; and þe wallis þat he lete make shulde²¹ ³²ben⁶ noious ²²to his²² seede, as men shal hure after¹ in þe lif²³ of Sire Edward²⁴ his sone.

¹ leaf 115, back.² be O. ³⁻³ prophecye O. ⁴ om. O.⁵ om. D. ⁶ be DO.⁷⁻⁷ be medlede D. be melled O. ⁸ fro DO.⁹ o O. ¹⁰ close D. ¹¹ doñ DO. ¹² melled O. ¹³ om. DO.¹⁴ fro O. ¹⁵⁻¹⁵ om. DO. harme o R. ¹⁶ leaf 116.¹⁷ & Daud DO. ¹⁸⁻¹⁸ MS. has his broþer his broþer.¹⁹ vnto the D. vnto þ^e O. ²⁰ were DO. ²¹ shal O.²²⁻²² vnto þ^e O. ²³ MS. liþ.²⁴ Edward of Capiarifan D. Edward¹ of Carnerifan O.

¶ And 3itte saide Merlyn, þat 'he shulde make Ryuer rynne in¹ bloode and wip brayn': and þat semede wel in his werres, þere þat he hade þe maistry. ¶ And 3itte saide Merlyn: þat 'þere shulde come a peple out of þe north west, duryng¹ þe regne of 4 þe forsaide dragouñ, þat ²shulde bene² lad be an euel³ grehounde, þat shulde⁴ þe dragouñ croune Kyng; þat aftirward shulde⁴ flee ouer¹ þe see ⁵wipout comyng a3eyn,⁵ for drede of þe dragouñ⁶': and þat was prouede by Sir Iohn Baloil, þat Kyng Edward made 8 forto⁷ bene⁸ Kyng of Scotland, þat falsely⁹ aroos a3eynnes him; and after, he fledde to his owen landes in¹⁰ Fraunce, and neuer come a3eyne into Scotland for drede of King Edward. ¶ And 3itte said Merlyn, 'þat þe peple þat shulde lede þe forsaide 12 grewhonde shulde bene¹¹ faderles vnto¹² a certain tyme': & he saide soth, ffor þe peple of Scotland gretliche wer' disessed sith þat sir Iohn Baloil, her' Kyng, fley fro¹³ Scotland.

¶ And 3itte saide Merlyn, 'þat þe sone shulde bicom in his 16 tyme as rede as ¹⁴eny blode, in tokening¹ of¹⁵ grete mortalite of dep of peple': and þat was¹⁶ wel knowen when þe Scottes was¹⁷ slayne. ¶ And siþ saide Merlyn, 'þat þilk dragouñ shulde norisshe a fox þat shulde meve¹⁸ werr' a3eynes him, ¹⁹þat ²⁰in his tyme shulde 20 nouzt bene²⁰ endede': and þat semede wel by Robert þe Brus, þat Kyng Edward norisshe²¹ in his chambre, þat siþennes²² stale away, and mevede grete werr' a3eynes him¹⁹; whiche wer' was nouzt endede in his tyme. ¶ And afterward, Merlyn tolde þat 'þis 24 dragouñ shulde ²³ben holde²³ þe best body of al þe world': and he saide soþ, ffor þe gode Kyng Edward was þe worthiest knyght of al þe worlde in his tyme.

¶ And 3it saide Merlyn þat 'þe dragouñ shulde dye in þe 28 marche of anoþer land, and þat his londe shulde be longe ²⁴wipouten a²⁴ gode keper', and þat men shulde wepe for his deth, fram þe yle of Sheepe vnto þe Ile of Marcyll, wher²⁵ (allas!) shal²⁶ be²⁷ her' commune songe amonge peple faderles, in þe lande wastede': and 32

¹ with O. ²⁻² shal be D. schulð be O. ³ ylle O. ⁴ shal D.

⁵⁻⁵ om. DO.

⁶ dragouñ with-oute comyng a3eyne D. dragon) with-oute comyng a3en O.

⁷ to D. ⁸ be O. ⁹ falseliche D. ¹⁰ of D. ¹¹ be D.

¹² vntil O. ¹³ fram ham oute of D. ¹⁴ leaf 116, back. ¹⁵ of þe O.

¹⁶ om. O. ¹⁷ were DO. ¹⁸ meve grete D. meue gret O.

¹⁹⁻¹⁹ om. D. ²⁰⁻²⁰ schulð not in his tyme be O. ²¹ norissed O.

²² sethen O. ²³⁻²³ be D. be holde O.

²⁴⁻²⁴ without eny D. withoute eny O. ²⁵ wherfore DO.

²⁶ shulde D. schulð O. ²⁷ ben O.

pat¹ prophecie was know oueral ful wel¹; ffor þe goode Kyng Edward deide at Burgh op Sandes, þat is oppoñ² þe marche of Scotland; wherfore þe Englysshe-men gretlich³ were descomfitede⁴ & gouernede in Northumberlond, ffor enchesouñ þat Kyng Edwardes sone sette by þe Scottes non⁵ force, for þe⁶ ryaute of Piers of Gauastoñ; wherfore (allas!) was þe songe þrouz-oute⁷ Engeland for defaute of a gode warde; fram þe Ile of Sheepey vnto þe yle of Marcile, þe peple made miche⁸ sorw for gode⁸ Kyng Edwardes deth; ffor þai wende⁹ þat¹⁰ gode¹¹ Kyng¹ Edward shulde haue goñ into¹² þe Holy Land; ¹³for þat was holliche¹⁴ his purpos: oppoñ whos soule, God of his⁸ blisse haue mercy¹⁵!

12 Of Kyng Edward, þat was Kyng Edwardes sone. *Capitulum Gentesimo Octogesimo Septimo.*

And after þis Kyng⁸ Edward, regnede Edward his sone, þat was born in Carnaryvan, and¹⁶ went into Fraunce,¹⁷ and spoused Isabeþ, þe Kyngus douzter of Fraunce,¹⁷ þe xxv day of Ianuer at þe cherche of our Lady of¹⁸ Boloign, in þe 3er of our Lorde M^t CCC vij. ¶ & þe xx day of Februer,¹⁹ þe nexte 3er þat come after, he was cronede solempliche²⁰ at Westminster of þe Erchebisshope Robert of Wynchelse,²¹ of Kanterbery; and þere was so grete prees of peple þat Sir Iohn Bakwelle was dede and mordrede. ¶ And anone as þe gode Kyng¹ Edward was dede, Sir Edward his sone, Kyng¹ of Engeland, sent after Piers of Gauastoñ into Gascoigne; and so miche louede him þat he callede him his 'broþer'; and anone after he 3af him þe lordeshipp of Wallyngford; and hit was nouzt longe after þat he ne 3af him þe Erl dome of Cornwaile, a3eynes alle þe lordes²² wille of þe reaume.²² ¶ And þo brought he Sir Walter of Langetoñ, Bisshop of Chestre, into prisouñ, into the Toure of Londoñ, with ij knafes allone him to²³ serue, for enchesouñ þat²⁴ þe Kyng¹ was wroj with him, for cause þat Sir Wa[l]ter made pleint²⁵ vpon him to his fader; wherfore he was put into²⁶ prisouñ in þe tyme of trailbastañ.

1-1 prophycyed Merlyn which was wel knowe oueral O. ² in D.
³ gretly O. ⁴ discomfitede D. dyscomfited dyscomforted sic O.
⁵ no O. ⁶ om. D. ⁷ þrouz-out al D. burgh-out al O. ⁸ om. O.
⁹ went O. ¹⁰ the D. þat þe O. ¹¹ MS. gode Gode. ¹² to D.
¹³ leaf 117. ¹⁴ holy O. ¹⁵ mercy Amen O.
¹⁶ and þis Edward DO. ¹⁷⁻¹⁷ om. O. ¹⁸ at O.
¹⁹ ffeurerer DO. ²⁰ solempnyly O. ²¹ Wynchestre O.
²²⁻²² willes of Engeland D. ²³ forto DO. ²⁴ om. DO.
²⁵ compleynt DO. ²⁶ in D.

¶ And þis¹ Piers of Gauastoñ made so grete maistries, þat he went into þe Kyngus tresorie in þe Abbay of Westminster, and toke² þe table of golde, ³wiþ þe tresteles of þe same, and meny opere riche gewelles þat some tyme wer' þe noble⁴ Kyng Arthures, 4 and toke ham to a marchant þat me clepede⁵ Aymery of Friscombande, for he shulde bere ham ouer' þe see into Gascoigne: and þai come neuer' azeyne after; wherfore hit was⁶ grete losse vnto⁷ þis land. 8

¶ And when þis Piers was so rychely auauuncede, he bicome so proude and so stout, wherof alle þe grete lordes of þe reame had him in despite for his grete beryng^t. Wherfore⁸ Sir' Henry þe⁹ Lacy, Erl of Lyncoñ,¹⁰ and Sir' Guy Erl of Warrwyk (þe whiche 12 gode lordes þe gode Kyng^t Edward chargede, þat Piers of Gauastoñ shulde nouzt come into Engeland^t forto brynge his sone into ryot), ¶ And alle þe lordes of Engeland^t, assemblede ham⁹ at a certeyn day at þe¹¹ Frere Prichoures of¹² Londoñ, and speken¹³ of þe¹⁴ dis- 16. honour þat þe Kyng dede to¹⁵ his reame and to his croñe. and so þai assemblede¹⁶ alle, boþe Erles, baroñs¹⁷ and communes, þat þe forsaide Piers of Gauastoñ shulde ben¹⁸ exilede out¹⁹ of Engeland. And so hit was done; for he forsuore Engeland^t, and went into 20 Irland^t; and þere þe Kyng made him chiefteyn and Gouvernour' of þe lande²⁰ by his commissiouñ; and þere þis Piers was chefteyn of al þe land^t,²⁰ and dede þere aH þat him liked^t, and had þere al⁹ what he wolde. ¶ And²¹ þat tyme were þe templeres exilede prouz al 24 cristendome,²² ffor enchesouñ þat men put oppoñ ham þat þai shulde done²³ ²⁴þing þat was²⁴ azeynes þe faip²⁵ and gode bileue. ¶ Kyng^t Edward louede Piers of Gauastoñ so miche²⁶ þat he might nouzt forlete his company; and so miche þe Kyng 3af and bihight 28 to þe peple of Engeland^t, þat þe exiling of þe forsaide Piers shulde bene²⁷ reukede at Staunford^t, þrouz ham þat²⁸ him hade²⁸ exilede. ¶ Wherfore Piers of Gauastoñ come azeyne into Engeland^t; and when he was comen²⁹ azeyn into þis lande, he despisede þe grettest 32 lordes of þis lande, and callede Sir' Robert³⁰ Clare Erl of Gloucestre,

¹ the forsaide D. þe forsayd^t O. ² nome DO. ³ leaf 117, back.

⁴ gode D. ⁵ Called O. ⁶ was a D.

⁷ in-to O. ⁸ wherof D. ⁹ om. DO. ¹⁰ Nichole DO.

¹¹ om. O. ¹² at O. ¹³ spek^t D.

¹⁴ MS. þe þe. ¹⁵ vnto O. ¹⁶ assentede DO.

¹⁷ om. D. & baroñs O. ¹⁸ be O. ¹⁹ om. D. ^{20—20} om. O.

²¹ And in O. ²² cristiente DO. ²³ do O.

^{24—24} þinges D. þing^t O. ²⁵ fey O. ²⁶ leaf 118. ²⁷ be D.

^{28—28} had hym O. ²⁹ come O. ³⁰ Robert of DO.

'Horessone,' and þe Erl of Lyncoln,¹ Sir' Henry þe² Lacy, 'Broste bely,' and Sir' Guy Erl of Warrwyk, 'blanke³ hounde of Arderne.' And also he callede þe noble Erl and gentil, Thomas of Lancastre, 4 'Cherl,' and meny⁴ othere⁵ shames and scorn⁴ ham saide, & by meny opere⁶ grete lordes of Engeland, wherfore þai were towards⁷ him ful angri and sore annoiede.

¶ And⁸ in þe⁹ same tyme deide þe Erl of Lyncoln¹⁰; but he 8 charged, or he was dede, Thomas of Lancastre, erl, þat was his sone-in-lawe, þat he shulde mayntene his quereH azeyns þe same Piers of Gauastoñ, oppoñ his benisoñ. ¶ And so hit was ordeynede, prou¹¹ helpe of þe Erle of Lancastr' and of þe Erl of Warrwyk, 12 þat þe forsaide¹² Piers was biheuedede¹³ at Gauersiche bisides Warwik, þe xix day of¹⁴ Iun,¹⁵ in þe 3ere of grace¹⁶ M^t CCC &¹⁷ xij; wherfore þe Kyng was sore annoiede, and prayede God þat he might¹⁸ see þat day to bene avengede of¹⁹ þe dep of þe forsaide 16 Piers. ¶ And so hit bifelle aftirward, as 3e shul hure,—allas þe tyme!—ffor þe forsaide Erl of Lancastre & meny opere²⁰ grete barouñ,²² wer' put to pitouse dep, and martrede, for enchesouñ of þe forsaide quereH.

20 ¶ The Kyng was þo at Londoñ, and helde a parlement, and ordeynede þe lawes of Sir' Symond Mountford; wherfor the Erl of Lancastre, and alle þe Erles & aH þe clergye of Engeland, maden an oth, prou³ conseile of Robert of Wynchelse, forto maintene þe 24 ordenaunces²³ for euermore.

How Robert þe Brus come azeyne into Scotland, and Gaderede a grete power' of men forto werr' oppoñ Kyng Edward.

¶ Capitulo ¶ Centesimo Ottogesimo viij^o.

28 **A**Nd when Sir' Robert þe Brus, þat made him Kyng of Scotland, þat was fledde into Normandy²⁴ for drede of dep of þe² goode Kyng Edward, and herd of þe debate þat was in Enge-

¹ Nichol D. Nichole O. ² om. D. ³ blac D. Blake O.

⁴⁻⁴ other scornes and shame D. oper scornes & schame O.

⁵ MS. ouere. ⁶⁻⁶ & seyde by oper meny O. ⁷ toward O.

⁸ MS. has in the margin, in same hand: Obijt Henricus Comes Lincoln.

⁹ that D. om. O. ¹⁰ Nichole DO. ¹¹ þurgh þe O.

¹² forseid sir O. ¹³ beheded O.

¹⁴ MS. has of lanuer, with lanuer underlined for omission.

¹⁵ Ianuer D. ¹⁶ grace a O. ¹⁷ om. DO.

¹⁸ most D. muste O. ¹⁹ vpon O. ²⁰ Another O.

²¹ leaf 118, back. ²² barons D.

²³ ordenance D. ²⁴ Norway D. Norway O.

land¹ bituene þe Kyng and his lordes, he ordeynede an hoste, and come into Engeland², into Northumberland³, and clenly destroyede þe contreye. ¶ And when Kyng Edward herde þis tidynges,⁴ he ²lete assemble⁵ his host, and mette þe Scottis at Streuelyn,⁶ in þe day of 4 þe⁴ Natiuite of Seint Iohn þe Baptiste, in þe vij⁴ 3er⁷ of his regne,⁸ and in þe 3ere of our⁹ Lorde ⁶Ihesu Crist,⁶ M⁺ CCC &⁷ xiiij. Allas þe sorw and losse þat þere was done! for þere was slayn, þe noble Erl Gilbert of Clare, Sire Robert of Clifford⁸, a⁷ barouñ, and meny 8 opere; & of opere peple þat no man coup nombre; and þere Kyng Edward was scomfitede. And Sir⁹ Edmund⁸ of Maule, þe⁸ kynges stiward, for drede went and drenchedede him-self⁹ in a fresshe ryuer⁹ þat is callede Bannokesbourñ; þerefore¹⁰ ¹¹þe Scottes ¹²saide, in reprofe and despite of Kyng¹ Edward, foralsemiche¹² as he louede forto go¹³ by watere, and also for he was descomfitede at Bannokesbour[n]e, þerefore maidenes made a songe þerof¹⁴, ¹⁴in þat contre, of Kyng Edward of Engeland¹⁴ and in þis maner⁹ þai ¹⁶songe¹⁵:—

¶ **Maydenes of Engetande, sare may 3e morne,
For tynt 3e haue [lost]¹⁶ 3oure lemmans at Bannokesborñ
wip hevalogh. 20**

¶ **What wende þe Kyng¹ of Engeland¹ haue ygete¹⁷ Scotlande
wip Rombylogh.**

When Kyng Edward¹ was descomfitede, he was wonder¹ sory, and faste¹⁸ fledde wip his folc⁴ þat was laste alif¹⁹, and went ²⁴to Berwik¹, and þere helde him. ¶ And after, he toke hostages, þat is to seyne,²⁰ vij childerne, of þe rychest¹ of þe touñ; and þe Kyng went to Londoñ, and toke²¹ conseile of þinges þat were nedeful vnto þe reaume of Engeland¹. 28

¶ And in þe same tyme hit bifelle þat þere was in Engeland¹ a rybaude þat men²² callede Iohn Tanner; and he went and saide þat he was þe goode Kyng¹ Edwardus sone, and lete him calle ‘Edward of Carnaruañ’; and þerefore he was take²³ at Oxenford¹, ³²and þere²⁴ chalangede þe frere Carmes chirche þat Kyng Edward hade 3eue²⁵ ham, þe whiche cherch²⁶ some tyme was⁴ þe Kyngus

¹ tydynges O. ^{2—2} assemblede D. ³ Estreuelyn D. Estryuelyn O.

⁴ om. O. ⁵ regne vij O. ^{6—6} om. O. ⁷ om. DO.

⁸ þe DO. for þe R. ⁹ him D. hym O. ¹⁰ wherfore DO.

¹¹ leaf 119. ¹² forasmyche O. ¹³ gone D. om. O. ^{14—14} om. D.

¹⁵ saiden D. ¹⁶ om. D. ¹⁷ gete DO.

¹⁸ MS. faste faste, with second faste underlined for omission.

¹⁹ on lif¹ D. ²⁰ weten D. wete O. ²¹ to sic D. nome O.

²² me DO. ²³ taken DO. ²⁴ þere he DO. ²⁵ youe O.

²⁶ Cherche was O.

Halle. ¶ And afterwarde was þis Iohn ladde to Northampton, and¹ draw, and þere² hongede for his falsenesse. and er' þat he was dede, he confessede,³ and saide bifore al þe folc, þat 'þe deuel 4 bihighte him þat he shulde be Kyng⁴ of Engeland'; and þat 'he hade seruede þe deuel iij zere.'

How þe touñ of Berwik was taken⁴ prou3 treson; & how ij Cardynales wer' robbet in Engeland. *Capitulo Centesimo*
8 *iiij ix^{xx}o.*

⁵ **A** Nd in myd Lentoñ⁶ Sunday in þe zere of our Lord Ihesu Crist M^t CCC xvj, Berwik was loste, prou3 false tresoun of on, Piers of Spaldyng^t; þe whiche Piers, þe Kyng^t had put þere 12 forto kepe þe⁷ same toune wiþ⁸ meny burgeys of þe⁹ touñ. ¶ Wherfore þe childerne þat were put in hostages¹⁰ prou3 þe burgeys of Berwik,¹¹ folwede þe Kyngus Marchalcie meny daye,¹² fetrede in stronge yrenes.

16 ¶ And after' þat tyme þere come ij Cardinales into Engeland, as þe Pope hade ham sende forto mak pees bituene Scotland and Engeland. and as þai went toward Duresme forto haue sacrede maistre Lowys of Beaumont, Bisshop of Duresme; and as þai went, 20 þai were taken⁴ and robbit oppoñ þe more of Wigelesdoñ¹³; of whiche robrye, Sir' Gilbert of Midelton was atteint, and take,¹⁴ and hongede & drawe¹⁵ at London, and his¹⁶ heuede smyten¹⁶ of, and his bowales taken out of his body, and brent, & his body quar- 24 tared, and his heuede¹⁷ ¹⁸smyten of, and¹⁸ sette oppoñ a spere, and sette oppoñ Newegate; and þe iij quarters sent to iij citees of Engeland.

¶ And þat same tyme bifelle meny meschyues in Engeland; for 28 þe pore² peple deide in Engeland for hunger; and so miche and¹⁹ so faste folc deiden, ²⁰þat vnneþes²⁰ men m[i]ght ham bury; for a quarter of² whete was worþe xls., and ij zere and an halfe a quarter of²¹ whete¹⁹ was worþe ²²ij marz²²; and ofte-tymes þe pore

¹ and þere was D. ² om. D. ³ confessede him D. ⁴ take O.

⁵ leaf 119, back. ⁶ lentenes D. lent O. ⁷ þat O.

⁸ MS. has wiþ me- with me- underlined for omission. ⁹ þe same D.

¹⁰ MS. hostages prou3 prou3, with first prou3 underlined for omission; hostage DO.

¹¹ Berwyk^t and þe burgeys of Berwik D. Berwyk^t and þe Burgeys of Berwyk^t O.

¹² dayes DO. ¹³ Wyngelestoñ D. Wyngeledonne O. ¹⁴ taken DO.

¹⁵ drawn DO. ¹⁶⁻¹⁶ heed smyte O. ¹⁷ heed O. ¹⁸⁻¹⁸ om. DO.

¹⁹ om. O. ²⁰⁻²⁰ þan vnneþe O. ²¹ om. DO.

²²⁻²² xxvj s. viij d. ij marc O.

peple stale childern and ete ham, and ete also alle¹ þe houndes þat þai might take, and ek Horse & cattes; and after, þere felle a grete² pestilence amonges³ bestes in diuerse contrees of Engeland duryng Kyng Edwardes lif.

How þe Scottes robbede Northumberland. Capitulo Centesimo Nonogesimo.

ANd in þe same tyme⁴ come þe⁴ Scottes azeyne into Engeland,⁵ and destroiede Northumberland,⁶ and brent þat lande, & ⁸ robbet hit,⁶ and quelled men and wymmen, & childern þat laye⁷ in cradeff, and brent also holy cherche, and destroiede Cristendome, and ⁸toke & ⁸bare awaye Englisshemennes godes, as þai hade bene⁹ Sarasins or paynemes. and of þe wickednesse þat þai ¹² deden,¹⁰ aH þe worlde spake þerof, þrouz al Cristendome.

How þe Scottes wolde nouzt amende her' trespasse; and þerfore Scotland was enterditede. ¶ Capitulo Centesimo Nonogesimo primo.

ANd when¹¹ Pope¹² Iohn, þe xxij after seynt Petre, herde of þe grete sorwe and meschief þat þe Scottes wrought, he was wonder' sory þat Cristendome was so destroiede þrouz þe Scottes, and nameliche¹³ for þai destroiede so holy cherche; Wherfore þe ²⁰ Pope¹⁴ sent a general sentence, vnder' his bullis of leade, vnto þe Erchebisshope of Kaunterbery, and to þe Erchebisshope of 3ork', þat 'if Robert þe Brus of Scotland wolde nouzt be iustifiede, and make amendes vnto¹⁵ kyng ¹⁶Edward of Engeland,¹⁶ his¹⁷ lorde, & ²⁴ make amendes of his losse, and his harmes þat þai hade done in Engeland, and also to restore þe godes þat þai hade¹⁸ ¹⁹take out of¹⁹ holy cherech, þat þe sentence shulde be pronouncede þrouz aH Engeland. ¶ And when þe Scottes herde þis, þai wolde nouzt ²⁸ ²⁰ ²¹cesse of²¹ her' malice for þe Popes²² commaundement; Wherfor

¹ om. O. ² leaf 120. ³ among O. ⁴⁻⁴ comen D.

⁵ Northumberland D. ⁶ om. D. ⁷ leyne D. leyn O.

⁸⁻⁸ om. D. ⁹ be O. ¹⁰ dede DO. ¹¹ when the D.

¹² pope struck out, and bisshope written over in a different hand in O.

¹³ namely O.

¹⁴ pope struck out, and bisshope written over in a different hand in O.

¹⁵ vnto the D. vnto þe O. ¹⁶⁻¹⁶ of Engeland Edward O.

¹⁷ her DO. ¹⁸ MS. hade m, with m underlined for omission.

¹⁹⁻¹⁹ taken in D. take of O. ²⁰ leaf 120, back.

²¹⁻²¹ leue D. lette O.

²² popes struck out, and bisshopis written over in a different hand in O

Robert þe¹ Brus, Iamys Douglas, and Thomas Randolf Erl of Morref, and alle þo þat wiþ ham communede, or ham halp in worde or in² dede, were accursed³ þrouz euery cherche þrouz³ Engeland, 4 euery [day] at masse iij tymes; and no masse shulde be songen⁴ in holy cherche þrouz-out⁵ al Scotland, but if þe Scottis wolde make restitucioñ of þe harmes þat þai hade made vnto⁶ holy cherche. Wherefore meny a gode preste and holy man,⁷ þerfore were slayn 8 þrouz al⁸ þe reme of Scotland, for enchesouñ þat þai wolde singe no masse aʒeynes þe Popes⁹ commaundement^t and aʒeynes his wille, and to done and fulfille þe tirauntz¹⁰ wille.

How Sir' Hughe, þe Spenser'es sone, was² made þe Kyngus
12 **Chamberlein; and of þe bataile of Mitoñ. Capitulo**
Centesimo Nonogesimo secundo.

A Nd hit was nouzt longe afterward, þat þe Kyng ne ordeynede a parlement at ʒork^t; and þere was Sir' Hugh, þe Spenserez¹¹ 16 sone, made Chamberleñ. And in þe mene-tyme, while þe werr' last, the Kyng went aʒeyne into Scotland, þat hit was wonder forto wete, and bisegede þe touñ of Berwik^t; but þe Scottes went ouer þe water of Solewath, þat was iij mile fram þe Kyngus host, 20 and priuely¹² þai stele awaye by nyght, and comen¹³ into Engeland, and robbede and destroyed¹⁴ al þat þai myght, and sparede no maner þing^t til þat þai comen to¹⁵ ʒork. And when þe Engliſshemen þat were lafte at¹⁶ home Wist¹⁷ of pis þing, alle þo þat might 24 trauaile—as wel monkes and¹⁸ prestes and ffreres & Chanouns and seculers,—and come and mette wiþ þe Scottes at Mitoñ op¹⁹ Swale, þe xij day of Ottobre. Allas! what sorwe for þe Engliſshe hosbonde-men þat coupe noping^t in werr', þere were quelled^e and 28 drenched²⁰ in²¹ þe Ryuer of Swale.²¹ And her' chyueteynes, Sir' William of Meltoñ, Erchebisshop of ʒork^t, & þe Abbot of Selby with her' stedes,²² fledde, & come vnto²² ʒork^t. And þat was her' owen folie þat þai had þat meschaunce, for þai passede þe water of

¹ om. D.² om. O.³⁻³ in euery cherche of D. in euery Cherche þurgh O.⁴ songe O. ⁵ þrouz D. ⁶ to D. þurgh O. ⁷ men DO.⁸ om. DO.⁹ popes *struck out, and bisshoppis written over in a different hand in O.*¹⁰ Traytours O. ¹¹ Spencer O. ¹² priuelich D. ¹³ come O.¹⁴ destruede D. ¹⁵ vnto O. ¹⁶ leaf 121. ¹⁷ herde D. herd O.¹⁸ as O. ¹⁹ oppoñ D. ²⁰ dreynt O.²¹⁻²¹ an arme of the see D. an arme of þe see O.²²⁻²² fledden and comen to D. fled & comen vnto O.

Swale; and þe Scottes sette in¹ fire iij stackes of hey; and þe smoke þerof was so huge þat² Engliſſhe-men myght nought see þe Scottes. ¶ And when þe Engliſſhe-men were gon ouer þe water, þo come³ þe Scottes wiþ her⁴ wenge,⁴ in maner of a ſhelde, and come 4 toward þe Engliſſhe-men in a rawe; and þe Engliſſhe-men fledde, for vnneþes⁵ þai hade eny men⁶ of Armes; for þe Kyng hade ham alle⁷ almost loſte atte þe⁷ ſege of Berwik; and þe Scottes⁸ hobilers went bituix⁹ þe brigge & þe Engliſſhe-men. ¶ And when 8 þe grete hoſt¹⁰ had þaim¹⁰ mette, þe Engliſſhe-men fledde bituene þe hobilers and þe grete hoſt; and þe Engliſſhe-men almost alle⁷ were þere ſlayn.¹¹ And¹² he þat might wende ouer þe water was ſauede; but meny were drenchede,¹² Allas, for¹³ ſorwe! for¹³ þere was¹⁴ 12 ſlayne meny men of Religiouñ, and ſeculers, and ek preſtes and clerkes; and wiþ miche ſorw the Erchebiſſhop ſcapede; and þerfore þe Scottes callede hit¹⁵ ‘the White Bataile.’

How Kyng Edward dede aH maner¹⁶ þing¹⁶ as¹⁷ Sire Hugh þe 16 Spenser¹⁷ Wolde. *Capitulo Centesimo Nonogesimo tercio.*

ANd when Kyng Edward herde þis tydynges,¹⁸ he remevede his ſege fram Berwik, & come aȝeyne into Engeland. But Sir Hugh þe Spenser, þe ſone, þat was þe Kynges chaumberlein, kepte 20 ſo þe Kynges chaumbre, þat no man might¹⁹ ſpeke wiþ þe Kyng, but if²⁰ he made wiþ him a frett forto done his nede, & þat ouer measure. And þis Hugh bar²¹ him ſo ſtoute, þat alle men hade of him ſcorn and deſpite; and þe kyng him-ſelf wolde nouȝt be²¹ 24 gouernede²² by no maner man, but oneliche²³ by his fader and by him. ¶ And yf eny knyght of Engeland hade wodes, maneres, or lande, þat þai wolde couette, anone þe Kyng²⁴ moſte ȝeue it ham, or elles²⁴ þe man þat owede²⁵ hit²⁶ ſhulde faulſely²⁶ be enditede of 28 fforfet²⁷ or of ffelonye; and prouȝ ſoche doynges²⁸ þai diſheritede meny a grete²⁹ bachiler, and ſo meny landes³⁰ geten, þat hit was miche Wonder.

¹ on D. a O. ² þat þe D. ³ Comen O. ⁴ wynges D.

⁵ vnneþe O. ⁶ man O. ⁷ om. O. ⁸ Scottyſſh O.

⁹ bituene D. between O. ¹⁰⁻¹⁰ ham D. hem O.

¹¹ quellede D. y-quelled O. ¹²⁻¹² dreynt O. ¹³⁻¹³ om. DO.

¹⁴ were O. ¹⁵ that bataile D. þat bataill O. ¹⁶ leaf 121, back.

¹⁷⁻¹⁷ þe Spencers O. ¹⁸ tydyng O. ¹⁹ muſt O. ²⁰ om. DO.

²¹ ben O. ²² gouerned ne reulede D. gouerned ne rewled O.

²³ onely D. only O. ²⁴ eH O. ²⁵ ouȝt D. ouȝt O.

²⁶⁻²⁶ faulſely ſhulde D. ²⁷ þe foreſt O. ²⁸ doyng D. doyng O.

²⁹ gode D. good O. ³⁰ landes þai D.

¶ And when þe lordes of Engeland saw þe¹ couetise and þe falsenesse of Sir' Hugh þe Spenser, his² fader, and of Sir' Hugh his³ sone, þai comen⁴ to þe gentil Erl of Lancastre, and axede⁵ him of⁵ conseile of þe disese þat was in the reame þrouz Sir' Hugh þe⁶ Spenser' and his sone. And in haste, by one assent, þai made a priue assemble at Shirborn in Elmede; and alle þa[i] maden⁷ þere an oth forto breke and destourble þe doying bituene þe Kyng' and 8 Sir' Hugh þe Spenser' and his sone, oppoñ her' power'. And þai went into þe Marche of Walys, & destroiede þe Lande⁸ of þe forsaide Sir' Hughes.

⁹How sir' Hughe þe Spenser and his fader' Were exilede out
12 of Engeland. *Capitulo Centesimo Nonogesimo iiii*^{to}.

When Kyng Edward' saw þe grete harme and destruciouñ þat þe barons of Engeland' deden on¹⁰ Sir' Hugh þe⁶ Spensers Landes, and to his sones, in euery place þat þai comen oppoñ. And 16 þe Kyng þo, þrouz his Conseile, exilede Sir' Iohñ Mounbray, *Sire Roger*¹¹ of Clifford', and Sir' Gosselyn Dauil', and meny oþer lordes þat wer' to ham¹² consent.¹³ Wherfore þe barons dede þo¹⁴ more harme þan þai dede bifore. ¶ And when þe Kyng' saw þat⁶ þe 20 barons wolde nouzt cesse of her' cruelte, þe Kyng was sore adrade leste þai wolde¹⁵ destroy him and his reame for his mayntenance, but yf⁶ þat he assentede to ham; and so he sent for ham¹⁶ by lettrez,¹⁶ þat þai shulde come to Londoñ to his parlement at a 24 certeyne day, as in his *lettres*¹⁷ were¹⁸ conteynede.

¶ And þai come wip iij batailes wel armed¹⁹ at alle poyntz; & euery bataille hade cote-armur'²⁰ of grene cloþe²¹; and þerof þe right quarter was 3alwe, wip white bendes; Wherfore þat parlement was 28 callede 'þe parlment wip²² þe whit bende.²³' ¶ And in þat company was Sir' Humfray de Bohoñ, Erl of Herford,²⁴ and Sir' Roger of Clifford', *Sire Iohñ Mounbray*, *Sire Gosselyn Dauil'*, *Sire Roger Mortymer*, Vncle of Sir' Roger Mortymer' of Wigemore, *Sire Henry* 32 of Tyeys,²⁵ *Sire Iohñ Giffard*, and Sir' Bartholomew²⁶ Badesmere þat was þe Kynges Stiward, þat þe Kyng hade sent to Shirborn

¹ þe grete D. þe gret O. ² þe D. ³ þe DO. ⁴ come DO.

⁵⁻⁵ of hym O. ⁶ om. D. ⁷ made DO. ⁸ Laundes D.

⁹ leaf 122. ¹⁰ to DO. ¹¹ Robert D. ¹² hym O.

¹³ consentede D. ¹⁴ the D. ¹⁵ shulde D. ¹⁶⁻¹⁶ om. D.

¹⁷ lettre D. ¹⁸ was O. ¹⁹ y-armed O.

²⁰ cotarmures D. cote-armures O. ²¹ choþe sic D. ²² of O.

²³ bendes D. ²⁴ Hereford' D. ²⁵ Trays DO.

²⁶ Bartholomew of O.

in Elmede, to þe ¹Erl of Lancastre and to alle þat Wiþ him Were, forto trete of accorde þat him aliede to þe barons, and come wiþ þe ²company, And Sir' Roger Dañory and Sir' Hugh ³of Audeley ³ þat hade spousede þe Kynges neces, susters⁴ to⁵ Sir' Gilbert of Clare, ⁴ Erl of Gloucestre, þat was quellede in Scotland, as aboue⁶ is saide. ¶ And þo ij Lordes hadde þe ij partes⁷ of þe Erldome of Gloucestre; and Sir' Roger⁸ þe Spenser', þe sonne, hadde þe ⁹þridde part⁹ on¹⁰ his Wifes behalue,¹¹' the þridde¹² suster'. And þo ij lordes went to ⁸ þe barouns wiþ al her' power', auzeynes Sir' Hugh, her' broþer-in-Law; and so þer come with ham, Sir' Roger of Clifford, Sir' Iohn Mounbray, Sir' Gosselyn Dauit, Sir' Roger Mortymer' of Werk', Sir' Roger Mortymer' of Wygemore, his newew, Sir' Henry Trays,¹³ ¹² Sir' Iohn Giffard, Sir' Bartholomew of Bedelesmere, wiþ alle¹⁴ her' company, & meny oþere þat to ham wer' consent.

¶ Alle þis¹⁵ grete Lordes comen¹⁶ to Westminster, to þe Kynges parlement; and so þai spoken and dede, þat boþe Sir Hugh þe¹⁷ ¹⁶ Spenser, þe fader' &¹⁸ þe Soñ, were outlawede of Engeland for euer-more. ¶ And Sir' Hughe þe fader' went to Douer', and made miche sorwe, and felle adouñ¹⁹ by þe see bank', ²⁰& clipped²⁰ acros wiþ his Armes, and sore wepyng,²¹ saide: "now, farewele²² Enge- ²⁰ land! & gode Engeland, to²³ Gode y þe bitak!" and þries cussede þe grounde, and wende neuer²⁴ haue comen²⁵ aþein, and²⁶ Wepying ful sore, cursede þe tyme þat euer he bigate Sir Hugh his sone, & saide 'for him ²⁷he hade²⁷ loste Engeland'; and in presence of ²⁴ ham þat were him ²⁸aboute, he 3af him his curse, and went ouer þe see to his landes. But Sire Hugh þe soñe wolde nouzt go²⁹ out of Engeland, but helde him in þe see; and he & his company robbede ij Dormondes bisides Sandewiche, & toke³⁰ and bar' away ²⁸ aþ þe gode þat was in ham, þe Value of xl³¹ M⁺ ti.

How þe Kyng Exilede þe³² Erl Thomas of Lancastre, & alle þat helde wiþ him; and how þe Mortymer' come & 3elde him vnto³³ þe Kyng'; & of þe lordes siege. Capitulo Centesimo ³² Nonogesimo Quinto.

¹ leaf 122, back. ² MS. þe þe; þat DO. ³⁻³ Daudel D. Daudele D.
⁴ suster O. ⁵ and DO. ⁶ bifore D. byfore O. ⁷ partyes DO.
⁸ Hugh DO. ⁹⁻⁹ iij partye O. ¹⁰ in DO. ¹¹ half' D. hand' O.
¹² iij O. ¹³ Trays DO. ¹⁴ MS. alle aþ. ¹⁵ þese O.
¹⁶ come O. ¹⁷ om. DO. ¹⁸ & sir Hugh Spenser O.
¹⁹ doune oppoñ the grounde D. doun vpon þe ground' O. ²⁰⁻²⁰ om. DO.
²¹ wepyng & O. ²² fayre DO. ²³ to almy3ty D. to almyghty O.
²⁴ neuere to O. ²⁵ come O. ²⁶ and D. & O. om. R. ²⁷⁻²⁷ y haue D.
²⁸ leaf 123. ²⁹ goñ DO. ³⁰ nome O. ³¹ iijj D. ³² om. O. ³³ to O.

HIt was nought longe after, þat þe Kyng ne¹ made Sir Hugh þe Spenser þe fader, and Sir Hugh þe² sonne, come azein into Engeland, azeyns þe lordes wille of þe reame. ¶ And sone
 4 after, þe Kyng, wiþ³ strong Power, come and bisegede þe castel of Leedes: and in þat castel was þe Lady of Badelesmore, for enchesouñ þat she wolde nouzt grant þe castel to þe¹ Quene IsabeH, Kyng Edwardes wif. ¶ But þe principal cause was, for enchesouñ þat Sir
 8 Bartholomev Badelesmere was azeins þe Kyng, & helde with the lordes of Engeland. And noþeles, þe Kyng, by helpe and socoure of men of Londoñ, and also þrouz helpe of Southerñ men, þe Kyng gate þe castel, maugre ham alle þat wer' wiþin,⁴ and tok wiþ him al þat he
 12 might fynde. ¶ And when þe barons of Engeland herd of þis þing,
⁵ Sir Roger Mortymer' & ⁵ oþere meny lordes⁶ toke þe toune of Brugeworth with strengþ; Wherefore þe Kyng was wonder' wroþ, and lete outelawe Thomas⁷ of Lancastre & Hounfray de Bohouñ,
 16 ⁸ Erl of Hereford,⁹ and alle¹⁰ þat Were assent¹¹ to þe same quereH. ¶ And þe Kyng Assemblede an¹² host, & come azeynes þe lordes of Engeland; wherfor þe Mortymers put ham to þe Kynges mercy & his grace; and anone þai wer' sent to þe Toure of Londoñ, and þere
 20 kepte in prisouñ. ¶ And when þe barons herd of þis þing, þai comen to Pontfret, þere þat þe Erl Thomas soionede, and tolde him how þe Mortymers¹³ had¹⁴ zelde ham boþe¹⁵ vnto¹⁶ þe Kyng, & put ham in¹⁶ his grace.

24 Of þe sege of Tikhulle. ¶ *Capitulo Centesimo* ^{xx} *iiij xvj*°.

WHen Thomas, Erl of Lancastre, herde¹⁷ þis, ¹⁸ þai were¹⁸ wonder' wroþ, & alle þat were of his company, and gretly þai were descomfortede, & ordeinede her' power' togeder, and
 28 bisegede þe casteH of TykhuH. But þo þat were wiþin, so manliche¹⁹ ²⁰ defendede ham,²⁰ þat þe barons might nouzt gete þe casteH. ¶ And when þe Kyng herde telle²¹ þat his casteH was bisegede, he suore, by God and by his crowne,²² þat þe sege shulde be remevede,
 32 and assemblede an huge power' of peple, and went þiderward forto

¹ om. O. ² his D. ³ with a O. ⁴ þerin O.

⁵⁻⁵ written twice in all three MSS. ⁶ lordes nome & O.

⁷ Thomas erle DO. ⁸ leaf 123, back. ⁹ Herford O.

¹⁰ al þo D. aH þo O. ¹¹ assentant D. assentyng O.

¹² a gret D. an hugh O. ¹³ Mortymers both D. Mortymers boþe O.

¹⁴ hadden O. ¹⁵ om. DO. ¹⁶ to O. ¹⁷ herde of D.

¹⁸⁻¹⁸ he was D. ¹⁹ manly O. ²⁰⁻²⁰ ham defendede D. ²¹ om. D.

²² namen D. names O.

rescue þe castel; and his power¹ encressede fram day to day. ¶ When þe Erle of Lancast^r and þe Erl of Hereford^t,¹ and þe barons and her^r company, herde of þis þing^r, þai assemblede al her^r power^r, and went ham to Burtoñ op Trent, and kepte þe bruge, þat 4 þe Kyng^r schulde nouzt come² ouer^r. ¶ But hit bifeH so, þat³ on þe x⁴ day of Marche, in þe 3ere of grace M^t CCC xxj⁵ þe Kyng and þe Spensers, Sir^r Aymer^r Valaunce, Erl of Penbrok^t, & Iohñ,⁶ Erl of Arundel, and her^r power^r, went ouer þe ⁷Watere, and descomfitede 8 þe Erl Thomas & his company; and þai fledde to þe castel of Tuttebery; and fro þenns þai went to Pountfret. And in þat Viage deide Sir^r Roger Dammory, in þe Abbey of Tuttebery.

¶ And in þat same tyme, þe Erl Thomas had a traitour^r with 12 him þat men⁸ callede Robert of Holonde, a Knyght þat þe Erl had brouzt vp of nouzt, and had norisshede him in his botelerie, and had 3euen⁹ him ij M^t marz¹⁰ 11 of rent¹¹ by 3ere.¹² And so miche þe Erl louede him, þat he might doo¹³ in þe Erles court 16 what¹⁴ him likede, boþe amonges¹⁵ hye & law; and so queyntely 16 euer he¹⁶ bare him a3eynes his lord^t, þat he truste more oppoñ him þan oppoñ¹⁷ eny man alyue. ¶ And þe Erl had ordeynede¹⁸ him by lettre¹⁸ forto wende into þe Erldome of Lancast^r, forto make 20 a rise to helpe him þat¹⁹ viage, þat is to seyn, v^c men of Armes. But þe 20 said Holand²⁰ come nouzt þere, no maner^r men²¹ forto warne, ne to make a rise to²² helpe his lord^t. ¶ And when Holand^t²³ herde telle þat his lord was scomfitede²⁴ at Burtoñ, as 25 an vntrew 24 man²⁵ he stale away, and robbede in Rauenesdale his lordes men þat come²⁶ fra þe scomfiture, & tok²⁷ of ham horse and harneys, and al þat þai had, & quellede of ham alle þat he myght tak, and þo come and 3elde him vnto²⁸ þe Kyng^r. ¶ When þe gode Erl Thomas 28 wist þat he was so bitraide, he was sore abasshede, and saide to him-self, “O almyghty god!” quod he, “how might Robert Holonde fynde in his hert me to bitraye, siþens²⁹ þat y³⁰ haue Louede him so miche? O God,³¹ wel may now³¹ a man see³² by 32

¹ Herford^t O.² passe DO.³ om. DO.⁴ tenþe O.⁵ & xxij O.⁶ Iohñ þe O.⁷ leaf 124.⁸ me DO. ⁹ 3eue O.¹⁰ Mark O.¹¹⁻¹¹ om. D.of land^t O.¹² 3ere of lande D.¹³ done O.¹⁴ al þat D.

al þing þat O.

¹⁵ amonge D. among O.¹⁶⁻¹⁶ þe þif D.þ^o þef O.¹⁷ he dede D.¹⁸⁻¹⁸ by his lettre him D.

by his lettre O.

¹⁹ in his D. in þat O.²⁰⁻²⁰ false traitoure D.

fals Traytour O.

²¹ man D.²² for-to O.²³ the traitour D.

þe Traytour O.

²⁴ descomfitede D.

discomfited O.

²⁵⁻²⁵ a false þef traitouré D.

a fals þef a Traytour O.

²⁶ comen D.²⁷ nome O.²⁸ to O.²⁹ sith D.

seth O.

³⁰ leaf 124, back.³¹⁻³¹ now may wel O.³² y-se D.

him þat no man may desceyue anoþer;¹ raþere þan he þat he most trust oppoñ. He haþ ful euel ʒeldede² me³ my godenesse, and þe worship þat y to him haue done, and þrouʒ my kyndenesse haue
4 him auauncede, and made him hie fram⁴ lowe; & he makeþ me go fram⁴ he into⁵ lowe; but ʒitte shal he dye in euel deþ.”

Of þe Scomfiture of Burbrigge. ¶ *Capitulo ¶ Centesimo Nongesimo Septimo.*

8 **T**He gode Erl Thomas of Lancastre, Hunfray de Bohoñ, Erl of Herford, and þe barouns þat wiþ ham⁶ wer⁷, toke⁷ a⁸ conseile bituene ham at þe³ Frere Prechoures at Pountfrett. þo þouʒt Thomas vppon þe traitour⁹ Robert Holond, and saide in
12 reprof, “Allas! Holonde me haþ bitraiede! Ay is in þe rede of somme euel shrede.¹⁰” ¶ And by commune assent þai shulde alle
11 gone to¹¹ þe castel of Dunstanburghe, the whiche perteynede to þe Erldome of Lancastre, and þat þai shulde abide þere til¹² þe Kyng
16 hade forʒeue ham his male-talent. but when þe gode Erl Thomas þis herde, he ansuerede in þis maner, and saide: “Lordes,” quod he, “if we gone¹³ toward þe north, men wil seyn¹⁴ þat we goñ¹⁵ toward þe Scottes; and so we shul be holde traitoures, for¹⁶ cause
20 of¹⁶ distaunce þat is bituene¹⁷ Kyng Edward and Robert þe Brus, þat¹⁸ made him Kyng of Scotland. And þerfore y say, as tochyng myself, þat y wil go¹⁹ no ferþer into þe North þan to myn owen castel of Pountfrett.” ¶ And when Sire Roger Clifford herde þis,²⁰
24 he aros vp anone in wraþ, ²¹and drow his suorde, & swore by Almygty God²² and by his holy names,²² but if þat he wolde go²³ wiþ ham, he shulde be dede, and þat he wolde slee him þere. ¶ þe noble²⁴ Erl Thomas of Lancastre was sore adrade, and saide:
28 “faire sires,²⁵ y wil go wiþ þow²⁶ whider-so-euer ʒe me lede.” þo went þai togederes into þe North; and wiþ ham þai hade vij^c men of Armes, and come to Burbrig.

¶ And when Sire Andrew of Herkela—þat was in þe North-
32 contre þrouʒ ordenance of þe Kyng, forto kepe þe cuntre of Scotland

¹ a man D. ² zelde D. ʒelden O. ³ om. O. ⁴ fro O.

⁵ to D. ⁶ hym O. ⁷ nomen O.

⁸ MS. has a castel, with castel underlined for omission; om. DO.

⁹ traytry of D. Trayterye of O. ¹⁰ deth O. ^{11–11} wende into DO.

¹² til þat O. ¹³ go DO. ¹⁴ say D. ¹⁵ go D. ^{16–16} om. D.

¹⁷ bituene D. betwen O. bitue R. ¹⁸ om. D. ¹⁹ gone D.

²⁰ þis word D. ²¹ leaf 125. ^{22–22} om. D. ²³ gon O.

²⁴ noble and gentil DO. ²⁵ sir D. ²⁶ ʒow DO.

—herde telle how þat¹ Thomas of Lancastre was descomfitede,² and his company were descomfitede² at Burton vp³ Trent, he ordeynede him a stronge power, and Sir Symond Ward also,⁴ þat þo⁵ was⁶ shirryf of ȝork, & come & mette þe barons at Burbrig; & 4 anone þai breken⁷ þe brige, þat was made of tre. ¶ And when⁸ Sir Thomas of Lancastre herde þat Sire Andrew of Herkela hade brouȝt wiþ him soche a power, he was sore adrade, & sent for⁹ Sir¹ Andrew of Herkela, & wiþ him spake, and saide to him in þis 8 maner: “Sire Andrew,” *quod* he, “ȝe mow wel vnderstonde how þat our Lord þe Kyng¹ is ladde and misgouernede by miche false conseil, þrouȝ Sir Hugh þe Spenser þe fader, &¹⁰ Sir Hugh þe¹¹ sone, & Sir Iohā Erl of Arundel, and þrouȝ Maistre Robert Baldok, 12 a false pilede clerc, þat is in þe Kyngus court duellyng; wherfore y praye ȝow⁴ þat ȝe wil¹² come wiþ vs, wiþ al þe power þat ȝe haue ordeynede, and helpe to destroie þe venyme of Engeland, and þe traitoures þat bene¹³ þerin, and we¹ wil ȝif vnto ȝow þe best part 16 14 of v Erldomes þar We haue¹⁵ & holde¹⁶; and We wil mak vnto ȝow¹⁷ an oth¹⁷ þat we wil neuer do þing wiþout ȝour¹ consel, and so ȝe shul bene¹⁸ as wele¹⁹ at ese¹⁹ wiþ vs as euer was Robert²⁰ Holande.” ¶ Þo ansuerede Sir Andrew of Herkela, and saide: “Sir Thomas! 20 þat wolde y nouȝt do,²¹ ne consent þerto, for no maner þing þat yhe²² might me⁵ ȝeue, ²³ wiþouten þe wil²³ and commaundement of our lord þe Kyng; for þan shulde y be holde a traitoure for euermore.” ¶ And when þe noble Erl Thomas of Lancastre saw þat he 24 nolde consent to him for no maner þing, “Sir Andrew,” he saide, “wil ȝe nouȝt consent to destroie þe venyme of þe reaume, as we bene consented? ²⁴ At on²⁵ worde, Sir Andrew, y telle þe, þat or þis ȝer¹ be goñ, ²⁶ þat ȝe shal be²⁶ take and holde for a traitoure, and 28 more þan ȝe holde vs now; and in worse deth ȝe shul die, þan euer dede²⁷ Knyght of Engeland; and vnderstonde²⁸ wel þat ²⁹ neuer ȝe dede²⁹ þing þat sorer¹ ³⁰ ȝow shal³⁰ repent. And now goþ and ³¹ do what³¹ ȝow gode likes³²; and y wil put me to³³ 32

¹ om. D. ²⁻² om. D. & his Cumpanye O. ³ oppoñ D.

⁴ om. O. ⁵ om. DO. ⁶ was to sic O. ⁷ broken D.

⁸ when þat D. ⁹ to O. ¹⁰ & by D. ¹¹ his DO.

¹² wolde D. wold O. ¹³ beth D. ¹⁴ leaf 125, back. ¹⁵ haue O.

¹⁶ hold O. ¹⁷⁻¹⁷ om. D. ¹⁸ be efte D. be eft O. ¹⁹⁻¹⁹ om. DO.

²⁰ Robert of DO. ²¹ done O. ²² me DO.

²³⁻²³ without consel D. with-oute wil O. ²⁴ consent DO.

²⁵ o DO. ²⁶⁻²⁶ ȝe shul ben D. ²⁷ dide eny O.

²⁸ vndirstondeth O. ²⁹⁻²⁹ ȝe dede neuere D. ȝe dede neuer O.

³⁰⁻³⁰ shal ȝow D. schal ȝow O. ³¹⁻³¹ doth þat DO.

³² likeþ D. liketh O. ³³ vnto DO.

þe ¹mercy and *grace*¹ of God." And so went þe false *traitoure*, Sir² Andrew of Herkela, in his way as a false *traitour*, a tiraunt, & forsuore³ man. for þrouz þe noble Erl Thomas of Lancastre he vnderfonge þe armes of chivalry, and þrouz him he was made 4 knyght.

¶ Thoo might men seen⁴ Archieres drawn ham in þat on⁵ side and in þat *opere*; and ⁶Knyztes also⁶ fouzten togeder' wonder' sore; and amonge⁷ *opere*, Sir' Hunfray de Bohouñ, Erl of Herford, a 8 worþi knyght of renoune þrouzout al Cristendome, stode & fauzt with his enemys apon þe brigge. ⁸And as the noble lorde stode and fauzt oppoñ þe brugge, a þef, a ribaude, scolkede vnder þe brigge, and fersly wiþ a spere smote the noble knyght into þe fonde- 12 ment, so þat his bowailles comen out þere. Allas þe sorwe! for þere was slayn þe floure of solace and of comfort, & also of curtesye. and Sire Roger of Clifford, a noble knyght, stode euer', and faught, & wel and nobly him defendede as a worþi baron; but at þe laste 16 he was sore wounded in þe⁹ heuede, & Sire William of Sulley & Sir' Roger of Bernesfelde¹⁰ were slayn in¹¹ þat bataile. ¶ And¹² Sir' Andrew of Herkela saw¹³ Sir' Thomas men of Lancastre ¹⁴laske and slake.¹⁴ Anone he & his company comen to the Gentil Knyght, ²⁰Thomas of Lancastre, & saiden¹⁵ "zelde þe, *traitour*! zelde þe!" ¶ The gentil Erl ansuerede þo,² and saide: "nay, lordes! *traitour*¹⁶ be we none, and to 3ow wille we neuer vs zelde while¹⁷ þat our¹⁸ lifes lasten¹⁹; but leuer we hauen²⁰ to be slayn in oure treuþ, þan ²⁴zelde vs to 3ow." And Sir' Andrew azein²¹ criede²² oppoñ Sir' Thomas company, ²³zellynge as a wolfe,²³ and saide: "zelde 3ow, *traitour*²⁴ taken! zelde 3ow!" and wiþ an hye ²⁵voice saide²⁵: "beþ ware, sires, þat ²⁶no man²⁶ of 3ow be²⁷ so hardy, oppoñ lif and lyme, ²⁸to mysdo²⁸ Thomas body of Lancastre." ¶ And wiþ þat worde, þe gode Erl Thomas went into a chapel, and saide, knelyng douñ oppoñ his knees, and turnede his visage toward þe crois, and saide: "almyghti God! to þe y me zelde, and holliche²⁹ put me into þi 32

¹⁻¹ grace & mercy O. ² om. D.

³ as a false forsuoren D. as a forswore O. ⁴ see D. ⁵ o O.

⁶⁻⁶ knyzte also and D. knyghtes also & O.

⁷ also among' al D. also among O. ⁸ leaf 126. ⁹ his DO.

¹⁰ Bernesfeld' O. ¹¹ at DO. ¹² When D. whan O.

¹³ saw þat' DO. ¹⁴⁻¹⁴ lefte and slakede D. lasked' & slaked' O.

¹⁵ saide D. ¹⁶ traytours O. ¹⁷ whiles O. ¹⁸ one D.

¹⁹ laste O. ²⁰ han D. haue O. ²¹ MS. azein azein. ²² grad O.

²³⁻²³ zollyng as wode wolues O. zeldyng as a wolfe R.

²⁴ traitoures D. traitours O. ²⁵⁻²⁵ a voys cryede & seyde O.

²⁶⁻²⁶ non DO. ²⁷ bene D. ²⁸ mysdone O. ²⁹ holly D. holy O.

mercy." ¶ And wip þat, þe vileins ribaudes lepton¹ about him, on² euery side þat Gentil Erl, as tiraunt³ and Woode *turmentures*, and despoilede him of his Armure, & clopede him in a robbe of Ray, þat was⁴ his sq[u]yers liueray, and ⁵fouþ lade him vnto⁵ 4 York⁶ by water. þere⁷ might men see miche sorwe and care, for þe gentil knyghtes ⁸fledden on⁸ euery side, and þe ribaudes and vileins egrely ham descriede, and criede⁹ in¹⁰ hye, "3elde 3ow, traitoures! 3elde 3ow!" 8

¶ And when þai were 3olden,¹¹ þai wer' robbed, and bonde as þeues. Allas þe shame & despite, þat¹² þe gentil ordre of Knyghthode þere hade at þat bataile! And þe land þo was wip-outen¹³ Law, for holy cherche þo hade nomore¹⁴ reuerence þan hit 12 hade bene a bordel hous. And in þat bataile was þe fader' azeins þe sone, and þe vnclē azeins his¹⁵ newew; for so miche vnkyndenesse was neuer seyne bifore in Engeland¹⁶ amonges¹⁷ folc of on¹⁸ naciouñ; for o¹⁹ kynrede had no more pite of þat oþer, þan an 16 ²⁰hundred woldes haueþ on o²⁰ shepe; and hit was no wonder', for þe grete lordes of Engeland were nouzt alle of o²¹ naciouñ, but were mellede²² wip oþere nacions, þat is forto seyne, somme Britons, somme Saxones, somme Danois,²³ somme Pegñtes, somme Frenche- 20 men, somme Normans, somme Spaignardes, somme Romayns, some Henaudes, some Flemyngus, and of oþere diuerse naciouns, þe whiche nacions acorded nouzt to þe kynde bloode of Engeland. ¶ And if þe grete Lordes ²⁴of Engeland hade bene onelich wedded²⁴ 24 to Englishe peple, þan shulde pees haue bene, and reste amongus ham, wipouten²⁵ eny envy. And at þat bataile was Sir' Roger' Clifford tak',²⁶ Sire Iohn Mounbray, Sire William ²⁷²⁸Tuchet, Sir' William²⁸ Fitz-William, and meny oþer worþi Knyghtes; and Sir' 28 Hugh Dauit þe next day after' was taken²⁹ and put into prisouñ, & shulde haue ben³⁰ done to þe³¹ deþ if he hade nouz spousede þe Kynges necc, þat was þe Erl Gilbertus³² sustre³³ of Gloucestre.

1 lepte D. 2 in DO. 3 leaf 126, back. 4 was of DO.

5-5 lad him forth to D. 6 MS. þork'. 7 þo DO.

8-8 fled in D. fledden in O. 9 grad O. 10 an DO.

11 3olde D. yolde O. 12 om. D. 13 without D. withoute O.

14 no maner' D. 15 þe D.

16 Engeland as was þat tyme D. Engeland' as was þat tyme O.

17 among O. 18 o O. 19 one D.

20-20 hungry wolfe hath of a D. hungry wolf hath of a O. 21 on D.

22 medled' D. 23 Danes O.

24-24 hade be wedede onliche D. hadden ben onlich wedded' O.

25 without D. withoute O. 26 taken D. 27 leaf 127. 28-28 om. D.

29 take O. 30 be O. 31 om. O. 32 Gilbert D. 33 wyf O.

And anone after¹, was Sir² Bartholomev of Bedelesmer³ taken¹ att Stawe² Park, a maner³ of þe Bisshoppes of Lincoln, þat was his newew, and meny oþer barons and baronettes; Wherefore was made⁴ miche sorwe.

How Thomas of Lancastre was bihedede³ atte Pountfrett⁴, & v barons hongede and ⁴Draw þere.⁴ ¶ Capitulo Centesimo Nonogesimo Octauo.

8 **A** Nd now y shal telle þow of þe noble Erl Thomas of Lancastre. When he was taken⁵ & brouȝt to Ȝork⁶, meny of þe citee were ful glade, and oppoñ him criede⁶ wiþ⁷ hye voice, “A, sire traitoure! þe⁸ arne welcome,⁸ blessed be God! for now shal þe 12 haue þe reward þat longetyme þe haue diserued!” and caste oppoñ him⁹ meny snoweballes, and meny oþer reþroues dede¹⁰ him. But þe gentil Erl þat soffrede, and saide neþer on ne¹¹ oþere.

¶ And in þat¹² same tyme þe Kyng herde of þat¹³ scomfiture, 16 and was ful glade, and in haste come to Pountfrett⁴; and Sir Hugh þe Spenser, and Sir Hugh his sone, and Sir Iohn, Erl of Arundel, and Sir Edmund of Wodestok⁴, þe Kyngus broþer, Erl of Kent, and Sir Aymer of Valance, Erl of Penbrok⁴, & maistre Robert of 20 Baldok⁴, a false pilede clerc, þat was priue & duellyng¹⁴ in þe Kynges court⁴; and alle¹⁵ þai come¹⁵ þider wiþ þe Kyng. ¶ And Sir Rauf of Beeston ȝaf vp the¹⁶ castel to the Kyng; and þe Kyng entrede into þe castel; & Sir Andrev of Herkela, þe¹⁷ false tiraunt, 24 þrouȝ þe Kynges commandement tok¹⁸ with him þe gentil Erl Thomas¹⁹ to Pountfret⁴; and þere he was prisonede in his owen castel þat he hade new made, þat stode aȝeins þe Abbay of Kyng Edward.

28 And Sir Hugh þe²⁰ Spenser þe fader²¹, and Sir Hugh his sone,²¹ caste and þouȝt how and in what maner þe God Erl Thomas of Lancastre shulde bene²² dede, wiþouten²³ iugement of his peris; wherefore hit was ordeinede þrouȝ þe Kynges Iustices, þat þe Kyng⁴ 32 shulde put oppoñ²⁴ him poyntes of traitery. ¶ And so hit bifelle

¹ take O. ² traw sic D. ³ byheded O. ⁴⁻⁴ drawn D.

⁵ take O. ⁶ cryeden O. ⁷ with an O.

⁸⁻⁸ bene welcomen D. ar welcome O. ⁹ om. D. ¹⁰ deden O.

¹¹ neþer O. ¹² þe D. ¹³ the D. ¹⁴ dwelled O.

¹⁵⁻¹⁵ comen DO. ¹⁶ leaf 127, back. ¹⁷ a DO.

¹⁸ tok¹ D. nome O. to bring R. ¹⁹ Thomas of Lancast^r O.

²⁰ om. O. ²¹⁻²¹ om. D. & þe sone O. ²² be O.

²³ with-outen eny D. withoute eny O. ²⁴ on O.

þat he was ladde to þe barr' bifore þe Kynges Iustice3, bare-heuede¹ as a þef', in a faire halle wiþin² his owen castel, þat he hade made þerin meny a faire fest, boþ to riche and eke³ to pore. ¶ And þise were his Iustice3: Sir' Hugh þe Spenser⁴ þe fader',⁴ Sir' Aymer' of 4 Valance, Erl of Penbrok', Sire Edmund of Wodestok, Erl of Kent', Sire Iohñ of Britaign, Erl of Richemond, & Sir' Robert of Maleme-prop, iustice; and Sir' Robert him acoupede in þis maner': ¶ "Thomas! atte þe ferst', oure lord þe Kyng' & þis court'⁸ excludeþ 3ow of al maner' ansuere. ¶ Thomas! oure lorde þe Kyng' put oppoñ 3ow þat 3e haue in his lande riden wiþ baner' displaiede, ⁵a3eynes his pees, as a *traitour*.⁵" ¶ And wiþ þat worde, þe gentil Erl Thomas, wiþ an hie voice saide, "Nay, Lordes! forsoþ, 12 and by Seint Thomas, y was neuer' traitoure." ¶ The iustice saide a3ein þo: "Thomas! our' Lord þe Kyng' put oppoñ þe⁶ þat 3e hauen⁷ robbede his⁸ folc, and mordred his folc,⁹ as a þef'. ¶ Thomas! þe Kyng also put oppoñ you¹⁰ þat he descomfitede 3ow 16 and 3our' peple wiþ his folc in his owen reaume; Wherefore 3e went and fley¹¹ to þe wode as an outlawe, and ¹²also 3e were taken as an outlaw. ¶ &¹² Thomas, as a *traitoure* 3e shuH be¹³ hongede by resouñ, but þe Kyng' haþ for3eue 3ow þat³ gewys for þe loue of 20 Quene IsabeH. ¶ And, ¹⁴Thomas, resouñ wolde also þat 3e shulde ben hongede; but þe Kyng' haþ for3eue þat gewys¹⁴ for cause and loue of 3our' lynage. ¶ But, Thomas, for-asmiche as 3e were tak fleyngt', &³ as an outlaw, þe Kyng wil þat 3our' heued¹⁵ be smyten¹⁶ 24 of', as 3e¹⁷ haue wel deseruede. Anone doth¹⁸ him out of pres, and¹⁹ bringe him to his iugement!" ¶ þe gentil knyght, when he²⁰ hade herde alle þise wordes, wiþ an hye voice he criede, sore wepingt', and saide: "Allas, Seint Thomas, ²¹faire fader'! Allas²¹! shal 28 y be²² dede þus? *graunt* me now, blisseful God, ansuere!" but al it auailede him noþing²³; for þe cursede Gascoignes put him hider²⁴ and þider', and on him criede wiþ an hye voice, "O Kyng' Arthur', most dredeful! wel²⁵ knowen ²⁶now is þin²⁶ open *traitery*! 32

¹ bare-heed' O. ² in O. ³ om. D. ⁴⁻⁴ om. D.

⁵⁻⁵ as a *traitour* a3eynes his pees D. ⁶ 3ow D. ⁷ haue DO.

⁸ leaf 128. ⁹ peple DO. ¹⁰ þe O. ¹¹ fled O.

¹²⁻¹² om. O. ¹³ ben D.

¹⁴⁻¹⁴ om. D. Thomas as resoñ wold' also þat 3e schuld' be honged' but þe kyng for3eue 3ow þat gewes O.

¹⁵ hed O. ¹⁶ smyte O.

¹⁷ MS. 3e shul, with shul *underlined for omission*. ¹⁸ do O.

¹⁹ & anone D. & anon O. ²⁰ MS. he he. ²¹⁻²¹ allas fayre fader O.

²² bene D. ben O. ²³ not O. ²⁴ hide *sic* D. ²⁵ we O.

²⁶⁻²⁶ is now þine D. is now þyn O.

in euel deþ shalt þow dye, as þow hast wel diseruede." ¶ þo sette þai oppoñ his heuede¹ in scorn an olde chapelet, al-to rent & torn, þat was² nouzt worþ² an halpeny; & after þai sette³ him oppoñ a⁴ lene white⁴ palfray, ful vnsemeliche,⁵ and ek al⁶ bare, wiþ an olde bridel; and wiþ an horrible noyse⁷ þai drow him² out of þe castel² toward his deþ, and caste on⁸ him meny balles of snowe. And as þe turmentoures lade him out of þe castel,⁹ þo saide he wiþ¹⁰ pitouse⁶ wordes, and his Handes helde vp¹¹ ¹²in hye toward heuen: "Now, þe Kyng of Heuen zeue vs mercy, for þe erþely Kyng¹³ haþ vs forsak!" And a frere prechoure went wiþ him oute of þe castel, til þat he come to þe place þat¹⁴ he endede-in¹⁵ his lif, into¹⁶ whom he shroue him al his lif.¹⁷ ¶ And þe gentil Erl helde þe frere wonder faste by þe cloþes, and saide: "fair¹¹ fader, abide wiþ us til þat¹⁸ y be¹⁸ dede; for my flesshe quakeþ for drede of deþ." And soþ forto saie, þe gentil Erl sette him oppoñ his Knees, & takede him toward þe East; but a Ribaude þat meñ¹⁹ callede Hugoñ or Mostoñ, sette hande oppoñ þe gentil Erl, and said in despite of him²⁰: "Sir' traitoure, turne þe toward þe Scottes, þin²¹ foule deth to vnderfonge"; and turnede þe Erl toward þe North. ¶ The noble Erl Thomas ansuered þo wiþ a milde voice, and saide: "Now, fair' Lordes, y shal do al zour' owen¹⁵ wille." And wiþ þat worde þe frere went fram²² him ful sore²³; and anone a ribaude went to him, and smote of his heuede,²⁴ þe xj Kalendus²⁵ of April, in þe 3er' of grace M^t CCC²⁶ xxj. Allas þat euer soche a gentil blode shulde ben²⁷ don to deþ with-outen²⁸ cause and resouñ! ¶ And traiterously²⁹ was þe Kyng^t conseilede when he, prouz false conseil of þe false¹¹ Spensers, soffrede Sir' Thomas, his vncles³⁰ sone, bene³¹ put to soche a deþ, & so³² ben-heuedede³² azeyns al maner resouñ. And grete pitee hit was also, þat soche a noble Kyng^t shulde ben³³ desceyuede and mysgouernede prouz³⁴ false Spensers, þe whiche he mayntenede prouz loselry azeins his honour' and ek profit; for afterward þere felle grete vengeance in

¹ heed O. ²⁻² om. D. ³ sent O. ⁴⁻⁴ white lene D.

⁵ MS. vnsemeliche; vnsemely D. ⁶ om. D. ⁷ voys D.

⁸ oppoñ D. ⁹⁻⁹ he saide D. ¹⁰ leaf 128, back. ¹¹ om. O.

¹²⁻¹² an hye towardes D. in hye towardes O. ¹³ þing sic O.

¹⁴ pere D. ¹⁵ om. DO. ¹⁶ in-to O.

¹⁷ MS. lif a, with a *underlined for omission*. ¹⁸⁻¹⁸ we bene D.

¹⁹ me DO. ²⁰ hym & seide sic O. ²¹ þy O. ²² fro O.

²³ sore wepyng^t D. so wepyng sic O. ²⁴ heed O. ²⁵ Kalend DO.

²⁶ CCC & O. ²⁷ be DO. ²⁸ without D. withoute O.

²⁹ Traytourly O. ³⁰ vncler O. ³¹ be O. ³²⁻³² beheded O.

³³ be DO. ³⁴ prouz conseil of the D. þurgh Counceit of þe O.

¹Engeland for enchesouñ of þe forsaide Thomas dep. ¶ When þe gentil Erl of þis lif was passede, þe Prioure and þe monkes of Pountfrett^t geten Sir^t Thomas body of þe Kyng^t, and þai buriede hit bifore² þe hye auter in the right side. 4

¶ And³ þat same day þat þe gentil lord was dede, þere wer^t honged and draw⁴ for þe same⁵ querel⁶ at Pountfrett^t,⁶ Sir^t William Tuchet, Sir^t William Fitz-William, Sire Warein of Ysillee, Sire Henry of Bradboure,⁷ Sir^t William Cheyne, baroñs alle,⁸ & 8 Iohñ Page, Squyer. ¶ And sone after at 3ork, wer^t draw and Honget, Sire Roger of³ Clifford, Sir^t Iohñ of Mounbray, barons, & Sire Gosselyn Dauil,⁹ Knyght. ¶ And at Bristow were draw and honged, Sire Henry of Wynington, and Sire Henry of Mounford, 12 barons. ¶ And at Gloucestre wer^t draw and hongede, Sire Iohñ Giffard & Sire William of Elmebruge,¹⁰ barons. ¶ And at Londoñ wer^t 11 Honget & draw,¹¹ Sir^t Henry Tyeys,¹² baroñ; & at Winchelse,¹³ Sir^t Thomas Culpeper^t, knyght; & at Wyndesore, Sir^t 16 Fraunceys of Waldenham,¹⁴ baron; & at Kaunterbury was draw and honged, Sire Bartholomew of Badesmer^t & Sir^t Bartholomev of Assheburnham, barons; And at Kerdif in Walys, Sir^t William Flemynge, baroñ. 20

How Kyng^t Edward^t went into Scotland^t wip an¹⁵ C^mt men of Armes, and might nouzt spede. ¶ *Capitulo Centesimo Nonogesimo* ¶ *Nono.*

ANd when Kyng Edward of Engeland^t hade brouzt þe flour^t of 24 chialry vnto þis¹⁶ dep, þrouz conseil of Sir^t Hughe þe Spensers¹⁷ þe fader^t, & 18 Sir^t Hugh¹⁸ his sone, he⁹ bicom as¹⁹ wood as a lyoun; and what-so-euer^t the Spensers wolde haue done, it was doñ. And so wel the 20 Kyng louede ham, þat þai might do²¹ 28 wip him al²² þat þai wolde; wherfore 23 the King²³ 3af vnto Sir^t Hugh þe Spenser þe fader^t, þe Erlome of Wynchestre, and to Sir^t Androv of Herkela þe Erlome of Carlele,²⁴ in preiudice and²⁵ harmyng of his croune. ¶ And Kyng Edward þo, þrouz conseil of 32

¹ leaf 129. ² bisides D. ³ om. D. ⁴ drawn D.

⁵ same cause & D. ⁶⁻⁶ om. D.

⁷ Bradborñ and D. Bradbourne & O. ⁸ al at Pountfret D.

⁹ om. O. ¹⁰ Elmebright D. ¹¹⁻¹¹ draw and hongede D.

¹² Treys DO. ¹³ Wynchestre O. ¹⁴ Baldenham O. ¹⁵ a O.

¹⁶ om. D. his O. ¹⁷ Spenser D. Spencer O. ¹⁸⁻¹⁸ om. O.

¹⁹ MS. as a, with a underlined for omission. ²⁰ leaf 129, back.

²¹ done D. ²² al þing DO. ²³⁻²³ MS. has sir^t Hugh.

²⁴ Kardoil D. Cardoil O. ²⁵ and in DO.

þe Spencers, disheritede¹ alle ham þat hade bene azeins him in eny quereþ wip Thomas of Lancastre; and meny oþere wer' disherited also, for enchesoñ þat þe Spencers coueitede forto haue her' londes; 4 and so þai hade al þat þai wolde desire, wip wronge, and azeins al resouñ.

¶ þo made þe Kyng, Robert² of Baldok, a false pilede clerc, Chaunceller' of Engeland, þrouz conseil of þe forsaide Spencers; 8 and he was a false rybaude and a couetous; and so þai conselede þe Kyng so miche, þat þe Kyng' lete take to his owen ward alle þe godes of þe lordes þat³ wrongefully were³ put vnto þe⁴ deþ, into his owen honde; and aswel þai token⁵ þe godes þat were in 12 holy cherche, as þe godes þat were wipout, and lete ham ben⁶ put into his tresorie a[t] Londoñ, and lete⁷ ham calle⁷ his forfaitz; and by her⁸ conseile þe Kyng' wrought, and⁹ disheritede¹⁰ al ham¹⁰ þat¹¹ þe gode¹¹ oweden¹²; and þrouz her' conseil lete arere a¹³ talliage 16 of alle þe godes of Engeland; wherfore he was þe richest Kyng'¹⁴ þat euer' was in Engeland, after William Bastard of Normandy, ¹⁵ þat conquerede Engeland.¹⁵ ¶ And zitte, þrouz conseil of ham, him semede þat he hade nouzt ynouz, but made zitte euery touñ 20 of¹⁶ Engeland fynde a man of Armes oppoñ her' owen costages,¹⁷ forto goñ¹⁸ and wer' oppoñ the¹⁹ Scottes²⁰ þat Wer' his enemys.

Wherfore þe Kyng' went into Scotland²⁰ wip an²¹ hundred þousande men of Armes at Whitsontide, in the zere of our' Lord 24 God²² M^t CCC &⁴ xxij. But þe Scottes went and hud ham in Mounteyns and in Wodes, and tariede þe Engliſſhe-men fro²³ day to day, þat þe Kyng myght for no maner þing' ham fynde in pleyn felde; wherfore meny Engliſſhe-²⁴men, þat few vitales hade,²⁴ for 28 hunger²⁵ þere deiden²⁵ wonder' faste, and sodeynly, for hunger' in goyng' and in comyng', and naveliche²⁶ þo þat hade bene azeins Thomas of Lancastre, and hade robbet his men oppoñ his landes. ¶ When Kyng' Edward saw þat vitales failede him, he was þo 32 wonder' sore discomfortede,²⁷ for enchesouñ also þat his men so deide, and also for he might nouzt spede of his¹³ enemys; so at þe¹³

¹ disherite D. ² MS. has Robert þe, with þe underlined for omission.

³⁻³ were wrongefully D. ⁴ om. DO. ⁵ tok D. ⁶ be O.

⁷⁻⁷ calle ham D. ⁸ her DO. his R. ⁹ and for-euer-more DO.

¹⁰⁻¹⁰ hem at O. ¹¹⁻¹¹ þo godes D. þo goodes O. ¹² owede O.

¹³ om. O. ¹⁴ om. D. ¹⁵⁻¹⁵ om. O. ¹⁶ in O. ¹⁷ Costage O.

¹⁸ go O. ¹⁹ leaf 130. ²⁰⁻²⁰ om. D. ²¹ a O.

²² god a O. ²³ fram D.

²⁴⁻²⁴ þat wanted vitales D. men þat fewe vitales hadden O.

²⁵⁻²⁵ þey dide O. ²⁶ namely DO. ²⁷ descomfitede D. discomfited O.

last he come aȝeyne into Engeland. And anone after' come James¹ Douglas and² Thomas Randolf' wiþ an huge ost³ into Engeland,³ into Northumberland, and wiþ ham þe Engliſſhe-men þat wer' dryuen out of Engeland, & come and robbet the contre, and 4 quelledede þe peple,⁴ and also brent⁵ þe touñ þat was callede Northallertouñ, and meny oþer tounes vnto ȝork. ¶ And when þe Kyng' herd þis þing,⁶ he lete [sompne] alle maner' men þat might trauaile. And so þe Engliſſhemen mette þe Scottes atte þe Abbay of Beihe- 8 land, þe xv day after Michelmasse in þe same ȝer' abouesaide; And þe Engliſſhe-men wer' þere descomfited; & at þat scomfiteure was tak'⁷ Sir' Iohn of Britaygñ, Erl of⁸ Richemonde, þat helde þe contre and the Erldome of Lancaſtre; and after', he paiede an¹² huge raunsouñ, and was lete gone; and after þat he went into Fraunce and come neuer' after⁹ aȝeyn.

How Sir' Andrew of Herkela was taken,¹⁰ and put vnto þe¹¹ deþ, þat was Erl of Cardoile. Capitulo CC^{mo}. 16

ANd at þat tyme Sir' Andrew of Herkela, þat¹² newe was¹² made Erl of Cardoile, for cause þat he hade taken¹³ þe goode Erl¹⁴ of Lancaſtre, he hade ordeyned, þrouȝ þe Kyngus commandement of Engeland, forto bryng' him aȝ þe power' þat he might, forto 20 helpe him aȝeyns þe Scottes atte þe Abbay of Behigland. ¶ And when þe false traitoure hade gadrede aȝ þe peple þat he might, and shulde haue comen¹⁵ to þe Kyng to¹⁶ þe Abbay of Biegland, þe false traitoure lad ham by an oþer contre þrouȝ¹⁷ Copeland, and 24 þrouȝ þe Erldome of¹⁸ Lancaſtr', and went þrouȝ þe contre, and robbit and quelledede folc, al þat he¹⁹ might. ¶ And ferþermore þe false traitour hade take²⁰ a gret some of golde²¹ of Sir' Iamys Douglas, forto bene²² aȝeyns þe Kyng of Engeland, and to bene²² 28 helpyng and holdyng wiþ þe Scottes; þrouȝ whos tresouñ þe Kyng' of Engeland was scomfitede at Biheland' er' þat he come þider'; wherfore þe Kyng was²³ toward him ful²³ wroþ, and lete priuely enquere in²⁴ þe contre about,²⁵ how²⁶ hit was. and so men 32

¹ Iame D. ² and also DO. ³⁻³ om. D. ⁴ folc D.
⁵ brennedede D. ⁶ tydyng' DO. ⁷ taken D. ⁸ leaf 130, back.
⁹ afterward' O. ¹⁰ take O. ¹¹ om. DO. ¹²⁻¹² was newe O.
¹³ take O. ¹⁴ erl Thomas D. Erle Thomas O. ¹⁵ come O.
¹⁶ vnto DO. ¹⁷ to D.
¹⁸ MS. of Richemond', with Richemond' *underlined for omission.*
¹⁹ pai D. ²⁰ taken DO. ²¹ golde and siluer D. gold' & siluer O.
²² be O. ²³⁻²³ towardes him wonder' D. toward' hym wondir O.
²⁴ by DO. ²⁵ om. D. ²⁶ how þat O.

enquerede and aspiede, so¹ þat at the laste² treup was founde,³ and sought, and he atteint and taken as a false traitour,—as þe noble Erl Thomas of Lancastre him tolde, er⁴ þat he were doñ⁴ to dede⁴ at his takyng⁵ att Burbrig⁵, and to him saide, þat ‘or þat zere wer⁶ Doñ, he shulde ben⁶ take and holde a traitour’: and so hit was, as þe holy man saide. Wherefore þe Kyng sent priuely to Sire Antoyñ⁷ of⁸ Lucy, a knyzt of þe contre of Cardoile, þat he shulde tak Sir Andrew of Herkela, and put him vnto þe deþ. And to bryng þis þing to⁹ þe ende, þe Kyng sent his commission, so þat þe same Andrew was take at Carleel,¹⁰ & ledde vnto þe barr¹¹ in maner of an Erl, worthely arraied¹¹, and with a suorde gert aboute him, and hosede and spored¹². ¶ Þo spak Sir Antoyñ⁷ in þis maner, “Sir Andrew,” quod he, “þe Kyng put oppoñ þe þat, for-asmiche as¹¹ ze haue¹² bene orpede in zour dedes, he dede vnto¹³ zow michel¹⁴ honour, and made zow Erle of Carlele¹⁵; and þow, as¹⁶ traitoure vnto¹⁷ þi lord¹⁷ þe Kyng, laddest his peple of þis contrey, þat shulde haue holpe him at þe bataile of Bihiland; and þow laddest ham away by þe contre of Copeland, and þrouz þe Erldome of Lancast^r, wherfor our lord þe Kyng was scomfitede¹⁸ in bataile¹⁸ pere of the Scottes, þrouz þi tresouñ and falsenesse. And if þow¹⁹ hadest²⁰ come betyme,²⁰ he hade yhade þe maistre; and al þat tresouñ þow dedest²¹, for þe²² grete somme of golde and²³ siluer þat þow vnderfong^t of Iames Douglas, a Scott, þe Kynges enemy. ¶ And our Lorde þe Kyngus wille is, þat ze, þe ordre of Knyght-hode,—by þe whiche þow²⁴ vnderfonge al þin²⁵ honour and worship oppoñ þi body,—be al²⁶ brouzt to²⁶ nouzt, and þi state vndone, þat opere knyghtes of lawer Degre mowe after þe be-ware; þe whiche lorde hap þe auancede hugely in diuerses²⁷ contrees of Engeland; and þat alle²⁹ may take ensample²⁹ by þe,³⁰ her lord affirward⁸ trewely forto serue.”

¶ Þo commanded he a knaf^t anone⁸ to hew of his spores of³¹ his

¹ so þat O. so R. . ² laste þe D. laste þat O. ³ founden D.

⁴⁻⁴ vnto deth DO. ⁵ leaf 131. ⁶ be DO. ⁷ Antony O.

⁸ om. D. ⁹ vnto DO. ¹⁰ Kerdoit D. Cardoit O.

¹¹ þat D. ¹² han O. ¹³ to D. ¹⁴ mych O.

¹⁵ Cardoit DO. ¹⁶ as a DO.

¹⁷ MS. vnto þi lord, with þi lord underlined for omission; to D.

¹⁸⁻¹⁸ om. DO. ¹⁹ altered from zow in MS. ²⁰⁻²⁰ comen be-tymes D.

²¹ tresoun þow dedest^t D. treson þou dedest O. tresouñ R. ²² a D.

²³ and of D. ²⁴ ze D. ²⁵ þy O. ²⁶⁻²⁶ y-brought vnto O.

²⁷ diuerse D. diuers O. ²⁸ leaf 131, back.

²⁹⁻²⁹ mow take a sample D. mowe take ensample O. ³⁰ om. O.

³¹ with sic O.

heles; & after he lete breke þe suerde ouer' his heuede,¹ þe whiche þe Kyng² him 3af² to kepe and defende his³ lande þerwiþ, when he made him Erl of Cardoile; and after he lete him vncløpe of his furrede mantel⁴ and of his hood,⁵ and of his furrede Cotes and of⁴ his gerdeH. And when þis was doñ, Sire Antoyne⁶ saide vnto him: "Andrew," *quod* he, "now art þow no knyzt, but a knaue; and for þi tresoñ þe Kyng wille þat þow bene⁷ honged & drawe,⁸ and⁹ þin heuede smyten⁹ of, and þi bowelles taken out of þi body,⁸ and þi bowelles brent,¹⁰ and þi body quarterede, and¹¹ þin heuede smyten¹¹ of, and sent vnto¹² Londoñ; and þere hit shal¹³ be sette¹³ oppoñ Londoñ Brigge; and þi iiiij¹⁴ quarters shal be sent to iiiij tounes of Engeland, þat alle oþere mowe be-ware and chastisede by¹² þe." And as Antoyne¹⁵ saide, so hit was done, al maner þing', on¹⁶ þe last day of Ottobre, in þe 3er' of grace M^t CCC¹⁷ xxij 3ere¹⁴; and þe sonne þo turnede into¹⁸ blode, as þe peple it saw. ¶ and þat durede fro¹⁹ þe morne,¹⁹ til hit was xj of þe Clokke of þe day. 16

¶ Of þe miracles þat God wrouzt for Seint Thomas loue of Lancastre; wherfore þe Kyng lete close þe cherche dores of²⁰ Pountfrett, ²¹ of þe Prioury,²¹ for no man shulde come þerin²² to þe body²² forto offre. **Capitulo Ducentesimo** ²⁰ ¶ **Primo.**

ANd sone after²³ the Gode Erl Thomas of Lan²⁴castr' was martrede,²⁵ a preste, þat¹⁴ Longe tyme²⁶ hade ben²⁶ blynde, dremede in his slepyng' þat he shulde gone²⁷ vnto þe huH þere þat²⁴ þe gode²⁸ Erl Thomas of Lancastre²⁸ was doñ vnto deþ, and he shulde haue his sight azein: and so he dremede iij nyghtes sewyng. ²⁹ And þe prest²⁹ þo lete lede him to þe same huH. ¶ And when he come to þat place þat he was martred oñ,³⁰ deuoutely he made þere²⁸ his prayer,³¹ and prayede God and Seynt Thomas þat he might³² haue his sight azeyne. And as he was in his prayers, he laide his right hand' oppon þe same place þere³³ þe Gode man was martred'

¹ heed' O. ²⁻² 3af hym O. ³ þe D. ⁴ tabard' O. ⁵ hodes D.
⁶ Antony O. ⁷ be O. ⁸ drawen D. ⁹⁻⁹ þy heed' smyte O.
¹⁰ brent biforn D. brent byforn þe O. ¹¹⁻¹¹ þy heed smyte O.
¹² to O. ¹³⁻¹³ stonde DO. ¹⁴ om. O. ¹⁵ Antoyne O.
¹⁶ in DO. ¹⁷ CCC & O. ¹⁸ to D.
¹⁹⁻¹⁹ morne D. þe morne O. þe morwe R. ²⁰ of þe Prioury of D.
²¹⁻²¹ om. D. ²²⁻²² om. O. ²³ after þat DO. ²⁴ leaf 132.
²⁵ enterede D. ²⁶⁻²⁶ þat had be O. ²⁷ go DO. ²⁸⁻²⁸ Thomas O.
²⁹⁻²⁹ MS. and þe prest' and þe preste. ³⁰ in D. ³¹ prayers DO.
³² must O. ³³ þat O.

on¹; and a drope of dry bloode and smal sande cleued on² his honde,³ and *perwip* he striked his eyne, and anone, prou³ þe might of God and of Seynt Thomas of Lancastre, he hade his sight a³eyn, 4 and þankedede þo Almighty God and Seynt Thomas. ¶ And when þis miracle was ⁴cu⁴ amonges men,⁴ þe peple come pider¹ on² euery side, and knelede, and made her¹ praiers at his tombe þat is in the Priori of Pountfrett¹, and praiede þat holy martr¹, of Socour¹ and of 8 helpe, and God herd her¹ prayer¹. ¶ Also þere was a zonge childe drenchede in a welle in þe touñ of Pountfrett¹, and was dede iij daies and iij nyghtes; and men come⁵ and laide þe dede childe oppoñ seint Thomas tombe, þe holy martr¹; and þe childe aros 12 ⁶þere fram⁶ þe¹ deþ vnto⁷ lif,⁸ as meny a man hit saw; & also miche peple wer¹ out of here mynde, & God haþ sent ham her mynde a³eyn prou³ vertu of þat holy martr¹. ⁹¶ And also God haþ¹⁰ zeuen¹¹ to creples hir¹ goyng¹, and to crokede her¹ hondes and 16 her¹ feet¹, and to blinde also her¹ sight, and to meny sike folc her¹ hele, þat hadde diuerse maladyes, for the loue of his gode martre. ¶ Also *per* was a riche man in Coundoñ in Gascoigne; and soche a maladie he had¹, þat al his right side rote¹de, and felle awaie fram¹² 20 him; and men might se his Lyuer¹ and also his hert; and so he stank, þat vnneþ men might come nei³ him; Wherfore his frendes¹³ for him ¹⁴were ful¹⁴ sory. ¶ But at þe last, as God wolde, þai prayede to Seint Thomas of Lancastre, þat he wolde praye to 24 Almighty God for þat prisouñ, and bihight to goñ¹⁵ to Pountfrett¹ forto done¹⁶ her¹ pilgrimage. And þe goode man sone after¹⁷ slepte ful softe, and dremed þat þe martre Seynt Thomas come vnto him, and enoynted¹⁸ oueral his sike side.¹⁹ And *perwip* þe gode man 28 awoke, and was al²⁰ hole; and his flesshe was restorede a³eyn,²¹ þat bifore was ²²rote²²de and felle²² away; for whiche miracle þe good man & his frendes louede God and Seint Thomas euermore after. ¶ And þis gode man come into Engeland¹, and toke²³ with him iiii 32 felawes, and come to Pountfrett¹, ²⁴& come to²⁴ þat holy martr¹, and dede her¹ pilgrimage; but þe gode man þat was sik come pider¹ al

¹ om. DO. ² in O. ³ fengeres D.

⁴⁻⁴ knowen D. knowe among men O. ⁵ comen O. ⁶⁻⁶ fro O.

⁷ to DO. ⁸ lyve O. ⁹ leaf 132, back. ¹⁰ haue O.

¹¹ zeuen þere D. ³oue þere O. ¹² fro O.

¹³ frendes wer¹ D. frendes were O. ¹⁴⁻¹⁴ wonder D. wondir O.

¹⁵ go O. ¹⁶ do D. ¹⁷ afte D. ¹⁸ annoyntede him D.

¹⁹ body O. ²⁰ om. D. ²¹ om. D.

²²⁻²² roten and falle D rote²²d & falle O. ²³ nome D.

²⁴⁻²⁴ vnto DO.

naked, saf his breche ; and when þai hade done, þai turnede home
 aʒeyne into her' contre, and tolde of þe miracle wher-so þat þai come.
 ¶ And also ij men haue bene heledede þere of þe morimal, þrouʒ helpe
 of þat holy martre, þouʒ þat euel be holde incurable. 4

¶ When þe Spensers herde þat God wrouʒt¹ soche miracles for
 his holy martre, and þai wolde nouʒt² bileue hit in no maner wise,
 but saide³ openly⁴ þat hit was grete heresie, soche vertu⁵ of⁶ him
 to bileue. ¶ And when⁷ Sir' Hugh þe Spenser, þe sone, saw al⁸ 8
 þis doynge, anone he sent his⁹ messagers fram⁹ Pountfret þer⁷ þat¹⁰
 he duelledede þo, to þe² Kyng' Edward, þat þo was at Grauene atte
 Skipton, for cause þat þe Kyng shulde vndo his¹¹ pilgrimage.
 ¶ And as þe rybaude þat was messenger¹² come to¹² þe Kyng' forto 12
 doñ his¹³ message, he come by þe hull þere¹⁴ þe gode man was done
 vnto deth ; and in þe same place he made his ordur' ; and when he
 hade ydoñ, he went toward þe Kyng' ; and a stronge flux him come
 oppoñ er' he come to ʒork', and shedde all his bowailles at his 16
 fundement.

¶ And when Sir' Hugh þe Spenser herde þis tydyngus,¹⁵ somdel
 he was adrad, and þouʒt forto vndo þe pilgrimage, if he might by
 eny maner way ; And to þe Kyng went, and saide þat þai shulde 20
 be in grete sclandre þrouʒ-out al Cristendome for the deþ of Thomas
 of Lancastre, if þat he soffrede þe peple done¹⁶ her' pilgrimage at
 Pountfret'. And so he conseilede þe Kyng', þat he comandede to
 close¹⁷ þe cherche dores of Pountfret', in þe whiche cherch þe holy 24
 martre Seynt Thomas was enterede ; and þus þai deden,¹⁸ aʒeyns al¹⁸
 fraunchise of holy cherche, so þat iiij ʒer' after myght no pilgrime
 come vnto¹⁹ þat holy body. ¶ And for enchesouñ þat²⁰ monkes
 soffred men come & honour þat holy body of Seynt Thomas þe martre, 28
 þrouʒ conseile of Sir' Hugh þe Spenser þe Sone, and þrouʒ conseile
 also of Maistre Robert Baldok', a²¹ false²² piled clerk' þat was þe
 Kynges Chancellor', þe Kyng' consented that þai shulde be sette²³ to
 her' wages, and Lete make Wardeynes ouer her' owen Godes²⁴ longe 32
 tyme. ¶ And þrouʒ þe⁷ commandement of þe forsaide Sir' Hugh þe
 Sepenser, xiiij Gascoignes wel armed kepte þe huñ þer þat þe gode²⁵

¹ dede DO. ² om. DO. ³ seyden O. ⁴ leaf 133.
⁵ vertues D. ⁶ on O. ⁷ om. O. ⁸⁻⁸ when he herd al of O.
⁹⁻⁹ Messenger fro O. ¹⁰ om. D. ¹¹ þe O.
¹²⁻¹² went toward D. went toward O. ¹³ her' D. ¹⁴ þat O.
¹⁵ tydyng' DO. ¹⁶ do D. ¹⁷ close in D. ¹⁸⁻¹⁸ aft aʒens O.
¹⁹ to D. ²⁰ þat þe DO. ²¹ þe DO. ²² fals cursed O.
²³ leaf 133, back. ²⁴ gode D. good O.
²⁵ gode man D. good man O.

Seint Thomas was don vnto his¹ deþ and biheuedede,² so þat no pilgrime might come. By þat way ful wel wende he forto³ haue binome⁴ Cristus might⁵ and his power⁶, and þe grete loos of miracles
4 þat he shewede for his martre Thomas þou³-out⁵ al Cristendome.

¶ And þat same tyme þe Kyng made Robert of Baldok⁷, a pilede clerc and a false, þrou³ ⁶conseile & ⁶praier⁸ of Sir Hugh þe Spenser⁹ þe sone, Chancellor¹⁰ of Engeland. And in þe⁷ same tyme
8 was þe castel of Wallingford¹¹ holden a³zeynes⁸ þe Kyng¹², þrou³ þe prisoners þat were wipin þe castel, for Seint Thomas quere¹³ of Lancastre. Wherefore þe pep[1]e of þe contre come & tok¹⁴ the castel oppo¹⁵ þe⁹ prisoners; wherefore Sire Iohn¹⁶ of Goleinto¹⁷, kny¹⁸zt, and
12 Sir Edmunde of¹⁹ Bech, parso²⁰n, and a squyer þat me callede Roger of Walto²¹n, wer²² taken²³ and sent to the Kyng²⁴ to Pounfrett²⁵; and þere þai wer²⁶ done into priso²⁷n; and þe forsaide Roger was sent vnto
3ork²⁸, and þere he was draw and honged²⁹.

¶ And aftirward,³⁰ Sir Roger Mortymer³¹ of Wygemore brak out of þe Toure of Londo³²n³³ in þis maner³⁴: ³⁵þe forsaide Sir Roger³⁶ herde³⁷ þat he shulde bene³⁸ draw and hongede at Londo³⁹n, ⁴⁰in þe morne⁴¹ after Seint Laurence day; ⁴²and on þe dai bifore,⁴³ he helde
20 a fair⁴⁴ fest in þe Tour⁴⁵ of Londo⁴⁶n, and þo was Sir Stephen⁴⁷ Segraue, Conestable of Londo⁴⁸n, and meny grete men wip⁴⁹ him. ¶ And when þai shulde sopen,⁵⁰ þe forsaide Stephen sent for alle þe officers of the Toure; and þai come and soppede wip⁵¹ him; and when þai
24 shulde take her⁵² leue of him, a squyer⁵³ þat me callede Stephen, þat was ful priue wip⁵⁴ þe forsaide Roger, þrou⁵⁵z heir⁵⁶ conseile ⁵⁷zaf ham alle soche a drynk⁵⁸, þat þe lest of ham alle slepte ij dayes & ij nightes; and in þe⁵⁹ mene-tyme he scapede away by water, þat is to
28 seyn, by þe⁶⁰ Tamise, and went ouer þe see, and helde him in Fraunce; wherefore þe Kyng was sore annoied⁶¹, and þo put þe same Stephen out of his Conestableri.

How þe Quene Isabe⁶²l went into Fraunce forto treten⁶³ of pees bituene her⁶⁴ lord, þe⁶⁵ Kyng⁶⁶ of Engeland, & þe Kyng⁶⁷ of Fraunce, her⁶⁸ broþer. **Capitulo Ducentesimo Secundo.**

¹ om. O. ² byheded³ O. ³ to O. ⁴ bynomen D. fulfilled O.

⁵ þurht O. ⁵⁻⁶ om. DO. ⁷ þat D. ⁸ a³zeyn D.

⁹ þe forsaide D. þe forseyd O. ¹⁰ of þe DO. ¹¹ take O.

¹² anone after D. anon after O. ¹³ Londo¹⁴n & O.

¹⁴⁻¹⁴ Sir Roger þe forseyd O. ¹⁵ saw D. ¹⁶ be O.

¹⁷⁻¹⁷ on þe morw D. in þe morowe O. ¹⁸⁻¹⁸ before on day O.

¹⁹ leaf 134. ²⁰ sope DO. ²¹ þat D. ²² om. DO. ²³ trete DO.

THe Kyng¹ went þo vnto Londoñ, and þere, þrouz counseil of Sir Hugh þe Spenser þe fader, and of his sone, and of maistre Robert of¹ Baldok, a false pilede clerke, his Chancellor¹, lete seise þo alle þe Quenes landes into his owen honde, and also alle þe landes þat were Sir² Edward his² sones, and were þo¹ put to her¹ wages, azeins al maner¹ resoñ; and þat was þrouz þe falsnesse of þe Spensers. ¶ And when þe Kyng of Fraunce, þat was þe³ Quene Isabelles broþer, herde of þis falsnesse, he was sore annoyed⁸ azeins þe Kyng¹ of Engeland¹ and his false conseilers; wherfore he sent a lettre vnto Kyng Edward, vnder¹ his seal, þat he shulde come into Fraunce att a certeyn day forto⁴ ⁵done His homag; and þerto he sompnede him; and elles⁶ he shulde lese al Gascoigne. 12 ¶ And so Hit was ordeynede in Engeland¹, þrouz þe Kyng¹ and his Counseil, þat Quene IsabeH shulde⁷ wende into⁸ Fraunce, forto trete of pees bituene her¹ lord¹ and¹ her¹ broþer; and þat Olyuer¹ of Yngham shulde wende into Gascoigne, and shulde³ haue wiþ him 16 vij M¹ men and mo of Armes, to bene⁹ Senescal and wardein of Gascoignē. And so hit was ordeynede þat Quene Isabel went þo ouer¹ þe see, and come into Fraunce, and wiþ her¹ went Sir Aymer¹ of Valence, Erl of Penbrok¹, þat was þer mordrede sodeynly¹⁰ on a 20 priue¹⁰ sege: but þat was þrouz Godes vengeaunce, for he was on of þe Iusticez þat consentede to Seint Thomas dep¹¹ of Lancastre, & wolde neuer afterward repente him of þat wicked dede. ¶ And at þat tyme Sir¹ Olyuer¹ of Yngham went ouer¹² into Gascoigne, and 24 dede miche harme to þe Kyng of Fraunce, and þo gete azein þat Kyng¹ Edward hade loste, &¹³ more þerto.

How Kyng¹ Edward sent Sir¹ Edward¹ his sone, þe eldest, into Fraunce. Capitulo Ducentesimo Tercio.

28

THe Quene Isabel nad¹⁴ nouzt bene¹⁴ but a quarter of a zer¹ in Fraunce duellyng¹⁵, þat Sir¹ Edward, his eldest¹ sone, ne axede Leue forto wende into Fraunce forto spek¹ wiþ his moder¹, Isabel þe quene. And þe Kyng his fader¹⁶ grantede him¹⁶ with 32 gode wille, and saide to him, “go, my fair¹ sone, in Godes blessing¹ and myn; and þenk¹ forto come azein as hasteli as þow maiste.¹⁷”

¹ om. D. ²⁻² Edwardes her¹ D. Edwardes his O. ³ om. DO.

⁴ MS. forto forto. ⁵ leaf 134, back. ⁶ ett O.

⁷ shul shulde sic D. ⁸ in D. ⁹ be O. ¹⁰⁻¹⁰ in pyue sic O.

¹¹ om. O. ¹² ouer þe see O. ¹³ and miche D. & myche O.

¹⁴⁻¹⁴ om. DO. ¹⁵ duellede D. dwelled¹ O.

¹⁶⁻¹⁶ him grantede D. ¹⁷ mizt D. myght O.

and he come¹ ouer the² see³ into Fraunce; and þe Kyng⁴ of Fraunce, his Vncle, ⁴vnderfonge Him wiþ michel⁵ honour, and saide to⁶ him, “ faire sone, 3e ⁷ben welcomen⁷; and for cause þat 4 3our⁸ fader⁸ comeþ⁸ nouzt⁹ forto done his homage for þe Duchee of Ghyen, as his auncestres were wont forto done, y 3eue 3ow¹⁰ þat lordeship, to holde hit of me in heritage as¹¹ 3oure auncestre deden¹² bifore¹³ 3ow.” Wherfore he was callede Duk of Gyene.

8 **How Kyng Edward exilede his Quene,¹⁴ and Edward & his eldest² sone. Capitulo CC quarto.**

WHen Kyng Edward of Engeland herde telle how the Kyng of France hade 3eue þe duchie of Gieñe vnto Sire Edward 12 his sone, wiþouten¹⁵ consent and wille of him, and þat his sone hade vnderfonge þe Duchie ¹⁶of him,¹⁶ he bicome wonder wroþ, and sent^t to his sone bi his¹⁷ lettre, & to his wif also, þat þai shulde come¹⁸ into Engeland wiþ al þe haste þat þai¹⁹ might. ¶ The Quene 16 IsabeH, & Sire Edward her sone, ²⁰were wonder^t sory and drade²⁰ of the Kyngus manace and of his wraþ, and principally ²¹of the false traitoures²¹ þe Spensers, boþe of þe fader and of the sone, & at his commandement þai wolde nouzt come. Wherfore Kyng Edward 20 was ful sore annoiede, and lete make a crie at Londoñ þat, if Quene IsabeH and Edward her^t sone come nouzt into²² Engeland, þat þai shulde bene²³ holden²⁴ as enemys, boþe²⁵ to þe reaume & to þe croune; and for þat þai wolde nouzt come into Engeland, but boþ 24 were exilede, þe moder^t and her²⁶ sone. ¶ Whe[n]²⁷ Quene IsabeH herd þis tidingus,²⁸ she was sore adrad to bene²³ shente þrouz þe false coniettyng of þe Spensers, and went wiþ þe knyghtes þat wer^t exilede out of Engeland^t for ²⁹Seint Thomas quereH³⁰ of Lancastre, 28 þat is to seine, Sire Roger Mortymore,³¹ Sire William TrusseH, Sire Iohñ of CromweH, & meny oþer grete³² kniþtes. ¶ Wherfore þai tok³³ her^t conseiH, & ordeined amonges ham forto make a mariage

¹ went D. ² om. O. ³ see and went D. ⁴ leaf 135.

⁵ myche O. ⁶ vnto DO. ⁷⁻⁷ be welcome O. ⁸ come O.

⁹ MS. has nouzt^t come, with come underlined for omission.

¹⁰ 3ow al D. ¹¹ as al D. as aff O. ¹² dede O. ¹³ biforn D.

¹⁴ Quene Ysabel D. qwen IsabeH O. ¹⁵ with-out D. with-oute O.

¹⁶⁻¹⁶ om. D. ¹⁷ om. D. ¹⁸ come a3eyn D. come a3en O. ¹⁹ 3e D.

²⁰⁻²⁰ weren sore adrade D. were wonder sore adrad^t O.

²¹⁻²¹ þe falsnesse of D. of þe falsnes of O. ²² vnto D. ²³ be O.

²⁴ holde DO. ²⁵ boþe ij D. ²⁶ þe D. ²⁷ When þe D.

²⁸ tydyng O. ²⁹ leaf 135, back. ³⁰ Cause DO.

³¹ Mortymere of Wigemore D. Mortymere of Wygemore O.

³² gode D. good O. ³³ nomen D.

bituene þe Duc of Gyene, þe Kyngus sone of Engeland, and the Erles douȝter of Henaud, þat was a noble knyȝt of name, and a douȝty in his tyme. And¹ if þat þing might be² brouȝt about and stand, þai trowede, wiþ þe helpe of God, and wiþ his helpe, to 4 recouere heir³ heritage in Engeland, wherof þai were put out⁴ prouȝ the⁵ coniettyng of þe false⁶ Spencers.

¶ How Kyng Edward, prouȝ conseile of þe Spencers, sent to þe Duȝsippers of Fraunce, þat þai shulde helpe þat⁷ Quene 8 IsabeH, and hire sone Sir' Edward, weren⁸ exiled out of Fraunce. *Capitulo CCº vº.*

WHen Kyng Edward and þe Spencers herde how Quene Isabel, and Sir' Edward her' sone, hade Aliede ham to þe 12 Erle of Henaud, and to ham þat were exiled out of Engeland for encheson of Thomas of Lancastre, þey⁹ were so sory þat þai nist what to done. Wherefore Sir' Hugh þe Spenser, þe sone, saide vnto Sir' Hugh his fader, in þis maner wise, and saide: "Fader, accursed 16 be þe tyme & þe conseil þat euer ȝe consentede þat Quene Isabel shulde gone¹⁰ into Fraunce forto treten¹¹ of¹² accorde bituene þe Kyng¹ of Engeland & her' broþer þe Kyng of Fraunce, for þat was ȝour' conseile, for at þat tyme for-soþe ȝour' witte faillede; for Y 20 drede me sore¹³ lest, prouȝ her' & her' ¹⁴sone, We ¹⁵shul be¹⁵ shent, but if we take þe¹⁶ better consel."

¶ Now, fair' sires, vnderstondeþ how mervailous folie¹⁷ and falsehede þe Spencers ymagynede & caste; for priuely þai lete fille 24 v banelles ferers wiþ siluer,—þe somme amontede v M^t ti,—and þai sent þo ¹⁸barelle oue[r] þe se priuely by¹⁸ an Alien þat me callede Arnolde of Spaign, þat was a brocour' of Londoñ, þat he shulde go to þe Duȝsippers of France, þat þai shulde procuren and speken¹⁹ 28 to þe Kyng of Fraunce, þat Quene Isabel and ²⁰Edward her' sone were dryue²⁰ and exiled out of Fraunce, ²¹and, amonge al oþer þingus,²¹ þat þai were brouȝ to²² þe deþ as priuely as þai might.

¹ þat D. ² bene D. ³ his O. ⁴ om. O.

⁵ þe false D. þe fals O. ⁶ om. DO. ⁷ þat þe D. ⁸ wer' O.

⁹ MS. þat. ¹⁰ go O. ¹¹ trete DO. ¹² & O.

¹³ MS. sore for, with for *underlined for omission.* ¹⁴ leaf 136.

^{15—15} shulleþ bene D. ¹⁶ om. O. ¹⁷ felonye DO.

^{18—18} banelles priuelich ouer þe see with D. barett ouer þe see pryuyly by O. ¹⁹ speke DO.

^{20—20} her' sone Edward wer' dryuen D. her sone Edward were dryven O.

^{21—21} MS. and amonge al oþer þingus & amonge al oþer þinges.

²² vnto D.

But Almighty God wolde nouzt so; ¶ ffor when þis Arnolde was in þe hye see, he was taken¹ wiþ Selanders þat mette him in þe see, and toke² him, & lad him to her' Lord³, þe Erl of Henaud; & miche 4 ioye was made for þat takyng. ¶ And at þe laste, þis Arnolde priuely⁴ stale away fro þens, and come⁵ to London. And of þis takyng, and of⁶ oper þinges, þe Erl of Henaude saide to þe Quene Isabel: "dame, ⁷make þow⁷ mery and beþ of gode chier, for 3e 8 beþ⁸ more riche⁹ þan 3e wende forto¹⁰ haue bene; & tak 3e þise v banelles¹¹ of Siluer þat were sent to þe Duzsepiers of Fraunce forto¹² quelle þow & þour' sone Edward; and þenkeþ hastely forto wende into Engeland; and tak 3e wiþ þow Sir' Iohn of Henaude, my 12 broþer, and v C men of Armes; for meny of ham of Fraunce, in whom 3e haue ¹³hade grete truste, hade grete deintee þow¹⁴ forto scorne: and Almighty God grant þow grace, þour' enemys forto¹⁵ ouercome." ¶ þe Quene Isabel sent þo þrouz Henaud and Flaundes 16 for her' sodiours, and ordeinede her' euery day forto¹⁶ wende into Engeland azeine; and so she had in her' company Sire Edmund of Wodestoke, þat was Erl of Kent, þat was Kyng¹⁷ Edwardes broþer of Engeland.

20 ¹⁸How Kyng Edward lete kepe þe costes bi¹⁹ þe see, & lete trie alle the pris men of Armes & footmen also þrouz al²⁰ Engeland. *Capitulo CC^o vj^{to}.¹⁸*

24 **W**Hen Kyng Edward herde telle þat þe Quene Isabel and Edward hir' sone ²¹wolde come²¹ into Engeland wiþ meny Alienus, and wiþ ham þat were outlawede out of Engeland for her' rebelnesse, he was sore adrade to bene²² put adoune and lese his kyngdome. Wherfore he ordeynede forto kepe his castelles,²³ in 28 Walis as wel as in Engeland, wiþ vitailles and her' apparale, and lete kepe his ryuers, and also þe see costes, wherof þe v Portes token to kepe ham, & also þe see. ¶ And also he commandede ferþermore, &²⁴ by his lettres ordeynede, þat euery hundred & 32 wapentache²⁵ of Engeland, ij triors,²⁶ as wel of men of Armes as of

¹ tak D. take O. ² token DO. ³ lord þe O. Lord R.
⁴ priueliche D. ⁵ comen D. ⁶ om. D.
⁷⁻⁷ now make D. ⁸ makeþ þow O. ⁸ ben-O. ⁹ rycher D. ⁹ richere O.
¹⁰ om. DO. ¹¹ banelles ful D. ¹² barett ful O. ¹² forto DO. ¹² for R.
¹³ leaf 136, back. ¹⁴ þow DO. ¹⁵ to DO. ¹⁶ to O.
¹⁷ sire O. ¹⁸⁻¹⁸ om. O. ¹⁹ of D. ²⁰ out D.
²¹⁻²¹ were comen D. ²² be O. ²³ castett D.
²⁴ ferþermore & O. ²⁴ ferþermore R. ²⁵ Wapentage DO. ²⁶ MS. triors.

¹ men of foote,¹ and þat þai shulde bene² put in³ tuentysome and in hundredesome; and commandet þat al þo men wer' aredy, when eny outesse and crie wer' made, forto pursue and tak þe Aliens þat comen into Engeland forto binime him þe land, and forto put him ⁴ out of his kyngdome. ¶ And more-ouer' he lete crie, þrouz his patent, ⁴ in euery faire and in euery marcat of Engeland, þat þe Quene YsabeH, and Sir' Edward his eldest sone, and þe Erl of Kent, þat þai were take, and safly kepte, wipout⁵ eny maner of⁶ harme ⁸ vnto ham doying'; and alle oper⁷ peple þat come wip ham, anone smyte of her' heuedes,⁸ wipout eny maner⁹ raunsoñ. ¶ And what man þat might bryng¹⁰ Rogeres heede, þe¹¹ Mortymer', of Wigemore, shulde haue a¹² Ċ ti of monee for his trauaile. And ¹² ferþermore he ordeynede by his patent, & commande,¹³ to mak a fire on¹⁴ euery hye huH bisides¹⁵ þe ryuers and in low contres, forto make hye bikenes of tymbre, þat if it so were þat þe Aliens come to¹⁶ þe lande by nyght, þat men shulde¹⁷ tende¹⁸ þe bikenes, þat þe ¹⁶ contre miȝt ben¹⁹ warnede, and come and mete her' enemys. And in þe same tyme deide Sir' Roger ²⁰ Mortymer, his²⁰ Vncle, in þe Toure of Londoñ.

How²¹ Quene IsabeH & Sir' Edward, Duc of Gyene, her'²² Sone, ²⁰ come to land at²³ Herwiche; ²⁴ and how þai deden.²⁴

¶ *Capitulo* ¶ *Ducentesimo* ¶ *Septimo.*

THe Quene IsabeH and Sir' Edward hir' sone, Duc of Gyene, Sir' Edmunde of Wodestok, Erl of Kent,²⁵ and Sir' Iohn þe ²⁴ Erles²⁶ broþer of Henaud, and her'²⁷ company, drade nouȝt þe manace of þe Kyng' ne of his traitoures, for þai truste al in Godes grace, & come vnto Herwiche in Southfole, þe x day ²⁸ in þe mounthe²⁸ of Ottobr', And in²⁹ þe ȝere of grace³⁰ M† CCC³¹ xxvj. ²⁸ ¶ And at³² þe same tyme, ³³ at Londoñ, þere was Kyng Edward³³

¹—¹ foote men D. men on foote O. ² be O. ³ into D.

⁴ leaf 137. ⁵ with-uten D. ⁶ om. DO.

⁷ opere maner D. oper maner O. ⁸ heed O.

⁹ MS. maner reso, with reso underlined for omission; om. DO.

¹⁰ bryng sire D. brynge sir O. ¹¹ om. O. ¹² an DO.

¹³ commanded O. ¹⁴ oppoñ D. vpon O. ¹⁵ beside O.

¹⁶ vnto DO. ¹⁷ schul O. ¹⁸ light D. ¹⁹ be DO.

²⁰—²⁰ Mortymeres D. ²¹ How þe DO. ²² his O. ²³ to O.

²⁴—²⁴ om. O. ²⁵ erl of Kent D. Erle of Kent O. erl R.

²⁶ MS. erles douȝter, with douȝter underlined for omission.

²⁷ he sic D. ²⁸—²⁸ om. D. ²⁹ om. D. ³⁰ grace a O.

³¹ iij sic D. ³² in D.

³³—³³ Kyng Edward was at Londoñ D. Kyng Edward was at London O.

in¹ the Toure at his metee; and a messenger² come into þe haß,
³and saide þat⁴ Que[en] Isabeß was comen⁵ to lande at⁶ Herewiche,
 and hade brouzt in her' company Sire Iohn of Henaude, and wip
 4 him men of armes wipoute nombre. And wip þat worde, Sir'
 Hugh þe Spenser, þe fader, spake &⁷ þus to þe Kyng saide⁸:
 "my most worshipful Lorde,⁹ Kyng of Engeland, now mow¹⁰ 3e
 make gode chere, for certeinly þai ben al oures." ¶ The Kyng saw
 8 þis worde comfortable; 3itte he was ful sorweful & pensif in hert.
 And þe Kyng hade nouzt 3itte fulliche¹¹ eten,¹² þat þere ne come
 into þe halle anoper messenger, and saide þat þe⁸ Quene Isabel was
 arryuede at Herewich, bisides Skipwich¹³ in Southfolc. Sir' Hugh
 12 þe⁸ Spenser, þe fader, spake¹⁴ to þe messenger, and saide: "telle þe⁸
 soþ in goode fay,¹⁵" quod he to þe messenger, "my faire frende, is
 she comen⁵ wip a grete strengþ?" ¶ "Certis, sir', soþ forto say,
 she hap¹⁶ in her' company but vij C men of Armes." And wip þat
 16 worde, Sire Hughe þe Spenser, þe fader, criede wip an hye voice,
 and saide: "Allas, Allas! we¹⁷ beþ alle¹⁷ bitraiede; for certes wip
 so litil power' she¹⁸ nad neuer comen¹⁸ to londe, but folc of þis
 lande were to her' consentede.¹⁹" And þerfore, after mete þai
 20 toke²⁰ her' conseile, and went toward Walys, forto arere þe Walshe-
 men azeins Quene Isabeß and Edwarde her' sone, al forto fight';
 and so þai were in purpos, euerycheon.²¹

How Maistre Walter of⁹ Stapleton, Bisshop of Excestre, þat
 24 **was þe Kyngus Tresorer, was biheuedede²² at Londoñ.**
Capitulo Ducentesimo Ottauo.

ANd in þe same tyme, Kyng Edward was sore adrade leste men
 of Londoñ wolde 3elde ham²³ vnto²⁴ þe Quene Isabel and to Sir'
 28 Edward her'²⁵ sone. Wherefore he sent maistre Walter of⁹ Stapleton,
 his Tresorer, forto bene²⁶ wardein and keper' of þe citee of Londoñ
 wip þe Mair'. and so he come to þe Gildehaß of Londoñ, and axede
 þe keies of þe 3ates of þe citee, prou3 vertue and strength of his com-
 32 mission, and wolde haue hade þe Kepyng of þe citee. ¶ And þe
 communes²⁷ ansurede and saide, þat 'þai wolde kepe þe citee to þe

¹ þe sic D. ² Messenger O. ³ leaf 137, back. ⁴ þat þe O.
⁵ come O. ⁶ MS. &. ⁷ & seyde O. ⁸ om. O.
⁹ om. D. ¹⁰ MS. mow mow. ¹¹ ful D. ¹² ete O.
¹³ Gypeswych O. ¹⁴ spake þo O. ¹⁵ fep D. ¹⁶ ne had O.
¹⁷—¹⁷ ben O. ¹⁸—¹⁸ had neuere come O.
¹⁹ consent D. consente O. ²⁰ nome D. ²¹ echeon O.
²² beheded O. ²³ leaf 138. ²⁴ to D. ²⁵ his D. ²⁶ be DO
²⁷ Comuners O.

honour of¹ Kyng Edward, and of Isabel þe Quene, and of þe Duc, þe Kyngus sone, wipouten² eny mo.' ¶ þe Bisshop was þo sore annoiede, and suore his oth þat þai alle shulde abie, anone as þe Kyng³ were come³ out of Walys; and þe comuners⁴ anoñ,⁵ alle⁶ 4 of þe citee, toke⁷ þe Bisshope, and lade him amid⁸ Chepe; and þere þai smyten⁹ of his heuede,¹⁰ & sette¹¹ his heede¹¹ in his right hand; and after, þai biheuedede¹² ij of his Squyers þat helde wip þe Bisshope; and one of ham me callede William of Walle, þat was 8 þe Bisshoppes Nevev; & þat oþer me callede Iohñ of Padyngtoñ. and also þai toke a burgeis of Londoñ, þat me callede Iohñ Marchal, þat was Sir Hugh þe Spensers asprie, þe fader, and smyten of his heede¹³ also. 12

¶ And in þat¹⁴ same tyme þat¹⁵ same Bisshop hade in Londoñ a fair Toure in making, in his cloos oppoñ þe ryuer of Tamise, þat was wipout þe⁶ Temple-Barr, and him failede stone forto¹⁶ make þerof an ende; wherfore he commandede his men forto gone¹⁷ to 16 þe cherche of þe Frere Carmes; and þere þai toke¹⁸ stone,¹⁹ and made þerwip þe tour¹⁹; and miche sande and²⁰ mortar, and olde robons²¹ þer was lefte. ¶ And for²² þe despite þat þe Bisshop Hade done to²³ holy cherche,²⁴ he and his ij squyers were buriede in þat 20 sande, as þau³ þai hade bene hondes; and þere þai leyen xj wokes til þat þe⁵ Quene Isabel sent her lettres to þe comuners,²⁵ and praiede ham þat þai wolde soffre and grant þat þe Bisshop moste bene²⁶ take out of þat place, &²⁷ buriede at Excestr, at his owen 24 cherche; and so he was; and his ij squyers were buriede at seynt Clementis cherche wipout Temple-Barr.

¶ And Hit was²⁸ nouzt ful grete²⁸ wonder þau þat Bisshop deide in euel deþ, for he was a couetouse man, and hade wip him 28 no mercy, and euel conseilede þe Kyng. And sone þereafter²⁹ was Arnold of Spaigne taken, he þat was assentant to haue ladde þo³⁰ v M^t ti of Siluer in v banelles³¹ ferers vnto þe Dussapiers of Fraunce, forto helpe and haste the⁵ Quene Isabel to hir deþ, & Edward her³² 32 sone also: and þis Arnolde was done vnto þe³² deþ wipout þe citee of Londoñ.

¹ of þe O. ² with-out D. with-oute O. ³ comen D.

⁴ comuners alle O. ⁵ om. D. ⁶ om. O. ⁷ to sic O.

⁸ in myddes þe D. ⁹ smyte O. ¹⁰ heed^t O. ¹¹⁻¹¹ it D.

¹² behede^t O. ¹³ heuede D. ¹⁴ þe O. ¹⁵ þe D. ¹⁶ to DO.

¹⁷ go O. ¹⁸ token DO. ¹⁹⁻¹⁹ þerwith þe Toure to make O.

²⁰ MS. and &. ²¹ Robons þat O. ²² leaf 138, back. ²³ vnto O.

²⁴ MS. has cherche and. ²⁵ communes D. ²⁶ be O.

²⁷ and bene D. & be O. ²⁸⁻²⁸ no DO. ²⁹ after O. ³⁰ þe D.

³¹ bare^t O. ³² om. DO.

How Kyng Edward and Sir Hugh þe Spenser were taken, and þe Erl of Arundel. Capitulo CCº ixº.

4 **W**hen Kyng Edward had sent Maistre Walter ¹ of Staple-
 toñ, ¹ his Tresorer, into London, forto kepe þe citee vnto
 him azein ² þe ³ Quene Isabel his wif, & azein ⁴ Edward her ⁵ sone,
 anon him-self ⁶ tok wif him ⁶ Sir Hugh þe Spenser ⁷ þe fader, and
⁸ Sir Hugh ⁸ his sone, & Sir Iohn, Erl of ArundeH, & Maistre Robert
 8 Baldok, ⁹ a false pilede clerke, his Chaunceller, ⁹ and ¹⁰ toke here ¹⁰
 way towarde Bristowe; And þere þe Kyng abode a litil ¹¹ terme,
 and made Sir Hugh þe Spenser þe fader, ¹² Keper and Conestable ¹²
 of þe castel. And þe Kyng and þe oper aboue-saide went into
 12 shipp, and sailde toward Walys, and toke no leue of þe Styward,
 ne of none of ¹³ þe Kynges Householde; and went ouer into Walys
 forto arere þe Walshe-men azeynes Dame Isabel þe Quene, &
¹⁴ Edward, Duc ¹⁴ of Gyene, her sone, & her company. ¶ But þe
 16 Quene, & þe Duc her sone, and þe Erl of Kent, and Sir Iohn of
 Henaude, ¹⁵ went and pursuede after ham; and her power come and
 encessede euery day; so at þe laste þe Kyng was taken ¹⁶ oppoñ
 an ¹⁷ hulle in Walys, and Sir Hugh þe Spenser þe sone, in þat oper
 20 side of þat ¹⁸ same huH, and þe false pilede clerke, ¶ Maistre Robert
 of Baldok, þere fast bisides ham, and were brouzt azeine into
 Engeland, as Almighty God wolde. And þe Kyng him-self ³ was
 in saf kepyng in þe casteH of Kenyworth; and him kepte Sir
 24 Henry, þat was Seint ³ Thomas broþer of Lancastre.

& Sir Hugh þe Spenser þe fader come and put him vnto ¹⁹ þe
 Quenes grace, and to Sir Edward her sone, Duc of Gyene. ¶ But
 Sir Hugh þe Spenser ⁸ þe sone, ⁸ after þat ²⁰ he was taken, ²¹ wolde ²²
 28 ete no maner mete, ne ²³ drynk ⁸ no maner drynk, ⁸ for he wist to
 haue no mercy, but onelich ²⁴ he wiste he shulde bene ²⁵ dede. And
 þe Quene and her conseil ²⁶ ordeynede þo ²⁷ þat he shulde bene ²⁸
 done to deþ at London; but he was so feble for his michel ²⁹

¹⁻¹ Mapleton D. ² azens O. ³ om. D. ⁴ azeine sir D. azens O.

⁵ his D. ⁶⁻⁶ nome with D. ⁷ Spencers boþe O. ⁸⁻⁸ om. O.

⁹⁻⁹ his Chancellor a false pilede clerke D. his Chaunceller a fals piled
 Clerk O.

¹⁰⁻¹⁰ nomen he sic D. token her O. ¹¹ leaf 139.

¹²⁻¹² as conestable and keper D. as Constable & kepere O. ¹³ in DO.

¹⁴⁻¹⁴ duk Edward D. ¹⁵ Henaude and þai D. Henaud & þey O.

¹⁶ take O. ¹⁷ a O. ¹⁸ the D. ¹⁹ to D.

²⁰ þe tyme þat DO. ²¹ take O. ²² nolde D. he nolde O.

²³ neþer O. ²⁴ only O. ²⁵ be O.

²⁶ conseile hade þo D. Counceit þo had O. ²⁷ om. DO.

²⁸ haue be O. ²⁹ miche D. myche O.

fastyng¹, þat he was dede almost for fastyng¹; and þerfore hit was ordeynede þat he schulde haue his iugement at Hereford¹; and at a place² of þe toune his ³hode was taken⁴ fram⁵ his heued⁶, and also ⁷fro Maistre Robert⁷ Baldok,⁸ þat was ⁹a false pilede clerke,⁹ 4 & þe Kyngus Chancellor'. And men sette vpon her' Heuedes¹⁰ chapelettes of sharpe¹¹ netles, and ij squyers blow¹² in her' eres wiþ ij grete bugles¹³ hornes, oppon þo¹⁴ ij prisoners; and¹⁵ men might her' þo¹⁶ blowyng out wiþ hornes, mo þan a þousand¹ and one. 8 Symunde of Redyng¹⁷, bifore ham bar' her' armes oppon a spere reuersede, in token þat¹⁸ þai schulde be vndone for euermore.

¶ And oppon þe morwe was Sir' Hugh þe¹⁹ Spenser' þe sone dampnede to deþ; and was draw and hongede, biheuedet, & his ¹²boweiles taken out of his body, and ²⁰his bowelles²⁰ brent. And after he was quarterede, & his quarteres sent to iiij tounes of Engeland, and his heuede²¹ sent to Londoñ Brigge. And þis Symond¹, for encheson þat he despisede þe Quene Isabel, he was ¹⁶draw and hongede on²² a stage made²³ ²⁴in mydes²⁴ þe forsaide Sir' Hughes galwes.²⁵ And þe same day, a litil fro þens, was Sir' Iohn of Arundel biheuede²⁶; for he was on of Sir' Hugh þe Spencers conseilers. And anone after wa[s] Sir' Hug[h] þe¹⁹ Spenser' draw & ²⁰hongede, & biheuedede²⁷ at Bristow, and after hongede²⁸ aþeyn bi þe Armes bi²⁹ ij strong ropes; and þe iiij³⁰ day after, he was hew al to peces; & hundes eten³¹ him. And for²³ þat enchesouñ þat þe Kyng¹ hade zeuen³² ³³him þe Erldom³³ of Winchestre, his heede³⁴ ²⁴was lad pider', and put oppon a spere; and þe false Baldok¹ was sent to Londoñ, & þere he deide in prisone amonges³⁵ þeues, for men³⁶ dede him no more reuerence þan me wolde do³⁷ vnto an hunde: and so deide³⁸ the traitours of Engeland¹, blissede be Almyghty 28

¹ Herford¹ D. ² place of þe place sic D. ³ leaf 139, back.

⁴ take O. ⁵ fro DO. ⁶ heed¹ O.

⁷⁻⁷ fram Robert of D. from Robert of O. ⁸ Baldoks O.

⁹⁻⁹ a piled¹ clerke and also þat was false D. a piled¹ Clerke¹ also þat was fals O. ¹⁰ hedes O.

¹¹ D has sharp þornes, with þornes struck out with a red line.

¹² blew O. ¹³ bugle O. ¹⁴ þe D.

¹⁵ þat DO. ¹⁶ þere D. her O.

¹⁷ Redyng¹ þe kynges Marchal D. Redyng þe kynges Marschalt O.

¹⁸ þan sic O. ¹⁹ om. D. ²⁰⁻²⁰ om. O. ²¹ hed O.

²² in O. ²³ om. O. ²⁴⁻²⁴ amyddes D. amydde O.

²⁵ galhouse D. ²⁶ biheuedede D. beheded¹ O. ²⁷ byheded¹ O.

²⁸ honged D. hangd O. ²⁹ with DO. ³⁰ fourþe O.

³¹ ete O. ³² zeue O. ³³⁻³³ þe erl D. þe Erle O.

³⁴ heuede it D. heed¹ it O. ³⁵ among O. ³⁶ for men DO. for R.

³⁷ don O. ³⁸ diden O.

God! & ¹hit Was no wonder, for þrouz her' conseil th[e] gode Erl Thomas of Lancast' ²was done unto deth and al þat helden with Thomas of Lancastre² þrouz þo traitoures were vndoñ, and alle ⁴her' heires disheritede.³

How Kyng Edward was put adoune.⁴ ¶ Capitulo ¶ Ducentesimo ¶ Decimo.

A Non⁵ after' þis was done, þe Quene Isabel, and Edward' hir' ⁸ sone, and alle þe grete lordes of Engeland, at on assent sent to Kyng Edward' to þe castel of Kenylworþ, þere þat þe kyng was in kepyng' vnder' þe warde of Sir' Iohn' Hothum, þat was þe⁶ bisshop of Ely, & of Sir' Iohn' of Parcy, a baroñ, for enchesouñ þat ¹² he shulde ordein his parlement att' a certein place in Engeland', forto redresse [and] amende þe state of þe ream. And Kyng Edward' ham ansuerede and saide: "Lordes," quod he, "ze see⁷ ful wel how hit is. Lo! haueþ her' my seal. y zeue⁸ zow my ¹⁶ power' to ordeine a parlement wher'⁹ ze wille." And þai toke¹⁰ her' leue of him,¹¹ and come azeyne to þe barons of Engeland', and when¹² þai hade þe Kyngus patent of þis þing', and þai shewede hit to¹³ þe lordes, and þo was ordeynede þat þe parlement shulde be¹⁴ at ²⁰ Westmynstre, at þe¹⁵ Vtas of Seint Hillari. And alle þe grete lordes of Engeland' lete ordein for ham þere azeins þat tyme þat þe parlement shulde bene.¹⁶ ¶ And at þe¹⁵ whiche day þat þe parlement was assignede,¹⁷ þe Kyng wolde nouzt come þere,¹⁸ as he hade sette ²⁴ himself and assignede. And noþelesse þe barons sent to him, on¹⁹ tyme and oþer, and he suore by Godes soule, þat he nolde come þere ²⁰ on foote.²⁰ Wherefore hit was ordeynede by al þe grete lordes of²¹ Engeland', þat he Shulde no Longer' bene²² Kyng', but bene²³ ²⁸ deposede; and saide þat¹⁵ 'þai wolde crone²⁴ Edward' his sone ²⁵ Kyng', þe eldeste,²⁵ þat was Duk of Gyene'; and sent so tydynges²⁶ to þe Kyng' þere þat he was in ward vnder Sir' Iohn', Erl of

¹ leaf 140.

²⁻³ supplied from D. was done vn-to dep & att þat held' with hym O.

³ disherite D.

⁴ adouñ and his dignite bynomen him D. a-doun) & his dignite bynome O.

⁵ And D. ⁶ om. D. ⁷ sene O. ⁸ zeue DO. ze R.

⁹ wher þat O. ¹⁰ nome D. ¹¹ hem O. ¹² þat þat sic D.

¹³ vnto D. ¹⁴ bene D. ¹⁵ om. O. ¹⁶ be O.

¹⁷ om. DO. ¹⁸ þere for no maner þing' DO. ¹⁹ o DO.

²⁰⁻²⁰ a foote D. o foote O. ²¹ leaf 140, back. ²² be O.

²³ be DO. ²⁴ crowne kyng O. ²⁵⁻²⁵ þe elder kyng' D. þe elder' O.

²⁶ tydynges O.

Gerrein, and Sire Iohñ of Bothun, þat was Bisshop of Ely, and Sir Henry Percy, barouñ,¹ and Sire William Trusseñ, a knyzt, þat was wip þe Erle Sir Thomas of Lancastr', forto zelde vp her' homages vnto him for aH ham of Engeland. ¶ And Sire William Trussel⁴ saide þise wordes: "Sir Edward! for encheson þat ze haue traiede 3our' peple of Engeland, and haue vndone meny grete Lordes of Engeland wipouten² eny cause, but now ze beþ³ wipstand,—þankede be God!—and also for⁴ ze wolde nouzt come to þe⁵ parlem⁸ent as ze ordeynede at Westmynstre, as in 3our' owen⁵ Lettre patent is conteinede, forto trete wip 3our' lige men as a Kyng shulde; and þerfore, þrouz aH þe commune assent of alle þe lordes of Engeland, y telle vnto 3ow þise wordes: ¶ Ze shul vnderstonde,¹² Sir, þat þe barons of Engeland atte on assent wille þat ze bene³ nomore Kyng of Engeland, but vtterly haueþ⁶ put 7 3ow out⁷ of 3our' realte for euermore." ¶ And þe bisshop of Ely saide þo to þe Kyng, "Sir Edward! here y zelde vp feautes⁸ & homage⁹ for alle¹⁶ þe Erchebisshoppes and Bisshopes of Engeland, and for al þe clergye." ¶ þo saide Sir Iohñ, Erl of Garrein, "Sir Edward¹⁰! y zelde vp her⁵ vnto 3ow feaute and homage, for me, and for al þe Erles of Engeland." ¶ And Sir Henry¹¹ þe¹² Percy zaf vp also þere²⁰ his homag,¹³ for him and for alle þe barons of Engeland. ¶ And þo saide Sir William Trussel: "y zelde vp,¹⁴ Sir, now¹⁴ vnto 3ow my¹⁵ homage, fo[r] me & also for alle þe knyztes of Engeland, and for ham alle þat holden by seriauntrye¹⁶ or by eny oþer maner ping²⁴ of 3ow, so þat fro þis day afterward ze shulle nouzt be cleymede Kyng, neiþer for Kyng bene³ holde; but fram¹⁷ þis tyme afterward ze shul bene³ holde a singuler man of aH¹² þe peple." And so þai went þens vnto Londoñ, þere þat þe lordes of Engeland ham²⁸ abode; and sir Edward abode in prysouñ vnder gode¹⁸ keping¹⁹; and þat was þe day of²⁰ þe Conuersion²⁰ of seynt Poule in þe xx 3ere of his regne.

**Prophecie of Merlyn declarede of Kyng Edward, þe sone of 32
Kyng⁵ Edward. Capitulo CC vndecimo.**

¹ a barouñ D. a baron) O. ² withoute O. ³ be O.

⁴ for enchesoun þat D. for encheson) þat O. ⁵ om. O. ⁶ haue DO.

⁷⁻⁷ out 3ow O. ⁸ feute O. ⁹ homages O. ¹⁰ Edward here O.

¹¹ leaf 141. ¹² om. D. ¹³ homages O.

¹⁴⁻¹⁴ now sire D. now sir O. ¹⁵ myn DO. ¹⁶ seriauntye O.

¹⁷ fro D. ¹⁸ þe D. ¹⁹ Kyng Edward his sone O.

²⁰⁻²⁰ Conuersacion O.

Of þis Kyng Edward, propheciede Merlyn, and saide þat þere
 shulde come a gote ¹out of a ¹car, þat shulde haue hornes of
 siluer and a berde as white as snowe; and a drop shulde come out
 4 at ²his noseþrelles þat shulde bitokne miche harme, hungre, and
 dep of þe ³peple, and gret losse of his lande; and þat in þe bigyn-
 nyng of his regne shulde ben ⁴hauntede michel ⁵lecherie; and saide
 8 soþ, allas þe tyme! ffor Kyng Edward, þat was Kyng Edwardus
 sone, þat was born ⁶in Carnariuan in Walys, for soþ he hade
 Hornes as ²siluer, and a berd as snowe, when he was made Prynce
 of Walys, & to miche he gaf him vnto realte ⁷and ⁸folie. And
 soþ saide Merlyn in his prophecie ⁹þat þere shulde come ¹⁰out of
 12 His nose a drop; ffor in his tyme was grete hunger amonges ¹¹þe
 pore men, and stronge dep amonge þe ryche, þat deiden ¹²in strange
 lande wiþ miche ¹³sorw, and ¹⁴in Scotland; and afterwarde he loste
 Scotland and Gascoigne; and whiles þat him-self was Kyng, þer
 16 was miche lecherie hauntede. and also Merlyn tolde and saide
 þat þis goote shulde seche þe floure of lif & of dep; and he saide
 soþ, for he spousede Isabel, þe Kyngus douzter of Fraunce.

¶ & in his tyme ¹⁵Merlyn saide ¹⁵þat þere shulde be made ¹⁶
 20 briges of fole oppoñ diches of þe see; and þat was ful wel sein at
 Bannokes-born in Scotland, when he was descomfitede þere ¹⁷of þe
 Scottes. ¶ And Merlyn tolde also þat stoness shulde falle fram ¹⁸
 castelles, and meny tounes shulde be made playn; and he saide
 24 soþ, ffor when Kyng Edward was scomfitede in Scotland, and
 come þo Southward, þe Scottes bisegede castelles, ¹⁹and dede ham
 miche ha[r]me, and brent tounes vnto ²⁰þe herde erþe. ¶ And
 afftirward Merlyn ²¹saide and tolde þat an Egle shulde come ²¹out
 28 of Cornwaile, þat shulde haue feþeres of golde, þat of pride shulde
 haue non ²²pier, and shulde despice Lordes ²³of bloode, and after
 he shulde dye þrouz ²⁴a beer at Gauersiche: and þat prophecie was
 ful wel knowe, ²⁵ffor ¹⁶by þe Egle is vnderstonde Sir ¹⁷Piers of
 32 Gauaston, þat was Erl of Cornewaile, þat was a wonder prout man

¹⁻¹ of O. ² of DO. ³ his D. om. O. ⁴ be O.

⁵ mich D. mych O. ⁶ bore O. ⁷ ryout D. reaute O.

⁸ & to O. ⁹ leaf 141, back. ¹⁰ be O. ¹¹ amonge D. among' O.

¹² deide D. dide O. ¹³ michel D. ¹⁴ and in werr' D. & werre O.

¹⁵⁻¹⁵ seid Merlyn O. ¹⁶ om. O. ¹⁷ om. D. ¹⁸ fro O.

¹⁹ þe Castels O. ²⁰ to D.

²¹⁻²¹ tolde þat þere shulde come an Egle D. tolde þat an Egle schulde
 come O.

²² no DO. ²³ lordshippes D. lordschippes O. ²⁴ by D.

²⁵ know and founde soth D. knowe & founde soþ O.

pat dispisede þe baronage of Engeland; ¹but aftirward² he was biheuede² at Gauersiche, prouþ þe Erl of Lancast^r and þe Erl of Warwik. ¶ And Merlyn tolde³ þat in his tyme it⁴ shulde seme þat þe bere shulde brenne, & þat a bataile shulde be⁵ done⁶ oppoñ 4 an Arme of þe See in⁷ felde arraiede like a shilde, wher' shulde dye meny white heuedes⁸: & he saide soþ; for, by þe brynnyng⁹ of þe bere⁹ is bitokenede grete drede prouþ cotting of suorde. at þat bataile, ordeynede in a felde as a shelde oppoñ an Arme of 8 þe see, is bitokenede þe bataile of Mitone. ffor þere come þe Scottes in maner of a shelde, ¹⁰in maner' of a wyng^e,¹⁰ and quelled oppoñ Swale, men of Religiouñ, prestes & seculers; wherfor þe Scottes callede þat bataile, in despite of Engliſſhe-men, ' þe white 12 bataile.'

¶ And after, Merlyn saide þat þe forsaide Beer' shulde¹¹ do þe forsaide ⁴goot miche harme, and þat shulde be¹² oppoñ þe¹³ Southwest, and also oppoñ his bloode; and saide also þat þe goot 16 shulde lese miche¹⁴ of his lande,⁴ til þe¹⁵ time þat shame shulde him ouercome; And þan he shulde ¹⁶cloþe him in¹⁶ a lyons skyn, and shulde wynne aþeyne þat he hade loste, and miche more, prouþ a peple þat shulde come out of þe Northwest, þat shulde make him 20 bene¹⁷ drade, and him avenge of his enemys, prouþ conseile of ij Oweles, þat ferst shulde be¹⁸ in peril to bene vndone; and þat þe ij oweles shulde wende ouer þe see into a straunge ¹⁹lande, and þere þai shulde duelle til ²⁰a certein time; and after þai shulde 24 come into Engeland aþeyne, and þe ij oweles shulde done miche harme vnto meny oñ, and þat þai shulde conseile þe ²¹goot to²¹ meve werr' aþeynes [þe] ²²Bere, and þat goot shulde come, and þe Oweles,²² vnto an Arme of þe Se at Burton op Trent, and shulde 28 wende ouer, and þat for drede þe bere shulde flee, wip a swyne²³ in his company, ²⁴vnto Bur',²⁴ toward þe North,²⁵ prouþ an vnkynde out-puter'; and þat þe Swyn²⁶ þan shulde be slay²⁷ ²⁸with sorwe; and þe bere shulde be slayn²⁸ ful neiþ his owen nest, þat shal²⁹ 32

¹ leaf 142. ² beheded O. ³ saide D. ⁴ om. D. ⁵ ben D.

⁶ do O. ⁷ in a DO. ⁸ heedes O. ⁹⁻⁹ MS. of þe bere of the bere.

¹⁰⁻¹⁰ with her wynges D. ¹¹ MS. shulde shulde. ¹² ben O.

¹³ MS. þe North, with North *underlined for omission*; om. D.

¹⁴ miche del D. myche dele O. ¹⁵ þat D.

¹⁶⁻¹⁶ be clopen him with D. ¹⁷ be O. ¹⁸ bene D.

¹⁹ leaf 142, back. ²⁰ to D. ²¹⁻²¹ goot' forto DO. bere to R.

²²⁻²² forseide and þat þe goot and þe oweles shulde come D. forseid bere

& þat þe goot & þe owles shuld' come O.

²³ Swan O. ²⁴⁻²⁴ om. D. ²⁵ North vnto Bur' D. ²⁶ swan DO

²⁷ slayne D. slayn O. ²⁸⁻²⁸ om. D. ²⁹ schuld' O.

stonde oppoñ Pountfrett^t, vppoñ wham pe sone shal¹ shede his
 beemes, & meny folc him shal¹ seche for pe miche vertue. and
 he saide ful sop; ffor pe gode Erl Thomas of Lancast^r was born²
 4 in pe Northwest^t, and cosynto pe Kyng^t, sone of his vnclē; and
 by lawe he made pe Kyng lese miche lande pe whiche he hade
 purchasede³ wel foliche,³ til at pe laste pe Kyng^t perof tok shame,
 and him-self filledē wip cruelte; and after he gate azeyne pat he
 8 hadde lost^t, and miche more, prou³ folc pat he lete assemble out of
 pe Northwest^t, pat made him to bene adrade,⁴ and avengede⁵ him
 of his barons,⁶ prou conseile of Sir^t Hugh^t pe Spenser⁷ pe fader,
 and of Sir^t Hugh⁷ his sone, pat biforne⁸ were outlawede out⁹ of
 12 Engeland for her wickidnesse. ¶ But afterward^t come azeyne into
 Engeland Sir^t Hughe pe Spenser the fader, out of Fraunce, and so
 miche conseilede the¹⁰ Kyng^t pat He Shulde Werr^t oppoñ Thomas,
 erl of Lancast^r, so pat pe Kyng and pe Spensers, and pe Erl of
 16 Arundel and her power, mete wip Thomas of Lancast^r atte Burtoñ
 op Trent, and him pere descomfitede; and¹¹ Hunfray, erl of
 Hereford^t,¹² was in her¹³ company. and after, fledde¹⁴ pe forsaide
 Thomas and Hunfray, wip her company at Burbrig^t, wip sir^t
 20 Andrew of Herkela, pat is callede¹⁵ pe vnkynde out-putter^t, and
 also sir^t Symond^t Warde, Shirref¹⁶ of 3ork^t: pai come and mette wip
 Thomas of Lancastre wip an huge company, and ham¹⁷ pere descom-
 fitede. and in pat Scomfiture pe Erl of Hereford^t¹⁸ was slayn oppoñ
 24 pe brige, cowardly, wip a spere, in the fundement; and pe Erl
 Thomas was taken¹⁹ & ladde vnto Pountfrett; and per²⁰ he was
 biheuedede²¹ bisides his owen castel. But aftirward, many a²²
 man him souzt, for miracles pat God^t dede for him.
 28 ¶ And in pat tyme Merlyn saide for sorwe and harme [shuld
 die]²³ a peple of his land^t, wherfore meny landes shulde bene²⁴ on
 him pe bolder²⁴: and he saide sop, ffor by enchesouñ of his barouns
 pat were²⁵ done vnto pe dep for²⁵ Seint Thomas loue²⁶ of Lancastre,
 32 peple of meny londes bicome²⁷ pe bolder^t forto meve werr^t azeyns²⁸
 pe Kyng^t, for her bloode was turnede into²⁹ meny naciouns.

¹ schulde O. ² bore O. ³⁻³ ful falsely D. wilfullich O. ⁴ drade D.
⁵ vengede D. venged^t O. ⁶ enemys D. ⁷⁻⁷ & O. ⁸ before O.
⁹ om. D. ¹⁰ leaf 143. ¹¹ and sir DO. ¹² Herford DO. ¹³ his DO.
¹⁴ fledden DO. ¹⁵ MS. has callede Sir Andrew of Herkela pat is callede.
¹⁶ erl D. Erle O. ¹⁷ hym O. ¹⁸ Herford DO. ¹⁹ take O.
²⁰ þo O. ²¹ beheded^t O. ²² om. DO. ²³ om. in all three MSS.
²⁴⁻²⁴ oppoñ him D. vpon hem þ⁹ boldere O.
²⁵⁻²⁵ om. D. done to deth for O. ²⁶ querel D. querett O.
²⁷ becomen O. ²⁸ oppoñ D. vpon O. ²⁹ to DO.

¶ And afterward Merlyn tolde and saide pat pe forsaide Oweles shulde done¹ miche harme vnto pe flour' of lif' & of dep, & pai shulde² bring Her' vnto³ miche disese, so pat she shulde wende ouer pe⁴ see into Fraunce for to make pees⁵ to pe flour' de lice, 4 and pere she shulde abide til a⁶ tyme pat her' seede shulde come & seche her'; and pere pai shulde abide⁷ til a tyme pat pai shulde clopen⁸ ham wip grace; and po ij Oweles she⁹ shulde seche, and put ham vnto Spitouse¹⁰ dep. and pat prophecie was wel knowen¹¹ 8 and was ful sob; for, Sir' Hugh pe Spenser pe fader, and¹² sir' Hugh¹² pe sone, dede¹³ miche sorwe and persecucion vnto pe Quene Isabel, prouz her' procurment, to her' Lorde pe Kyng'. ¶ and so pai ordeinede amonges ham pat she was put vnto hir' wages, pat is to 12 seyn, xx̄s on¹⁴ pe day. Wherfore pe Kyng of Fraunce, her' broper, was wonder' sore¹⁵ annoiede, and sent into Engeland by his lettres¹⁶ vnto Kyng Edward, pat he¹⁷ shulde come to¹⁸ his parlement to Parys in¹⁹ Fraunce; but Kyng Edward was sore adrade forto 16 come pere, for he wende to bene arest' til pat he hade made Gode⁴ for pe trespasse pat pe Spensers hade done, and also grete harme pat pai hade done vnto pe²⁰ Quene Isabel, his sostre²¹: Wherfore, prouz here ordenance & her' consent' of pe Spensers, the Quene Isabel 20 went ouer' pe see into Fraunce, forto make accorde bituene Kyng Edward and pe Kyng of Fraunce, hir' broper. ¶ And pere duelled she in Fraunce til²² Edward, her' Eldeste sone, come her' to²³ seche; and so pai duelled²⁴ pere bope til pat Aliaunce was 24 made bituene Ham and pe gentil Erl of Henauk, pat if pai wip his²⁵ helpe mygh[t] destroi and ouercome pe venyme and the falsnesse of pe Spensers, pat Sir' Edward shulde spouse Dame Philipp, pe worshipful lady,²⁶ pe Erles Doughter of Henauk. ¶ wherfore pe 28 Quene Isabel, and Sir' Edward her' [son], and Sir' Edmund of Wodestok', pe Kynges broper of Engeland, and Sir' Iohn of Henauk, and Sir' Roger Mortymer' of Wygemore, and Sir' Thomas Rocelyn, and sir' Iohn of Cromwel, and Sire William Trusseff, and 32 meny opere of pe Aliaunce of pe gentil Erle Thomas of Lancastre,

¹ do O. ² leaf 143, back. ³ into DO. ⁴ om. D.

⁵ MS. pees bituene, with bituene underlined for omission.

⁶ on D. on a O. ⁷ abide bope D. ⁸ clope O. ⁹ she DO. he R.

¹⁰ pitous O. ¹¹ know D. knowe O. ¹²⁻¹² om. O. ¹³ deden O.

¹⁴ in DO. ¹⁵ sore O. sone R. ¹⁶ lettre D. ¹⁷ sche O.

¹⁸ vnto O. ¹⁹ into O. ²⁰ om. O.

²¹ MS. sostres, with the last s underlined for omission. ²² til pat O.

²³ forto D. ²⁴ leaf 144. ²⁵ his D. here R. ²⁶ lady and DO.

pat wer' exilede out of Engeland¹ for his querelle, and wer'² disheritede³ of her' londes, ordeynede ham a⁴ grete power', and arryuede⁵ at Herewiche in Southfolc. and sone after⁶ pai 4 pursuede⁷ þe Spensers til pat pai wer' take⁸ and put vnto spitouse⁹ dep, as bifore is saide, and her' company, and also for þe¹⁰ grete falsenesse pat pai deden¹¹ vnto Kyng' Edward & to¹² his peple.

¶ And Merlyn saide also more, þat þe goote shulde bene¹³ put 8 into grete disese; & in grete anguisshe & in grete sorwe he shulde lede¹⁴ his lif. and he saide soþ: for after þe tyme þat Kyng Edward was tak', he was put into warde til pat þe Spensers were put vnto dep. ¶ and also, for enchesouñ þat he wolde nouzt come 12 vnto¹⁵ his owen parlement at Londoñ, as he had ordeyned and assignede him-self', and to his¹⁶ Baronage,¹⁷ and also wolde nouzt gouverne ne¹⁸ reule his peple ne his reaueme as a kyng shulde done, somme of þe barons of Engeland' come¹⁹ & zelden vp her' homage²⁰ 16 vnto him, for ham²¹ and for alle þe oper of þe reaueme, in þe day of²² þe Conuersiouñ²² of Seint Poule, and in þe 3er' of his regne xx; and pai put him out of his realte for euermore; & euer' he leuede his lif' aftirward' in miche sorw and anguisse.

20 Of Kyng' Edward' þe þridde²³ after þe conquest. Capitulo

¶ Ducentesimo ¶ Duodecimo.

ANd after þis Kyng Edward' of Carnariuan, regnede Sire Edward of Wyndesore his sone, þe whiche was cronede 24 Kyng, and annoyntede, at Westminster, þrouz consent and wille of alle þe grete Lordes of²⁴ þe reaueme,²⁴ þe Sunday in²⁵ Candelmasse eve of oure Lady, In þe 3er' of grace M^t CCC²⁶ xxvi, þat was þat tyme of age but xv 3er'.²⁷ and for enchesouñ þat²⁷ his fader' was 28 in warde in þe castel of Kenylworþ, and eke was put douñ of his realte, þe reaueme of Engeland' was as wiþout Kyng', fro þe feste of Seynt Kateryne in þe 3er' aboue-saide, vnto þe fest of Candelmasse;

¹ Engeland' and Sir Iohñ of Henaude and Sir Roger Mortymere D.

² weren O. ³ disherite D. disherited' O. ⁴ om. O.

⁵ arryueden O. ⁶ afterward DO. ⁷ pursueden O. ⁸ taken DO.

⁹ pitous O. ¹⁰ her O. ¹¹ dede O. ¹² om. D. ¹³ be O.

¹⁴ lese D. ¹⁵ to DO. ¹⁶ leaf 144, back.

¹⁷ A bere is written in the margin at the head of this page, in a different (?) hand.

¹⁸ and DO. ¹⁹ comen O. ²⁰ homages DO. ²¹ him D.

^{22—23} Conuersacion O.

²³ þirde O. ^{24—24} Engeland' D. ²⁵ on D. ²⁶ CCC & O.

^{27—27} MS. and for enchesouñ þat and for enchesouñ þat.

and þo were ¹al maner¹ pleez of þe Kyngus Benche astent. ¶ And þo was commanded to alle þe shirreffes of Engeland þoruþ write² to warne þe partieþ defendandþ þrouþ somp[n]ing³ aþein, and also ferþermore þat alle þe prisoners þat were in þe Kyngus Gayole þat ⁴were atachede þrouþ shirreffs shulde ³be Late go quiet. ¶ The Kyng Edward, after His coronacioun, at þe⁴ prier⁵ and biseching⁶ of his lieges of þe reaume, graunted⁵ a chartre of stedefast pees to alle ham þat wolde it⁶ axe. ¶ And Sire Iohn of Henaude and his ⁸company toke⁷ his leue of þe Kyng and of þe lordes of his⁸ reaume, & turnede home to her owen contre aþeyn; and eueryche⁹ of ham hade ful riche þiftes, euery man as he was of value and of State. ¶ And þo was Engeland in pees and in¹⁰ rest, & grete loue¹¹ ¹²bituene þe Kyng and his lordes; and communeliche¹² Engliþshemen saide amongus ham þat þe deuel was dede. ¶ But þe tresour¹³ of þe Kyng his fader, and of the Spensers, boþ of þe fader and of⁴ þe sone, and þe tresour of þe Erl¹⁴ of Arundel, and of Maistre ¹⁶Robert¹⁵ Baldok¹ þat was þe Kyngus chaunceller, was departede after þe Quene Isabels ordenaunce, and Sir Roger Mortymer of Wigemore, so þat þe Kyng hade noþing þerof but at her wille and her deliuerance, neiþer of hir landes, as afterward 3e shul here ²⁰more openly.

How Kyng Edward went to Stanhop forto mete þe Scottes.

¶ Capitulo ¶ Ducentesimo ¶ xiiij.

ANd þitte⁴ in þe same tyme was Kyng Edward in þe castel of ²⁴Kenylworth, vnder þe kepyng of Sir Henry þat was Erl Thomas broþer of Lancast, þat þo was Erl of [Leycestre; and þe Kyng grantede him the erldome of]¹⁶ Lancastre þat þe Kyng hade seisede into his hande, and put out Thomas of Lancastre his ²⁸broþer, and þo was he¹⁷ Erl of Lancastre & ¹⁸of Leicestre, and eke Stiward of Engeland, as his broþer was in his tyme. ¶ but Sir Edward, þat was Kyng Edwardes fader,¹⁹ made sorw wipouten²⁰ ende, for cause þat he might nouþt speke wip his wif ne wip his ³²Sone; wherfor hit was miche meschief²¹; ffor þauþ hit were so þat

¹⁻¹ alle þe D.

² Engeland þoruþ write D. Engeland þurgh write O. Engeland R.

³ leaf 145. ⁴ om. O. ⁵ graunted ham D. graunted hem O.

⁶ him D. ⁷ nome DO. ⁸ the D. þe O. ⁹ eche O.

¹⁰ om. DO. ¹¹ loue was D. ¹² Comenly O.

¹³ and þe tresour D. & þe tresour O. ¹⁴ erles DO.

¹⁵ MS. Robert Robert. ¹⁶ supplied from D. ¹⁷ þe sic O.

¹⁸ leaf 145, back. ¹⁹ MS. fader fader. ²⁰ with-oute O. ²¹ nedfuþ O.

he were¹ ladde & reulede prou² false conseile, 3itte³ he was Kyng Edwardus sone, & come⁴ of pe worpiest bloode of al⁵ pe worlde; and pilk¹ to whom he was⁶ wonede forto⁶ 3eue grete 3iftes and
 4 large, were⁷ most pryue wip pe Kyng, his owen sone; and pai were his enemys bope by nyght and by day, and procurede forto make debate and contak bituene him and his sone, and Isabel his wif. but pe ffrer^r Prechoures to him were gode frendes euermore,⁸ and
 8 caste and ordeynede, bope nyght and day, how pai might bryng him out of prisoñ. ¶ And amonge her^r company pat pe ffreres priueliche⁹ hade brouzt, pere was a ffrere pat me callede Dunheuede¹⁰; and he hade ordeynede an[d] gaderede a grete company
 12 of folc forto helpe at pat nede; but pe ffrere was take a[nd] put into pe castel of Pountfrett, and per he deide in prisone. ¶ And Sir Henry, Erl of Lancast^r, pat hade pe¹¹ Kyngus fader¹¹ in kepyng^t, prou³ commandement of pe Kyng, delyuerede Edward,
 16 pe Kingus fader, by endentur^r vnto Sire Thomas of Berkelee, and to Sir Iohn Mautrauers; & pai lad him fram¹³ pe casteH of Kenylworth vnto pe casteH of Berkelee,¹⁴ and kepte him pere safly.¹⁵ ¶ And at Este[r] nexte after^r his coronacioun, pe Kyng ordeynede
 20 an huge host forto fei^zt azeins¹⁶ pe Scottes; and Sir Iohn, pe Erles broper of Henaud^t, from¹⁷ byzonde pe see, come forto helpe Kyng Edward^t, and brouzt wip him¹⁸ v C men of Armes, and arryuede at Douer^r; and pai hade leue forto gone¹⁹ forth til pat¹⁸ pai²⁰ come
 24 vnto²⁰ 3ork^t, pere pat pe Kyng abode ham. ¶ And pe Scottes comen²¹ pider^r vnto pe Kyng forto make pees and accorde, but pe accordement bituene ham laste but a²² litel while.²³ and at pat tyme pe Englishe-men were clope²⁴ alle in cotes & hodes, peyntede²⁵ wip
 28 lettres & wip²² floures ful sembli,²⁶ wip longe berdes; and perfore pe Scotas made a bille pat was fastenede oppoñ pe cherche dores of Saint Peres²⁷ toward Stangate. & þus saide pe Scripture in despite of the¹⁸ Englishe-men ¶ Longe berde hertles, peyntede Hode
 32 witles, Gay cote graceles, makeþ²⁸ Engl[i]ssheman²⁹ priftles.

¶ And on⁵ pe Trinite day next³⁰ comyng, biganne³⁰ pe contak

¹ was O. ² by DO. ³ pit sic D. ⁴ comen O. ⁵ om. DO.
⁶⁻⁶ wont D. wonte to O. ⁷ weren O. ⁸ for euermore D.
⁹ priuely D. pryuyly O. ¹⁰ Donebat O.
¹¹⁻¹¹ fader of pe Kyng O. ¹² þurgh pe O. ¹³ fro O.
¹⁴ leaf 146. ¹⁵ falsly O. ¹⁶ with D. ¹⁷ fro DO. ¹⁸ om. D.
¹⁹ go O. ²⁰⁻²⁰ comen to D. ²¹ come O.
²² om. O. ²³ tyme DO. ²⁴ clopede D. clothed O.
²⁵ y-peynted O. ²⁶ semely DO. ²⁷ Petre D. om. O.
²⁸ makes DO. ²⁹ Englund O. ³⁰⁻³⁰ sewyng^t big sic D.

in þe citee of 3ork¹ bytuene þe Engliſshemen and þe Henaudres. and in þat debate were quelled of þe Erldom of Nichole and Mordrede, ^{xx}iiiij; and after, þai wer² buried vnder³ a stone in Seynt Clementis cherche haw in Fossegate. And for enchesouñ þat þe Henaudres ⁴ come¹ forto helpe þe Kyng¹, hir¹ pees was² criede, oppoñ payne of lif and lime. and in þat opere Half, it was ³fonden⁴ by enquest of þe citee, þat þe Engliſſhe-men biganne þe debate.

How þe Engliſſhe-men Stopped þe Scottes in þe park¹ of 8 Stanhope, and How þai turnede azeine into⁵ Scotland.
Capitulo CC xiiij.

ANd at þat tyme þe Scottes hade assemblede al her power¹, and come⁶ into Engeland, and quelled & robbede alle þat þai ¹² might tak,⁷ and brent and destroyede al þe North contre þrouz-out, til ⁸þai come⁸ to þe Parke of Stanhope in Wyredale: and þer þe Scottes helde ham in a buſshement. ¶ But whe[n] þe Kyng¹ hade herde þrouz certeyne aspiez wher¹ þe Scottes¹ were, anone right wiþ ¹⁶ his host he biſegede þe forsaide park, so þat þe Scottes wiste neuer wher¹ forto goñ out, but onliche⁹ vnto her¹ armes, and þai abiden in þe parke xv daies; and vitailles ham failede on¹⁰ euery side, so þat þai wer¹ gretly empeyrede of her¹¹ bodyes. ¶ And siþ þat Brut ²⁰ come ferst into¹² Britaigne, vnto þis tyme, was neuer¹ seyne sepenes¹³ so fair¹ an host, what of Engliſshemen and of Aliens, and of men on foot,¹⁴ whiche ordeyned ham forto feizt wiþ þe Scottes, þrouz egging of Sire Henry, Erl of Lancaster¹, and of Sir¹ Iohn of¹⁵ ²⁴ Henaude, þat wolde haue gone ouer þe water of Wythe forto haue fouzt wiþ þe Scottes; but Sir¹ Roger of Mortymer¹ consentede nouzt þerto, for he hade priueliche¹⁶ tak¹⁷ mede of¹ þe Scottes, ham forto helpe, þat þai myght wende azeine into hir¹ owen contre. ¶ And ²⁸ þe¹⁸ same Mortymer counseiled miche¹⁹ Thomas of Broþertoñ, þat þe Erl Marchal, þat was Kyng¹ Edwardes vncl, þat the ²⁰forsaide Thomas shulde nouzt assemble at þat tyme vnto þe Scottes; and he assented; but he wiste nouzt þe doying bituene þe Scottes and ³² þe forsaide Mortymer. and for enchesouñ þat he was Marchal of

¹ comen DO. ² wer¹ D. ³ leaf 146, back. ⁴ founde DO.

⁵ to O. ⁶ comen D.

⁷ take without nombre D. take withoute nombre O.

⁸⁻⁸ þat þai comen D. ⁹ only O. ¹⁰ in DO. ¹¹ he sic D.

¹² vnto D. ¹³ seth O. ¹⁴ foote the D. foote þe O. ¹⁵ om. DO.

¹⁶ priuily O. ¹⁷ taken DO. ¹⁸ þat D.

¹⁹ somiche D. so mych O. ²⁰ leaf 147.

Engeland, and to him *perteynede*¹ *euer*² þe vauntward. he sent hastily to þe Erl of Lancastre and to *Sire Iohn* of Henaude, þat þai shulde nouzt feizt oppoñ þe Scottes, in *preiudice* and in³ harm-
 4 yng⁴ of him and⁴ his fee, and if þai dede, þat þai shulde stande to⁵ her' *owen peril*. and þe forsaide Erl Marchal was al aredy⁶ wip his bataile at þe redose of þe Erl of Lancastre forto haue fouzten⁷ wip him and wip⁸ his folc, if he hade meuede forto feizt wip þe
 8 Scottes. and in þis maner' he was desceyuede, and wiste⁹ no maner' þinge of þis⁹ *tresouñ*; and þus was þe Kyng' Principaly¹⁰ desceyuede.

¶ And when it was nyzt,¹¹ Mortymer', þat hade þe wacche forto
 12 kepe of þe host, þat nyght destourblede þe wacche þat noþing most be¹² done. and¹³ in þe¹³ meny-while þe Scottes stele¹⁴ by nyzt toward her' *owen contre*, as fast as þai myght; and so was þe Kyng falsely¹⁵ desceyuede &¹⁵ bitraiede, þat wende þat alle þe *traitoures*
 16 of his land had bene brouzt vnto an ende, as it² was saide bifore.

¶ Now here, þe lordes, how *traterously* Kyng' Edward was desceyuede, and how *mervailously* and¹⁶ boldely þe Scottes dede of werr'; ffor þe same nygh[t]¹⁷ Iames Douglas, wip CC men of Armes,
 20 ryden prou3-out þe host¹⁸ of Kyng Edward, þe same nyght þat þe Scottes were scapede toward her' *owen contre*, as is aboue [said], til þat¹⁹ þai comen²⁰ to þe Kyngus Paulyoñ, and quellede þere²¹ men in her' beddes; and criede²² *somme* "Noward, Noward!" and anoþere
 24 tyme, "A Douglas, A Douglas!" wherfore the Kyng, þat was in his paulyoñ, and miche *oper* folc, were wonder' sore afraiede; but, —blessede be Almyghty God!—þe Kyng was nouzt taken; and in grete *perile* was þe reume of Engeland. ¶ And þat nyght the
 28 mone shone²³ ful clere²³ and brizt; and for al þe Kyngus men, þe Scottes ascapede harmeles. and in þe morwe, when þe Kyng' wist' þat þe Scottes were ascapede,²⁴ he was wonder' sory, and ful hertly wepte wip his zonge eyne; and²⁵ zitt wist he²⁵ nouzt who²⁶ had
 32 done²⁶ him þat²⁷ *tresouñ*; but þat²⁸ *tresouñ* was wel knowe²⁹ a gode

¹ *perteyneth* O. ² *om.* D. ³ *om.* O. ⁴ and of DO.

⁵ vnto DO. ⁶ *arrayede* D. *arayed* O. ⁷ *fouzt* D. *fought* O.

⁸ *MS.* wip him and wip.

⁹⁻⁹ noþing of þe D. noþing of þis O. ¹⁰ *prieliche* D.

¹¹ nyzt þe D. nyght þe O. ¹² bene D. ¹³⁻¹³ þat D. ¹⁴ stale D.

¹⁵⁻¹⁵ *om.* O. ¹⁶ and how D. ¹⁷ *myzt sic* D. ¹⁸ leaf 147, back.

¹⁹ *MS.* þat þat. ²⁰ come DO. ²¹ þere meny DO.

²² *crieden* D. ²³⁻²³ *fayre* D.

²⁴ ascapede into her' *owen contre* D. ascaped into her Cuntr' O.

²⁵⁻²⁵ wist O. ²⁶⁻²⁶ þat had do O. ²⁷ þis D.

²⁸ þat false D. þat fals O. ²⁹ y-knowe O.

while after, as þe story telleþ. ¶ The Kyng Edward¹ come þo aþeyne vnto² 3ork¹, ful sorweful, and his hoste departede, and euery man went into² his owen contre wip ful heuy and mornyng semblant.³ and þe ⁴Henaude toke⁴ her' leue, and went into her' owen ⁴contre; and þe Kyng, for her' *trauaile*, hugely ham rewarded⁴, and for enchesouñ of þat viage, þe Kyng had despendeð miche of his *tresour*, and wastede.

¶ And in þat tyme wer' seyne ij mones in þe firmament: þat on ⁸was clere, and þat *oper* was⁵ dere, þat⁶ men myzt hit⁷ þo see þ[r]ou-
out⁸ al þe worlde. and⁹ Grete débate was þat same tyme aþeyn
¹⁰þe⁷ Pope Iohñ þe xxij after þat⁵ Seynt Petre was Pope, and þe
Emperoure of Almaigne, þat made him Emperour' aþeins þe Popes ¹²
wille, þat þo helde his see at Avy[n]ouñ; wherfore þe Emperour
made his *crie* at Rome, and ordeynede an*oper* Pope þat hight¹¹
Nicholas, þat was a ffrer' menour; and þat was¹² aþeynes þe right
of holy chereh, wherfore he was *cursede*⁵; and þe power' of þat ¹⁶
¹³*oper* Pope¹³ sone was laide; and for enchesouñ þat soche *mervailles*
were seyne, men saide þat þe wor[l]de was neiȝ at an⁵ ende.

Of þe dep of Kyng Edward of Carnaruan, sometyme Kyng of
Engeland. *Capitulo Ducentesimo Quintodecimo.* 20

A Nd now [go] we aþeyne vnto Sir' Edward of Carnaruan, þat
was ¹⁴some-tyme Kyng¹⁴ of Engeland, and was put adoune¹⁵
of his dignite. allas for his *tribulaciouñ*! and sorwe him bifelle
prouȝ false consel þat he leuede, & truste oppoñ ham to miche, þat ²⁴
afterward¹⁶ was destroyede¹⁶ prouȝ her' falsenesse, as God wolde.
¶ And þis Edward of Carnaryuan was in þe castel of Berkele, vnder
þe keypyng of Sir' Morice of Berkeley and of Sire Iohñ of Mau-
trauers. and to ham he made his *compleynt* of his sorwe and of ²⁸
his disese; and oftetyms he axede of his wardeyns what he hade
tressepassed aþeins Dame Isabel his wif, and Sir' Edward his sone,
þat was new made Kyng', þat þai wolde nouȝt visite him. ¶ [þo
ansuerede one of his wardenes]¹⁷ ¶ "My worþi lord, displese ȝow ³²
nouȝt þat y shal ȝow telle; þe enchesoun is, for it is done ham to
vnderstonde þat, if my Lady ȝour' wif come eny þing' neiȝ ȝow, þat ȝe

¹ om. O. ² toward D. ³ MS. semblant se.

⁴⁻⁴ Henaudes nome D. Henaudes toke O. ⁵ om. D. ⁶ as DO.

⁷ om. DO. ⁸ þrouȝ D. ⁹ and a DO. ¹⁰ leaf 148.

¹¹ me callede D. ¹² was þe[re] D. ¹³⁻¹³ Pope afore hym O.

¹⁴⁻¹⁴ kyng' symetyme D. kyng sumtyme O. ¹⁵ adouñ some-tyme D.

¹⁶ destroyede D. destroyed O. om. R. ¹⁷ supplied from D.

wolde ¹her' strangle and quelle, and ²al so pat 3e Wolde do to ²my Lord' 3our' Sone." ¶ po ansuerede he wip simple chere, and saide :
 "allas, allas ! am y nouzt in prisouñ, and aht at 3our' owen wille ?
 4 Now God it wote, y pouzt it neuer ; and now y wolde³ pat y were dede ! so wolde God pat y were ! for pan were al my⁴ sorwe passede." ¶ Hit was nouzt longe after pat pe Kyng, prouz conseil of pe Mortymer', grantede pe ward and pe kepyng' of Sire Edward
 8 his fader', to Sire Thomas⁵ Toiourneye and to pe forsaide Sir Iohn Mantrauers, prouz pe Kyngus lettre, and put out holliche ⁶pe forsaide⁶ Sir' Morice, of pe warde of pe Kyng'. and pai tok⁷ and lad ⁸him to⁸ pe castel of Corfe, pe whiche castel pe Kyng' hatede as
 12 eny dep ; and pai kepte him pere safly⁹ til pat¹⁰ it come to¹¹ Seint Matheus day in Septembre, in pe 3ere of Grace M^t CCC xxvij, pat pe forsaide Sir' Roger¹² Mortymer' sent pe maner of pe¹³ dep, how and in what maner he shulde be done to dep. ¶ And anone as pe
 16 forsaide Thomas and Iohn Hade seyne pe lettre and pe¹⁴ commandement, pai maden¹⁵ Kyng Edward of Carnaruan gode chere and gode solace, as pai myght atte pat soper' ; and noþing' pe Kyng wiste of her' traitoures.¹⁶ ¶ And when tyme was forto gone¹⁷ to bed, pe
 20 Kyng went vnto¹⁸ his bed, and laye, and slepte faste. And as pe Kyng lay and slepte, pe traitoures, false forsuorne¹⁹ azeins her' homage and her' feaute, come²⁰ priueliche²¹ into pe Kyngus chaumbre, and her' company ²²wip Ham, and Laiden an Huge
 24 table oppon his Wombe, and wip men pressede and helde²³ fast adoune pe iiij corners of pe table oppoñ his body : wherwip pe gode man awoke, and was wonder' sore adrade to bene²⁴ dede pere, and slayn, and turnede his body opsadouñ. ¶ pe tok²⁵ pe false
 28 tirauntz,²⁶ and as²⁷ wode traitoures,²⁸ an horne, and put hit into²⁹ his fundament as depe³⁰ as pai might, and toke a spete of Copur' brennyng',⁵ & put hit prouz pe horne³¹ into his body, and oftentimes rollede perwip his bowailes ; and so pai quellede here
 32 Lorde, pat³² noþing was perceyuede ; and after, he was enterede at Gloucestr'.

¹ leaf 148, back.²⁻² pat 3e wol do also O.³ wil O.⁴ myn O.⁵ om. D.⁶⁻⁶ om. O.⁷ toke pe kyng' D.⁸⁻⁸ pe kyng vnto O.⁹ saflich D.¹⁰ om. DO.¹¹ vnto DO.¹² Thomas DO.¹³ his D.¹⁴ om. O.¹⁵ maden pe D. made O.¹⁶ treytourresse O.¹⁷ go O.¹⁸ to D.¹⁹ forsuore D.²⁰ comen O.²¹ priuely D. priuily O.²² leaf 149.²³ held it O.²⁴ be O.²⁵ nome D.²⁶ traitou[r]s D.

traytours O.

²⁷ as fals & O.²⁸ tirauntz D. tirautes O.²⁹ in D. vnto O.³⁰ dede sic O.³¹ horne brennyng' D.³² and D.

How Kyng¹ Edward spousede Philippe, þe Erles daughter of Henaude, at 3ork¹. Capitulo Ducentesimo xvj^{to}.

ANd after cristes-masse¹ þo next sewyng¹, sir¹ Iohñ of Henaude brouzt² wip him Philipp, his broper³ Douzter, pat was 4 Erl of Henaud⁴, his nece,⁴ into Engeland; and Kyng Edward spousede⁵ her¹ at 3ork¹ wip michel honour; and Sir⁶ Iohñ of Hothum, Bisshop of Ely, and Sir⁶ William of Meltoñ, Erchebisshop of 3ork, songe þo⁷ þe masse, þe Sunday in þe⁸ Eve of þe 8 Conuersion⁸ of Seynt Poule, in þe 3er¹ of grace M^t CCC xxvij. ¶ but for enchesouñ pat þe kyng was⁹ but 3onge and tender of age when he was cronede, and meny wrongus were¹⁰ Done¹¹ whiles his fader¹¹ leuede, for enchesouñ þat he trowede þe¹² counseilers pat 12 were false aboute him, pat conseilede him to done oþerwise þan resouñ wolde, wherfore grete harme was þo vnto¹³ the¹⁴ reaume and to þe Kyng, and al men directede¹⁵ þe Kyngus dede,¹⁶ and hit was nouzt—so Almyghty God hit⁷ wote,¹⁷—wherfor it was 16 ordeynede att¹⁸ þe Kyngus crownyng¹⁸, pat þe Kyng, for tendre of his age, shulde be gouernede be tuelf grete Lordes of Engeland, wipouten¹⁹ þe whiche nopng shulde be²⁰ done, þat is forto seyne, þe Erchebisshoppe of Kanterbery, þe Erchebisshop of 3ork¹, þe 20 Bisshopp of Wynchestre and þe Bisshop of Hereford,²¹ And þe Erl of Lancastre, and²² þe Erl Marchal, and þe Erl of Kent, pat were þe Kyngus vncles, and þe Erl of Gerreint,²³ Sir¹ Thomas Wake, Sir¹ Henry of⁶ Parcy, Sire Olyuer¹ of Yngham, and Iohñ of 24 Roos, barons. ¶ Alle þise were²⁴ suore treweliche²⁴ forto conseil þe Kyng¹, and þai shulde ansuere euery 3ere in þe parlement of pat shulde²⁵ be done²⁵ in þe tyme of pat²⁶ gouernaile. ¶ But pat ordenance was sone vndone,²⁷ and pat was miche²⁸ losse and 28 harme²⁸ to al Engeland; ffor þe Kyng and alle þe lordes pat shulde gouerne him, were gouernede & reulede after þe Kyngus moder¹, Dame Isabel, and by Sir¹ Roger þe²² Mortymer; and as þai wolde, al ping¹ was done, bope²⁹ amonges hye and³⁰ lawe. ¶ And 32

¹ Cristemasse O. ² brouzt þo D. ³ Brother O. ⁴⁻⁴ om. D.
⁵ wedede D. ⁶ om. D. ⁷ om. DO. ⁸⁻⁸ Conuersacion O.
⁹ nas O. ¹⁰ weren O.
¹¹⁻¹¹ while his [fader] D. while pat his fadir O.
¹² his D. ¹³ to O. ¹⁴ leaf 149, back. ¹⁵ directe it sic O.
¹⁶ dedes D. ¹⁷ wold O. ¹⁸⁻¹⁸ Crownyng of þe kyng O.
¹⁹ withoute O. ²⁰ bene D. ²¹ Herford DO. ²² om. O.
²³ Garenne O. ²⁴⁻²⁴ trewly swore O. ²⁵⁻²⁵ done be O.
²⁶ þe D. ²⁷ y-done O. ²⁸⁻²⁸ harme and lossé D.
²⁹ MS. boue. ³⁰ and amonge D.

pai toke¹ vnto ham castelles,² tounes, Landes and rentz, in grete harme and losse vnto the crowne, and of þe Kyngus state also, out of mesur'.

4 **How þe pees was made bituene þe Engliſshemen and þe Scottes ; & also of³ þe iustifyng⁴ of Troilebastañ. Capitulo ¶ Ducentesimo ¶ Septuadecimo.**

8 **T**He Kyng Edward, at Whitsontide, þe secunde zere of his regne, þrouz conseile of his moder and of Sir Roger⁵ Mortymer, ordeynede a parlement at Nor[t]hamptoñ ; at þe whiche parlement þe Kyng, þrouz her' conseil and none opere of þe land⁶ wipin age, grantede to bene⁷ accordede wip þe Scottes in pis maner, þat al þe feautes and homages þat þe Scottes shulde done to⁸ þe crowne of Engeland, forzaf ham vnto the Scottes for euermore, by his chartre ensealede. ¶ and ferþermore an endenture was made of þe Scottes vnto⁹ Kyng Edward, þat was Kyng 16 Henries sone, whiche endenture pai callede his¹⁰ Ragemain, in the whiche were contenede alle þe homages and feautes, ferst of þe Kyng of³ Scotland, and of alle þe prelates, Erles and barons of aH¹¹ þe reaume of Scotland, wip her' seals sette peron, and oper 20 chartres and remembrancez þat¹² Kyng Edward and his barons had of her' right in þe reaume of Scotland, hit was forzeue ham azein holliche,¹³ and also wip þe blac crois of Scotland, þe whiche þe gode Kyng⁴ Edward conquerede in Scotland, and brouzt hit out of 24 þe Abbay of Scone, þat is a ful precieuse relique. ¶ And also ferþermore he relessede and forzaf alle þe landes þat þe barons of Engeland had in Scotland by olde conqueste. and pis pees forto halde and laste, þe Scottes were bonden¹⁴ to þe Kyng⁴ in xxx M⁺ 28 ti¹⁵ of siluer, to ben⁷ paiede wipin iij zere, þat is to seyne, euery zere x M⁺ ti, by even porcioñs. 16 ¶ And ferþermore, ouer al þis, pai¹⁷ spake¹⁸ bituene þe Par[t]ies [a]boue-saide, þat Dauid Dritonanter, þat was Robert Brus¹⁹ sone,—þe false tirant and traitour, 32 and false forsuorne azeynes his oth, þat aroos azeynes his liege Lord, þe noble²⁰ Kyng Edward, and falseliche²¹ made him Kyng

¹ token O. ² castell and D. ³ om. O. ⁴ leaf 150.

⁵ Roger þe D. ⁶ lande and D. ⁷ be O. ⁸ vnto DO.

⁹ vnto þe O. ¹⁰ it O. ¹¹ om. DO. ¹² MS. þat pat.

¹³ holly D. ¹⁴ bounde O. ¹⁵ pound O. ¹⁶ leaf 150, back.

¹⁷ þe sic O. ¹⁸ speken D. speke O. ¹⁹ the Brutes D. þe Brus O.

²⁰ gode D. ²¹ falsely D. falsly O.

of Scotland, as is saide bifore,—& his sone shuld be Kyng of Scotland, þat was of age but¹ v 3ere. ¶ & so, prou3 hir² cursede conseil, pis Dauid spousede at Berewik^t Dame Iohne³ of þe³ Toure, þat was Kyng^t Edwardus sustre, as þe geste⁴ telleþ, oppoñ⁴ Marie Magdalein⁵ day In⁶ þe 3er^t of grace M^t CCC xxviii, to grete harme and enpeiryng^t to al þe Kyngus bloode, Wherof þat gentil lady come, Allas þe time! for wonder miche was⁷ þat fair⁷ DamyseH disparage,⁸ sip þat she was mariede wipout⁹ þe commune⁸ assent of alle¹⁰ þe lordes of Engeland. ¶ And fro þe¹¹ tyme þat Brut hadde conquerede Albyoñ, and nempned^e þe land^t after his owen name Brytayngñ, þat now is callede Engeland, after þe name of Engist; and so was þe reaume of Scotland holden¹² of þe¹² reaume of Engeland, and of þe croune, by feaute and¹³ homage. For Brut conquerede þat lande, and 3af it to Albanac, his¹⁴ secunde sone; and he callede þe land^t Albany after his¹⁵ name, so þat þe heires þat comen after him helde¹⁶ of Brut, and of his heires, 16 þe Kyngus of Britaign, by feaute and homage; and fro þat¹⁷ tyme vnto pis Kyng Edward, ¶ þe reaume of Scotland was holden¹⁸ of þe¹⁹ reaume of Engeland by feaute²⁰ and by²¹ seruices abouesaide, as þe cronicles of Engeland and of Scotland bereþ²² wisse 20 more plenerly. and acursede be þe tyme þat pis parlement was ordeynede at Northamtoñ! for þere, prou3 false conseile, þe Kyng was²³ þere falsely disherited²³; and zitt he²⁴ was wipin age. ¶ And zette, when Kyng^t Edward was put doune²⁵ of his realte of 24 Engeland, zitte men put him nouzt out of þe feautes and seruises²⁶ of þe reaume of Scotland, and of þe Fraunchises Disheritede for euermore. ¶ And nopeles þe grete lordes of Engeland were azeins to conferme þe pees & the trewes abouesaide, saf oneliche²⁷ þe 28 Quene Isabel, þat was þe Kynges moder^t Edward, and þe Bisshop of Ely, and þe Lorde Mortymer. ¶ But resouñ and law wolde nouzt þat a final pees shulde be made bituene ham, wipouten²⁸ commune assent of Engeland.

¹ of DO. ² his O. ³⁻³ atte O. ⁴⁻⁴ telle3 oppoñ seynt sic D.

⁵ Magdaleyns D. ⁶ om. O. ⁷⁻⁷ the D.

⁸ disparagede D. ⁸ disparaged O. ⁹ azeins al D. ⁹ azeins al O.

¹⁰ om. O. ¹¹ þat O. ¹² MS. holden holden. ¹³ & by O.

¹⁴ MS. has his eldest, with eldest underlined for omission.

¹⁵ his owen D. ¹⁶ helden O. ¹⁷ fro þat DO. fro R.

¹⁸ holde O. ¹⁹ leaf 151. ²⁰ feutes O. ²¹ om. DO.

²² beren O. ²³⁻²³ falsely disherite D. ²⁴ MS. it.

²⁵ adoune D. ²⁵ adoun O. ²⁶ homages D. ²⁷ onely D. only O.

²⁸ with-out D. with-oute þe O.

Of the debate þat was bituene Quene¹ IsabeH and Sire Henry, Erl of Lancastre and of Leycestre; and of ²the ryding of² Bedford. *Capitulo Ducentesimo xvij^o.*

4 **W**Hen þe forsaide Dauid^t hade spousede Dame Iohne of þe
Tour^r in þe toune of Berwik^t, as bifore is saide, þe Scottes,
in despite of þe Engliſſhe-men, callede Dame Iohnⁿ þe Countesse
'make pees,' for þe cowardise pees forto ordeyne; but þe Kyngus
8 personⁿ bare þe ²wite & þe² blame, wiþ wrong^t, of þe makyng
of þe accorde; and al was done þrouz þe Quene & Roger
þe Mortymer^r. ¶ And hit was nouzt longe after, þat³ þe quene
Isabel ⁴ne toke into Her⁵ Honde al þe Lordeshipp of Pountfrett^t,
12 and almost al þe landes ²þat were² of value, þat *perteynede*⁶ vnto⁷
þe croune of Engeland, so þat þe Kyng^r had nouzt forto⁷ dispende,
but of his Vsues⁸ and of his escheker; ffor þe Quene Isabel and
þe Mortymer had a⁹ grete manie of¹⁰ her^r retenue,¹¹ þat folwede
16 euermore þe Kyngus courte, and went and tok þe Kyngus prises
for her^r penyworthes at gode chepe; wherfore þe contre þat þai
comen¹² in were ful sore adrade, and almost destroyede. ¶ þo
bigan¹³ þe communitie¹⁴ of Engeland forto hate ¹⁵Isabel þe Quene,¹⁵
20 þat so miche¹⁶ louede her^r when she come azein forto *pursue* the false
traitoures þe Spensers fro Fraunce, þat same tyme þe false *traitour*
Robert of Holand^t þat bitraede his lorde¹⁷ Thomas of Lancastre was
þo deliuerede out of prison, and was wonder^r pryue wiþ þe¹⁸ Quene
24 IsabeH and also wiþ þe Mortymer^r; but þat auailede him but litel,
for he was tak at Michelmasse þat next come after, as he rode
toward^t þe Quene Isabel to Londoñ; and Sir^r Thomas Whither^r
smote of his heede¹⁹ bisides þe toune of Seynt Albanus. and þis¹⁸
28 Sir^r Thomas duelledede þo wiþ Sir^r Henry, Erl of Lancastre; and he
put him in hidyng for drede of þe Quene, for she louede him
wonder miche, and praiede²⁰ vnto þe Kyng^r ²for him,² þat þe same
Thomas most ben²¹ exilede ²out of Engeland.²
32 ¶ And þe noble Erl, Sir^r Henry of La[n]castr^r, had ofte-tymes
²²Herde þe *commune clamour* of þe Engliſſhe-men, of þe michel²³
dise²⁴ þat were done in Engeland^t, an^r also for diuerse wronges

¹ om. D. þ^e qwen O.

²⁻² om. D.

an sic D.

⁴ leaf 151, back.

⁵ her^r owen D. her

O. ⁶ *perteyneden* O.

⁷ to D. ⁸ Isues D. vses O.

⁹ om

¹⁰ in D.

¹¹ retenaunce O.

¹² come O.

¹³ big

D. ¹⁴ *Comminalte* O.

¹⁵⁻¹⁵ þe Quene IsabeH D.

¹⁶ om. D.

lord sir^r DO.

¹⁸ om. O.

¹⁹ heuede D.

²⁰ praye D.

²¹ be O.

²² leaf 152.

²³ myche O.

²⁴ diseses DO.

pat were done amonges¹ þe commune peple, of² whiche þe Kyng bare þe blame wip wrong³, for he nas but ful zonge and tendre of age, and þouzt, as a gode man, forto done³ away and slake þe slaundre of þe Kyngus persone, if þat he might in eny maner⁴ wise, so as⁴ þe Kyng was þerof noþing gulti, wherfore he was in perel of lif and lyme. ¶ And so he assemblede al his retynance,⁵ and went & spake vnto ham of þe Kyngus honour, and also forto amende his estate. and Sir⁶ Thomas of Broþertoñ, Erl Marchal, 8 and Sir⁷ Edmund of Wodestok⁸, þat were þe Kyngus vnclcs, and also men of Londoñ, maden⁶ her⁷ oth, him forto⁷ mayntene in þat same querele. ¶ And her⁸ cause was þis, þat þe Kyng shulde holde his household and his many⁸ as⁹ perteynede a Kyng⁹ forto done,¹⁰ 12 and haue also his realte; and þat¹¹ þe Quene Isabel shulde delyuer¹¹ out of her¹² honde, ¹²into þe Kyngus honde,¹² al maner lordeshippe,¹³ rentes, tounes, ¹⁴and castelles¹⁴ þat perteynede to¹⁵ þe croune of Engeland¹⁴, and þat she shulde leue wip þe þridde¹⁶ part of 16 þe rentes of Engeland, as opere Quenes hade done ¹⁷or þis tyme,¹⁷ and wip none oper þing. ¶ And also þat Sir¹⁸ Roger Mortymer shulde duelle oppoñ his owen Londes, for þe whiche landes he hade holpen disherite miche peple, so þat þe commune peple were 20 nouzt¹¹ destroiede þrouz hir¹⁸ ¹⁹wrongeful takyng¹⁹. ¶ And also to enquere How, and by²⁰ whome, þe Kyng was bitraiede and falsely²¹ deseyuede at Stanhope, and þrouz whos conseil ²²þat þe Scottes went²³ away by nyght fram²⁴ þe Kyng¹⁹. ¶ And also how, and þrouz 24 whos conseil,²² þe ordenance þat were²⁵ made at þe coronacioñ of Kyng Edward wer²⁶ put adouñ, þat is to seyne, þat þe Kyng, for ²⁶helpyng and amendement²⁶ of þe reaume, and in honour of him, shulde be²⁷ gouernede and reulede by xij, þe grettest & wiseste 28 Lordes of þe reaume; and wipouten²⁸ ham shulde noþing be grauntede ne done, as 'bifore is saide; the whiche gouernances maliciou[s]ly were put adouñ²⁹ frò þe Kyng¹⁹; wherfor me[ny] harmes, shames and reprofes haue falle vnto þe Kyng¹⁹ and to his 32

¹ among O. ² of the DO. ³ do O. ⁴ þat D. þat as O.

⁵ retenauntz D. ⁶ made D. ⁷ to D. ⁸ meyne O.

⁹⁻⁹ a kyng¹⁹ perteynede D. perteyneth vnto a kyng O. ¹⁰ do O.

¹¹ om. D. ¹²⁻¹² om. D. ¹³ lordeshippes D. lordschippes O.

¹⁴⁻¹⁴ castelles D. ¹⁵ vnto DO. ¹⁶ þirde O.

¹⁷⁻¹⁷ bifore her D. byfore her O. ¹⁸ leaf 152, back.

¹⁹⁻¹⁹ takyng¹⁹ so wrongeful D. ²⁰ MS. by by. ²¹ falseliche D.

²²⁻²² om. O. ²³ wenten D. ²⁴ fro D. ²⁵ was DO.

²⁶⁻²⁶ amendement and helpyng D. amendement & helpynge O.

²⁷ ben D. ²⁸ with-oute O. ²⁹ douñ DO.

reaume. And þat is to¹ vnderstonde, for-asmiche as Kyng¹ Edward, some-tyme Kyng of Engeland, was ordeynede, by assent of ²þe communitē² in plein parlement, forto bene³ vnder þe warde 4 and Gouvernance of Henry, Erl of Lancastre, his cosyn, for saluaciōn of his body he was taken⁴ out of þe castel of Kenylworth, þere þat he was in ward, and þrouz colour' of þe Quene Isabel and of þe Mortymer', wipout⁵ consent of eny parlement, 8 þai⁶ tok⁷ and lad him þer þat⁸ never' after none of his⁹ Kynrede myzt wip him speke ne see, and after traiterously ¹⁰toke and mordrede him¹⁰; for whos dep a foule sclandre aroos þrouz-out aH Cristendome, when hit was done. ¶ And also al⁹ þe tresoure þat¹¹ 12 Sir¹² Edward of Carnaryuan hade lefte ¹³in meny places of¹⁴ Engelonð and in Walys, were wastede and born¹⁵ away ¹⁶wipouten þe¹⁶ wille of Kyng Edward his sone, in destruccion of him and of his folc. ¶ Also, þrouz whos conseile ¹⁷þat þe Kyng¹⁷ 3af vp þe 16 Kyngdome of Scotland, for þe whiche reaume þe Kyngus ancestres hade ful sore trauaile,¹⁸ and so dede meny a nobleman for her ryght; and was -diliuerede al þe right vnto¹⁹ Daid, þat was Robert le Brus²⁰ sone, þat no right hade vnto þat reaume, as al¹ þe 20 worlde hit wiste. ¶ And also, by whom þe chartres & remembrances þat þai hade of þe right of Scotland were²¹ take out of þe tresorie, and taken to þe Scottes, þe Kyngus enemys, to disheriteson²² of him and of his successours, and to grete harme to²³ his lieges, 24 & grete reprofē to²⁴ alle Englisshe-men for euermore. ¶ Also, wherfore Dame Iohn of þe Toure, þe Kyngus sustre Edward, was disparaged and mariede vnto Daid, þat was Robert þe Brus²⁵ sone, þat was a traitour' and²⁶ enemy vnto Engeland; and þrouz 28 whos conseil she was tak²⁷ into our' enemys Hondes, out of Engelonð.

¶ And in þe mene-tyme, while²⁸ the Gode Erl Henry of Lancast' and his company tok²⁹ conseile how þise poynte[s] aboue- 32 saide might bene amendede vnto þe worshipp of þe Kyng, and to his profite, and to þe profite also of his lieges, þe Quene Isabel,

¹ om. D. ²⁻² comminalte O. ³ be O. ⁴ take DO.
⁵ with-outen D. ⁶ MS. þat. ⁷ nome D. ⁸ as D. ⁹ om. O.

¹⁰⁻¹⁰ nome and him mordrede D. toke hym & mordred hym O.

¹¹ of O. ¹² kyng D. ¹³ leaf 153. ¹⁴ in O. ¹⁵ bore O.

¹⁶⁻¹⁶ with-oute O. ¹⁷⁻¹⁷ Kyng^t Edward D. ¹⁸ Trauaylled O.

¹⁹ to D. ²⁰ Brusez D. Brus his O. ²¹ weren D.

²² disherityng O. ²³ of D. ²⁴ vnto DO.

²⁵ MS. Brus so *with* so *underlined for omission*; Brusez D. Brus his O.

²⁶ and an D. ²⁷ taken D. ²⁸ whiles DO. ²⁹ nome D. token O.

prouȝ conietting and sotelte of¹ þe Mortymer', Lete ordein a parlement at Salesbury; and at þe same Parlement þe Mortymer' was made Erl of² Marche, aȝeins alle þe barons wille of Engeland, in preiudice of þe Kyng and of his croune; & ³Sir' Iohn of Eltham, ⁴þe Kynges broþer,⁴ was gert⁵ wiþ a suerct̃ of Cornwail, and þo was callede Erle of Cornwaile; and euermore þe Quene Isabel so miche procurede aȝeinȝ⁶ hir' sone þe Kyng', þat she hade þe warde of ⁷þe forsaid⁷ Sir' Edward and of his Landes. ¶ And at⁸ þat ⁸parlement þe Erl of Lancastre wolde nouȝt come, but ordeynect̃ al his power' aȝeins þe Quene Isabel and the Mortymer'; and⁹ men of London ordeynede ham¹⁰ wiþ vj Ā men of armes ¹¹him forto helpe.¹¹

12

¶ When þe Quene Isabeġ wist of the¹² Doynȝ', she suore by God̃ and by his names ful angrely, þat in euel tyme he þouȝ[t] on¹³ þo poyntes. ¶ Tho sent þe Quene Isabel and þe Mortymer' after' her' retenue, and after' þe Kyngus retenue, so þat þai hade ¹⁶ordeynede amongus ham an huge ost; and þai conseilede þe Kyng so þat oppoñ a nyght þai ryden xxiiij¹⁴ [myle] toward Bedford, þere þat þe Erl of Lancast' was wiþ his company, and þouȝt haue him destroyede. and þat night she rode biside¹⁵ the ²⁰Kyng' her' sone, as a knyȝt armede, for drede of Deþ. ¶ And hit was done þe Kyng Edward to vnderstond, þat þe Erl Henry of Lancastre & his company wolde haue destroyede þe Kyng and his conseil¹⁶ for euermore, wherfor þe Kyng was ¹⁷somedel towardes ²⁴him¹⁷ heuy & annoiede. ¶ When¹⁸ þe Erl Marchal and þe Erl of Kent, þe Kyngus broþer, herde of þis þing', þai ryden so in message bituene ham, þat þe Kyng grantede him his pees to þe Erl Henry of Lancastre for a¹⁹ certeyn raunsoñ of xj M^t ii; but þat was ²⁸neuer ²⁰paiede afterward. ¶ And þise were þe Lordes þat Helde²¹ wiþ Sir' Henry of Lancastre: Sir' Henry Beaumont', Sir' Fouk fitȝ-Warein, Sir' Thomas Rooselyn, Sir' William Trussel, Sir' Thomas Wyther', and about an Ā of knyȝtez mo, þat²² were to ³²ham consenting'; and alle þo were exilede þrou conseile of²³ Quene Isabel & of þe Mortymer', for þe Mortymer' couetede²⁴ forto haue

¹ and also of DO. ² of þe O. ³ leaf 153, back. ⁴⁻⁴ om. D.

⁵ gerd D. ⁶ MS. aȝeinȝ þe. ⁷⁻⁷ om. O. ⁸ to D.

⁹ and þe D. ¹⁰ ham forto help D. hem for-to helpe O.

¹¹⁻¹¹ om. DO. ¹² þis D. ¹³ oppoñ D. vpon O. ¹⁴ xxiiij O.

¹⁵ bisides D. ¹⁶ Cumpanye O. ¹⁷⁻¹⁷ toward hym sumdel D.

¹⁸ wherfore O. ¹⁹ MS. a a. ²⁰ leaf 154. ²¹ helden O.

²² þan sic O. ²³ of þe D. ²⁴ coniectede D.

her' londes, if he might prou3 eny maner coniettyng^t; for he was so couetous, and hade to miche¹ his wille, and þat was Grete pitee.

**How Kyng Edward went ouer þe see forto Don his homage vnto
4 þe Kyng of France for þe Duchee of Gyene. ¶ Capitulo
Ducentesimo Decimo nono.²**

HIt was nouzt longe³ after, þat þe Kyng of France, prou3
conseile of his Dus3epirs, sent to Kyng^t Edward of
8 Engeland, þat he shulde come to Parys, and do⁴ his homage, as
resouñ hit⁵ wolde, for þe Duchee of Gyene. ¶ And so, prou3
consent of þe lordes of Engeland, Kyng Edward went ouer þe
see; [and] at⁶ Ascenciouñ he come vnto⁷ Parys þe iij 3ere of his
12 regne, forto done his homage [vnto þe Kyng of Fraunce. and þe
Kyng vnderfonge his homage]⁸ and made michel⁹ ioye and
worship. But or Kyng Edward hade made his homage¹⁰ vnto þe
Kyng^t of France,¹⁰ hastely he was sent¹¹ a3eyne into Engeland
16 prou3 þe Quene Isabel his moder^t; and anone hastely he come
a3eyne into Engeland oppoñ Whitsonday, wiþout¹² eny takyng
leue of þe Kyng of Fraunce; wherfore he was wonder^t worp
[= wroth].

**20 How Sir' Roger¹³ Mortymer' bare him so¹⁴ proudely &¹⁴ hie.
Capitulo CC xx.¹⁵**

ANd now shul 3e¹⁷ hure How¹⁸ sir' Roger þe³ Mortymer^t of
Wygemore, þat desirede and couetede to bene at an⁵ hye
24 state, so þat þe Kyng grantede him to bene¹⁹ callede þe²⁰ Erl of²¹
Marche²² prou3-out al his Lordeship. ¶ And he bicome þo so
prout,²³ þat he wolde lese and forsake þe name pat his²⁴ Ancestre
haden²⁴ euer bifore; And for þat enchesouñ he lete him calle Erl
28 of²¹ Marche²²; And none of þe communes of Engeland derste calle
him by none⁵ oþer name, for he was callede so, prou3 þe Kyngus
crie þat men shulde calle him þe²⁰ Erl of²¹ Marche. ¶ And þe
Mortymer^t ²⁵þo bare him²⁵ so hauten and so proude, þat wonder hit
32 was to wete; and also disgisede him wiþ wonder^t ryche cloþes
oute of al maner resouñ, boþe of shaping and of⁵ wering^t; Wherof

¹ mychel O. ² MS. octauo; viij^o O. ³ om. O. ⁴ done O.
⁵ om. D. ⁶ at þe D. ⁷ to O. ⁸ supplied from D. ⁹ myche O.
¹⁰⁻¹⁰ om. DO. ¹¹ sent for D. ¹² withouten D. ¹³ Roger þe DO.
¹⁴⁻¹⁴ proutliche and so D. proudly & so O. ¹⁵ MS. xix.
¹⁶ leaf 154, back. ¹⁷ he O. ¹⁸ of DO. ¹⁹ be O. ²⁰ om. DO.
²¹ of þe O. ²²⁻²² om. D. ²³ proude & so hauteyn O.
²⁴⁻²⁴ Auncestres had O. ²⁵⁻²⁵ bar hym þ^o O.

the Engliſſhe-men hade grete wonder¹, how and¹ in what maner¹ he might contreue or fynde ſoche² maner pride; and þai ſaide amonges ham alle communeliche,³ þat his pride ſhulde nouzt longe endure. ¶ And þe⁴ ſame tyme, Sire Geffray þe Mortymer⁴ þe zonge, þat was þe Mortymers ſone, lete him calle Kyng of Folye; and ſo⁵ hit bifelle aftirward¹ indede, ffor he was ſo ful of pride and of wrecchedneſſe, þat he helde a rounde table in Walys to alle men þat⁶ þider¹ wolde⁶ come, and countrefetede⁷ þe maner⁸ &⁸ doynge¹ of Kyng Arthure³, table; but openly he failede, ffor þe noble Knyzt Arthure⁹ was þe¹⁰ moſte worþi lord¹ of renoun þat was in al þe worlde¹¹ in his tyme, and¹² zitte come neuer non ſoche after¹ him, for alle þe noble knyzt¹³ þ[r]ou³z Criſtendome of dede¹² of Armes aloſede, du[e]llede wiþ Kyng¹ Arthure, and helde him for her¹ lord¹; and þat was wel ſene,¹⁴ for he conquere¹⁵ a Romayn þat me callede Frolle, & gete of him þe reaume of France, and quellede him wiþ his owen¹⁶ hande.¹⁷ ¶ And alſo he fauzt wiþ a Geaunt¹⁶ þat me callede Dynabus and quellede him,¹⁸ þat hade rauiſſhede¹⁹ Elyne, þat was Kyng Hoes nece, Kyng⁵ of Lital Britaign; and afterward¹ he quellede in bataile þe Emperour of Rome, þat me callede Lucye, þat had¹ aſſembled e azeyns Kyng Arthur¹ forto feizt²⁰ wiþ him²⁰ ſo miche peple²⁰ of Romayns and of¹⁶ Peiztes and of Saraynus, þat no man couþ ham nombre; and he deſcomfitede ham alle, as þe ſtory of him more pleynloker²¹ telleþ. ¶ And in þe²² ſame tyme, commune loos ſprong¹ in Engeland, þrouz conietting¹ and ordenaunce of þe frere Prechoures,²³ þat Sir Edward¹ of Carnaryuan, þat was Kyng Edwardus fader¹, of whom þe geest²⁴ telles, ſaide²⁴ þat he was alif²⁵ in the caſtel of Corf; wherfore alle þe commune[s] almoſt of Engeland were²⁶ in ſorwe and²⁷ drede²⁸ wheþer hit were ſo or²⁸ nouz; þai wiſt neuer¹ how²⁹ þe Mortymer¹ traiterouſely hade³⁰ done him mordre.³⁰

¹ or D. ² ſuch a O. ³ comunely D. comunly O.

⁴ þat D. ⁵ om. D. ⁶⁻⁶ wolde þider¹ D.

⁷ Counterfete O. ⁸ & þe O.

⁹ MS. Arthure and, *with and underlined for omiſſion.* ¹⁰ om. DO.

¹¹ worde sic D. ¹² leaf 155. ¹³ knyzt¹³ D. knyghtes O. knyzt R.

¹⁴ ysene O. ¹⁵ conquere¹⁵ in bataile D. Conquere¹⁵ in batayle O.

¹⁶ om. O. ¹⁷ hondes D.

¹⁸ Dynabz and quellede him D. Dynabus & qwelled¹⁸ hym O. Dynabus R.

¹⁹ rauiſſhede fair¹⁹ D. rafiſſhed¹⁹ faire O. ²⁰⁻²⁰ om. O.

²¹ plenerly O. ²² þat D. ²³ menours O.

²⁴⁻²⁴ telleþ ſaiden D. telleþ ſeyden D. ²⁵ on lif D. ²⁶ weren O.

²⁷ or D. ²⁸ or wer¹ D. ²⁹ how þat O.

³⁰⁻³⁰ him done mordrede D. ydone hym y-mordred¹ O.

How Edmunde of Wodestok, ¹pat was Erl of Kent, and þe Kyngus broþer, Edward of Carnaryuan, ¹ was biheuedede² at Wynchestr'. *Capitulo CC^o xxi^o.*³

4 **A** Nd oppoñ a tyme hit was⁴ so, þat Sir' Edmunde of Wodestok', Erl of Kent, spake vnto þe Pope⁵ Iohñ þe xxij at Auy[n]on, and said þat Almyghty God had meny tymes done, for⁶ Thomas loue⁷ of Lancastre, meny Gret⁸ miracles to meny men and ⁹wymen
8 þat Were þrouz diuerse sikenesse¹⁰ vndoñ as to¹¹ the world, and þrouz his praier' þai were brouzt vnto her' hele. ¶ And so Sir' Edmunde praiede þe Pope¹² hertly þat he wolde graunt him grace þat þe forsaide Thomas might bene¹³ translated; but þe Pope
12 saide, 'nay, he shulde nouzt bene¹³ translatede, þe same Thomas, Erl of La[n]castre, vnto þe tyme þat he were bettre certefied of þe clergie of Engeland, and seyne by hir' obediens what þing God had done for þe loue of Thomas of Lancastre, after þe suggestioñ
16 þat þe forsaide Edmunde of Wodestoke, Erl of Kent, had vnto him made.'¹⁴ ¶ And when þis Edmunde saw þat he mizt nouzt spede of his purpos as tochyng' þe translaciouñ, He praiede him þo of his conseile as toching Sir' Edward of Carnaryuan, his broþer,
20 and saide⁷ nouzt longe ¹⁵goñ þat¹⁵ he was Kyng of [England], what þing' mygh[t] beste bene¹⁶ done as tochyng his delyuerance, siþ þat a commune fame is¹⁷ þrouz-out al Engeland þat he was alif,¹⁸ and hole and saf. ¶ When þe Pope herde him telle þat Sir' Edward
24 was alif, he commanded þe Erl, oppoñ his benisoñ, þat he shulde helpe, wiþ al þe power' þat he might, þat he were delyuerede out of prison, and saf his body in al maner¹⁹ þat he myght; and, forto bryng þis þing vnto an ende, he assoilede him and his company a
28 pena & a culpa, and alle þo þat halpen to²⁰ his delyuerance.

¶ Tho tok²¹ Edmunde of Wodestoke, Erl of Kent, his leue of þe Pope, and comme azeyn into²⁰ Engeland. And when Edmunde was comen²² somme of þe ffrere prechoures come and saide þat Sir'
32 Edward his broþer zitte was alyf in þe ²³Castel of Corf', vnder the keypyng of Sir' Thomas þe²⁴ Gurnay. ¶ þo spede him þe forsaide

¹⁻¹ om. D. ² beheded O. ³ MS. xx.

⁴ bifelle D. befett O.

⁵ pope struck out, and Bisshop of Rome written over in another hand in O.

⁶ for seynt D. ⁷ om. O. ⁸ grete mervailles D. ⁹ leaf 155, back.

¹⁰ maladyes DO. ¹¹ vnto DO. ¹² struck out in O. ¹³ be O.

¹⁴ y-made O. ¹⁵⁻¹⁵ agone O. ¹⁶ be DO. ¹⁷ om. D.

¹⁸ on lif D. in lyve O. ¹⁹ þing D. ²⁰ vnto D. ²¹ nome D.

²² Come O. ²³ leaf 156. ²⁴ of D.

Edmund, as¹ faste as he might, til pat he come to² þe castel of Corf, and acqueyntede him,³ and spake so faire wip Sir' Iohn Daueril, pat was conestable of þe forsaide castel, and 3af him riche 3iftes forto haue acqueyntance of him, and forto⁴ know of his 4 conseil. and pus hit bifelle, þat þe forsaide Sir' Edmund⁵ praiede specialy forto telle him priuely of his lorde his broþer, Sir' Edward, if þat he leuede or were dede. ⁶if þat⁶ he were ⁷on lif,⁷ he praiede of⁸ him ⁹ones to haue⁹ a sight. ¶ And þis Sir' Iohn 8 Daueril was an hye-hertede man, & ful of corage, and ansurede shortely vnto Sir' Edmund, and saide, þat Sir' Edward¹⁰ his broþer was in hele & vnder' his keypyng, ¶ and derst shew him vnto no man, sip it was defendede him in the Kyngus half, Edward, þat was 12 Edward¹¹ sone of Carnauan, and also þrouz commandement of þe Quene Isabel, þe Kyngus moder', and of Sir' Roger þe Mortymer', þat he shulde¹² shew his body ¹³to no man¹³ of þe worlde, saf onely¹⁴ vnto ham, oppoñ peyne¹⁵ of lif and lyme, and to disherite- 16 souñ of his heires for euermore. but þe false traitour' falsely liede, for he was nouzt in his ward, but he was tak þens, and lade to¹⁶ þe castel of Berkelee þrouz Sir' Thomas Gurnay, þrouz commande- ment of þe Mortymer, til þat he was dede, as bifore is saide more 20 plenerly.¹⁷ ¶ But Sir' Edmund of Wodestok wist noþing' þat¹⁸ his broþer was dede. Wheroppon he toke a lettre vnto þe⁸ forsaide Sir' Iohn, and praiede him hertly þat¹⁹ he wolde take hit to²⁰ Kyng Edward his broþer, as to His worþi Lorde; and he toke²¹ þe lettre 24 of him, and bihight to him²² forto done²³ his message wip-outen²⁴ eny maner' faile. and wip þat, Sir' Edmund to[k]²⁵ of him his leue, þat is to seyne, of þe forsaide Iohn, and went þo into his owen contre and Lordeship in Kent, þat he hade þer. ¶ And 28 anon as þis same Iohn wist' þat Sir' Edmund of Wodestoke was Gone into Kent, his owen Lordeship, anone he went in al the⁸ haste þat he might fro þe castel of Corf, and come ²⁶to Sir' Roger²⁶ Mortymer, and toke him þe²⁷ lettre þat Sir' Edmund of Wodestoke, 32 Erl of Kent, hade take him closede, & enselede²⁸ wip his owen seal.

¹ also D. ² vnto DO. ³ om. DO. ⁴ to DO. ⁵ MS. Edward.

⁶⁻⁶ and if D. and if þat O. ⁷⁻⁷ a-lyve O. ⁸ om. O.

⁹⁻⁹ forto haue ones D. forto haue onys O. ¹⁰ MS. Edmunde.

¹¹ Edwardes DO. ¹² MS. shulde shulde.

¹³⁻¹³ vnto nomaner' man DO. ¹⁴ oneliche D. ¹⁵ losse DO.

¹⁶ vnto DO. ¹⁷ pleyner' D. ¹⁸ þat Edward DO. ¹⁹ leaf 156, back.

²⁰ vnto DO. ²¹ vnderfong' D. vndirfonge O. ²² sir Edmund DO.

²³ do O. ²⁴ withoute O. ²⁵ nome D.

²⁶⁻²⁶ vnto sir' Roger þe DO. ²⁷ om. D. ²⁸ seled O.

¶ And when Sir Roger hade vnderfonge þe lettre, ¹he vnclosede ²þe lettre, ² and ¹ saw what was conteynede þerin, and gan ³ Hit forto rede; ¶ Wherof þe bigynning^t was þis:

4 “Worshippis and reuerence,⁴ wiþ broþeres liegeance⁵ and subieccioun. Sir knyght, worshipful and dere broþer! if it 3ow plese, y pray⁶ hertly þat 3e bene of gode comfort, ffor y shal so ordeyne for 3ow, þat sone 3e shul come out of prisoun, and bene⁷ 8 deliuerede of that disese þat 3e bep⁸ in. and vnderstondep of 3our Grete lordeshippe, þat y haue vnto me assentant almoste al þe grete [lordes]⁹ of Engeland, wiþ al her apparail, þat is to seyne, wiþ Armure, wiþ tresour^r wiþout nombre, forto mayntene and helpe 12 3our quereþ so ferfourth that 3e shul ben⁷ Kyng a3ein as 3e were biforne; ¹⁰ and þat þai alle haue suorne to me oppoñ a boke, and aelsewel¹¹ prelates as⁹ Erles & baroñs.”

¶ when Sir Roger þe¹² Mortymer^r saw and vnderstode þe myght 16 and the ¹³strengþ of the Lettre, anone for wrap his hert gan¹⁴ bolne, and euel hert bare toward Sir⁹ Edmund of Wodestok^t þat was Erl of Kent. ¶ and so, wiþ al þe haste þet he might, he ¹⁵went vnto¹⁵ Dame Isabel þe Quene, þat was þe Kyngus moder^r, and shewede 20 her Sir Edmundus Lettr^r, ¹⁶Erl of Kent,¹⁶ and his wille and his purpos, and how he hade coniettede & ordeynede to put adouñ Kyng Edward of Wyndesore, hire sone, of his realte and of his Kyngdome. ¶ “Now certes, sir Roger,” quod she,¹⁷ “hap¹⁸ Edmund 24 done so? be my faderes¹⁹ soule,” quod she, “y wil ²⁰bene þerof²⁰ avengede, if þat God graunt me²¹ my⁹ lyf, and þat in a²¹ shorte tyme.” ¶ And anone wiþ þat, þe Quene Isabel went vnto Kyng^t Edward here²² sone, þere þat he was at þe⁹ parlement at Wynchestre 28 forto haue amendede þe ²³wronges & trespasses²³ þat were done amongus²⁴ þe peple in²⁵ his reaume. ¶ And þo toke²⁶ she and shewede him þe lettre þat Sir²¹ Edmund of Wodestok^t, ¹⁶Erl of Kent,¹⁶ hade made, and ensealede it⁹ wiþ his seal, and bade him, 32 oppoñ her²⁷ benyson, þat he shulde avengede bene oppoñ him, as oppoñ his dedeliche²⁸ enemy.²⁹ ¶ Tho was þe quene so wroþ toward Sir Edmund, ¹⁶Erl of Kent,¹⁶ and cessede neuer to pray vnto her^t

¹⁻¹ & O. ²⁻² it D. ³ began O. ⁴ reuerences DO.

⁵ liegeaunces O. ⁶ praye 3ow D. ⁷ be O. ⁸ bene D.

⁹ om. O. ¹⁰ before O. ¹¹ aswel D. asweel O. ¹² of O.

¹³ leaf 157. ¹⁴ began to O. ¹⁵⁻¹⁵ sent to D. ¹⁶⁻¹⁶ om. O.

¹⁷ þe quene D. þe qwene O. ¹⁸ had O. ¹⁹ fader D. fadir O.

²⁰⁻²⁰ þerof bene D. be þerof O. ²¹ om. D. ²² he sic D.

²³⁻²³ trespasses and wronges D. ²⁴ among O. ²⁵ of D.

²⁶ nome D. ²⁷ he sic D. ²⁸ dedely D. ²⁹ MS. eneny.

some þat he shulde sende in¹ haste after him. and oppon þat, þe Kyng^t sent by his *lettres* after^r Sir^r Edmunde of Wodestok^t, þat he shulde² come &³ speke wip him at Wynchestre, alle maner þinges lafte. ¶ And when Sir^r Edmund^t saw þat þe Kyng sent after him⁴ wip his *lettre* enselede, he hastede him in aH⁵ þe hast⁵ þat he myght^t, til þat he come to Wynchestre. ¶ But⁶ þo⁷ þe Quene Wist þat Edmund^t was come⁸ vnto Wynchestre, and⁹ anone she¹⁰ *praiede* so faste¹⁰ vnto Edward^t her^r sone, þat þe gode Erl was⁸ arrestede¹¹ anone, & ladde vnto the barr^r bifore Robert of Hamond^t, þat was crouner¹² of þe Kyngus Household^t; and he⁴ asociede vnto¹³ him Sir^r Roger þe Mortymer^r. and þo spake þe forsaide Iohⁿ vnto him and saide: “¶ Sir^r Edmund^t, Erl of Kent, 3e shul¹² vnderstonde^t þat it is done vs to wete, and principalli vnto oure liege lord^t, Sir^r Edward^t, Kyng of Engeland—þat Almyghty God saue and kepe!—þat 3e beþe¹⁴ his dedely enemy & his *traitour*, and also a *commune* enemy vnto þe reaume; and þat 3e haue¹⁵ 16 bene about meny a day forto make priueliche¹⁶ deliuerance of Sir^r Edward^t, some-tyme Kyng of Engeland, 3our^r broþer, þe⁴ whiche was put adoune of his realte by *commune* assent of alle þe lordes of Engeland, in enpeiring¹⁷ of our^r Lord þe Kyngus Estate, and also 20 of his reaume.” ¶ þo ansuerede þe gode man and saide: “For-soþ, Sir^r, vnderstandeþ wel þat y was neuer^r assenting forto enpeir¹⁸ þe state of our^r Lorde þe Kyng^t, ne of his¹⁹ croune, and þat y put me to ben²⁰ demede oppon²¹ my pires.” ¶ And wip þat word^t, Sir^r 24 Roger þe⁴ Mortymer^r shewede him²² þe Erles *lettre* & his seal, and saide þo: 23“ Sir^r Edmuⁿde,²³ knowe 3e nouzt²⁴ þe prynt of pis *lettre* þat he²⁵ hade take vnto²⁶ Sir^r Iohⁿ DaueryH^t?” and he saw þe print of his seal, but he saw nouzt what was contenede *perin*; 27 28 and þe Erl him-self^t wende þat hit hade bene²⁸ on of his *lettres* þat hade bene of no [charge]. 29 ¶ þo saide þe Erl to Sir^r Roger Mortymer^r, þat He wolde nouzt fo[r]sake þe *lettre*, and þat³⁰ was þe prynt of his seal. and anone wip þat word, þe wile and³¹ false 32

¹ in al O. ² schuld & sic O. ³ om. O. ⁴ om. D.

⁵⁻⁵ om. DO. ⁶ leaf 157, back. ⁷ when D. ⁸ comen D.

⁹ om. DO.

¹⁰⁻¹⁰ *prayed* and so fast^t Went^t D. *prayed* & so faste wente O.

¹¹ areste O. ¹² Coroner DO. ¹³ to O. ¹⁴ ben O.

¹⁵ han O. ¹⁶ pryuyly O. ¹⁷ peyryng^t D. ¹⁸ pesynge O.

¹⁸ appaire D. ¹⁹ þe DO. ²⁰ be O. ²¹ of D.

²² ham D. ²³ hem O. ²³⁻²³ om. D. ²⁴ ouzt D. ²⁵ oght O.

²⁶ 3e O. ²⁶ to O. ²⁷ in þe *lettre* DO. ²⁸ be O. ²⁹ leaf 158.

³⁰ þat it O. ³¹ & þe O.

Mortymere bygan to vndo þe *lettre*, and gan¹ hit forto rede in audience of al þe court. ¶ And þo saide Sire Robert of Hamuþ,² “Sir Edmunde,” *quod* he, “siþ þat 3e haue made knowyng openly
 4 in þis court þat þis is 3our³ *lettre* ensealede wip 3our³ seal, and þe tenour of þe³ *lettre* seip þat 3e wolde haue⁴ bene aboute forto haue⁴ delyuerede þe body of þat worshipful knyzt Sir Edward, some-
 tyme Kyng of Engeland, 3our³ broþer, and forto helpe⁵ him þat he
 8 shulde haue⁶ bene⁷ Kyng a3eyne, and gouerne⁸ his peple as he
 9 was wont⁹ bifore tymes, in empeiring of our liege lorde þe Kyngus state,¹⁰ þat is now,—wham God kepe fram alle desese!¹¹—¶ And þis court wil þat 3e bene vndone of lif and lyme, and þat 3our³ heires
 12 bene disheritede for euermore, Saf þe *grace* of our³ lorde þe Kyng.”
 þo was þe Erl, Sir Edmunde of Wodestok, put a3eyne into prisoun,
 vnto¹² ful saf ward til oppoñ þe morwe; and þo come þe Mortymere
 vnto þe Kyng, þere þat he satte at his mete, and tolde him how
 16 þe Erl was Dampnede by wai of lawe, and also of lyf and lyme, and his¹³ heires disheritede¹⁴ for euermore, prou3 oppen knowe-
 liching¹⁵ in plein court; wherfore him pouzt hit were gode þat þe
 forsaide Erl were hastely quellede, wipouten¹⁶ wetyng of þe Kyng;
 20 for ellez¹⁷ the Kyng wolde for3eue him his deþ, and þat shu[l]de
 turne ham¹⁸ vnto miche¹⁸ sorwe so as¹⁹ he was enpechede. ¶ Anone
 þe Quene Isabel, prou3 conseille of þe Mortymere, and wipout eny
 opere conseille, sent in haste to þe baliffys of Wynchestre, þat þai
 24 shulde smyte of Sir Edmundes heede²⁰ of Wodestok, Erl of Kent,
 wipout²¹ eny maner²² abidyng²¹ or respite oppoñ peyne²² of lif and lyme. ¶ þo tok²³ þe bailliffes Sir Edmunde²⁴ of Wodestok²⁴ out
 of prisoun, and lade him bisides the casteH att Wynchestre, and
 28 þere þai made a gonge-fermer smyte of his heuede,²⁵ for none oper
 man derst hit done; & so deide he þere—allas the tyme!—þat is
 to seyne, the x Day of Ottobre, þe pridde²⁶ 3er³ of Kyng Edwardes regne. And when þe Kyng wist þerof, he was wonder³ sory, and
 32 lete entere him at þe¹³ ffrere menoures at Wynchestre.²⁷

¹ began O. ² Hamond D. ³ 3oure O. ⁴⁻⁴ om. O.

⁵ haue holpen DO. ⁶ om. D. ⁷ be O. ⁸ gouerned O.

⁹⁻⁹ woned O. ¹⁰ estate D. ¹¹ diseses O. ¹² vndir O.

¹³ om. O. ¹⁴ disherite D. of his disherited¹⁴ O. ¹⁵ knowleche O.

¹⁶ withoute O. ¹⁷ leaf 158, back. ¹⁸⁻¹⁸ to michel D. to myche O.

¹⁹ as he D. as 3e O. as R. ²⁰ heuede D. ²¹ with-outen D.

²²⁻²² biddyng or respite oppoñ peyne D. abydyng or respyte vpon

payne O. abidyng²¹ or respite R.

²³ token O. ²⁴⁻²⁴ om. DO. ²⁵ heed¹ O. ²⁶ iij O.

²⁷ MS. Wynchestres.

Of the Deþ of Sir Roger Mortymer¹, Erl of þe Marche. ¶ Capitulo
¶ Ducentesimo ¶ ¹Vicesimo ¶ Secundo.¹

And so hit bifelle at þat tyme, þat Sir Roger the² Mortymer¹, Erl of the Marche, was so prout & so hauten, þat he helde no ⁴lorde of the reaume³ his pier¹; and þo bicome he so couetouse, þat he folwede Dame Isabeþ þe Quenes⁴ court¹, þe Kyngus moder¹ Edward, and bisette his penyworthe⁵ wip þe officers of þe Quenes househalde in þe same maner as þe Kyngus⁶ officeres deden; & so ⁸he made his takyngus as tochyng¹ vitales, and also of cariages; and al he dede for enchesouñ of Spenses, and² forto gadre tresoure; and so he dede wipout nombre in al þat he myght. ¶ Tho made he him wonder¹ priuee ⁷with þe Quene Isabeþ; and so miche ¹²Lordeshippe And retenue hade, so þat alle þe grete Lordes of Engeland¹ of him wer¹ adrade. wherfore þe Kyng and his Conseile towarde⁸ him wer¹ agreuede, and ordeynede amongus ham forto vndo⁹ him be¹⁰ pure resouñ¹¹ and lawe, ffor enchesouñ þat Kyng ¹⁶Edward¹, þat was ¹²þe Kyngus¹² fader¹, traterously þrouz him was mordred¹ in the castel of Berkelee, as bifore¹³ is saide more plenerly, in the CC and xvij Chapter of þis book¹. ¶ And somme þat were of þe Kyngus Conseil louede¹⁴ þe Mortymer¹, and tolde him in ²⁰priuetee how þat þe Kyng and his conseil wer¹⁵ about fram¹⁶ day to day hym forto shende and vndo¹⁷; Wherfore þe Mortymer¹ was sore annoiede, and angry as þe¹⁸ Deuel azeynes ham þat wer¹ of þe Kyngus Conseil, and¹ saide þat he wolde on ham bene avengede, ²⁴how-se-euer he toke on. ¶ Hit was nouzt longe afterward¹, þat¹⁹ Kyng Edward¹ and Dame Philipp his wif¹, and Dame Isabeþ þe Kynges moder¹, and Sir Roger Mortymer ne went vnto Notyngham, þere forto soiourne. ¶ and so hit bifeþ,²⁰ þat þe Quene Isabeþ, ²⁸þrouz conseile of the²¹ Mortymer¹, toke to her¹ þe² keyes of þe zate²² of þe castelle of Notyngham, so þat no man might come neþer in ne²³ out by nizt, but þrouz þe² commandement of þe Mortymer¹, ne þe Kyng¹, ne none of his Conseil. ¶ And þat tyme Hit felle²⁴ so ³²þat þe²⁵ Mortyme[r], as a Deuel for wrap, bolnede ²⁶for wrap²⁶ þat

¹⁻¹ xxj^o D. ² om. D. ³ lande D. ⁴ quenes DO. kyngus R.

⁵ penyworthes DO. ⁶ quenes D. ⁷ leaf 159.

⁸ towards DO. ⁹ vndone O. ¹⁰ þrouz D. þurgh O.

¹¹ Treson) O. ¹²⁻¹² Kyng Edwardes D. ¹³ aboue D.

¹⁴ Loueden DO. ¹⁵ weren O. ¹⁶ fro O. ¹⁷ vndone D.

¹⁸ a D. ¹⁹ þat þe D. ²⁰ fel D. ²¹ om. O.

²² zates DO. ²³ nor O. ²⁴ bifelle D. ²⁵ þe DO. om. R.

²⁶⁻²⁶ om. D. & also for wrathe O.

he hade toward¹ the Kynges men Edward, and principally² azeins ham pat³ hade him³ accusede to þe Kyng of þe dep of Sire⁴ Edward his⁴ fader. ¶ And priueliche⁵ a conseile⁶ was taken⁷ bituene
 4⁸ Quene Isabel⁸ and the Mortymer, and þe Bisshop of Lincolne, and Sir Symond of Berford and Sir Hughe of Trompeton,⁹ and oper priue of hir conseile, forto vndo¹⁰ ham alle pat hade accusede þe Mortymer vnto the Kyng of his fadres dep, ¹¹ Sir Edward,¹¹ of
 8 tresoun and of ffelonye. Wherefore alle þo pat were of the Kynges Conseile, when pai wist of the Mortymeres castyng pryuely, comen¹² to þe Kyng Edward, and saide pat þe Mortymer wolde ham¹³ destroie, for cause pat pai had accusede him of Kyng¹⁴ Edwardus
 12 Dep, his fader, & praiede him pat¹⁵ he wolde maintene ham in her trew quereH; and þe Kyng granted ham hir bone, and saide pat¹⁶ he wolde maintene ham in hir right. ¶ And þise were þe lordes
 16 de Boungh, Sire William his broper, Sire Rauf of Stafford, Sire Robert of Hufford, Sir William of Clynton, Sir Iohn Neuy of Horneby, and meny opere of her consent; and alle þise suorne oppon a¹⁸ bok to mayntene þe quereH in-asmiche¹⁹ as thei²⁰
 20 might.

¶ And hit²¹ bifelle so after, þat Sir William Mountagu ne none of þe Kynges frendes moste nouzt¹⁴ bene²² herburghede in the castel, for the Mortymer, but went & toke her herbugage²³ in
 24 diuerse places in²⁴ the toune of Notingham; and þo were þai sore adrade leste þe Mortymer shulde ham destroie. ¶ And in haste pere come vnto²⁵ Kyng Edward, Sir William Mountagu pere pat he was in his castel, ²⁶and priuely tolde him pat he ne none of his
 28 company shulde nouzt take þe Mortymer wipout conseil & helpe of William of Eland, Conestable of þe same casteH. ¶ “Now certes,” quod þe Kyng, “y leue 3ow ful wel; and perfore y conseile 3ow pat
 3e go²⁷ to þe forsaide conestable,²⁸ and commande²⁹ him in my name
 32 pat he be 3our frende and 3our helpe forto take the Mortymer, al

¹ azeynes D. azens toward O. ² priueliche D. ³⁻³ him hade D.

⁴⁻⁴ Edwardes O. ⁵ priuely D. pryuely O. ⁶ leaf 159, back.

⁷ take O. ⁸⁻⁸ MS. quene quene Isabelbel; þe quene Isabel DO.

⁹ Trumpyngton O. ¹⁰ vndone O. ¹¹⁻¹¹ om. DO.

¹² come O. ¹³ altered from him in MS. ¹⁴ om. D.

¹⁵ MS. pat pai, with pai underlined for omission. ¹⁶ om. DO.

¹⁷⁻¹⁷ to pursue DO. ¹⁸ þe DO.

¹⁹ in-alse-miche D. ²⁰ þai D. þey O. hei R. ²¹ MS. his.

²² be O. ²³ herburghe D. herburgh O. ²⁴ of D. ²⁵ vnto þe O.

²⁶ leaf 160. ²⁷ gone D. ²⁸ om. O. ²⁹ comaundeth O.

ping¹ lafte, oppoñ peril of lyf and² lyme." "3 Sir," quod³ Mountagu,⁴
 "Sir, my lord, graunt mercy!" ¶ Tho went forth the forsaide
 Mountagu, and come to þe conestable of þe⁵ casteH, and tolde him þe
 Kyngus wille. and he ansuereð and saide þe Kynges wille shulde⁴
 be⁶ done, in-asmichel⁷ as he might, and wolde nouzt spare for no
 maner' dep; and so he⁸ suore and made his oth. ¶ þo saide Sir
 William of Mountagu⁹ to þe conestable,⁹ in¹⁰ hering¹ of¹¹ alle ham¹¹
 pat were¹² Helpyng¹³ to þe same¹³ quereH: "Now certes, dere⁸
 frende, vs bihouep forto¹⁴ werche and done by þour¹⁵ queyntise, to
 take þe Mortymer', sip pat 3e bene¹⁶ keper of þe casteH, and haueþ¹⁷
 þe keyes in¹⁸ þour' [warde]." ¶ "Sir," quod þe conestable, "wil
 3e vnderstonde pat þe gates of þe castel beþ¹⁹ loked wiþ þe lokes¹²
 pat Dame Isabel sent hider'; and by nyght she haþ þe keyes þerof,
 and leiþ ham vnder þe cheusel of her' bede vnto the morne; and
 so y may nouzt come into þe castel by þe 3ates in no maner' wise;
 but y know a²⁰ Alie pat stracches²¹ out of the ward', vnder' erpe,¹⁶
 vnto²² the castel, pat goþe into²³ þe weste, the²⁴ whiche alie Dame
 Isabel²⁵ þe Quene, ne none of her' men, ne¹¹ þe Mortymer', ne
 none of his company knoweþ hit nouzt; and so y shal lede þow
 þrouz pat²⁶ Alie; and so 3e shul come into þe castel wiþout²⁷ aspies²⁰
 of eny man pat beþ þour' enemys."

¶ And pat²⁸ same nyght Sir' William Mountagu, & alle the
 lordes of þe²⁹ quereH, and þe same Conestable also,³⁰ went ham³⁰ to
 horse, and made³¹ semblant as hit wer' forto wende out of þe²⁴
 Mortymeres sight'; but anone as þe Mortymer' herde þis tydyngus,³²
 he wende pat þai wolde haue gone ouer þe see for drede of him;
 & anone he and his company toke conseile amonges ham forto lette
 hir' passage, and sent lettres anone vnto the portes, so pat none of²⁸
 the grete lordes shulde wende³³ ham home into³³ her' owen contre,
 but if he were areste & taken. ¶ And amonge³⁴ opere pingus,
 William Eland, Conestable of þe forsaide castel, priueliche³⁵ lade
 Sir' William Mountagu and his company by þe forsaide way vnder³²

1 pinges D. 2 & of O. 3-3 þo saide þe D. 4 Mountegu þo O.
 5 þe same D. 6 ben D. 7 in-alsemichel D. inasmyche O.
 8 om. D. 9-9 om. D. 10 in hem sic O. 11 om. O.
 12 wer' pere O. 13-13 vnto þe D. to þe O. 14 to D.
 15 þour counseile and D. 16 beþ D. be O. 17 haue O.
 18 MS. in in. 19 be O. 20 an D. 21 straccheþ D. strecheþ O.
 22 into DO. 23 vnto D. 24 om. DO. 25 leaf 160, back.
 26 MS. pat castett, with castett underlined for omission.
 27 wiþ-outen D. 28 þe DO. 29 his O. 30-30 wenten D.
 31 maden O. 32 tydyngge O. 33-33 home vnto DO.
 34 amonge al D. 35 om. D. pryuyly O.

the¹ erp, so² til pat pai comen into³ the castel, and went vp into⁴ the Toure pere pat pe Mortymer' was in.⁵ But Sir' Hughe of Trompitoñ⁶ ham ascriede hidously, and saide, "A, *traitous*! hit
4 is al⁵ for nouzt pat ze⁷ bep comen⁷ into þis castel. ze shul dye
zitte in² euel dep euerychoñ."⁸ And anone on of ham pat was in
the¹ Mountagues company, vp wip a mace, and smote the same
Hughe oppoñ pe heuede,⁹ pat pe bray[n] barst¹⁰ out and felle on
8 pe Ground; and so was he dede in euel dep. ¶ Tho toke¹¹ pai pe
Mortymer', as he¹² Armede him atte pe toures¹³ dore, When he
herde pe noise of ham for drede. And When¹⁴ Quene Isabeñ saw
pat pe Mortymer' was taken,¹⁵ she made miche sorwe in hert', and
12 pise wordes vnto ham saide: ¶ "Now, fair' sires, y zow praye pat
ze done non¹⁶ harme vnto his body; a worpi knyzt,¹⁷ our¹⁸ wel
bilouede frende and our' dere cosyn." ¶ Tho went pai pens, and
come¹⁹ & brouzt the Mortymer, and presentede him vnto Kyng
16 Edward, and²⁰ commaundede to brynge him into²¹ sauf ward.
¶ But anone as pai pat were consent vnto²² pe Mortymeres doynge
herde telle pat he was taken,²³ pai went and hid ham, and
priueliche²⁴ by nizt went out of the toune, eueryche²⁵ on²⁶
20 his side, wip heuy hert and mornyng', & leuede oppoñ her'
owen¹ londes as wel as pai myght. ¶ And so pe²⁷ same^{xx} zer²⁸ pat²⁹
pe Mortymer was taken,³⁰ he hade at his retynu ix³¹ knyghtz,
wipouten³² squyers & serieantz of Armes and footmen. And þo
24 was pe Mortymer' lade to London, and Sir' Symond of Bereford
was lad wip him, and was³³ take to pe conestable to kepe. ¶ But
afterward was pe Mortymers lif examynede at Westminster bifore
pe Kyng' & bifore⁵ alle pe grete Lordes of Engeland for peril pat
28 might falle to⁴ pe reaume, & forto³⁴ enquer' also whiche wer' assent-
yng vnto³⁴ Sir' Edwardes dep, pe Kyngus fader', and also prouz
whom pe Scottes askaped at³⁵ Stanhope into Scotland wipout pe
wille of Kyng Edward; ¶ And also how the chartre of Ragaman
32 was delyuerede vnto pe Scottes, wherin³⁶ pe Homages and³⁷ feautees

¹ om. DO. ² om. O. ³ vn-to O. ⁴ vnto D. ⁵ om. D.

⁶ Trumpyngton) O. ⁷⁻⁷ be come O. ⁸ echeon O.

⁹ heed' O. ¹⁰ brast DO. ¹¹ token O.

¹² MS. has pai underlined for omission, and he written in the margin.

¹³ leaf 161. ¹⁴ when þe D. whan þe O. ¹⁵ take O. ¹⁶ no O.

¹⁷ knyzt and D. ¹⁸ a O. ¹⁹ comen O. ²⁰ and he DO.

²¹ in O. ²² to D. ²³ take O. ²⁴ pryuyly O.

²⁵ euerychoñ D. eche O. ²⁶ in O. ²⁷ pat DO.

²⁸ MS. nyght underlined for omission, and zer' written in the margin.

²⁹ MS. pat pat. ³⁰ take O. ³¹ ix score DO. ³² withoute O.

³³ werne D. ³⁴ to DO. ³⁵ fro DO. ³⁶ leaf 161, back. ³⁷ and þe O.

of Scotland^d were¹ contened, þat þe Scottes shulde do² euermore to³ þe Kyngus of Engeland for þe reaume of Scotland^d. Wherefore in his absence⁴ he was dampnede to bene⁴ ⁵honget & draw⁵ for his tresouñ. And þis meschief come to⁸ him on Seint Andrewes 4 eve,⁶ In þe 3ere of þe incarnacioñ of our^r Lord^d Ihesu Criste, M^t CCC⁷ xxx.

How Kyng Edward^d gete a3eyn⁸ into his honde⁸ graciouslyliche⁹ þe feautes and þe¹⁰ homages of Scotland, wherof he was 8 put out prou3 þe false conseil of IsabeH his moder, & of Sir Rogere Mortymer^r ⁴þat was made⁴ Erl of þe¹¹ Marche. Capitulo Ducentesimo xxij^{to}.¹²

NOw¹³ 3e haue [herde] Lordes, how Sir Iohñ of Bailoil, in 12 tyme of pees, was chosen to bene¹⁴ Kyng of Scotland^d, for enchesoñ þat he come of þe eldest dou3ter of þe Erl Dauid of Huntingdoñ,¹⁵ þat was Kyng Alisaundes broþer of Scotland^d, þat¹⁶ deide wipouten¹⁷ hein^r of his body bigeten;¹⁸ and how þis Iohñ made 16 feaute & homage to Kyng Edward^d, þat was Kyng Henries sone þe prid, for his landes of Scotland^d; and how he afterward^d wipsaide¹⁹ his homages,²⁰ prou3 conseile of þe Scottes, In þe²¹ 3ere of the¹⁰ Incarnacioñ M^t cclxxij^o,²² and ²³sende vnto²³ þe pope,²⁴ prou3 false 20 suggestioñ þat he made his oth vnto²⁵ þe forsaid sir²⁶ Edward^d, ouer his estate and his wille, of þe¹¹ whiche oth þe Pop²⁷ ²⁸assoilede him,²⁸ prou3 his bulles to him sent. ¶ And anone as Kyng Edward wiste perof^r, he ordeynede anone his ²⁹barons, and come 24 Vnto Berewike, and conquerede þe toune; at þe³⁰ whiche conqueste þere were slayn xxv M^t & vij^c. and³¹ Bailoil, þat was Kyng of Scotland^d, come¹¹ & 3elde him vnto Kyng Edward; and þe Kyng^r afterward³² delyuerede him out of þe tour^r of Londoñ, and alle þe 28

¹ werin sic O. ² done DO. ³ vnto O. ⁴⁻⁴ om. O.

⁵⁻⁵ drawe and hongete D. to be drawe & honged^d he was dampned^d O.

⁶ eve & DO. ⁷ CCC and O. ⁸⁻⁸ vnto him D. vnto hym O.

⁹ graciously alle O. ¹⁰ om. DO. ¹¹ om. D.

¹² MS. xxiiij; xxij^{do} D. xxiiij^o O. ¹³ How sic O. ¹⁴ be O.

¹⁵ Heretingoñ D. Heretyngeton) O. ¹⁶ MS. þai. ¹⁷ withoute O.

¹⁸ begete O. ¹⁹ forsoke O. ²⁰ homage DO. ²¹ per sic O.

²² CCCLxxij O. ²³⁻²³ sent to D. sent vnto O.

²⁴ pope struck out, and bysshope of Rome written over in a different hand in O.

²⁵ to D. ²⁶ kyng^r DO.

²⁷ pope struck out, and bisshope written over in O.

²⁸⁻²⁸ him assoilede D. hym assoylled^d O. assaide him R. ²⁹ leaf 162.

³⁰ om. O. ³¹ And þe DO. ³² Edward D.

grete lorde[s] of Scotland wip him, þat were taken¹ at Berwike, and 3af ham sauf condit to goñ into Scotland. And the Scottes seþenes, þrouz her' falsenesse, werrede oppoñ Kyng' Edward. 4 ¶ And when Sir' Iohñ Bailloile, Kyng' of Scotland, saw al þis, he went & put him ouer² þe³ see vnto Dompier', and leuede þere oppoñ his owen landes as wel as he might, til þat þe Scottis wolde amende ham of hir' misdedes & trespassez,⁴ and lad with him Sir' 8 Edward, his sone. Wherefore þe Scottes, in despite of him, callede him "Sir' Iohñ Turntabard,"⁵ for cause þat he⁶ wolde nouzt⁶ offende ne trespasse azeynes Kyng' Edward of Engeland; and so he forsoke his reame of Scotland, and sette perof but litil pris. 12 ¶ And þis Sir' Iohñ, Longe duellede in Fraunce, til þat he deide þere; and Sir' Edward his sone⁷ vnderfonge his heritage,⁷ and dede homage vnto þe Kyng' of France for his landes of Dounpier'.

¶ And so hit felle afterward þat Edward, þat was Iohñ 16 Bailloilles sone, had⁸ wip him a squyer' of Engeland þat was born⁹ in 3ork-shire, þat men callede Iohñ of Barnaby; and þis¹⁰ Edward Bailoil louede him miche, & was nei3 him, and¹¹ wip him¹¹ ful pryuee. 12 ¶ And so þis Iohñ of Barnaby was in debate with a 20 Frenchie-man in þe toune of Dounpier; and so he quellede him, and went in his way, in al the haste þat he might, into þe castel fortill¹³ haue socoure and helpe of his lord. ¶ And anone come þe Officeres of þe toun¹⁴ forto¹⁵ take Iohñ of Barnaby as a felouñ. 24 and Sir' Edward, his lorde, halpe him, and rescuede him,³ and by nyzt made him wende out of the castel; and so he went his way, and come into Engeland with-oute¹⁶ eny harme. ¶ And when þe Kyng of Fraunce saw þat¹⁷ Sir' Edward had rescuede his 28 felouñ, he bcome wonder' wroþ azeyns Sir' Edward, and anoñ lete him bene¹⁸ arest, and toke into his hande alle his landes. ¶ Tho duellede Sir' Edward in prison vnto þe tyme þat Sir' Henry¹⁹ Beaumont come into Fraunce; þe whiche Henry²⁰ some-tyme 32 was²⁰ Erl of Angos²¹ in Scotland, prou3 his wif,²¹ and was put out of þe forsaide Erldome when þe accord was made²² bituene Engeland & Scotland, prou3 þe Quene IsabeH & Sir' Rogere þe²³

¹ take DO. ² one D. ³ om. O. ⁴ trespas O.

⁵ Turnelabard DO. ⁶⁻⁶ ne wolde O. ⁷⁻⁷ his heritage vnderfonge O.

⁸ lad O. ⁹ bore O. ¹⁰ MS. þis þis. ¹¹⁻¹¹ om. DO.

¹² leaf 162, back. ¹³ for-to O. ¹⁴ Toun of Duniere O.

¹⁵ forto DO. fortok R. ¹⁶ wipouten D.

¹⁷ MS. þat kyng, with kyng underlined for omission. ¹⁸ be DO.

¹⁹ Henry of D. Herry of O. ²⁰⁻²⁰ was sumtyme O.

²¹⁻²¹ prou3 his wif in Scotland D. ²² om. DO. ²³ om. D.

Mortymere & her companye, for þe mariage þat she made bituene Daud, þat was Robert þe Brus¹ sone, and Dame Iohn of² þe toure, Kyng Edwardus sustre of Engeland, and wel vnderstode³ þis, þat at the ende he shulde come to his ryght, but if [it] were þrouz þe⁴ 4 Edward Bailloiff, þat was right heir of the reaume of Scotland. ¶ And þe Kyng of Fraunce, Lowys, louede wel⁵ þis Sir Henry, and was wip him ful priuee, and þouzt forto⁷ make⁸ delyuerance of Sir Edward Bailloiles body, if he might in eny maner. ¶ Tho⁸ 8 praiede he þe Kyng, þat he wolde graunt him of his grace Sir Edward Bailloilles body vnto þe next parlement, þat he mizt leue wip his owen rentes in þe mene-tyme, and þat he myzt⁹ stande to bene¹⁰ Iugede by his pieris at the¹¹ parlement. ¶ the Kyng¹² 12 grantede him his praieres,¹² and made þe forsaide Sir Edward ben delyuerede out of prisoun iu the maner aboue-saide. and anone as he was out of prisoun, Sir Henry toke him forth wip him, & lad him¹³ into Engeland and¹⁴ made him duelle priueliche¹⁵ ¹⁶in the¹⁶ 16 Maner of Sandhal oppon¹⁷ Owe in 3orke-shire, wip þe Lady Vescy. and so he ordeynede him þere an Huge retenance of peple of Englisshemen, and also¹⁸ of Aliens, forto conquere azeine¹⁸ his heritage. ¶ And so he 3af miche siluer vnto soudeoures and to²⁰ Alienes forto helpe him; and þai bihight him forto helpe¹⁹ in al þat þai²⁰ might, but þai failede him at his most nede.

And at þat tyme²¹ Donalde, Erl of Morref, herde telle how þat Sir Edward was comen²² into Engeland, and come to him, and²⁴ made wip him grete ioye of his commyng azeine, and saide to²³ him, and bihigh[t] þat alle²⁴ grete lordes¹¹ of Scotland²⁵ shulde²⁶ bene to him²⁶ entendant, and²⁷ holde him²⁷ for hir Kyng, as right heir of Scotland. and so miche þai wolde done, þat he shulde²⁸ be²⁸ crownede Kyng of þat lande, and²⁹ to him dede²⁹ ³⁰feaute & Homage.³⁰ ³¹þo come Sir Henry of Beaumont to Kyng Edward of Engeland, and praiede him, in way of charite, þat he wolde grant

¹ Brus his O. ² at O. ³ vnderstondeþ D. ⁴ sir DO.
⁵ miche D. mych O. ⁶ leaf 163. ⁷ to D. ⁸ make a O.
⁹ most D. muste O. ¹⁰ be O. ¹¹ om. O.
¹² prayer D. prayere O. ¹³ him forth D. ¹⁴ and laide sic D.
¹⁵ priuily O. ¹⁶⁻¹⁶ at a D. atte a O. ¹⁷ op O. ¹⁸ om. D.
¹⁹ helpe him D. ²⁰ he D. ²¹ I-tyme sic O.
²² priuely come D. priuily come O. ²³ vnto D.
²⁴ alle þe D. all þe O. ²⁵ Engeland O.
²⁶⁻²⁶ to him bene D. be to hym O.
²⁷⁻²⁷ shulde him holde D. schuld hym hold O. ²⁸ bene D.
²⁹⁻²⁹ dede to him D. dede to hym O. ³⁰⁻³⁰ homage & feute O.
³¹ leaf 163, back.

of his grace vnto Sir Edwarde Bailoil, þat he moste¹ saffiche gone² bi land³ fram³ Sandhaß vnto Scotland, forto conquere his riȝt heritage in Scotland. ¶ the Kyng Edward ansuerede and saide
 4 vnto him: “yf þat y soffre þe Bailoil wende prouȝ my londe toward Scotland, þan þe peple wolde say þat⁴ y were⁴ assenting to⁵ þe company.” ¶ “Now, Sir, y praiȝ ȝow þat ȝe wolde grant him leue to take vnto [him] soudeoures of Engliſſhe-men, þat þai
 8 myȝt safly lede him prouȝ ȝour⁶ land⁶ vnto⁶ Scotland; and, Sir, oppoñ þis couena[n]t, þat if⁷ it so bifalle—þat God hit forbede!—þat þai bene⁸ descomfited⁸ in bataile prouȝ þe Scottes, þat y and alle þe lordes þat holden with Bailoil ben for euermore put out of oure⁹
 12 rentȝ þat we haueþ in Engeland.” ¶ and þe Kyng, oppoñ þis couenant, grantede hir⁹ bone, as toching him and þo þat were of þe¹⁰ same quereß, þe whiche cleimede forto¹¹ haue londes &¹² rentȝ in þe reame of Scotland. ¶ And þise were þe names of þe same
 16 Lordes þat pursuede þis mater, þat is to seyn,¹³ Sir Edward¹⁴ Bailoil, þat chalangede þe reame of Scotland; Sir Henry Beaumont, Erl of Angos; Sir Dauid of Stroboly, Erle of Atheles; Sire Geffray of Mountbray, Walter Comyn, and meny opere þat
 20 were put out of hir¹⁵ heritage in Scotland when þe pees was¹⁶ made bituene Engeland and Scotland, as bifore is saide.

¶ And ȝe shal vnderstonð þat þise lordes toke wiþ ham v C men of Armes and ij M^t Archires¹⁷ of footmen, and¹⁸ þo went vnto¹⁹
 24 ship atte Rauenesere, and sailede by þe see til þat þai come²⁰ vnto Scotland, and²¹ come to lande at Kynkecorne, xij mile fro²² Seint Iohnes toune, and sende²³ oute hier²³ shippes aȝeine, for þai shulde nouȝt ben²⁴ hurt ne apairede,²⁵ neiþer þat no man shulde gone² into
 28 shippe aȝeyne, þouȝ þat²⁶ þai hade nede, but abide at al periles, and nouȝt flee, but²⁷ stande, and raþer²⁷ soffre deþ þan flee, to mayntene hir²⁷ trew querelle. ¶ when þe Erl of Fif,²⁸ a fers man and a sterne, herde telle þat þe Bailoil was comen²⁹ forto take þe lande of
 32 Scotland, he come in haste vnto Kynkecorñ wiþ x M^t Scottes, forto destourble him, þat he shulde nouȝt come to land. ¶ But Sir Edward²⁹ Bailoil and his company had taken þe land, maugre

¹ miȝt D. ² go O. ³ fro DO.

⁴⁻⁴ he shulde ben D. he schuld ben O. ⁵ vnto DO. ⁶ into O.

⁷ om. D. ⁸ were O. ⁹ ȝour O. ¹⁰ þat O. ¹¹ to DO.

¹² or O. ¹³ sey O. ¹⁴ MS. Iohñ; Edward þe DO. ¹⁵ om. D.

¹⁶ leaf 164. ¹⁷ Archers and D. Archiers & O. ¹⁸ & of O.

¹⁹ into O. ²⁰ comen O. ²¹ MS. at. ²² fram D. ²³ sent DO.

²⁴ be O. ²⁵ enpeirede D. Empeyreð O. ²⁶ om. O.

²⁷⁻²⁷ rather stande & O. ²⁸ Wif^t sic D. ²⁹ come O.

him and his company, and him descomfitede; at þe whiche
scomfiture Sir' Alisandre of Seton¹ was þer quellede, and meny
oper. ¶ The Erl of Fif was þo wonder' sory, and ful euel²
shamede³ þat so litil⁴ company hade him descomfitede, and shame- 4
fulliche⁵ put⁶ him & alle⁶ his company þat was⁷ alif forto flee.⁸
þo come Sir' Edward the⁹ Bailoil, and toke þe contre al about him,
til þat¹⁰ he come to þe Abbay of Dunfermelyn; and þere he fonde
vitailes for him and¹¹ for his men.¹² and amonge aH oper pinges, 8
He fonde in a chambre aboue¹³ v C of grete¹⁴ stafes of fyne oke,
with longe⁹ pikes of yren and of stele: he tok¹⁵ and delyuerede
ham to þe most strongeste of his company. ¶ And anone after
he went fro þens, and loggede him in a felde ij mile fro Seint 12
Iohn¹⁶ toun. and when þe burgeys of þe toun herde how þe Erl
was descomfitede þrouz¹⁷ Sir' Edward¹⁸ Bailloile, þai were sore
adrade, and broken þe briggez þat þai had¹⁹ made ouer þe water of
Erne, so þat þe Bailoil might nouzt goñ¹⁹ ouer'; Wherfore he 16
loggede him þere al þat nyght, but litel hede he toke to²⁰ reste, and
saide vnto his peple, ¶ "Now, dere lordes, 3e knowe²¹ ful wel þat
we bene²² now⁹ loggede²³ bituene oure enemys; and if þai mow vs
hampre, þere nys²⁴ but litil¹⁸ deþ; whe[r]fore if we abide here aH 20
þis nyght stille, y leue þat hit shal turne vs to miche harme; for þe
power' of Scotland may euery day wax and encesce, and we may
nouzt so; and we bene ful²⁵ litel peple as azeins ham. whefore y
praye 3ow, for the loue of Almyghty God, make we vs bolde and 24
hardy, and⁹ þat we mow mightely take þe Scottes þis nyght, and
²⁶boldely werr' oppoñ ham; and late vs pu[r]sue ham þis nigt; and²⁶
if þai bene²² trauailede þrouz vs, and þai see oure hardynesse, so
þat opere Scottis þat comen, and mete ham & see ham so trauailede²⁷ 28
and wery, þe sorer wil bene adrade wip vs forto feizten;²⁸ and
fressheliche²⁹ þan³⁰ we shullen³⁰ ³¹feizt, and oppoñ Ham pursue, so
þat, þrouz the grace of Almighty God, al the worlde shal speke of¹⁸
þe³² douztynesse of our' chialry." ¶ And, sires, vnderstondeþ³³ 32

¹ Seton þe sone DO.² il D.³ aschamed' O.⁴ l[i]tel a O.⁵ shamelich D. schamelich O.⁶⁻⁶ him and D. hym & al O. & alle R.⁷ were D.⁸ slee sic D.⁹ om. D.¹⁰ om. DO.¹¹ leaf 164, back.¹² folc D.

folk O.

¹³ aboute O.¹⁴ gode D.¹⁵ nome ham D. toke hem O.¹⁶ Iohnes D. Iohnys O.¹⁷ þurgh þe O.¹⁸ om. O.¹⁹ go O.²⁰ of DO.²¹ Knowen D.²² be O.²³ ylogged' O.²⁴ is no bote O.²⁵ but DO.²⁶⁻²⁶ om. D.²⁷ y-trauaylled' O.²⁸ fight O.²⁹ fresshely D. fersly O.³⁰⁻³⁰ schul we O.³¹ leaf 165.³² oppoñ D.³³ vnderstondes D.

wel þat all the company þat come¹ with Sir Edward Bailoile grauntede wel² vnto þis² conseil, and were þerof glade, and anone pursuede oppoñ þe Scottes þat wer³ bicomē wonder wery. and
 4 þe Bailoile and his company sore folwede ham, and dede ham miche sorwe þrouz her assaut, so þat þai myght nouzt, for feble, ham helpe, and for litel peple. ¶ But þo saide amongus ham :
 “ what is⁴ vs now⁴ bifalle, þat so litel peple as þe Bailoile haþ in
 8 wenge, done vs so miche trauaile and sorwe? now certes hit semeþ vs þat he werches⁵ by grace, for he is wonder graciose in his querelle, and al⁶ we certes shul bene⁷ dede er þat we may come to him, vs forto zelde, siþ þat his fader sette of⁸ vs no pris.”
 12 ¶ And amonge alle opere þengus, þe Bailoile & his peple passede þe watere of Erne, so þat Sir Roger of Suynerton, þe⁹ sone, was¹⁰ fers and angri, and went forth; and þai saw miche¹¹ peple of men of armes ful wel arraiede; and forþ þai went vnto¹² ham, and¹³ wiþ
 16 ham fouzten,¹³ and quellede as¹⁴ meny as wolde abide, and¹⁵ toke;¹⁶ and nopelesse at þat assaut þai wende þat hit hade bene þe grete host of Scotland. and when hit come¹⁷ to þe morne,¹⁷ þai gadrede
 18 ham and restede¹⁸ a while. ¶ But þe while¹⁹ þat þe Englisshemen
 20 restede,²⁰ þe noble Baroñ Thomas²¹ of Vescey, and²² þe noble baroñ of Stafford, prekedē hir²³ horse vp and douñ by þe hulles, forto Kepe þe estres of þe contreye. ¶ and as þai prekedē vp and douñ, þai saw a grete hoste of gode arraye, ordeynede in iij
 24 wenges, wiþ helmes and shelde²⁴ shynyng, comyng²⁵ oppon ham, and þo come þo ij lordes azeine vnto²⁶ þe Bailoiles folc, and saide, “ Now, for the loue of Almyghty God, beþ of gode comfort, for 3e shul haue bataile anone right!” ¶ And þo spake Sir Fouk, þe
 28 sone of Gerrein; a baroñ of grete renouñ and of dede of Armes : “ Sires lordynges, vnderstondeþ [þ]at y wil saien y haue seyne meny diuerse wenges, as wel amonges²⁷ Sarasynus and²⁸ Gewes as amonge þe Scottes; and 3itt see²⁹ y neuer þe ferþe³⁰ part of þe
 32 wenge feizten. and þerfor, and³¹ we wil abide our enmys, we beþ³²

¹ comen DO. ²⁻² to þat D. vnto þat O. ³ þai D. þey O.

⁴⁻⁴ now vs DO. ⁵ worcheth O. ⁶ om. D. ⁷ be O. ⁸ vpon D. ⁹ þo D. ¹⁰ þat was O. ¹¹ meny O. ¹² to D.

¹³⁻¹³ fauzt with ham D. ¹⁴ also D. ¹⁵ or DO. ¹⁶ take O.

¹⁷⁻¹⁷ vnto þe morwe D. ¹⁸⁻¹⁸ ham to-geder and restede ham D.

¹⁹ whiles DO. ²⁰ restede ham D. rested hem O.

²¹ *Against this is written in the margin in a contemporary (?) hand: Thomas Vessy and the barron of Stafford.*

²² om. O. ²³ leaf 165, back. ²⁴ sheldes D. scheldes O.

²⁵ comy sic D. ²⁶ to D. ²⁷ among O. ²⁸ as O. ²⁹ saw DO.

³⁰ ferde D. ³¹ if DO. ³² ben O.

ynow forto feizt azeynes ham; but if¹ we be² nouzt of gode hert and of gode wille forto feizt wiþ ham, for certes³ we ben ful⁴ fewe azeyns þis company. ¶ And þerfore, for the loue of God, take we vnto vs gode hert, and lete vs bene⁵ bolde; and þenke we⁴ neiper oppoñ⁶ oure wifes ne⁷ oppoñ our' cheldren, but oneliche⁸ to conquer' ham in bataile; and, þrouz þe helpe of our' Lord God, oure enemys we shul⁹ ouercome."

¶ And with þat, come þe hoste of þe¹⁰ Scottes toward' ham ful⁸ sorely,¹¹ &¹⁰ azeins Sir'¹⁰ Edward of¹² Bailoile, in iij baitailes wel araiede in Armure; and wonder fressheliche¹³ pai comen¹⁴ toward þe Bailoiles men. But when Sir' Donalde,¹⁰ Erl of Marcile, saw al¹⁵ þis, he saide to Robert þe¹⁰ Brus, ¹⁶þe sone of Robert' þe¹⁷ Brus,¹⁶ ¹²þise wordes: "Sir' Robert," quod he, "ful sore me forþenkeþ at myn hert' þat þis folc, þat þe¹⁸ Bailoile hap brouzt wiþ him, shulde¹⁹ dye wiþ dent of Scottishe menez²⁰ suorde,²¹ sip þat þai bene²² Cristen men as wel as ²³we bene²³; and perfore me þenke²⁴ þat hit were ¹⁶grete charite to sende vnto ham forto zelde ham vnto²⁵ our' mercy and grace, and raunsouñ ham²⁶ þrouz greuous raunsoñs,²⁷ forasmiche as þai haue take²⁸ our' land and done ille."²⁹ ¶ "Now, certes," quod Sir' Robert³⁰ Danolde, "y haue wel perceyuede þat þow ¹⁶art ²⁰an enemy and traitour' vnto Scotland, sip þat þow¹⁶ wil³¹ consent to saue oure dedely enemys þat haue³² done vs miche sorwe and shame; and nowe hit semep wel³³ þat ze bep² of her' assent." ¶ "Certes, Robert," quod Sir' Donald, "falseliche³⁴ ze lye! y am ²⁴nouzt of her' company ne of her' consent; and þat hastely ze shul see, for y wil feizt wiþ ham raper þan eny of þis³⁵ company." "And certes," Sir'¹⁰ Robert saide, "y shal, ³⁶magre þin heede,³⁶ assaile ham or þow." ¶ And wiþ þat þai prekeden³⁷ her' stedes fersely³⁸ oppoñ ²⁸Caskemore; and her' wenges ham folewede on a¹⁰ renge. and þo come þai, and mette þe³⁹ Bailoil and his company at an hongen⁴⁰ bouzt of þe more in a streite passage. and so faste þai hastede ham vnto þe Englisshemen, so þat þousandes felle⁴¹ to þe gronde, eche ³²

¹ if þat DO. ² bene D. ³ certes we O. certes R. ⁴ but O.

⁵ be O. ⁶ on O. ⁷ neyper O. ⁸ only O. ⁹ shullen D.

¹⁰ om. D. ¹¹ serely O. ¹² þe DO. ¹³ ferselich D. ferslych O.

¹⁴ come DO. ¹⁵ leaf 166. ¹⁶⁻¹⁶ om. D. ¹⁷ om. O.

¹⁸ þis O. ¹⁹ shul D. schul O. ²⁰ men D. ²¹ Swerdes O.

²² bep D. ²³⁻²³ ze bep D. ²⁴ þenkeþ D. þinkeþ O.

²⁵ to DO. ²⁶ þem O. ²⁷ raunson) O. ²⁸ taken D. ²⁹ euel D.

³⁰ Robert brus D. ³¹ wilt O. ³² hauen D. ³³ vs D.

³⁴ falslye O. ³⁵ his O. ³⁶⁻³⁶ maug[r]e þine of þin heuede sic D.

³⁷ prekede D. ³⁸ ferslych O. ³⁹ wiþ D. ⁴⁰ hongyng O.

⁴¹ fellen D.

oppoñ oper, ¹into on hepe,¹ bope horse and man. ¶ The Bailoil
²and his men þo² ³mighthtely stoden azeynes Ham, and faste
 quellede þe Scottis vnto þe grounde, & meny sore woundede, so longe
⁴til þat þai stoden oppoñ ham, and foynede ham with her' suordes
 & speres prou3-out here bodyes; and so sore trauailede oppoñ ham
 til þai⁴ bicome⁵ ful wery, and wist nouzt what to done. and þe
 Scottes þat were lafte alif' fledden to saue ham-self, in the best
⁸maner þat þai myght. ¶ And þo pursuede⁶ Edward Bailoile & his
 men, and quellede of ham ⁷til þat hit was nyght.⁷ and fro þens þai
 went vnto⁸ Seint Iohnes Toune, and toke hit, and helde ham þere
 and vitailede ham-self' atte her' owen wille, for þai fonden ynou3⁹
¹²wherwith to make ham mery. ¶ þo made þe Bailoile his men þat
 wer' woundede gone to shippe forto wende into Engeland, forto
 hele her'¹⁰ woundes.

And in þat same tyme þere was a Flemyng' in þe see, a strong'
¹⁶þef robour'¹¹ þat me callede 'Crab'; and þis Flemyng' was dryuen
 out of Flaundes for his wickednesse; and þerfore he come into
 Scotland, and helde him¹⁰ wip þe Scottis, and dede¹² as miche
 harme vnto the Englysshe-men as he myght. ¶ And þis Crab
²⁰mette in þe see þis¹³ Bailoiles men þat wer'¹⁰ wondede in bataile,
 þat were sent azeyn into¹⁴ Engeland forto hele her woundes. and
 þis Crab 3af vnto ham a grete assaut, and wolde haue quellede
 ham euerychoñ¹⁵; but þe Englysshe-men defendet ham wel and
²⁴manliche, ¹⁶and descomfitede¹⁷ Crab and his company; and þo gan
 he forto¹⁸ flee into Scotland. ¶ And as he come towarde Seint
 Iohnes toune, he fonde a grete company of Scottis, þat were comen¹⁹
 azeyn to-geder' after þe scomfiture²⁰ of Gaskemore, þe whe[ch]
²⁸bisegede Bailoil and his men in þe same toune of Seint Iohn; and
 anone tolde²¹ to þe Scottis how ²²þat he²² descomfitede of þe
 Englysshe-men þat were sore wondet at Gaskemore, ²³& went²³
 toward Engeland forto hele her' wonde²⁴; and saide vnto þe
³²Scottes, þat þai shulde haue no grace ne might azeynes Edward

¹⁻¹ om. D. into an hepe O. ²⁻² þo & his men O. ³ leaf 166, back.

⁴ þat þai D. þat þey O. ⁵ becomen O.

⁶ pursewede ham sire D. pursued hem sir O.

⁷⁻⁷ om. D. til it was nyght O. ⁸ to D. ⁹ ynow DO.

¹⁰ om. O. ¹¹ a roboure D. a robber O. ¹² de sic D.

¹³ om. D. þo O. ¹⁴ vnto D. ¹⁵ echeon O.

¹⁶ leaf 167. ¹⁷ descomfit' D. ¹⁸ om. D.

¹⁹ come O. ²⁰ discomfiture O. ²¹ MS. tolde tolde.

²²⁻²² he was DO. ²³⁻²³ þat were D. þat went O.

²⁴ MS. wonde and sad, with and sad *underlined* for omission; woundes DO.

Bailoile, for enchesouñ þat he had scomfitede¹ & empairede al the chialrye of Scotland wip an handeful of men, as to acount azeins þe Scottis þat wer' slayn. Wherefore he conseilede ham to² remeve þe sege fram³ Seynt Iohnes toun⁴, and kepe ham in þe best⁴ maner þat þai couþe or⁵ myght. ¶ The Scottes vnderstode⁶ þat Crab saide ham soþ, and forsoke þe sege and went þens by nyght, and halpe ham-self in the beste maner þat þai myght.

¶ When þis tidyng⁷ was know þrouz Scotland, how þat þe⁸ lordes and knyghtes were scomfitede at Gaskemore of Scotland þrouz Sir Edward⁸ Bailoil, 3e shullen⁹ vnderstonde þat the Lordes and¹⁰ ladies & gentiles of Scotland comen wonder' faste vnto Seynt Iohnes toun, and 3elde¹¹ ham vnto¹² Baloile, and to¹³ ham dede¹³ 12¹⁴ feaute and homage¹⁴ for hir' londes, and 3elden ham vnto his pees, [and helde¹⁵ him for heir' lord. and he vnderfonge of ham heir' homages, and grauntede ham his pees; and fro þens he went to þe Abbay of Scone, and þere he was cronede Kyng of Scotland. and 16 after, he lete crie his pees]¹⁶ þrouz¹⁷ out þe Land. and at þat¹⁸ same tyme Hit bifelle¹⁹ þat Kyng Edward of Engeland helde his parlement amongus²⁰ his Lieges at þe⁴ Newe-CasteH oppoñ Tyne, forto amende þe trespasses²¹ and þe wronges þat had ben²² done in his 20 land. and Sir Edward þe Bailoil, Kyng of Scotland, come to him pider, and dede²³ vnto him feaute and homage²³ for þe reaume of Scotland. ¶ And in þis maner Kyng Edward of Engeland gaderede azeyn þe homages and feautes of Scotland, wherof he was 24 put out þoru3 conseil and assent of Dame IsabeH his moder', and of Sire Rogere Mortymer, Erl of þe Marche.

¶ Tho toke Sir Edward Bailoil, Kyng of Scotland, his leue of Kyng Edward of Engeland, and went þens into his owen lande of 28 Scotland, and sette but litil²⁴ be ham²⁴ þat hade conseilede him and holpen him in his quereH; wherfore þai went from³ him, and went & leuede by her' owen²⁵ londes and rentz in²⁶ Scotland. ¶ And so hit²⁷ bifelle afterward nouzt longe, ²⁸þat þe Kyng of Scotland²⁸ ne 32

¹ discomfited O. ² forto DO. ³ fro O. ⁴ om. O. ⁵ & O.

⁶ vnderstode þo D. vndirstode þo O. ⁷ tydynges D.

⁸ Edward þe D. ⁹ schal O. ¹⁰ and þe D. ¹¹ zelden D.

¹² vnto þe DO. ¹³⁻¹³ him deden D. hym deden O.

¹⁴⁻¹⁴ homage & fewte O. ¹⁵ helden O. ¹⁶ supplied from D.

¹⁷ leaf 167, back. ¹⁸ the D. þe O. ¹⁹ fel D. ²⁰ among O.

²¹ trespasse D. Trespas O. ²² be O.

²³⁻²³ to him homage and feaute D. to hym feute & homage O.

²⁴⁻²⁴ hem by O. ²⁵ om DO. ²⁶ of D. ²⁷ MS. his.

²⁸⁻²⁸ MS. þat þe kyng of Scotland þat þe kyng of Scotland.

remevede and come to þe toune of Anand¹, and þere toke¹ his
 duelyng^t. and pider come to him a company of kny^ztes, stronge
 men and worthy, & zelde² ham vnto þe kyng, and bare ham so
 4 faire in dede, and^t in contynauce so þat he trust miche oppoñ
 ham. [and anone as þe traitoures sawe þat he trust miche oppon
 ham],³ þai ordeynede amongus ham l. in o⁴ company, and ⁵wolde
 haue⁵ slayn⁶ her^t Kyng^t; but, prou^z þe grace of Almyghty God^t he
 8 brake ⁷out prou^z a⁷ walle [by]⁸ an Hole in his ⁹chambre; and, as
 God wolde,⁹ scaped her^t traitery. and alle his men ¹⁰wer^t
 quellede¹⁰; and he ascapede wip miche drede to þe Toune of
 Cardoile, and þere helde him, sore annoiede: and pis bifelle on¹¹
 12 oure Ladyes eve þe¹² Concepciouñ.

¶ Tho sent ¹³Kyng Edward ¹³Bailoil to Kyng Edward of
 Engeland, how falsely and traiterously he was in litel while¹⁴ put
 vnto¹⁵ shame and sorwe, prou^z his lige men, oppoñ whom he ¹⁶truste
 16 wonder¹⁶ miche¹⁷ and praiede him, for þe loue of Almyghty God
 þat he wolde mayntene him and helpe¹⁸ [him] a^zeyns his enemys.
 ¶ the Kyng of Engeland^t hade of him þo grete pite, & bihight
 him¹⁹ helpe and socour^t, and sent him worde þat he shulde halde
 20 him in pees stille in the citee of Cardoile, til þat he hade gaderede
 his power^t. ¶ Tho ordeynede Kyng Edward^t of Engeland a conseil
 at Londoñ, and lete gader his men in diuerses²⁰ shires of Engeland,
 and when he was redy, he went toward þe toune of Berwik^t-vp-
 24 Twyde; and^t pider²¹ come to him²¹ Kyng Edward^t of Scotland^t, wip
 his power^t, and bisegede the toune, and made wipout þe toune a
 fair^t toune of pauylouns, and dikede ham wel al¹² aboute, so þat þai
 hade non²² drede of þe Scottes; & made meny assautes²³ wip gones
 28 and wip opere engynes to þe toune, wherwip þai destroiede meny
 a fair^t hous; and cherches also ²⁴were beten²⁴ adoune ²⁵vnto the
 erþe, wip gret stones, ²⁶and spitouse comyng²⁶ out of ²⁷gones and
 of opere gynnes. and nopeles þe Scottes kepte wel þe toune, þat þo
 32 ij kyngus²⁸ mi^zt nou^zt come þerin longe tyme. and nopeles the

¹ nome D. ² zolden O. ³ supplied from D. ⁴ a O.
⁵⁻⁶ om. O. ⁶ quellede D. ⁷ quelled^t wolde haue O.
⁷⁻⁷ prou^z an D. ⁸ þurgh a O. ⁸ leaf 168. ⁹⁻⁹ om. sic D.
¹⁰⁻¹⁰ weren y-qwelled^t O. ¹¹ in O. ¹² om. O.
¹³⁻¹³ struck out in D. ¹⁴ tyme DO. ¹⁵ to DO.
¹⁶⁻¹⁶ trustede D. ¹⁷ mychel O. ¹⁸ om. D. ¹⁹ him þo D.
²⁰ diuers O. ²¹⁻²¹ comen to D. ²² no DO. ²³ assaute O.
²⁴⁻²⁴ weren bete O. ²⁵ leaf 168, back.
²⁶⁻²⁶ þat dispitously comen D. ²⁷ þat spytously comen O.
²⁷ of the D. ²⁸ knyghtes O.

Kynges abiden *pere* so longe, til þo þat were in þe toune faillede vitailles; and also þai were so wery of wakyng¹ þat þai wiste nouzt what to Done. ¶ And 3e shulle vnderstonde þat þo ¹þat wer¹ in¹ the toune of Berwik¹, prou3 hir¹ comune conseile and her¹ assent, lete 4 crie oppoñ þe walles þat þai mi3t haue pees of þe Engliſſhe-men; and þerof þai praiede² þe Kyng, and of his grace, and praiede him of trewes for viij daies, oppoñ þis couenant, þat,³ if þai were nought rescuede in þat side of þe toune toward Scotland⁴, of þe⁴ Scottis, 8 wipin viij daiez, þat þai wolde 3elde ham vnto the Kyng, and þe toune also. and to holde þise couenaunt³,⁵ þai profured⁶ to þe Kyng xij hostages⁶ oute of þe toune of Berwik. ¶ When the hostages wer¹ delyuerede vnto þe Kyngus, anone þo of þe toune 12 sent⁷ vnto þe Scottes, and tolde ham of hir¹ sorwe & meschief. and þe Scottes comen þo pryueliche⁸ ouer þe water of Twyde, to þe bouzt of þe Abbay; and Sir¹ William Dikett¹, þat was þe⁹ Styward of Scotland⁴, and meny oper þat comen wip him, put ham *pere* in 16 grete perile of hamself att þat tyme of hir¹ lif¹; for þai comen ouer¹⁰ a brug¹¹ þat was to-broken,¹² and þe stones away. and meny of hir¹ company were *pere* drenchede¹³; but þe forsaide William went ouer¹, and ¹⁴opere of¹⁴ his company, and come¹⁵ by þe ¹⁶Engliſſhe 20 shippis,¹⁶ and quellede in a barge of Hulle xvj men; and after þai went into the toune of Berwik¹ by the water side; Wherefore þe Scottis helde þo þe touñ rescuede, and axede hir¹ hostages a3eyne of þe Kyng of Engeland. ¶ And þe Kyng sent ham worde a3eyne þat 24 þai askede the hostages wip wronge, siþ þat þai comen¹⁷ into the toune by Engeland¹⁸ syde; for couenaunt was bituene ham þat þe toune shulde be rescuede by the half¹ of Scotland⁴.¹⁹ anon Kyng Edward⁴ þo commanded²⁰ ham²¹ to 3elde þe toune or he wolde haue 28 þe hostages. and þe Scottis saide þat þe toune was rescuede wel ynow, and þerto þai wolde holde ham. ¶ When Kyng Edward⁴ saw²² þe Scottis breke her¹ couenaunt; þat þai made, he was wonder¹ wrothe, and anone lete take Sire Thomas fitz and Sire Alisaundre of Setoñ, 32 Wardeyne of Berwik,—the whiche Thomas was person¹ of Dunbarr¹,—and lete ham be taken²³ ferst¹ bifore þe²⁴ oper hostages, for

¹⁻¹ of D. ² praiden D. ³ om. O. ⁴ MS. þe þe.
⁵ couenant D. Couenaunt O. ⁶⁻⁶ xij hostages vnto þe kyng¹ D.
⁷ senten O. ⁸ pryuyly O. ⁹ þo DO. ¹⁰ opere D. ¹¹ leaf 169.
¹² broke O. ¹³ ydreynt O. ¹⁴⁻¹⁴ om. O. ¹⁵ comen D.
¹⁶⁻¹⁶ shippes of Engeland D. Shippes of Engeland⁴ O. ¹⁷ come D.
¹⁸ Engelandes D. Engelondes O. ¹⁹ Scotland⁴ and DO.
²⁰ commande D. ²¹ om. O. ²² seye D. ²³ tak¹ D. take O.
²⁴ þer O.

enchesouñ þat Sir' Alisaundes fader¹ was keper' of² þe toune. and þe Kyng commandede euery day forto¹ take ³ij hostages³ of þe toune til þat þai were alle done, vnto þe dep, but if þai ⁴wolde ⁴zelde⁴ þe touñ; and so he wolde⁵ teche ham to⁶ breke her' couenauntz. ¶ And when þo of þe toune herde þis tydynges, þai bicome⁷ wonder' sory, and sent⁸ to þe Kyng of Engeland, þat he ⁹wolde graunt ham oper viij dayes of respite, so þat bituene CC men of 8 Armes and xx^{ti} ¹⁰men¹¹ of Armes¹⁰ mygh[t] by¹² strengþ goñ¹³ bituene ham vnto¹⁴ þe toune of Berwik', ham forto vitaile, so þat þe toune moste be¹⁵ holde for rescuede. ¶ And if it so were þat xxj or xxij or mo were slayn of þo CC biforesaide, þat þe toune shulde ¹²nouzt ben¹⁶ halde for rescuede. & þis couenaunt ¹⁷forto holde,¹⁷ þai sent to him opere xij ¹⁸of þe toune¹⁸ in hostagez.¹⁹ ¶ The Kyng of Engeland grantede ham her' praier', and tok þe hostages. on Seynt Margaretes eve, In the 3er' of grace M^t CCC xxxij,²⁰ þe Scottis ¹⁶comen ferseliche²¹ in iiij wengus wel arraiede in Armes, forto mete Kyng Edward of Engeland and Edward þe Kyng of Scotland, & wip hir' power', and come fast and sharpely azeynes evesong tyme. and þe same tyme was flode at Berwik', in the water of Twede, þat ²⁰no man myght wende ouer', on horse neiper on foote, and þe water was bituene þo ij kyngus and þe reame of Engeland: and þat tyme abyden the Scottis in þat oper side, for enchesouñ þat þe Englisshemen shulde haue ²²bene drenchede²² or slayñ.

24 **T**His was þe arraie of the Scottis as²³ þai ²⁴comen in bataile²⁴ azeynes þe ij Kyngus of Engeland & of Scotland: In þe vant-ward²⁵ of Scotland were þise Lordes:—

¶ The Erl of Morrif, Iames FriseH, Symond FriseH, Walter ²⁸Stiward, Raynolde Cheyne, Patrik of Graham, ²⁶Iohñ le Graunt, Iames of Cardoile, ²⁷Patrik Parkeres, Robert Caldecotes,²⁶ Philip of Meldrum, Thomas Gilbert, Wiseman, Adam Gurdouñ, Iamys Gramat, Robert Boyde, Hughe Park, wip xl knyzttes newe dobbede, ³²and vj Ā men of Armes, & iij M^t of commune.²⁸

¹ om. D. ² of þe DO. of R. ³⁻³ hostages too O. ⁴⁻⁴ zelden DO.
⁵ shulde D. schuld O. ⁶ forto DO. ⁷ becomen O.
⁸ senten DO. ⁹ leaf 169, back. ¹⁰⁻¹⁰ om. O. ¹¹ MS. men men.
¹² MS. by by. ¹³ go O. ¹⁴ in-to O. ¹⁵ ben D. ¹⁶ be O.
¹⁷⁻¹⁷ to ben halden D. to be holde O. ¹⁸⁻¹⁸ om. D. ¹⁹ hostage O.
²⁰ MS. xxij. ²¹ fressheliche D. fersly O. ²²⁻²² be dreynt O.
²³ how þat DO. ²⁴⁻²⁴ come in bataylles O. ²⁵ vanne-ward O.
²⁶⁻²⁶ Decotes sic O. ²⁷ leaf 170. ²⁸ communes D.

In þe ferst partie of þe halfe bataile of Scotland wer' þise lordes:—

¶ The styward of Scotland, þe Erl of Moneteth, Iames his Vncle, William Douglas, Daudid of Lyndeseye, Maucolyn Flemyng,⁴ William of Keth, Dunkan Kambok', wip xxx bachilers new dobbede.

In þe secunde part of þe half Lien-warde of the bataile of Scotland, were þise lordes:— 8

¶ Iames Stiward of Coldeñ, Aleyne Styward, William Abbrehyn, William Morice, Iohn fitz William, Adam le¹ Mose, Walter fitz Gilbert, Iohn of Cherltoñ, Robert Walham, wip vij C̄ men of armes, & xvij M^t of communes.² 12

In þe þridde ward of þe bataile of Scotland were þise Lordes:—

¶ The Erl of Marr', þe Erl of Roff, þe Erl of Straherne, þe Erle of Sotherland, William³ Kirkeleye, Iohn Cambron, Gilbert de 16 Haye, William of Rameseye, William Proudegest, Kirstyn Hard, William Gurdoñ, Arnolde Garde, Thomas Dolfyn, wip xl knyghtes new dobbede, ix C men of Armes, aud xv [M^t of] communes.²

In þe ferp⁴ warde of þe bataile of Scotland were þise lordes:— 20

¶ Archebald Douglas,⁵ Erl of Leneux, Alisaunder le Brus, Erl of Fiff, Iohn Cambel,⁶ Erl of Atheles,⁷ Robert Lawether, William⁸ Vipount, William of Lonstoñ, ⁹Iohn de⁹ Labelles, Gros de Shenlowe, Iohn of¹¹ Lyndeseye, Alisaunder' de Gray, Ingam De 24 Vmfreuil, Patrik de Pollesworth, Daudid de Wymes, Michel Scott, William Landy, Thomas de Boys, Rogere de Mortymer', with xxx bachilers, ix C̄ men of Armes, and¹² xvij M^t communes.¹³

[In þe v^{te} warde of þe bataile of Scotland were these lordis:—]¹⁴ 28

¶ The Erl of Dunbarre, keper' of þe castel of Berwik', halpe þe Scottis wip l. men of Armes. And Sir' Alisaundre of Setoñ, keper of þe toune of Berwik, wip¹⁵ C̄ men of Armes, [and the comoñs of þe toun with CCCC men of armes],¹⁶ ¶ and x M^t & viij C̄ of fote- 32 men: þe somme of þe Erles and lordes amontep lv¹⁷; þe somme of¹⁸

¹ de O. ² Comune O. ³ William of DO. ⁴ MS. ferste.

⁵ Douglas þe DO. ⁶ Camber O. ⁷ Athel D. ⁸ William of DO.

⁹⁻⁹ Iohan D. ¹⁰ leaf 170, back. ¹¹ De DO. ¹² om. O.

¹³ and iiij C of communes D. & iiij C of Comune O.

¹⁴ supplied from D. om. in OR. ¹⁵ with an D. with a O.

¹⁶ supplied from D. ¹⁷ lxx D. lv M^t O. ¹⁸ of þe D.

bachileres newe dobbede amountep¹ C and xl; þe some of men of Armes amountep iij M^{†2} vj C̄ & l; þe [som of þ^e comon̄s amountith lxiiij M[†] & CC, The]³ somme of commune⁴ peple aboue-
4 saide⁵ amountep lxxvij M^{†6} & xlv. ¶ And þise⁷ lv grete⁶ Lordes ladden alle þe opere⁸ lordes aboue-saide⁹ in iiij batailes, as¹⁰ is tolde bifore, alle on¹¹ foote.

¶ And þe⁷ Kyng Edward of Engeland[†] and¹² Edward[†], Kyng⁷ of
8 Scotland[†], hade wel apparaledē her' folc¹³ in iiij batailes, forto feizt
14 on foot azeynes¹⁴ her' Enemys. And þe¹⁵ Englisshe mynstralles blow¹⁶ her' trompis ¶ and hir' pipes, and hidously ascriede þe
Scottis. and þo hade euery Englisshe bataile ij wenges of pris
12 Archiers, þe whiche at þat bataile shotten Arwes so faste and¹⁷ sore
þat þe Scottis myght nouzt helpe hamself; and so¹⁸ þai smyten [þ^e]
Scottis, þousandes to þe¹⁹ grounde; and ²⁰þai goū²¹ forto fle fro þe
Englisshe-men forto saue hamselfe.²² ¶ And²⁰ when þe English²³
16 knafes saw þe scomfiture, ²⁴and þe Scottis falle faste⁷ to the¹⁹
ground[†], þai prikeden²⁵ hir' maistres hors wip þe Spores forto kepe
ham fro²⁶ perile, and sette her' maistres at no force. ¶ And when
þe Englisshe-men saw þat, þai lopte on her' hors, and[†] fast pursuede
20 þe Scottis; and alle²⁷ þat abiden, þai⁶ quelledē doune ryght[†]. þere
²³might men²³ see þe douztynesse of þe noble Kyng Edward[†] and of
his men, how manliche²⁹ þai pursuede þe Scottis, þat flowen for
drede. ¶ And þere ³⁰might men³⁰ see meny a Scottishe-man caste
24 douñ vnto þe erthe dede, and hir' baneres displaiede, &¹⁹ hackede
into pices, and meny a gode habrigouñ³¹ of stele in hir' blode
bapede³²; and meny a tyme þe Scottes were gadrede in³³ companyes,
but euermore þai were descomfitede. ¶ And þus hit bifelle, as
28 God[†] wolde, þat þe Scottis hade³⁴ þat day no more foisouñ ne
myght azeynes þe Englisshe-men, þan xx shepe⁶ shulde haue azeyns
v wolves; and so³⁵ were þe Scottis descomfitede; and 3itte þe

¹ amountith an D. amountep a O. ² M[†] & D.

³ supplied from D. somme of þe communes amountep lx M[†] & iiij M[†] & ij C þ^e O.

⁴ the D. þe O. ⁵ aboue-yseyd[†] O. ⁶ om. O. ⁷ om. D.

⁸ toþer D. ⁹ abouen-sayd[†] O. ¹⁰ as it D. ¹¹ in DO.

¹² and king D. ¹³ puple D.

¹⁴⁻¹⁴ in fote azenst D. in foot azens O. ¹⁵ then D.

¹⁶ blewen D. blew O. ¹⁷ and so D. ¹⁸ thus D. ¹⁹ om. DO.

²⁰⁻²⁰ om. O. ²¹ begon D. ²² her lyvis D. ²³ MS. Scottisshē.

²⁴ leaf 171. ²⁵ prikkid[†] D. preked O. ²⁶ from D.

²⁷ at̄ tho D. ²⁸⁻²⁸ men myzt D. men myghte O.

²⁹ manly O. ³⁰⁻³⁰ men myht D. men myghte O.

³¹ habirion̄ D. haberion O. ³² bathe DO. ³³ in-to DO.

³⁴ haddē at D. ³⁵ thus D.

¹Scottes men¹ had v men azeyns on² Englisshe-man. And þat bataile was done at Halydounhiþ bisides þe toune of Berwik: at þe³ whiche bataile were slayn of þe Scottis xxxv M[†] &³ vij^c & xij, and of Englisshe-men but vij oneliche, & þo were footemen. & þis⁴ Victorie bifelle⁴ to þe⁴ Englisshe-men on⁵ Seynt Margaretes eve, In þe 3er[†] of our lord Ihesu Crist[†] ⁶M[†] CCC⁶ xxxij. And while⁷ þis doynge laste,⁸ þe English knafes tok⁹ þe pilfre of þe Scottes þat were quellede, euery man þat he myght take, wipout¹⁰ eny 8 chalange of eny man.¹¹ Deo gracias!

¹⁻¹ Scottis D. Scottes O. ² an D. ³ om. D. ⁴⁻⁴ on-to D.
⁵ in DO. ⁶⁻⁶ a M[†] CCC and D. ⁷ whilis D. ⁸ was D.
⁹ nomen D. ¹⁰ with-ouren D. ¹¹ man Amen O.

APPENDIX A.

THE ROMANCE OF THE BATTLE OF HALIDON HILL,
A.D. 1333.

[1. *The longer poetical Version in Harl. 4690, leaf 82, back, corresponding to the prose on p. 285, line 14 ff.*]

¶ And anone þe Skottes beganne to flee fro þe Engliche menne, to saue þer lyves. butt wanne þe knaves & þe Skottisch pages þat weren behinde the Skottes, to kepe her horses, seyen the discomfiture, þei priken her maisters horses away, to kepe hem 4 selfe from perelle; and so þei towke no hede off her maisters. And þen þe Engliche men towken many off þe Skottes horses, and priken after þe Skottes, & slewe hem downe Righte. And there men mighte see the nowbell King Edward off Englonde & his 8 ffolke, heugh mannefully þei chasedon the Skottes; were-off þis Romance was made:—

There men mighte well see		
Many a Skotte lightly flee,	12	The Scots fled,
And þe Engliche after priking,		the English after them.
With scharp swerdes þem stiking;		
And pere her Baners weren ffounde	[leaf 83]	
Alle displayedde on the Grounde,	16	
And layne starkly on Blode		
As þei hadde ffought on þe fflode.		
Butt þe Scottes, (ille mote þei þee!)		
pought þe Englisch adrenit schulde be;	20	The Scots thought the English must be drownid;
for bi cause þei mighte not flee,		
butte iff þei adrenite schulde bee;		
butte þei kepte hem manly on londe,		
so þatte þe Scottes might nott stonde,	24	
and felde hem downe to Grounde,		but they slew thousands of Scots,
Many þowsandes in þatte stounde;		
and þe Engliche men pursuyed hem so,		
Tille þe fflode was alle a-Goo:	28	
Alle þus þe Skottes discomfite were		
in litell tyme wiþ Grete feere;		

	ffor no noþer wise dide þei stryve, Butt as .xx. shape among wolfes fyve ;	
(tho the Scots were 9 to 1)	ffor .v. off hem þen were ayenste an Englischman þere.	4
	So þere itte was welle semyng þatte <i>with</i> multitude is no scomfiting, Butt <i>with</i> God, fulle off mighte, wham he will helpe in trewe ffighte.	8
by the grace of God, at Halidon Hill near Berwick.	so was þis, Bi goddes Grace, Discomfiture off Skottes in þat place, that men cleped Halidown Hille ; ffor þere þis Bateill Befelle,	12
	Atte Berwike, Be-side þe towne. This was do <i>with</i> mery sowne, wiþ pipes, Trompes, & nakers þer-to ; And loude clariounes þei Blew also.	16
	And þere þe Scottes leyen dede, xxx. M ^l . Be-yonde Twede, & v. M ^l tolde there-to, <i>with</i> vii· C· xii· and mo ;	20
35,712 Scots and more lay dead, and only 7 English.	& of Englischemen But sevenne,— worschipped Be God in hevenne !— & þat wer men on ffote Go yng, By foly of her owne Do yng.	24
The victory of Halidon Hill was on St. Margaret's Eve, 19 July, 1332-3.	on seinte Margete-ys Eue, as y yow tell, Befille þe victory of Halidoune Hille, In þe yere of God almighte, a M ^l iii· C and ii· and pritty.	[leaf 83, col. 2] 28
	atte þis Discomffiture þe Englisch knightes towke her hure of þe Skottes þatte weren dede, Clopes & haberiounes for her mede ;	32
The English took the Scots' armour and clothes.	And watte-euer þei might finde on þe Skottes, þei lefte not behinde ; And þe knaues, by her purchas, hadde þere a mery solas,	36
	for þei hadde for her degree, In alle her lyffe þe Better to be : Alle þus þe Bateille towke Ending.	
But where their Kings	But y canne not telle off þe yen Going	40

Off þe too kingges, were þei become,
 & weþer þei wenten oute or home ;
 But Godde, þatte is heven king,
 sende vs pees and Gode Ending !

went to, I
 don't know.

4

[2. *A shorter fragmentary version in MS. Arundel LVIII,
 College of Arms, leaf 334, back.*]

There þan men myght se
 Many a Scott swiftly fle,
 And þe Englysshmen after prikyng,
 Wiþ sharp swerdys þe Scottes stykyng ;
 & þere hure banyrs weryn founde
 al displayd, lyeng on grounde ;
 and þay lay sprad on blood,
 as þey foughten on þe flood.

The Scots
 fled, the
 English pur-
 sued 'em.

8

That þe Englysshmen drent shold be,
 ffor þat þey hopyde to se,
 ffor so þey hopyde to spede,
 Seyng þe flood þat was on Twede.

The Scots
 hoped the
 English
 would be
 drown'd ;

12

ffor þe Englysshmen myght not fle
 but yf a-drent þey shold be ;
 & þan þere-to loþ þey were,
 for þey þought nought in no such fere,

20

But þey kept hem on londe,
 So þat þe Scottes myght nought stonde ;
 ffor þey were fillyd to grounde,
 many a þousand in þat stounde ;

but they kild
 many thou-
 sand Scots.

24

& þe Englysshmen pursywid hem so,
 fort þe flood was al a-go.
 And þis þe Scottes discomfytyd ; were
 In lytil tyme wiþ gret fere.—

28

290.

7

The Byt.

Early English Text Society.

Original Series, 136.

1908.

BERLIN: ASHER & CO., 13, UNTER DEN LINDEN.
NEW YORK: C. SCRIBNER & CO.; LEYPOLDT & HOLT.
PHILADELPHIA: J. B. LIPPINCOTT & CO.

The Brut

OR

The Chronicles of England,

EDITED FROM

MS. RAWL. B 171, BODLEIAN LIBRARY, &c.

BY

FRIEDRICH W. D. BRIE, PH.D.

WITH INTRODUCTION, NOTES, AND GLOSSARY.

PART II

*(completing the Text, with the Roll of Battle Abbey, including
the name CHAUCER.)*

LONDON:

PUBLISHED FOR THE EARLY ENGLISH TEXT SOCIETY

BY KEGAN PAUL, TRENCH, TRÜBNER & CO., LTD.,

DRYDEN HOUSE, 43 GERRARD STREET, SOHO, W.

AND BY HENRY FROWDE, OXFORD UNIVERSITY PRESS,

AMEN CORNER, E.C.

1908.

ERRATA.

- p. 298. The headline must be : *Caen* instead of *Scluse*.
p. 333. In the head of the page : *MS. Lambeth 331* instead of *Harley 331*.

Original Series, No. 136.

PREFACE.

THIS second part finishes the text of the Chronicle, or rather, series of Chronicles, contained in the present volumes. In the first part I have printed the text of the common Brut which comes down to A.D. 1333, while this second part contains the continuations of the Brut, composed by various authors at different times, in different places and with very varying intentions. Out of the great number of Continuations I have chosen only such as have not been published as yet; and among these, only such as afford new material for the student of History or Literature. If a Continuation exists in several MSS., I have always chosen the best MS., not the oldest, for publication, and have taken the one or two next best MSS. for collation. In a few cases, however, the Continuations are extant in one recension only. The text has been printed from the MSS. as it stands, without attempting conjectural emendations, but occasionally a word or sentence accidentally omitted has been supplied from the other MSS., in the text instead of in a footnote, for the convenience of readers. But in all cases of this kind the reading of the original has been put in a footnote. Letters or fragments of words accidentally omitted are mostly added in brackets. In the footnotes, mere variations of spelling have not been inserted as a rule, while inversions of words are always noticed.

The present publication will be welcome, as well to the Student of Literature as to the Student of History. The former will recognise in it the work which, in its various forms, has been for three centuries the most popular Chronicle of England, and will find in it some interesting matter, not only in the inserted poems, among which the two mocking songs against the Flemings (p. 582 and p. 600) are published for the first time, but also in a fair number of prose passages of which I shall only refer to that dealing with Henry V's dismissal of his old rioting companions (p. 594).

The Student of History will recognise in our text the first large

Chronicle in the English language which has been laid under contribution by nearly all the great Chronicle-writers of the 16th and 17th centuries. As to its historical value I readily admit that the authors of the common Brut and its Continuations have for the most part recorded such matter as is not new, and much that, in the present state of historical literature, will appear to many readers trivial and unimportant. But these disadvantages are inseparable from the uniform practice of annalists of the middle ages. I am, however, decidedly of opinion that there is an amount of original historical information contained in the various Continuations which outweighs the obvious trivialities, mistakes and repetitions; and even the superficial reader will see that long parts of the Continuations are given with a vividness which marks the narration like that of an eye-witness. The whole discussion of historical points connected with the Brut is reserved for the Introduction and the Notes in the third volume.

The following account of the MSS. used for the text and collation in the present volume may suffice. The letters prefixed to each designate them in the notes below the text:

The *first Continuation* from A.D. 1333 to A.D. 1377 called *B*, is taken from

C = MS. Corpus Christi Coll. Camb. 174, which was written in the beginning of the 15th century and closes with the burial of Edward III in 1377.

The text, though the best among the MSS. of the same recension, is not a good one. It has been collated with

T = MS. Br. Mus. Add. 24,859, a late but accurate transcript from a MS. of the second half of the 15th century which closes with the capture of Rouen in 1419, and

R = MS. Br. Mus. Reg. 17 D XXI, likewise a late but faithful transcript from a MS. of the second half of the 15th century which ends in the same year.

Appendix B describing the character of Edward III, is taken from

W = MS. Harley 753, a late 15th century MS. which closes in the year 1430. It has been collated with

X = MS. Lambeth 331, a 15th century MS. breaking off in 1422.

Preface. MSS. used for *Continuations B, C, D, E, F.* vii

Y = MS. Lambeth 491, which shows a hand of the early 15th century, and ends in 1377.

Z = MS. Lambeth 738, which is written by two 15th century hands, and ends in 1418.

The Continuation from A.D. 1377 to 1419, called *C*, is taken from

Kk = MS. Un. Libr. Camb, Kk I 12, which was written about the middle of the 15th century and closes in the year 1419. It has been collated with *T* and *R* described above.

Appendix C, a fuller version of the time from A.D. 1399 to 1401, is taken from

Ra = MS. Rawl. B 173, which was written in the 15th century and closes in 1431. It contains a very bad text, but is unique for the piece it contains.

The Continuation from A.D. 1418 to 1430, called *D*, is taken from

G = MS. Galba E VIII, which is written in a fine 15th century hand and closes in 1430. It has been collated with

A = MS. Harley 2256, the text of which agrees in every respect with that of the foregoing Galba MS.; and where *A* is defective, with

B = MS. Harley 266, a MS. of the same type.

Appendix D, which gives additional matter for the years A.D. 1418 to 1430, is taken from

Hh = MS. Un. Libr. Camb. Hh VI 9, which was written in the 15th century, and closes in 1434.

The Continuation from A.D. 1419 to 1431, called *E*, is taken from

E = MS. Egerton 650, which shows a hand of the time about 1450, and closes in 1431.

Appendix E, containing a differing version for the time 1422-31, is taken from *Ra* = MS. Rawl. B 173, which is described above.

The Continuation from A.D. 1430 to 1446, called *F*, is taken from

Tr = MS. Trin. Coll. Camb. O 9, 1 which closes in 1446. It has been collated with

BRUT.

*

U = MS. Un. Libr. Cambr. Hh VI 9 down to 1434 where *U* closes.

The Continuation from A.D. 1419 to 1461, called *G*, is taken from

Ad = MS. Br. Mus. Add. 10,099, which was written in the end of the 15th century, and closes in 1461. It has been collated with

—*H* = MS. Harley 3730, which breaks off in 1452, and

C = Caxton's first printed edition of 1480, which closes in 1461.

The Collection of various pieces between 1066 and 1436, called *H*, is taken from

Ha = MS. Harley 53 which was written in the 15th century and breaks off during the siege of Calais in 1436. It has been collated with

L = Lambeth 6, a finely illuminated MS., which shows a hand of the end of the 15th century, and closes with the end of the siege of Calais in 1436. Its text, however, is not so good as that of *Ha*.

The Continuation of the foregoing piece *H*, called *I*, is taken from *L*, which is unique in this part.

The Collection of pieces between Havelok's time and A.D. 1475, called *K*, is taken from

La = MS. Lambeth 84, whose unique text shows a hand of the end of the 15th century, and closes in 1475.

For anything else the reader is referred to the third volume of the present edition, which will contain Introduction, Notes, Glossary and Index.¹ Finally, I have again to express my thanks to Dr. Frederick J. Furnivall for his constant and invaluable help. In both volumes the headlines over the pages are added by him.

FRIEDRICH W. D. BRIE.

Marburg a/L., August 1908.

¹ An abstract of the Introduction has appeared in German under the title: *Geschichte und Quellen der mittelenglischen Prosachronik The Brute of England oder The Chronicles of England.* Marburg. N. G. Elwert. 1905.

SUMMARY OF CONTENTS.

B.

Continuation of the Brut from A.D. 1333 to 1377.

Chapters 224-8.

Edward III takes Berwick. Balliol does homage for Scotland. Cornwall is made a Duchy. Edward claims France, and makes his preparations for war. The English win the battle of Sluys, A.D. 1340, and besiege Tournay. Want of money compels Edward to make peace with France. Storms at sea on his way back. Edward goes to Scotland. His son is made Prince of Wales. Constitution of the Round Table. The English imitate the foolish dress of strangers. Expedition into Brittany, A.D. 1345. Edward enters Normandy at La Hogue. English Victory at Caen. Battle of Crecy, A.D. 1346. Edward besieges Calais. The Scotch invaders beaten at Nevil's Cross. The King of France avoids a proposed combat near Calais. Calais surrenders, A.D. 1347. Citizens kindly treated. The Plague of 1348-9. Frustrated treachery of Geoffrey of Charney at Calais ... pp. 291-303

Chapters 229-231.

Sea-fight between the Spaniards and English, A.D. 1349. New Coinage. General dearth. A Drought. Negotiations about Guienne, furthered by the Pope, but broken up by the English. French attempt on Guienne. Edward crosses the sea, but John of France flees, A.D. 1355. The Scotch try to take the Castle of Berwick. Berwick surrenders. Edward III is crowned King of Scotland. The Black Prince in Gascony. Battle of Poitiers, A.D. 1356. The French King as prisoner in England. The festival of St. George, A.D. 1358. Marriage of Duchess Blanche. Edward invades Burgundy, A.D. 1360, and sets fire to the suburbs of Paris. English naval victories. Great Storm near Orleans. Treaty of Bretigny. King John of France is freed. Thunder-storms, and appearance of the Devil. Anglo-French Treaty confirmed at Westminster. Wonders and apparitions. Marriage of the Prince of Wales to Joan of Kent, A.D. 1361 ... pp. 303-314

Chapters 232-235.

Wind, Rain and Frost. Law-pleading in English, A.D. 1363. Charles of Blois slain, A.D. 1364. Peter's Pence not to be paid. King

Pedro of Spain is deposed by his brother, A.D. 1366. Danish Invaders are repulsed in the North-sea. The Black Prince helps King Pedro of Spain. Battle of Navarra. Marriage of Prince Lionel, Duke of Clarence, A.D. 1366. Great Pestilence, A.D. 1369. Death of the Earl of Warwick at Calais. Sir John Hawkwode. Robert Knollis's expedition to France. Limoges rebels against the Black Prince. The King of Navarra's visit to England. King Pedro's daughters married to the Duke of Lancaster and the Earl of Cambridge. Spaniards surprise Englishmen at Rochelle. pp. 314-326

Chapters 236-239.

The Duke of Lancaster's expedition to Bordeaux, A.D. 1373. Disputes between Edward III and the Pope. Truce with France for one year. Great pestilence. The Earl of Pembroke is taken prisoner by the Spanish, A.D. 1374. The Commons refuse further money unless the King proves his need of it, A.D. 1376. Alice Ferrers and Lord Latimer. Piers de la Mare imprisoned. Death of the Black Prince, A.D. 1377. Revolt of Warwick's tenants. Subsidy granted to Edward III. Sir John Munsterworth executed for treachery. Death of Edward III, A.D. 1377 pp. 326-332

Appendix B.

The Character of Edward III. pp. 333-334

C.

Continuation of the Brut from A.D. 1377 to 1419.

Chapters 239-240.

Coronation of Richard II. Hawle and Shakyll, A.D. 1378. French gallies burn English Towns. Revolt of Jack Straw and Wat Tyler, A.D. 1381. Walworth slays Jack Straw. Punishment of the rebels, Earthquake, A.D. 1382. Crusade of the Bishop of Norwich, A.D. 1383. Fight near Dunkirk, A.D. 1383. Marriage of Richard II with Anne of Bohemia.¹ Expedition of the Duke of Lancaster into Spain, A.D. 1386. The King of Armenia visits England. Treaty with the Scots. The Earl of March slain in Ireland, A.D. 1398. The rising of the Five Lords, A.D. 1387. Flight of the evil counsellors. Tournament for foreigners in London, A.D. 1388. John of Gaunt's Expedition to Spain, A.D. 1387. Dispute between Londoners and the Bishop of Salisbury about a baker's broken head. King Richard's Quarrel with the Londoners. Reconciliation, and great reception of him. Jousts in Smithfield. Death of Queen Anne, A.D. 1394.² pp. 335-348

¹ "Right as our firste lettre is now an A"—Anne, crowned Queen of England on Jan. 14, 1382—Lowes on the date of Chaucer's *Troilus*, Book I, st. 25, in *Publ. of Modern Lang. Assoc. of America*, June 1908.

² See Lowes on the effect of this on the shorter and revised Prologue to Chaucer's *Legend of Good Women*.

Chapters 241-242.

King Richard marries Isabella of France, A.D. 1396. Coronation of the Queen. King Richard arrests the Duke of Gloster, and sends him to Calais, A.D. 1397. Murder of the Duke. Other arrests. The great Parliament at Westminster. Muster of Richard's adherents. The Earl of Arundel sentenced and executed. Others condemned to perpetual imprisonment. Creation of Nobles. Duel between Bolingbroke and Norfolk stopt by the King, A.D. 1398. False Blank Charters. Richard's Expedition to Ireland, A.D. 1399. Return of Bolingbroke. Richard deposed, and Bolingbroke made King pp. 349-359

Chapter 243.

Coronation of Henry IV, A.D. 1399. Richard II starved. Plot against Henry IV; conspirators executed, A.D. 1400. Debate between Owen Glendower and Lord Grey de Ruthin, A.D. 1401. The King invades Wales. A comet, A.D. 1402. Battle of Shrewsbury, A.D. 1403. The Emperor of the Turks in London. The Marriage of Henry IV, A.D. 1403. Marriage of the Princess Blanche. English naval victory near Flanders, A.D. 1404. Execution of Serle. Duel in Smithfield. Archbishop Scrope's rebellion and execution, A.D. 1405. Marriage of the Earl of Kent, A.D. 1407. Death of Sir Robert Knollis. Princess Philippa is married to the King of Denmark, A.D. 1405. Duel in Smithfield. Death of Northumberland and Bardolf, A.D. 1408. The Earl of Kent killed at St. Brieux, A.D. 1408. Six days' jousting by Hainaulters in London, A.D. 1409. Duel in Smithfield between Gloucester and Arture. Rys ap Die's Execution. English Victory at St. Cloud, A.D. 1411. Victory at La Hogue, A.D. 1412. Henry IV dies in "Jerusalem," A.D. 1413 pp. 359-372

Chapters 244-245.

Henry V re-buries Richard II, A.D. 1413. Lollards' conspiracy discovered, A.D. 1414. The sending of the tennis-balls. Henry V's war-preparations. Conspiracy against the King's life, A.D. 1415. Henry invades France and besieges Harfleur. Surrender of Harfleur. Battle of Agincourt, A.D. 1415. Killing of the French prisoners. The English Dead. Henry V's reception in London. The German Emperor meets King Henry. Henry V's muster of ships. Second Invasion of France, A.D. 1417. Surrender of the French cities. Siege of Cherbourg. Arrival of the Earl of March in France. Sir John Oldcastle's imprisonment and execution, A.D. 1417. Siege of Rouen, A.D. 1418. Siege of Caudebec. Names of the Governors of Rouen. Distress of the City. Rouen surrenders, A.D. 1419 pp. 373-391

Appendix C.

Fuller Version of the time from 1399 to 1401.

Conspirators against Henry IV punished. Execution of Roger Clarendon and the prior of Laund. Rebellion of Owen Glendower.

Lord Grey de Ruthin taken prisoner. The capture of Edmund Mortimer. Henry V's fruitless expedition into Wales ... pp. 392-393

D.

Continuation of the Brut from A.D. 1418 to 1430, including John Page's Poem on the siege of Rouen.

Henry V besieges Rouen, A.D. 1418. Stations of his generals. Chain and bridges across the Seine. Caudebec wants to share the fate of Rouen. Cherburg won by Humphrey of Gloster. Reinforcements for Henry V. Rumoured approach of the French King. Chief Captains of Rouen. Defence of the city. Henry arranges a sham fight with a rescuing power, to deceive the French in Rouen. Deaths from starvation. Henry feeds the expelled starving Roueners. The City sends delegates into the English camp. *Beginning of the Poem.* The delegates want safe-conduct to the King. The King is ready to see them. They ask him for mercy. Henry grants them time. Tents are pitched to treat in. The Roueners refuse the English terms. The poor in Rouen insist on the rich yielding to Henry V. If no rescue comes in eight days, Rouen is to be given up to Henry V. Delivery of the keys. The English welcomed in Rouen. Henry V hears mass in the Minster. *End of the Poem.* Queen Joan arrested. Death of Friar Randulf. Meeting of Henry V and the French Queen. No agreement. Pontoise taken by the English. Treaty of Troyes, A.D. 1420. Henry V weds Katherine of France. Their reception in London. Death of the Duke of Clarence. Birth of Henry VI, A.D. 1421. Henry V besieges Meaux in Brie. Capture of Meaux. Death of Henry V, A.D. 1422.

The child Henry VI reigns. His Guardians. Wonderful escape of Gloster's wife. Quarrel in London, A.D. 1425. Death of the Duke of Exeter, A.D. 1426. The Bishop of Winchester is made Cardinal. Siege of Orleans, A.D. 1428. The Earl of Salisbury killed. Siege of Orleans raised by the French. Boat with Duke of Norfolk swamped, A.D. 1429. Great Dearth. Coronation of Henry VI, A.D. 1430. Reinforcements sent to France. Smithfield Duel stopt. Henry VI crosses the sea. His success in France. Joan of Arc taken, A.D. 1430

pp. 394-439

Appendix D.

Additional matter from the time A.D. 1420 to 1428.

Will Wawe hanged. Great Rain in 1427. Royal Seal counterfeited. A Widow's Murderer stoned. The heretic Richard Hunder burnt pp. 440-443

E.

Continuation of the Brut from the capture of Rouen, A.D. 1419 to 1430.

Queen Joan arrested. Henry V weds Catherine, A.D. 1420. Feast at the Queen's coronation. The *menu* at the banquet. Death of the

Duke of Clarence. Henry V goes to France. Birth of Henry VI, A.D. 1421. Death of Henry V. His corpse brought to London. French homage to Henry VI. The heretic William Taylor burnt. Siege of Orleans raised, A.D. 1429. Lord Talbot taken prisoner. Great dearth. Henry VI in London. His coronation at Westminster. Duel in Smithfield stopt, A.D. 1430 pp. 444-451

Appendix E.

Additional matter for the time from A.D. 1422 to 1431.

The child Henry VI brought to London. Sir John Mortimer beheaded. Quarrel in London, A.D. 1425. Parliament at Leicester. False Wines in London. Siege of Orleans raised, A.D. 1429. Lord Talbot taken prisoner. Coronation of Henry VI, A.D. 1430. Parliament at Westminster pp. 452-455

F.

Continuation of the Brut from A.D. 1430 to 1446.

Spanish Ambassadors insulted, A.D. 1430. A Lollard burnt. Jack Sharp executed, A.D. 1431. Ludgate-prison built. Henry VI's journey from Calais to Rouen. Reception in Paris. Wonderful shows. The King visits his grandmother. Coronation at Paris, A.D. 1431. Reception in London, A.D. 1432. Cornhill and Cheapside. St. Paul's and Westminster Abbey. Parliament at Westminster. Foreign Ambassadors. Convocation at Basel. The Earl of Huntingdon goes into Normandy. Great Pestilence, A.D. 1434. Hard frost. Negotiations for peace with France, A.D. 1435. Money for war granted to Henry VI. English troops to Normandy. Fights round Calais. The English besieged in Calais are rescued, A.D. 1436. Flemish towns taken. Scotch invasion repulsed. Hard Frost, A.D. 1436. Death of Queen Katherine. Foreigners at the English Parliament. The Duke of York comes back to England, A.D. 1437. A Murderer sentenced. Heretics burnt. Dear food. Storms and Earthquake. The Earl of Huntingdon goes to France. Peace-meeting at Calais, A.D. 1439. Cruel murder discovered. Parliament at Westminster and Reading. Ship-thieves hanged. Heretics burnt. Duel in Smithfield, A.D. 1440. Expedition to France. Henry VI visits the City. Storm raised by witches. The clerk Roger retracts his devilish art. Eleanor Cobham found guilty of treason and witchcraft, A.D. 1441. Her public penance. The clerk Roger is hanged. Duel in Smithfield. Lord Talbot's expedition to France, A.D. 1442. Arrant thieves hanged. A woman pressed to death for bad language. Negotiations for Henry VI's marriage. King's offender pardoned. Princess Margaret betrothed to Henry VI, A.D. 1444. St. Paul's steeple burnt, A.D. 1445. King Henry's wedding. Queen Margaret's procession and coronation. French Ambassadors come to treat for peace
pp. 456-490

G.

*Continuation of the Brut from the Capture of Rouen,
A.D. 1419 to A.D. 1461.**Chapters 245¹–251.*

Murder of the Duke of Burgundy, A.D. 1419. Queen Joan arrested. Henry V weds Katherine of France, A.D. 1420. The Duke of Clarence slain. Birth of Henry VI, A.D. 1421. The Queen visits Paris. Death of Henry V, A.D. 1422. Praise of Henry V, who was wild in youth, but virtuous when King. His French wars incited by the clergy. His foundations of religious houses. Gloster made Protector. Battle of Verneuil, A.D. 1424. Gloster weds the Duchess of Holland. His Hainault attack fails. Affray in the City, A.D. 1425. Henry VI and Nobles knighted. Much rain. Lord Salisbury shot at Orleans, A.D. 1428. Widow's murderer stoned. Henry VI crowned, A.D. 1430. Joan of Arc burnt, A.D. 1431. Henry VI's coronation at Paris. Rebellion of the soldiers at Calais. Pope Eugenius IV deposed. Congress of Arras, A.D. 1435. French plot to seize Calais discovered. The Duke of Burgundy besieges Calais. Siege raised by the Duke of Gloster, A.D. 1436. Flemish towns ransacked. Roxburgh besieged by the Scots. Death of Queen Katherine, A.D. 1437. Treaty between the King and the Duke of Burgundy pp. 491–506

Chapters 251–255.

Death of Sigismund of Germany. Owen Tudor's imprisonment, A.D. 1438. Death of Warwick at Rouen. Great dearth. Frederick is chosen Emperor of Germany. Eleanor Cobham is accused of treason, A.D. 1441. Her accomplices. Disputes as to the Lord Mayor. St. Paul's steeple burnt, A.D. 1445. Henry VI's marriage with Margaret. Duel at Smithfield stopt by the King. Henry's marriage dearly bought. Losses by it. Suspicious death of Duke Humphrey of Gloster, A.D. 1447. The pápal Schism. Felix resigns. Rouen and Normandy lost. Constantinople taken by the Turks. Dutch ships captured. Rouen taken by the French, A.D. 1448. Captain Bluebeard executed, A.D. 1450. The Duke of Suffolk's end, A.D. 1450. Jack Cade's rebellion. His entrance into London. Lord Say beheaded. Jack Cade killed by Alexander Iden, A.D. 1450. pp. 506–520

Chapters 256–263.

Rebellion of the Duke of York. Prince Edward born, A.D. 1453. Lord Mayor's show on the Thames. Rebellion of the Lords. First Battle of St. Albans, A.D. 1455. The Duke of York made Protector. Lombard Riot in London. Great Fish caught. Prisoners of Newgate break out. The French pillage Sandwich. Bishop Peacock's abjuration. Concord among the Lords, A.D. 1458. Battle of Bloreheath, A.D.

¹ Compare under C. The reckoning differs by one chapter.

1459. Trollop deserts the Yorkists. Failure of the Yorkist revolt, A.D. 1459. The Yorkists keep Calais, and increase in number. Sandwich taken, A.D. 1460. Lord Warwick goes to Ireland, to speak with the Duke of York. Yorkist Lords come to London. Battle of Northampton, A.D. 1460. Henry VI to be King for his life; and York acknowledged as his successor. Battle of Wakefield, A.D. 1460. The Duke of York slain. Second Battle of St. Albans, A.D. 1461. Henry VI captured. Londoners negotiate with the Queen. Flight of the rich merchants. Henry VI deposed. Edward IV made King. Battle of Towton, A.D. 1461. Coronation of Edward IV pp. 520-533

H.

Various Pieces from MS. Harley 53, from A.D. 1066 to 1436.

I. Coronation of William I's Queen. Battle Abbey escutcheons. Battle Abbey Roll of the names of the Norman knights ... pp. 534-537

II. Edward III resolved to chastise the French, A.D. 1346. Roll of the English for Crecy and Calais. Battles before and at Crecy. Siege of Calais. Scotch invaders are beaten at Nevil's Cross, A.D. 1346. The King of France avoids a proposed combat near Calais pp. 537-544

III. Bolingbroke's return to England, A.D. 1399. Richard II is deserted, and taken prisoner. Bolingbroke's son Henry talks friendly with Richard II. Richard II starved. His corpse exhibited. A Conspiracy disclosed to Henry IV by the Duke of Aumerle, A.D. 1400. Conspirators beheaded. Revolt of Owen Glendower, A.D. 1400. The King's expedition to Wales. Scotch beaten at Homildon Hill, A.D. 1402. The King buffets Sir Henry Percy. Battle of Shrewsbury, A.D. 1403. The Emperor of Constantinople in London. Ships captured at sea. Battle of Marck, A.D. 1405 pp. 544-551

IV. The Lollards' conspiracy against Henry V discovered, A.D. 1414. Sir John Oldcastle arrested. Henry V's claim to France. His preparations for an invasion, A.D. 1415. Traitors beheaded. Siege of Harfleur. The great gun Goodgrace. Names of Harfleur Hostages. Surrender of Harfleur. Battle of Agincourt, Oct. 25, 1415. The English King's words to his men. His personal bravery. Names of the French Lords killed at Agincourt. The English dead. French prisoners killed. Henry V's reception in London, A.D. 1466. Visit of the German Emperor. Council at Calais pp. 551-559

V. Capture of Rouen, A.D. 1419. Attempt at peace between England and France. The Duke of Burgundy slain. The Treaty of Troyes, A.D. 1420. Henry V betrothed to Katherine of France. Their return to England, A.D. 1421. Death of the Duke of Clarence. Henry V's second expedition to France. Birth of Henry VI, A.D. 1421. The Earl of Warwick made keeper of Henry VI, A.D. 1422. Sir Roger Mortymer executed. Verneuill surrendered to the French. Battle of Verneuill, A.D. 1424. Names of the Scotch and French slain in the battle. The Prince of Portugal in England. Quarrel in London, A.D. 1425.

Henry VI knighted. William Wawe hanged. The Bishop of Winchester goes to Normandy against the Pope's order, A.D. 1427. Henry VI's coronation at Westminster. Henry VI in Paris, A.D. 1431. Rebellion of the soldiers at Calais about their wages. Congress of Arras, A.D. 1435. The men of Popering's bad behaviour. The Duke of Burgundy besieges Calais, A.D. 1436. The Flemings scorn the English by pictures and interludes. The French, disguised as fishermen, try to surprise Calais. Death of the Duke of Bedford. Calais well fortified. Calais men sworn to Henry VI. English force gathered to rescue Calais. Successful English raids from Calais. The English surprised while hunting hares. The Picards beaten in the Golden Dale. The Flemings capture the Castle of Oye. William Bullion treated as a traitor. Marck surrenders to the Flemings. The Flemings besiege Calais, A.D. 1436. The Picards ruin Guisnes Castle. Sandgate's shameful surrender. The Flemings try to block the harbour of Calais. The men of Bruges and their "Bad Thursday" at Calais. The bulwark of the men of Ghent taken

pp. 559-580

I.

End of the Siege of Calais, A.D. 1436, from MS. Lambeth 6.

The besieged English receive reinforcements. The Duke of Burgundy and the Flemings abandon the siege. The Siege of Guisnes given up by the Picards. The Englishmen's mocking song against the Flemings

pp. 581-584

K.

Various Pieces from MS. Lambeth 84, from Havelok's time to A.D. 1475.

- | | | |
|--|--------|-------------|
| I. Story of Havelok's son Curan and Argentil | ... | pp. 585-588 |
| II. Richard II's quarrel with his uncle, the Duke of Gloster, about the soldiers from Brest, A.D. 1397 | | pp. 588-589 |
| III. Deposition of Richard II, and Election of Henry IV, A.D. 1399. Prophecy that Richard II should be destroyed by a toad | ... | pp. 589-590 |
| IV. Richard II murdered by Piers of Exton, A.D. 1400. His corpse brought to London and to Langley. Reported starvation of Richard II. His treasure | | pp. 590-592 |
| V. The causes of the Battle of Shrewsbury, A.D. 1403 | ... | p. 593 |
| VI. Accession and character of Henry V, A.D. 1413. Dismissal of his old companions. With the help of Katherine Swynford, he sets his court in order. He stops a duel | | pp. 593-596 |
| VII. Battle of Agincourt, A.D. 1415. The English King's crown captured and sent to Paris. The people from Paris hasten to Agincourt. French prisoners killed. The list of dead | | pp. 596-598 |
| VIII. The Siege of Rouen, A.D. 1418. Prophecies of Surrender. Every eldest son in Rouen made a King on St. Dennis' Eve | ... | p. 598 |

IX. Prophecy at Henry VI's birth, A.D. 1421. His coronation. The Popering men's bad behaviour. The Duke of Exeter's revenge. English Ballad against the Flemings pp. 598-601

X. The first battle of St. Albans, A.D. 1455. The Battles of Blore heath and Ludlow, A.D. 1459. The Battles of Northampton and Wakefield, A.D. 1460: of St. Albans and Wigmore, A.D. 1461
pp. 601-602

XI. Battle of Towton, A.D. 1461. Henry VI taken prisoner. Battle of Barnet, A.D. 1471. Death of Henry VI. King Edward IV goes to France, A.D. 1475. The French pox, the stitch and the flix
pp. 602-604

Appendix to H. (Compare p. 535-537.)

Alphabetical List of the Battle Abbey Roll in MS. Harley 53
pp. 605-607

[B]

[FROM THE BATTLE OF HALIDON HILL (A.D. 1333) TO THE
DEATH OF EDWARD III (A.D. 1377).][*MS. Corpus Christi College, Cambridge, No. 174, leaf 172, back.*]

¶ Ande so, after þis gracious victorie, þe King turnyd him
a3en vnto þe same seege of Berwyk. & whan þey of þe sege,¹ sawen
& herd hov þat þe² King Edward had sped, þey 3olden to him þe
4 toun, *with* þe castell, on þe morwe after þat þe bataile was, þat ys
forto seyn, on Seint Margaretes day. And þan þe King ordeyned
Sere Edward Bayllol, *with* opere noble & worpy men, to be³ keepers
and gouernours of Scotlonde in his absence; & hym self turned
8 a3en, and come into Englonde after þis victory, *with* myche ioye &
worship.

¶ And in þe next 3ere sewyng,⁴ þat ys forto⁵ seyn, þe 3ere of our
Lord M^l. CCC. & xxxij,⁶ & of King Edward, þe vj.,⁷ he wente a3en
12 into Scotland in þe wynter tyme; at whiche viage þe castell of
Kylbrigge in Scotland, for hym & his men þat *with* hym comen,
he recouered, & had⁸ a3ens the Scottis, al þat⁹ his owne luste.¹⁰

¶ And in þat same 3ere, Sere Edward Baillol, king of Scotlande,
16 held his parlement in Scotland, *with* meny noble lordes of Eng-
londe, þat were at þat same parlement, for enchesoun of hire landes
and lordshipes þat þey had in þe reume of Scotland, and helden of
þe same Baillol. & in þe vij. 3ere of his regne, aboute þe feste of
20 sent Iohn¹¹ Baptiste, Sire Edward Baillol, þe verry and trewe King
of Scotland, as by heritage & ri3te lyne, made his homage and
feaute vnto King Edward of Englonde for þe reume of Scotland,
at þe Nev Castell vp Tynt, in precense of meny worpi lordez, and
24 also of communes of boþe reaumes, & anon after in þe same 3ere of¹²
King Edward of Englonde receyued of þe duke of Britaigne his
homage for þe erldome & lordship of Richemound.¹³ ¶ And so
folwyng in þe neyne 3ere of his regne, after Micelmasse, King
28 Edwarde rode into Scotlonde, and þer was faste by sent Iohnnes
toun almoste al þe wynter tyme; & he helde his *cristiscemasse* at

¹ towne T. toun R. ² þe om. R. ³ leaf 173. ⁴ folwyng R.⁵ to T. ⁶ M^lCCC xxxiii T. MCCC xxxij R. ⁷ vj 3eer R.⁸ had it T. ⁹ at T. at R. ¹⁰ wille. ¹¹ Iohn þe TR.¹² of om. R. ¹³ erldom of Richemonde & lordship R.

þe Castel of Rokysburgh. & in þe same 3ere þoru3t-out al Engelond, aboute sent Clemcys tyde, in wynter þere arose a¹ suche a sprynggyng and wellinge op of wateres ²and floodes, bothe of þe see and also of fresshe ryvers & sprynges, þat þe see brynke wallaes ⁴& coostes broken vp.³ Men,⁴ bestes, and houses in meny places, & namely in lowe cuntres, violently and sodenly⁵ were dreynt and dryven away; and þe fruyte of þe erþe, þoru3 continuance and abundaunce of þe see watres, euermore after⁶ were turned into more ⁸saltnes & sournes of sauour.

¶ The x. 3ere of King Edwarde, he entred þe Scottysse see after Missomere; & to meny of þe Scottes he 3af batayll, and ouercome him,⁷ and meny he treted & bowede vnto his pees, þoru3 his ¹²doughtynes. & after Michelmasse þan next folwyng, was þe Erl of Moryf ytake att Eþinburgh, & brou3t into Engelond, & put into prisoun. ¶ And in þe moneþes of Iuyn and Iuull⁸ þan next folwyng, in the xj. 3ere of his regne, was seyn and aperede in þe ¹⁶firmament, a bemyd⁹ sterre, þe whiche clerCUS calleþ 'stella comata'; and þat sterre was seyn in diuerce parteis of the firmament; wherafter anon þer folwyd in Engelond good chepe, and wonder grete plente of¹⁰ chaffaree, vitaile and marchaundice, and ²⁰þere azens, honger, scrafte, mischif,¹¹ and nede of money, in-somuche þat a quarter of whete att London was suolde for .ijs., and a good fatte oxe at a noble, and v. good dowe briddes for a jd. In whiche 3ere, on Holy Roed 3eue, deide Sere Iohn of Elham, Erl of ²⁴Cornewaile, King Edwardus broþer, and lithe at Westmynstre.

Hov King Edwarde made a Duchye of þe Erldom of Cor[n]waile; & also of vj. opere erles þat were newe made; & of þe ferste Chalangyng of þe reaume of Fraunce. Cap^o CC^{mo}. 28 xxv^{to}.¹²

¹³In þe 3ere of our Lord a¹⁴ M^t. CCC. xxxvii., and of King Edwarde xij.,¹⁵ in¹⁶ þe moneþe of March, duryng þe parlement at Westminstre in lente tyme, King Edwarde made of the erldome of ³²Cornevayle a duchye, þe whiche duche he 3af to Edwarde his ferste sone wip¹⁷ þe erldome of Chestre. also King Edward made at þat tyme vj. opere erles, þat ys forto sey, Sere Henry, þe Erl of

¹ a om. TR. ² leaf 173, back. ³ vp om. T. vp so þat R.

⁴ and boþe men T. ⁵ Cuntrees sodenli and violenti R. ⁶ after om. TR.

⁷ hem T. ⁸ of Iuyth and Iuyn R. ⁹ lemed R. ¹⁰ of alle R.

¹¹ mischif om. T. ¹² CCxxvj R. ¹³ leaf 174. ¹⁴ a om. T.

¹⁵ xij^e yeer T. ¹⁶ Edwarde þe xij 3eer in R. ¹⁷ þe R. om. C.

Lancastres sone, Erl of Leycestre; William of Bowham, Erl of Northampton; William of Mountgen, Erl of Salesbery; Hughe of Awdelee, Erl of Gloucestre; Robert of Vfforde, Erl of Suthfolk; 4 and William of Clyntton, Erl of Huntyngdone. In that same 3ere, hit¹ was ordeynede in þat same parlement, þat noman shulde were no cloþe þat was woruzt oute of Engeland, as cloþe of gold, of silk, damaske, vellewet, saton, baudekyn, ne non suche oþere; ne non² 8 wyldware in Furrenre of bezonde³ see, but suche as myzte Spende an C. li. of rente erliche⁴: but þis ordeynaunce and⁵ statute was of⁶ litel effecte, for hit was noþing holde.

¶ In þe xiiij. 3ere of hys regne, King Edward wente ouere see 12 into Braban, wiþ Quene Phelip his wif⁷ þere beryng⁸ childe,⁹ and¹⁰ att Andwerp, þere¹¹ he duellid more þen a 3ere, to trete wiþ þe Duke of Braban and oþere allyed vnto him of þe calynggyn of þe reaume of Fraunce to King Edward, be ri3te and by herytage, after 16 þe deþ of Carol þe grete, King of Fraunce, broþer Germayne of¹² quene Isabelle,¹³ King Edwardus Moder, þe whiche¹⁴ was holden and occupied vnrightfully by Philip of Valeys, þe Emessone of King Carol: ¶ þe whiche duke, and al his, in þe forseyd þinges¹⁵ and in 20 al oþere þerto longyng, wiþ al his men and goodes, King Edward founde redy vnto him, and maden and behy3ten¹⁶. suerte, by good fayghte and truste; and after þat, þe king hasted him into Engeland a3en, and left þere þe quene stille behynde hym in Braban.

¶ þan in þe xiiij. 3ere of his regne, whenne al þe lordez of his¹⁷ reaume, and oþer þat owne to be at his parlement, weren clepte and assembled togedre in þe same parlement, holden at London after þe feste of sent Hillary, þe Kingez nedes were putt forþe and 28 promoted as toching þe kingdome of Fraunce; for whiche nede3 to be spede, þe King askeþ þe viif¹⁸ part of alle þe meble goode3 of Engeland, and þe wolles, and þe ix. þe¹⁹ schef of euery²⁰ corn; and þe lordez of eny²¹ toun wher suche þinges schulde be taxid and gaderd, 32 shulde ansuere to þe King þerof; and al he had and helde at his owene liste²² and wil. wherfor, yf y shal knowliche þe verrey treuþe,²³ þe ynnere loue of þe peple was turned into hate, & þe

¹ hit *om* T. ² noon oþer R. ³ beyonde þe T. biyonde þe R.

⁴ yeerli rente T [cp. *Newers day*, 302/12]. ⁵ and þis T. & þis R.

⁶ off fuþt R. ⁷ wif and T. ⁸ sche bere T.

⁹ þere beryng childe *om.* R. ¹⁰ and *om.* T. ¹¹ and þere T.

¹² to T. ¹³ Isobelle that was T. ¹⁴ that T. ¹⁵ leaf 174, back.

¹⁶ behighte him R. ¹⁷ þe T. ¹⁸ xv^o T. xv. R.

¹⁹ þe *om.* TR. ²⁰ alle maner T. ²¹ eueri T. euerie R.

²² luste T. lust R. ²³ þe treuthe verray R.

commune prayrs into cursinge, for cause þat the commune peple were strongliche ygreued. ¶ also þe forsaide Philip of Valeys of Fraunce, had gadered to him a grete oste, and destroyede þere in his parteys and kingdome, meny of þe Kingez frende; of Engelonde, 4 with tounes & castellis, and meny opere of hire lordshippez; and meny harmes, schames, and despitez, dede vnto þe Quene. wherfore þe King, whan he ha[r]d¹ of þis² tydinge, he was stron[g]lyche meued, and þerwip an-anger[d], and sente diuerse letters ouere see 8 to þe Quene, and to opere þat were his frende; glad yng him, and certyfienge þat he wolde be þer³ him-self in al þe haste þat he myzt. ¶ And anon, after Ester, when he had sped of al þing þat hym neded, & come fore,⁴ he wente ouere see azen; of whos comyng, þe 12 quene & al his frendis were wonder glad, & maden myche ioye; and al þat were his enemys, and azen hym helden,⁵ madyn as⁶ *muchel* sorwe. ¶ In þe same tyme þe King, þoru; counsel of his treue leiges, & counsell⁷ of his lordes þat þere weren present wip 16 him, toke þe King of Fraunces name,⁸ and toke & melled þe Kingez armes of Fraunce qwarterly with þe armes of Engelond, & commaunnded forþwip his coigne of gold, vnder descripcioun of the name of Engelond and of Fraunce, to be made, þe⁹ beste þat myzte be, 20 þat ys for to seyn, þe *floreyn* þat was clept þe ‘noble,’ of¹⁰ value of vj.s. & viij.d., and þe ‘half-noble’ of¹¹ iij.s. iij.d., & þe ‘ferþing’ of value of xx.d.

Hov King Edward come to þe Selus, and descomfited alle þe 24 poer¹² of Fraunce in þe same havene. Capitulo¹³ CC^{mo} xxvj^{to}.¹⁴

And in þe next zere after, þat ys forto seyn, þe xv. zere of his regne, he comaunded, & lete¹⁵ write in his charters, writtes, & opere 28 letters, þe date of his regne of Fraunce ferst,¹⁶ & while þat he was þus do yng & trauallyng in Fraunce, þoru; his counsel he wrote to al prelatys, dukes, Erles, barouns, &¹⁷ noble lordez of his cuntre, and also to diuers of þe commune peple, diuers lettres and maunde- 32 mentis, beryng date at Gandanum þe .viij. day¹⁸ Feuerer. ¶ And anon aftir, wip-yn¹⁹ litel tyme, he come azen into Engelond, wip þe

¹ herde TR. ² these T. ³ leaf 175. ⁴ & come fore om. T.

⁵ helden om. T. ⁶ as om. T. ⁷ counsell om. R.

⁸ kingis name of fraunce T. ⁹ þe om. T. ¹⁰ of þe R.

¹¹ of value of T. off value of R. ¹² power R. ¹³ Capitulo om. T.

¹⁴ xxvj^{to} om. T. CC xxvij R. ¹⁵ dide T. ¹⁶ ferst om. R.

¹⁷ and þe TR. ¹⁸ day of TR. ¹⁹ yn a T.

quene and hire childrin. And in þe same 3ere, on Missomer even, he bigan to sayle towarde Fraunce a3en, & manly & stiffly ful vpon Philip of Valeys, the whiche long tyme lay, and had¹ gaderid to
 4 him a ful ²huge and boystous navee of diuers nacions, in þe hauene of Selus. And þere þey fou3ten togedir þe Kinge of Fraunce, and he wiþ her osten from midday vnto þe morwe. ¶ In wiche batail were slayn xxx m^t men of þe kingez cumpanye of Fraunce, and
 8 meny shippes & Coggez were take; and so, þoru3 Gode3 helpe, he had þere þe victorye, and bere pens a glorious chiuache. And in þe same 3ere, aboute sent Iames tyde, wiþout þe 3ates of sent Omers, Robert of Artoys, wiþ men of Engelond and of Flaundes, bitterly
 12 fau3t a3ens þe duke of Burgoyne & þe Frensshe men; at wiche bataile þer were slayn & take ³of þe Frensshe men, xv. barouns, .iiij. kny3tis; & shippez & barges were take,³ vnto þe noubre of .CC. &⁴ xxx. ¶ The same 3ere, þe King making &⁵ abydyng
 16 oppon þe see⁶ of Tournay, þe Erl of Henaude, wiþ englisshe archers, made asawte to þe toun of Seyntanmund, wher þat he slow L. kni3tis & meny oþere, and destroyed also þe toun.

And in þe .xvj. 3ere of his regne folwyng, in þe wynter tyme,
 20 þe king, duelling still oppon þe forsaid sege, sent oft into Engelond to his tresorer & oþer purveyours for gold⁷ & meny, þat shulde be sent to hym þer in his nede; but his procuratours & messagers cursidly & ful slowly serued him at his nede, & him deceyved.
 24 ¶ On wos faute & laches þe King toke trews bytwene hym & þe King of Fraunce. & þe King, ful of sorow woo & shame in his hert, wiþdrowe him from þe see,⁸ and come into Brytaigne; & þer was so grete strif⁹ for vitailles, þat¹⁰ he lost meny of his peple. &
 28 whan he had do þere¹¹ þat he come for, he dressid hym ouer see¹² into Engelond warde. ¶ And as he sayled toward Engelond, in þe hye see, þe moste mishappes, stormes & tempeste, thundres & lightnynges, fil to hym in þe see, þe whiche was seyde þat it was
 32 done & areysed þoru3 evel spirites made by sorcery and Nigromancye of hem of Fraunce. Wherefore þe Kingez hert was ful of sorwe & angwysse, weyling & sighyng, & said vnto oure lady on þis wyse. ¶ “O blessid lady, sent Marye! what is þe cause þat

¹ had om. T. ² leaf 175, back. ^{xx}

³⁻³ of þe ffrensshe men xv barons iiij kny3tis & shippez & barges were take om. T. ⁴ and om. T. ⁵ making and om. T.

⁶ sege T. king abydyng vp on þe sege R.

⁷ for gold and R. for gold om. C. purveyours for gold T. ⁸ sege R.

⁹ leaf 176.

¹⁰ so þat T.

¹¹ þere om. R.

¹² the see T.

euermore, goyng into Fraunce, al þingeꝝ & wederes fallyn to me ioyful & likyng & gladsome, & as y wolde haue hym¹; but alwey turnyng into Engelond ward, al þinges fallen vnprofitable & harmful?" ¶ Neuer þe latter, he, scapyng alle þe perilles of þe see, as 4 God wolde, come² by nyght to þe tour of London. & þe same 3ere þe King held him³ Cristemas att⁴ Menres, and sent word to þe Scottes by his messagers, þat he was redy, and wolde fiȝte wiþ him; but þe Scottis wolde not abyde þat, bot fled ouere þe Scottish see, 8 & hid hem as wel as þey myȝte.

¶ And in⁵ þe xvij. 3ere of his regne, aboute þe feste of Conuersion of seint Paule, King Edward, wan he had be in Scotland, & þe Scottis were fledde, he come aȝen into Engelond, & a litel afore 12 Lente was þe turnement at Dunstable, to þe wiche turnement comen al þe ȝong bachelrye & chyualrye of Engelond, with meny erles & oþer lordes; at þe wiche turnement þe King himself was þere⁶ present. ¶ And þe nexte 3ere folwyng, ⁷in þe xvij. 3ere of his 16 regne, at his parlement holden at Westminster in þe xv.⁸ of Pasche, Kyng Edwarde þe þrid made Edward, his ferst bygeten sone, Prince of Walys.⁹ ¶ And in þe xix 3ere of his regne, anon after in Janyuer, before¹⁰ Lente, þe same King Edward lete make ful¹¹ noble Iusticeȝ, 20 and grete festis, in þe place of his berþe, at¹² Wyndessore, þat þere weren neuere non suche seyn þere¹³ afore.¹⁴ at whiche festis and rialte were ij. Kingeȝ, .ij. queneȝ, þe Prince of Walys, þe Duk of Cornewaile, x erlis; .ix. Cuntesse, barouns,¹⁵ & many burgeys, þe 24 wiche myȝt nouȝt liztly be noumbred; & of diuers landeȝ be-ȝonde¹⁶ þe see, were many strangers. and at þe¹⁷ same tyme when þe¹⁸ Iustes were don, King Edward made a grete soper, in þe wiche he¹⁹ ordeyned feest, and bygan þe²⁰ Rounde Table, & ordeyned & 28 stefastyd þe day of þe forsaide Rounde Table to be holde þer at Wyndissore in²¹ Whitesen-wike euermore after erly.

¶ In²² þis tyme, Engliſshe men so muche haunted and cleuyd to þe wodnes and²³ foley of þe strangers, þat fro þe tyme of þe 32 comyng of þe Henauderns, xvij. 3ere passid, þey ordeyned and chaungyd ham euery 3ere diuers schappis of²⁴ disgynges of cloþing, of long large and wyde cloþis, destitu and desert fram al old honeste

¹ hem T. ² and come TR. ³ his R. ⁴ at þe T. ⁵ in om. T.
⁶ þere om. R. ⁷ leaf 176, back. ⁸ xv^e day T. xv day R. ⁹ Wawys C.
¹⁰ in R. ¹¹ ful om. TR. ¹² at TR. and C. ¹³ þere om. T.
¹⁴ seen afor þat R. ¹⁵ barouns om. T. ¹⁶ beȝonde þe see T. þe see om. C.
¹⁷ þat T. ¹⁸ þe R. ¹⁹ whiche he R. he om. C. ²⁰ his TR.
²¹ in þe R. ²² And in TR. ²³ of T. ²⁴ and R.

and good vsage; & anoþer tyme schorte clopis & stret-wasted, daggd & ket, & on euery side¹ desslatered & boned, wip sleues & tapets of sircotys, & hodez ouere longe & large, & ouermuche hang-
4 ynde, þat if y soþ schal say, þey were more liche to turmentours & deuels in hire cloping & schewyng & oþer arraye þen comen.²

¶ And þe wemmen more myseli zet pasted³ þe men⁴ in array, and cureslicher; for þey were so strete cloped þat þey lete hange fox
8 tailles sawyd beneþe *with*-inforþ hire clopis, forto hele and heyde hire ars; þe whiche disgysengez & pride perauenture afterward brouzte forþe & encausid many mys-happis & mischeuys⁵ in þe reame of Engelond.

12 ¶ The xx zere of King Edward he wente ouere⁶ into Brytaigne & Gascoigne: in was companye wente þe Erl of Warwyk, þe Erl of Suthfok, þe Erl of Honntyngdone & þe Erl of Arundel, and meny oþer lordes, & commune peple in a gret multitude,⁷ *with* a
16 grete navey of ij. C.⁸ & xl. shippis, anon after mydsomer, forto avenge him of meny wrongez & harmes⁹ to hym done be Philip of Valeys, King of Fraunce, azens þe treues byfore-hand¹⁰ grauntyd, þe whiche trewes he fasly & ownetreuly, by cawelaciones, loste and
20 disqwatt.

**Hov King Edward sayled into Normandye, & arryued at Hogges wip a gret oste; & of þe batayle of Selus, and of¹¹ þe bygynnyg of þe seege of Calys, & also of þe
24 batayll of Duresme. Cap^o. CC^{mo} xxvij^{mo}.¹²**

IN þe xxj. zere of his regne, King Edward, þoruþ counsel of al þe grete lordez of þis¹³ reame, clepid & gadered togedre in his parlement at Westminster before Estern, ordeyned him
28 forto¹⁴ passe ouer þe se azen, for to discesce and destrouble þe rebellis of Fraunce. and when his navey was come togedre & made redy, he went *with* an huge oste, þe xij. day of Juyll, & sayled into Normandye, & arryued at Hoggez.¹⁵ & whan he had
32 restid him þere vj. daies, for bycause of trauelyng of the see, & forto haue out al his men wip al hire nessessaryes, out of hire shippes, he wente toward Cadomon,¹⁶ brengyng, wastyng, & destroyenge al þe tounes¹⁷ as he went by þe way. ¶ And þe xxvj day

¹ side TR. ² þen comen *om.* T. ³ leaf 177.

⁴ þe men *om.* T. ⁵ meny mischiefs and myshappez R. ⁶ ouere *om.* R.

⁷ multitudo C. ⁸ *om.* R. ⁹ meny harmez & wronges R.

¹⁰ biforhand R. byfore had C. ¹¹ of *om.* T.

¹² ccxxvij R. xxvij *om.* T. ¹³ his R. ¹⁴ to T.

¹⁵ and arryued at hoggez *om.* TR. ¹⁶ Rone T. Paris R. ¹⁷ leaf 177, back.

of Juyll, at þe brigge of Cadomy, manly & orpudly ystrengþed and defended wiþ Normannes, he had þere a stronge batayll, & a¹ longe-duryng, þoruþ which² grete³ multitud of people was slayn. ¶ And þere were take prisoners, þe Erl of Ewe, þe Lord 4 of Tankerwyle, & an C. oþer kingez⁴ and men of armes, & vj C. foote men ynombred; and þe toun & þe subbarbus vnto þe bare wallys of al þing þat myzte be bore & caryed out, was robbid and despoyled. ¶ Afirward þe King, passing forþe by þe cuntre 8 aboute þe brede of xx. mile, he⁵ wastyd alle manere þing þat he founde. Whan Philip of Valeys perseuyd⁶ al þis, al-pouþ he were faste by with a stronge oste, he wolde nouzt come no ner, but brek al þe briggys bezonde þe water of Seyn, fro Roon vnto Paris, 12 & him self fledde vnto⁷ þe same Citee of Paris⁸ wiþ al þe haste þat he myzte. ¶ fforsothe, þe noble King Edward, when he come to Paris brigge, and founde hit broken, wiþinne ij. dayes he lete make hit aþen; & in þe morwe after þe assumplicioun of oure 16 Lady, King Edward passed ouere þe water of Seyen, goyng toward Cryesce, & destroyed by þe way tounes wiþ þe⁹ peple duelling perinne.¹⁰ & in þe feste of sent Bartolomev, he passid ouere þe water of Comme owne hurte¹¹ wiþ al his oste þer as neuer afore 20 honde was eny manere wey in¹² passage werto a M¹³ men were slayn of hem þat letted hire passage ouer.

[*The Battle of Crecy.*]

¶ þerfore, þe¹ xxvj. day of auguste, King Edward in a felde faste by Creyscy, hauyng iij.¹⁴ bataillis of englisshe men, countryd 24 and mette wiþ Philip of Valeys, hauyng¹⁵ wiþ him iiij. batailles, of þe wiche þe leste passid gretely þe nombre of þe Englisshe peple. & whan þes ij. ostes metten togedir, þer fil oppon him¹⁶ þe King of Beme, þe Duke of Loroyne and erles also of Flaundes, Dalasoun, 28 Bloys, Harecourt, Aumerle, and Nyvers, & meny oþer erlis, barouns,¹⁷ lordes, Kingez,¹⁸ & men of armes, þe noubre of a M¹ V. C. xlij.,¹⁹ wiþout foet men & oþer men in²⁰ armevre, þat were noþing rekened. ¶ And for al þis, þe same vnghlorious Philip wiþdrowe him, wiþ þe 32 residue of al his peple; wherfore it was seyð in *commune* among

¹ a om. T. ² whiche a T. with C. ³ þoruþ whiche a greet R.

⁴ knyghtis T. knztis R. ⁵ and R. ⁶ herde R.

⁷ to R. ⁸ & him self fledde vnto þe same Cite of Paris om. T.

⁹ þe om. R. ¹⁰ þerine om. T. ¹¹ owne hurte om. T. ¹² ne TR.

¹³ Where ij M¹ R. ¹⁴ þe iij^e T. ¹⁵ leaf 178. ¹⁶ hem TR.

¹⁷ barons and T. ¹⁸ knyghtis T. oþer lordis erlis Barons knyztis R.

¹⁹ M¹VC xij T. M¹ vij^c xlij R. ²⁰ y TR.

his owne peple 'Nostre beall Retret,' that is for to sey, 'Our faire wipdrawew þym.' þan Kyng Edward & our Englyssh men, þanking God for suche a victorye, after hire grete labour, takyng to
 4 hem al þyng nedeful for her sustenaunce & sauynge of hire lyf ferdred of hire enemys, rested hem þere. ¶ And ful erly in¹ þe morwe, after þe Frensshe men wip an houghe passyng oste come azen for to zeue batayll & fize wip þe Englysshe men, wip whom
 8 metten & countreden þe Erles of Warwyk, Norhampton & Norfolk, wip hire companye & slowen ij. M^{1,2} & token meny prisoners of þe gentils of ham; and þe remenaunt of þe same oste fled iij. mile þens.

[*The Siege of Calais, and the Invasion of England by the Scots.*]

12 ¶ And þe third day after the bataill, þe kyng wente to Caleys warde, destroyng al þe cuntre as he rode; whider,³ whan þat⁴ he was comen,⁵ þat is forto seyn, þe .iij. day of Septembre, he bygan to besege þe toun wip þe castell, and continued his sege fro þe
 16 forseyd iij. day of Septembre vnto þe iij. day of Auguste þe next zere after. & in⁶ þe same zere, duryng þe sege of Caleys, þe King of Scotlond,⁷ with a ful grete multitude of Scottis, come into Engeland, to Nevyles crosse, about seint Lukes day þe euangglis, to
 20 hopynge & trustyng to haue found al the land destitut & voyde of peple, forasmuche as þe Kyng of Engeland was bezend þe see, saue only prestes & men of holy chirche, & women & childrin, & ploghmen, & such oper laborers. ¶ And þer þey robbeden, &
 24 deden mych prive⁸ sorow; but zet fond þey ynowe þat ham wipstode, by þe grace of God. And so a day of batayll was assigned bytwene hem; & certeyne lordes & men of holy cherche þat were in þat cuntre, wip opere comune peple, fast by þe Citee
 28 of Duresme; at whiche day, þoruþ þe grace and þe helpe of God⁹ þe Scottis¹⁰ were ouercomen, & zet were þey threfold so meny of hem¹¹ as of¹² Englysshe men¹³; and þere was slayn al þe chialrye and knyþthod of þe reaume of Scotland. ¶ And þer were take,
 32 as þey wolden haue fled, Dauid, King of Scotlond, þe Erl of Mentyf, sere William Douglas, & many oper grete men. & after þat, oure Englysshe men, when þey had restyd ham a fewe dayes, & had ordeyned kepers of þe¹⁴ Northcuntre, þey comen to London,

¹ on T. ² ij M¹ men T. ³ whider om. TR. ⁴ þat om. R.

⁵ was come þider R. ⁶ leaf 178, back. ⁷ Setolond C. ⁸ oper T.

⁹ help & grace of God R. ¹⁰ Cottis C. ¹¹ of hem om. R. ¹² þe R.

¹³ peple TR. ¹⁴ þe land of the T.

and brouȝt with ham þe King of Scotlond, & þes opere lordez þat were taken prisoners, vnto¹ þe tour² of London, wip al þe haste þat þey myȝte; & þer þey lefte ham in saue kepyng, vnto þe Kingez comynge,³ and went⁴ home aȝen into hire owne cuntre. & after-ward was þe Kingez raunsome of Scotlond taxid vnto an C. M^t mark⁵ of seluere, to be payed in x ȝer, þat ys forto sayne, euery ȝere x þousand mark.

Of the conqueste and ⁶wynnge of Caleys, and of⁷ grete ⁸pestelence & raynes þat fillen sone aftir; and of þe tresoun ordeyned aȝens Caleys. Capitulo⁸ CC^{mo}. xxvii^o.⁹

IN þe xxij ȝere of King Edwardys regne, he wente ouere in þe wynter time, & lay al þe wynter in¹⁰ þe seege of Caleys. ¹¹þe ¹²whiche year, while þe sege lasted, Philip of Valeys,¹¹ Kyng of Fraunce, cast & purposed, trecherously & wip fraude, to put away þe sege,¹² & come þe xxvij day of Iuyll in þe same ȝere wip a grete oste & a strong poer, & neighred vnto þe sege of Caleys. ¶ þe ¹⁶wiche Philip, þe last day of Iuyll, sent to King Edward word þat¹³ he wold ȝeue him playn bataill þe .iiij. day next after þat, about euesong tyme, if þat he durst come fro þe sege & abyde hit. And whan Kynge Edward herd þat, wipout eny long taryng or grete ²⁰avisement, he accepted gladly þe day & hour of bataill þat Philip had assigned. And whan the Kyng of Fraunce herd þat, wipout eny long taryng or grete auyusement, þe next nyght after he set hys tentys a fyre, and vanysshed & went away þens cowardly. ¶ Than ²⁴þey þat were in¹⁴ þe toun and in þe castell bysegged, seyng al þis, how þat þei hade non oper helpe ne socour of þe Kinge of Fraunce ne of his men, & also þat her vitailles wipin hym¹⁵ were spended and wasted, & for defaute of vitailles & of¹⁶ refresshyng þey eten ²⁸hors, houndes, cattes & mys, for to kepe her troupe as long as þey myȝte. ¶ And whan they sawe, & was found amongez hem at þe last þat þey had no þing amonge hem¹⁷ forto ete ne lyve by, ne no socour ne rescuyng of þe Frensshemen; on þe toper¹⁸ syde ³²

¹ to T. ² tone C. towr TR. ³ comyng to London T.

⁴ wente TR. when C. ⁵ an C M^t e CR. ⁶ leaf 179. ⁷ of þis R.

⁸ Capitulo om. T. ⁹ xxvii^o om. T. cexix R. ¹⁰ at T.

¹¹⁻¹² þe whiche yeer while þe sege lasted Philip of Valeys T. the whiche yeer while the Sege lasted Philip of Valeis R. om. C.

¹² þe sege TR. þe om. C. ¹³ sent word to King Edward þat R.

¹⁴ withine T. ¹⁵ hem T. ¹⁶ of om. T. ¹⁷ amonge hem om. R.

¹⁸ on þat oper TR.

þey weste wel þat ¹þey must deie² for defaute, eyþer³ zelde⁴ vp þe
 toun; and anon wenten & tokin⁵ done þe banerys &⁶ þe armes of
 Fraunce on euery side þat were hanged out, & wenten on þe walles
 4 of þe toun, and in oþer diuers placys, as naked as þey were bore,
 saf hire chirtys and⁷ brechys, & heldyn hire swerdus naked, & þe
 poynt downward, in hire handez, & puttyn ropys & halterys
 abowte hire⁸ neckys, and zolden vp þe keyes of þe toun and of þe
 8 Castell to Kyng Edward, wiþ grete fere and drede of hert. ¶ And
 when the King sav þis, as a mercyable king and lord, resceyued
 hym al to his grace; & a feue of þe grettste persones of stat and
 of gouernaunce of þe toun he sent into Engeland, þer for to abyde
 12 hire raunsome & þe kinges grace; & al þe *communialte* of þe toun
 þe king lete go wher þey wolde in pees, & wiþoute ony harme, &
 lete ham bere *with* ham al hire þingez þat þey myzte bere & cary
 away,⁹ keping þe toun and the Castell to hymself. ¶ þan, þoruþ
 16 *mediacioun* of cardenalles þat were sent fro þe pope, trewes was take
 þer bituene Fraunce & Engeland for ix moneþes þan next folwyng;
 & aboute mychelmasse King Edwarde come azen vnto Engeland
 wiþ a glorious victorye.

[*The Plague of 1348.*]

¶ And in þe xxiiij. zere of his regne, in þe Este parteys of þe
 worlde þer aros & bygan a pestilence, & deþ of Sarasinez and
 Payngneins, þat so grete a deþ was neuer herde of afore,¹⁰ and þat
 wasted away so þe peple þat vnneþes þe x^{the} persone was left
 24 a¹¹-lyue. & in þe same zere, aboute þe Sowthcuntreys and also in¹²
 þe west cuntres, þere fell so much¹³ reyne and so grete waters þat,
 from *Cristemasse* vnto¹⁴ *Midsomer*, þer was vnneþes day ne nyght
 but þat it rayned *sumwhat*; þoruþ whiche watres, þe pestilence was
 28 sone *fectid*¹⁵ & so habundant in all cuntres, & namely aboute þe
 court of Rome & oþer places & sore¹⁶ costes,¹⁷ þat vnneþes þere were
 left alyve¹⁸ folk to bery ham þat were ded, honestly, but maden
 grete diches and puttes þat were wonder brood and depe, & þerin
 32 beried, & made a renge of þe¹⁹ dede bodyes, & anoþer renge of erþe
 aboute ham; & þus were þey buried, & non oþer wise, but yf it were
 þe fewer þat were grete men of state.

¹ leaf 179, back.² eythir die T.³ or ellis T.⁴ þey moste ouþer die for defaute or ellis yelde R. ⁵ took a T.⁶ of TR.⁷ and her TR.⁸ þeir R.⁹ away om. T.¹⁰ bifore R.¹¹ on T.¹² in om. R.¹³ leaf 180.¹⁴ to T.¹⁵ was so effect T. was so effected R.¹⁶ sondry T.¹⁷ & sore costes om. R.¹⁸ on lyue T.¹⁹ þe om. R.

¶ And after al þis, in þe xxiiij zere of his regne, hit was done King Edward to wite and vnderstonde of a tresoun þat was bygun at Caleys, and ordeyned for to selle þat¹ toun for a grete somme of Florens vnto King Philip of Fraunce, þoruþ þe falsnes & þe² 4 ordinance of a knyzt þat me called Sir Geffrey of Charney, þat was wonder priuey wip þe King of Fraunce. ¶ And whan þe King herd þis, he toke wip hym þe noblys & þe gentils, & opere worþy & orped men of armes, þat were þere present wip hym for þe 8 solempnite of þat¹ hey³ feest, & wel & wisely, in al þe haste þat he myzt, & as priuely as he myzt, he wente hym⁴ ouere see,⁵ and þat same tyme þe King held hys Cristemas at Haueryng. ¶ And in þe morwe after⁶ Newers day, þe King was in þe Castell of 12 Caleys wip his men of armes, þat none of⁷ þe aliens wist þerof. And thilk⁸ fals conspiratour & traytour, Geffrey of Charney, seth⁹ he myzte not opynly haue his purpos of þe castell, pryuely & stelyngly he comen yn, & held þe toun wip a grete oste. ¹⁰ And 16 when he wip his men were comen yn, he payed þe forsaide somme of florens, as couenaunt was bituene him, to a Geneweys in þe toun þat was keper of þe castell, & consentyng to þe same Gefferey in al þis¹¹ falsnesse & trecherye, & bonde þe Englisshe mynesters and 20 seruauntz þat were in þe castel, þat þey myzt nouzt helpe hamself, ne lete ham of hire purpos. & þan, wenyng þat þey had be siker ynov, þey spaken hire wickednesse & falones oppynly & an hey, þat al men myzt here. ¶ And nov shul ze here hov þey were 24 desceyued; for þey comme in by a preuy posterne ouer a litel brigge was drawyn opp¹² of tre; & when þey were come yn sotelly and preuely, þe brigge was dravyn op and kepte, þat non of ham þat were come yn myzte go out, ne no moo come yn to hym. ¶ And 28 anon our Englisshe men wente oute at priuy holes and wendawes, & ouere þe wallys of þe toun & of þe castel, & wenten & fouzten manly wip þe Frenche men þat were wipoute, & had the better of ham, þe wiche when þey were ocupied by ham self on¹³ hire side. Þe King, 32 þat was wipin þe toun, hauyng wip him¹⁴ scharstly but xxx. men of armes, dreve out his sward, & with a lowed voys cried on hey: "*A sent Edward! a sent Gorge!*" And when folk herde þat, þey come rennyng to him, and zeauen þer¹⁵ to hire enemys so stronge 36

¹ þe TR. ² þe om. R. ³ hey om. T. ⁴ hym om. R. ⁵ þe see R.

⁶ next T. ⁷ of alle T. ⁸ And whane þat R. ⁹ saw þat R.

¹⁰ leaf 180, back. ¹¹ þis om. T. his R. ¹² was drawyn opp om. TR.

¹³ on of C. on TR. ¹⁴ wip him om. R. ¹⁵ þer om. T.

assaute þat þer were mo þen ij. C. men of armes, and meny oper, slayn, & meny fledden; & so, by þe grace of God, þe victorye fel to þe Englysshe men. ¶ þan þe King toke with him þis Gefferey, þat 4 was fynder of þis trecherye, and also many oper Frenshe prisoners, & withyn a while ¹after wente ²agen into Engeland.

[The Plague, or Black Death.]

And in þis same 3ere, and in þe 3ere afore, & also in þe 3ere aftir, was so grete a pestilences of men fro þe Est into þe west, & namely 8 þoru3 bocches, þat he þat siked þis day, deid on þe iij. day after. ¶ To þe wiche men þat so deiden in þis pestilens, þat haddyn but litel respyte of lyggyng, þe pope Clement, of his goodnes & grace, 3af ham ful remissioun & foryeuyng of all hire synnes þat þey 12 were schryven of. & þis pestilence lasted in London fro Michelmasse into ³Auguste next folowyng almoste an hool 3ere. & in þes dayes was deþ wipoute sorwe, weddyng wipoute frendship, wilfull penaunce, and derþe wipout scarste, and fleyng wipoute refute or ⁴ 16 socour; ¶ ffor meny fledden fro place to place by-cause of þe pestilens; but þey wære ⁵enfecte, & myzt not ascape þe deþe, after þe prophete Isaye ⁶ seith: "ho ⁷ þat fleep fro þe face of drede, he shal fall into þe diche; ⁸ & he þat wyndeþ hymself out of þe diche, ⁸ 20 he shal be holde and teyd wip a grenne," but whan þis pestilens was cesid & endid, as God wolde, vnneþes þe x. parte of þe peple was left alyve, ⁹ and in þe same 3ere bygan a wonder þing þat al þat euere wære born after þat pestilens hadden ij. chekteth in her heed lasse 24 þan þey had afore.

How King Edward had a grete bataylle of þe Spaynardes in þe see faste by Wynchel-see, & of meny opere þinge3.
Capitulo CC.^{mo} xxix.^o ¹⁰

28 And in þe xxv. 3ere of his regne, about sent Johnnes tyde in heruest, in þe see faste by Wynchelse, King Edward had a grete batayll wip men of Spayne, wher þat ¹¹hire shippes & navee ley cheyned togider, þat eipere they muste fyt or drenche. ¶ And so, 32 whan al our worþi men of armes on þe see coostes fast by Wynchel-see & Romeny were gadred, ¹² & ouer navee & shippes al redy to þe werre, þe Englyssh men metten manly & stify with hire enemys,

¹ leaf 181. ² wente R. om. C. ³ vnto R. ⁴ of T.

⁵ were om. R. ⁶ Isaye þat T. ⁷ who R.

⁸⁻⁸ om. R. ⁹ on lyue T. ¹⁰ xxix om. T. ccxxx R.

¹¹ leaf 181, back. ¹² gatherid togidere T. gadred to gedir R.

comyng fersly azens ham, & when þe Spaynesshe vessellis & nauey were closid yn al about, *per* men myzte se a stronge bataile vn boþe sides, and long duryng; in þe whiche Batayle *per* ner¹ but fewe þat fauzten but þat² þey were sputesly herte, & fowle. and after 4 þe batayle þer were xxiiij shippes of here; ytaken; & so þe³ Engligsshe men had þe better.

[*The new Coinage. The dear Summer. A Drought.*]

¶ And in þe next 3ere after⁴ folwyng, of his regne xxvj^{ti}, þe King, þoru; his councele, lete ordeyne & make his neve money, þat 8 ys forto sey, þe peny, þe grote of valev of iiij. pens, & þe half⁵ grote þe⁶ valev of ij. d.; but hit was of lesse wyzth þan þe old sterlyng was, by v. s. in þe pound. ¶ And in þe xxvij. 3ere of his regne was þe⁷ grete derþe of vitailles, þe wiche was clepid þe dere 12 somer. ¶ And in þe xxviij. 3ere of his regne in þe parlement holdyn at Westminster after Ester, Sere Henry, Erl of Lancastre, was made Duk of Lancastre. and in þis⁸ same 3ere was so grete a drowthe þat, fro þe moneþ of Marche unto þe moneþ of Iuyll, þer 16 fel no rayne into⁹ þe erþe; wherfore al¹⁰ fruttys, sedis and erbis, for þe more¹¹ part was lost; in defaute wherof *per* come so grete desise of men and bestes, & derþe of vetailles in Engelond, so þat þis lande, þat euer byfore was plentues, had nede þat tyme to seche 20 his vytaylis and refreschyng of oþer out yles and cuntres.

[*Negotiations about Guienne dropt.*]

¶¹² And in þe xxix 3ere of King Edward, hit was acorded, graunted and swore, bytwene þe King of Fraunce & þe King of Engelond, þat he shulde haue azen al his landez and lordshipps þat 24 longe to þe Duche of Guyne of old tyme, þe wiche had bene with-drawe & wrongfully occuped by diuers Kynges of Fraunce byforhand, to haue & to hold to Kyng Edward & to his eyrs & successours for euermore, frely, pesible, & in good quyete, vppon þis 28 covenant, þat þe Kyng of England shold leue of,¹³ & relese all¹⁴ right & clayme þat he had & claymed of þe kingdome of Fraunce, & of þe title þat he toke þerof. Oppon wiche speche & couenauntes, it was sent to þe court of Rome on boþe sydes of þe Kynges,¹⁵ þat 32 þe forsaid couenant shold be enbulled. but God ordeyned betere for þe Knygez worship of Engelond; for, what þoru; fraude &

¹ ne were but T. ² þat om. T. ³ oure T.

⁴ after om. T. folowyng R. ⁵ and half a TR. ⁶ of TR.

⁷ þe om. R. ⁸ þe TR. ⁹ on TR. ¹⁰ alle þe R. ¹¹ moste R.

¹² leaf 182. ¹³ of om. R. ¹⁴ al þe R. ¹⁵ of þe kynges om. T.

deceyte of þe Frensshmen, & what poruz lettyng of þe pope & of þe court of Rome, þe forsaid couenauntes were to-sqwat & left of.

[*Transfer of the Staple of Wool to England.*]

¶ And in þe same 3ere þe Kyng reuoked, by his wys & descrete
4 counceyll, þe staple of wolles out of Flaundes into Engelond, wip
al þe libertees, fraunchises & free customes þat longen þerto, &
ordeyned hit in Engelond in diuers places, þat ys forto¹ seyn, at
Westminster, Caunterbery, Chichestre, Bristowe, Lincoln, & Hull,
8 wip al þe forsaid þynge3 þat longen þerto. and þat þis þing sholde
be þus done,² þe Kyng swore hym self þerto, & prins Edward his
sone, wip oþer meny grete witnessse þat were þere than³ present.

[*The French attempt on Guienne frustrated.*]

And in þe .xxx. 3ere of his regne, anon after Wytsonday, in þe
12 parlement ordeyned at Westminster, hit was told and⁴ certyfyed
to⁵ þe King, þat Philip þat held þe kingdome of Fraunce was dede,
and þat John his sone was crouned King, & þat þis John had 3oue
Karoll his sone þe Duchie of Guyone. ¶ Of þe⁶ wiche þing, King
16 Edward, whan he herd þerof, he⁷ had grete indignacioun vnto hym,
& was wonder wroþ, & strongly meved: and þer, afor⁸ al þe worþy
lordes þat þere were assembled at þat parlement, he clept⁹ Edward
his son to hym, to wiche¹⁰ þe Duchye of Guyene by right heritage
20 shold longe to, and 3af hit hym þer, byddyng and strengþing him
þat he shulde ordeyne him to defende and avenge him oppon his
enemys, & saue & mayntene hys ryzt. ¶ And afterward, King
Edward him self, and his eldiste¹¹ sone Edward,¹² wenten to diuerce
24 place3 and senten in Engelond a pilgrimage, forto haue þe more
grace and help of God and of his sent3. and þe secunde kalend-
of Iuyll, when al þing was redy to þat viage and batayle3, and al¹³
his retennev & power assembled, and hire navey also redy, he toke
28 wip him þe Erl of Warwyk, þe Erl of Suthfolk, þe¹⁴ Erl of Salys-
bery, & þe Erl of Oxenford, and a M^t of¹⁵ men of armes, and as
many archerys, in þe Natiuite of our Lady, and at Plymmough
token hire shippes, and bygan to sayle. ¶ And when¹⁶ he come
32 and was arryued in Guyene, he¹⁷ was þer worshipfly take¹⁸ and¹⁹

¹ to R. ² þo R. ³ were þanne þere R. ⁴ leaf 182, back.

⁵ to om. T. ⁶ þe om. R. ⁷ he om. R. ⁸ þerfore R.

⁹ also and cleped R. ¹⁰ whom TR. ¹¹ eldiste om. R.

¹² Prince Edward T. ¹³ al om. T. ¹⁴ þe erle TR. þe om. C.

¹⁵ of om. TR. ¹⁶ when om. T. ¹⁷ and he T. ¹⁸ take om. R. ¹⁹ and om. C.

resceyued¹ of þe moste noble men and lordez of þat cuntre. And anon after, King Edward toke wip him his ij. sones, þat ys forto seye,² Sir Lyonell, Erl of Vltoun, and Sere Iohn his broþer, Erl of Rychemonde, and Sere Henry, Duke of Lancastre, wip meny Erles⁴ and lordes and men of armes, and too³ M^t archers, and sayled into⁴ Fraunce, and reste him awhile at Caleys. ¶ and afterward, þe King went wip his folk aforsaide, and wip opere sowdiours of bezende þe see þat þere aboden þe Kinges comynge, þe secunde day⁸ of Nouembre, & toke his iorneye toward King Iohn of Fraunce, þere as he trowed to⁵ haue y⁶found him faste by þe toun of Odomarum, as his letters and couenauntz made mencion þat he wolde abyde him þere wip his oste. ¶ And whan King Ion of¹² Fraunce herde of þe Kyngeþ comeing of Engelond, he wente away wip his men & his cariage, cowardly & schamfully fleyng, wastyng al vitaillez ouer⁷ al, þat⁸ Englysshe men shold nauzt haue therof. ¶ And when King Edward herde þat he fled, he pursued him wip¹⁶ al his mayne til⁹ Hedoun; and þen he, by-holdyng þe wantyng and þe scarsites of vitaillez, and also the cowardice of the King of Fraunce, he turned aþen, wastyng al þe cuntre.

[*The Scots attack Berwick.*]

¶ And while al þese þingeþ were a¹⁰doynge, þe scottes prevyly and²⁰ by nyzt token þe toun of Berwyk, sleyng ham þat wipstode ham, and no man ellis; but,—blessid by god!—þe castel neuer-þe-latter was sauýd and kepte be Englysshe men þat were þerin. þen þe Kinge perceuyng al þis, turned aþen into Engelond as worþ as he²⁴ myzte.¹¹ ¶ Wherfore in a parlement at Westminster was graunted to þe King of euery sake of¹² wolle .l. s. duryng þe terme of vj. zere þat he myzt þe myztlyker fyght and deffende þe reaume aþens þe Scottis and opere mys-doers: and so, when al þinges were redy,²⁸ þe King hastyd hym to þe seege warde.

Hov King Edward was crowned King of Scotland, and hov Prins Edward toke þe King of Fraunce,¹³ & of þe bataylle of Peyters.¹³ Capitulo CC^{mo} Tricesimo.¹⁴

¹ and rescuyd T. ² þat ys forto seye om. TR. ³ leaf 183.

⁴ toward TR. ⁵ forto T. ⁶ y om. TR.

⁷ ouerall R. ⁸ oper al C. ⁸ þat þe T. þe R. ⁹ to T. ¹⁰ in T.

¹¹ myghte be R. ¹² of om. T. ¹³⁻¹³ om. T.

¹⁴ Tricesimo om. T. cexxi R.

¹ And in þe xxxj. ȝere of his regne, þe xiiij day of Ianuere, þe King beyng in þe castel of Beywyk wip a fewe men, but² havyng þer fastby a³ gret oost, þe toun was ȝold to him wipout⁴ eny⁴ manere fens or⁵ difficulte. þan þe King of Scotlond, þat ys forto sey, Sire Iohn Bayllol, considering how þat God dede meny merueylles þingeȝ & gracious⁶ for King Edward at his owene will fro day to day, he toke⁷ & ȝaf op⁸ þe reaume of Scotland, & þe 8 crowne of Scotland,⁹ att Rokesburgh,¹⁰ in-to þe Kingeȝ handes¹¹ of Engelond, vnder his patent lettres þer of y¹²made. ¶ And anon after King Edward, in presence of al þe prelates & oþer worþi men & lordez þat þere were, lete crowne hym King þer-of¹³ þe reaume 12 of¹⁴ Scotland. and whan al þingeȝ were done & ordeyned in thilk cuntres at his luste, he turned aȝen into Engelond wip a¹⁵ houghe worschip.

¶ And while þat¹⁶ þis viage was adoyng in Scotland, Sir 16 Edward, Prins of Walys, as a man enspired of God, was in Guyne, in þe Citee of Burdeux, tretimg & spekyng of þe chalangyng, &¹⁷ of the Kingeȝ right of Engelond, þat he had to þe reaume of Fraunce; and þat he wold avenged be¹⁸ wip stronge hond. & aȝ þe prelates, 20 peris, & myȝty men of þe cuntre, consentid wele to hym. ¶ þan Sere Edward, the Pryns, wip a grete oste y¹⁹gaderid to hym, þe vj. day of Iuyll went fro Burdeux, goyng & trauaylyng by meny diuers cuntres. And he toke meny²⁰ prisoners, mo þan vj^M men of 24 armes, by the²¹ cuntre as he iourneyed,²¹ & toke þe toun of Remorantyn in Saloigne, & beseged þe castell vj. dayes. and at þe vj. dayes ende þey ȝolden þe castell vnto hym; and²² þere were taken þe Lord of Croñ, and Sere^{xx} Bursigand, and meny oþere knyghtes, 28 and men of armes mo þan iiij.

[The Battle of Poitiers.]

And fro þens by Tureyne & Petey,²³ faste by Chaneney, his noble men þat were with him hadden a strong bataill wip Frenssh men, and a²⁴ C. of hire²⁵ men²⁶ of armes were slayn. and þe Erle

¹ leaf 183, back.

² but om. T.

³ bi a T.

⁴ any defence or any T.

⁵ fens or om. T.

⁶ & gracious om. R.

⁷ toke up T.

⁸ and ȝaf vp om. T.

⁹ of Scotland om. T.

¹⁰ Rokesburgh and bi Baillol þe kyng of Scotland y yonen frely T.

¹¹ þe hondis of the kyng T.

¹² y om. T.

¹³ him þere king off R.

¹⁴ þe reaume of om. R.

¹⁵ An TR.

¹⁶ þat om. T.

¹⁷ & om. TR.

¹⁸ wolde be avengid T.

¹⁹ y om. R.

²⁰ meny om.

²¹⁻²¹ cuntre and he ordeynyd T.

²² leaf 184.

²³ MS. indistinct.

²⁴ an R.

²⁵ of hire om. R.

²⁶ And an C men T.

of Damice & þe stiward of Fraunce weren take, wiþ a¹ C. men of armes. In þe wiche 3eer, þe xix day of Septembre, fast by Peyters,— þe same prins, with a M^t and ix^c men of armes and archers, ordeyned a bataill to Kyng Iohn of Fraunce, comyng to þe prins-⁴ ward wiþ vij. M^t cosyn men of armes, and oþer miche peple in a houghe² passyng noumbre³; of⁴ þe whiche þer was yslayne⁵ þe Duke of Burboun and þe Duke of Athenez, & meny oþere noble men, & of þe pris men of armes a M^t, & of oþere (after þe trewe account & 8 rekenyng) viij. C.; and þe King of Fraunce was þer take, and Sere Philip his 3onger sone, and meny dukes & noble men & worpy knyztys, and men of armes aboute .ij. M^t; and so⁶ þe victorie fill þere to þe Prins & to þe peple of Engelond, by þe grace of God. 12 ¶ And meny þat were take prisoners were set at her raunsoun, & oppon her troupe & kny3thoode were charged, and had leue to go; but þe Prins toke wiþ hym þe King of Fraunce, and Philip his sone, wiþ al þe reuerence þat he myzte, & wente a3en to Burdeux 16 with a glorious victorie. ¶ þe somme of þe⁷ men þat were take prisoners, & of þe man þat were slayn, þis day of⁸ bataill, was iiij. [M^t]CCCC. xl.⁹ And in þe xxxij. 3ere of Kyng Edward, þe .v. day of Maij, Prins Edward, wiþ King Iohn of Fraunce¹⁰ and Philip his 20 sone, and meny worpy¹¹ prisoners, arryved graciously in þe hauene of Plymmouth; & þe xxiiij. day of þe same moneþ, about iij. after none, þey comen to London by London brigge, & so wente forpe to þe Kynges paleys of¹² Westmynstre. ¶ and þere fill so grete pres & 24 multitude of peple abute ham, to byholde and se þat¹³ wonder and þat¹⁴ real¹⁵ sizth, that¹⁶ vnneþes fro Midday þey myzte come to Westmynster. And þe Kinges raunsoun of Fraunce was taxied & set to iij. Milions of Scutes,¹⁷ of whom¹⁸ ij. shuld¹⁹ be paid a 28 noble²⁰: & 3e shul vnderstonde þat a Milioun is a M^t. M^t. And after somme men, his raunsoun was set at iij. M^t²¹ floreyngs; & al is on in effecte.

And in²² þis same 3ere was made solempne iustes in Smeþefeld, 32 beyng þer present, þe King of Engelonde, þe King of Fraunce & þe King of Scotlond, & ²³meny worpi noble²³ lordes. ¶ The xxxiiij.

¹ an TR. ² in a houghe om. T. ³ the nombre T.

⁴ aforesaid of T. oft passinge þe noumbre R. ⁵ slayne TR. ⁶ so om. T.

⁷ þe om. TR. ⁸ in T. to R. ⁹ iiij. M^t iiij. C. and xlth T.

¹⁰ leaf 184, back. ¹¹ oþer TR. ¹² at T. ¹³ þat hit was T.

¹⁴ þat om. R. ¹⁵ for hit was a roiait T. ¹⁶ and þat T.

¹⁷ floreyngs R. ¹⁸ wher of R. ¹⁹ ij mylions schulde T.

²⁰ anoon T. a noble om. R. ²¹ iiij mylions of T. ²² in om. T.

²³—²³ noble and worthi T. meny oþer noble and worthi R.

3ere of his regne þe same King Edward at Wyndesore, as wel for¹
 loue of knyȝthood as for his owne worship, & at þe reuerence of þe
 King of Fraunce &² oþer lordez þat were þere at þat tyme, he held³
 4 a wonder rial⁴ and⁵ costlow feest⁶ of sent Gorge, passyng eny þat
 was hold euere afore.⁷ wherfor þe King of Fraunce, in scornynge,
 sayd þat he saw neuere ne herd such solempne festes ne ryalties
 holden ne done with taylles, wipoute⁸ paying⁹ of gold or siluer.

[*The Marriage of Duchess Blanche.*]

8 ¶ And in þe xxxiiij. 3ere of his regne, þe xiiij. kalend of Iuyll,
 Sere Iohn, Erle of Richemund, Kyng Edwardes sone of Engelond,
 weddid dame Blaunche, duk Herryes douȝter of Lancaster, cosyu
 to þe same Iohn, by dispensacioun of þe Pope. and in þe mene
 12 tyme were¹⁰ ordeyned iustes at London iij. dayes of¹¹ þe rogacions,¹²
 þat is forto sey, þe Maiere of London, wip his xxiiij^{ti} aldermen,
 aȝens al þat wold come. In whos name and stede þe King priuely
 wip his iij. sones, Edwarde, Leonell, Iohn & Edmund, & oþere xix.
 16 grete lordes, helden þe feld wip¹³ worshopp.

¶ And þis same 3ere (as it was tolde & seyde of ham þat sawe hit)
 þere come out blood of þe tounge of Thomas, sumtyme Erl of
 Lancaster, as ffresshe as þat day þat he was done to þe¹⁴ deþe. And
 20 in þat same 3ere King Edward chose his sepulture & his liggynge at
 Westminster, faste by þe shryne of Sent Edward.

[*Edward III goes again to France.*]

And anon after, þe xxvij. day of Octobre, he wente ouere see
 to¹⁵ Caleys, makyng protestacioun þat he wold neuere come aȝen
 24 into Engelond til¹⁶ he had fully endid þe werre bytuene Fraunce and
 him. ¶ And so, in þe xxxv. yere¹⁷ of his regne, in þe wynter tyme,
 King Edward was and¹⁸ trauayled in þe Ryne costes; and aboute
 Seynt Hillere tyde he departed his oste, and went to Burgoyne-
 28 warde; wip whom þan mette pesibely þe Duk of Burgoyne, byhot-
 yng to hym lxx. M^t Floreyns þat he shold spare his men¹⁹ & his
 peple. And þe King²⁰ graunted at his request, & dwelled þere vnto
 þe xvij. day of March, þe wiche day it come to King Edwardes ere
 32 þat straunge þennes on²¹ þe see vnder þe Erle of Sent Paule, þe xv

¹ for the T. ² and of T. ³ beheld C. he helde TR. ⁴ roiait feste T
⁵ and a T. ⁶ feest om. T. ⁷ bifore T. ⁸ oute eny R.
⁹ any paiying T. ¹⁰ leaf 185. ¹¹ aftir R. ¹² rogacion) Daiez R.
¹³ with om. T. ¹⁴ þe om. TR. ¹⁵ vnto T. ¹⁶ til that T.
¹⁷ yere of T. yere of R. yere om. C. ¹⁸ was and om. T.
¹⁹ lond T. ²⁰ king it R. ²¹ were on TR.

day of Marche, liggyng aweyte oppon þe tounes of Hastyngge, Rye, and oþer places & villages on þe see coostes, hadden¹ entred as enemyes into þe toun of Wynchelsea, & slown al þat euere withstode ham and wiþseyd her comyng; wherfore þe King was² gretly⁴ meved and wraithed. ¶ And he turned aȝen to Parys-ward,³ commaunded his ost to destroye & slee wiþ deynt & strengthe of swerd hem þat he had byfore hand y⁴sparid. and þe xij day of Aprill þe King come to Parys; & þere he departed his oost in ix diuerse⁸ bataylles, with iiij^c of knyȝtes newe dubbed, on þe to⁵ syde of hem.⁶ And Sere Herry, Duk of Lancastre, vnder pees & trewes wente to þe ȝates of þe Citee,⁷ profryng to hem þat⁸ wold abyde a batayl in þe feld, vnder suche a condicioun, þat yf þe King of¹² Englonde were ouercome (þere as God forbede hit!), þat þen he shold neuere chalange þe kingdome of Fraunce. ¶ and whan he had of hem but a short & an⁹ scornfull answer, he told þe King & his lordes what he had herd, & wat þey saide. and þan fortwiþ¹⁶ þe newe knyghtes, with meny oþere, makyng assaute to þe Citee,¹⁰ destroyeden hougly þe subarbes of þe Citee. And while al þese thinges were adoyng, þe Englissh men made hem aredy to be avengid vpon þe shame &¹¹ despit þat was done þat ȝeer at²⁰ Wynchelse, and ordeyneden a nave of iiij^{xx} shippes of mennes of London & of¹² oþer marchauntes, & xiiij M[†] of men of armes & archers, & wenten & destroyeden hem, & scymed þe see,¹³ & manly token, & helde þe Ile of Caux; wherfore þe Frenssh men, þat is for²⁴ to sey, þe abbot of Cluyne, þe Erle of Tankerville & Sere Bursigand, þat than was stiward of Fraunce, wiþ meny of¹² oþer men of þe same cuntre, by *commune* assent of þe Lord Karoll, þat þo was regent of Fraunce, þey hasted hem, & wenten to¹⁴ þe King of Englonde,²⁸ askyng & bysekyng hym¹⁵ stedfast pees, & euerelastyng, vpon¹⁶ certeyne condicions þat þer were wreten schewed.¹⁷ ¶ The whiche, whan þe King and his counsell had seen, it plesed ham neuere a dele. ¹⁸But seþ it wolde be non oþere, in¹⁹ tyme of betere acorde &³² deliberacioun, þe Frenssh men bysily & wiþ grete instaunce askede trewes for her see coostes; & þe King²⁰ graunted hem. and in þe

¹ and hadde TR. ² leaf 185, back. ³ Parice warde and TR.

⁴ y om. R. ⁵ that oon T. on þat o R. ⁶ him T. ⁷ of Paris R.

⁸ that he T. þat he R. ⁹ a TR. ¹⁰ Citee and thei T. ¹¹ & om. TR.

¹² of om. TR. ¹³ and skemed þe See and destroyed ham R.

¹⁴ vnto T. to to C. ¹⁵ hym of T. them of R. ¹⁶ vpon a TR.

¹⁷ were schewid wreten T. wreten R. ¹⁸ leaf 186. ¹⁹ til. R.

²⁰ and he T.

morwe after þe ocptas of Pasche, þe King turned hym with his ooste towardes Orlyauce, destroyng & wastyng al þe cuntre by þe wey. And as þey wenten piderward, þere fil oppon hym suche a 4 storme & tempest þat non of our nacioun herd ne sawe neuere non such; thurght þe whiche, þousandez of our men & of hers (*sic*) horses in here¹ (*sic*) iourneyng (as it were þorough vangeaunce), sodenly were slayn & perissed, þe which tempestes ful mich zet² 8 ferid not þe Kyng, ne myche of his peple, þat þey ne wenden forth in her (*sic*) viage þat þey had begunne.

[*Peace made between England and France.*]

¶ Wherfore, abute þe feest of Holy-Rode Day in Maii, fast by Carnocum, þe forseid lordes of Fraunce, metyng þer with þe King of 12 En[g]londe, a pesible acorde & a fynal, oppon certeing condiciouns & grauntez articulerlich³ gaderid & wryten togeder, euermore to laste, ful discretly made, & to boþe kyngges profitable, & to her reumes, boþ wip on assent of Karoll þe Regent and Gouvernour of Fraunce, 16 and of⁴ Parys of the same reaume, ywretyn & made vnder þe date, at⁵ Carnacum, þe xv day of May, þey offred & profred to þe King of Engelond, requireng his grace in alle thynges ywriten,⁶ þat he wold benyngly admitte hem, and hold⁷ hem ferme & stable to hem, 20 & to her eires for euermore. þe wiche þinge; and articles, whan Kyng Edward had seyn, he⁸ graunted hem, so þat boþe parties sholde be yswore⁹ on Goddis body and on þe holy euanglies, þat þe forsaide couenaunt; shold be stablysshed. & so þey acordeden 24 graciously; þerfore þere were ordeyned & dressid on euery syde too barons,¹⁰ ij. baronettes, ij. knyghtes, to admitte & receyve þe othes of þe Lord Karoll, regent of Fraunce, & of Sir Edward, ¹¹ the first sone and Eyr of King Edward of Engelond; and þe x. day of Maii ther 28 was songen a solempne masse at Parys, and aftir þe iij ‘agnus dei’ yseid,¹² wip ‘dona nobis pacem,’ in presence of the forseid men, that there yordeynid¹³ to admitte and resecyve the opes, and of all oper þat þer myght be, the same Karoll leyd his right honde on the 32 patene wip Goddis body, & his left hand on þe missale, and sayd: ¶ “We, N and N, sweryn on Goddis body and on þe¹⁴ holy gospellez, þat we schulle trewliche and stedfastly holden toward vs

¹ his R. ² zet *om.* T. ³ articulerli was R. ⁴ of þe T. ⁵ of T.
⁶ writen R. ⁷ hold *om.* T. ⁸ hem he R. ⁹ swore TR.
¹⁰ too barons *om.* TR. ¹¹ leaf 186, back. ¹² was seide T. was seid R.
¹³ ordeynyd T. þat were þere ordeyned R. ¹⁴ this T.

þe pees and¹ þe acorde made bytuene þe² ij kingez, and in no manere to do the contrarie." & þer, amonge al ij his³ lordes, for more loue & streng[t]he of wytnez, he⁴ deled & departed þe reliques of þe croun of Crist to þe knightes of Engelond: and þey⁵ curteysly token her 4 leve. And in þe Fryday next, þe⁶ same manere othe in presences of þe⁷ knightes, & of⁸ al⁹ oþer worthy men, Prins Edwarde made at Loners. Afterward, boþe Kyngeꝝ, and her sones, and þe moste noble men of boþe reaumes, wiþin þe same 3er maden þe same oþe. 8 & forto strengthe al þes forsaid þingeꝝ þe King of Engelond axed þe grettest men of Fraunce; and he had his axyng; þat is forto seye, .vj. dukes, viij. Erleꝝ, xij. lordeꝝ, that is to seyn, baronys and worthy knightes. And whan þe place and þe tyme was assigned 12 in þe whiche bothe Kyngeꝝ with her counceyll shold come togedir, al þe forsaid thynges bytwene hem yspoke, for to¹⁰ ratifie and make ferme & stable.

þe King of Englond anone wente toward þe see, & at Houn- 16 flete he bygan to sayle, levyng to his ostes that were yleft¹¹ behind him (bycause of his absence) mych hevynes; & after þe xix day of Maii he come into Englond, & went to his paleys at Westminster on Seynt Dunstons day. & þe iij. day after, he visited John, þe 20 King of Fraunce, þat was in þe Tour of London, & deliuered him frely from ¹²al manere prisoun, saue ferst they were acorded of iijj.¹³ Milions of fforeyns for his raunsom, and þe King comforted hym & chered him in alle places, wiþ all solaces & merpez that longen to 24 a king, in his goyng homward.

¶ And þe ix day of Iuyll in þe same 3er, þe same Iohn, King of Fraunce, that aforhand¹⁴ lay here in ostage, wente home azen into his owne lande, to trete of þo þingeꝝ, & of oþere that longeden & 28 fillen to þe gouernance of his reaume. And afterward metten and comen togedir at Caleys bothe ij Kinges, wiþ boþe hire counceyll, about Alhalwen tyde, and þer were shewed the condiciouns and þe poyntes ¹⁵of þe pees, & of þe acorde of boþe sydes ywriten; & 32 ther,¹⁵ withoute eny wiþseying, of boþe sides graciously þey¹⁶ þere acorded. and þer ¹⁷was done and sung¹⁷ a solempne masse, and after þe iij. Agnus Dei, vppon Goddes body & also on þe Massebook, boþe Kyngeꝝ, & her sones, & þe grettest lordeꝝ of boþe 36

¹ as C. and R. ² þo R. ³ his om. R. ⁴ se he R. ⁵ þey om. T.

⁶ affir þe T. ⁷ þe forseide T. þe forsaid R. ⁸ of om.

⁹ alle om. T. ¹⁰ to for. to C. ¹¹ left TR. ¹² leaf 187.

¹³ iij TR. ¹⁴ aforsaid þat R. ¹⁵⁻¹⁶ of þe pees . . . ther om. TR.

¹⁶ þev om. TR. ¹⁷⁻¹⁷ was songen and done T.

reaumez, and of hir counceill that þere were¹ þan present, & not had yswore byfor, þe forsaide oþe that they² had made, & was titled bytwene hem, þey behighten þere to kepe, & all oþer couenauntes þat were bytuene ham yordeyned.³ ¶ And in þe⁴ same 3er men, bestes, trees, & housyng, wiþ sodeyn tempest & strong lightnyng were yperisshed⁵; & the deuel appered bodyly in mannis liknes to myche peple as they went in diuerses plices in⁶ the 8 cuntre & spake to hem.⁷

[A Parliament at Westminster. Eclipse of the Sun; Marvels, etc.]

Kyng Edward in þe xxxvj 3ere of his regne anon after Cristemasse in þe feest of⁸ Conuercion of seint Poul, held his parlement at Westminster, in the which was put forþ and showed þe 12 acorde and the tretys þat was stablysshed and ymade⁹ betwene þo ij. kynges; the which ac¹⁰orde plesid to¹¹ myche peple; and þerfore, by þe Kynges commaundement, þere were gadryd and comyn togider in Westminster cherche, the first Soneday of¹² Lente, that 16 is to sey, the ij. Kalend of Feuerell, the forsaide English men and Frensshe men; wher was song a solempne masse of þe Trynyte, of¹³ þe Erchbisshop of Caunterbury, Mayster Symond Islepe. And whan Agnus Dei was do, þo¹⁴ King, beyng þere with his sones, and 20 also wiþ þe kynges sones of Fraunce, and oþer noble and grete lordes, with candels ylight,¹⁵ and crosse ybrought¹⁶ forth al þat were called þerto that were not yswore¹⁷ afor sworn¹⁸ þat same othe that was writen oppon goddis body & oppon þe masse boke in þis wyse, 24 “We, N. and N., sweren oppon holy Goddes body, and on¹⁹ þe gospels, stedfastly to hold and kepe toward vs þe pees and þe acorde made betwene the too kynges, and neuere forto do þe contrarie.” And whan they had þus swore,²⁰ þey token her scrowes that þe 28 othes were comprehendid in, to the²¹ Notaries.

¶ And this same 3er, in þe Ascencioun, even about Middy, was seyn the Eclipse of þe sunne; and þer folowed suche a newe²² droght that, for default of rayn, þer was grete bareynes of corn, froyt,²³ and 32 hey, and in þe same 3ere, the vj. kalend of Iuyn, þere fill a sangweyn rayne, almoost like blood, at²⁴ Burgoyne; and a sangweyn

¹ were þere R. ² that thei T. þat þey R. they om. C.

³ ordeynyd T. ⁴ þis TR. ⁵ perisshed R. ⁶ of T.

⁷ ham. *Capitulum* cccxxij R. ⁸ feest of om. TR. ⁹ maad TR.

¹⁰ leaf 187, back. ¹¹ to om. R. ¹² in T. ¹³ bi T. ¹⁴ the TR.

¹⁵ light TR. ¹⁶ brought R. ¹⁷ Swore R. ¹⁸ sworn om. T.

¹⁹ vpon T. ²⁰ I-swore T. ²¹ the om. R. ²² newe om. R.

²³ of fruyt T. ²⁴ in R.

crosse, fro morwe vnto pryme, was seyn and apperid at Boloigne in þe eyr, þe whiche meny a man sawe; & after, it mevid & fill in¹ þe myd see.

¶ and in þe same tyme in Fraunce & in Engelond, & in opere⁴ meny² landes as þey had³ duelled in⁴ playn cuntres & desert bare wytnes, sodenly þer apperid ij castels, of þe whiche wenten out ij. ostes of armed men; and þe to⁵ oste was helid and clothed in white, and þe to⁶pere⁶ in blak; and whan⁷ ⁸batayl bytuene hem was 8 bygunne, the white ouercome þe blake, and anone⁹ after, þe blak token hert to hem & ouercome þe white; and⁹ after þat, þey went azen into her castellis, and þat¹⁰ þe castels & al þe oostes vanissheed away. and in þis same zere was a grete & a¹¹ houge pestilence of 12 peple, and namely of men, whos wyues, as wymmen out of gouernaunce, token husbondes, as wel straungers as opere lewed and symple peple, þe whiche, forzetyng her owne wurschip & berth, coupled & maried hem with hem¹² þat were of lowe degre & litel 16 reputacion.

¶ In this same zere deide Herry, þe¹³ Duke of Lancastre; & also in this zere, Edward, Prins of Walys, weddid þe Cuntesse of Kent, þat was Sere Thomas wyf¹⁴ Holande, þe whiche was departed & 20 deuorsid sumtyme fro þe Erl of Salysbury, for cause of þe same knyght. And about þis same tyme pere bygan & aros a grete companye of diuers nacions gaderid togeder, of wom her leders & gouernours were Englissh peple; & þey were clept 'a peple without 24 an heed,' þe whiche deden mych harme in þe partye of Fraunce; & not long after pere aros ano^{per} companye of diuers nacions þat was called 'þe white companye,' þe whiche, in þe parties & cuntre of Lumbardye, dede myche sorwe. þis same zere Sere Iohn Gaunt, 28 þe sone of King Edwarde þe third, was made Duk¹⁵ of Lancastre, by resoun & cause of his wyf, þat was þe douzter &¹⁶ eyre of Herry, sumtyme Duk of Lancastre.

Of the grete wynde, & howe Prins Edward, þe¹⁷ lordship of 32 Guyene, of King Edward his fader toke of him,¹⁸ & went thider.

Capitulo cc. xxxij.¹⁹

¹ into T. ² meny opere R. ³ þat R. ⁴ in the TR.

⁵ þat oon T. and þat on R. ⁶ þat opir T. ⁷ whenne the T.

⁸ leaf 188. ⁹⁻⁹ after þe blak . . white and om. T. ¹⁰ panne TR.

¹¹ An T. ¹² with hem om. T. ¹³ þe om. R. ¹⁴ wyf of T.

¹⁵ þe Duke T. ¹⁶ and the T. ¹⁷ had þe T.

⁸ toke of him om. TR. ¹⁹ cc°. ccxxxij R.

And in þe xxxvij 3er of King Edward, the xv day of January, that is to sey, on Seynt Mauris day, about evesong tyme, þer aroos & come such a wynd out of þe suoth, wip such a fersnes, that he
 4 brast & ¹ blewe ² doun ³ to ground hye houses, & strong byldynges, toures, cherches, & ⁴ steeples, & oþer strong⁵ pynges; and al oþer strong⁶ werkes þat stoden still, were so yshake þerewith, þat þey ben 3ett, and shol be euermore, the febelere & weyker while þey
 8 stonde; & þis wynd lasted *withoute* eny cesyng vij. dayes continuels.

¶ And anon after, þer folowed such watres, in hey tyme & in hervest tyme, þat all feld-werkes were strongly let & left vndone, and in þe same 3ere Prins Edward toke þe Lordship of Guyene, &
 12 dede to Kyng Edward his fader feaute & homage þerfore, & went ouer see into Gascoigne, wip his wyf & his childryn; & anone after, King Edward made Sere Leonel, his sone, Duke of Clarence, & ⁷ Edmund, his oþer sone, Erl of Caumbrig. ¶ and in þe xxxviii 3ere
 16 of his regne, hit was ordeyned in þe parlement, þat men of lawe, bothe of þe temporall & of ⁸ holy chirche lawe, fro þat tyme forth shold plede in her moder tunge. And in þe same 3ere comen into Engelond thre kinges, that is to sey, þe King of Fraunce, the King
 20 of Cypres, & þe King of Scotlande, by cause to visite & to speke wip þe King of Engelond, of whiche⁹ þey were wonder welcomen¹⁰ & myche yworshipped.¹¹ & after þat þey had ben her longe tyme, ij of hem wenten a3en home into¹² her owne kingdomes; but þe
 24 King of Fraunce, thurgh grete sikenes & malady þat he had, left still in Engelonde.

¶ and in þe xxxix 3er of his regne, was a strong and an houghe frost, & that lasted long, that is forto sey, fro Sent Andrewes tyde
 28 vnto þe xiiij kalend of Aprill, that þe tilthe & ¹³ sowyng of þe erthe, & oþere suche feld werkes and hand werkes, were myche yyet¹⁴ & lefte¹⁵ vndo, for colde & hardnesse of¹⁶ erthe.

¶ And at Orrey in Brytayne þat tyme was ordeyned a grete
 32 dedly batayll bytwene Sere Iohn of Mounfort, Duk of Bry¹⁷tayne, & Sere Charles of Bloys, but þe victorie fill to þe forseyd Sir John, thurgh help and socour of þe Englissh men; & þere were take meny kniztes & sqwyers and oþer men þat weren ynoubred.¹⁸ In the

¹ touris chirchis and T. ² leaf 188, back. ³ down om. T.

⁴ toures cherches and om. T. ⁵ strong om. T. ⁶ strong om. R.

⁷ and sir R. ⁸ of the T. ⁹ whom T. of whom R.

¹⁰ home ayen to T. to R. ¹¹ worshiped R. ¹² to R. ¹³ and þe R.

¹⁴ let R. ¹⁵ moche I left T. ¹⁶ of the T. ¹⁷ leaf 189.

¹⁸ men of name R.

whiche bataill was slayn Charlis hymself, with al þat stood about hym; & of þe¹ Englissh men þer were slayn but vij. And in this 3ere deid at Savey, Iohn, the King of Fraunce, whose *seruise* & exequyes King Edwarde lete² ordeyne, & dede in diuerses places 4 worschipfully to be done, and to douorre of worschipfull men ordeyned hym worthily to be ledde, wip his owne costes & expenses; from³ þens he was fet into Fraunce, & beried at Seynt Denys. 8

[*Peter's Pence stopt. Rain, Sparrow-fights, Plagues.*]

¶ In the xl 3eer of King Edward the vij, kalend of Feuerer, was born Edward, Prins Edwardes sone, þe whiche, whan he was vij 3ere olde, he deide. And in þe same 3er hit was ordeyned that seynt Petris pens, fro þat tyme forþ shold not be payd, þe whiche 12 Kyng Iva, sumtyme King of Englund, of þe cuntre of West-Saxons, that bygan to regne in þe 3er of our Lord DCIxxix, ferst graunted to Rome, for þe scole of Englund ther to be continued. And in this same 3er þere fill so mich rayne in hey-tyme, that it wasted⁴ & 16 distroyed boþe corn & hey; and þer was suche a debate & fighting of sparrows, by diuers places in thes⁵ dayes, that men founden vnnumerable multitudes of hem dede in feldes as þey wenten. And ther fill also such a pestilens, that neuere non such was sene in no⁶ 20 mannes tyme alyve⁷; for meny men, anone⁸ as þey were go to bed hool⁹ & in good poynt,¹⁰ sodeinly þey deiden. also þat tyme a sikenes þat men callen 'þe pokkes,' slow boþe men and whymmen, þour; hire enfectyng. ¶ and in þe xli. 3er of his regne¹¹ King 24 Edwarde, was bore at Burdeux Richard the seconde, ¹²sone of Prins Edward of Englund, þe whiche Richard¹³ King Richard of American heved at þe funtston, after whom he was cleped Richard. & þis same Richard, whan his fader was dede, & Kyng Edward 28 also, was crowned Kyng of Englund þe xj 3ere of his age, thurgh ryght lyne & heritage, & also by *commune* assent & desir of þe comnalte of þe reaume.

[*With Du Guesclin's help King Pedro of Spain is deposed, and King Henry elected, A.D. 1366.*]

¶ About þis tyme, at King Edwardes commandement of 32 Englund, whan al þe castelles & tounes were 3olde to him, that

¹ þe om. TR. ² lete om. R. ³ And from T. And fro R.

⁴ lasted T. ⁵ Tho T. ⁶ no om. R. ⁷ on lyue T.

⁸ anone om. R. ⁹ hool T. ¹⁰ point anon R. ¹¹ his regne om. TR.

¹² leaf 189, back. ¹³ Richard was C. Richard TR.

long¹ weren hold in Fraunce by a grete coumpany assembled togider, Sere Bertram Cleykyn, knyzt, and² a³ orpid man & a good werreour, went & purposid hym to put out Piers, Kyng of Spayne, 4 out of his kingdome wip help of þe most partye of þe forsaide grete⁴ cumpanye; trustyng also oppon help & fauour of þe Pope, for as myche as hit come to his eres that þe same Piers shold lede & vse the most⁵ worst & synfullest lyf out.⁶ ¶ The wiche Peris, King of 8 Spayne, ysmytyn⁷ with drede of this tydyng, fled into Gascoigne to Prins Edward, forto haue help & socour⁸ of hym. and whan⁹ he was fled out of Spayne, Herry his broþer, þat was a bastarde, by assent of þe moste partie of Spayne, & þorughe help of þat 12 ferfull cumpany þat y spak of arst, was made & crowned Kyng of Spayne: and þe noumber of þat same cumpany was rekened & ¹⁰ set at þe noumber of lx. M⁺ fighting men.

[*A Danish Expedition against England.*]

¶ This same 3ere, in þe monþe of Iuyn, þere come a gret 16 companye & navee of þe Danes, & gaderyd hem togedir in þe Norþ See, purposyng hem to come into Engeland, to reue & to¹¹ robbe, and also to¹¹ slee; with¹² whom, countreden & metten in þe see, Maryners and oþer orpyd fightyng men of the same cuntre, & ¹³ 20 disparpled hem¹⁴; & þey,¹⁵ ashamed, went home aȝen into her owne cuntre. But amonge al oþere was¹⁶ a boystous and a strong vessell of her nauie that was ouere-sayled of the¹⁷ Englissh men, & was perisshid & dreynt; in þe whiche, þe stiward & oþer worthy & 24 grete men of Denmark, were take prisoners, &, by the Kyng of Engeland & his counsell, yprisoned.¹⁸ ¶ The whiche lordes, þe Danes afterward comen & soghten¹⁹ al about for to haue had²⁰ her goodes þat þei had lost; and þei, not wel apayed ne plesid of 28 þe answere þat þei had here,²¹ turned homwardes²² aȝen levyng behind hem in her ynnes, pryvyly ywriten,²³ in scrowes and on walles, “Ȝet²⁴ shall Danos þes Wanes.” Than happed þere an Englissh writer & ²⁵ wrote aȝens þe Danes in þis manere wyse: *Her* 32 *shall Danes fett²⁶ banes.*

¹ long om. TR. ² and om. TR. ³ an TR. ⁴ grete om. R.

⁵ most om. R. ⁶ out om. R. ⁷ ysmytyn om. T.

⁸ socoure and help T. socour and help R. ⁹ whan om. T.

¹⁰ rekened & om. T. ¹¹ to om. R. ¹² leaf 190. ¹³ and thei T.

¹⁴ hem om. T. ¹⁵ þey om. T. ¹⁶ þer was R. ¹⁷ the om. T.

¹⁸ prisoned T. ¹⁹ sente R. ²⁰ had with C. had TR.

²¹ þei T. here om. R. ²² hoom R. ²³ writen R. ²⁴ þe T.

²⁵ & om. R. ²⁶ sette her TR.

[*The deposed King Pedro of Spain appeals to the Black Prince for help.*]

And in þis tyme, Peirs, Kyng¹ of Spayne, with oþer Kynges, þat is forto sey, þe King of Nauerne, &² þe King of Malogre, beyng menes, wenten bitwene, & prayed counceyl³ & help of Sere Edwarde, þe Prins þonez, whose counceil, whan he had vnderstond 4 her articles & desire þat he was requyred of ij.⁴ kinges, lothe he was, and ashamed, to sey 'nay,' & contrarie hem; but noþeles he was agast lest it sholde be eny preiudice azens þe Pope.⁵ Long he taried hem or he wolde graunte & consente þerto, til he had better 8 counceyl & ayusement with good deliberacioun of King Edward, his geter and⁶ his fader. ¶ But whan þat⁷ he was with euery dayes & continuele bysechynges of so meny noble men yrequired⁸ & spoken to, & wiþ meny prayers ysent⁹ and made bituene þam, 12 Prins Edwarde sent to his fader—boþe by pleynyng *lettres*, and also by confortable, conteynyng al her suggestions and causes, wiþ al þe toþer¹⁰ Kynges epistles & *lettres* forto haue¹¹ comfort and helpe of þe wronges, not only to þe Kyng of Spayne ydo, but also for 16 such þinges þat might fal to oþere kynges also, if it ner not þe sonner holpen & amendid, þurgh þe dome & help of knyghthood to hem that it asked & desired. ¶ The which *lettres*, whan þe kyng and his wys counceyll had seyn & vndirstonden, he had grete 20 compassioun & heuynesse of such a kynges spoylyng and robberyng, wiþ myche *vermaille*¹²; and sent azen comfortable letteres to Prins Edward, his sone, and to þe oþere forsaide kynges, & warned hym forto arme hym & ordeigne hym azens þat mysdoer, & to wipstond 24 hem, by þe help of God, that weren such enemyes to kynges.

[*The Black Prince undertakes to help the King of Spain.*]

¶ Whan this¹³ noble Prynz had resceyued þes letteres, hym-self, wiþ þe oþere kynges byfor all her counceyll clept togeder or þat he wold vndirtake þe querell be¹⁴ bonde, & knet sore þe King þat was 28 deposid wiþ a grete othe, þat is forto sey, þat he shold euere after maynteigne the ryzt byleue and faith of holi chirche, & holy chirche¹⁵ also wiþ al her mynistres, rightes & libertees, to defende from all her enemyes; and all eueles¹⁶ & al þat were þere azens, 32

¹ kyng *om.* T. ² & *om.* R. ³ of counsett T. ⁴ þo TR.

⁵ pope and T. ⁶ his geter & *om.* TR. ⁷ þat *om.* TR.

⁸ required T. ⁹ sent T. ¹⁰ oþer R. ¹¹ leaf 190, back.

¹² *mervail* R. ¹³ þe R. ¹⁴ he R. ¹⁵ & holy chirche *om.* R.

¹⁶ & all eueles *om.* TR.

bytterly to ponysshe & destourble, & al þe rightes libertees & pryuileges of holy cherche encrece, mayntaigne & amende, & al pinges þat were wrongfully benome, wipdrawe & bore away, by hym
 4 or by eny oþere by cause of hym, hastily to restore aʒeen, and to dryve & put out Sarazins & al oþere mysbyleued peple out of his kyngdom, wip al his strenghe & power, & suffre ne admitte none such for no manere ping, ne cause to duell theryn; and þat whan he
 8 had take a cristen womman to wyf, he shold neuere come in to¹ non oper wommans bedde, ne non oþere mannes wyf to² defoule: al þes
 3 forsaide pinges, trewlych forto kepe,⁴ continue & fulfill al his lyf tyme, he was bound by othe afor notaries, in presence and witnes
 12 of tho kynges wip oþere prins, & þan thilk⁵ gracious Prins Edward vndertoke þe cause & þe querele of þe King þat was deposed, & behight hym, with⁶ þe⁷ grace of God, to restore hym aʒen to his kyngdome, and lete ordeigne & gadre to-gedir forthwip in all haste,
 16 his nave, wip men of armes, to werre & fight in this forseid cause.

[*Fight of Eagles; Fall of Fiery Stars; Storms and Destruction.*]

¶ And in this same tyme, oppon þe sonde of the Scottyssh see, þat meny a man⁸ hit sye ther⁹ iij. dayes togedir þere were sene ij. Eglez, of þe which the tone¹⁰ come out of þe southe, & þe toþer¹¹
 20 out of¹² þe North, & cruelly & strongly þey foughten togider & warstled togider; & þe south Egle ferst ouercome the Northe egle, & al¹³ to-rent and tare hym wip his bille & his clowes, þat he shold not reste ne take no breþe; and aftir, the south egle flye home to
 24 his owne coostes. and anone after, þere folowed & was seyn in þe¹⁴ morne afore þe¹⁵ sunne rysing; and after, in¹⁶ þe last day of Octobre saf on, þat¹⁷ meny sterres gaderid togedir on an hepe fel down into þe erpe, levying behind hem fery¹⁸ bemes in manere of
 28 lightnyng, whos flaumes & hete brent & consumed mennys clopes & mennys here, walkyng on þe erpe, as hit was seen & knowen of meny a man. ¶ and ʒet thilk Northren wynd, that is euere redy & destinat to all evell fro Seynt Katerins even til iij. dayes aftir, lost
 32 good wipoute nombre vnrecouerable. and in þese same dayes þer fill & comen also such lightnynges, pundres, snowe & hayl, þat hit wastede and destroyed men, bestes, houses and trees.

¹ in TR. ² to om. R. ³ leaf 191. ⁴ be kept R. ⁵ þat R.
⁶ hym with om. T. ⁷ bi the T. ⁸ a man om. T. ⁹ it saw R.
¹⁰ that oon T. ¹¹ þat on R. ¹² that oþer T. ¹³ þat oþer com off R.
¹⁴ al om. T. ¹⁵ in the T. in þe R. om. C. ¹⁶ þe om. R.
¹⁷ in om. R. ¹⁸ þat om. R. ¹⁹ very R.

Of þe bataill of Spayne bituene Prins Edward & Herry þe
Bastard of Spayne. *Capitulo CC^{mo} xxxiiij^o.*¹

[I]n þe 3er of our Lord a MⁱCCC. lxxvij, & of Kyng Edward xliij., þe thrid day of ²Aprill, þer was a strong bataill & a 4 grete, in a large felde yclept³ Pryazers, fast by þe water of Nazers in Spayne, bitwene Sir⁴ Edward Prynys,⁵ & Harry, þe Bastarde of Spayne; but þe victorie fill to Prynys Edwarde, by þe grace of God. & pis same Prins Edward had *with* hym Sere John, þe Duke of 8 Lancastre, his broþer, and worþi oþer⁶ men of armes, aboute þe noubre of xxx. M^t. And þe King of Spayne had on⁷ his side, men of diuerce nacions, to þe noubre of a⁸ C. M^t. & passyng. ¶ Wherfore þe sharpnes & þe fersnes of his aduersarye, wiþ his 12 ful boystus & ful⁹ grete strengthe, made &¹⁰ strevyn¹¹ þe ryztfull partye abak a gret wey; but þurgh þe grace of Almyzty God, passyng eny mannys strengthe, thilk hougest ooste was desparbled myghtfully by þe noble Duk of Lancastre and his oste, or þat Prynys 16 Edward come nye hym. ¶ And whan Harry þe Bastard sey þat, he turned wiþ his men,¹² wiþ so grete haste and strengthe, to fle, þat an houghe cumpanye of him in þe forseyd flood, & of þe brigge þer-of,¹³ fillen¹⁴ doun¹⁵ & perished. and þere were take, þe Erl of 20 Dene and Sere Bertram Cleykyn, þat was chefe¹⁶ maker and cause of the werre, and also chyueteyn of þe vauntward of þe bataill, wiþ meny oþer lordes and knightes, to þe noubre of ij. M^t; of whom ij^c weren of Fraunce, & meny of Scotlond; & þere were feld in þe 24 felde on our enemys side, of lordes and knyzttes, *with* oþere mene peple, to þe noubre of vj M^t & mo; and of Englissh men but a fewe. ¶ And after þis, þat noble Prins Edward restored þe same Piers into his kingdom azen. þe whiche Piers afterward, pourz 28 trecherye & falsnes of þe forsaid Bastarde of Spayne as he sate atte þe table, he was strangled and deyde. but after þis victorye, meny noble and hardy men of Engelond, in Spayne, pourz the fflix & odir diuers siknesses, toke her dethe.

32

& in pis same ¹⁷3er in Marche,¹⁸ was seyn 'Stella Comata' bitwene þe North costes & þe west, whos bemes strecched toward Fraunce. and in þe 3er next sewyng of King Edwardes regne

¹ *Capitulo CC^o T. CCxxxiiij R.* ² leaf 191, back. ³ clept TR.

⁴ sir om. R. ⁵ bitwene Prince Edward T. þe Prins R.

⁶ and oþer worthi R. ⁷ in R. ⁸ an T. ⁹ ful om. R.

¹⁰ made & om. R. ¹¹ droof T. dryuen R. ¹² wiþ his men om. TR.

¹³ þer of om. R. ¹⁴ fil a T. ¹⁵ A' downe T. ¹⁶ chefe om. T.

¹⁷ leaf 192. ¹⁸ in Marche om. T.

xliij., in Aprill, Sere Leonell, Kyng Edwardes sone, *pat* was duk of Clarence, went towarde Myleyn, *with* a chose meyne of þe gentils of Englund, forto wedde Galoys douȝter,¹ and haue her to wyf, by
 4 whom he shold haue half² þe Lordship of Mileyn. But after þat þey were solempnly wedded, the³ same Duke, about þe Natiuite of our Lady deid.⁴ & in þe same ȝere þe Frensshe men breken þe pees & the trewes, ryding on þe Kinges ground and lordship of
 8 Englund, in þe shire & cuntre of Pountyf, & taken & helden castls & tounes, & bere þe Engliſſhe men on hond falsly⁵ & sotilly,⁶ þat þey were cause of breking of þe⁷ traws. And in þis same ȝere deyde þe Duchesse⁸ of Lancastre, & is beryed worschipfully in⁹ Seynt
 12 Poules Cherche.¹⁰

[*A Great Pestilence, A.D. 1369.*]

¶ The xliiij ȝere of King Edward regne, was þe grete pestilens of men and of grete beestes; and by grete fallyng of wateres þat fill þat tyme, þer fill grete hyndryng & destroyeng of corn, in so
 16 mych þat þe next ȝere after, a busshell whete¹¹ was solde for xl d. and about þe laste ende of May, Kyng Edward held his parlement at Westminster; in þe whiche *parlement* was treted & spoken of þe ope & þe¹² trewes þat was broke bituene hem and þe King of
 20 Fraunce, & how he myȝte best oppon his wrong be avenged. ¶ In þis same ȝer, in þe Assumption of our Lady, deid¹³ Qwene Philippe of Engelond, a ful noble and good woman; & at Westminster ful worschipfully is buried & entered.

24 And about Missomere, þe Duke of Lancastre & þe Erle of Herford, wiþ a grete cumpanye of kniȝtes, wenten into Fraunce, wher þey gete hem but a litell worship and name¹⁴; for þer was an houghe oste of Frenssh men oppon¹⁵ Chalkhul brigge,¹⁶ & anoþer oste¹⁷
 28 of Engliſſhe men faist by þe same brigge,¹⁶ þat longe tyme had leyn þere; and meny worþy men & grete of þe¹⁸ Engliſſhe men ordeyned & ȝaf counceyll forto fight & ȝeue bataill to þe Frensh men; but þe forsaide lordes wolde noþing¹⁹ consente þerto, ne assent,²⁰ for no
 32 manere þing. ¶ Ther anon after, hit happid þat þe Erl of Warwyke come pedirward forto werre; & whan þe Frenshmen herde

¹ Galeys þe Dukis sister of Mileyne R. ² þe half R. ³ þat T.

⁴ he died T. ⁵ men falsly on honde T. þat falsli R.

⁶ sotilly *om.* T. ⁷ þe *om.* R. ⁸ Duke T. ⁹ at T.

¹⁰ chirche at London R. ¹¹ of whete T. ¹² and of the T.

¹³ died the T. ¹⁴ and name *om.* R. ¹⁵ leaf 192, back.

¹⁶⁻¹⁶ & anoþer oste . . . brigge *om.* R. ¹⁷ oste *om.* T. ¹⁸ þe *om.* T.

¹⁹ not R. ²⁰ ne assent *om.* R.

of his comynge, or þat þey¹ come fully to londe, þey left her tentis and pavilons, wip al hir vetayles, & fledden² and wenten away pre-veyly. And whan þe Erl was come to londe wip his men, he wente in al has[t]³ into⁴ Normandye, and distroyede þe Ile of Cavs, þour³ 4 dent of suerde & þour³ fire; but allas, in his returnyng into⁵ Eng-land-warde home azen, at Caleys he was take *with* siknes of pestil- lence, & deide, nowt lewyng behynde him, after his dayes, non⁶ so noble a kniȝt, ne so⁷ orpid of armes. ¶ In whiche tyme rayned⁸ and werred thilk orpid kniȝt, Sere Iohn Hawkwode, þat was an Engliſshman born, hauyng *with* hym at⁸ his gouernance pilk white cumpanye þat ys abore⁹ ynemned, þe whiche were¹⁰ o tyme azens holy chirche, and anoper tyme azens lordes werryng, & ordeynede¹² gret batailes; & per in þat cuntre he dede many mervayles þingeȝ.

And aboute þe Conuersion of Seynt Poule, King Edward, whan he had ȝended and done þe entering and þe¹¹ exequites, wip grete costes and rialtees, aboute þe tombe¹² & buryng of Quene¹⁶ Phillip his¹³ wif, he held his parlement at Westminster. In þe whiche parlement was axed of þe clergye a iij. ȝers disme, þat is forto sey, a gret dime to be paied .iij. ȝer duryng; and the clergye put hit of, and wolde not graunte hit vnto Ester next comyng; ²⁰ & þan þey graunted wele þat in iij ȝere, by certeyne termes, þat disme¹⁴ shold be payed; & also of þe lay fee, was a iij. ȝers xv. ygraunted to þe King.

Hov sir Robert Knollis, wip oper certeyne¹⁵ lordes of þe²⁴ reame,¹⁶ wente ouere þe see into Fraunce; & of here gouernance. Capitulo CC^{mo}. xxxiiij^o.¹⁷

And in þe xlv ȝere of King Edward, in þe bygenyng, King Edward, wip owne-wise¹⁸ counceyll and vndercret, borwed a ²⁸ grete summe of gold of þe prelatis and lordes, Marchauntes and oper riche men of þe¹⁹ reame, saynge þat hit sholde be spende in deffendyng of holy cherche & of his reame; but neuer þe latter hit profited hit²⁰ not. Wherefore about Midsomer after, þe king ³² made a grete oste of þe worthiest men of his reame, amonges whom were somme lordes, þat is forto seyn, þe Lord Fitzwater,

¹ he TR. ² fledde þenneȝ R. ³ haste T. ⁴ haste toward R.

⁵ to TR. ⁶ non om. R. ⁷ knyght and TR.

⁸ and at TR. ⁹ afore R. ¹⁰ were om. TR. ¹¹ þe om. R.

¹² sepulchre TR. ¹³ his wif T. his wif R. wif om. C.

¹⁴ leaf 193. ¹⁵ certeyne om. R. ¹⁶ of þe reame om. TR.

¹⁷ CC^o T. CC^{xxxv} R. ¹⁸ with vnwis R. ¹⁹ his TR.

²⁰ hit om. TR.

þe Lord Gromson, and oper worpi kniȝtes, of whiche kniȝtes þe King¹ ordeyned Sere Robert Knollis, a proved kniȝt and wel assayed in dede of armes, forto be gouernour; and þat, þourȝ his
4 gouernance and counceyll, al þing sholde be gouerned & dressid. and whan þey come into Fraunce, as long as þey duelled and helde him hole togider, þe Frensshmen þorust² nout falle oppon hym. & at þe³ laste, aboute þe bigynnyng of wenter, for enuye and covetyse⁴
8 þat was amonges ham, and also discorded, þey sunddered & partyd him into diuers companyes, vnwysely & follely. But Sere Robert Knollis & his men wenten and kepten ham saf⁵ wiþinne a Castel in Britaigne. & whan þe frenshe men saw þat our men were
12 deuyded into diuers cumpanyes & places, nouȝt holdyng ne strengyng ham togeders, as þey awȝte forto done, þey fel fersly on our men, & for þe moste partey⁶ token ham & slowen⁶; and þo þat þey toke, ledde wiþ him presoners. ¶ And in þe same ȝere
16 Pope Vrban come fro Rome to Auyoun, for enchesoun & cause þat he shold acorde and make pees bytwene þe King of Fraunce and þe King of Engelonde for euermore; but allas,⁷ or he bygan þis tretis, he deide wiþ sikenes, þe xxj day of Decembre, & was
20 yburied⁸ as for þe tyme in þe cathedral cherch of Auyon, fast by þe hye⁹ auter. & þe next ȝere after, whan he had leyn so, his bones were taken out of þe erþe, and beryed new in þe abbey of Seynt Victour, fast by Marcyle, of þe whiche abbey he was sumtyme
24 abbot hymself.¹⁰ & in boþe places þat he was buried yn, ther¹¹ bene meny grete miracles done and wroght, thurgh þe grace of God, to meny a mannes help, and to þe worship of God. After whom folowed next, & was made Pope Gregore Cardynall, dekene,
28 þat bifore was clept Piers Rogier.

[*The Black Prince takes Limoges, and comes back to England.*]

¶ In this same ȝere þe Citee of Lymage rebelled and faght aȝens þe Pryns, as opere Citees in Guyene dede, for grete taxes, costages & raunsoms, þat þey wer put-yn and ysette¹² to¹³ by Prins Edward,
32 þe whiche charges were unportable, & to chargeable; wherfor þey turned fro him, & fill to þe King of Fraunce, & whan Pryns Edward sawe þis, he was sore ychaufed¹⁴ & ygrevid; and in turnyng

¹ the kyng TR. the om. C. ² durest R. ³ þe om. TR.

⁴ and covetyse om. TR. ⁵ selff R.

⁶⁻⁶ token hem or slowen hem T. or slowen ham R.

⁸ buried TR. ⁹ hye om. R. ¹⁰ hymself om. R.

¹² sette T. ¹³ to om. T ¹⁴ chaufed R.

⁷ leaf 193, back.

¹¹ ther om. T.

homward azen to Engelond, with sore skyrmisshes & fightyng and grete¹ assautes, fought² with hem, & toke þe forsaid Citee, & destroyed hit almost to þe³ grounde, and slow al þat were⁴ founde in þe Citee.⁴ And þan, forto sey þe sothe, for diuers siknesses and 4 maladies þat he had, and also for defaute of money þat he myght not wipstande ne tarie on his enemys, he hyed hym azen into Engelond. And about þe bygynnyng of Januarij he come into Engelond with his wyf and his meyne, levyng behind him in Gas- 8 coigne þe Duk of Lancastre & Sere Edmund,⁵ Erl of Caumbrigge, with opere worþy and orpid men of armes.

¶ In þe xlvj zere of King Edward, at þe ordinaunce & sendyng of King Edward, þe King of Nauern come to hym to Claryngdoun, 12 to trete wip ham of certeyn þinges touching his werre⁶ in Normandy, wher King Edward had left⁷ certen seges in his stede til he come azen; but King Edward myghten not spede of þat þat he asked of hym; and so þe King of Nauerne, with grete worshup & grete 16 zeftes, toke his leue, & wente home azen. And about þe begynnyng of Marche, whan þe parlement at Westminster was bygunne; þe King axed of þe clergye a subsidie of L. M^t ti,⁸ þe whiche, by a⁹ good avisement & by a general conuocacioun of þe clergye, hit was 20 ygraunted¹⁰ & yordeyned¹¹ þat hit shold be payede & reised of þe lay fee. And in þis parlement, at þe requeste & axyng of þe lordes, in hatered of men of holy chirche, þe Chaunceler & tho þat were Bisshopes, þe Tresorer & þe Clerk of þe Pryue Sele, were remeued 24 & put out of hire office, & in hire stedes were seculer men put yn. And while þis parlement laste, per comen solempne ambassiatours, ysent¹² fro þe Pope to trete wip þe King, of pees, & saiden þat þe Pope desired to fullfille his predecessours will; but for al hir 28 comyng þey spedden not of hir purpos.

Of þe sege of Rochell, & hov þe Erl of Penbroke was taken of þe Spaynarde; Capitulo CC^{mo} xxxv^o.¹³

The ix day of Juyn, King Edward, in þe xlvij zere of his regne, 32 helde his parlement at Wynchestre; & hit lasted but viij. dayes; to þe¹⁴ parlement was sompned by wryt, of men of holy chirche, iiij. bisshopes & ¹⁵ iiij. abbotes, wipoute eny mo. This parlement

¹ and grete om. R. ² fightyng sautis foughten T. ³ þe om. T.
⁴⁻⁴ founde þerynne R. ⁵ Iohn TR. ⁶ leaf 194. ⁷ lost R.
⁸ 1 Ml pound T. ⁹ a om. R. ¹⁰ graunted R. ¹¹ ordeyned R.
¹² sent R. ¹³ CC^o T. CC xxxvj R. ¹⁴ þis R. ¹⁵ & om. T.

was¹ holden for Marchauntis of London, of Norwych, & of oþer diuers places, in diuers þinges and poyntes of tresoun þat þey were diffamed of, þat is forto sey, þat þey were rebelle, & wolde² rise
4 aȝens þe King.

¶ This same ȝere þe Duk of Lancastre and þe Erl of Caumbrigge, his broþer, comen out of Gascoigne into Englund, & token & weddid to hir wyues Petres doghters, sumtyme King of Spayne; of
8 which³ ij douȝters þe Duke had þe elder,⁴ and þe Erl þe ȝonger. And þe⁵ same tyme þer were sent ij Cardinals fro þe Pope, þat is to sey, an Engliſsh Cardinal, & a Cardinal of Parius, to trete of pees bytwene tho ij. reaumes, þe which, whan þey had ben boþe longe
12 eche in his province, & in places & cuntres fast by, tretimg of þe forsaid pees, at þe last þey toke wip hem her lettres of procuracye, & went aȝen to þe court of Romeward,⁶ wipoute eny effecte of hir purpos. ¶ In þis ȝere also þere was a stronge bataill on þe see
16 bytwene Engliſsh men & Flemmynges; & þe Engliſsh men had þe victorye, & toke xxv. shippes ycharged⁷ wip salt, sleyng & drenchyng al þe men þat were þerin, vnwytyng hem þat þey weren of þat cuntre. and redily mych harme had fall by cause⁸ þerof,
20 ne had pees þe⁹ sonner be made bitwene hem. and in þis same ȝer þe Frenssh men byseged þe toun of þe¹⁰ Rochell, wherfor þe Erle of Penbrok was sent into Gascoigne with a grete cumpanye of men of armes, forto destroye þe sege; þe which passeden þe¹¹ see,
24 & comen safe to¹² þe haven of Rochell. and whan þey were þere at þe haven mouþe, or þat¹³ þey myght entre, sodenly comen oppon hem a strong naue of Spayne, þe whiche ouercomen þo¹⁴ þe Engliſsh men, in mych blemysyng, hurtyng & sleyng of many
28 persones, for as miche as þe Englyſſe men were not þan redy forto fight, ne ware of hem. & in þis comyng oppon¹⁵ of þe Spaynardes, all þe Engliſsh men, eyþer þey were take or slayn; & x. of hem were woned to þe dethe; & all her shippes ybrent.¹⁶ ¶ And þere¹⁷
32 þey token þe Erle, with an houge tresour of þe reaume¹⁸ of Englund, & many oþer noble men also, on Missomer eve, þe whiche is seynt Mildredes day, &¹⁹ ledden hem wip²⁰ him into Spayne. And of þis mysshif was no grete wonder, for þis Erle was a ful euel lyuer, as

¹ was maad and T.² wolde om. T.³ leaf 194, back.⁴ elder TR. Erle C.⁵ þat TR.⁶ ward om. R.⁷ charged TR.⁸ bycause om. R.⁹ þe pece T.¹⁰ þe om. T.¹¹ in þe T.¹² vnto T. into R.¹³ þat om. T.¹⁴ þo om. T.¹⁵ on T.¹⁶ brent R.¹⁷ þere om. T.¹⁸ of þe reaume om. T.¹⁹ þei T.²⁰ hem wip om. R.

an opyn lechour; & also in a ¹ certeyne parlement he stood and was azens þe ² riȝtes & þe fraunche of holy chirche²; and also he counceyled þe King and his counceyle,³ þat he shold axe more of men of holy chirch þan of oþer persones of þe lay fee. ¶ And for ⁴ þe King & oþere of his counceyl axcepted & token raper evell opynions & causis azens men of holy chirch, þan he dede forto fende & maynteyne þe riȝt of holy chirch, hit was sen in ⁴ many tymes after, þourh lakkyng of fortune and ⁵ grace, þey had not ne ⁸ here away so ⁵ grete victorye ne power azens hir enemyns as þey dede byfore.

þis same ȝere, þe King, wiþ a grete ostee, entred þe see to remeve þe sege of ⁶ Rochell; but þe wynd was euen contrarye to ¹² hem, and suffred hem⁷ not longe tyme to ⁸ goo fer fro þe londe. Wherefore he abode a certeyne time oppon þe see costes, abyding after a good wynde for him; and ȝet come hit not. So at þe ⁹ laste he come þens wiþ his men to londeward aȝen; and anon as he was ¹⁶ a ¹⁰ londe, þe wynde bygan turne,¹¹ and was in anoþer coste þen he was byfore.

Hov þe Duk of ¹² Lancastre, with a grete oste, went into Flaundes,¹² & passed by Parys, þoruȝ Burgoyne. Capitulo 20 CC^{mo} xxxvj^o.¹³

Sone¹⁴ after, in þe xlvij ȝere of King Edward, þe Duk of Lancastere, wiþ a grete oste, wente into Floundres, and passid by Parys, þourȝ Burgoyne, & þourȝ alle Fraunce, til he come to ²⁴ Burdeux, wiþoute eny manere wiþstonddyng of þe Frenshe men. & he dede him but litel harme, saf he toke and raunseued many places & tounnes, & meny¹⁵ ¹⁶men lette hem goon after¹⁶ frely.

¶ The same ȝer þe King sent certeyne enbassetours to þe Pope, ²⁸ praynge hem þat he sholde¹⁷ leue of and melle-not¹⁸ in his court of þe kepynges & reseruaciouns of benefeces in Engelond; & þat þo þat were chose to bisshopes sees¹⁹ & dingnites, frely & wiþ ful right myȝte²⁰ Ioye haue,²¹ & be confermed. ²²Of her Metropolanes and ³²

¹ leaf 195. ²⁻² rightis of holi chirche and þe ffranchises T.

³ and his connceyle om. TR. ⁴ in om. R.

⁵⁻⁵ grace for þey hadde neuer so R. ⁶ at T.

⁷ and suffred hem om. T. to him þat he myȝte not R.

⁸ to om. R. ⁹ þe om. T. ¹⁰ at T. at þe R. ¹¹ to turne T.

¹²⁻¹² lancastre wente into fflaundris with a greet hoost T.

¹³ CC^o T. CC xxxvij R. ¹⁴ Anoon T. Anon R. ¹⁵ meny om. T.

¹⁶⁻¹⁶ men and after lete hem gone T. men and let ham aftir go R.

¹⁷ wolde T. ¹⁸ and not medle TR. ¹⁹ sees om. R.

²⁰ ful moche T. right myȝte R. ²¹ haue TR. and haue C.

²² leaf 195, back.

Erchebisshops, as þey were went to be of old tyme of þes poyntes, & of oper toching þe Kinge and his reame. When þey hadden her answeere of þe Pope, þe Pope enioyned hem þat þey sholde
4 certyfie hem azen by her letteres of þe Kinges wyll, and of his reame, or þat þey determened out¹ of þe forsaide articles.

¶ In this same 3er, deid John, þe Erchebisshop of 3ork, Iohn, bosship of Ely; William, bisship of Worsschestre, in whos stedes
8 folweding, and were made bisship by þe² auctorite of þe Pope, †
Mayster Alexander Nevyle to þe Erchebyssshoprich of 3ork, Thomas of Arundell to þe Bisshop³ of Ely, & sere Herry Wakefeld to þe byssshoprich of Worcestre. In whiche tyme it was ordeyned in þe
12 parlement þat all Cathedrall cherches shold ioy and haue her eleccions hool; & þat þe King, fro þat tyme afterward, sholde not write azens hem þat were ychosen,⁴ but rather help ham by his
lettres to her confirmacioun. & this statut was kept, and dede
16 myche profet & good; & in þis parlement was graunted to þe King a dysme of þe clergy, & a xv of þe lay fee.

¶ The 3ere next⁵ after, of King Edward e xlix, þe v. day of Iuyn, deid Mayster William Wytleysey, Erchebisshope of Caunter-
20 bery. Wherfor þe monkes of þe same chirche asked & desired a Cardinall of Engeland to be Erchebisshop; and þefore þe King was agreued, & had ment and purposed to have exiled þe monkes of þe same hous⁶; & so þey⁷ spended mich good or þey myghte haue þe
24 Kinges grace azen, & his loue; but 3et wold not þe King consente ne graunte to her eleccioun of þe Cardinall, ne þe Pope also, ne his Cardinals.

& about þe bygynnyng of August, it was tretid & spoken at
28 Brugges of certeyn poyntes & articles hauyng bytwene þe Pope and þe King of Engelande; & þis tretis lasted almoste ij. 3ere. At þe⁸ laste it was acorded bytwene ham, þat þe Pope, fro þat ty⁹me forþe, shold nout vse ne dele wiþ þe reseruacions of¹⁰ benefices in Engeland; 32 and þat þe King shold not graunte ne lete no benefices by his wryt þat ys yclept¹¹ 'Quare impedit'; but as touchyng þe eleccions aboute seyde, þere was noþing touchid ne do; & þat was ywyted¹² & put oppon certeyn clerkes, the¹³ whiche rap^{er} supposed & hoped¹⁴
36 to be auanced & promoted to byssshopriches which¹⁵ þey desired & coueyted, by þe court of Rome þan by eny eleccions.¹⁶

¹ ought T. ² þe om. TR. ³ archebisshopriche R. ⁴ chosen TR.

⁵ nexte yeer R. ⁶ chirche R. ⁷ þey om. T. ⁸ þe om. T.

⁹ leaf 196. ¹⁰ of þe R. ¹¹ clept TR. ¹² wyted R. ¹³ the om. T.

¹⁴ hoped & supposed R. ¹⁵ with that T. ¹⁶ þanne oper wise R.

This same 3er about Candelmasse, þere comen & metten togider at Brugges, meny noble and worþy men of boþe reaumes, to treten of pees bituene þo ij. kingdomes. And this tretys lasted twey 3er, wiþ grete costes & houghe spences of¹ boþe 4 parties; & at þe laste þey went & departed þens wiþout eny accorde or effecte.

¶ The next 3er after, þe xlix² 3er of Kyng Edward, þe iiij. None of Maii, beyng 3et void & vacaunt³ þe Erchebisshop of 8 Caunterbury, Maister Symound Sudbury, Bysshop of London, was⁴ made Erchebisshop of Caunterbury; & Maister Will. Courteneye, þat was Bisshop of Herford, was þan made Bysshop of London; & þe Bisshioþ of Bangor was made Bosship of Herford. 12

And in þis same tyme, in a certeyn tretys, & speking of pees, trews was take bytwene Fraunce & Engeland, fro⁵ Missomere vnto Missomere come a3en, al on hool 3er. ¶ And about the bygynnyng of Aprill, þe Duke of Brytayne, wiþ meny Erles,⁶ barons, and 16 noble and⁷ worþy men of Engeland, went ouere see⁸ into Brytaigne, wher he had al his lust, desire & purpos,⁹ ne had þe forsaide trws be so sone ybrake,¹⁰ þe whiche letted hem myche. This same tyme, þe Ile of Constantyn, wher þat the castell of Sent Sauour is yn, þat 20 longe tyme was fought at & byseged of þe Frenshe men, ¹¹ was þan zolden to þe Frenshemen,¹¹ wiþ al þe appurtenaunces, into grete harme & hyndryng of þe reaume of Engeland.

And þe¹² same 3er þere were so ¹³ grete & so passyng hetes, & 24 þerewiþal a grete pestilens in Engeland, & in oþer diuers parties of þe world, þat it destroyed & slow, violently & strongly, both men & wymmen without noumbre.

¶ This same 3er deid Sir Edward, þe lord Spencer, a worthy 28 knyzt and a bolod; & in þe Mynstre of Teukesbury worschipfully is buried.

& lastyng this pestilens, þe Pope, at þe instaunce & prayer of a¹⁴ English Cardinall, graunted to al þe peple þat deid in Engeland 32 þat weren sory and repentaunt for her synnes, & also shryven, ful remyssioun, by ij. bulles vnder lede, vj. monthes þan next to last.

In þis same 3er þe Erl of Penbrook was take & raunsened by¹⁵ Bertram Cleykyn, bytwne Parys & Caleys, as he come towarde 36

¹ on T. ² TR. ³ vacaunt & void R.

⁴ london was T. london þey R. ⁵ fro R. for C. ⁶ erlis & R.

⁷ noble and om. R. ⁸ þe see T. ⁹ purpos and desire R.

¹⁰ ybrake T. take RC. ¹¹⁻¹¹ was þan zolden . . . men om. T.

¹² this TR. ¹³ leaf 196, back. ¹⁴ an T. ¹⁵ bi for R.

Engelonde oppon Seint Etheldredis day; þe whiche Seynt, as hit was said, þe same Erl oft tymes had offended; & wipin a while after, he deide. & in Noumbre¹ next after, þere metten at Brugges
4 þe Duke of Lancastre & þe Duke of Angeoy, wip meny oþer lordes & prelates of boþe reaumes, forto trete of pees.

Of þe depe of prins Edward, & of dame² Alys Perers, & Piers de la Mare. *Capitulo CC xxxviij*^o.³

[*A Parliament held at Westminster, A.D. 1376. Alice Ferrers and Lord Latimer.*]

8 Not⁴ longe after þe lj. 3ere of þe regnyng of King Edward, he lete ordeyned & holde his parlement at Westminster, þe grettest þat was sen meny 3ere afore. In þe whiche parlement, he axed of⁵ Communaltee of þe reaume as he had done byfore, a grete subsede
12 to be graunted to hem, for defendyng of hem and of his reame; but þe communes answered þat 'þey were so oft, day be day, ygreued & charged wip so meny talyagez & subsidies, þat þey myzte
16 no longer suffre non such berþes ne charges; ¶ and þat þey knewyn & wisten wel þat þe King had ynov for sauynge of hem & of his⁶ reaume, yf þe reaume wher wel and trewly gouerned, but þat⁷ ⁸it had be so long euel ygouerned⁹ by euel officers, þat the reaume myzt neither¹⁰ be plenteuous of Chaffare and merchaundise, ne
20 also wip¹¹ richesse: & þese þingez þey profered hem self, if þe King wold, certey[n]ly to preue & stonde by. and if it were found & proued after, þat þe King þan had nede, þey wold þen gladly, euery man, after his power and state, hem wold¹² helpe &
24 lene.'

¶ And after þis, þere were published & shewed in þe parlement meny playntes & defautes of officers of¹³ þe reaume, & namely of þe Lorde Latymer, þe Kingez Chamberlayn, of his euel gouernance, boþe¹⁴ to þe King & eke to þe reame; & at þe laste also þer¹⁵ was tretid & spoken of Dame Alys Pereis, for þe grete¹⁶ wrongez & euel¹⁷ gouernance þat was done by her & by her counceyl in þe reame; þe whiche Dame Alys Perers, þe King had holde long
32 tyme to his lemman. Wherfor hit was þe lesse wonder thogh,

¹ MS. Noübre. ² dame om. T. ³ CC^o T. ⁴ Not TR. Bot C.

⁵ of þe R. ⁶ þe R. ⁷ þat om. R. ⁸ leaf 197. ⁹ gouerned TR.

¹⁰ neuer T. ¹¹ of R. ¹² wold om. R. ¹³ diuers of R.

¹⁴ boþe om. R. ¹⁵ þere it R. ¹⁶ grete om. T.

¹⁷ yuyt T. euel R. wel C.

burgh þe freelte of þe wommannys exciting & her streyng, consentid to her lewednes & evell counceyll. ¶ The which Dame Alys, & also þe Lord Latymer, & also oper¹ such þat sterid þe King to evel gouernaunce, azens his profite & þe reaumes. also al þe communalte 4 of þe reame desired & asked þat þei shold be meved & done² away, & in her stedes, wyse men & worpy þat were trewe, & welle assayed & proued, and of good gouernaunce, shold be put in her stedes. ¶ So amonge all opere, þer was on among þe communes þat was a 8 wys knyzt, & a trewe, & an eloquent man, whos name was Piers de la Mare; & pis same Piers was chosen to be speker for the communes in þe parlement.³ & for þis same⁴ Piers told & publissed þe trewpe, & rehersed meny wronges azens þe forsaid Dame Alys, & 12 oper certeyne persones of þe Kinges counceyl, as he was bode by þe communes, & also trustyng mych forto be supported & maynteyned in þis mater by help & fauour of þe Pryns, anon as þe Pryns was dede, at þe instaunce and ⁵request of þe forsaid Dame 16 Alys, þis Piers de La Mare was iugged to perpetuel prisoun in þe Castell of Notyngham, in þe whiche he was ij. 3ere. & þe vj. kalend of Iuyll, lastyng þat same parlement, deid Prens Edwardes ferst sone, þat is forto sey, in ⁶Trynite Sounday; in þe worship of ⁷ 20 whiche feest he was wont euery 3ere, wher þat euere he were in þe worlde, to make & hold þe moost solempnyte þat he myght. ¶ Whos name & fortune of knizthood, but yf it had bene of ano⁸per⁸ Ectour, al men, both Christen & heþen, while he leuyd & 24 was in good poynt, wondred mych, & dred him wonder sore; whos body is worshipfully beryed at Crycherche of ⁹Caunterbury.

And in þis same 3ere þe man & þe Erles tenauntes of Warwyk arisen maliciously azens þe Abbot & þe Covent of Euesham & her 28 tenauntes, & destroyeden fersly þe Abbot & þe toun, & wounded & bete her men, & slown of hem meny one, & wenten to her maners & places, & dede myche harme, & brekyn doun her parkes & her closes, & brenten & slown her wild bestes, and chaced hem, 32 brekyng her fisshpond hedis, & lete þe water of her pondes, stewes & ryuers, renne out; & token þe fissh, & bere it with hem, & deden hem al þe harme þat þey myzte. ¶ In so ferforth, þat forsoþe þey had be distroyed perpetuely, þat abbay,¹⁰ wiþ all her 36 membres &¹¹ appurtenaunces, but yf þe King þe sonner had

¹ oper om. R.² put R.³ in þe parlement om. T.⁴ same om. R.⁵ leaf 197, back.⁶ on R.⁷ of þe R.⁸ of ano⁸per om. T.⁹ in T.¹⁰ þat abbay om. R.¹¹ & om. T.

holpen hit & taken heed *perto*. and *perfore* þe King sent his
lettres to þe Erle of Warwyk, charging hym, & comaundyng, þat
 he shulde stynt, redresse & amende the evel doers & brekers of his
 4 pees. and so, by menyng of lordes & *opere* frendes of boþe sides
 pece¹ & good acorde & loue was made bytwene hem. ¶ And for
 þis hurlyng, as hit was seyde, þe King wold not be *gouerned* at þat
 tyme by his lordes þat *pere* were in þe *parlement*; ²but he toke and
 8 made his sone, þe Duk of Lancastre, his *gouernour* of þe reaueme;
 the which stood so still *gouernour* til tyme þat he deide.

The same 3ere, anon after Candelmasse, or the *parlement* was
 done, the King axede a subsidie of the clergie and of þe lay fee,
 12 and hit was *graunted* him, þat is forto seye, that he sholde haue of
 euery persone of the lay fee, bothe of men and womman þat passed
 xiiij. 3er age, iiij d.—outake pore beggers that were knowen opynly
 for³ nede, beggers,⁴—and þat he shulde haue of euery man of
 16 holy chirche þat was beneficed or *promoted*, xij d., and of al *opere*
 þat were nout *promoted* iiij d., outake þe iiij. orders of the Frers
 beggers.

¶ This same 3er, after Myghellmasse, Richard, Prin3 Edward3
 20 sone, was made Prins of Walys; to whon þe King also 3af⁵ þe
 Duche of Cornewayl, wyth þe Erldom of Chestre. and aboute þis
 tyme, þe Cardinallis of Engelond, þe forþe day bifore Mary
 Maugdalyne day, after mete, sodeynly was smete & take⁶ wiþ a
 24 palsie, & loste his speche; and on Marye Mawgdalyne day
 he died.

Of the deth of Kinge Edward; and hov Sere John Mounster-
worþ, knight, was drawe and honged for his fals tresoun.

28 **Capitulo CC^{mo}. xxxix^o.⁷**

Ryght anon after, in þe lij 3ere of his⁸ regne, of King Edward,
 in þe begynnyng of October, Pope Gregory þe xj. brou3t
 and remeved wiþ hem his court from Aveyon to Rome.

32 And þe xij. day of Aprill, John Munsterworþe, knight, at
 London was drawen, hanged, and þen byheded; and after, his
 body quartered, and sent to þe .iiij.⁹ chef tounes of Engelond, and
 his heed sette oppon¹⁰ London Brigge. ¶ For þis same Iohn was

¹ pece and T. and C.

² leaf 198.

³ for TR. fro C.

⁴ nedi pouere beggers T. nedy poer beggars R.

⁵ yaf also TR.

⁶ was take and suiye T. & take om. R.

⁷ CC^o T.

⁸ þe TR.

⁹ to foure the T. iiij þe R.

¹⁰ on T.

ful vntrewe to þe ¹ King and to the reaume, and ful coveytous and vnstable; for he toke ofte tymes grete summes of money of þe King and his counceyll for men of armes wages, that he sholde haue payed ham; and take hit into his owne vse. and he, dreding ⁴ at ² the laste he shold he shent and acused, for þe same cause fled pryvily to the King of *Fraunce*, and was swore to hem, and bicomc his man, and behight hym to bringe a ³ grete nave of Spayne in confusion, and distroyende of ⁴ Engelonde. but rightful ⁸ God, to whom no pryvite is vnknewe, suffrede hym ferst to be shent and spilt, or that he sholde so trecherously & falsly, his leige lord, the King of Engelonde, and his peple and his reaume—in the whiche ground the same Iohn was bore wickedly, thourgh ¹² bataill, destroye, or bryng his cursed purpose aboute.

In the feste of Seynt Gregore þo ⁵ next sewynge, King Edward ³af to Richard of Burdeux, his eyr, that was Pryns Edwardes sone, att Wyndesore, the ordre of knyghthod, and made hym knyght. ¹⁶ the which Kyng Edward, whan he had regned lȝ. ⁶ ȝere and more, the xj kalend of Iuyn, he deide at Shene, and is beried worshipfully at Westmynster; on whos soule God haue mercy! Amen!

¹ leaf 198, back.² þat at TR.³ him a T.⁴ of TR. al C.⁵ þe T.⁶ lij R.

APPENDIX B.

[THE CHARACTER OF EDWARD III.]

[MS. Harley 753, fol. 146 ff. (collated with MS. Harley 331 = X, Lambeth 491 = Y, and Lambeth 738 = Z).]

Of þe description¹ of Kyng Edward. Cap^o. CC. xxix^o.²

THis³ Kyng Edward was forsoþe of a passyng goodnesse, and ful gracious amonge aH þe worthymen of þe world; for he passyd⁴ and shone by vertue & grace⁴ yeven to hym fro God, above aH his predecessours þat were noble men & worthy. And he was a wele hard-herted⁵ man, for he dred neuer of none myshappes, ne harmes ne evyH fortune, þat myzt falle a noble warryour, and a fortunable,⁶ 8 bothe⁷ on lond⁸ and on þe see.⁹ And in aH batayle & assembles, with a passyng glory and worshyp¹⁰ he had euere þe victory.

And¹¹ he was meke and benygne, homely, sobre, & softe to aH maner men,¹² as wele to straungres as to his owne subiectes, And to 12 oper þat were vnder his gouernaunce.¹³ He was devoute & holy, bope to God & holy¹⁴ chirch; ffor he was worshipped &¹⁵ mayntened holy chirch and her mynystres with aH maner reuerences.¹⁶ He was treteable & wele avysed in temperaH & worldly nedes, wyse 16 in counseH, and discrete, soft, meke,¹⁷ & good to speke with. In hys dedes & manere, fuH gentiH & wele ytaught, havng pite on hem¹⁸ þat were in dissesse; plentevous in yevyng almesse,¹⁹ Besy²⁰ & corious in bildyng; And fuH lyghtly he bare & suffred 20 wronges and harmes. And whan he was yeve to any occupacion, he left aH oper þynges in²¹ þe mene tyme, and tent²² perto; semly of body, & of mene stature; havng alwey, to high & lowe, a good chere. And þer sprang & shone so moch grace of hym²³ þat, what

¹ distruction MS and Z. ² heading om. Z. ³ The Z.⁴ vertue of grace YZ.⁵ a wel and a hardy hertid Y. a well and an harty hartid Z.⁶ and so fortunable X. a fortunate Y. a ffortynant Z.⁷ for bothe Y. ⁸ on þe lond X. ⁹ on se Z. ¹⁰ glory and Joy Z.¹¹ And om. Y. ¹² maner off men Z. ¹³ his owne Gouvernaunce Z.¹⁴ to holy Z. ¹⁵ worshepid halpe and Z. ¹⁶ of reuerence Z.¹⁷ and meke Z. ¹⁸ to hem XY. ¹⁹ benefytes Z. ²⁰ and Besy Z.²¹ for Z. ²² tent om. Z. ²³ leaf 146, back.

maner man had byholdt his face, or had dremed of hym, he hoped þat day þat aH þyng sholdt hap¹ to hym IoyfuH and lykyng. And he gouerned gloriously hys kyngdom into his age. And² he was large in yevyng, and wyse in spences. He was fulfilled with³ aH 4 honeste of good maners, & vertuous; vnder whom to lyve,⁴ hit was as for to regne; wherfor his name⁵ & his loos sprang so fere þat it came into hethenesse and Barbarye, shewyng and tellyng his worthynesse & manhode in aH londes; And þat in⁶ no lond vnder 8 heven had be⁷ brought forth so noble a kyng,⁸ so gentiH & so blessyd, or myzt reyse such anoþer whan he were dede.

Neuerþelesse,⁹ lechery & mevyng of hys flessH haunted hym in his age; wherfor þe rather, as it was to suppose,¹⁰ for vnmesur- 12 able fulfillyng of hys lust, his lyff shorted þe sonner. And herof takeþ good hede, lyke as hys dedys byfore bereth wytnesse; for, as in hys bygynnyng aH þynges were IoyfuH and lykyng to hym & to aH þe¹¹ peple, And in hys myd age he passed aH men¹² in high 16 Ioye and¹³ worshype and blessydnesse, Ryzt so, whan he drow in-to Age, drawyng downward purgh lechorye and oper¹⁴ synnes, litiH & litiH aH þe IoyfuH and blyssed¹⁵ þynges, good fortune & prosperite decresed and myshapped, And Infortunat þynges, & vnprofytable 20 harmes, with many euele, bygan for to spryng, and, þe more —harne is, conteyned longe tyme after.

¹ ffall Z. ² And om. Z. ³ of Z. ⁴ þe lyffe Z. ⁵ fame YZ.

⁶ in om. YZ. ⁷ be om. XYZ. ⁸ knyzt Z.

⁹ Neuere the latter Y. Neuyr þe latter Z.

¹⁰ suppose for XYZ. ¹¹ þe om. Z. ¹² pepill Z. ¹³ and om. YZ.

¹⁴ affter Z. ¹⁵ blisfull X.

[C]

[FROM THE CORONATION OF RICHARD II (A.D. 1377)
TO THE CAPTURE OF ROUEN (A.D. 1419).]

[*Cambridge University Library MS. Kk. 1. 12.*]

¹ And aftir King Edwarde the thrid, þat was bore at Wyndesore,
Regned Richard of Burdeux, that was Prynce Edwarde;
sone of Walis; which Prince Edwarde was þe sone of²
4 King Edwarde þe iij^{de}.³ *Capitulum cccxxxix.*

And aftir the gode King, King Edwarde the iij^{de}, þat was born
at Wyndesore, Regned Richarde þe ij, þat was þe gode Prince
Edwarde; sone of⁴ Walis; which King Richard was born yn þe
8 cite of Burdeux yn Gasquoyne, and was crown'd at Westminster yn
þe xj yere of his age. ¶ And yn ij⁵ yere of his regne fil þe⁶
debate þat was betuene þe Lorde Latimer and Syr Raaff Ferrers,
kniȝt,⁷ þat were ayens Hawle & Schakele, squiers, for the prysoner
12 þat was take yn the botayle of Spayngne⁸ by þese ij squyers, þe⁹
which þe sayde¹⁰ Lorde Latymer and Ser Raaff Ferrers wolde haue
had; þe which prysoner was þe Erle of Deene, þat þay toke yn þe
batayle of Spayngne.⁸ ¶ Wherefore þese ij lordez comyn yn-to
16 Westminster church,¹¹ and founde þis on Squier heryng his¹² messe
besyde Seint Edwarde; schryne; and there þei slow hym þat me
callyd Hawle; and Schackele was arestid and put yn-to þe Tour of
London; and þere he was long tyme, for¹³ he wolde not delyuer þe
20 Erle of Dene, his prersoner, vnto þe ij lordez by Ser Aleyn Buxhill,
Constable of the tour, and be Ser Raaff Ferrers, one of his aduer-
saries, tyll þe tyme þat¹⁴ þe king grawnted hym grace.

¶ In the iij^{de} yere of King Richarde come þe¹⁵ galies of Fraunce¹⁶
24 yn-to Engelande, vnto dyuers portez, and brent, & Robbyd, and
slow moch pepyll of Engeland, þat is to sey,¹⁷ Wynchilse, Rie,
Hastyngne,¹⁸ Portesmouth, Hampton, Stormore, &¹⁹ Grausende,
and dede moche harm, and wente hom ayen.

¹ leaf 110, back. ² of þe T. ³ þe iij^{de} om. T. ⁴ Prynce of T.

⁵ þe seconde R. ⁶ regne for TR. ⁷ the knyght T.

⁸⁻⁸ om. T. ⁹ and þe R. ¹⁰ sayde om. R.

¹¹ into the Chirche of Westmynstre TR. ¹² his om. T. ¹³ and T

¹⁴ þe tyme þat om. TR. ¹⁵ þe om. T.

¹⁶ yeer off his Regne þe galeys of fraunce come R. ¹⁷ seie at T.

¹⁸ hastyng and T. ¹⁹ and om. T.

[*The Commons' Revolt led by Jack Straw and Wat Tyler.*]

And yn þis same yere was a parlement holden at Westminster; and at þat parlement was ordeyned þat euery man, woman & childe, þat were¹ at þe age of xiiij yere & aboue, þorȝout all þe Reme, pore folke & Rich,² schulde pay to þe talage iiij d; wherfore come 4 aftirwarde grete myschiff & moche deseȝe to alle³ *communialte* of þe Reme. ¶ And yn þe iiij yere of þe regne of King Richarde þe comynes loked vp, &⁴ arysyn vp⁵ yn dyuers partez of þe Reme, and dede moche harm, þe which þei callid⁶ "hurlyng tyme." And 8 þei of Kent & of Essex madyn hem ij cheveteynez to rewle & gouerne þe compayne of Kent & of Essex: þat one⁷ me⁸ callid Jacke Strawe, and þat oper, Watte Tyler; and þai comen and assembled ham vpon þe Blake-Heth yn Kent. And apon the⁹ 12 Corpus Christi day and after, þei comen doune yn-to Southwerk, and brekyn vp þe prison hous, þat is to wite, þe Kingis Bench, and þe¹⁰ Marchalsy, & delyverde out alle þe prisoners. And so þe same day þei comen yn-to London; and þere thay robbyd þe peple, and 16 slowyn alle¹¹ alyens þat þay myȝt fynde yn þe cyte and aboute þe cite, and despoiled alle her godeȝ, and made havoke. ¶ And on the Fridai¹² next aftir, þat was on þe morowe, thei comyn vn¹³to þe Tour of London; and the king beyng þere-yn, þei sette out of þe 20 Tour þe Archebishop of Caunturbury, Maistir Symond¹⁴ Sudbery, and Ser Robert Haleȝ, Pryour¹⁵ of Saint Johnes,¹⁶ and a Whit Frere þat was confessour vn to King Richarde, and brouȝt ham vnto þe Tour Hill; and þere þay smytyn of her hedys, and comyn ayen to 24 London, & slowyn mo peple of men of lawe, and oper worthi men yn dyuers parteyez of þe cite. And þanne went þai¹⁷ to the Dukeȝ place of Lancastre, beyonde Saint Mary Stronde, þat was callyd Savoy.¹⁸ ¶ And þere þei deuoured & destroyed al þe godeȝ þat þay 28 myȝt fynde,¹⁹ and bare ham away, and brent vp þe place. And þanne aftir þey went to Seint Johnes without Smythffelde, and destroyed þe godes,²⁰ & brent vp þat hous, and went to Westminster, and so to Sent Martyneȝ þe Graunt, and made hem go²¹ out of 32

¹ weren T. were R. om. Kk. ² and oper T.

³ aȝ þe T. al þe R. ⁴ loked vp & om. TR.

⁵ vp om. R. ⁶ callid þe TR. ⁷ one om. R. ⁸ þat men T.

⁹ Kent on TR. ¹⁰ þe om. T. ¹¹ alle þe TR.

¹² leaf 111. ¹³ vn om. T. ¹⁴ sir Edmunde TR.

¹⁵ hospitaler prioure and maistir T. ¹⁶ Iohnes house T.

¹⁷ þei wenten T. þey wente R. ¹⁸ þe Savey T. ¹⁹ fynde þere R.

²⁰ goodis there T. ²¹ to go TR.

þe sayntwarye, alle¹ þat were þere² ynne for eny maner of³ gryth.⁴

¶ And þanne come vnto þe Temple, and to alle oþer ynnez of men
 4 of lawe, & dispoyled ham and rebbed ham of⁵ her godez, and also
 taare hir bokis of law; and þai⁶ come to London, and brake vp the
 pryson of Newgate, & droff out alle þe prisoners, felons, & opir of⁷
 bothe countres, and alle þe peple þat was with-ynne ham, &
 8 destroyed alle þe bokis of bothe countres; and þus þay contynued
 forth, both Saturday and Sunday,⁸ vnto⁹ þe Monday next folowyng,
 yn alle hir¹⁰ malice & wickydenesse. And þanne,¹¹ on the Monday,
 King Richard, with his lordez þat were with hym þat tyme, and¹²
 12 with þe Meire of London, William Walworth, þe¹³ aldermen & þe
 commynez of þe cite, come¹⁴ yn¹⁵ to Southwerk¹⁶ to here &¹⁷ know
 þe entencion of þese rebellis and misgouerned pepil.¹⁸ ¶ And þis
 Iack Straw þanne made an oyes in þe felde, þat alle þe pepyl of
 16 accorde schulde come nere, & here his clamour and¹⁹ his crye and
 his will, and þe lordez, and þe Mayre and þe aldermen, with þe
 communalte, hauyng indignacion of his Covetise and Falsnesse,
 and his foule presompcion; and anon William Walworth, þat tyme
 20 beyng Mayre, drew out his knyff, and slow Iack Straw, and anon
 ryzt þere dede smyzt of his hed, and sette it vp apon²⁰ a spere-
 schafte; and so it was bore prou3 London, & set on high vp on
 London Brygge. ¶ And²¹ anon alle þe²² rysers and mysgouernyd
 24 men were voyded and²³ vanysched, as hit hadde not byn þay.
 ¶ And²⁴ þe king, of his grete godenesse, and by prayer of his lordez,
 made þere vj knyztis of gode & worthi men of þe cite of London,
 þat is,²⁵ William Walworth—þat tyme was²⁶ Mayre and slow Iack
 28 Straw,—& ij^{de}²⁷ was Nicholas Brembre, þe²⁸ iij was²⁹ John Phily-
 pot, the²⁸ iiij was³⁰ Nicholas Twyfford, þe²⁸ fyffþe was²⁹ Robert
 Lawnde3, þe²⁸ vj, Robert Gayton. ¶ And þanne þe king, with his
 lordez and his³¹ kny3tes, retourned ayen vnto the Tour of London;
 32 and þere he restid hym tulle his³² peple were bettir cecyd, & seet yn

¹ alle om. R. ² with T. *þere om. R.* ³ of om. R. ⁴ gryth om. T.
⁵ of TR. or Kk. ⁶ þanne þai T. *þanne þey R.* ⁷ and of TR.
⁸ vnto þe Sunday T. ⁹ and vnto T. ¹⁰ her maner of T.
¹¹ þanne om. T. ¹² and om. T. ¹³ þat was þat tyme come with þe TR.
¹⁴ and come T. ¹⁵ yn om. T. ¹⁶ Smythfelde R. ¹⁷ and to T.
¹⁸ peple þat so reuyd and robbid T.
¹⁹ and here his clamouris and T. and here his clamour and R. om. Kk.
²⁰ vpon T. it vpon R. ²¹ And om. T. ²² þese T. *þize R.*
²³ and clene T. & clene R. ²⁴ And thanne T. and þanne R.
²⁵ is to saie T. is to say R. ²⁶ þat was þat tyme T. ²⁷ þe ije T.
²⁸ and þe T. ²⁹ was om. TR. ³⁰ was om. T. ³¹ his om. R. ³² this T.

rest and peeze. ¶ And þanne, by processe of tyme, as þay myzt gete and take þeze ¹Rebellis & rysers, they hanged ham vp on ²the next galous yn euery lordesschippe throuz þe ³Reme of Engelond, ⁴be xl & be xxx, be ⁵x. & be xij., euer as þay myghte be goton & take ⁶4 yn eny parteys.

¶ And yn þe v. yere of King Richardez Regne was þe grete Erthe quake; and þat ⁷was do ⁸generally ovir ⁹alle þe worlde,— the Wedynesday aftir Whitsonday, yn the yere after ¹⁰incarnacion 8 of our Lorde Ihesu crist, m¹ ccc. iij^{xx} xj, ¹¹where-of alle þe peple were sore agast, and drad ¹²long tyme aftir, for þe grete ¹³vengauce and grete drede þat our Lorde God schewed and dede.

¶ In ¹⁴þe vj zere of his regne, ¹⁵Ser Henri Spenser, Bischop of 12 Northwych, went *with* a crouseray ouer þe see yn-to þe contre of Flawndrez; & þere he ¹⁶gate þe towne of Grauenyng, & ¹⁷þe toun of Oldenburgh, ¹⁸Dunkirk, and Newport; and þere þai ladde & fryzt .i.j. schyppez *with* peleage ¹⁹for to haue come yn to Engelonde 16 *with* alle þese schippes and goodis, ²⁰and þe Bischop of Northwich and his counsel lette brenne þese schippe, with al þe peleage, yn þe same havynne, all yn-to hard ashes.

¶ And at Dunkirk was don a grete batayle betuene þe Flemyngez 20 and þe Englisch men; and ²¹at þat batayle was slayn a gret multitude of þese Flemyngez, and a passyng noumbre. ¶ And þanne went þe bischop with his retynu vn-to Iprez, and besegid it a long tyme; but it myzt not be gote, and so he lefte þat sege, and come 24 ayen yn-to Engelond, for our Englischmen were foule destroyed, and mony deied on þe Flyx.

[*Anne of Bohemia comes to wed Richard II.*]

¶ And yn þis same zere come Quene Anne yn-to Engelond, for to be spouses vnto King Richard; and hir fadir was Emperour 28 of Almayne, and King of Beeme. And with hir came þe Duk of Tassy and hir vncl, and mony oþer worthi lordez & knižtes ²²of hir cuntre of Beeme, and of oþer Duch tungez, to do hir reuerence

¹ leaf 111, back. ² vpon T. ³ out þe TR. ⁴ of Engelond om. T.
⁵ and bi T. ⁶ be take and gete T. ⁷ hit T. ⁸ do om. T.
⁹ ouer T. ¹⁰ after the T. after þe R. ¹¹ and xj T. ¹² a dred T.
¹³ girte om. TR. ¹⁴ And in TR.
¹⁵ of þe reigne of kyng Richard T. of þe reigne of king Richarde R.
¹⁶ and þei T. þey R. ¹⁷ & om. ¹⁸ Broburgh T.
¹⁹ pilage T. pesage Kk.
²⁰ with these shippis and goodis T. with þeze shippes & godis R. om. Kk.
²¹ and om. T. ²² knyghtis and lordis T.

and worschip. ¶ And Ser Symond Beuyrley, a worthi Knyzt of þe Gartyr,¹ & oper knyztis and squyers þat were þe Kingis embassetoures, brouzt hir yn-to Engelond, and so ferthe to London.

4 ¶ And þe pe[p]le of þe cite, þat is to saye, þe Mayre & þe Aldermen and alle þe² comynez, rydyn ayens hir to welcome hir; and euery man yn gode aray, and euery craft with his Mynstralcye, yn þe best maner, mette with hir on þe Blak-Heth yn Kent, & so
8 brouzt hir to³ London þrouz þe cite, and so forth yn to⁴ Westemystre, vn-to þe kingez palice; and þere sche was spoused vnto King Richard, welle and worthily, yn þe Abbey of Westmynstre; and þere sche was crouned Quene of Engelond; and alle hir frendis
12 þat comyn *with* hir hadde gret yeftis, and hadde grete chere, and were wel refresched⁵ as long tyme as þai abyden here.

¶ And yn þis same yere was a batayle do with-ynne þe kingez Palys at Westmynstre, for certeyne poyntis of treson, betuene Ser
16 Iohn of Ansley, knyzt, defendaunt, and Karton, Squyere, þe appellaunt; but þis Ser Iohn of Ansley ouyr-come þis Carton, & made hym⁶ to yolde hym withynne þe listis, and anon þis Craton (*sic*) was⁷ dispoyled of his harnez and drawe out of þe lystis,
20 and so forth to⁸ Tyborne; and þere he was hangyd for his falsnesse.

¶ And yn⁹ the viij yere of his Regne¹⁰ Ser Edmunde of Langele, Erle of Cawmebrygge, þe kingez vncle, wente vnto¹¹ Portingale with a Fayre manye of men of armez and archers, yn helpyng & streyng-
24 thyng¹² of þe King of Portyngale ayens þe King of Spayngne and his power. and þere þe King of Portyngale hadde þe victory of his Enymyez, þrouz help and comfort of our Englysch men. And whanne þat iornay was y¹³do, The Erle of Cawmbrige com hom
28 ayen with his peple yn-to Engelond yn haste; blessid be Gode and his gracious yeft! Amen!

¶ And þis same yere, Kinge Richarde hylde his Cristismesse yn þe Maner of Estham (*sic*). And þe same tyme, þe King of Ermony
32 fledde out of his owne londe, and come yn-to Engelond, for to haue socour and help of our King ayens his enymyez, þat hadde dreve hym of¹⁴ his Reme; and so he was brouzt vn-to¹⁵ þe King to Eltham, þere as þe King hylde his realle feest of Cristismasse; and

¹ MS. gartyd. ² þe *om.* T. ³ into T. ⁴ vnto T.

⁵ and weren wele cherid and refresshid T. & well were chered & refresched R.

⁶ leaf 112. ⁷ was *om.* T. ⁸ to þe T. ⁹ yn *om.* T.

¹⁰ þe reigne of kyng Richard T. ¹¹ into T.

¹² in strengthyng and helpyng T. in strengthinge & helpinge R.

¹³ y *om.* TR. ¹⁴ out of T. ¹⁵ to R.

þere oure King welcomed hym, and dede hym reuerence & worschip, and commawnded alle his¹ lordez to make hym alle þe chere þat þay cowthe. and þanne he besouzt the King² of grace and help, and of his comfort yn his nede, and þat he myzt be brozt 4 ayen yn³ to his owne kingedom and londe, for þe Turkez hadde deuoured & destroyed moch parte of his londe; and for drede he fledde, & come hider for socoure and helpe. ¶ And than⁴ þe King, hauyng compassion of his gret myschiffe and greuos deseze, 8 anon⁵ he toke his Counsel, and axed what was best to do. and þai answered and sayde, ‘yef it likyd hym to yeue hym eny gode, it were welle ydo: and as towchyng his peple, to Trauayle so fer yn-to out-londez, it were a grete ieparde’; and so þe King yaf hym golde 12 and seluyr, and many richez⁶ and iewellis, and betauzt hym to God; and so he passed ayen out of Engelond.

¶ And yn þis same yere King Richarde, with a ryall power, went yn-to Scotland for to war ayen⁷ þe Scottis, for hir Falsnesse and 16 destruction þat þay⁸ hadde do ayens⁹ þe¹⁰ English men yn þe Marchis. And þe¹¹ Scottis come down¹² for to trete¹³ with hym¹⁴ & with his lordez for trewes, as for certeyn yeres; and so oure Kyng and his Counsel graunted hem trewes certyn yeres¹⁵ vnto 20 her axyng, and our King turned hym hom ayen yn-to Englonde. ¶ And whanne he was come vnto¹⁶ Yorke, þere he aboode and restyd hym. and¹⁷ þere Ser John Helond, þe Erle of Kentis broþer, slow þe Erlis sone of Staffarde and his heyre with a daggar 24 yn þe cite of Yorke, wherfor the King was sore amoued and grevid, & remeyvd fro þennez and come to London; and þe Meire and þe Aldermen and þe commyns, with alle þe solempnite þat þay¹⁸ 19 myghte do,²⁰ rydyn ayens þe King, and brouzt hym ryally throuz 28 the cite, & so forth vnto Westmynstre vnto his owne Palis.

¶ And yn þe ix yere of his regne²¹ he hadde²² a parlement at Westminster, & þere he made ij dukes, and a Markques & v. erlez:

¹ þe T. ² the king *om.* T. ³ yn *om.* TR. ⁴ than *om.* T.

⁵ and *om.* TR. and anon Kk. ⁶ riche yiftis T. rich ziftis R.

⁷ vpon R. ⁸ þe Scottis T. ⁹ to T. ¹⁰ do vnto R.

¹¹ þanne þe T. ¹² downe vnto þe kyng T.

¹³ entrete T. ¹⁴ with him TR. hym Kk.

¹⁵ yeeris, and so oure kyng and his counceile grauntid hem trewes certeyne yeris T. yeris and so þe king & his counsel graunted ham trewis certayn yeres R. *om.* Kk.

¹⁶ to T. ¹⁷ and *om.* TR. ¹⁸ þay *om.* ¹⁹ leaf 112, back.

²⁰ þat myghte be do R.

²¹ of kyng Richardis reigne T. yeer of kyng Richardis Regne he held R.

²² helde T.

- þe first þat was mad Duk, was þe Kinge; vnclē, *Ser* Edmund¹ of Langeley and² Erle of Caumbrigge; and hym he³ made⁴ Duk of Yorke; and his oper vnclē, *Ser* Thomas of Wodestoke, þat was Erle of Bokingham, he made Duke of Gloucestre, and *Ser* Lover, þat was Erle of Oxynforde, he⁵ made Marques of Denelyn; and Henry of Bolyngbroke, þe Duke; son of Lancastre, he⁶ made Erle of Derby; and *Ser* Edward, þe Dukes sone of York, he⁶ made Erle of Ruthlond; *Ser* John Holande, þat was þe Erle of Kentis brother, he⁶ made Erle of Huntyngton; *Ser* Thomas Mombraie, Erle of Notyngham, & Erle Marchall of Engelond; and *Ser*⁷ Michell of Pole, knyzt, he⁶ made Erle of Suffolke and Chaunceler of Engelond.
- 12 ¶ And the Erle of the⁸ March, at þat same⁹ parlement holdon at Westemynstre, yn¹⁰ playne parlement among al þe Lordez and Comyns, was proclaymed Erle of the March, and heyre¹¹ parant vnto¹² þe crowne of Engelonde aftir King Richarde. ¶ The which
- 16 Erle of the¹³ Marche went ouyr¹⁴ see yn-to Ireland vnto his lodeschippes and londez, for the Erle of¹⁵ Marche is Erle of Vlcestre yn Irelande, and¹⁶ by ryzt lyne and heritage. and at¹⁷ a¹⁸ Castill of his he lay þat tyme; and þere come apon¹⁹ hym a grete multitude yn
- 20 buschmentis of wilde Iryschmen, hym for to take and distroye, and he come out ffersly of his Castell with his peple, and manly ffauzt with ham; and þere he was take, and hew al to pecis, and þere he²⁰ deied; on whose soule God haue mercy! Amen!
- 24 ¶ And yn the .x. yere of King Richarde; regne, þe Erle of Arundell went to²¹ þe see with a grete Naueye of schippes, enarmed with men of armez and gode archers. And as²² þai come yn to þe brode see, þei mette with þe hole flytte þat come lade with wyne²³
- 28 from Rochell; and²⁴ the wynez were Enymyez godes; and þeron oure²⁵ Naueye sette apoin²⁶ ham, and toke ham alle, and brouzt hym yn to²⁷ diuers portiz and hauons of²⁸ Engelond, & sum to London: and þere þe myzte haue hedde a ton of Rochel wyne of þe beste for
- 32 xx s. of sterlynges; and so we hadde gret chep of wyne þrouz-out þe Reme at þat tyme, þankyd be God Almyzty!

¹ Symonde T. ² and *om.* TR. ³ he *om.* R.
⁴ and he was made T. ⁵ him T. ⁶ him he T. ⁷ *sir* TR. for Kk.
⁸ the *om.* TR. ⁹ same tyme of þe T. ¹⁰ in þe T. ¹¹ heir of R.
¹² to TR. ¹³ the *om.* TR. ¹⁴ ouer þe TR. ¹⁵ of the T.
¹⁶ and *om.* R. ¹⁷ there at T. þere at R. ¹⁸ þe R. ¹⁹ vpon TR.
²⁰ he *om.* T. ²¹ vnto TR. ²² And as T. and Kk.
²³ comen wyne lade T. with wyne *om.* R. ²⁴ and *om.* T.
²⁵ and þere oure T. þere our R. and þeron Kk. ²⁶ vpon TR.
²⁷ vnto R. ²⁸ into T.

How þe .v. lordez; arysen at Ratcot brydge, ye schul here.¹

*Capitulum cexl.*²

And yn þe a.xj yere of King Richarde; regne,³ þe .v. lordez reson at Ratcote brygge, yn⁴ destroccon of the⁵ *Rebellis* þat weryn 4 þat tyme yn alle this⁶ Reme. ¶ The first of the .v. lordez was *Ser Thomas* of Wodestoke, þe Kingis vncler, and Duk of Gloucestre; þe⁷ ij was *Ser Richarde*, Erle of Arundell; þe⁸ iij was *Ser Richard*, Erle of Warwic; þe iiij was *Ser Harri*⁹ Bolyngbroke, Erle of Derby, 8 and þe .v. was *Ser Thomas* Mouubray, Erle of Notygham. ¶ And þeþe .v. lordez sawe þe myschif, and mysgouernaunce, and þe Falsnesse of the Kinges counsell; wherfor þai þat were of þe Kinges kounsel chef,¹⁰ fleddyn out of þis londe ouer þe see, þat is to say, 12 *Ser Alisaunder* Neuyle, Archebisshop¹¹ of York, *Ser Robert* le Veere, ¹²*Marquis* of Develyn and Erle of Oxynforde; *Ser*¹³ *Michel* de la Pole, Erle of Suffolke and Chaunceler of Engeland. and þese iij. lordez went ouyr see,¹⁴ and cam nevir ayen, for there þay deied. 16 And þan¹⁵ þeþe .v. lordez forsaide¹⁶ maden¹⁷ a *parlement* at Westmystre, and þere thay tokyn *Ser Robert* Tresilian, þe Iustize, and *Ser Nicholl* Brembre, knyzt an¹⁸ citezein of London, and *Ser Iohn* Salesbury, knyzt of the Kingis housholde, & Vske, sergeaunt of 20 arme; and mony moo of oper peple were take and Iuged vnto¹⁹ deth by þe counsel of þese .v. lordez yn hir *parlement* at Westminster, for treson þat þai put apon ham, to be draw fro þe²⁰ Tour of London þrouz þe cite, and so forth to Tyburne; and þere to be 24 hangyd, and þere her þrotis to be kut; and þus þei were serued, and deiden.

And aftir þat, yn þis same *parlement*, was²¹ *Ser Symond* of²² Beverlay, þat was a Knyzt of þe Garter, and *Ser John* Beauchamp, 28 knyzt, þat was Steward of the Kingis housholde, and *Ser Iamez* Berners, were for-Iuged vn-to²³ deth; and²⁴ þay wer ladd on fote vn-to²⁵ þe Toure Hille; and þere were her hedis smytyn of, and mony other mo, be þeþe .v. lordez. 32

¹ ye schul here *om.* TR. ² CC^o T. CCxlj R.

³ in the reigne of kyng Richard þe xj^o yeer T. þe Regne of king Richarde þe xj yeer R. ⁴ in þe T. ⁵ the *om.* TR. ⁶ þe TR.

⁷ and þe T. ⁸ And þe T. ⁹ henri of R.

¹⁰ weren that tyme cheef of þe kyngis counceile T. were þat tyme chief of þe kinges counsell R. ¹¹ the Erchebisshop T. ¹² leaf 113.

¹³ and *sir* T. ¹⁴ þe see TR. ¹⁵ þan *om.* T. ¹⁶ forseide v. lordis T.

¹⁷ aboue seide maden T. ¹⁸ and T. & R. ¹⁹ vnto þe T.

²⁰ þe T. þo Kk. ²¹ at Westmynstre was T. ²² of *om.* T.

²³ vnto the T. ²⁴ and þanne T. & þanne R. ²⁵ to TR.

[*Jousts in Smithfield, A.D. 1388.*]

¶ In þis¹ forsaide parlement, and in þe xij ȝere of King Richardeȝ regne, he let crye and ordeyne² generalle Iustize, þat is called a turnement, of lordez, knyȝtis and skquiers. ¶ And þese 4 Iustes & turnement were holden at London in Smithfelde, for alle maner of strayngers, of what londe &³ cunctre þei⁴ were, and⁵ þidir þei were riȝt welcome; and to hem and to alle oþer was holden opon housholde and grete ffestis; and also grete yftis were 8 yeue to alle maner of straungers. And þay⁶ of the kinges syde were⁷ alle of on⁸ sute: her cotis, her armyour, scheldeȝ, & her⁹ hors &¹⁰ trapure, alle¹¹ was white hertis, with crowneȝ about her nekkis, and cheyneȝ of golde hangyng þere vp-on, and þe crowne 12 hangyng lowe before þe hertis body; þe which hert was þe kingeȝ lyveray þat he yaf to lordez & ladieȝ, knyȝtis and skquiers, for to know his housholde from oþer peple. ¶ And at þis first comyng to her Iustes, xxiiij ladieȝ ladde þese xxiiij lordez of þe Garther with 16 cheynys of goolde, and alle yn þe same sute of hertis as is afore sayde, from þe Tour on hors bak þrouȝ the cite of London yn-to Smythfelde, þere þe Iustes schulde be do.¹² And þis fest and Iustes was holde general, and¹³ to alle þo þat wolde come, of what land or 20 nacion þat euyr he¹⁴ were; and þis¹⁵ was holde duryng xxiiij dayeȝ, of þe kingeȝ owne cost; and þese xxiiij lordez to answeere to¹⁶ alle maner of¹⁷ pepil þat wolde come þidir. And þedir come þe Erle of seint Poule of Fraunce, and mony oþer worthi knyȝtes with 24 hym of diuers parteȝ, fful welle arayed.¹⁸ And out of Holand & Henaude come þe Lorde Ostrenaunde, þat was þe Dukeȝ sone of Holande, & mony oþer worthi knyȝtes with hym, bothe¹⁹ of Holand & Henaude²⁰ fulle welle arayed. And whenne þese feste and 28 Iustes was do and²¹ endid, þe King þanked þese st[r]ayngers and yaf ham mony grete yeftis; and þanne þei token hir leue of þe King & of oþer lordez and ladyeȝ, and went hom ayen yn-to her owne cuntre, with grete loue & moche þanke.

32 ¶ And yn þe xiiij yere²² of King Richardeȝ regne, þer was a

¹ this same T. þis same R. ² ordeyne a T. ³ or TR.⁴ what so euer þei T. ⁵ of & T. off and R. ⁶ þay om. TR.⁷ þey were R. ⁸ on om. T. o R. ⁹ & her om. TR. ¹⁰ & om. TR.¹¹ and alle T. & aH R. ¹² holde T. ¹³ and om. T.¹⁴ thei T. þei R. ¹⁵ þis om. T. ¹⁶ to om. TR. ¹⁷ of om. TR.¹⁸ MS. Kk. wrongly inserts here ¶ And þez Fest & Iustes was endid, þe king thankyd þese. And þes ffest & . . . þese om. TR.¹⁹ bothe om. T. ²⁰ henaude om. T ²¹ do and om. TR.²² leaf 113, back.

batayle y¹do yn the Kingis palis at Westmynstre, betwene a skquyer of Nauerne þat was with þe king, and anoþer skquier þat me callid John Walsch, of² poyntis of treson þat þis Nauerner put vp-on þis Walsch ; but þis Nauerner was ouercome, and yelde hym craunt to 4 his aduersarye, and anon he was dispoyled of his armyour, and draw out of þe palis vnto Tyburne, and þere he was hangyd for his falsnesse.

¶ And þe xiiij yere of þe regne of King Richard, Ser John of 8 Gaunt, Duk of Lancastre, went ouyr se³ yn-to Spayne,—for to chalenge his ryzt, þat he hadde be his wifez tytill, vnto þe crowne of Spayngne,—with a gret ost of pepil, of men of armez and archers. And he⁴ had⁵ with hym þe Duchesse, his wyff, and his 12 iij douztres, yn-to⁶ Sp[a]yne, and þere⁷ þay weryn a grete while. ¶ And at þe⁸ last, þe King of Spayne began to trete with þe Duke of Lancastre, and þay were accorded to-gadir þrouz hir boþe counsel, yn þis maner : þat þe King of Spayne schulde wedde þe Dukez 16 douzter of⁹ Lancastre, þat was þe¹⁰ ryzt. heire to Spayne, and¹¹ schulde yeue to¹² þe Duk of Lancastre golde and seluyr, þat was cast yn-to grete weggez, and mony oþir iewellis, as mony as viij Charietis myzt carye. ¶ And euery yere aftir, duryng þe lyff of þe 20 Duke of Lancastre and of the¹³ Duchesse his wyff, .x. M^t Marke of golde, þe which golde aventure and¹⁴ chargez, þay of Spayne schulde aventure and bryng yerley to¹⁵ Baione to þe Dukes assygnez, be surete made. ¶ Also þe Duk of Lancastre married anoþer of his 24 douztres vnto þe King of Portingale þe same tyme. And whanne he hadde do þis,¹⁶ he come hom ayen yn-to Engelond, and þe gode lady his wyff also ; but mony a worthi man yn þat viage deid vpon þe Flix.¹⁷ 28

¶ And yn þe xv yere of King Richardez regne, he hilde his Cristismasse yn þe Maner of Wodestoke ; and there þe Erle of Penbroke, a yong lorde, &¹⁸ tendir of age, wolde lerne to Iuste with a kniȝt me¹⁹ callid Ser Iohn Saint-Iohn, & redyn to gadir yn 32 þe park of Wodestoke ; and þere þis worthi Erle of Pembroke was slayn with þat oþer knightes spere, as he cast hit fro hym whanne

¹ y om. TR. ² for T. ³ þe see T. ⁴ he om. T. ⁵ ladde R.

⁶ ouer þe see with him into T.

⁷ and there T. and þere R. and Kk. ⁸ þe om. T.

⁹ of TR. om. Kk. ¹⁰ þe om. R. ¹¹ and þe kyng of Spayne T.

¹² vnto TR. ¹³ his T. ¹⁴ and om. T. ¹⁵ vnto R.

¹⁶ þus T. ¹⁷ viage vpon þe flixie died T. ¹⁸ and a T.

¹⁹ þat men T. þat me R.

he¹ had cowped; and þus þis gode Erle made þere his ende; for whose dethe² þe King and the Quene made moche sorow.³

¶ And yn þe xvj yere of Kyng Richard his regne,⁴ Iohn Hende
4 beyng þat tyme Maire of London, and Iohn Walworth & Henry
Vannere beyng scherreffes of London, þat⁵ tyme a bakers man bare
a basket of horsbred yn to Flet-strete, toward an ostrye hous; and
þere come a yemon of þe Bischoppis of Salysbury, þat was callyd
8 Romayn, and he tok an horsloff out of þe basket of þe baker⁶; and
he askyd hym 'whi he dede so.' And þis Romayn turned ayen, and
brak þe bakers hedde; and neybourez come out, and wolde haue
restid þis Romayne; and he brak from ham and fledde yn-to þe
12 lordez place. and þe counstabilis wolde haue hadde hym out; but þe
Bischopez men schitte þe zatis fast,⁷ and kept þe place þat no man
myzte entre. And þanne moch more pepil gadryd þedir, & saide
þat 'þai wolde haue hym out, or⁸ ellis þei wolde brenne vp þe place,
16 and alle⁹ that were with-ynne.' ¶ And þanne come þe Maire and¹⁰
Schereffez, with oþir myche pepill, and cecid þe malice of þe
comynez, and made euery man go¹¹ hom to his¹² hous, and kepe þe
peeze. ¶ Thanne¹³ þez Romaynes lorde, þe Bisshop of Salusbery, *Ser*
20 Iohn Waltam (þat was þat tyme treserer of Engeland) went to *Ser*
Thomas Arundel,¹⁴ Archebisshop of York, and also Chaun[ee]ler of
Engelonde, and to hym made his complaynt¹⁵ vpon þe peple of þe
cite of London. ¶ And þanne þeze ij Bischopez, of grete malice
24 and vengeance, comyn vnto¹⁶ the King to Wyndesore, and made a
grete complaynte vpon the Maire and the Schereffes; and anon
aftirward alle þe cite¹⁷ was before þe King and his consel, and þai
cast vn-to¹⁸ ham a greuous herte, and wondir grete malice. ¶ And
28 anon sodenly þe King sent for þe Maire of London & for þe ij
scherreffez; and þai cam to¹⁹ hym to þe Castell of Wyndesore.
And þe King rebukyd þe Maire and þe scherreffes fulle foule, for þe
offens þat þai hadde do ayens hym & his officers, yn his chaumbir
32 of²⁰ London. ¶ Wherfore he deposid & put out the Mayre of

¹ þei TR. ² eende and þerfore T. ³ sorow for his deeth T.

⁴ of kyng Richardis reigne T. yeer of king Richardis regne R. his regne Kk.

⁵ þe same TR. ⁶ þe bakers basket T.

⁷ fast om. T. shette faste þe yatis R. ⁸ and R. ⁹ leaf 114.

¹⁰ and þe TR. ¹¹ to gone T. ¹² her T. ¹³ And thanne T.

¹⁴ of ArundeH T.

¹⁵ and þere þe bisshop made his compleynt vnto þe chaunceler T. an pere made his complaynt to him R.

¹⁶ to T. ¹⁷ anon aft þe Citee aftirward T. ¹⁸ to T.

¹⁹ vnto T. ²⁰ at TR.

London¹ and þe ij² Scherrevez; and þis was don xiiij³ dayez afore þe Fest of saint Iohn the Baptist. ¶ And þanne þe King callyd to hym a kniȝt þat me called *Ser Edward Valynggrigge*,⁴ and made hym warden and gouernoure of þe cite, & Chaumbyr of 4 London, and ouyr alle his pepil þereynne; and so he kept þat office but iiij wokis, because he was so tendir and gentill vn-to þe cetezens of London; wherfore þe King deposyd hym, and made *Ser Bawdewyn Radyngton*, knyȝt, þat was Countroller of þe Kingis Hous- 8 holde, wardeyne and gouernoure of his chaumbyr, and of his⁵ peple þereynne; and chese vnto hym to worthi men of þe cite to be Schereviz with hym, for to gouerne & kepe þe kingez lawez yn the cite; & on me called *Gylbert Maghfelde*, and þat oper, Thomas 12 Newenton, And þeze iij gode men hadde þe gouernaunce of þe cite vn-to þe tyme of þe Maires eleccion þanne next,⁶ þat was called *William Stawnden*⁷; And þis *Gilbert Maghfelde* & *Thomas Newnton*, schereff. ¶ And þanne þe Mayre & þe ij schirrevez,¹⁶ and alle þe aldermen, with alle þe worthi craftis of London, went on fote vn to þe Tour; and þere came out þe Counstable of þe Tour, and yaff þe Maire and þe Scherevez her othe, and charge,⁸ as þay scholde haue take yn the Chequer at⁹ Westmynstre yn 20 þe Kingez Court of his Iustizes & Barons of the sayde¹⁰ Cheker; and þanne went thay whom ayenne.

¶ And þanne þe King and his Counsel, for grete malice of þe Cite of London, and¹¹ despite, remevid alle his Courtez fro¹² West- 24 mynstre vn-to þe cete of Yorke, þat is to say, þe Chauncerie, þe Cheker, þe¹³ Kingez Bench, and also þe Comyn Place, and þere þay hilde alle her¹⁴ Courtis of Law fro mydsomer vn-to¹⁵ þe fest of Cristismesse next comyng. ¶ And þanne þe King & his counsel 28 sawe it not so profitable þere, as it was at London; þanne anon he¹⁶ remevid hit ayen to¹⁷ London, and so to Westmynstre, for gret ese of his officers and avauntage of¹⁸ þe King and of¹⁹ alle þe comyns of þe Reme. 32

¶ And whenne þe²⁰ peple of London sawe & knew þat þese

¹ of London *om.* TR. ² and boþe TR. and for the ij Kk. ³ a xiiij T.

⁴ *Walyngrigge T. Walingrugge R.* ⁵ þe TR. ⁶ next þanne T.

⁷ *Wiliam Staundon* was chosen mayre T. nexte *William Staundon* chosen meire R.

⁸ hir charge and oth R. ⁹ of T. ¹⁰ sayde *om.* TR. ¹¹ and for R.

¹² from T. fro R. for Kk. ¹³ and þe T. ¹⁴ þese T. his R.

¹⁵ midsomer that is to saie þe feste of seynt Iohn þe Baptist vnto T.

¹⁶ leaf 114. back. ¹⁷ vnto TR. ¹⁸ for R. ¹⁹ of *om.* TR.

²⁰ þe *om.* TR.

courtis were come ayen, and þe King and his peple also,¹ þanne þe Maire and þe Aldermen, with þe Cheff² comyns, let gadir a grete summe of goolde of alle þe comyns of the cite, & ordeyned & made grete rialte ayens his comyng to London, for³ to haue his grace and gode⁴ lordeschip, and also her liberteis and Fraunchezes graunted vnto ham ayen as þai afore tyme hadde. And þann, by grete instance and praier of Quene Anne, and of oþer⁵ lordez and ladez, þe King graunted hem grace: and þis was do at Schene yn Sothereye. ¶ And þan⁶ þe King with-ynne ij⁷ dayez aftir, com to London; and þe Maire of London,⁸ schereue^z, aldremen,⁹ and alle þe worthi cite aftirward, redyn ayens þe King yn gode araye vnto þe heth on þis syde þe maner of Schene, submittyng humyly hem self,¹⁰ and mekely, with¹¹ almaner of¹² obeysaunce^z vn-to hym, as þay owed to¹³ do. And þus þai brouzt þe King and þe Quene to London. ¶ And whanne þe King come to þe gate of þe Brygge of London, þere þay presentid hym with a mylke-white stede, sadelled and brydilled, & trapped with white cloth of golde and red parted togadir, and þe Quene a palfraye alle white, trappid yn þe same aray¹⁴ with white and rede, and þe¹⁵ conditez of London Ronnen white¹⁶ wyne and rede, for al maner pepill to drynke of. ¶ And betuene Seint Poulez and the Cros yn Chepe, þere was made a stage, a ryalle, stondyng vpon hygh; a[n]d þerynne were mony angelis, with dyuers melodiez and songe; and an¹⁷ aungell come doun¹⁸ fro þe stage on high, by a vice, and sette a crowne of golde & precious stonez & perles apon þe Kingez hed, and anoþer on¹⁹ the Quenez hed; and so the citezenys brought þe King and þe Quene vnto Westmynstre, yn-to his palice at²⁰ Westmynstre, & presentyd hym with ij basyns of syluyr, & ovirgilte, fulle of coyned golde, the summa of xx m^t li,²¹ prayng hym, of his²² mercy and lordschip and specialle grace,²³ þat þay myzt haue his gode loue, and²⁴ liberteez & Fraunchezes like as þay hadde before tyme^z, and by his lettrez

¹ also om. T. ² cheff om. T. ³ and for T. ⁴ his good TR.

⁵ of her T. hir R. ⁶ þan om. T. ⁷ a ij T. ⁸ london) with þe T.

⁹ aldremen om. T. ¹⁰ hem humbely T. submittinge ham humbeli R.

¹¹ with om. T. ¹² of om. TR. ¹³ for to T.

¹⁴ white and in þe same aray trappid T. and in the same aray trapped R.

¹⁵ also þe T. ¹⁶ with white T. alle þe R. ¹⁷ oon T.

¹⁸ a downe T. ¹⁹ Crowne vpon T. crowne vpon R.

²⁰ paleys And þanne on þe morne aftir þe mayre and þe sherefis and þe Aldermen of london) come vnto þe kyng into his paleys at T. Palis. And þanne on þe morow aftir þe meir and þe sherevis and þe aldermen of london) com vnto þe king in his Paleis at R. ²¹ xxM^l pound T.

²² his hie TR. ²³ of his grace T. ²⁴ and leve and R.

patentez confermed.¹ ¶ And þe Quene, and oþer worthi lordez & ladiez, ffillyn on hir² kneys, and besouzt þe King of grace to conferme þis. Thanne þe King toke vp þe Quene, and grauntyd hir alle hir askyng, and þanne þei þanked þe King and þe Quene and 4 went home ayene.

¶ And yn þe xvij³ yere of his regne,⁴ certeyne lordez of Scotlande com yn-to Englonde to gete worschip, as by feet of armez: þese⁵ were þe persons: þe Erle of Marre, and⁶ chalanged the Erle 8 Marchall of Englonde to Iuste with hym certeyn poynte3 on horsbak with scharpe speris. And so þai redyn togadir, as ij worthi knyztis & lordes, certayne cours, but not þe fulle chalange þat þe Scottysche Erle made; for he was cast both hors and man, and ij 12 of his rybbis brokyn with þe⁷ ffalle; and so he was born out of Smythfelde, hom yn-to his Inne; and with-ynne a litil while aftirward⁸ he was caried homwarde yn a liter; & atte York he⁹ deied. ¶ And Ser William Darell, knyzt, and¹⁰ banerrer of Scotland, 16 made anoþer chalange with Sire¹¹ ¹²Piers Courteneye, knyzt; and þe Kinges banerrer of Englonde, of¹³ certeyne course3 hit on horsbak yn þe same ffelde. ¶ And whanne he hed y¹⁴rede certeyne cours hit, and saw he myzt not haue¹⁵ þe bettyr, yaf¹⁶ it ouyr, and wolde 20 no more of his chalang, and¹⁷ turned his hors and rode hom vnto his owne in.¹⁸ And one Kocborne, squier, of Scotland, chalanged Sir¹⁹ Nicholl Hawberke, knyzt, of certeyne cours, hit with scharp speris on horsbak; and redyn .v. cours hit togadir; and att euery cours 24 þe Scotte was cast doun,²⁰ both hors and man; and þus our English lordez²¹—þankyd be God!—had þe ffelde.

¶ And yn þe xvij²² yere of King Richarde3 regne, deied þe gode gracious Quene Anne, þat was wiff to King Richarde, yn þe 28 maner of Schene, yn þe schire of Surreie, vp-on Whitsonday. —þanne²³ was sche brozt to London, and so to Westmynstre; and þere was sche y²⁴beryed and worthily entered, besyde saint Edwardes schryne; on whose soule Almy3ti God haue mercy and pite! 32 amen!²⁵

¹ and patentis And her chartir confermyd T. ² hir om. TR.

³ xvj T.

⁴ of kyng Richardis reigne T. yeer of king Richardis Regne R.

⁵ And þese T. ⁶ and he T. & he R. ⁷ þat T.

⁸ litiþ tyme after T. alitil tyme aftir R. ⁹ þere he TR. ¹⁰ þe T.

¹¹ sir T. sir R. sixe Kk. ¹² leaf 115. ¹³ of TR. ¹⁴ y om. TR.

¹⁵ not haue TR. haue Kk. ¹⁶ he yaf TR. ¹⁷ but T. ¹⁸ his Inne T.

¹⁹ sir T. sir R. for Kk. ²⁰ adoun TR. ²¹ men R. ²² xvij T.

²³ And þanne TR. ²⁴ y om. TR. ²⁵ amen om. T.

How King Richarde spoused dame Isabell, þe Kingis douȝtir of
 Fraunce, yn the towne of Caleys, and brouȝt hir yn-to
 Engeland, and let croune hir Quene yn þe Abbey of Saint
 4 Petris of Westmynstre. *Capitulum ccxlj.*¹

In þe xx^{ti} yere of King Richardeȝ regne, he went ouyr se² to
 Caleys, with dukis, Erlis, lordis, and Barons, and mony oþer worthi
 squyers, yn grete aray, and comyn pepil of þe Reme yn gode aray,
 8 as longith to such a worþi king and prynce, of his nobley³ to do
 hym reverence and obseruaunce, as owed⁴ to be do to⁵ hir liege
 lorde, and so myȝty a King and Emperour yn his owne, to abyde and
 resceyve there þat worthi & gracious lady þat schulde be his wif, a
 12 yong creature of ix yere of age, Dame Isabell, þe Kingis douȝtir of
 Fraunce, and mony⁶ worthi lordis of grete name, bothe Barons and
 knyztis, with moche oþer pepil þat comen vn to þe toun of Grauen-
 yng, and ij Dukis of Fraunce: þat on was þe Duk of Burgoyne,
 16 and þat oþer, Duk⁷ of Barre, þat wolde no firþer lasse þanne þey
 hadde pleggeȝ for⁸ ham. And þanne King Richarde delyuered ij
 pleggeȝ for ham to goo saaf and come saaf: his ij worthi vncler, þe
 Duk of Glowcestre and þe Duk of York. And þei ij went ouer þe
 20 watir of Grauenyng, & abiden þere as for⁹ pleggeȝ, vnto þe tyme
 þat þe Maryage and þe fest were do.¹⁰ ¶ And þanne þeze ij worthi
 Dukis of Fraunce¹¹ come ouir þe water at Grauenyng, and so to
 Caleis, with þe¹² worschepful lady, Dame Isabell, þe¹³ Kingis
 24 douȝtir of Fraunce. And with hir come mony a worthi lorde and
 lady,¹⁴ knyztis and squyers, yn þe best aray þat myȝt be; and þere
 þai mette with our meyne at Caleys, þe which welcomyd hir and hir
 meyne with þe grettest¹⁵ honour and reuerence þat myȝt be, and
 28 so brouȝt hir to¹⁶ Caleys toun. And þere sche was resceyvid with
 alle þe solempnite and worschip þat myȝt be do vnto¹⁷ such a lady.
 And þanne þei brouȝt hir vnto þe King; and þe King toke hir,
 and welcomed hir and alle hir fayr mayne,¹⁸ and made þere alle þe
 32 solempnite¹⁹ þat myȝt be do. ¶ And þanne þe King and his
 counsel axed of the Frensche lordeȝ²⁰ whethir alle þe conauntes and

¹ cc^o T. ccxlj R. ² went *him* ouer þe see T. þe See R.
³ nobley and of his owen *persone* T. nobleie and of his owen) *persone* R.
⁴ owith T. ⁵ vnto T. ⁶ many oþer TR. ⁷ þe Duke R.
⁸ of R. ⁹ for þe Kk. þe *om.* TR. ¹⁰ was done T. was do R. were Kk.
¹¹ of Fraunce *om.* T. ¹² this T. þis R. ¹³ þat is þe T.
¹⁴ and eek lady and T. ¹⁵ beste TR.
¹⁶ brought into T. hir into R. ¹⁷ to R. ¹⁸ maynce T.
¹⁹ leaf 115, back. ²⁰ men and lordis R.

forwardez, with þe composicion þat were ordeyned and made on bothe partez, schulde be trewly kept and holde betwene hem; and þai sayde “ye”; & þere þay sworon and token¹ hir charge apon a boke, and toke² hir oth welle and trewli it³ to holde yn alle 4 maner poyntis and couenauntes, without contradiccion or delay yn euery⁴ maner wyse. And þanne was sche brouzt to⁵ Seint Nicholas chirch yn Calis; and þere sche was worthili weddyd, with þe moste⁶ solempnite þat eny king or⁷ quene myzt haue, with arche- 8 bishoppes and Bischopez, and alle⁸ mynystrez of holy churche. ¶ And þanne were þai⁹ brouzt hom vnto¹⁰ þe Castell, and set¹¹ to mete, and þere¹² were serued with alle maner of delicacez of alle¹³ riall metis and drynkis plenteuously, to alle maner of strayngourez 12 and al oþer. And no creature¹⁴ warned þat Fest, but alle were welcome; for þere were grete halys & tentis sette vp on þe grene without þe castell, for¹⁵ to resceyue alle maner of peple, and euery office redy to serue ham alle; and þus þis worthi mariage was 16 solemlly do and ended with alle ryalte.

¶ Thanne¹⁶ þese ij Dukys of Fraunce, with hir peple, tokon hir leue of þe King and¹⁷ Quene, and went ayen to Grauenyng watir; and þere þe Frensch lordez, þat is to say, þe ij Dukis &¹⁸ hir meyne, 20 were comen ovir þe watir of Grauenyng, & þere þay mette, & euerych toke leue of oþer; and so þai departed, and our lordez come ayen to Caleys, and þe Frensch lordez went hom ayen¹⁹ yn-to Fraunce. 24

And²⁰ anon aftir, þe King made hym redy²¹ with þe Quene and alle his lordez and²² oþer pepil with ham, & comyn ouyr þe see yn-to Engeland, and so to London, and þe Maire and þe Scherevez, with al þe aldermen and worthi comynez, ryden ayens ham vnto þe 28 Blacke-Heþ yn Kent; & þere þay mettyn with þe King and þe Quene, and welcomyd ham, and þat yn gode aray, and euery man in his cloþing of his crafte, and her²³ mynstrelles to-fore ham; and so þay brouzt ham to Saint Georgez Barre yn Southwerke; and þere 32

¹ and token T. and took R. and Kk. ² made TR. ³ hir T.

⁴ any T. eny R. ⁵ vnto TR. ⁶ with moche T. ⁷ and T.

⁸ alle om. T. ⁹ þai om. TR. ¹⁰ to T.

¹¹ sett T. set R. for Kk. ¹² þere þei T. ¹³ alle om. R.

¹⁴ creature was T. ¹⁵ for om. TR. ¹⁶ and T. ¹⁷ and þe T.

¹⁸ and aH T. and alle R.

¹⁹ wenten ouyr þe watir and so home T. wenten ouer þe watir and so hom in to ffrance ayeen. R.

²⁰ ayen And T. ²¹ him redy T. made him redy R. hym Kk.

²² and ladies and T. & ladiez & alle R. ²³ here T.

hy¹ tokyn hir leue, and þe King and þe Quene redyn to Kenyngton; and þanne þe peple of London turned hom ayen. And yn turnyng ayen to London brygge, þere was so moche prees both on 4 fote & on hors,² þat þere were ded on þe brygge a³ xj personez of men,⁴ wymmen & chyldryn: on whose soulez God haue mercy! amen! ¶ And þanne aftirward þe Quene was brouzt to the Tour of London, and þere⁵ sche was al nyzt. And on þe morowe⁶ sche 8 was brouzt þrouz þe Cete of London, and⁷ so forth to⁸ Westmynstre, & þere sche was crowned Quene of Engelande. þan⁹ was sche brouzt ayen yn-to the Kingis Palis, and þere was¹⁰ holde an opon & a ryall Fest after¹¹ hir coronacion, for al maner peple¹² 12 þat þedir come: and þus¹³ was do þe Sunday afftir þe Fest of seint Clement, in þe xx yere of King Richardez regne.

— And þan, þe xxv day of august next folouyng, be euyl excitation & ffals counsel, & for grete wrathe¹⁴ and malice þat he had of 16 olde tyme vnto his vncle, þe gode Duke of Gloucester, and to þe Erle of Arundel, & to þe Erle of Warwic, ¶ The King, by is¹⁵ euylle counsell, late yn the Euenyng on þe same day aboue saide, made hym redy with his streynthe, and rode yn-to Essex vnto þe 20 toune of Chelmesforde, and so come to Plassche sodenly, þere Ser Thomas of Wodestoke, þe gode Duk of Gloucestre, lay. And þe gode Duk come anon to welcome þe King¹⁶; and þe King hym self¹⁷ aretid þe gode¹⁸ Duke¹⁹; and so he was ladde doun to þe water, 24 and anon put yn to a schippe, and²⁰ had vnto Caleis, and brouzt vnto²¹ capteynys warde, to be kept yn holde be þe Kinges commaundement of Engeland: ¶ And þat tyme þe Erle Marchal of Engeland was capten of Caleis. ¶ And anon aftir,²² be 28 maundement of þe King and of²³ his fals Counsel, commaunded þe capten to put hym to²⁴ deth. ¶ And anon certeyn yemen²⁵ þat had þe gode Duk yn kepyng, tooke her counsel how þei²⁶ wolde put hym to²⁷ deth; and þis was her poyntment: þat þai schulde come 32 vpon hym whanne he were yn²⁸ bedde, and aslepe on a Fetherbed. And anon þei bonde hym honde and²⁹ foot,³⁰ & chargid hym to ly

¹ thei T. þey R.

² on hors and on foote T. boþe on hors and on fote R. ³ a om. TR.

⁴ men and T. ⁵ and þere R. and Kk. ⁶ morne TR.

⁷ aft ouer and T. ⁸ vnto T. ⁹ And þanne TR.

¹⁰ was TR. was sche Kk. ¹¹ at TR. ¹² of peple T. ¹³ this T. þis R.

¹⁴ leaf 116. ¹⁵ his T. ¹⁶ duke come to euyt come þe kyng anoon T.

¹⁷ hym self om. T. ¹⁸ goode om. R. ¹⁹ duke him silf his owen bodi T.

²⁰ and ahoon T. ²¹ into þe TR. ²² after sende a T. ²³ bi TR.

²⁴ to þe T. ²⁵ anoon þo men T. ²⁶ þat þei TR.

²⁷ to þe T. vnto R. ²⁸ a R. ²⁹ and om. R. ³⁰ foot and hond T.

style; and whanne þai hadde þis¹ do, þe² tokyn ij smale tewellys, and made on ham³ rydyng knottis, and caste þe tewellys aboute þe Dukis nek: and þanne þei token þe fetherbed þat lay vnder hym, and cast hit aboute hym; and þan þei drowen her towellis eche 4 waye; and sum lay vpon þe fethir bed apon hym, vnto þe tyme þat he were ded, because þat he schulde make non noyse. And þus þei strangled þis worthi Duk vn[to] the deth, on whose soule God, for⁴ his pite, haue merci! Amen! ¶ And whenne þe King 8 hadde arestid þis worthi Duke, and his owne vncl, and sent hym to Caleis, he come ayen to London yn alle hast, with a wondir grete peple. And as⁵ he was come, he sent for the Erle of Arundel and for the gode Erle of Warwic; and anon as þay cam,⁶ he arestid 12 ham⁷ his owne self. Sir Iohn Cobham⁸ & Ser Iohn Cheyny, knyztis, he arestid also yn þe same wyse,⁸ til he made his parlement; & anon þei were put ynto holde. But þe Erle of Arundel went at large vnto þe parlement tyme, for he founde sufficient 16 surete to abyde þe lawe, & al maner of answeere at þe⁹ poynte; þat þe King & his Counsel wolde put vp on hym.

¹⁰ Off þe grete parlement, and of þe deth of þe Erle of Arundell; and how þe Erle of Derby and oþer were exiled, and þe 20 sayde Erle come ayen ynto þis londe; and how King Richarde went ynto Ireland, and how he deide.¹⁰ *Capitulum cexlij.*¹¹

And yn the xxj yere of King Richarde; regne, he ordend a¹² parlement at Westmynstre, þe which was clepid 'þe Grete Parlement'; and this parlement was made for to iugge þese iij worthi lordez and oþer moo, as ham lust¹³ at þat¹⁴ tyme. ¶ And for þat iugement þe king let make in alle hast a long and a large hous of tymbir, 28 The which was called an hale, and couered with tyle; ouyr; and it was opun al aboute on bothe syde; and at þe endis, þat al maner of men myzt se þrouzout; and þere þe dome was holden¹⁵ vpon þese forsaiide lordez, and Iugement yeue at this forsaiide parlement. 32 ¶ And for to come to¹⁶ þis parlement þe King sent his writtis vnto

¹ þus R. ² do thus thei T. þey R. ³ hem ij T. ham ij R.

⁴ of T. ⁵ as sone as T. ⁶ þei were come T.

⁷ hem boþe T. ham boþe R.

⁸⁻⁸ and he arestid also sir Iohn Cobham and sir Iohn Cheyne knyghtis T. manere R.

⁹ to alle T. ¹⁰⁻¹⁰ Off þe grete parlement . . . deide om. TR.

¹¹ cexlij R. ¹² him a T. ¹³ list TR. ¹⁴ this T.

¹⁵ leaf 116, back. ¹⁶ vnto TR.

euery lorde, Baron, kniȝt and squier, in euery schire prouȝout
 Engelond; and þat euery lorde schulde grade and bryng his retynu
 of peple with hym,¹ yn as schort tyme and the² best aray þat þay
 4 myȝt gete, in maynteynyng and streynghyng of þe King ayens
 ham þat were his enymys, and þat þis were do yn alle haste, and
 þei³ to come to hym yn peyne of deth. ¶ And þe kyng hym self
 sent ynto⁴ Chestirschire, vnto þe Chefteynes of þat cuntre, and þay
 8 gagred and brouȝt a grete and an huge multitude of peple, bothe of
 knyȝtis & of⁵ Squyers, & prynspally of yemen of Chestreschire, þe
 which yemen and archers þe Kyng toke yn-to⁶ his owne court, &
 yaf ham bothe⁷ boge⁸ of court and gode wageȝ, to be keepers of his
 12 owne body, both be nyȝt and be day, above alle oþer persons, and
 most ham⁹ loued & best trust. ¶ The which sone affirwarde
 turned þe King to gret losse, schame, hyndryng, and his vttyrly
 vndoing and destroccion, as ye schalle here sone affirward.
 16 ¶ And þat tyme come *Ser Henry*, Erle of Derby, with a grete
 meyne of men of armeȝ and archers; and þe Erle of Ruthlande
 come with a strong pouer of peple, bothe of men of armeȝ and
 archers; and the Erle of Kent brouȝt with hym¹⁰ a grete power of
 20 men of armeȝ and archers; The Erle Marchalle come yn þe same
 wyse;¹¹ The Lord *Spenser* yn the same maner; The Erle of North-
 ombirlond and *Ser Harry Percy* his sone, & *Ser Thomas Perci*, þe
 Erlez broþer; & alle¹² þeze worthi lordiȝ brouȝtyn a fayre mayne
 24 and a strong power, & ech man yn his best aray; And þe Duk of
 Lancastre and þe Duk of York comyn yn þe same maner *with men*
 of armeȝ and archers, folouyng þe King; and *Ser William Scrop*,
 Tresorer of Engelande, come yn þe same maner. ¶ And þus, yn
 28 þis aray, comyn alle þe worthi men of þis londe vnto our King;
 and alle þis peple come to London yn on day, yn so moche þat¹³
 euery strete & lane yn London & yn þe sowthbarbez weren fulle of
 ham logged, and .x or xij myle about London euery way. And
 32 þis¹⁴ pepil brouȝt þe King to Westmynstre, and went hom ayen
 vnto hir loggyng, bothe hors & man. ¶ And þan on þe Monday,
 þe xvij day of Septembre, þe parlement began at *Westminster*, þe
 —which was clepyd “þe grete parlement”; and on þe Fryday next
 36 ffollowyng, þe Erle of Arundel was brouȝt yn-to,¹⁵ parlement

¹ retenu *with him* of peple R.² in þe T. in the R.³ þei *om.* T. ⁴ to T. ⁵ of *om.* R. ⁶ vnto T.⁷ bothe *om.* TR. ⁸ bouche T. ⁹ ham *om.* TR.¹⁰ with hym *om.* TR. ¹¹ manere TR. ¹² alle *om.* T. I alle R.¹³ in R. ¹⁴ þese T. ¹⁵ in to þe R.

among alle þe lordez,—and þat was on¹ saint Matheweȝ day þe Apostyll & euaungelist,—&² þere was³ foriuged vnto the deth in þis⁴ hale, þat was made yn þe palis at Westmynstre. And þis was his Iugement: he⁵ scholde go on fote, with his handeȝ y⁶bounde 4 be-hynde hym, from þe place þat he was foriuged ynne, and so forthe þrouȝ þe cite of London vnto þe Toure hyll, and there his hed to be smetyn of; and so⁷ it was do yn dede yn þe same place. ¶ And vj. of þe grete lordez þat sat on his Iugement redyn 8 with hym vnto þe⁸ place there he was do vnto⁹ deth. And to se þat¹⁰ þe execussion were y¹¹do aftir his¹² dome, and by þe Kingis commaundement went with hem¹³ on fote men of armeȝ and archers, a grete multitude of Chestirschire men yn streynghyng of the lordez 12 þat brouȝt þis erle vnto his deth, for þai draddyn þat þe erle schulde haue be rescued and take fro ham, whanne þay come yn-to London. ¶ Thus he passed forth þurgh þe cite vnto his deth; and þere he toke it full paciently; on whose soul God haue mercy! amen! 16 ¶ And þanne come þe frere¹⁴ Austyns, and toke vp the body and þe hed of þis gode Erle, and bare it whome yn-to¹⁵ hir hous, and buryed hym yn hir quere. ¶ And yn¹⁶ þe morow¹⁷ aftir, was *Ser* *Richard*, Erle of Warwic, brouȝt yn-to þe parlement, þere as þe 20 Erle of Arundel was foriuged; and þai yaf þe Erle of Warwic þe same Iugement þat þe forsaide erle hadde; but þe lordez had compassion on¹⁸ hym because he was of grete¹⁹ age, and releyd hym to perpetuall pryson, and put hym yn-to²⁰ þe Ile of Man. ¶ And 24 þanne the Mondaye next aftir, þe lorde Cobban of Kent, *Ser* *Iohn* *Cheyne*,²¹ knyȝt, were broȝt yn-to þe parlement, yn-to²² þe same hale; and þere þay were Iugid to be hangyd & draw; but, þrouȝ þe prayer and grete Instance of alle þe lordez, þat Iugement was 28 foryeue ham, and releyd to perpetual prison.

¶ And þis same tyme was *Richard* *Whityngton*, Meyre of London; and *Iohn* *Wodekoc* and *William* *Askam*, schereveȝ of London; and þai ordeined, at euery yate and yn euery warde, 32 strong wacche of men of armeȝ and of archers, and prinsspally at euery yate of London, duryng þis²³ same parlement.

¹ on TR. of Kk. ² & om. T. ³ he was T. ⁴ his T. ⁵ þat he T.
⁶ y om. TR. ⁷ so om. T. ⁸ leaf 117. ⁹ vnto þe T.
¹⁰ þat om. R. ¹¹ y om. TR. ¹² hir TR. ¹³ with hem wenten T.
¹⁴ freres of T. ¹⁵ home vnto TR. ¹⁶ on R. ¹⁷ on þe morne T.
¹⁸ of TR. ¹⁹ more TR. ²⁰ to om. TR.
²¹ *ser* *Iohn* *Cheyne* . . . turned hem omitted in R to page 358, line 30.
²² to om. T. ²³ þe T.

¶ The King at þis parlement¹ made .v. Dukis, a Duchasse, & a Markez, & iiij Erlez; & þe first of ham was þe Erle of Derby, & he was made Duke of Hereforde; and þe ij was þe Erle of Ruthland, and he was made Duke of Awmarle; þe iij was þe Erle of Kent, & he was made Duke of Surreye; and þe iiij was þe² Erle of Hontyngton, and he was made Duke of Excestre; and þe .v.³ þe Erle of Notyngnam, and he was made Duke of Norfolk; and⁴ þe Erle of Somersete was⁵ made þe Markeys of Dorset; & the Lord Spenser was made Erle of Gloucestre, and þe Lorde Neuyle of Rabye was made Erle of Westmerland; & Ser Thomas Percy was made Erle of Worscetir, and Ser William Scrope, þat was Treserer of
12 Engelonde, he was made⁶ Erle of Salysburye. ¶ And whanne þe King had þis⁷ do, he helde at⁸ þe parlement a⁹ rial ffest vnto all his lordez, and to al maner of pepil þat þidir wolde come.

¶ And yn þe¹⁰ same yere deyed Ser Iohn of Gaunt, þe Kingez
16 vncl, & Duke of Lancastre, yn the bischoppez In yn Holborn, and was brout fro þennez to Saint Poulez and þere þe King made & hilde his terement welle & worthily with all his lordez,¹¹ and þere he was beryed besyde Dame Blaunch his wiff, þat was douztur &
20 heyre to þe gode Henry, þat was Duke of Lancastre.

[*The Fight between Bolingbroke and Norfolk stopt.*]

¶ And yn the same yere þer fil a discencyon and a debate betuene þe Duk of Herford & þe Duke of Norfolk, yn so moche þat þay waged batayle & cast doun her gloues; & þanne þey¹² were
24 take vp and¹³ seled, and the day & þe place of batayle assygned at Couyntre.¹⁴ and þedir come þe King and¹⁵ alle his lordez at þat¹⁶ day, and was sette yn þe ffelde; and þan þeze ij worthi lordez comyn yn to þe ffelde, clene armed and wel arayed with alle her wepon,
28 and redy to do her batayle, and were yn the place redy to fize at þe vtrest. ¶ But þe King bade hem cese, and tok þe quarel yn-to his honde, and forthwith, þere present, exiled¹⁷ þe Duk of Herforde for þe terme of .x. yere, and þe Duke of Northfolk for evyrmore;

¹ kyng did T. ² þe om. T. ³ þe v om. T.

⁴ and dame Margrete þe oold ladi of Northfolk and T. ⁵ he was T.

⁶ Englund made him erle of Wiltshire and sir Iohn Mountagew T.

⁷ thus T. ⁸ þe T. ⁹ and a T. ¹⁰ þis T.

¹¹ lordes in the chirche of seynt Poules in london T.

¹² leaf 117, back. ¹³ and a T.

¹⁴ sealid and þe bataile synyd and þe day y sett and þe place assynd and whanne þe day schulde be vttril assynd to be doon at Couentre T.

¹⁵ with T. ¹⁶ þe T. ¹⁷ he exilid T.

and *Ser* Thomas Arundel, Archebischop of Caunterbury, was exiled þe same tyme for evyr, and deposed of his ssee, for malice of þe King. ¶ And anon þese iij worthi lordez were commaunded and defendid þe Kinges Reme; & anon þay gat hem schippeþ at dyuers 4 hauens, and went ouer þe see ynto dyuers londez, eche his way; & þe Duk of Northfolke went to Venize, and þere he deied: on whose soule God haue mercy! amen!

¶ And þanne King Richarde made *Ser* Roger Walden, a clerke 8 of his,¹ Archebischop of Caunterbury.

¶ And yn þe xxij yere of King Richardeþ regne, be fals counsel and ymaginacion of ffals men and couetous² þat were aboute hym, were made & ordeyned³ blank Chartureþ, and made 12 ham to be selid of alle maner of riche men þrouzout þe Reme, in-so-moche þat þai compellid dyuers pepill to sette to⁴ her seelez; and⁵ þis was so⁶ for gret couetize; wherfore alle þe⁷ gode hertis of þe Reme clene⁸ turned away fro hym⁹ euyr eftir, and þat was 16 vtturli¹⁰ destruction & ende of hym¹¹ þat was so hygh and so excellent a king, þrough couetyse and fals counsel: Alas, for pite, þat such a king myzt not se!

¶ And þanne King Richarde sette his kingdom and his riall 20 -londe to fferme of Engelond,¹² vnto iij personez, þe which were þese, *Sir* William Scrope,¹³ Erle of Wilschire & Treserer of Engelond, *Ser*¹⁴ Iohn Busch, Henry¹⁵ Grene, and *Ser* Iohn Bagot, knyghtes; þe¹⁶ whiche¹⁷ turned hem to moche myschef and deth 24 with-ynne a¹⁸ lytil tyme aftir, as ye schal here¹⁹ wretyn sone aftir.

[*Richard II's Expedition to Ireland.*]

¶ Thanne²⁰ King Richarde made gret ordynaunce, and went ouyr see²¹ Into Ireland, and mony grete lordez with hym, with grete ostes, for to streyngthe hir king, as men of armez, archers,²² 28 and moche grete stuff & riht gode ordynaunce, as longith to warre. ¶ And or he passid þe see, he ordeyned and made *Ser* Edmunde of Langeley his vncler, Duk²³ of York, his Lieutenaunt of Engelond

¹ a clerke of his *om.* T. ² of couetous men T.

³ ordeynyd and maad T. ⁴ to *om.* T. ⁵ to and T. ⁶ do T.

⁷ þe *om.* T. ⁸ weren clene T.

⁹ him þat is þe kyng T. fro hym þe kyng Kk.

¹⁰ and was vttirly his T. and þat vtturli Kk.

¹¹ of hym *om.* T. ¹² of Engelond to ferme T. ¹³ of Scrope T.

¹⁴ and *sir* T. ¹⁵ and *sir* Harry T. ¹⁶ þe *om.* T. ¹⁷ whiche þat T.

¹⁸ a *om.* T. ¹⁹ here fynde T. ²⁰ And þanne T.

²¹ wente him ouer þe see T. ²² and archers T. ²³ þe duke T.

yn his absence, be¹ þe gouernaunce &² counsel of þese iiij knyztis þat had take Engelonde to ferme of the King. ¶ And þanne he passed þe see, and come ynto Irelande, and þere he was welle and
 4 worthily resceyved. And þese rebellis of Ireland bith³ callid ‘wilde⁴ Irisch men’; and⁵ anon her chefteyneȝ & hir⁶ gouernoures &⁷ leeders comyn doun vnto þe King, & yolde ham vnto hym, bothe body & godeȝ, alle at his owne wille, & swore to be his lige
 8 men, and þer-to dede to hym⁸ homage & feaute, and gode seruiȝe; & þus he conqueryd⁹ þe moste party of Ireland yn a litil tyme.

[*The Return of Bolingbroke.*]

¶ While þat¹⁰ King Richard was þus yn Irelande, Ser Henry of Bolingbroke, Erle of Derby, þat þe king hadde made before Duk
 12 of Herforde—þe which Duk, þe King had exiled out of þis lande—was come ayen yn-to Engelond, for to chalange þe Duchery¹¹ of Lancastre as for¹² riȝt & trewe heritage. ¶ And he come doun out of Fraunce by londe to Calis, and þere mette hym Ser Thomas of
 16 Arundel, þat was Archebischop of Caunturbury, þat was exiled out of Engelond; and with hym come þe Erle of Arundell sone, & his heire, þe which was yn warde and yn¹³ kepyng of Ser Iohn Selly, kniȝt, sum tyme with þe Erle of Huntyngton, and with þe Duk of
 20 Excestre, þe which was yn the Castell of Rygate yn Suthsex; and þere he stale away from Shelly, & come to Caleys; & þere he was kept welle and worthily til þis¹⁴ oþer ij lordez were come to Caleys. ¶ And þan þis worthi Duk, & þe Archebischop of Caunturbury,
 24 Arundel, schippid yn þe hauene of Caleis, and drow his cours Norþewarde, and arryued yn Yorkschyre, Rauensporne, fast by Brydlyngton; and þere he come, and entrid þe londe, & þese ij lordez with hym, and hir meyne. And þanne moche pepil of the
 28 Reme, þat wist of his comyng and¹⁵ where he was, anon drowyn to¹⁶ hym, and welcomyd þese lordez, and socurred hym yn alle maner þyngis, and passed forth yn¹⁷ the londe, and gadryd myche peple.

32 ¶ And whanne King Richard wist of þis, & herde¹⁸ þat þese ij lordez were come ayen yn-to Engelonde, and were loded, þanne

¹ be om. T. ² and þe T. ³ ben T. ⁴ the wilde T.
⁵ and om. T. ⁶ hir om. T. ⁷ and her T.
⁸ there to him diden T. ⁹ leaf 118. ¹⁰ þe T.
¹¹ dukedom T. ¹² for his T. ¹³ yn om. T. ¹⁴ these T.
¹⁵ and om. T. ¹⁶ anoon þei drewe vnto T. ¹⁷ into T.
¹⁸ Richard herde and wiste T.

þe King left alle his ordynaunce yn Irelonde, and come yn-to Engelandewarde yn alle þe hast þat he myzte, & come yn-to¹ þe Castell of Flynt; and þere he abode for to take his counsell, and what myght² best be do; but to hym com non. ¶ And þanne Ser 4 Thomas Percy, Erle of Worcestre, þat was þe Kingis Steward, when he wist³ and knew þis, anon he com yn-to the halle among alle þe pepil, and þere he brake þe yerd of þe Rial Kingis housholde; and⁴ euery man went his way, and forsoke his maistir & 8 souereyne lorde, and left hym alone: ⁵and þus was King Richard brouzt adoun and destroyed, and stode alle alone,⁵ without counsel, confort & socour⁶ of eny man. Allas! for pite of þis ryal King!

12

¶ And anon come tydynges þat Harry of Bolyngbroke was vp with a⁷ strong power of pepill, and þat alle þe Schyreves of Engeland reysed vp þe Schires yn streynghing of hym ayens King⁸ Richard; and þus sone he was come out of þe Northeuntre 16 to Bristow, and þere he mette with Ser William Scrope, Erle of Wilschire and⁹ Tresorer of Engeland, and with Ser Iohn Busch and Ser Henry Grene, and Iohn¹⁰ Bagot, but he ascapyd from hym, and went ouer þe see In-to Irelonde; & þese oþer ij¹¹ knyghtes were 20 take, and her hedis smytyn of; & þus þei deied for her fals couetize.

¶ And þanne was King Richard y¹²take, & brouzt vnto þe Duk; and anon þe Duk put hym y[n] saff¹³ warde and strong 24 holde, vnto his comyng to London. ¶ And þanne was þere¹⁴ a Rumore yn London, ¹⁵and a strong noyse, þat King Richarde was come to Westmynstre; and the pepil of London ranne þider, and wolde haue don moche harm and scathe yn hir wodnesse, ne hadde 28 þe Mayre and þe aldermen, and oþer worthi men, cecid ham with faire wordes, and turned hem ¹⁶hom ayen vnto London. ¶ And þere was¹⁷ Ser Iohn Slake, Dene of the Kinges chapel of Westmynstre, take,¹⁸ and brouzt to London, and put yn¹⁹ Ludgate; and 32 Bagot was take yn Irelonde, and brouzt to London, & put yn prisone yn Newgate, þere to be kept and²⁰ abide his answe.

¹ vnto T. ² what myghte T. what Kk.

³ Steward whenne he wiste T. Steward wist Kk.

⁴ and tho hit disparbelid and T. ⁵⁻⁵ om. T.

⁶ withoute comfort or socoure or good counceile T.

⁷ a wondir T.

⁸ þe king T. ⁹ and om. T. ¹⁰ sir Iohn T. ¹¹ iij T.

¹² y om. T. ¹³ into faste T. ¹⁴ and there was thanne T.

¹⁵ leaf 118, back. ¹⁶ MS. R begins again. ¹⁷ was take T.

¹⁸ take om. T. ¹⁹ in prison in T. ²⁰ and to T.

¶ And sone aftir, þe Duk brouzt King Richard pryuyly to London, and put hym yn the Tour, vndir sure kepyng as a prisoner. And þanne come þe lordez of the Reme, with alle hir counsel, vnto þe
4 Tour to King Richard and saide to hym of his mys gouernaunce and extorcion þat he hadde do, maade, and ordeyned, to oppresse alle þe comyn pepil, & also alle¹ þe Reame; wherfore al þe comyn peple of his Reme wolde haue hym deposed of his kingdom; and
8 so he was deposyd at þat tyme in þe Tour of London by alle his² lordez counsel, and by³ the common assent of al þe Reme. ¶ And þan⁴ he was put fro þe Tour vnto þe castel of Ledis yn Kent, and þere he was kept a while; and þan was he hadde fro þenne³ vnto
12 þe kastell of Pomfret in þe Northcuntre, to be kept yn pryson; and sone aftirward rizt þere he made his ende.

¶ Whanne⁵ King Richarde was deposed, and hadde resyngned his croune and his kingdom, and hym self kept fast yn holde, þan
16 alle þe lordez of þe Reme, with þe comyns assent, and by one⁶ accorde, chosyn þis worthi lorde, Ser Henry of Bolyngbroke, Erle of Derby, Duk of Herford and Duke of Lancastre be rizt lyne and heritage; and for his myztful manhode þat þe peple founde yn
20 hym, before al oþer þei choson hym, & made hym King of Engelonde.⁷

**Of Ser Henry of⁸ Bolingbroke, Erle of Derby, þat reigned aftir King Richarde, þe⁹ which was þe fourth Henry after þe
24 Conqueste. Capitulum cexliij.¹⁰**

And aftir Kinge Richarde þe secunde was deposed and put out of his kingdom, þe lordez & þe comyns, alle *with* on assent, and alle oþer worthi of þe Reme, chosyn Ser Henry of Bolyngbroke, Erle
28 of Derby, sone & heyre of Iohn a Gaunt, Duke¹¹ of Lancastre, for his worthi manhode þat ofte tyme hadde be founde yn hym, and yn dede preved; vpon Saint Edwardes Day þe Confessoure, he was crowned King of Engelond at Westmynstre, by alle þe Remys
32 assent, next aftir¹² deposyng of King Richard. ¶ Thanne he made Henry, his eldist sone & his heire, Prynce of Walis, Duk¹² of Cornewayle, and Erle of Chestre; and he made Ser Thomas of Arundel, Archebischof of Caunturbury ayen, as he was before;

¹ to aft T. ² his TR. hir Kk. ³ by om. T.

⁴ there T. þere R. ⁵ And þanne whenne T. And whanne R.

⁶ one om. R. ⁷ Englonde amongis hem. T. ⁸ om. T.

⁹ Richarde þe om. T. ¹⁰ cc° T. cexliij R. ¹¹ Iohn þe duke TR.

¹² aftir þe T. ¹³ and duke T.

and Ser Roger¹ Walden, that King Richard had made Archebischop of Caunturbury, he made² Bischop of London, for þat time it stode voyde; and he³ made þe Erlez sone of Arondel, ⁴that come ouer the see with him from Caleys into Englund, he made him Erle of 4 ArundaH,⁴ and put hym yn possession of alle his londez; and þere he made homage and feaute unto his liege lorde þe King, as alle oþer lordez hadde do.

¶ And þanne anon deied King Richard in þe castell of 8 Pountfret yn the Northcuntre, for þere he was enfammed vnto the deth be his keper, for he was kept into⁵ iij or v. dayez fro mete and drynke; and so he made is ende yn þis worlde. Yet moche pepil yn Engelond and yn opir⁶ landez saide þat he was alyue 12 meny yerez aftir his deth; but wheþer he were a⁷lyue or ded, þei⁸ hilde hir fals opynyons and beleue þat þay⁹ hadde; and moche pepil aftirward comyn to myschif and to foule deth, as ye schulle here aftirwarde. ¶ And whanne King Henry wist and knew 16 warly¹⁰ þat he was ded, he lete sere hym yn þe best maner þat he myzte,¹¹ and¹² closed hym yn¹³ lynnyn cloth, alle saue his visage, and þat was left opon þat men myzt se and know his person from alle oþer men; and so he was brought to London with torchis lyzt 20 brennyng vnto Saynt Poulez, and þere he hadde his masse and his dirige, with moche reverence and solempnite of seruiþe. ¶ And fro Poulez was¹⁴ brouzt ynto þe Abbey of Westmynstre, and þere hadde¹⁵ alle his hole seruiþe ayen; and fro Westmynstre he was 24 ladd¹⁶ ynto¹⁷ Langeley, and þere he was beryed: on whose soule God haue mercy! Amen!

¶ And yn þe first yere of King Henryez regne he hilde his Cristismasse yn þe Castell of Wyndesore; and on þe twelfthe 28 evyn come þe Duke of Awmarle vnto þe King, and tolde hym þat he & þe Duk of Surrey, þe¹⁸ Duk of Excestre, þe¹⁸ Erle of Salisbury, þe¹⁸ Erle of Gloucestre, & opir moo of her afinite, were accorded to make a mummyng vnto þe King on¹⁹ xij^{tho} day at 32 nyght; and þere þay cast to sle þe King yn hir revelyng; and þus þat²⁰ Duke warned þe King. And þanne þe King come þe same²¹

¹ Roger of T. ² made him TR. ³ he om. R. ⁴⁻⁴ RT; om. Kk.

⁵ in T. ⁶ leaf 119. ⁷ on T. ⁸ forth thei T.

⁹ men T. ¹⁰ verily T. ¹¹ þat he myzte om. TR.

¹² and closid hit in a fayre chest with dyuerse spiceries and bawmes T. and closed him in a fair chiste with diuers spicez and bamez and R.

¹³ in a TR. ¹⁴ he was TR. ¹⁵ he hadde T. ¹⁶ ladde T. hadd Kk.

¹⁷ to T. vnto R. ¹⁸ and þe T. ¹⁹ on þe T. ²⁰ þis R.

²¹ þe same TR. same Kk. þe om. R.

nyzt to London¹ priuili, yn alle þe² hast þat he myzte, to gete hym helpe, socoure, comfort³ & counsel. And⁴ anon þeze oper, þat wolde haue do þe King to deth, ffiledyn yn alle þe haste þat þei
4 m3ghte,⁵ for þei knewen welle þat her counsel was bewrayed. ¶ And þanne fled þe Duke of Surrey, and þe Erle of Salusberye with⁶ alle hir meyne, vnto þe toun of Sisetre; and þere þe pepil of þe toun wolde haue arestid ham; and þey wolde not stonde to
8 her arest, but stodyn at her⁷ defence, & fauzt manly; but at þe⁸ laste þey were ouercome and take;⁹ and þere þei smote of þe Dukes hed of Surrey, and þe Erlez hed of Salusbury, & mony oper moo; & þere¹⁰ þay putte þe quarters in sackys, and her hede3 on¹¹
12 pole3 born on hy, and so¹² þei were brouzt þrouz þe cite of London vnto London brygge; and þere her hede3 were sette vp an¹³ hy, & her quarters were sent to oper gode tounez and cite3, and set vp þere.

16 ¶ At Oxynforde were¹⁴ take Ser Thomas¹⁵ Blount, knyzt, Benet¹⁶ Sely, knyzt, and Thomas Wyntirsell, squyer; and þese were behedid & quartered; & the knyztes hedis were sette on pole3 & brouzt to London, & sette on London brygge, and þe quarters sent
20 forth to oper place3 & tounez. ¶ And yn þe same yere at Pritwelle yn¹⁷ Essex, was take Ser Iohn Holond, þe Duk of Excestre,¹⁸ with þe¹⁹ comyne3 of þe cuntreie; and þay brouzt hym fro þe mille vnto Plasche; and to þe same place þere King Richard hadde
24 arestid²⁰ Ser Thomas of Wodstoke, þe Duk of Glowcestre. And ryzt þere, yn þe same place, þei²¹ smytyn of þe Duk of Excestrez hed, & brouzt it to London vpon a poole; and it was sette on London Brygge. ¶ And yn þe same yere, at Bristow, was take þe
28 Lorde Spenser, þat King Richard hadde made Erle of Glowcestre; & þe comyne3 of the toune of Bristow²² toke hym, and brouzt hym in to þe Market place of the Toun; & ther thay smyte of his hed and sent hit to London, and hit was sette on London brygge.
32 ¶ And yn þe same yere was Ser Bernarde Brokeys, kni3t, take and

¹ to London TR. om. Kk. ² þe om. R. ³ and comfort T.

⁴ And om. T.

⁵ haste þat þei myghte T. haste þat þey myzte R. om. Kk.

⁶ and with R. ⁷ her om. TR. ⁸ þe om. T. ⁹ took hem T.

¹⁰ þere om. T. ¹¹ vpon T. ¹² so om. T. ¹³ on TR.

¹⁴ were TR. we Kk. ¹⁵ ser Thomas om. T. Iohn R.

¹⁶ and Benet T. ¹⁷ in a mille in TR.

¹⁸ Essexe there sir Iohn holande þe duke of Excestre was take T. Essex þere sir Iohn holande þe Duke of Excestre was take R.

¹⁹ þe om. R. ²⁰ hadde arestid T. hadde arested R. arestid Kk.

²¹ thei T. þey R. þe Kk. ²² leaf 119, back.

arestid, & put yn-to þe Tour of London; and Ser Iohn Selley, knyzt, & Ser Iohn Mawdeleyne & Ser William Fereby, persons of King Richardez, were¹ arestid and put yn-to þe Tour of London. and þedir come þe Kingez Iusticez, and saat vpon hem yn the 4 Toure; and þere were² dampned alle iiij vnto þe deth.³ And the dome was yeue vnto Ser Bernarde Brokeys, þat he shulde go on fote fro the Tour þrouz þe toun of⁴ London vnto Tyburne, and þere⁵ to be hangyd, & aftir his hed to ben⁶ smyten of & sett on 8 London Brigge, & Ser Iohn Selley, knyzt, and Ser Iohn Maudeleyn & Sir William Feriby, persons, weir draw þrouzout London to Tyburne, & þere hanged.⁷

¶ And yn þe⁸ same yere King Henry sent Quene Isabell, þat 12 was King Richardez wiff,⁹ hom ayen yn-to Fraunce,¹⁰ and yaff hir Golde & siluer and mony oþer Iewellez; and so¹¹ sche was¹² discharged of alle hir dower, & sent out of Engelond.

¶ And yn þe secunde yere of¹³ King Henri þe iiiijth, was Ser 16 Rogger of Claryngdon, knyzt, & ij of his men, & þe Priour of Launde, & viij frere Menoures, and sum Maistres of diuinite, & oþer, for treson þat þay wrouzt ayens the King, were drawe & hangyd at¹⁴ Tyborne, alle xij presoners & personez.¹⁵ 20

¶ Than¹⁶ beganne þe¹⁷ discencion¹⁸ & debate yn þe cuntre of Walis betwene þe Lorde Grey Rithyn¹⁸ & Oweyn of Glyndore, Squier of Walis. And þis Oweyn rerid a nownbyr of Walschemen, and kept þat¹⁹ cuntrey about ryzt strong, & dede myche harme, and 24 destroyed þe Kingis tounez and lorschippeþ þrouzout Walis, & robbyd & slowgh þe Kingis pepil, both Englisch and Walsch; and þus he endured xij²⁰ yere large. And he toke þe Lorde Gray of²¹ Rithyn presoner, and kept hym fast yn holde tylle he was 28 raunsonde of prysoners of þe March, and kept hym long tyme yn holde; and at þe²² last he made hym wedde on of his douztris,²³ and kep[t]e hym styлле þere²⁴ with his wiff, and sone after he deyed.

¹ and þei weren T. ² þey weren T. ³ vnto þe deth alle four R.

⁴ þe tour of om. TR. ⁵ þere om. T.

⁶ aftir his heed T. aftir his hed R. his om. Kk.

⁷ hangid and her heedis smyten of and sett on london) brigge T. hanged and hir hedis smyten of and set on london Brigge R. & sett on London Brigge om. Kk. ⁸ þis T. this R. ⁹ þat was . . . wiff om. T.

¹⁰ fraunce þe which was kyng Richardis weddid wiff T. ¹¹ so om. T.

¹² was so T. ¹³ of þe reigne of T. ¹⁴ at þe T.

¹⁵ & personez om. TR. ¹⁶ There T. Ther R. ¹⁷ a T. þe om. R.

¹⁸—¹⁸ and a debate bitwene þe lord Grey Reffen in þe cuntree of Walis T.

¹⁹ aþ þat TR. ²⁰ a xij T. ²¹ of om. T. ²² þe om. T.

²³ his douztris TR. douztris om. Kk. ²⁴ there styлле T.

¶ And þanne þe¹ King,² knowyng þis myschef, destruccion and treson, þat þis Oweyn hade y³wrouzt, þen anon he ordeyned a strong power of men of armes and of archers, & moche oþer stufte
4 þat longid to warre, for to abate & destroye þe malice of þe⁴ fals Walschemen. And þanne þe King come yn-to Walys with his power, for to destroy þis Owen and oþer rebellis, fals Walschmen. And⁵ anon þei fledden yn-to þe mountayne; and þere myzte þe
8 Kinge do hem non harme yn no maner of⁶ wyse; but ofte þei toke þe Kingis cariage, and euery day destroyed his peple. But Oweyn and his men, þe moste parte, ascapid harmele; ffor þe King ne his meyne myzt not come⁷ to hem yn no maner-of⁸ wise
12 for þe mountayne; and so the King come to⁹ Engelond ayen, for lesyng of moo of his peple, and þus he¹⁰ spedde not þere.

¶ In þis same yere was gret scarsite of whete yn Engelond, for a quarter of whete was at xvj s.;¹¹ and merchaunthes were sent out
16 of Engelond ouyr see¹¹ ynto Spruce for whete. anon¹² þay hadde lade & freight shippez ynow, & came hoom yn saafte, blessid¹³ be God of¹⁴ alle his yeftis!

¶ And yn the iij^{de} 15 yere of King Harryez regne, ther was a
20 sterre seyne in þe firmament, þat schewed hym-self þrouz alle¹⁶ þe worlde, for dyuers tokenns þat schulde befallē sone after; þe which sterre was named & called be clergie¹⁷ 'Stella comata.' And on Seint Marye Magdaleyne day, next aftir,¹⁸ yn þe same
24 yere, was þe Batayle of Schrouysbury; and þedir come Ser Henry Percy, þe Erlez sone of Northombirlande, with a grete multitude of men of armes & archers, and yaf¹⁹ batayle to²⁰ King Harry þe iiij^{the},
—þrouz fals²¹ counsel and wicked reede of Ser Thomas Percy, is vncle,
28 Erle of Worcestre; and þere was Ser Harry Percy slayn, and þe most parte of his mayne, yn the felde,²² and Ser Thomas Percy take, and kept yn holde ij dayez tyllē þe King hadde sette rest among his peple on both sydes. And þanne Ser Thomas Percy
32 was Iugid to be ded, þat is to wete, drawe, hangyd, & his hed

¹ þe om. T. ² king Harry T. ³ y om. TR. ⁴ þese T. þis R.

⁵ and om. T. ⁶ of om. TR.

⁷ nought come T. not come R. not om. Kk.

⁸ of om. TR. ⁹ into TR. ¹⁰ he om. R.

¹¹—¹¹ and þanne was marchaundise of Englonde sente ouer þe see T.

¹² and anon T. and anon R. ¹³ and comen in haste y blessid T.

¹⁴ in R. ¹⁵ leaf 120. ¹⁶ out al R.

¹⁷ & called be clergie om. T. ¹⁸ folowyng T. folowyng R.

¹⁹ yaf a T. ²⁰ to þe T. ²¹ the fals T.

²² Percy slayn in þe felde & þe moste part of his meyne R.

smyte of for his fals treson at Schrowesbery, & his hed brouzt to London & set on London-is¹ Brygge. And al² oþer peple þat³ were slayne þere,⁴ on þe Kingez syde⁵ and yn boþe parteys,⁶ þe King let bury: and þere was slayn on þe Kingy3 syde yn the⁷ 4 batayle, þe Erle of Staffarde, and Ser Water Blount yn þe Kingys kote armyour, vndir þe Kingez baner, and mony mo worthi men; on⁸ whose soule God haue mercy! amen!

¶ And yn þe iiij^{the} yere of King Harryez regne, come þe 8 Emp[er]oure of Constantynoble, with mony grete lordez and knyghtes and moch oþer peple of his cuntre, in to Engelonde, to King Harry, with hym to speke⁹ and to disporte hym, and see¹⁰ þe gode gouernaunce & þe condicionez of our peple, and know¹¹ þe 12 commodite3 of Engelond. And our King, with alle his worthi lordez, godely and worschepfully hym reseeyved, and welcomed hym¹² and alle his mayne þat come with hym, and dede hym alle þe reuerence & worschip þat þay cowthe and myzte. And anon þe 16 King commawnded al maner officers þat he schulde be serued as worthily & as¹³ ryaly as it longith to¹⁴ such a worthi lorde & Emperour, on his owne cost, as long as þe Emperour was¹⁵ yn Engelond, and alle his men þat comyn with hym. 20

¶ And yn þis same yere came dame Iohane,¹⁶ þe Duchasse of Bryttayne, yn-to Engelonde, and landed at Falemouth yn Cornewayle; & fro þenne3 she was brouzt to þe cite of Wynchestre, and þere sche¹⁷ was weddyd vnto King Harry þe iiij^{the} yn the Abbey of 24 Saynt Swythens of Wynchestre, with alle þe solempnite þat myzt be do and made. ¶ And sone after, sche was brouzt fro þenne3 to London; and þe meyre, with¹⁸ þe aldermen and þe comyns of þe cite of London, rydyn ayens hir, and hir welcomed,¹⁹ and brouzt 28 hir throu3 þe cite of London vnto Westmynstre; and þere sche was crowned & made²⁰ Quene of Engelond; and þere þe king made a ryalle and a²¹ solempne fest for hir, and for al maner men þat þedir wolde come. 32

¶ And yn þis same yere, Dame Blaunche, þe eldist dou3tir of

¹ is *om.* TR. ² all þe T. ³ that there T. þat þer R.

⁴ þere *om.* TR. ⁵ side in þat Bataile R.

⁶ slayne on boþe parties T. and yn boþe parteye *om.* R.

⁷ kyngis side in þat T. þat R. syde *om.* Kk. ⁸ of T.

⁹ to speke with him T. ¹⁰ to see T. to se R. ¹¹ to knowe T.

¹² hym *om.* R. ¹³ as *om.* R. ¹⁴ vnto T.

¹⁵ Emperoure was T. Emperour was R. was Kk. ¹⁶ Iane TR.

¹⁷ sche *om.* T. ¹⁸ and T. & R. ¹⁹ welcomyd hir T.

²⁰ & made *om.* R. ²¹ and a TR. and *om.* Kk.

King Harry þe iiiij^{the}, was y¹sent ouyr see² with þe Erle of Somersete, hir vnclē, and with Maister Richarde Clyfforde, þanne³ Bischop of Worcestre, and with mony oþer lordez; and worthi⁴ knyztis, ladiez,⁴ and Squyers,⁵ as longed to such a worthi lady, and come vnto Coleyne. And þedir come þe Duke; sone of Barrey, with a faire mayne, and resecyved þis worthi lady, and þere the Bischop⁶ of Worcestre wedded & sacred ham to-gedir, as holy⁷ churche it⁷ wolde; & þere was made a ryalle feest and a⁸ grete Iustize, yn⁹ reverence and worschip of ham, and to alle peple þat þedir come. ¶ And whanne þis maryage and fest was do, þe Erle and þe Bischop, with alle hir meyne, token her leve of lordez and¹² ladiez and come home ayen yn-to Engelond in saafte, y¹⁰pankyd be God!

¶ And yn þe .v. yere of King Harryez regne, þe Lorde Thomas, King Harryez sone þe iiiij^{the}, and þe Erle of Kent went ouyr see,¹¹ 16 and mony oþer lordez and kniȝtes, and men of armys & archers, and went to¹² þe se to chastise þe rebellis þat afore hadde do moch harme to our Englisch¹³ Marchaunte; & to mony tounes and portis yn Engelond vpon þe se costis. ¶ And þe Lorde Thomas, þe 20 Kingis son, cam yn-to Flaundres, toffore a toun þat is callid þe Seluse, among alle þe schippe; of dyuers nacyons þat were þere; and after, þai rydyn with her schippe; among ham, and went alonde, & sported ham þere ij. daiez, and cam ayen to hir schippe; 24 & token þe brode se, & þere þay mettyn with iij carrake; of Iene, þat were lade with dyuers Marchaundiȝe, and welle y¹⁴manned; and þere þay fouȝtyn to-gadryȝe longe; but þe Englischmen hadde þe victorye, and brouȝt þe Carrake; yn-to þe camere before 28 Wynchylse; and þere þay cantid þes godeȝ, and on of þeze Carreke; was sodenly þere brent, & þe lordez and hir peple turned hom ayen, and went no firthir at þat tyme.

¶ And yn that same yere, Serle, yoman of King Richarde; 32 Robys, come yn-to Engelond out of Scotland, and saide to diuers peple þat 'King Richard was alyve yn Scotlond'; and so, moch of

¹ y om. TR. ² þe see T. ³ leaf 120, back. ⁴ and ladies TR.

⁵ and worthi squyers T. worthi squiers R.

⁶ the bisshop T. þe Bisshop R. bisshop Kk.

⁷ it om. TR. ⁸ a om. TR.

⁹ in þe T. ¹⁰ y om. TR.

¹¹ iiiij^e wente ouer þe see and þe Erle of kent T. wente ovir see and þe erl of kent R.

¹² archers a greet meyne wenten to T. archers a greet meyne went R.

¹³ Engliſshe men T. ¹⁴ y om. R.

þe peple beleued yn his worde; ; wherfore mych of þe peple of þe Reeme were yn gret erreure and gruching ayens þe King, prou3 fals informacion¹ þat þis Serle hadde made, for moche peple beleuyd & trustid to² his seyng; but at þe³ last he was take yn the North 4 cuntre, and by lawe juged to be draw þrou3 euery cite & gode burgh toun yn Engeland; and so he was *serued*. And at þe³ last he was brouzt to London, vnto Gilde⁴-halle before þe justize; and þere he was juged to⁵ be brouzt to þe Tour of London, and þere to 8 be laide vp⁶-on an hirdille, & þan to⁷ be drawe þrou3 þe cete of London to Tyborne, &⁸ hangyd, & þan quarterde, and his hed smyte of & set on London Brygge, & his quarters to be sent to iiij gode towne3 of Engeland, & þere set vp: & þus endid he his⁹ fals 12 treson & desceit.

¶ And yn þe vj yere of King Henrye3 regne, þe Erle of Marre, of Scotland, be saaf condit come ynto Engeland for to chalange Ser Edmund, þe Erle of Kent, of certeyn cours of warre on hors-bak; 16 & so þis chalange was accept and graunted, and þe place take yn Smythfelde at London. And þis Erle of Marre, þe¹⁰ Scot, com proudly¹¹ yn-to the felde, as his chalange asked. And anon com yn þe Erle of Kent, and rode vnto þe Scot, and manfully rydyn 20 togadir with scharp¹² speris dyuers cours; but þe Erle of Kent hadde þe Felde, and gate hym moch worschip & þanke of al maner of¹³ men for his manful dedis.

¶ And þis yere¹⁴ Ser Richard Scrope, Archebyschop¹⁵ of York, 24 and þe lorde Mounbray, Erle Marchal of Engelande, gadrid vnto hym a strong meyne yn þe North cuntre ayens King Henry. and þan King Henry, heryng¹⁶ þerof, yn alle þe hast þat he myzte, come with his pöwer northwarde, and mette with ham at York; 28 and þere were þei¹⁷ ij lordez take, and brouzt to¹⁸ þe King, and anon þe Iuge3 weryn sette, and þese ij lordez brouzt forth; and þere þai were dampned vn-to þe¹⁹ deth, þat bope her hedis schulde be²⁰ smyte of; and þere þay made her ende: on whose soulez God, for 32 his pete, haue mercy! Amen!

¹ thorough informacion) of lesyngis and falslies T. þoruz informacion) of his lie3 and fals lesingis R.

² peple trustid him and bileueyed in TR. ³ þe om. T. ⁴ þe Gilde T.

⁵ forto T. ⁶ vp om. TR. ⁷ to om. R. ⁸ and þere TR.

⁹ for his TR. ¹⁰ a T. ¹¹ leaf 121. ¹² scharp om. T. ¹³ of om. R.

¹⁴ And in þe same yeer of kyng Harries reigne þe iiijth T. And in þe vi. yeer of kinge henries regne þe iiijth R.

¹⁵ þe Erchebisshop T. ¹⁶ þanne þe kyng heryng T.

¹⁷ þese T. þe3e R. ¹⁸ vnto T. ¹⁹ þe om. R. ²⁰ heedis were T.

¶ And whanne¹ þis was do, þe King come to London ayen, a[nd]² restyd hym. And anon, God, of his grete godenesse, wrouzt and schewyd meny grete myracles for his worthi Clerke, þe³ 4 Archebischop of Yorke, þat þus was down to⁴ deth.⁵

¶ And yn þe vij yere of King Henryez regne come⁶ Dame Luce, þe Dukez sistir⁷ of Millane, yn-to⁸ Engelond, and so vnto London, and þere was weddid to Ser Edmunde Helond, Erle of 8 Kent, yn þe priory of Saint Mary Ouerey yn Southwerke, with moche solempnite and grete worschip: and þere was þe King hym selfe, and yaf hir at þe churche dore. ¶ And whanne⁹ þay were weddyd, and masse do,¹⁰ þe King, his owne persone, brouzt and 12 ladde þis worthi lady yn-to þe Bischopis place of Wynchestre; and þere was a wondir grete fest helde, to alle maner of pepil þat come pedir.¹¹

¶ In þis¹² same yere, Ser Robert Knollis, kniyzt, þe worthi 16 warriour, deied at his Maner yn Northfolke: and fro þennez he was brouzt to London on¹³ an hors beere, with myche torche lyghte; and so was he brouzt to¹⁴ þe Whit-Freris yn Flet-strete; and þere was do and ¹⁵made a ryal &¹⁶ solempne terement for 20 hym, for þem¹⁵ þat þidir wolde come, boþe pore & rich; and þere he lyth beryed¹⁷; on whose soule God¹⁸ haue mercy! Amen!

¶ And¹⁹ yn the²⁰ same yere Ser Thomas Ruston,²¹ kniȝt, Constab[1]e of þe Tour of London, was dreynt yn²² Themys²³ at London 24 Brygge, as he com fro Westmynstre towarde þe Tour yn a barge; and al þrouz lewdenesse. And yn þe same yere Dame Phelyp, þe yongyr douȝtir of King Henry þe iiij^{the}, was ladde ouer þe see with Ser Richarde, þe Dukez brothir of Yorke, and Ser Edmunde Cour- 28 teneye, bishop of Norwiche, and mony oþer lordiz, kniȝtis and squyers, ladiez and gentil-wymmen, as²⁴ perteyneth to²⁵ such a worthi Kingis douȝtir, and come yn-to Denmarke, to a toun²⁶ þat is callyd Elsyngborgh. And þedir come þe King of Denmarke, wipe 32 his lordis, and reseceyvid þis worthi lady for his wiff, and welcomyd

¹ as T. ² and there T. and þere R. ³ þe om. TR.

⁴ vnto R. ⁵ vnto þe deeth T. ⁶ come om. T. ⁷ doughtir T.

⁸ come into T. ⁹ And as sone as T. ¹⁰ and þe masse was doon T.

¹¹ þedir om. T. ¹² þe TR. ¹³ vpon TR. ¹⁴ vnto T.

¹⁵⁻¹⁶ maad for him a solempne feste and a roiaff terment for tho T. þo R.

¹⁶ and a R.

¹⁷ buried bi dame Constaunce his wiff in mydde of þe bodi of the churche

T. beried be Dame Constance his wiff in þe myddel of þe body of þe chirehe R.

¹⁸ god of his pitee T. god for his pite R. ¹⁹ And þus T.

²⁰ this R.

²¹ Rempston R.

²² in þe R.

²³ yn Themys om. T.

²⁴ þat TR.

²⁵ vnto T.

²⁶ Toure T.

pese worthi lordez, and dede ham moche reuerence & gret worschip. ¶ And panne þei were brouzt to a toun þat is¹ callid London yn Denmark, and þere was this lady weddid and sacryd to þe King of Denmark with moche solempnite; and þere was sche crowned 4 Quene of Denmark, Norway and Swethyn; & þere was made a rialle fest. ¶ And whanne þis Fest and mariag was do & endid, þeze lordez² and ladiez tokyn her leve of the³ King and Quene, and comyn home ayen yn-to Engelonde yn hast, þanked be Ihesu! 8

¶ And yn the viij zere of King Harryez regne, þer was a man þat was clepid 'þe walsch clerke,' and⁴ apelyd a knyzt þat me callyd Ser Perciuale Sowdon, of treson; and þere þey were ioyned to fyt vnto þe deth, within⁵ þe listez, & þe day,⁶ tyme and place 12 assigned and lymytid to be do and ende, yn Smythfelde. At þe which day þe ij personez comyn yn to þe felde, and fouztyn soore and myztily togadris; but at þe⁷ last þe knyzt ouercame þe clerke, and made hym yelde⁸ creaunde of his fals plechement þat he sayde 16 on hym; and þan was he dispoyled of his armeour and drawe out of þe ffelde to Tyburne; & þere was he hangyd, and þe knizt take to grace, and was a gode man.

¶ And yn þis same yere, Ser Henry,⁹ erle¹⁰ of Northombirlande, 20 & þe Lorde Bardolf, comyn out of Scotlande, yn preiudice & destruccion of King Harry; wherfore pay of the Northcuntre arysyn vp,¹¹ and¹² smytyn of her hedis, and¹³ sent þe hed of the Erle, and þe¹⁴ quarter of þe lorde Bardolfe, to London; and þere 24 þey were set vp on þe brygge, for fals treson þat pay had purposed ayens þe Kinge.

¶ And yn þe ix yere of King Harrez regne, was Ser Edmu[n]de¹⁵ Holonde,¹⁶ Erle of Kent, made¹⁷ Amerel of Engelonde, for to kepe 28 þe see. And he went to þe see with mony ryalle¹⁸ schippis, þat were full well arayed and¹⁹ enarmyd with mony a gode man of armez & of²⁰ archers, and of gode defence of²¹ warre yn þe Kinges name of Engelonde; and so he londit at þe²² laste yn þe costes of 32

¹ men T. me R. ² leaf 121, back. ³ the om. T. ⁴ and he TR.

⁵ in T. with ynne R. with Kk. ⁶ day and T. ⁷ þe om. T.

⁸ yelde him TR. ⁹ ser henry om. T. ¹⁰ þe Erle T.

¹¹ vpon hem T. vp on ham R.

¹² and faught with hem and sconcfited hem and took hem and T. and fauzt with ham and scomfited ham & took ham & R.

¹³ and quartrid her bodies and T. and quartred hir bodies and R.

¹⁴ a TR. ¹⁵ Edmū Kk. ¹⁶ of holonde T. ¹⁷ was maad T.

¹⁸ a roiaht T. ¹⁹ and apparellid and T. and appareiled & R.

²⁰ of om. TR. ²¹ in T. ²² þe om. T.

Brittaigne, in þe Ile of Bryak, with alle his peple; and he besegid þe castel and assauted it. and þai with-ynne¹ with-stode hym with grete defence & streinþe, and anon let sette his ordynaunce; & yn 4-þe leyngthe of a gune com a quarel, & smot þe gode Erle yn þe hed, & þere he cauȝt his deth-wownde, but yet þei left not tulle þay hadde gotyn þe Castell and alle þat was þere-ynne; and þere þis gode lorde deid: on whose soule God haue mercy.² ¶ And þanne 8 his³ meyne comyn hom ayen in-to Engeland with þe Erlez body, and was buried among his auncetryez riȝt worthily. ¶ And yn þe same yere was a gret frost⁴ yn Engeland, þat dured xv wokeȝ.

¶ And yn þe⁵ x yere of King Harryes regne þe iiij^{the}, come þe 12 Senescall of Henaud, with oþer meyne, yn-to Englund, for⁶ to seke⁷ auntrez, and to gete hym⁸ worschyp yn dedis of armeȝ, boþe on horsbak and on foote, of al maner poyntis of⁹ dedis of armeȝ and¹⁰ warre. And þe Senescal Chalanged þe Erle of Somerset; and 16 þe Erle delyuerde hym manfully yn al his chalangeȝ, and put his aduersari to þe worsse yn alle poyntis, & wanne hym þere grete worschyp and degre¹¹ of the ffeelde. ¶ And þe next day come yn to þe ffeelde a noþer man of armeȝ of the Seneschallys party; & 20 ayens hym com Ser Richard of Arundell, knyȝt; and þe¹² Henauder hed¹³ þe bettyr of hym¹⁴ on fote in on poynt, for he broȝt hym on his kne. ¶ And þe thrid day come yn¹⁵ a noþer man of armeȝ yn to the felde; and ayens hym Ser Iohn Cornewayle, knyȝt; and manly 24 & knyȝtly quyȝt hym yn alle maner of poynteȝ ayens his aduersary, and had þe bettyr yn the felde. ¶ And¹⁶ þe iiij day come yn¹⁷ a noþer man of armys of Henaude, yn¹⁸ þe felde; and ayens hym com Ser Iohn Cheynees sone,¹⁹ and manly quyȝt hym ayens his aduersary, 28 for he caste bothe²⁰ hors & man into þe felde; and þe King, for his manhode at þat tyme, dubbyd hym knyȝt. ¶ And þe v day þer com a noþer man of armeȝ of²¹ Henaudeȝ party yn-to þe ffel[d]e; and to hym come Iohn²² Stewarde, squyer, and manfully quyȝt hym þere yn 32 al maner of poyntis, and hadde þe bettir. ¶ And þe vj day come a nother Henauder; & to hym come William Porter, squier; and manfully he quitte²³ hym yn þe ffelde, and hadde þe bettir,²³ and þe

¹ with-ynne *om.* T. ² mercy Amen TR. ³ his TR. þis Kk.

⁴ forst Kk. ⁵ þe same T. ⁶ for *om.* TR. ⁷ seke T. seihe Kk.

⁸ hym *om.* T. ⁹ and T. & R. ¹⁰ and of TR. ¹¹ and þe gree T.

¹² þe he R. ¹³ hed *om.* R. ¹⁴ leaf 122. ¹⁵ yn *om.* T.

¹⁶ And on TR. ¹⁷ yn *om.* T. ¹⁸ into TR. ¹⁹ his sone T.

²⁰ bothe *om.* TR. ²¹ of þe TR. ²² sir Iohn) T. to him yn sir Iohn R.

²³⁻²³ quyȝte him and hadde þe bettir in þe ffelde and T. him and hadde þe bettir in þe felde R.

King dubbid hym kniȝt þe same time. ¶ And þe vij day come a noþer Henauder yn-to¹ the felde; & to hym come Iohn Standisch, Squyer, and manly quit² hym on his aduersary, and hadde þe bettir yn þe ffelde; and þere þe King dubbyd hym kniȝt þe same 4 day. ¶ And yn³ þe same day come a noþer Henauder; and to⁴ hym come a squier of Gasquoyne; and⁵ proutly & manly he quitte hym on his aduersarye, and þere hadde þe bettir, and anon þe King dubbyd hym kniȝt. 8

¶ And⁶ þe viij day com yn-to þe ffelde ij men of armes of Henaude; and to ham come ij soudiers of Calis þat were breþryn, y⁷-Clepyd þe Boroughez; and welle and manly quit hem on hir aduersarieȝ, and hadde þe bettir yn þo⁸ felde; and þus endid þis 12 Chalanged with moche worschep. And þe King, at þe reuencens of the straungers, made a grete ffeest, and yaff ryche yeftis; and þay tokyn hir leue, and went whom yn-to hir cuntre.

¶ And yn þe xj ȝere of King Hen[r]yeȝ regne þe iiij^{the}, þere was 16 a gret Batayle yn⁹ Smythfelde betwene ij squiers; þat on¹⁰ men callid Glowcestre, and¹¹ þat was¹² appelaunt, and¹³ Arture, þat was¹⁴ defendaunt; and welle and manfully fouȝtyn togadrys longe tyme. And the King, for hir manfulnesse and of his grace, toke 20 hir quarell yn-to his honde, and mad ham go¹⁵ out of þe felde at¹⁶ ones; and¹⁷ so þay were dyvyded of hir bataile; and þe King yaf ham grace.

And yn¹⁸ þe xij ȝere of King Henryeȝ regne þe iiij^{the}, Rys ap¹⁹ 24 die, a Squier of Walis þat was a rebell & a ryser,²⁰ and²¹ supporter of Owen of Glyndore þat dede moche destruccion to þe pepil yn²² Walis, was²³ take, & brouȝt to London. And þere he come afore þe Iustize, and was dampned for his treson; & þan he was leyde on²⁴ 28 an hirdyl, and so draw forth to Tyburne þrowghe the cite, and þere was hangyd, & lete doune ayen, and his hed smytyn of; and his bodi quarterde and sent to foure towneȝ, and his hedde sette on London Brygge. 32

¶ And the²⁵ xiiij ȝere of King Henryeȝ regne,²⁶ deyed

¹ to om. T. ² he quytte TR. ³ on TR. ⁴ vnto T.
⁵ þat T. ⁶ And in T. ⁷ y om. TR. ⁸ þe TR.
⁹ doon in T. do in R. ¹⁰ on om. R. ¹¹ and om. R.
¹² was þe TR. ¹³ and þat oþer T. ¹⁴ was þe TR. ¹⁵ to go T.
¹⁶ boþe at T. ¹⁷ and om. R. ¹⁸ þanne T. yn om. R.
¹⁹ rose vp oon T. of R. ²⁰ & a ryser om. T. ²¹ and also T.
²² of T. ²³ Walis and at laste he was T. ²⁴ vpon TR.
²⁵ in þe T. ²⁶ of King harries T. of king henrieȝ Regne þe iiij R.
of his regne Kk.

Ser Iohn Beauford, Erle¹ of Somerset, þat was ²Capteyne of Caleys, and was beryed at þe Abbey of Tour-hille: on whose soule God haue mercy! Amen! And yn þe same yere þe Lorde Thomas, ⁴King Harryeʒ sone, wedded þe Countesse of Somerset. And þe³ same yere come þe ambasceturs of Fraunce yn-to Engelonde, from þe Duk of Burgoyne, vnto the prince of Engelonde, King Harryeʒ sone and his⁴ heire, for help & socour of men of armeʒ and archers ⁸ayens the Duk of Orlyauns. And he sent forth⁵ þe Erle of Arundell, Ser Gylbarde Vmfrauyll,⁶ Erle of Kyme, and þe Lorde of Cobham, Ser Iohn Oldecastell, and mony oþer gode knyztis, and worthi squyers and men of armeʒ, and gode archers, ouyr see⁷ yn-to ¹²Fraunce, and comyn to⁸ Parys, to þe Duk of Burgoyne, *pere*⁹ he resecevyd and welcomyde þese¹⁰ Englisch lordis and alle hir meyne. ¶ And þanne it was do hym to wete þat þe Duk of Orlyauce was come to Senclowe, faste by Parys, with a grete noumbre of men of ¹⁶armys & arblasters; and þedir¹¹ went our Englisch men, and fouztyn *with* ham, and gotyn þe brygge of Senclowe; & þere þay slow mony¹² of the Frensch men and Armenackeʒ, and þe remenaunt fledde, and¹³ wolde no lengir abide. And oure Englysch ²⁰men comyn ayen to Paris; & *pere* þay tokyn hir leue of the Duke, and comen hom ayen yn-to Engelonde yn saafte, & he¹⁴ yaf ham gret yeftis. ¶ Anon folowyng, the Duk of Orlyauce sent ambascetours yn-to Engelond, to King Harry þe iiiij^{the}, besechyng hym of ²⁴his help & socour ayens his dedely enymye, þe Duke of Burgoyne. And þan þe King made Thomas, his sone, Duke of Clarence, & his oþer sone John¹⁵ Duke of Bedforde, and his oþer sone Vmfray Duk of Gloucestre; & Ser Thomas Beauforde, Erle of Somerset¹⁶; & þe ²⁸Duke of Awmarle he¹⁷ made Duk of Yorke. ¶ And þan þe King ordeyned his sone Thomas, and¹⁸ Beauford, Erle of Somerset,¹⁹ and Sir Iohn Cornewayle, and meny oþer lordis, kniztis²⁰ &²¹ squyers, men²² of armeʒ and²³ archers, to go ouyr²⁴ yn-to Fraunce, yn

¹ þe Erle TR. ² leaf 122, back. ³ þis T. in this R.

⁴ his om. T. ⁵ And thanne ther went ouer þe see T.

⁶ vmfrauyll om. T. ⁷ wente ouer þe see T. þe se R. ⁸ into T.

⁹ and þere TR. ¹⁰ welcomyd wele and goodly these T.

¹¹ tho T. ¹² moche peple T.

¹³ and wente and T. ¹⁴ and þe duke T. Duk R.

¹⁵ sone Iohn TR. John om. Kk. ¹⁶ Dorsett T. Dorset R.

¹⁷ þe whichche T. ¹⁸ and om. TR. ¹⁹ dorsett T. Dorset R.

²⁰ lordis and many oþer knyghtis T. and knyztis R.

²¹ & om. R. ²² and men TR.

²³ and many oþer T. ²⁴ to gone ouer þe see T. to go over þe se R.

to ouyr Kk.

BRUT.

CC

helpyng & streynghyng of the Duke of Orlyauce. ¶ And þese worthi lordez, with alle his retynu, schippyd at Hampton, and sayled our ynto Normandy, and landed at Hoggez. And þere mette with ham þe lorde Hambe, at hir londyng, with vij M¹ men of armes of Frenschmen¹; and alle were put to flyzt, and takyn of hem vij C men of armes & iiij C hors, *with-out* þo þat were slayn yn the felde. And so þei ryden forth þrouzout Fraunce, and token Castell & tounez, & slowz mych pepil of Frenschmen þat with-stode ham, and tokyn meny prysoners as þay roode; and so þai passyd² forth til þay comyn to Burdeux; and þere þay restid ham a while, and sette þe cuntre yn pees & rest tyll þe vyntage were redy to sayle; and þanne þe Duk with his mayne com hom ynto Engelond yn saafte, þankyng be God! ¶ And yn þe same yere was þe Kingis coyne³ chaynged þrouz-out Engelond, by þe King and his counsel, þat is to say, þe noble, half noble, & ferthyng of goolde.

¶ And þe ⁴xiiij yere of King Harryez regne þe ⁵iiiij^{the}, he lete 16 make galaiez of warre, for he hadde hopid to haue past þe grete se, and so forth to Ierusalem, and þere to haue endid his lyf. but God vised hym⁵ sone aftir with Infirmyteez and grete sekenessez, þat he myzt not wel endure no while, so feruentli he was y⁶tak. And he 20 was⁷ yn Bedde at Westmynstre yn a faire Chaumbre; and as he lay abedde, he axed his Chaumbirleyn what he⁸ callyd that Chaumbyr þat he lay-ynne: he answerde and sayde 'Ierusalem.' þanne⁹ he sayde, his prophecie sayde 'he¹⁰ schulde make an ende 24 and deye yn Ierusalem.' and þan¹¹ he made hym redy vnto God, & disposed alle his wille, and sone aftir he deyed, and was caryed be water fro Westmynstre yn a barge to Feüeresham, and fro þennes to Caunturburye be londe, with moche torchelyzt brennyng, yn-to 28 þe Priorie¹² of Crichirch, and þere he was worthili entered & beried besyde saint Thomas shryne of Cawnturburye. And þus endid þis¹³ worthi King Henry abowte myd Lent Sondag, in þe yere of our Lorde Ihesu Crist, M¹CCCCxiiij,¹⁴ on whos soule God haue 32 mercy! Amen!

¹ frensshmen þre sergeauntes of armes with him T. ² riden R.

³ yeer þe kingez coyn was R.

⁴ leaf 123.

⁵ him so TR.

⁶ y om. TR.

⁷ take and brought T. was brouzt R.

⁸ thei T. þey R.

⁹ and þanne T. and thanne R.

¹⁰ þat he T.

¹¹ þan om. T. ¹² abbey T.

¹³ the T. þe R.

¹⁴ and xiiij T.

And aftir þis King Henri, regnyd his sone Henry, þe v^{the}
aftir þe conquest.¹ *Capitulum CC.xliiij.*²

And aftir þe deth of King Harry þe iiiij^{the}, regnid King Harry
4 his sone, þat was born at Munmoth yn Walis, þat was³ a worthi
King, and a gracious man, and a gret conquerour. ¶ And yn þe
firste yere of his regne, for gret loue & gedenesse, he sent to þe
8 þe ij^{de}, & let take vp his body ayen out of the erthe, and dede
bring hym to Westmynstre, yn a ryal chare couert with blak
veluet, & baners of diuers armez alle aboute. & al þe horsse
drawyng þe chare were trappid yn black, & bete with diuers armez,
12 and mony⁴ a torch brennyng, by alle þe wey, til he come to
Westmystre. And þere he lette make for hym a ryalle & a
solempne terement, and buried hym be Quene Anne his wiff, as
his owne desire was, on þe firther syde of Seynt Edwardes schryne,
16 yn the Abbey of Saint Petris of Westmynstre : on whose soule God
haue mercy ! Amen !

¶ And yn þis same yere weren⁵ certeyne of Lollardez and fals
heritikis takine, þat hadde pu[r]sued, þrouz fals treson, to haue
20 slayn þe⁶ King, and for to haue destroyed alle þe clergy of þis
Reme. & þai myzt haue hadde her fals purpos, but oure Lorde God
wolde not suffre it ; for yn hast þe⁷ King hadde warnyng þerof, & of alle
hir fals ordinaunce & worchyng, and come sodenly with his power
24 to Saint Johnes-without-Smythfelde ; and anon þei tokyn a certeyn
of þe Lollardez & fals heritikez, and brouzt hem⁸ vnto þe Kingis
presens, & þere þei⁹ tolde all her fals purpos & ordinaunce, how þey
wolde haue do & wrozt, & þay myzt haue regned &¹⁰ hadde her
28 wylle, and þere þei tolde which were her captens & her¹¹ gouernours.
& þan þe King commaunded ham to þe Tour of London ; & þanne
þey took moo of ham, boþe within þe cite & without,¹² and sent ham
to Newgate and to¹³ bothe¹⁴ Countie3. And þan þere¹⁵ were [þei]
32 brouzt yn¹⁶ examynacion before þe clergy and þe Kingis Iustice3 ;
& þere þei were conuicte of¹⁷ hir fals heresy, & dampned before þe
Iustice3 for hir fals treson : & þus¹⁸ was her Iugement, þat þay

¹ regnyd Harry his sone T. ² CC.xliiij om. T. CC.xlv R.

³ Walis and he was T. ⁴ many TR. ⁵ weren a TR.

⁶ oure TR. ⁷ oure T. ⁸ hem om. T. ⁹ þei om. T.

¹⁰ and haue T. ¹¹ her om. T. ¹² leaf 123, back. ¹³ into T.

¹⁴ bothe the T. ¹⁵ thei T. ¹⁶ into T.

¹⁷ thei were committed bifore þe clergie for T. conuict befor þe clergie for R.

¹⁸ þis T. this R.

schulde be drawe fro þe Tour of London, þrouȝ London, vnto seint Gyleȝ felde; & þere to be hangid & brent on¹ þe galows. ¶ And also was² take Ser Roger Acton, kniȝt, boþe for Lollardye & eke for treson ayens þe King and þe Reme. and he come afore þe⁴ clergie, and was conuict of³ his⁴ lewed Lollardye, and⁵ ⁶before þe Iustize ydampned to be brent,⁶ &⁷ to be draw fro þe Tour of Lunden þrouȝ þe cite to Saint Gyleȝ felde, & to⁸ be hanged & to be⁹ brent. 8

¶ And þe¹⁰ ij yere¹¹ of King Harryȝ regne¹² þe v^{the}, he hilde a counsel of alle þe lordeȝ of the Reme at Westmynstre; and þere he put ham þe¹³ demaunde, & prayed¹⁴ hem of hir godenesse and of her gode counsel¹⁵ to schewe hym, as touchynge þe titile &¹⁶ ryȝt þat¹² he hadde to Normandy, Gasquoyne & Guyenne, þe which þe King of Fraunce withhilde hym¹⁷ wrongefully and vnriȝtfully, þe wh[i]che his auncetres before hym hadde holde be trewe titill of conquest, & riȝt heritage. ¶ The which Normandy, Gasquoyne & Guyenne, þe¹⁶ gode King Edward of Wyndesore, and his¹⁸ ansetryȝ before hym, hadde holde alle hir lyveȝ tyme. And his Lordeȝ ȝaf hym counsel to sende ambassetours vnto þe King of Fraunce and his counsel, þat¹⁹ he schulde yelde vp to hym his riȝt heritage, þat is to²⁰ say, Normandie, ²⁰ Gasqueyne, & Guyenne, þe²¹ which his predecessoris had y²²holde afore hym, or ellis he wolde it wynne with dunt of swyrde yn schort tyme, with help²³ of Ihesu. ¶ And þanne þe Dolfynne of Fraunce answeyrd to our²⁴ ambassetours, & sayde yn²⁵ pis manere: ²⁴ þat þe²⁶ King was ouyr yonge &²⁷ tendir of age to make eny warre ayens hym, and was not like yette to be no gede (*sic*) warryor to²⁸ make such a conqueste þere vpon hym; &²⁹ yn scorne & despite he sent to hyma tonne fulle of teneys-ballis, be-cause he schulde³⁰ haue *sum*what ²⁸ to³¹ play with-alle, for hym & for his³² lordeȝ; ‘& þat become hym bettir þanne to mantayne eny warre,’ he sayd.³³ ¶ And þanne our³⁴

¹ in R. ² ther was T. ³ was committed for T. for R.

⁴ his clergie and TR. ⁵ and om. R.

⁶⁻⁶ to be brent and dampnyd before the Iustices T. Iustice to be brent & dampned R.

⁷ and om. T. ⁸ pere R. ⁹ to be om. TR. ¹⁰ in the R.

¹¹ And in the yeer T. ¹² regne om. R. ¹³ this TR.

¹⁴ praide and bisoughte T. praide & besouȝte R.

¹⁵ counceile and good wille T. counseff and goodwill R. ¹⁶ and the T.

¹⁷ hym om. TR. ¹⁸ his TR. hir Kk. ¹⁹ and þat TR.

²⁰ is to TR. is Kk. ²¹ Gascoigne and Gyene and Normandie þe T.

²² y om. TR. ²³ þe helpe T. þe help R. ²⁴ oure T. our R. om. Kk.

²⁵ on T. ²⁶ oure T. ²⁷ and to T. ²⁸ to do and to T. and to R.

²⁹ And *sum*what T. ³⁰ wolde R. ³¹ forto T.

³² for his TR. for Kk. ³³ he sayd om. T. ³⁴ anoon oure T.

lordez, þat were ambassetours, tokyn hir leue & comyn yn-to
Engelond ayen, & tolde þe Kinge and his Counsel of the vngodely
answere þat þay hadde of the Dolfyn, and of þe present þat he hadde¹
4 sent vnto the Kinge. ¶ And whanne þe King hadde herde here
wordez, and the answeere of the Dolfyne, he was wondir sore
agreyvyd, & ryzt evil payed towarde the Frenschmen and towarde þe
King & þe Dolfyn, and þouzt to venge hym apon hem as sone as
8 God wolde sende hym grace and myght; and anon lette² make
tenysballis for the Dolfyn in alle þe haste þat þay myzte be maad,³
& þat þei were harde & grete gune-stonys, for þe Dolfyn to play
with-alle. ¶ And þanne anon þe King sent for alle his lordez, &
12 hilde a gret⁴ Counsel at Westmynstre, and tolde vnto hem þe
answeere þat he⁵ hadde of the Dolfyn, and of⁶ his worthi present
to⁷ hym and to⁸ his lordez, to play with-alle. And þere þe King
and his lordez were accorded þat þay schulde be redy yn armys with
16 hir power, yn þe best aray þat myzt be,⁹ and gete¹⁰ men of armes
and archers,¹¹ and alle oper stuff þat longed þerto,¹² & to be redy
with alle hir retynu to mete at Southhampton be Lammesse next
folouyng, without eny delaye; for the King ordeyned is¹³ Naueye
20 of schippe3, with al maner stuff¹⁴ & vitaille þat longid to such a
warriour, of al maner ordinaunce,¹⁵ yn the hauen of Southhamton,
in¹⁶ to þe nowmbir of iij^c xx^{ti} sayle. ¶ And þere fil¹⁷ a grete deseje
& a foul myschif; for þer were iij lordez þat¹⁸ þe King tryst moche
24 ynne, þat,¹⁹ for fals couetize purpo3id²⁰ þe Kingis deth, & þouzt to
haue slayn hym and alle his breþryn or he hadde take þe see, þe
which were named þus: Ser Richarde, þe Erle of Caumbrydge,
broþer to þe Duk of York; þe ij was þe Lord Scrope, Treserer of
28 Engelond; þe iij was Ser Thomas Gray, knyzt, of the Northcuntre.
And þeze iij lordez afore sayde, for lucre of Moneye, had made
promis to þe Frenschmen to²¹ haue slayne oure King and alle his
worthi brethryn, by a false trayne sodenly, ere þay hadde be war.
32 But God, of his gret grace, hylde his holy hand ouyr ham, & saued

¹ whiche he hadde T. þe whiche he hadde R. þat hadde Kk.

² he lete T. ³ maad TR. padde (sic) Kk. ⁴ leaf 124. ⁵ thei T.

⁶ of om. R. ⁷ that he sente to T. þat he sente to R. ⁸ to om. T.

⁹ be done T. be do R. ¹⁰ to gete T.

¹¹ archers þat myghte be geten T. archers þat myzte be gotten R.

¹² longid toward it T. to it R. ¹³ þanne his T. ¹⁴ of stuff T.

¹⁵ of ordinauncis T. ¹⁶ in om. T.

¹⁷ And thanne felle ther T. And þanne fil þer R. ¹⁸ which þat TR.

¹⁹ ynne þat om. T. þat om. R.

²⁰ couetise þat þei hadde purpo3id & Iugid T. couetize þat þey hadde
purposed and iuged R. ²¹ forto TR.

hem from þis p̄relous meyne. ¶ And for to haue do¹ þis, þei resceyued of þe Frenschmen a mylyon of golde, þat² was p̄ere oponly previde; and for þer fals treson þey were all iij Iuged vnto deth³; and þis was þe Iugement: þat þai schulde be ladde þrouz Hampton, 4 and without þe⁴ Northegate, p̄ere to be hedid; & þus þai endide, for her fals couetyse and treson.

¶ Anon as þus⁵ was do, þe King and alle his meyne made hem redy, and wenton to schyppe, &⁶ sayled forth with xv^c schippe³, 8 and arryued with-ynne Sayne, at Kitcaws, vpon our Ladiez Evyn, þe⁷ Assumpcion, yn Normandye, with al his ordynaunce; & so went⁸ forth to Hareflyn, & besegid þe toun al aboute, by londe⁹ and⁹ by watir, and sent to þe capteyne, and bade hym delyuer þe¹² towne: and he saide, ‘non¹⁰ he delyuerd hym, ne non he wolde to hym delyuer,¹¹ but bade hym do his beste.’ ¶ And þan þe¹² King leyde his ordynaunce vnto þe toun, þat is for to saye, Gunnez, Engyne³,¹³ Tripgettis, & schet and cast vnto þe wallis & eke yn-to¹⁶ þe toun, & caste doun both tourez and toun, & layde ham vnto þe grounde: & p̄ere¹⁴ he played at¹⁵ tenys with his harde gune-stonez þat¹⁶ were withynne þe toun. ¶ Whanne þai schulde plai, þai songyn ‘welawaye and allas þat¹⁷ eny suche tenyez-ballis were made,’²⁰ and cursed al þo þat warre beganne, & þe tyme þat¹⁸ þei were born. ¶ And on þe morow þe King dede crye at euery gate of þe toun, þat euery man schulde be redye, on þe morowe erlye to make assaute vnto þe toun. ¶ And Gilliam¹⁹ Bocher & Iohn Gaunt,²⁰ with²⁴ xij oþer worthi burgez, comyn to þe King, and besouzt hym, of his ryall mageste & power, to²¹ withdrawe his malice and²² destruction þat he dede vnto hem, & besouzt hym of viij dayez respite and trewez, yef eny rescu myzt come vnto hem, and ellis to yelde vp þe²⁸ toun vnto hym, with alle her godez. ¶ And þan þe king sent forth þe Capteyne, and kept þe Remenaunt stille with hym. And þe lorde Gancort went fforth to Rone yn alle hast, vnto þe Dolfyn, for²³ help & socour; but þer was non, ne no maner rescu²⁴; for þe³² Dolfyn wolde not abyde. ¶ And þus þis Capteyne come ageyne to²⁵

¹ þo R. ² and þat R. ³ the deeth T. ⁴ þe om. R.

⁵ this T. þis R. ⁶ and token and T. ⁷ þe om. T.

⁸ wente him T. ⁹ and eek T. ¹⁰ that noon T. ¹¹ yelde TR.

¹² oure T. ¹³ Engynes and T. engyne³ and R. ¹⁴ p̄ere om. T.

¹⁵ at the T. at þe R. ¹⁶ to hem that T.

¹⁷ that euer T. þat euir R. ¹⁸ that euer T. þat euer R.

¹⁹ William T. And thanne William R. ²⁰ Graunt R.

²¹ leaf 124, back ²² and his T. & his R. ²³ forto haue T.

²⁴ reson R. ²⁵ vnto TR.

þe King, and yelde vp þe toun, and delyverde hym þe keyez. And þan he callyd his vnclē, þe Erle of Dorset, and made hym Capteyne of the toun¹ of Hareflete, & delyuered hym þe keiez, and bade hym
 4 go put out alle þe Frensch peple, both man, womman and chylde, & stufte þe toun² with Englisch men. ¶ And þan þe King sent yn to Engelonde,³ þat what crafti man wolde come þidir, & ynhabit hym þere ynne þe tounē, he scholde haue hous and housholde to
 8 hym & to his heyrez for euermore. And þidir went mony dyuers Marchauntez & Crafti men, & inhabited ham þere, to streynth þe tounē, & weryn welcome. ¶ And whenne þe King saw þis, þat hit was⁴ welle stoffed both of vitaille & of men, þis worthi Prynce
 12 & King toke his leve, & went hym to Caleys warde by londe. ¶ And þe Frensch men herde of his komyng, and⁵ pouzt to stoppe his way, þat he scholde not passe þat way; & yn hast broken alle þe brygges þere eny passage was for hors & man, yn-so-moche þere⁶
 16 myzt no man passe ouyr þe see Ryuers, noþer on hors ne on foote, but yef he schulde be drounde. ¶ Wherefore our⁷ King, with alle his peple, went & souuzte his way fer vp to⁸ Paris warde; & þere was alle þe ryal power of Fraunce redy to yef hym batayle, and to
 20 destroy al his pepyl; but God⁹ almyzti was his gide, and saued hym and alle his peple,¹⁰ and withstode alle¹¹ his enmys purpos, þankyd be God, þat so sauyd¹² his owne knyzt & King yn his
 24 ryztfull tytyl! ¶ And¹³ our King saw¹⁴ þe multitude & nowmbre of his enmys to withstonde his way & for to yeue hym bataile, þanne þe King, with a meke hert and a gode spiryt, lyfte vp his handez to Almyzti God,¹⁵ besechyng hym of¹⁶ help & socour, and þat dai to saue his trew seruauntez. ¶ And þanne our King gadryd alle his
 28 lordez togadir,¹⁷ and oþer pepil aboute hym, and bade hem alle to be of¹⁸ gode chere, for þei schulde haue a¹⁹ fayre daye and a gracious victori, and þe bettir of al hir²⁰ enmys; and prayed hem alle to make hem redy vnto þe batayle; for he wolde rapere be ded þat

¹ towne that is to seie T.

² stuffid this towne of Harflete T.

³ Englonde and dide crie in eueri good towne of Englonde T. Engelonde and dede crie in eueri good town of engelonde R.

⁴ þat hit was T. saw þat it was R. þat is Kk.

⁵ thei T. ⁶ þat ther T. þat þer R. ⁷ þe R. ⁸ ferre vnto T.

⁹ god that is T. ¹⁰ meynē T. meyne R. ¹¹ alle om. TR.

¹² that sauyd so T. saued so R. ¹³ And thanne TR.

¹⁴ king biholding and seyng T. beholdinge and seyng R.

¹⁵ god and TR. ¹⁶ of his TR. ¹⁷ togadir om. TR.

¹⁸ of TR. a Kk. ¹⁹ haue a TR. schulde a Kk. ²⁰ his TR.

day, in batayle or yn felde,¹ þan be² take of his enymys; for he wolde nevir put þe rem of Engelond to no Rawnson for his persone. ¶ And þe Duk of Yorke fill on his³ kne, and besauzt þe King of a bone, þat he wolde graunte hym þat day þe vawnt-ward yn his⁴ batayle: and þe King graunted hym his asking, and sayde, “gramarcy, Cosyn of Yorke!” and prayed hym to make hym redye. ¶ And þanne he bade euery man to⁴ orden hym a stake of tre, and⁵ scharp both⁶ endis, þat þe stake myzt be pyght yn⁷ the⁸ erthe a-slop, þat hir enymyez schulde not ouyr-ryde hem,—for þat was hir fals purpos,—and arayed hem al⁸ þere for⁹ to ouyr-ryde our meyne at þe first comyng of ham sodeynly yn þe first bront.

¶ And alle nyzt before þe bataile, þe Frenschmen made mony¹² grete fires, and moche revell with hontynge, and¹⁰ played our King and his lordez at þe dys, and an archer for¹¹ a blanke of hir moneye; for þei wende hadde¹² be heyreȝ.

[*The Battle of Agincourt.*]

¶ The morow¹³ aros, þe day gan spryng, and þe King, be gode¹⁶ avis, lette arme¹⁴ his bataile and¹⁵ wynges, and charged euery man to kepe hym hoole togadir, & prayed hem al to be of gode chere. And whanne þay were redy, he askid what tyme of þe day it was, & þay sayde ‘pryme.’ ¶ “Thanne,” said our King, “nowe is gode²⁰ tyme, for alle Engelond prayeth for vs; and þerfore be of gode chere, & lette vs go to our iorney.” And þanne he sayde with an hygh voyce: ¶ “In þe name of Almyȝti God and¹⁶ Saynt George, avaunt banarer! and Saynt George, þis day þyn help!”²⁴

¶ And þanne þeze Frenschmen come prikkyng doun as þei wolde haue ouyr-rydyn alle oure meyne; but God and our archers—made hem sone to stomble; for our archers schet neuyr arowe amys, but it¹⁷ perished and brouzt to grounde man and hors¹⁸; for þey²⁸ schet þat day for a wager; and our stakeȝ made hem top ouyr terve, eche on oper, þat þay lay on hepis ij spere lengthe of heighth. And our King, with his meyne and with¹⁹ men of armes, evir

¹ wolde rathir that day be deed in the feld T. þe feeld R.

² to be T. ³ his om. T. ⁴ leaf 125.

⁵ of tre and om. T. ⁶ at bothe R. ⁷ into TR.

⁸ hem aft T. hem alle R. al Kk. ⁹ for om. T.

¹⁰ and shoutyng and T. and showtinge and R.

¹¹ all for T. al for R. ¹² all hadde TR. ¹³ morne T. morn R.

¹⁴ araise TR. ¹⁵ and his TR. ¹⁶ and of R. ¹⁷ that it T.

¹⁸ hors and man T. ¹⁹ with om. R.

1 layde doune ; for he most fizt¹ with his owne hondez ; and our² gode
archers lackid³ on⁴ arowes, and⁵ layde on with stakez. ¶ And þus
Almyzti God and Saint George brouzt our enymys to grounde, and
4 3af vs þat day þe victori ; & þere were slayn of Frensch-men þat day
yn þe ffelde of Agyncourt, moo þan a⁶ xj M†, without prysoners þat
were take. & þere were nowmbred þat day of Frenschmen yn the
felde, mo þan vj xx M†, and of Englyschmen nouzt vij M† ; but God
8 þat day fauzt for vs.

¶ And aftir come⁷ þer tydynges to þe⁸ King, þat þere was a
new Batayle of Frenschmen ordeyned, redy to stele on hem, and
comyn towarde hym. Thanne⁹ anon þe¹⁰ King lette crye þat euery
12 man scholde sle his prysoner þat he hadde take ; and anon arrayed
his bataile ayen redy for¹¹ to fizt with þe Frenschmen. ¶ Whanne
þay say þat our men killyd doun¹² her prysoners, þanne withdrow
þay¹³ ham, and brak hir batayle and alle hir araye ; and þus our
16 King (as a worthi conqueror) hadde þat day þe victory yn the ffelde
of Agyncourt yn Pycardye.

¶ And panne our King returned ayen þere þe Batayle was, to se
what pepil was ded of Englyschmen, and yef eny were hurt þat
20 myzt be holpe ; and þere were ded yn þe ffelde, on þer party¹⁴ þe
Duk of Barry, þe Duk of Launson,¹⁵ þe Duk of Braban, the Erle of
Nauerne, þe Chief counstable of Fraunce, and viij oper erlez, and
þe Archebischope of Saumte, and of gode Barons C¹⁶ and moo,
24 and of worthi kniȝtis of grēte alyauunce of Cote armyours, M† C.¹⁷
And of Englyschmen was ded þat day, þe¹⁸ Duk of Yorke and þe
Erle of Suffolk ; and of alle oper of Englisch¹⁹ Nacyon þere were not
ded passyng xxvj bodiez, thanked be God ! And þis batayle was
28 on a Friday, þe²⁰ which was Crispyn & Crispinianeȝ day, yn the
moneth of October. And anon þe King commawnded to bery ham,
and the Duke of York to be caried forth with ham, and þe Erle of
Suffolke. And þere were tak²¹ prisoners, þe Duk of Orlyance, þe
32 Duk of Burbone, þe Erle of Vandom, þe Erle of Ewe, þe Erle of
Richmond, and Ser Bursigaunt, Marchal of Fraunce. And mony

¹—¹ leide doune for him bifet to fighte that day T. laide doun for him fil to figte R.

² our om. T. ³ þat lackeden T. ⁴ on om. T. ⁵ and om. T.

⁶ a om. TR. ⁷ that come T. ⁸ oure T. our R.

⁹ And T. Thanne om. R. ¹⁰ oure T. our R. ¹¹ for om. TR.

¹² a doune T. ¹³ thei withdrewe T. ¹⁴ on þer party om. TR.

¹⁵ Alaunsonn T. ¹⁶ an C T. ¹⁷ A M† and v C T.

¹⁸ þe good T. þe gode R. ¹⁹ leaf 125, back. ²⁰ þe om. T.

²¹ take om. T.

oper worthi lordez were take yn pis batayle of Agyncourt, and brouzt vnto pe toun of Caleys, and so ouyr se¹ with pe King yn-to² Engeland, and londid at Douer, yn Kent, with alle his prisoners in saafte,—pankid be Ihesu!—and so cam to³ Caunturbury, and offred 4 at Saint Thomas Schryne; and so roode forth prou3 Kent pe next way to Eltham, & pere he restid hym tyll he wolde come to London. ¶ And þan pe Meire of London and pe Aldermen and 4 pe Schereffes,⁵ with alle pe worpi Comeners and craftis, comyn to pe 8 Blake-Heth, welle and worthilye arayed to welcome our Kyng with dyuers melodye, and 6 þanke Allemy3ty god of his gracious victory þat he hadde schewed to⁷ hym.

[*Henry V's Reception in London.*]

¶ And so pe King and his prysoners passyd forth by ham, til 12 he com vnto⁸ Seint Thomas watryng; and pere mette⁹ with hym alle pe Religious with precession, and welcomyd hym; and so¹⁰ pe King come ridynge¹¹ with his prysoners prou3 pe cite of London, where pere¹² was schewyd mony a faire sy3t at alle pe Conditez; and 16 at pe Cros yn Chepe, as yn heuynly aray, angelis,¹³ archaungelis, Patriarchus, prophetis,¹⁴ and virginis with dyuers melodye3, sensyng¹⁵ and syngyng to welcome our King, and alle conditus¹⁶ rennyng wyne. And pe King passyd forthe vnto Saint Paule3; and pere¹⁷ 20 met with hym xiiij Bischope3, reuersed and mitryd, with Censers to welcome pe King, and sungun for his gracious victori *Te deum laudamus*. And pere pe King offred, & 18 roode forth¹⁹ to Westminster; and pe 20 Maire toke leue²¹ of pe King, and rode hoom 24 ayen.

¶ And yn pe thrydde yere of King Henrye3 regne pe v^{the}, Came pe Emperour of Almayne, King of Rome & of Hungary, yn-to Engelande, and so to pe cite of London. And pe Maire, aldermen,²² 28 and schereviz,²³ with pe²⁴ worthi craftis of London, be pe Kingi3 commaundement, met with hym on the Blake-Heth yn pe best aray þat þay cowthe, on hors bak; & pere þay welcomyd hym, and brouzt hym to London with moche honour and grete reuerence. 32

¹ pe sea T. ² king of T. ³ vnto T. ⁴ & R. and om. Kk.
⁵ london with the sherefis and pe Aldirmen T. ⁶ & to R.
⁷ for TR. ⁸ to T. ⁹ þei mette T. ¹⁰ so om. T. ¹¹ MS. adynge.
¹² that ther T. ¹³ of Aungels TR. ¹⁴ prophetis om. R.
¹⁵ of sensyng T. ¹⁶ pe Condites T. pe conditis R. ¹⁷ þanne T.
¹⁸ & took and T. ¹⁹ forth om. T. ²⁰ thanne the T. þenne pe R.
²¹ his leue T. ²² and the aldermen T.
²³ with the sherefis T. and shereues R. shereviz Kk. ²⁴ and þe T.

And atte Seint Thomas watryng þere mette with hym the King and alle¹ his lordez yn gode aray. And þere was a worthi metyng betwene þe Emperour and þe King; & þere thay kussid togadrez,⁴ & braced ech othir; and þan² þe King toke þe Emperour be þe hande; & so þai come rydyng prouzt þe cite of London vnto Saint Poulez; and þere þay lyzte, and offred; and alle þe³ Bischopez stode reuersed, with censers yn here hondez, censyng. ¶ Thanne⁴ 8 þei tokyn hir hors, and ryden to⁵ Westmynstre; and þere the King loggyd the Emperoure yn his owne palis, & þere⁶ restid hym a grete while, and alle atte þe Kingis cost.

¶ And sone aftir come þe Duk of Holond yn-to Engelond, to⁷ 12 se þe Emperour, and to speke with hym and with þe King; and he was worthily reseeyved and loggyd yn the Bischopis In of Hely, and alle at þe Kinges cost. ¶ And whanne þe Emperoure hadde wel restid hym and sey þe lande yn dyuers partees, and knew þe 16 commoditees, þanne, be processe of tyme, he toke his leue of the King; but ere he went⁸ he was made Knyzt of the Gartir, & reseeyved and weryd þe lyuerey; and þanne he thanked þe King and alle⁹ his worthi lordez; and¹⁰ þe King & he went ouer þe see 20 to Calys, and abydyn þere longe tyme, to haue an onswere of the Frensch King. And atte þe¹¹ last hit come, and plesyd hym rizt nought; and¹² þe Emperour toke his leue of the King, and passyd forth yn Goddis name; and oure King come ouyr ayen yn-to 24 Engelond, yn alle þe hast þat he myzt; and þat was on Saynt Lukes eue þat he come to Lambehithe; and on the Monday next ffoluyng he come yn¹³ to the parlement atte Westmynstre. And yn þis same yere was a gret derth of Corne yn Engelond, but,¹⁴— 28 thankyd be God!—hit lastid not long.

How the King went þe secunde tyme yn-to Normandy; & of þe sege of Roone.¹⁵ Capitulum CC xlv.¹⁶

And yn þe forth yere of King Harryez regne¹⁷ þe fifthe, he 32 hilde his parlement at Westmynstre yn the begynnyng of¹⁸ moneth of October, and lastid vnto þe purificacion of our Lady þanne next folowyng. And þere was grawnted vnto þe King, to maynetayne

¹ the kyng and alle T. hym alle Kk. ² thanne T. þan om. R.

³ þe om. R. ⁴ And þanne T. And þenne R. ⁵ leaf 126.

⁶ þere he TR. ⁷ to come and T. ⁸ þede T. yede R.

⁹ alle om. T. ¹⁰ And thanne TR. ¹¹ þe om. T. ¹² And thanne T.

¹³ yn om. R. ¹⁴ but om. T. ¹⁵ How the king . . . Roone om. TR.

¹⁶ CC xlvj R. ¹⁷ regne om. T. ¹⁸ of the T. of þe R.

his warres, bothe of¹ *spiritualte* & *temporalte*, an hole tax and a dyme.² ¶ And³ anon þe King prayed al his lordez to make hem redy to streynth hym yn his ryzt; and anon he lette make a new retynu, and charged alle men to be redye at Hampton yn þe⁴ Whitson woke þanne next folowyng, *without eny delay.* ¶ And⁵ þe Kinge made þe Duke of Bedforde Protector & defender of his Reme of Engelond yn his absens, and charged hym to kepe his lawez, &⁶ mayntayne boþe⁷ *spiritualte* and⁸ *temporalte.* ¶ And⁸ whanne þe King hadde þus do, and sette alle þyng yn kinde, on Saint Markez day, þat was þat tyme Hocwednesday, he toke his hors atte Westmynstre, and come rydyng to Poulis; & þere he offred, and toke his leue, and⁹ rode forth þrow þe cite, taking his¹² leve of alle maner of¹⁰ peple, as welle of¹¹ pore as of¹¹ Rich, praynge alle hem¹² yn generall to pray for hym. And so he roode forth to Saint Georgez, and þere he offred, and toke is leve of þe Maire, Chargyng hym to kepe welle his Chaumbre; and so rode forth to¹⁶ Hampton, and þere abode tille his retynu was redy and come to hym; for þere was alle¹³ his Naueye of schippe3, with his ordynaunce, gadred and welle stuffyd, as longyd to such a ryalle Kinge, with alle maner of¹⁴ vitaylez for his¹⁵ pepille, as welle for hors as for²⁰ man, as longyd for such a warriour, þat is to say, armure, Gonnez, tripgettis, Engyne3, sowe3, Bastille3, brygge3 of lethir, scaling laddres, mallis,¹⁶ spade3, schouyllez, Pykys,¹⁷ bowez and¹⁸ arowez, bowstrynge3, scheftis,¹⁹ &²⁰ pipis fulle of arowez, as nede for such a²⁴ worthi warriour þat no þyng was to sech. &²¹ whanne tyme come, pedir come to hym scheppe3 lade with²² gunepowder.

[*Henry V's second Invasion of France.*]

¶ Whanne²³ þis²⁴ was rede, and his retynu come, þe King and his lordez, with alle his rial host, went to schippe, & tokyn þe see &²⁸ sayled yn-to Normandy, and landed at Towk vpon²⁵ Lammas Day þan next; and þere he made xxviii²⁶ knightis at his londyng.

¹ of þe T.

² dyme in susteynyng of his warres T. dyme in susteynyng of his verris R.

³ And þanne T. and thenne R. ⁴ þe om. T.

⁵ And there T. and þere R. ⁶ and to T. ⁷ boþe the T.

⁸ and þe T. ⁹ and so TR. ¹⁰ of om. T. ¹¹ of the T.

¹² hem alle T. ham alle R. ¹³ alle om. T. ¹⁴ of om. R.

¹⁵ for such a roiall T. for such a rial R. ¹⁶ leaf 126, back.

¹⁷ Pikeyses Pavises T. Pikeys Pavis R. ¹⁸ and om. T.

¹⁹ Tonnes Cheftis T. Tonnes Chiftis R. ²⁰ & or T. ²¹ & om. TR.

²² with Gennes and T. ²³ And whanne R. Al. whenne T.

²⁴ all this T. ²⁵ vpon þe T. ²⁶ xlviii TR.

¶ And panne þe King, hering of mony enymys vpon þe see, þat is to sey, ix grete Caryllis, hulkys,¹ Galeyez & schippi3, that were come to² destroye his Nauay, anon³ he commaunded þe Erle of the 4 March to be chyff Capteyne, and mony worthi lor[d]ez with hym, with⁴ men of armys and archers, to go to the see, þat non enmyes defouled his Nauay⁵ ne entred his londe yn no maner party for to destrowble his viage ne⁶ corneye. ¶ And anon þe erle toke his 8 meyne, and went to schyppe, and skimmed the see, and kepte þe see-costez, þat no maner⁷ enymys durste rowte⁸ vpon þe see. ¶ And anon þe Kinge sent his heroudes vnto þe Capten of Towke, & chargyd hym to delyuer is⁹ Castell and his toun, & ellis he 12 schulde leve neyþer¹⁰ man ne child a¹¹lyve. And anon þe Captene & iiij oper burgez brouzt the keyez vnto þe King, and besouzt hym of grace; and þe Kinge delyuerd¹² to Ser Iohn¹³ Kighley þe keiez, and made hym Capteyn, & commawnded hym to put out¹⁴ alle þe¹⁵ 16 Frenschmen, bothe of þe Castell and of the toun. ¶ And þere besyde was þe Castell of Louers; and þedir þe King sent þe Erle Marchall, with a faire mayne, and sawted þe toun; and anon it was yelded vp vnto¹⁶ þe Erle, & brouzt hym þe keyez,¹⁷ & he 20 brouzt þe keyez to þe King; & þe King toke to¹⁸ hym þe keyez, and made hym Capteyn of the Castell of Louers & of alle þat longed perto, and charged him to¹⁹ delyuer oute alle þe F[r]enschen.

¶ And þan þe King²⁰ hilde forth his way to Cane, þat was a 24 strong toune and a faire, and a ryalle Castell þerynne. And anon he sent his heroddez vnto þe Capteyn, and Chargyd hym to delyuer þe toun and his Castel, or ellis he wolde hit gete with²¹ streynth of hond.

28 ¶ And þai answerd and sayd to him, ‘non of hym he toke,²² ne non þey²³ wolde delyuer vnto hym.’²⁴ ¶ And panne²⁵ anon he leyde his sege to þe toun, and layde gunnez on euery syde, and bete adoun both wallez & tourez, and slow myche pepil yn hir²⁶ howsez 32 & eke yn stretes. ¶ And þe gode Duk of Clarens, he²⁷ layde doun²⁸

1 hulkis and T. 2 forto T. 3 And anoou T. 4 of R.
 5 his Navie T. his Nauaie R. Nauye Kk.
 6 ne his TR. 7 maner of TR. 8 come T. 9 him his TR.
 10 neþir leue T. neyther leue R. 11 on T. 12 dide delyuer T.
 13 Iohn of R. 14 putte out TR. put Kk. 15 þe om. TR.
 16 yolden to T. yolde to R. 17 and þe keies brought to him T.
 18 to om. TR. 19 him to T. to Rkk. 20 And þe kyng panne T.
 21 with dynt of swerde and T. 22 saide he took him noon R. 23 he R.
 24 and seide he took hem noon ne noon he wolde delyuer to him T.
 25 thanne om. T. 26 hir om. T. 27 he om. R. 28 a downe T.

þe wallis on his syde vnto þe grounde; and so with ynne a while þe King be his counsel assauted þe toune alle aboute; and anon þe Duk of Clarans had entyrd yn-to the toun, and slow3 doun ryzt til þat he come vnto þe King, and spared neþer man ne childe; and 4 euyr þai cryed "a Clarans, a Clarans, Seint George!" & slou3 doun ryzt; and þere was ded on þe wallis,¹ on þe Kingis syde, a worthi man þat me callid Sprengelose, þe which þe King commaunded to be beryed yn þe abbey of Cane, fast by William Conqueroure: on 8 whose soule, God haue mercy! amen! ²And thanne³ þe King come yn-to þe toun, with his Broþer þe Duk of Clarens, and mony oþer worthi lordez,⁴ with moche solempnite and myrthe, and þanne þe King commaunded þe⁵ Capteyne to delyuer his⁶ Castell; and he 12 besouzt þe King þat he wolde yeue⁷ hym xiiij dayez of⁸ respite, yef eny rescu wolde come; and yf non come, to delyuer hym þe keyez and þe Castelle atte his owne commaundement. ¶ And vndir þis composicion was the toun⁹ & þe Castell of Bayons, with 16 oþer tounez, fortalicez & villagez, yn-to þe noumbre of xiiij tounes. And¹⁰ vpon þe hylle before the castell of Cane, þe¹¹ King pyght alle his tentis, þat semyd a toun as moche as Cane. & by þat come tydyngis þat no rescu¹² wolde come þere; and¹³ so, at þe xiiij 20 dayes ende, þe Capteyne come out, and delyuered þe keyez and þe Castell to our King; And Bayons and þe oþer xiiij tounez weryn delyuerd vnto¹⁴ hym also. and anon þe King delyuerd þe keyes to þe Duk of Clarans, and made hym Capten, both of the toun and of 24 þe Castell, & made hym Capteyn of Bayons, & of al þe oþer tounez also, and so¹⁵ entred þe Castell & þe toun¹⁶ also; and þere he hyld his Seint Georgez feste; and þere he made xv Kniȝtis of the Bath.¹⁷ And þe King commaunded to¹⁸ put out alle þe Frenschmen, boþe 28 man & womman; and no man so hardy to defoule no womman, ne take no maner gode away from ham, but late hem passe yn pees, vpon¹⁹ deth; and þere passed out of the toun, yn on day, moo þan 32 xv c wymmen.

¹ on þe wallis *om.* T. ² leaf 127. ³ thanne T. þanne R. when Kk.

⁴ and many oþer lordes T. ⁵ commandid þe kyng vnto the T.

⁶ him his TR. ⁷ kyng to yeue T. þe kinge to yeve R. ⁸ of *om.* R.

⁹ was the towne T. was þe toun) R. the toun *om.* Kk.

¹⁰ And *om.* T. ac Kk. ¹¹ oure T. oure R.

¹² rescue T. rescu R. ¹³ and TR. ¹⁴ to T. ¹⁵ so *om.*

¹⁶ þe toun) and þe castell R.

¹⁷ Bath there was *ser* lowes Robserd Salyn Cheyne Mongomerie and many oþer were maad knyghtis T. Bath and þere was sir lowis Robessart Salyn Cheyne Mougomerie and meny oþer R.

¹⁸ hem forto T. ham forto R. ¹⁹ vpon þe T.

¶ And panne þe¹ King lete stuffe þe Toun and þe Castell with English men, and ordeyned ij Capteyne3, on for the toun and a-noþer for the Castell, and chargyd ham, vpon her lyf, to kepe wel
4 the toun and þe Castell. And or he² went penne3, he gat valeys Newelyn, & leyde sege³ to Chierburgh. And þat⁴ sege layde þe Duk of Gloucestre with a strong pouer, and be processe of tyme gat it, and made þere a Capteyne. And þe⁵ same tyme þe Erle of
8 Warwic layde sege⁶ to Dounstount, & gat hit, and put þeryn a capteyne.

¶ And for to speke moore of the Erle of the Marche, þat þe King hadde sette⁷ to scom þe see and þe Coostez of Engelonde for
12 enmys, þe wynde aros so vp-on hem, þat þei wende alle for⁸ to haue loste her lyvez; but þrou3 þe grace of God, and goode gouernaunce, þey þat were within the Ile of Wight, ryden al þat storme þere.⁹ ¶ And þere were lost ij Carrekez & ij balyngers with
16 marchaundis godis, and alle þe pepyl þat were þerynne; & anoþer Caryk droff before Hampton, and drew his Mast ouyr the toun wallis; and þis¹⁰ was on¹¹ saynt Barthelemewe3 day. ¶ And whann alle þis storme was cecid, þis worthi Erle of the Marche
20 tooke his schippe with his meyne, and went ayen¹² to þe see, and londid yn Normandy at Hoggez, and so rode forth towarde þe King; and euyr as he cam, þe Frenschmen fledde. ¶ And¹³ there com to hym an Antony pygge, and folowed þe ost al þat way tyl
24 thay come tylle¹⁴ a grete wasch; and þere¹⁵ þay drad to haue bedded, for the water closed ham so þat þay my3t noughere goo¹⁶ out. ¶ But atte þe¹⁷ last, þis pygge¹⁸ and God¹⁹ brou3t hem out alle²⁰ saaf; and þere þay cauzt a gyde that knewe alle the cuntre aboute,²¹
28 and he brou3t ham þrou3 quicsonde, and so yn-tille²² an Ile; and þere they toke meny prysoners yn her way²³ toward the King yn her iourney²⁴ towarde²⁵ Cane.

And þere þe King welcomyd hym, and toke his iourney
32 towarde²⁶ Argenton, & anon it was yolde vnto þe King, and þai²⁷

¹ oure T. our R. ² And eer þat oure kyng T. þey R. ³ a sege T.

⁴ at þat T. ⁵ þat T. ⁶ a sege T. ⁷ kyng took T. ⁸ for om. T.

⁹ þei riden withinne the Ile of wight there in at þat storme T. þey that were wight ryden al þat storme þere Kk.

¹⁰ þat T. ¹¹ vpon T.

¹² and wente ayen T. and wente R. went Kk. ¹³ And panne T.

¹⁴ to TR. ¹⁵ þere om. T. ¹⁶ gete T. ¹⁷ þe om.

¹⁸ leaf 127, back. ¹⁹ and god om. T. ²⁰ ham alle out R.

²¹ aboute om. T. ²² to TR. ²³ wey as thei wente T.

²⁴ yn her iourney om. TR. ²⁵ vnto T. ²⁶ to T. vnto R.

²⁷ there thei T.

hadde her lyues, & went hir way. ¶ And þanne þe¹ King remeued to a strong toun² callyd Cessy, and þere was a fayr Mynstre, and þay yelde it anon vnto³ þe King. And⁴ þe King went anon⁵ fro þennez to Launson,⁶ and gat⁷ þe toun and⁸ brigge. And⁹ þe King⁴ sent þe Erle of Warwic to a toun me¹⁰ callith Belham, with a strong power; and anon þay yelde ham,¹¹ and put ham yn the Kingis grace¹²: and so dede mony mo stronge tounez & castellis þat were in þo parteez. ¶ And fro þennes þey went to Vernyl in⁸ Perche; and anon it was yolden to¹³ þe King, bothe toun & castell, bodyez and godes, at the Kingis grace. And so þe King gat and conquered alle the tounez and Castelles, Pilez,¹⁴ Streynthis, and Abbeyez,¹⁵ vnto Pountlarge, & fro þennez vnto the Cite of Roone. 12

[*The Lollard, Sir John Oldcastle.*]

¶ And yn þe .v. yere of King Henryez reing þe v^{the}, Ser Iohn Oldecastell, knight, þat was þe Lorde of¹⁶ Cobbam, was arestyd for Lollardye, and brouzt yn-to¹⁷ the Tour of London. And anon aftir he brak out of þe Tour, and went ynto Walis; and there he¹⁶ kept hym longe tyme. ¶ And at the¹⁸ laste, þe Lorde Powis mette with hym and tooke hym; but he stode at grete defence longe tyme, and was soore wounded or he wolde be take; and so þe Lorde Powys meyne brouzt hym out of Walis to London yn a²⁰ whirlecole; & so he was brouzt to Westmynstre, & there was¹⁹ examyned of certeyn poynteþ þat were put vpon hym. & he sayde not nay; and so he was conuycte be²⁰ þe clergy of²¹ Lollardye, & dampned before þe Iustize vnto²² deth for treson; and so he was²⁴ hadde vnto þe Tour ayen, and þere he was laide on a hurdil, and draw þrough þe cite to Saint Gylez Felde, & þere was made a new paire of Galows, and a stronge chayne, and a coler of yron for hym, and þere he was hanged and brent on þe galous, & alle for his²⁸ lewdeness &²³ fals opynyons.

¹ oure T. our R. ² towne þat men T. town þat me R.

³ to TR. ⁴ And þanne TR. ⁵ anon om. TR.

⁶ Alaunsonn T. ⁷ wanne T. wan R. ⁸ and þe TR.

⁹ And om. T. ¹⁰ þat men T. þat me R.

¹¹ ham om. T. ¹² hem in his grace and in þe kyngis T.

¹³ vnto TR. ¹⁴ Piles and T.

¹⁵ and abbeies T. & Abbeyeþ R. abbeyeþ Kk. ¹⁶ of om. R.

¹⁷ vnto T. ¹⁸ the om. T. ¹⁹ he was T. ²⁰ of TR.

²¹ for TR. ²² vnto the T. vnto þe R. ²³ and for his TR.

¹How the King sent his vnclē Syr Beaufort, Duk of Excestre, before the cite of Roon, and there displayed his Baner.¹

And² yn the vi^{the} yere of King Harrieꝝ regne þe v^{the}, he sent
 4 his vnclē, Sir Thomas Beauforde, Duk of Excestre, *with* a fayre
 manye of men of armeꝝ and archers, a³fore þe cite of Roone, & þere
 displayed his baner, & sent herodeꝝ vnto þe toun, and bade hem
 yelde it⁴ vnto oure King, her lige lorde. ¶ And þai saide he⁵
 8 toke hem non to kepe, ne non he schulde haue þere, but yf it were
 ryꝝt dere bouꝝt and medid with hir handeꝝ; for' other answer wolde
 þey non yeve.⁶ ¶ And þere þe⁷ Duk toke gode⁸ avyusement of the toun
 and⁹ of the grounde al about; and anon þere yssued out of þe cite
 12 a grete meny of men of armeꝝ, bothe on horsbak & eke¹⁰ on fote;
 & anon our mayne mette with ham, ¹¹and ovirthrew an hep of
 hem; and there were slayn and take xxx^{ti} personeꝝ of right gode
 menneꝝ bodieꝝ; and þe rempnaunt fledde vnto¹² the toun. And þe
 16 Duk went ayen¹³ vnto Pountlarge vnto þe King and tolde hym alle
 how he hadde sped, and how hym lykyd þe grounde. ¶ And anon
 as he was go, þey cast adoun al her¹⁴ subbarbeꝝ about þe cite, vnto
 þe harde grounde, for þe King schulde haue þere¹⁵ non refreschyng
 20 at his comyng. ¶ And the Fryday before Lammas day þen next,
 our King *with* his ost come before Roone, and layde¹⁶ his sege
 rounde about þe¹⁷ cite, and anon leet leye his owne¹⁸ ordinaunce
 vnto the toun. ¶ And þe King and his lordeꝝ were logged yn the
 24 Charterhous, and gret streyngth about hym, and þat was yn þe est
 partye of þe cetey. And þe Duk of Clarans loggyd hym at þe
 westende, yn a wast abbeye before þe porte of Caux. ¶ And the
 Duk of Excestre yn the North syde, before þe Port Denys; and
 28 betwene þe Duk of Clarens & þe Duk of Excestre was þe Erle
 Marchal logged, with a strong pouer, before¹⁹ þe castell Gate.
 ¶ And þan was þe Erle of Ormonde, and þe Lorde Haryngton, and
 þe lorde Talbot with his²⁰ retynnu, next hym; and þanne Ser Iohn
 32 Cornewayle, and mony oper noble kniꝝtis of name with hir retynnu,
 lay with þe Duk of Clarens. And from þe Duk of Excestre

¹⁻¹ om. TR. ² Of the Sege of Roone. And T.³ to R. ⁴ þat Citee T. yelde þat Cite R.⁵ þat he T. ⁶ yeue but Gonnes T.⁷ there the T. þere þe R. þere Duk Kk. ⁸ gode om. T.⁹ of the toun and om. TR. ¹⁰ eke om. TR. ¹¹ leaf 128.¹² ayen into TR. ¹³ ayen om. T. ¹⁴ þe T.¹⁵ there schulde haue T. ¹⁶ and anoon he sette T. sette R.¹⁷ that T. ¹⁸ owne om. TR. ¹⁹ with a strower bifore T.²⁰ her T. hir R.

towarde þe King weryn logged þe Lorde Roos, þe Lorde¹ Wylughby, þe Lorde Fitzhugh,² and Ser William Porter, knigt, with hir retynu, before þe Port Seint Hillary. ¶ And þan was þe Erle of Mortayne, with his retynu, logged yn þe Abbey of Saynt⁴ Kateryne; and þe Erle of Sawlesbery with is retynu lay on þat on³ syde of Saynt Katerynes; & Ser Iohn Gray, knight, was logged at þe⁴ Mount Saint Mychell; and Ser Philippe Leiche, knight, þe Kingis tresorer, was logged betwene þe watir of Sayne and þe abbey,⁸ and kepte þe warde vnder þe hille. And þe Baron of Carew was loggid⁵ on þe watir syde to kepe þe passage, and Iemco þe skquier lay next hym on þe water syde; & þay⁶ ij Squiers kept manly þe watir of Sayne, and fauþt *with* her enymys oft tymeþ. And on¹² þat oþer⁷ syde of Sayne lay þe Erle of Hontyngton and Maistir Nevyle, þe Erleþ sone of Westmerlonde, and Ser Gilbert Homfraule, þe Erle of Kyme, Ser⁸ Richarde of Arundell, and þe Lorde Ferrers *with* hir retynu, before þe Port de Pount; & eche of these¹⁶ lordeþ hadde strong ordynaunce. ¶ And þe King dede make at Pountlarge, ouyr þe watir of Sayne, a strong and a myþty Cheyne⁹ of Iren, & put it þrouþ grete pileþ ffast pyght yn the grounde; & þat went ouyr þe Ryver of Sayne, þat no vessell myþt passe þat way²⁰ in no kind. And aboue þat chayne þe King leet make a brygge ouyr þe watir of Sayne, þat man & horse & alle oþir¹⁰ Carrage myþt go to and fro, at¹¹ alle tymeþ whanne þat¹² nede were.

¶ And thanne come þe Erle of Warwic, and hadde gote Douns-²⁴ rount vnto þe King; and anon þe King sent hym¹³ to Caudebeek, to besege it. And whenne he com before the toun, he sent hys heroudeþ vnto þe Capteyne, and bade hym yelde vp þe toun¹⁴ on¹⁵ payn of deth. And anon he layde his sege; & þan þe Capteyne²⁸ besouþt þe Erle þat he myþt come vnto¹⁶ his presens & speke with hym; and so þe gode Erle graunted hym. ¶ Thanne¹⁷ he come out, and iiij oþer burgeþ with hym, and Entretyd so with þe Erle þat this toun was vnder composicion to do as þe cite of Roone dede; ³² and þe Erle graunted and consentyd þer-to, vpon þis condicion, þat þe Kyngþ Nauey, *with* his ordynaunce, myþt passe vp by ham in

¹ lord of TR. ² lord Phehew T. ³ oþer T.

⁴ þe abbey þat is called T. þe om. R.

⁵ was loggid T. was logged R. was loggid om. Kk.

⁶ and þo T. & þay om. R. & þay and þay Kk. ⁷ one R.

⁸ and sir T. ⁹ Brigge R. ¹⁰ leaf 128, back.

¹¹ at TR. and Kk. ¹² þat om. TR.

¹³ sent the Erle of Warwik T. sente þe erle of Warwick R.

¹⁴ þe towne up T. ¹⁵ in T. ¹⁶ to T. ¹⁷ And þanne T.

saafte, without eny lette or dysturbaunce; and to þis composycion þei sette her¹ seelez, and þe Schippe3 passed vp by ham yn saafte, & come before þe cite of Roon, into a C.² schippe3, and þere þay 4 cast her³ anchors, and þanne þis citee⁴ was besegid bothe be lond & by watir.⁵ ¶ And whanne alle þis was do, and þe schippe3 come vp, þanne come þe Erle of Warwic ayen vnto þe King, and loggyd hym betwene þe Abbey of Saint Katerynez & þe King, til 8 þat þe⁶ abbey intret, and was⁷ yolde vnto þe King; and þanne he remeved fro pennez, and loggyd hym before þe Poort Martevile. ¶ And þanne⁸ was þe Erle of Salusberye commawnde be þe King to make hym redy for to ryde; but þere come hasti tydynges and 12 made hym to abyde; & so he retourned ayen and logged hym besyde3 þe Erle of Hontyngton til þe sege was endyd. ¶ And þann come þe Duk of Gloucestre, þe Kinges broþer, from þe sege of Chierborough þat⁹ he hadde wonne & gotoun, & stuffed ayen to¹⁰ 16 þe Kinges behoue & pr[o]fit.¹¹ And whanne he¹² was come to¹³ the King before Roon, anon he logged hym with grete ordynaunce before þe Port Saint Hyllarye, more nygh¹⁴ þe toun and his enmys þanne eny oþer man¹⁵ be xl rode3 of lengthe, withynne schotte 20 of quarell; & with hym lay þe Erle of Suffolk & þe Lorde of Bergeveny with alle hir retynu & strong ordynaunce, & manly & proutly fauzt euery day with hir enmys evere whanne þay issued out of the Cete. ¶ And þanne com þe Pryour of Kylmaynon yn¹⁶ 24 Ireland, ouyr the se vnto þe King, with a fayre mayne of men of armez of hir owne cuntre gise, vnto¹⁷ the summe of xv c of gode¹⁸ monnez bodyez. And þe King welcomyd ham, and made ham ryzt grete¹⁹ chere. 28 ¶ And þanne come tydynges to²⁰ the King þat þe King of Fraunce, and þe Dolfyn and þe Duke of Burgoyne, ²¹wolde come doun²² to rescu þe cite of Rone with a strong power of alle maner²³ nacionez, and²⁴ breke þe sege; and he cast hym to entre on þe 32 North syde of the oste, because þat þere was þe beste entre, and

¹ to her T. ² ij C T. ³ þer T. ⁴ Citee T. cite R. sege Kk.

⁵ boþe bi watir and bi londe. T. ⁶ þe om. T. ⁷ and was T. was Kk.

⁸ And þanne T. And thanne R. And Kk.

⁹ þe whiche TR. ¹⁰ vnto TR.

¹¹ and profit vnto þe crowne of Englund and T. profit to þe Croune of englonde R.

¹² whanne he om. T. ¹³ vnto T. ¹⁴ nere T. nerrer R.

¹⁵ lay RT. ¹⁶ of T. ¹⁷ vnto om. R.

¹⁸ gise þe nombre of xv C goode T. ¹⁹ good TR.

²⁰ vnto T. ²¹ leaf 129. ²² a downe T. ²³ of dyuerise T.

²⁴ and forto T.

most playne groun[d]e. And þefore þe King assyngned þe Priour of Kilmaynon with is power, and logged hym on þe northe syde of the oste, to stoppe hir passage, and was be þe forest of Lions; and of his¹ ordinaunce þei were fulle gladde. And þai² went forthe yn haste, and kept the³ grounde, and þe place þat þe King & his counsel hadde assyngned vnto ham; and þai quitte ham as gode warrioures vnto þe⁴ King.

¶ Now wyl y telle you which were þe Chyff Capteyne; & 8 gouernowres of þis cite of Roone: Mounser Guy Botelere was chyff capteyne, bothe of the cite & of the castell; and Mounser Turmegan, he was capten of þe⁵ Port de Caux; Mounser le Roch was⁶ capteyn de Syne; Mounser Antony, he was lieutenaunt to Mounser 12 Guy⁷ Botelere; Henry Chaunfewe, he was capteyne of the⁸ Port de Pount, Iohn Matrības, he was capteyne of the Port de la Chastell; Mounser de Peneux, he was capteyne of þe Port⁹ Saint Hillary; þe Bastarde of Tyne, he was capteyn of the Port 16 Martivile; and graunt Iake; a worthi warryour, he was capteyn of alle¹⁰ warryoures, and¹¹ gouernoure outwarde, bothe on horsbak & on foote, of alle men of arme; whenne þei issued out of the cite, of alle þe portis, he hem arayed as þey schulde cowntre with 20 our meyne. ¶ And ech of these capteyne; hadde¹² v M^t men of arme; & some mo. And at¹³ þe first comyng of¹⁴ oure King, þere were noumbred be heroudes ynto an CCC M^t of men,¹⁵ wymmnen, & childryn, what yong & olde. And among alle þese was many a 24 manful man of his hand; and so þay prevyd ham whanne þei issued out of þe cite, bothe on horsbak & on foote, for þay come neuer out at on gate alone, but at iij or iiij; and at euery gate .ij. or iij. M^t of gode men of arme; and¹⁶ manfully counted with our English- 28 men, & moche pople slayne dyuers tyme; with Gune; quarell, & oþer¹⁷ ordynaunce. And þis sege endured xx^{ti} woke; and euer þai of the toun hopyd¹⁸ for to haue be rescued; but þer come non. ¶ So at þe¹⁹ laste, þei kept so longe þe toun þat þere deied mony 32 thowsandez withynne þe toune for defaute of mete, of²⁰ men, wymmnen and chyldryn; for þay had ete al her hors, doggis and

¹ þis T. ² so þei TR. ³ kepte þe TR. kept Kk. ⁴ her T. hir R.

⁵ þe om. T. ⁶ he was TR. ⁷ Guy de TR. ⁸ de T.

⁹ Port de T. port of R. ¹⁰ alle the T. alle þe R.

¹¹ and he was TR. ¹² ladde T. ¹³ And whenne at T.

¹⁴ was of T. ¹⁵ men and T.

¹⁶ goode mennes bodies y armyd and T. gode menne; bodiez yarmed and R. ¹⁷ oþer om. R.

¹⁸ hopid T. hoped R. hopyp Kk. ¹⁹ þe om. T. ²⁰ boþe of T.

cattez, þat were yn the toun. And ofte tymeþ þe men of armeþ droff out þe pore pepyl at the gatis of the touneþ, for spendyng of vitayle ; and anon our Englischmen droff ham yn-to þe toun agayne.

4 So at þe¹ last, þe capteyneþ of the toun, seyng þe myschif þat þay were nouzt rescued, and also þe scarcite of vitayle, & þat þe peple so deied for defaute of mete, euery daye mony thowsandeþ, and also saue yonge childryn lye & sowke her modir pappis þat weryn

8 ded, þan anon þey sent vnto² þe ³King, besechinge him ⁴of his grete mercy & grace,³ and brouzt þe keyes of⁵ þe toun vnto the Kinge, and delyuered the toun to⁶ hym ; and alle⁷ soudereþ voyded the toun, with hir hors & harneþ ; and þe comuneþ of the toun for⁸ to

12 abyde and dwelle stille yn the toun, yerely to pay hym⁹ and to his successours, for al maner customeþ, see¹⁰ seruieþ & quaterymeþ [blank] Marc. ¶ And þanne þe King entred yn-to þe toun, & restyd hym yn the Castell tylle þe toun were sette yn rewle and

16 gouernawnce.

¹ þe om. T. ² to TR.

³⁻³ king bisekyng him of grace and mercy T. king besechinge him of his grace and mercy R. besechinge him om. Kk.

⁴ leaf 129, back. ⁵ of TR. to Kk. ⁶ vnto T. ⁷ alle þe TR

⁸ for om. T. ⁹ to him TR. ¹⁰ and fee T. and see R.

APPENDIX C.

FULLER VERSION OF THE TIME FROM 1399-1401.

Compare p. 361, l. 16 ff.

[MS. Rawlinson, B. 173.]

¹And at Oxonford were take *Sir Thomas Blounte*, knight, and Benet Cely, knight, & *Thomas Wyntershiſſ*, Squier. ¶ And these were be-hedyd and quarterd; And the knightes hedes were set on poles, and brought to Londoñ, and set on Londoñ Brygge; And the quarters sent forth to other places and townes. And in the same yere, at Priteweſſ, in a Mille in Essex, there was *Sir Iohn Holand*, the Duke of Exceſtre, take with the commons of the Contre. ¶ And they brought him from that Mille vnto Plassh, ⁸ And to the same place pere as King Richard Arested *Sir Thomas of Wodestocke*, Duke of Glouceſtre. ¶ And right there, in the same place, they smote of the Duke of Exceſtres hede,² and brought hit to Londoñ vppoñ a pole, And hit was sett on Londoñ Brigge. ¹² And in the same yere, at Bristowe, was take the Lorde Spencer þat King Richard hadde made Erle of Glouceſtre. ¶ And the commons of the towne of Bristowe toke and brought him into the Market-place of the towne; And there þey smote of his hede, and sent hit ¹⁶ to Londoñ, & hit was set oñ Londoñ Brigge. ¶ And in the same yere was *Sir Barnard Brokeys*, knight, take and Arested, & putte into the Toure of Londoñ, And *Sir Iohn Shelley*, ³knight, and *Sir Iohn Magdaleyn*, And *William Ferby*, persons of King Richard; ²⁰ And þey were arested and put into the Toure of Londoñ. And there come the Kinges Iustices, and satte vpoñ them in the Toure; And pere they were dampned aſſ iij vnto deth. And þe dome yeue to *Sir Barnard Brokeis*, that he shulde come on fote from the ²⁴ Toure, þrougħ Londoñ, vnto Tyborne, And there to be hanged, and his hede smetyn of. And *Sir Iohn Shelley*, knight, *Sir Iohn Magdaleyn* & *Sir William Ferby*, persons, were drawe þrougħ-oute London to Tyborne, And there honged, and her hedes smetyñ of, ²⁸ & set oñ Londoñ Brige.

And in the same yere King Henry sent Quene Isabeſſ

¹ leaf 213.² 16 Jan. 1400.³ leaf 213, back.

home ayene into Fraunce, the which was King Richardes wedid wiffe, And yaff her golde and siluer And many other Iuellys; And so she was discharged of aH her doure in Englonde. And in 4 the ij yere of King Henry the iiiijth, was *Sir Roger* of Claryndon, knizt, and ij of his meñ, and the Prioure of Launde, and vij freris Minours, and somme maistres of Diuinite, and other, for treson þat þey wrought a-yenst þe King, were drawe and hanged at 8 Tyborne, aH xij persones to-gedyr. And þus was here ende there for her treson.

And in the same yere bigañ a discencioñ and a debate in the Contre of Walys, bitwene þ^e Lorde Grey Riffyñ and Oweñ Glendore, ¹Squier of Wales. And this Owen arered a nombre of Walshe-men, And kept aH the Contre Aboute right strong, and did moche harme, & distroyed the Kinges townes and lordshppis proughoute Wales, and robbed and slewe the Kingys peple, both 16 Englissh-men and Walshe-meñ: And thus he endured xij yere large. ¶ And he toke þ^e Lorde Grey Ryffyñ prisoner, And kept him ffast in holde tyH he was Raunsomed. ¶ And in the iij yere of King Henry, Oweñ brent a towne of the Erles of March in 20 Walys, þat hight Kinghton. ¶ And on the morowe after Seint Albones day, was the batayle bitwene *Sir Edmond Mortymere* and Oweñ; And þis bataile was on the blacke hyH beside Pymareñ. And þer Oweñ toke *Sir Edmond Mortymer*, þ^e Erles brother of the 24 Marche, prisoner, and kepte him long tyme in holde; And at the laste he made him wedde one of his doughters, and kept him there styH wíth his wiffe; and sone after he died. And þañ the King, hering And knowyng that myscheffe, distruxioñ & treson that þis 28 Oweñ wrought, ¶ Thañ anone he ordeyned him a strong power of meñ of Armes & Archers, And moche other stuffe þat longeth to werre, for-to abate and destroye þ^e malice of these false Walshmeñ. And whañ ²the King come into Wales for-to destroye thys Oweñ 32 and other rebelles, false Walshmen, Anone they fleddeñ into the Mounteyns; And there might no mañ do hem harme In no maner wise; but ofteñ-tymes they toke the Kinges Cariage, and euery day destroyed his peple; but Owen and his meñ for the most party 36 scaped harmeles, For the King ne his meyne might not come by him in no maner wise, for the Mounteynes. And so the King come into Englonde a-yene, for lesing of mo of his peple; and þus he sped not there.

¹ leaf 214.² leaf 214, back.

[D]

CONTINUATION OF THE BRUT CONTAINING JOHN PAGE'S
POEM ON THE SIEGE OF ROUEN.

FROM THE SIEGE OF ROUEN [1418] TO A.D. 1430.

[*Galba E. VIII.*]

¹ How kynge henry the v. leide sege to the Cite of Rone,
and how he gate the Cite with strengthe and manhode
well and worthily.

And in the vi. yere of Kynge Henryis Regne² the v; the 4
Kynge sent his vncler Sir Thomas Beauford, Duke of Exeter, with
othir lordis and knyghtis, men of armys and archeris,³ to the Cite
of Rone, and there displayid her baneris opynly byfore the cite of
Rone, and sent herodis to hem that were withynne the Cite, and 8
bade hem yolde vp the cite in alle haste,⁴ that was the kyngis
righte, or ellis thei shuld deie an harde and sharpe dethe, and
withoute eny mercy or grace.

And there he be-hild the g[r]ounde aboute⁵ the Cite, how thei 12
myght beste sette her sege to gete that Cite.

¶ And ansuere wold thei none yeue, but meuyd with her
hondis ouyr the wallis, as who seyth 'voydith the grounte and the
place that ye ben on'; and shotte tho many gunnys to hem. And 16
thanne⁶ there Issewid out of the Cite many men of armys, of
Frensshe men on hors bakke, and countrid with oure Engelisshe
men, and ffaughten manlyche. And there were sleyne and take of
the Frensshe men a grete hepe; and the remanent fledden ayen 20
into the Cite.

¶ And thanne the Duke of Exetir turnyd ayen with his pepuH,
and come to Pountlarge; and there he met with the Kynge,⁷ and
told hym alle how he had spede and don in his message. 24

¶ And now for to telle how thei that weren withynne the cite
of Rone, had deuowrid and distroyid alle the subarbis rounde aboute
the Cite, into the bare grounde, for the Kynge shuld no refute
haue,⁸ ne non refressynge haue there at his comynge; and how thei 28
had strongly newe dichid, with many othir dispiteffuH and crueH
ordynauncis that thei coude deuyse and ordeyne, with alle the⁹

¹ leaf 137. ² Regne A. Regnyd G. ³ archeris come A.

⁴ in haste A. ⁵ rovnd aboute A. ⁶ þus A.

⁷ he fonde þe kyng A. ⁸ haue om. A. ⁹ the om. A.

ymaginacionys, congettis and sleythis, rounde aboute the cite, ayens the Kyngis hoste, yn-so-moche thei bite and keste adoun the perisshe-chirchis, abbeyis, and alle maner¹ of housyngis more and
4 lesse, in-so-moche that thei hewe adoune alle maner of treis that weren stondynge, in Gardeynys or yn eny othir placis, neighe the cite, and hewe a doune alle the ² Busshis that weren stondynge, and made³ aH playne vnto the harde erthe.

8 And thanne oure Kynge remouyd him from Pountlerge with alle his pepuH, and come before the cite of Rone the Friday befor-
Lammesse day. And he made ordynaunce, and leide and set a sege
12 so that the Frensshe-men myght no where in no parties ascape away but if thei weren dede and take. And furste the Kynge
loggid hym-self in a Geste howse that is callid an hous of charite, with many lordis and strengthe⁴ of pepuH aboute hym; and that
16 was in the Este partye of that cite. And thanne the Duke of Clarence, his brothir, loggid hym wyth his pepuH at an abbey
withoute the cite, in the weste ende by the port Kaux. And thanne was the Duke of Exetur loggid with alle his pepuH at Port
20 Denyse in the northe syde of that cite. ¶ And thanne, betwix the Duke of Clarence and the Duke of Exetur, was the Erle
MarchaH loggid, with alle his retenewe and strengthe, bi the casteH gate. And thanne was the Erle of Vrmonde and the Lord Aring-
24 don and the Lord Talbot, with alle her retenewe and ordynauncis, next hym. ¶ And thanne Sir John Cornewale, and many othir-
knyghtis of name, with alle her retenewe and ordynauncis, lay with the Duke of Clarence in his strengthe. And ffrom the Duke of
28 Exetur toward the Kynge, weren loggid the Lord Roos, the Lord Wilby, and the Lorde Fytz-Hugh and Sir William Portere, knyght,
with alle her retenewe, and loggid hem before the Porte Saint Hillari. And thanne was the Erle of Mortayne loggid, with alle his
32 retenewe and ordynauncis, in the abbey of Saint Katerynys. ¶ And thanne the Erle of Salusbury, with alle his retenewe and
ordynauncis, was loggid on that othir syde of this abbey. ¶ And thanne Sir John Gray, knyght, with aH his retenewe and
36 ordynauncis, was loggid at the abbey that is callid Mount Saint MycheH. And thanne Sir Philip Leche, knyghte, the Kyngis
tresorer, with alle his retenewe and ordynauncis, was loggid

¹ all maner A. maner om. G.

³ & made A. made and G.

² leaf 137, back.

⁴ & oper grete strength A.

betwene the watir of Sayne and the abbey, &¹ kepte that ward vndir the hille. ¶ And thanne the Baron of Carewe, with alle his retenewe and ordynauncis, was loggid with his compeny alone by the watir-side, to kepe the passage there. And Ienyco the Squyere 4 lay there nexte hym, with his retenewe and ordynauncis, and helpe to kepe the watir syde of Sayne: and manly and worthili he werrid and faught with his enemyes at alle tymes. ¶ And on that othir side of the watir of Sayne, lay the Erle of Huntyngdon, and 8 the Lorde Neuyle (the Erlis sone of Westmerlond), Sir Gilbert Omffreuyle, Sir Richard of ArundeH, and the lord Ferreris, with alle hir retenewe and ordynauncis, at Port de Pount.

¶ And thanne the Kynge lete ordeyne and make at the Pount- 12 large, ouyr the watir of Sayne, a stronge and a myghti cheyne of Iron, and put it thorough piles² faste pite in the grounde, ouyr the ryuer of Sayne, that no vesseH myght rowe that wei in no kynde. And thanne, aboue that chayne, the Kynge lete make a brygge 16 ouyr the watir, that man and hors and aH othir cariage myght passe to and fro at alle tyme whanne nede were.

¶ And tho come the Erle of Warwike, and had gotten Domfferauncte,³ and come down there the Kynge lay at the sege of 20 Rone; and the Kynge comaundid hym with his pepuH to gon to Cawde-becke⁴ and besege hit. ¶ And whanne he come before the toune, the gouernouris of the toune come oute, and tretid with the Erle of Warwike, and seid that thei wolde don and be 24 gouernyd aftur the Cite of Rone; and so thei grauntid in composicion, and asselid it vp, in full condicion that thei shuld suffre and lette passe alle oure flete of Shippis by hem, with-oute eny lette or disturburance. And so oure Shippis passid alle yn, 28 and come be hem, and comen before the Cite of Rone, and there keste ankre as thikke as thei myght stonde; and so they segid the Cite of Rone bothe be watir⁵ and by londe.

¶ And whanne the Erle of Warwike had thus endid and don 32 with the toune of Cawdebecke, and alle the Engelysshe shippis were come vp in the watir of Sayne, and set before the cite of Rone, ¶ Thanne the Erle of Warwike turnyd hym ayen with alle his pepuH, and come to the Kynge, and loggid hym with alle his 36 pepuH betwyxt Seint Katerynys and the Kynge, till that an abbey

¹ & A. of G. ² porugh grete piles A.

³ Domfferauncte A [*i. e.* Domfront]. do in ffrance G.

⁴ Caudebeck A. ⁵ leaf 138.

that was in trete there, was yolden to the Kyng; and thanne anon aftur he went thens and loggid hym, with alle his pepuH and ordynauncis at Porte Morteuyle, to kepe that porte of the Cite.

4 ¶ And thanne was the Erle of Salusbury comaundid by the Kyng to make hym redy to ryde. And tho hasty tithyngis come, and returnyng¹ hym ayen, and did hym byde; and there he bode be sidis the Erle of Huntyngdon, tille that the sege was endid, and 8 wonne vp in-to the Kyngis hondis.

¶ And thanne come Sir Vmfrey, Duke² of Gloucestre, the Kyngis brothir, from the sege of Cherborough, wiche he had wonne and gotyn be sawte and good fete of werre, and aftur lete hit stuffe 12 with Engelisshe pepuH, and with vitaile, and with othir stronge ordynauncis, as longid to werre and to worship³ and prophite to the Kyng of Engeland. ¶ And whanne he was come doune to fore the Cite of Rone, he loggid hym with his pepuH and ordynauncis 16 at the Porte Seint Hillare, more nere his enemyes to the toun thanne eny othir man by xl. rodis of lengthe, with-ynne shotte of Gounne and quareH. And with hym lay the Erle of Suffolke and the⁴ Lord Begeyne, with alle⁵ her retenewe and alle her⁶ 20 ordynauncis; and manfully euyry day they⁷ ffaughten with her enemyes whanne they issewed oute of the Cite.

¶ And thanne come⁸ the Pryore of Kylmayne, oute of Irlond, ouyr the see, with a feyre compeny of men of armys on her Guyse,⁹ 24 the summe of xv. c., good bodyes and manfuH men to werre, and come with-ynne¹⁰ Sayne Mouth, and aryuyd and landid at Hareflete, and spede hem in alle haste to the Kyng, and come vnto the sege of Rone: and the Kyng the welcomyd the pryore of Kylmayne 28 and alle his pepuH.

¶ And thanne come tydyngis to the Kyng¹¹ that the Frensshe kyng, with an huge powere of pepuH of dyuerse nacionys, and the Duke of Burgoyne with hym, with an huge compeny of Burgoyns, 32 of Flemmyngis, and of othir Duches tungis, wold come down to breke the sege, and keste hem to entre on the northe syde of oure hoste, because that there was lefte entre and moste pleyne grounde.

36 ¶ And thanne the Kyng assyngnyd the Pryoure of Kylmayne,

¹ tidyngis returnyd A. ² vmffray be duke A. ³ unto worship A.

⁴ the om. A. ⁵ alle om. A. ⁶ alle her om. A. ⁷ they om. A.

⁸ panne come A. panne G. ⁹ on her contre quyse A.

¹⁰ with yune A. with G. ¹¹ kyng of England A.

with alle his pepuH, to logge hem on the northe side, for to stoppe and kepe the weyis and passagis by the foreste of Lyonys, that none enemyes might come doune that weyis to the sege, with-oute that thei countrid with hem in fight: and of that ordynaunce thei 4 weren fayn and glad; and thei yeden forthe in haste, and kepten the gronde and the¹ place that the Kynge and his counseile had asingnyd hem to; and as good warriouris and as prowde men of armys they shewid hem at alle tymes vpon her enemyes, wherefore 8 the Kynge had hem in heighe cherite for her grete manhode.

¶ Now wolle y telle you who weren the cheeff capteynys and governouris of the cite Rone.² Furst, Moune-seighnour Guy de Botelere, cheef Capteyne, bothe of the¹ cite and of the¹ CasteH; 12 Moune-seighnoure Ternagon, and he was Capteyne of the Porte Cauxs; Moune-seighnoure le Roche was capteyne of Porte Denysine; Moune-seighnoure Antony, he was leue-tenaunte to Moune-seighnoure Sir Guy the Botelere, Henry Chamfewe was capteyne 16 of Porte de Pount; Iohn Matreuas was captayne of Port de la CasteH; Moune-seighnoure Peneuxe was tho captayne of Port Seint Hillari; the Bastard of Teyne was tho captayne of Port Marteuyle. ¶ And Graunde Iakis, a worthi warrioure, was 20 capteyne of alle the ordynauncis of³ oute-warde on hors backe, and on ffote of men of armis, and⁴ Issewid oute of the Cite at alle the portis, to don there ffetes yn the poyntis of werre ayens her enemyes; and euyry⁵ of these Captaynys led v. M^{hi}. men of armys 24 and moo.

¶ And whanne alle the comenmalte weren with-ynn the Cite, men myght sen many a M^{hi}; for the heraudis nombrid hem that weren with-ynne the Cite at the bygynnyng of the sege, of men, 28 women and childeren, iij C. M^{hi}. and x. M^{hi}. bodyes, yonge and olde. And amonge hem weren many manfuH pepuH and hardy, for⁶ often tymes they Issewid oute of the Cite, pepuH welle yarmyd, on hors backe and eke on ffote, oute of⁷ euyry yate an ij or iij M^{hi}. men of 32 armys, welle arayed, and manfully countrid and foughten with oure Engelish pepuH yn dyuerse parties of the sege. And tho that myght ascape, turnyd into the cite home ayen; and thus thei endurid longe tyme; and moche werre come fro the Cite wallis, as 36 shott of Gounnys and quareH, for thei shot euyry day from the wallis⁸ and touris of the cite, with-ynne the space of an houre, an

¹ the om. A. ² of pis Cite of Rone A. ³ of om. A. ⁴ pat A.
⁵ leaf 138, back. ⁶ for A. for hai G. ⁷ at A. ⁸ wall A.

C of Gonne-stonys and moo, and quarellis with-oute nombre; and so thei sloughe and hurte moche Engelisshe pepuH.

¶ And oure Kynge lete make an¹ diche aH withoute, Rounde
4 a-boute the cite, and strongly stakid it, and heggid it, for these
prykeris oute on hors backe, and comaundid Syr Robert Babthorp,
knyght and Countroller, to ouyr-se that this werke were don; and
he did it make in alle haste. ¶ And thanne they issewid oute
8 on ffote, and fought manly² as good werriouris; and tho myche
pepuH weren slayn on³ bothe sidis. And they at the wallis and at
the touris of the Cite shotten euer⁴ Gounnys, quarellis, Trepgettis,
Spryngollis⁵; and alwey on⁶ the Duke of Gloucestreis side thei
12 diden moche⁷ harme, for thei weren loggid nexte of alle pepuH to
the Cite. And euyr ther come tydyngis newe that the Burgoyneys
wold come and reskewe the Cite; and for ioie thereof they ronge
alle the bellis in the Cite; and fro the ffirste tyme of shittynge of
16 the yatis of the cite they ronge neuyr bellis but for tho tydyngis
tille the cite was goten and yolden to the Kynge of Engeland.

¶ And tho the Kynge wende the Frensshe hoste had byn come,
and with good wordis comfortid his pepuH, and bad hem ben of
20 good chere. And anon tydyngis⁸ come ayen that thei were turnyd
to Paris-ward ayen. ¶ And thanne with-ynne ffewe dayes thei
were come to Pounteyse, the nombre of iiij. M^h⁹ good ffightynge
men, and welle arayed. ¶ And thanne the Kynge made a kry,
24 and comaundid that euyry mane shuld ligge yn his herneys, and
byn at alle tymes redy whanne her enemyes come. And tho the
Kynge lete make a lerge duche, alle withoute his hoste, and pight
it fuH of stakes ymade sharpe, that wold perisshe, and with turne-
28 pykes, and leid there-by Gounnys redy bent in euyry partye rounde
aboute this diche. And the kynge tho comaundid his countroller
Sir Robert Babthorp, knyght, to spede in alle haste this were don
by his ouyr sight; and so anon this werke was endid.

32 ¶ And anon come tydynges to the Kynge, there as he lay at
seege; and this was on the¹⁰ Thorisday, that the ffrensshe hoste
lay but xx. myle from hym, and wold byn there on the morough
on the Fryday; and the same tydyng¹¹ come to hem that were
36 with-ynne the Cite. ¶ Of these tydynges oure Kynge made
moche¹² ioie and myrthe, and artely¹³ thankyd God. And so on

¹ a A. ² manfully A. ³ in A. ⁴ euer A. eu G.

⁵ & engynys A. ⁶ vpon A. ⁷ most A. ⁸ tidyng A.

⁹ ij M^h A. ¹⁰ a A. ¹¹ tidyngis A. ¹² grete A. ¹³ hertily A.

the Fryday oure Kyng rode to the Erle of Huntyngdon, and told to hym a wile and a good ffete of werre, and made hym ordeyne ij. Bateillis of men of armys. ¶ And the firste bataill thei and he redenn, and her backes¹ toward the Cite; and that othir bataill⁴ come oute of the wode, with standerdis and baneris of the Duke of Burgoyns armys. And these ij hostis metten, as thei had countrid, and foughten to-gederis; but non did othir harme. And this was ordeynyd and don by the kyngis deuyse and conseile, for⁸ thei that weren with-ynne the Cite shuld haue vturly hopid and trustid that reskewis had ben come,² and that thei that weren with-ynne the Cite of men of armys shuld boldely haue issewid oute, and ffoughten vturly with the pepuþ of the sege; but thei dorste¹² not come oute of that³ Cite at that tyme, for thei doutid and drad, and supposid to hem but trayne, and wold not issewe oute for drede of dethe, as for that⁴ tyme, but abodyn and lokid aftur helpe, socoure, and reskewis of these Burgoynes, but ther come no com-¹⁶ forte to hem. but yet tho afturward the men of armys issewid oute ayen of the Cite as thei did befor, and ffoughten manfully with oure Engelisshe-men, and myche pepuþ weren slayne on bothe sydis at dyuerse tymes. 20

¶ And tho it drewe nere Cristemesse; and by that tyme her vitailis scarsid sore with-ynne the Cite, for they⁵ hade nothir bred, ale, nor wyne, but watir and vynegur, that was her drynke. And flesshe nor fisse they had non, but eten hors,⁶ doggis, Mis, Rattis²⁴ and Cattis; for an quarter of an horse, were he lene or⁸ fatte, was tho sold⁹ in the Cite amonge the pepuþ for an C. s. good payment, and an hors hede¹⁰ for xx. s., and a¹⁰ Ratte for xl. d.;¹¹ and for xiiij. s. iiij. d. thei sold a Catte,¹¹ and a mows for xx. d.; and these²⁸ wormys weren bought and eten so faste that vnnethe thei fonde eny for¹² to selle¹³ for no money. ¶ And tho¹⁴ was¹⁵ a ferthyngelof boght in the Cite¹⁶ for a ffranke. And thanne hem failid bothe whete, and mele, and alle othir graynys that thei myght make of³² eny brede¹⁷; but¹⁸ branne and broken wo[r]tis, and nepe-rotis, and lekis, was to hem mete of grete valewe; for a leke was sold for

¹ redenn & her bakkis A. redenn & her om. G. ² to hem A.
³ þe A. ⁴ leaf 139. ⁵ þay A. the G. ⁶ hors flessh A.
⁷ From here to page 402, line 21, to word "trayne," missing in A.
⁸ or were he B. ⁹ sold þo B. ¹⁰ a dogge for B.
¹¹⁻¹¹ and . . . Catte om. B. ¹² for om. B.
¹³ to selle B. to slee selle G. ¹⁴ tho om. B. ¹⁵ þas a B.
¹⁶ in the Cite om. B. ¹⁷ make eny brede of B. ¹⁸ but of B.

xij. d., and an¹ Egge for ix. d., and an appuſt for x. d.: ſiche merchaundyſe was there with-ynne the Cite a gret while; and ther was many a carefull creature, for her² vitailis were alle waſtid and 4 ſpent, and pey³ myght come to no new by⁴ no maner wey; for the ſege that⁵ lay withoute, rounde aboute the Cite, wold⁶ ſuffre no vitaille come in, to hem, neythir by watir neythir⁷ be londe.

¶ And thanne be-ganne the pepuſt with-ynne the Cite to deie 8 faſte, bothe ſmale and grete, for the paſſynge hungur and enfamen that was amonge hem, by⁸ C.C. perſonys and moo day by day; and there as was firſte ioy and pryde, and grete boſte, tho was there amonge hem weyllynge, ſorow and⁹ care, and wepynge, and wryng- 12 ynge with¹⁰ hondis. ¶ And though a child ſhuld deie, the modir wold yeue it no brede ne nought ellis of¹¹ othir fode, ne wold not departe no morselle though ſhe myght ſaue the lif of her¹² child of¹³ hir body borne, but wold ſaue her ſelfe while ſhe myght; for loue 16 and hertly kyndenesse was tho from hem paſſid. Nor the child wold not profir the modir; for eche of hem caſte hymſelf to leue; for alle kyndenesse and loue tho was¹⁴ ſette beſide¹⁵; for euyr the childe wold hide his mete¹⁶ and his drynke¹⁷ fro his modir and from 20 alle his othir ffryndis, for his mete thei ſhuld not ſee, for thei ete hit alle in pryuete. ¶ And we may preue by that pepuſt there, that hounzir paſſithe kyndenesse and eke loue, that made her¹⁸ vnrightweſneſſe and her curſid leuyng and pryde that regnyd 24 amongis hem in tho dayes, wherefore God ſent hem a yerd of chaſtiſement. But yet thei that kept the wallis and¹⁹ touris of the Cite rounde aboute, be-cauſe the pepuſt withoute ſhuld not knowe nor wete of her grete nede and myſchef that thei weren ynne, euyr 28 to²⁰ hold her courte and²¹ contynauce of opyn werre, bothe with ſhot of Gounnys and quarellis.²²

¶ But amonge ther iſſewid ſumme pepuſt of the Cite oute; and they come forthe, and weren take of the wacchemen withoute 32 at the²³ ſege Cite. ¶ And they affraynyd hem how it ſtode with the²⁴ pepuſt that weren lefte with-ynne the Cite. ¶ And they anſuerid and told to the Engelisſhe pepuſt of the grete nede,

¹ and an B. and G. ² theyr B. ³ and pey B. and G.

⁴ in B. ⁵ pat per B. ⁶ wold not B. ⁷ nor B. ⁸ by om. B.

⁹ and om. B. ¹⁰ of B. ¹¹ nought ellis of om. B.

¹² her owne B. ¹³ of of G. ¹⁴ was þo B. ¹⁵ a syde B.

¹⁶ hys mete wolde hyde B. ¹⁷ and his drynke om. B.

¹⁸ her grete B. ¹⁹ and the B. ²⁰ to B. to and to G.

²¹ and curſed B. ²² querell and gonnes B. ²³ the om. B. ²⁴ hys B.

scarste, hungir and¹ dethe, that was euyry day² amongis hem. ³But our folke wold not beleue nor truste hem,³ be cause that the pepuH with-ynne hilde⁴ alle tymes contynauce like in werre, day be day,⁵ as thei did beforne vpon the sege withoute; wherefore thei ⁴ had⁶ hem in⁷ no truste in no degre.

And thanne with-ynne a lituH⁸ while aftur, the worthi men that weren with-ynne the Cite, gederid alle the pore pepuH that tho weren with-ynne the Cite, man, woman, and child, and brought ⁸ hem to the yatis, and put hem oute at euyry porte by an C personys on⁹ a rowte, and bad hem helpe hem-self in her beste maner that thei myght, for there thei shold no lenger abyde yn no wyse with hem. ¶ And thanne thei come forthe toward¹⁰ the ¹² Engelisshe seege, knelynge on her kneis, and wepyngre sore, bothe man, and woman with yonge sowkyngre children ¹¹in her armys, and olde febuH men knelynge besyde hem, makynge there a dilfuff crye; for alle they cryed there atonys "haue mercy on vs, ye good ¹⁶ and¹² Cristen and worthy men."¹³ ¶ And thanne oure Kynge had¹⁴ rewthe on hem and pite,¹⁵ and yaf hem brede and drynke, and made hem turne ayen to the Cite; and there thei kepte hem in the diche, that thei shold not knowe nor here the ordynaunce ²⁰ nor counseile of the seege, ne of her wacche in no wyse, for trayne and treson that myght falle.

¶ And whanne these pore pepuH shuld turne¹⁶ ayen, thei made high sorough and grete murmuracion amonge hem-self, and seyden ²⁴ they had leuyr byn sleyn there thanne go ayen into the Cite, and dilfully, with high voycis¹⁷ bannyngre and cursyngre her¹⁸ owne nacion, for thei that weren with-ynne the Cite wold not suffre hem come in ayen; wherefore y trowe thei diden grete synne and mys- ²⁸ chieff to hem-self; for meny of him deiden there for colde, that, and thei had byn with-ynne, her lifis¹⁹ might haue byn sauyd and kepte.

¶ And tho was come the tyme of Cristmesse, in whiche oure ³² Kynge did tho grete mercy and relief to his enemyes, at the reuerence of that Glorious feste of the byrthe of oure Lorde Ihesu Criste and of his blessid modir, oure Lady Seynt Marye, that

¹ and *om.* B. ² day new B. ³⁻³ But . . . hem *om.* B.
⁴ hilde at B. ⁵ day by day in werre B. ⁶ had of B. ⁷ in *om.* B.
⁸ litull *om.* B. ⁹ in B. ¹⁰ wolking to B. ¹¹ leaf 139, back.
¹² and *om.* B. ¹³ englyssh man B. ¹⁴ had grete B.
¹⁵ & pytee on hem B. ¹⁶ shuld algatis turne A. ¹⁷ voice A.
¹⁸ her A. he G. ¹⁹ lyuys A.

gracious and mercifuH virgyne. For, of high pite, mercy and¹
grace, and at the reuerence of² that tyme of the holy feste, the
Kynge, of high compascion that he had in hert, and of his worthi
4 and excellent manhode, sent oute his heraudis in good araye, bothe
to hem that weren wyth-ynne the Cite as welle as with-oute the
Cite, on the Cristemesse day self, to hem³ that lackid vitaille, that
thei shold come and haue mete and drynke ynow, in worship of the
8 Feste, and sauf-condite to come and to goo. And thei seiden
alle 'gramersis' lightly, as thei had no nede there-to, and set no
pryce by his sonde. And vnnethe thei wold graunte space vnto
the⁴ pepuH of her owne nacion to ben releuyd that layn in the diche
12 vndir the Cite wallis, that thei had drouen and put oute of grete
myschieff. But two preestis and iiij seruauantis for⁵ to brynge hem
vitailles, mete and drynke; and if ther come eny moo personys,
thei wold shete to hem and sle hem to dethe. ¶ And thanne
16 weren alle these pore pepuH set arowe; and these two preestis with
her iiij. seruauantis broughten hem plente of mete and drynke, of
the Kyngis gracious almys; and so thei weren at⁶ that tyme made
welle at eese; and replete of mete and drynke. And as thei sete
20 her mete to fonge, this talkynge thei had amongis hem. ¶ "A,
almighty God," thanne thei seide, "the⁷ Engelisshe-men by⁸ of
good and treue⁹ herte! Lo, how here this excellent Prynce and
Kynge that we thought neuyr to¹⁰ obey vnto, ne neuyr profre ne
24 don hym homage, now hathe he on vs more pite and compassion by
a M^h¹¹ thanne hathe oure owne nacion; therefore, oure Lord God,
that art fuH of myght, graunte hym grace to wynne and gete his
trewe right!" Thus the pore pepuH for the Kynge prayde; that
28 God kepe and mayntene hym in alle his nedis. ¶ Whanne thei
had thus seruyd alle the pore pepuH with mete and drynke, and
were welle reffresshid, oure folke turnyd ayen to¹² the Kynge, for
the trewe lastid no lengur but that same day.
32 ¶ And whanne the nyght be-ganne to apere and shewe, thanne
thei on the wallis beganne newe werre ayen vpon the seege, and
wacchidden a ward that¹³ fuH streyte bothe day and nyght with
hungir smerte, for that tyme her vitaiH weren alle wastid and
36 spente. And meny a worthy body for defaute of lyuelod of mete

¹ and A. an G. ² of om. A. ³ peym A. ⁴ the pore A.

⁵ for om. A. ⁶ at om. A. ⁷ pese A. ⁸ ben A.

⁹ treue A. treue of G. ¹⁰ to om. A. ¹¹ M^h parte A. ¹² vnto A.

¹³ pat was A.

and drynke was¹ spent and ded, for euyr grete houngir brekithe herd stonen waht yn hir grete nede; for euyr the lif is dere and suete.

¶ Thanne alle the Capteynys of that Cite, bothe Baillis, Burgeses and comunnalte, toke her counseih with-ynne hem self to trete with the Kynge; and with the pepuht the cause pryncipah for the high myschieff that tho was amongis hem² of enfamenynge for hungir; for thei knewe welle thei myght note longe endure so; 8 and for the sodeyne and ³multitude dethe that was euyry day amonges hem for lakke of ffode, vpon the New Yeris Euynt at nyght, the pepuht with-ynne come to the wallis at euyry porte to the seege, and clepedyn a knyght to speke with hem; and there 12 was non man that tyme that hem herd tille thei come to the Porte de Pounte of Sayne. ¶ And that was on that side⁴ as the Erle of Huntynghdon kepte the ward. And there thei weren herd, and answerid tho ayen, and askid what thei wold: and thei ansuerid 16 and seid, and prayed at the⁵ reuerence of Almyghty God,⁶ if ther were eny gentih knyght that wold here her complaynte, and bere her erende vnto the Kynge. ¶ And thanne oon ansuerid and seid, he was a knyght; and thei preyd hym to telle hys name. And 20 he seid, “my name ys Vmfreyule;” and thei thankid God and oure Lady that thei had mette with hym, for he was of the old blode of that contre of Normandy; “and we praye you to helpe vs haue an ende betwene youre Kynge and vs.” And he seid, “what is youre 24 wille?” and thei seid at fewe wordis: “we haue byn at euyry porte of the⁷ City there these Pryncis loggyn before, and haue callid aftur speche of hem; but we coude haue non ansuere: ffirste at the Duke of Clarence, the excellente prynce; and from thens to 28 the Duke of Gloucestre, his worthi brothir; and ofte we clepid, and longe there stode; and so we come doune to the Duke of Exeture, and there we gate non ansuere.

The starving
Roueners
can't get Lord
Warwick or
the Earl
Marshal to
listen to
them.

“And at Warwike, that Erle so fre, 32
We callid ofte: it wold not be;
And at the Erle Marchaht we were.
ther was no wight that wold us ansuere.
And we haue clepid at aht these so moche, 36
But non ansuere we coude gete truliche;

¹ was bere A. ² hem A. om. G. ³ leaf 140. ⁴ side bere A.
⁵ the heigh A. ⁶ god almyghty A. ⁷ pis A.

therefore we pray these princis, for Mari sake,
 And for that Lordis loue that did vs make,
 As thei ben dukis of high dyngnyte,
 And cheeftaynys of cheualrye, 4
 Vnto the Kynge to prey for vs,
 And we may fynde hym so gracious ;
 And we wolle gon with you also
 Vnto the Kynge, and speke hym to, 8
 And beseche hym, for loue of that Kynge
 That made heuen, erthe, and alle thyng,
 With his witte and his good auyse,—
 Aboue alle pryncis he is pryse,— 12
 And for his owne high pryncchode,
 and also for his owne worthy manhode,
 And as he is kynge moste excellent,
 and to God, but to non othir, obedyent, 16
 That regnythe here in erthe by ryght,¹
 But only to oure² Ihesu full of myght,
 And with-ynne hym selff Emperoure,
 and also³ Almyghti kynge and conqueroure, 20
 That he hym-self wold graunte vs space,
 and sauf-condite, and alle his grace,
 Nought-withstondyng ourre offence,
 That we myght come to his presence, 24
 xij. men of vs by on assent,
 That lordly Kynge to telle fully oure entent.
 May we come hym onys to se,
 With the myght of God so fre, 28
 We shuH hym shewe, withoute distaunce,
 that shaH hym turne to grete plesaunce.”
 Quod⁴ Vmfray : “ this y [as]sent ;”
 and⁵ toke his leue, and forth he went, 32
 And come to the Duke of Clarence there,
 and told hym⁶ this mater aH in ffeere.
 he thankid God and his modir eke,
 that oure enemyes were be-come so meke, 36
 and⁷ that he wold, with good wille,
 Speke for hem oure Kynge vntille.

The Roueners
want English
nobles to beg
Henry V to

be gracious
to them,

for his man-
hood's sake,

and grant
them safe-
conduct for

12 of em to
come to him.

Umfraville
agrees,
and asks the
Duke of
Clarence

to speak to
Henry V.

¹ right A. nyght Kk.

² oure lord A.

³ also a A.

⁴ Ox A. ⁵ he A.

⁶ hym om. A.

⁷ & seide A.

- lo, so sone this good lord hem vndirtoke,
 and her mekenesse he nought forsoke.
 he is a prynce forto¹ comende ;
 but aH to fewe of siche ben founde ; 4
 he is manfuH, whanne werre dothe laste,
 and mercifuH whanne hit is paste ;
 Manhode, mekenesse, witte and grace,
 Is conteynynd with hym in a lituH space ; 8
 he wantith nothyng a prynce shold haue ;
 Almyghti God mote hym saue !
- Umfraville goes to the Duke of Exeter and to Gloster,
 Thanne Vmfrey² toke his leue,
 and his message he went to meue. 12
 To Gloucestre thanne did he goo,
 To Exetur the Duke also,
 and told hem the tydyngis how it was.
 thei thonkyd God of his high grace, 16
 that her enemyes, ayens her wille,
 ffor nede of socoure wold yold him tille ;
 and seid thei wold, for Goddis sake,
 helpe for hem a good ende to make. 20
 loo these pryncis of high mekenesse,—
 God kepe hem yn hele and from sikenesse !— [lf. 140, bk.]
 Though thei haue suffrid peynys smerte,
 yet haue thei mercy and pite in herte. 24
- Then he goes
 to other nobles,
 Thanne Vmfreyule, his leue he tace,
 and passid forthe in his space
 To erlis and to lordis be³ name ;
 and thei hym seid aH the same. 28
 Lo ! these cheefenteynys of cheualrie,
 how thei weren come in cherite !
 therefore God, of his grete grace,
 yef hem good spede in euyry place. 32
- and then to Henry V.
 thanne on⁴ Newe Yeris Day in the morny[n]g,
 Sir Gilbert Vmfreyule come to the Kyng,
 and aH this mater to hym he⁵ seid :
 And there of the cite mekely hym prayed. 36
 oure Kynge seid thanne, be good auyse,
 and also at his owne deuyse,

¹ to A. ² vmfrevile A. ³ by A. ⁴ a A.
⁵ he om. A.

to graunte that cite aH her wille :
 " let xij of hem come me tille."
 of aH his lordis euyry-chone. Henry V
 will see the
 12 Roueners.

ayens it was neuyr oone. 4

lo! that high¹ prynce and kynge so felle,²
 of aH erthely creaturis he is welle ;

lo! how he hathe prouyd hym self manfuH,
 and as³ a prynce right mercifuH ; How manful
 and merciful
 he is, 8

thei that had hym so ofte⁴ meuyd,
 and also hym had gretely greuyd,
 and also⁵ put hym yn grete coste,
 and of his pepuH fuH meny loste, 12

And⁶ withstonde hym of his right,—
 And now thei byn falle in his myght,
 and at his wille hem to greue, when he has
 em in his
 power! 16

yf he wol put hem to myscheue ;
 and thanne hym-self to light so lowe,
 of her wille to wete and knowe,
 and also to graunte hem to trete :
 that was heigh mercy and cherite. 20

Sithe that thei had hym so⁷ agilte,
 and lithe in hym to don hem ben spilte ;
 he grauntid hem⁸ grace and merciful mekenes :
 ffor-sothe, a child of God, y wot⁹ he is ;¹⁰ 24 He is truly a
 Child of God.

of goodnesse and uertu he wantith no thyng ;
 that his¹¹ preisyng for a kynge.
 therefore Criste, for his passion,
 kepe hym in¹² right compassion ! 28

whanne the kynge had grauntid, as y haue told,
 to Vmfreuyle, the knyght so bolde
 The Kynge seid, " sir, whanne shalle this be ?
 If thei wille to-morrowe, let see." 32

Thanne¹³ Vmfreuyle of the Kynge leue hent.¹⁴
 And to that¹⁵ cite anon he went.
 and whanne he kome at that¹⁶ gate,

¹ he A. ² principaH B. ³ is B. ⁴ so oft had B.
⁵ also had B. ⁶ and had B. ⁷ so greuously B.
⁸ hem of hys B. ⁹ wot wele B.
¹⁰ is þat doth good ayenst mysse B. ¹¹ is B.
¹² in hys B. ¹³ tho B. ¹⁴ toke leue B. ¹⁵ þe B.
¹⁶ that om. B.

	the statis of the cite he fonde the[r]ate.	
Umfraville says Henry V will see the	he seid : " y haue be with oure Kyng ¹ , and he hathe grauntid youre askyng.	
	to-morowe, be-tymes loke ye be yare,	4
12 Roueners to-morrow.	ffor xij of yow shuH to hym fare : and syn ye shuH gon hym to, My counseilH y rede that ye do.	
	to-morow y wote that ye shulle se	8
	The rialliste prynce of Cristiante ; To ² syche a prynce neuer ye spake, ne so loue a worde can take.	
They must take care their tongues are not too long, but speak few words.	Theynke with hert byforn youre tonge, leste youre tongis ³ byn to longe : speke but fewe, and welle hem sette To that prynce whanne ye byn mette ; ffor a word wronge oute of ward	12 16
	Might make you to ⁴ fare fnH herd, Therefore, of wordis loke ye ben wise, and sei no thyng withoute good avise."	
	thanne thanked thei hym fuH curtesly,	20
	and of his god lore seid, " gramercy ; that ye wold vs so moche good teche, or that we come to that worthi princis speche."	
	he seid " adieu ! " and went his wey, the seturday aftur neweyeris day.	24
Next day at prime he meets the	and at ⁵ that houre of day be ⁶ pryme, Sir Gilbert Vmfreyuyle come that ⁷ tyme ; of the Kyngis squyeris weren sent,	28
	that tyme wyth ⁸ hym verayment, ⁹ ¹⁰ and yomen of the crowne also, with hym assyngny were to goo, ¹⁰ thei went to Sein Hillariis Gate :	32
12 Roueners :	anon the xij men come oute there-ate :	
4 knyghts, 4 clerks, and 4 burgeses.	iiij knyghtis and ¹¹ iiij clerkes, and ¹¹ iiij burgeys, wise ¹² of werkes :	
	alle ¹³ thei were clothid in ¹⁴ blacke,	36

¹ kyng *om.* B. ² *with* B. ³ wordes B.

⁴ *to om.* B. ⁵ and on B. ⁶ at B. ⁷ by B.

⁸ with B. wyth be G. ⁹ hym assigned were to go B.

¹⁰⁻¹⁰ and yomen . . . goo *om.* B. ¹¹ and *om.* B.

¹² wise B. with wise G. ¹³ & B. ¹⁴ aft in B.

comly of chere, and feire thei spake.		
whanne thei were come to the ¹ hous of charite,		
thenne oure Kynge, at messe was he ;		Henry V is at Mass.
with-ynne the chirche thei did lend	4	
the[r]tille that the messe was at the ² end.		
tho ³ come forthe the Kynge withoute let,		He comes out.
there as he had knelid in his closet,		
with chere so cheuetayneliche,	8	
with ⁴ so lith light ⁵ a loke, and lordliche, ⁶		
and so right solent senblaunt, and sad :		
⁷ to se that lord men mygh[t] be glad. ⁷		
as sone as the Frensshe-men hym did ⁸ see,	12	The Roueners kneel to him,
To-forn hym thei fille on kne.		[leaf 141]
he blenchid on hem with stately chere ;		
he ⁹ ne wiste what thei were :		
thei enclinyd hem with meke speche,	16	
And a bille to hym thei did reche.		hand him a Petition,
he taught a lord to take her bille,		
and sumwhat he turnyd hem till :		
what it ment, y hard say ;	20	
tretise thei wold, be eny way ;		
Thei be-soght hym, for Goddis sake,—		and pray him to hear them.
that heuen and erthe and alle did make,		
Bothe este, weste, northe and southe,—	24	
‘that ye wold here oure speche be ¹⁰ mouthe.’		
the Kynge bad hem speke and sey her wille ;		
and thei were fayn, and knelid stille.		
Thé seid, “we you beseche ¹¹ and prey,	28	They beg him
ffor His loue that deid on good Friday,		
And for his Modiris loue so fre,		
considre now on ¹² vs now, for charite !		to pity them.
the pore pepuH that byn withoute,	32	Their poor are starving.
In our dichis rounde aboute,		
Thei lien there for faute of breed ;		
and for defaute many byn dede.		Many are dead.
haue ye pite hem vppon,	36	

¹ to þe B. to G. ² the om. B. ³ to B. ⁴ And with B.

⁵ hygh B. ⁶ lordshyppe B. ⁷⁻⁷ to . . . glad om. B.

⁸ did om. B. ⁹ As he B. ¹⁰ by B.

¹¹ byseche yow B. ¹² consider & tender B.

	and yeue hem leue ¹ thens to gon."	
Henry V tells the 12 Roueners	ffuH still the Kynge stode aH ² that while, and nouthir did ³ laugh nor smyle ; but with a countynaunce so clere, and also with a cheuetaynly chere, nothir ⁴ to myld nothir ⁵ to straunge, But ay in oon withoute chaunge, his countenaunce did not abate, but alwey stode in oon astate.	4 8
	And tho hym luste to yeue ansuere, he seide : "y put hem not there, into the diche of that cite ; I put hem not there ; and that wote ye. Thei were not put there at myn ordynaunce, ne non shuH passe at my suffraunce ; Thei abode there while thei mought ;"— and so he seide to hem fuH ryght ; ⁶ — "and as to you, ye knoue welle this : ye haue offendid me with mys, and from me kepte my cite, the whiche that is ⁷ heritage fre, and ⁸ shuld be my liege men."	12 16 20
that he didn't put their poor folk in the city ditch.		
They have offended him, and kept his city from him.		
They plead	They ansuerid and seid thanne : "Off this cite that we here kepte, we haue a charge, and that a depe. hit vs bitak ⁹ oure souyrayn liege. ¹⁰ For to deffend hit from saught or ¹¹ sege ; and we ben his liege men born, and also holesy to hym we ben sworn. and also of the Duke of Burgoyne so fre, A grete charge of hym had we ; but wold ye now, of youre highe grace, Graunte vs alle lif and space, that summe of vs myght to hem goo, and warne hem botho of oure woo, and of oure ferthe vs to excuse ;	24 32 36
that they are the lieges of their king,		
and ask leave to warn him and the Duke of Burgundy of their state.		

¹ hem leue B. heue G. ² stode all B. all G.
³ noþer did B. nouthir G. ⁴ not B. ⁵ nor B.
⁶ ryght B. sothe G. ⁷ is myn B. ⁸ and ye B.
⁹ hit was bytake B. hit vs bite G. ¹⁰ liege B. kynge G.
¹¹ & A.

ffor many of vs woſſ hem refuse,
 and to you yelden oure¹ cite,
 and alle youre owne liege men be.”

The Kynge seid, “y do you oute of doute, 4
 My cite y wolle not gon withoute.
 and as touchynge to² youre Frensshe liege,
 ye³ wote welle that y hold this sege ;
 and the Duke of Burgoyne also, 8
 alle thei wete welle, bothe two ;
 ffor alle the⁴ while that y here haue byn,
 Messageris haue go betwene ;
 and yf thei like to neigh me nere, 12
 thei weten welle to ffynde me here ;
 ffor y wolle not hens goo
 withoute my right, for frynde nor ffoo,
 sith thei so longe beform it knewe. 16
 and nowe to sende hem message newe,
 it were to⁵ hem no newelte,
 and to us⁶ but superfluite.
 Siche message wol y non sende ; 20
 it is no nede, so God me amende !”

And whanne the Kynge had yeue that ansuere,
 of the⁷ mater spake thei no more ;
 pay⁸ seiden, “feire it is to wynne 24
 Rone, with the men that⁹ ben ther-ynne.”

The Kynge seid : “it is myn owne londe ;
 I woſſ it wynne, though ye it with-stonde,
 and ye mowe there-ynne so deserue, 28
 ye shuſſ be reward aftur¹⁰ as ye serue !”
 with that word thei weren aflagid.

thanne spake a clerke, and thus he seid :
 “souyrayne lord, if¹¹ ye woſſ take hede 32
 In stori that ye may rede,
 how ij sheuetaynys a day had set,
 and with ther¹² hostis thei weren met,
 bothe arayid in a felde, 36

The Roueners
will yield
Rouen to
Henry V.

He says he
will not go
without
his city.

Their French
King and the
Duke have
known of
the siege.

It's no use
to send em
a message,

and by God
he'll not
send one.

He'll win
Rouen ;
and if they
oppose him,
they'll suffer.

A clerk tells
him a story :

2 hosts met
to fight.

¹ youre A. ² to om. A. ³ he A. ⁴ pay A.

⁵ to A. to no G. ⁶ us now A. ⁷ pat A.

⁸ pay A. then G. ⁹ that A. that that G.

¹⁰ after om. A. ¹¹ y A. ¹² her A.

	and weren redi bataille to yelde :	
The weaker brought the stronger bread and wine, to make them merciful.	The weyker party of the men thanne brought the biger parti brede and wyn, In tokenyng that thei shold be Grace, mercy, and eke pite :	4
	[leaf 141, back]	
We Roueners bring you the same, and Rouen.	and nowe we brynge you bred and wyn, and Rone that cite feire and fyne.” “Rone,” he seid, “is my herytage, I wille haue it withoute fage.	8
	And fro this tyme y rede ye do, that mercy and grace may come you to. And at the reuerence of god aþmyght and of Mary his modir, that maiden so ¹ bright, Of treti ² y graunte you space ;	12
Henry grants them time,	And if ye wille ye may haue grace.” thanne seid thei, “sir, pur charite, how wille ye to youre pore pepuþ be, ³ that in diches suffryn pyne, and for defaute deie as suyne ?”	16
	The Kyng ansuerid hem with wit fuþ wise :	20
and will consider how he'll treat the starving outsiders.	“Thereof woþ y take myn a-vise, as God put hert, mynde, ⁴ and wille, So wiþ y do that pepuþ vntille : as he me redithe, y wille hem rewe.”	24
	with that he went and seid “adiue !” The ⁵ ffrensse men, that same while, fforthe thei went with Vmfreuyle ; And toward the cite as thei yode,	28
The Roueners go home-wards,	thei spoken of oure Kyng so goode :	
and praise Henry V.	Thei seiden, “he is, to oure advise, of alle erthely kyngis moste vise, takyng reward to his chere and to his contynauce in fere, To his person and propurte, to his ffeturis and ⁶ beaute, And to his depe discrecion that is in his possession, and to his passyng pryncchode,	32
		36

¹ so om. A.² tretise A.³ see A.⁴ mynde herte A.⁵ These A.⁶ & his A.

and to his discrete and worpy ¹ manhode ;		The Rouen delegates praise Henry
ffor he is mercyfull in sight,		
and askithe nothyng but his right :		
These vertuis byn a passynge thyng,	4	
That byn with-ynne sicke a kyng.		
how shuld he do ² but wyne honour ?		
how shuld he be but a conquerour ?		
welle he dothe ³ withoute dene ;	8	
God hym loue, and that is sene.”		
Thus the Frensshe men, of the Kyng talkithe,		
Toward the cite as thei walkithe.		
her leue at Vmfreuyle ⁴ thei toke,	12	
Into the Cite, and hym forsoke.		and enter Rouen.
On that othir day nexte, erliche,		
the Kyng made two tentis to picche,—		Henry V has 2 tents pitcht for the English and French to treat in.
On for the ⁵ Englysshe, and on ⁶ for the ⁵ Frensshe ;	16	
And bothe thei stode in Gloucestre ⁷ trenche,—		
Though the stormys were neuyr so grete,		
drie-hedid that thei myght trete.		
whanne bothe paulyownys weren pight,	20	
thei went to trete with aH her myght.		
Warwike, that erle so wise,—		Our men are Lords Warwick,
ffor in our partye he bare the pryce ;—		
Salusburi, that erle so treue,	24	Salisbury,
and also the Lord Fithe-hughe,		Fitzhugh, and
and the Kyngis steward, Hungurford,		Hungerford.
By name y can no moo record ;		
and from that cite come hym to mete,	28	They meet 12 Roueners.
xii. of the Frensshe that weren discrete.		
hit was a sight of solempnite		It is a solemn sight.
ffor to behold bothe partē ;		
To see the riche in her araye ;	32	
and on the wallis the pepuH that laye ;		
and on oure pepuH that weren withoute,		
how thiike that thei walkid aboute ;		
and the herowdis, semely to sene,	36	
how that thei went ay betwene ;		

¹ & worþv A. and G.

² be A.

³ with A.

⁴ vmfreuyle G.

⁵ the om. A.

⁶ & an oper A.

⁷ Gloucecestre G.

The Heralds	the Kyngis horoudis and pursiuauntis In cotis of armys amyunauntis ; The Engliſſhe a beste, the Frensshe a floure, of Portyngale bothe caste and toure,	4
were drest like lords, adornd with gold.	as lordis beren in her degre. Good-liche with gold thei were be-gon, Right as the sonne on hem shon.	8
The poor French had hardly a clout.	this sight was to hem a sory chere ; of sorow and pyne thei weren full nere ; of that pore pepuſſ that weren put oute ; thei had[den] ¹ vnnethe a cloute ; The clothis that weren on her backe, kept hem there from reine and racke ; The wethur was to hem a peyne, ffor alle that tyme it stode be ² neyne.	12 16
A child of 2 begd bread,	There men myght se a ³ grete pite, a child of two yere or thre Goo aboute and begge his brede, ffor ffadir and modir bothe lay dede.	20
its parents lay dead.	and vndir hem the watir stode ; and yet thei lay cryyngge aftur foode.	
Some had starvd to death.	Summe storuen to pe ⁴ dethe, and summe stoppid bothe yen and brethe ; And summe crokid in the kneys, and as lene as eny treis ;	24
Mothers held dead children up.	and women holdyngge in her arme a dede child, and nothyngge warme ; And childeren soukyngge on the pappe Withynne a dede womanys lappe ;	28
	There men myght ffynde ffuſſ ryue,	[leaf 142]
10 or 12 dead to 1 living.	x. or xij. deie, ayens on alyue. and thei knewe not of dethe, So preuely thei yolden vpe the brethe, withoute noyse or eny cry ;	32
They died noyselessly, as if they slept.	as thei had slept, so did thei dey.	36
	These were sightis of differaunce, that on of ioye, that othir of penaunce,	

¹ had hem A. ² by A. ³ see a A. se G. ⁴ to pe A. to G.

as heuen and erthe had partid on twoo, that on to wele, that othir to woo. ther was neuyr ¹ kynge so straunge, To see that sight, but his hert wold chaunge,	4	The sad sight would change any king's heart.
and wold considre to that syght, he shuld be pensiff, and moche light. there men myght lerne in her lif, what it is, ayens right to strif;	8	Yet the Roueners had
ffor while it lay in her lotte, thei were ffuH crueH (God it wotte), and mercy they wold non haue tille nede come that thei moste craue;	12	no mercy on us till their need came.
and yet, for alle her wikkid wille, Mercy thei were take vntiH. Now of that pepuH let we be, and of oure tretis speke we.	16	
we hem chalengithe and accusithe, and thei ansuerithe and excusithe. we askid mykiH, and thei proferid smaH, that is yuyH to accord with aH;	20	We discuss with em
tho thei tretid an xiiij nyght, and yet accordid thei ne myght. thanne the tretise thei broken in haste, and bethe tentis adoun were caste.	24	for a fort- night in vain, and break off treating.
thanne the Frensshe men hem be-thought, her owne bale that thei had wrought. whanne thei shuld her leue take, thei preyed oure lordis, and this thei spake :	28	
"For the loue of God Almyght, contenew this tretise to mydnyght; And yf we clepyne, that ye wille speke with-ynn that tyme, we you be-seke.	32	They pray for delay till midnight.
that we mowe ² haue eudyence fforto here oure euydence." Quod ³ the Englisshe lordis, "that, we assent." thei toke her leue, and forthe thei ⁴ went.	36	Our lords agree, and report to Henry V.
to the Kyng our lordis passid, and tolde hym aH these materis faste,		

¹ neuer þe A. ² may A. ³ Ox A. ⁴ þay A. the G.

	how thei lefte, and in what issewis, and how ¹ thei contynuyd the trewis. yet the Kynge was mercyfuH in mode :	
Henry V approves his lords' action.	That thei had grauntid, he not withstode. Thei passid forthe with simpufH chere, Into that cite alle in fere.	4
In Rouen,	Sone in the toun it was yspoke that the trewis was tho broke.	8
the poor abuse the rich, call em 'murderers,'	the pore pepuH alle aboute, on the riche thei made a showte, and seiden, " ye fals cherlis ! and also ye murtherreris and manquelleris ! will ye take no reward to vs tha[t] suffren here so herd, and deiden here euyry day ? welle we thanne telle may ; and also rennyth vpon oure coste, and in youre defaute we ben loste.	12
and appeal to God agalnst them.	we pray to God that ye ² mote ansuere, be-fore that iuged that suffrid sore on Caluery, vpon the rode, and bought vs with His blessid blode, that ye ben gilty in this case. we you apele byfore His face ! wold ³ ye obeye you to youre liege, thanne wold he come ⁴ lere his ⁵ sege ; but for youre goodis ye abide, and for youre pompe and for youre pryde ye nyH enclyne to oure Kynge, but rathur lese vs for hungerynge. but ye accord with oure wille, right here anon we shuH you kyH ; and he shaH come into his right. and yf ⁶ ye it withstonde, we shaH fight, leuyr thanne thus to lye here, and be enfamenyd alle in ffere." they seide they dede it for a skylle. alle that we do ys for a wile,	20 24 28
If they won't yield to Henry V		
the poor 'll kill em.		

¹ how pat A. ² pat ye A. that G. ³ wlod G.
⁴ sone A. ⁵ pis A. ⁶ yf om. A.

to excuse vs to that fode,		
¹ that we pay hym but lituH goode. ²		
thei semblid thanne aH that cite ;		
and euyry man seid in his degre :	4	The Roueners say they must either give up their city
“no nede is to counseiH goo ;		
ther is no moo but of two :		
ffor to dellyuyre vp this clos,		
or to be dede here : this is to ³ chos.”	8	or die.
to the Porte of Seynt Hillary thei went,		
and clepid oute by on assent.		
tho ansuerid hem ⁴ a knyght anon,		
that was clepid Robesard, Sir Iohn :	12	They ask Sir John Robsart
“sirrys,” he seid, “what is youre wille ?”		
thei ansuerid and seid hym tille :		
“we you be-seche, pur charite,		
And for the honoure of cheualrye,	[leaf 142, back] 16	
that ye for vs woH speke youre speche		
to the Duke of Gloucestre, and hym beseche		to get the Duke of Gloster to tell Henry V
So for us to ⁵ the Kynge to prayne,		
That we nought mowe ⁶ trete ayayne.	20	
we wolle submitt ⁷ to his wille,		that they'll submit to him.
and alle that longith hym vntille,		
oure prosonys and oure possessionys,		
alle to dispose at his discrecionys.”	24	
whanne that ⁸ Robesard the Duke had told,		The Duke tells the King.
ffor hem to speke in haste he wold :		
he meuyd hit vnto oure Kynge,		
and he hym grauntid newe trefyng	28	
Of Caunturbury the Erchebisshop fre :		The Arch-bishop of Canterbury
at Seynt Katerynys thanne lay he.		
whanne he was knowynge of that care,		
at his herte he toke it sare ;	32	
to the kynge sone he wente,		
and hym be-sought with good entente,		has leave to speak to the
that he myght wende ⁹ to that cite,		
and speke with her spryrytuate,	36	Religious of Rouen.
and to be meue of that trete ;		

¹ & pat A. ² litil goode A. lituH G. ³ pe A.

⁴ hem answerid A. ⁵ to om. A. ⁶ now A.

⁷ submytte vs A. submittis G. ⁸ pat A. the G.

⁹ myght wende A. myght G.

	and help a fynah pees to be.	
	the Kynge hym grauntid anon right.	
Tents are pitcht.	two paulyonys anon were pight, ¹	
	with-ynne the trenche that thei had ben.	4
	the erchebisshop pight his owne betwene ;	
	So was that state of ² spiritualte	
	there for to make an vnity.	
Negotiations go on for 4 days,	They tretid day, they tretid nyght,	8
	with candih and torchis bryght ;	
	thei tretid iiij dayes in that place,	
and then end.	and tho made an ende, thorough Godis grace.	
	whanne they knewe a clousion,	12
The Roueners	the Frensshe men made a peticion ;	
	her worship for to saue,	
ask for 8 days,	But viij dayes forto haue,	
to send to the French king at Burgundy.	That thei myght send to tho ³ Frensshe Kynge	16
	and to the Burgoyneys, this tydyng,	
	In what degre they stode, and howe,	
	willynge hem to haue reskowe.	
	it was a poynte of cheualre ;	20
Henry V grants them.	The kynge hem grauntid with hert fre,	
	that thei myght bothe knowe and kenne	
	how that it shuld be, and whanne.	
	Now to my tale wiht ye tende,	24
The Agree-ment is, that if no rescue comes in 8 days,	and y shaht you tell her poyntemente :	
	In viij dayes, as y you tolde,	
	yf no reskowis come to that hold,	
Rouen is to be given up to Henry V,	They shuld dellyuere that cite,	28
	And alle the burgaysis, Englysshe to be,	
	and to oure Kynge, of money sounde,	
with £50,000,	to pay oure Kynge .l. M ^{li} . ti. ;	
and they are to build Henry a castle	and more, they shuld vndirtake,	32
	a casteht for oure Kynge to make,	
	withynne in half yeris, withoute let ;	
on the Seine,	and vpon Sayne it shuld be set.	
	and thei to haue her ffraunchisis fre,	36
	as it was wonte in olde tyme to be.	
	And no man withynne her cite selle,	

¹ prght G. ² state of A. state G. ³ pe A.

But citezenys that ther-ynne duelle, And he that was a Normaunt borne, And an Englysshe man sworne ; prysoner and ¹ othir, as hit was skille,	4	
oure Kynge to raunson at his wille ; and alle the sowdyouris that there were, her goodis to lese, ² and goo bare In her dowbelettis oute of the toune ;	8	The French soldiers in Rouen are to go home bare.
and yet oure Kynge yaf euyry man a goune. This was the compasicion, and made be ³ good discrecion.		Henry V gives each a gun.
thanne Graunde Iakis anon present, aftur reskewe he was sent ; and of that message he was full fayne. to Rone he come nought ageyne ; but a messagere thedur he did sende,	12	The Rouen deputy to the French King
and bad hym haue do, and make an ende, and did hem to wete (y telle you trewe,) Ther was no reskewe that he knewe.	16	sends a message that they'll not be rescued.
the viij day (the trowthe to telle), in the feste of Seint Wolston, that day befell, and this was vpon a Thorysday.	20	So on the 8th day of the truce
oure Kynge thanne, in good aray, ffull rialliche in his astate,	24	Henry V
as a conquerowe, there he sate, with-ynne a ⁴ hous of cherite, to resseyue the keyis of that cite.		
mou sir Guy the botelere, and burgeisis of that cite in fere, to the Kynge the keyis they brought, and of legaunce hym besought.	28	receives the keys of Rouen
to Exeter, oure Kynge souerayne, comaund the keyis, and to be capteyne ; and the Duke tho charchid he to resseyue that cite,	32	and hands them to the Duke of Exeter,
and entre in his name that nyght, and assygynd to hym many a knyght.	36	and bids him enter the city that nyght.
thanne the Duk of Exeter, withoute bode,		

¹ or A. ² goodis to lese A. goodis G.
³ by A. ⁴ an A.

The Duke of Exeter rides into Rouen	toke his hors and forthe he rode to Benysyn that porte so stronge, That he had lay before so longe.	[leaf 143]	
with a brilliant suite.	To that yate sone he cam, and with hym many a worthi man ; There was neyunge of many a stede, And shynynge of many a gay wede ; There was many a geton gay, with myohiH and grete aray.		4 8
He is welcomd by music,	and whanne the yate was opynnyd there, thei ¹ weren redy, in to fare : Trompis blewe her bemys of bras, papis and clarionys, for-sothe ther was ; and as thei entrid, thei yaf a showte with her voyce : thei were ² fuH stowte.		12 15
and shouts	“ Seint Gregori ! Seint Gregori ! ” thei cride on hight, and seide “ welcome oure kyngis right ! ” the Frensshe pepuH of that cite were gederid be ³ thousandis hem to se :		15 20
from thousands of the French.	thei criden alle “ welcome ” in fere ; “ in siche tyme mote ye entre here, plesynge to God that it may be, and to vs, pees and vnyte.”		20 24
But it is sad to see the	and of that pepuH, to telH the trewthe, yt was a sight of ffuH grete rewthe : mykiH of that folke ther-ynne, thei weren but very bonys and skyn, with ey-on holow, and nose sharpe, vnnethe thei myght brethe or carpe ; ffor her colour was wan as lede, not like to lyf, but sone byn dede ; disfigurid patrouys and quantite, and as a dede Kyng thei weren paynte.		24 28 32
skin-and-bone folk,	there men myght se an exampleyre how foode makithe the pepuH feyre :		28 36
pale as lead, some dying,	In euyry strete, summe lay dede, and hundris cryinge aftur brede ; and aftur longe, meny a day,		32 36
and hundreds crying for bread.			36

¹ & þay A. ² þat was A. ³ by A.

thei died as faste as thei myght be laid away.

In-to that wey, God hem wisse,
that thei may come to his blisse! Amen!

Now wille y more telle¹ spelle, 4
and of the Duke of Excestre to telle.

The Duke o
Exeter rides
thru Rouen,

to that casteH firste he rode,
and sithen the cite alle abrode,
lengthe and brede he it mette, 8

and riche baneris he upsette,
vppon the Porte Seint Hillary,
a banere of the Trynyte ;

and sets
English
bauners on
its gates,

and at the Porte Baux² he set eyn 12
a banere of the Quene of Heuen ;

and at Porte Martuyle he vp pight
Of Seint George a baner bright.

he set vpon the casteH to stonde, 16
The armyes of Fraunce and of Engelonde.

on its castle
the arms of
France and
England.

And on the Fryday, in the mornynge,
Into that cite come oure Kynge,

Next day,
Henry V
comes,

And alle the bisshopis in her³ aray, 20
and vij abbotis with crucchis gay :

and is met
by bishops,
abbots, etc.,

xlij crossis there were of religion,
and seculer ; and alle thei went in⁴ prosession

ayens that Prynce withe-oute the toune ; 24
and euyr cros, as thei stode,

he blessid hem with mylde mode ;
and holy watir, with her honde,

and sprinkled
with holy
water.

They yaf the Prynce of oure lande. 28
and at the Porte Cauke⁵ so wide,

he passid yn⁶ withoute pryde ;
withoute pype or bomys blaste ;

He rides
in quietly,

oure Kynge, worthili he⁷ paste, 32
and as a conqueoure yn⁸ his right,

like a
Conqueror,

thankynge euyr God Almyght.

and alle the pepuff in that cite,
“ welcome oure lord ! ” thei seid so fre, 36
“ welcome into thyn owne right,

and all the
folk cry
‘ Welcome ! ’

¹ telle om. A. ² kanyer A. ³ her A. he G.
⁴ a A. ⁵ kaux A. tauke G. ⁶ in passid A.
⁷ he in A. ⁸ in A. lyn G.

	as it is the wille of God Almyght!"	
The Rouen folk cheer Hen. V on his brown steed.	with that, thei cryed alle 'nowelle' as high as thei myght yelle. he rode vpon a browne stede ;	4
	of blake damaske was his wede ; a peitreH of ¹ gold fuH bright aboute his necke hynged doun right. and a pendaunt be-hynde hym did honge	8
He alights at the Minster,	vnto the erthe, it was so longe. and thei that neuyr byforn hym ² did se, thei knewe by chere whiche was he.	
	To the mynstur did he fare,	12
	and of his hors he light thare. his chapeH mette hym at the dore there, and went before hym alle in fere, and songe a responde fuH glorious,	16
hears Mass, and goes to the Castle,	'Quis est magnus dominus.' Messe hé hard, and offryd þoo, ³ and thanne to the casteH did he goo, that is a place of rialte,	20
	and a paleis of grete beaute. there he hym loggid in the toune with rialH and grete renoune.	
and lodges in the city,	and the cite faste did ⁴ encrease,	24
which is soon plentifully fed.	of bredde and wyn, fische and flesshe ; and thus oure gracious liege Made an ende of his sege.	
So the siege is ended.	and alle that haue herd this redyng, [leaf 143, back] 28 To his blisse, Criste you brynge, That for vs deied vpon a tree ! Amen ! sey we alle pur charite.	

And in this yere was quene Iohna, that was Kynge Henryis 32 wiff⁵ the iiij^e, arestid be⁶ John, Duke of Bedfford, thanne Lewtenaunt of Engeland, and sent to the casteH of Ledis in kent, to abide the wille and grace of the Kynge.

¶ And in the same tyme maystur Randolf, the gray ffrere, was 36 taken in the yle of Gernesey, and was brought to the casteH of

¹ gf G. ² hym A. hym hym G. ³ offryd þoo A. offryd G.
⁴ dide faste A. ⁵ henreis wiff A. Henryis G. ⁶ by A.

Chirbourne in Normandye, for treson that she¹ wrought ayens the Kyng.

¶ And at Wittesontyde the Kyng lay at Maunte with alle his lordis; and there he hild his rialte and feste at that tyme amonge alle his pepuH. and tho was maystir Randulf the Grey ffrere, and his beaupere, brought fro the casteH of Cherborough to Maunte there the kyng lay; and from thens the² ffrere Randulf was brought to London, and put in-to the Toure in prison, by comaundement of the Kyng. And so by processe longe aftur the persone of the Toure and this ffrere Randulf fillen in debate and stryffe withynne the Toure ward; and there this persone smote this ffrere Randulf, and sloue hym; and thus he made his ende of the world.

¶ And at this same feste of Wittesontide, the Kyng made two newe lordis³ in Normandye: that on was the Capdowe of Burdeux, and he was made Erle of Langle;⁴ and Sir John Grey, Erle of Tankryule.

¶ And in the same tyme come the Embassitorys of Fraunce into Maunte, there the Kyng of Engelond lay, to haue a day of trete to the whiche trete the Kyng of Fraunce shuld come hym self and hys Quene, and Dame Katerene his doughtir, and the Duke of Burgoyne, with the othir counseile of Fraunce. And there the day and place was assignyd and take for bothe pertyes besyde this toune of Melange. And there was the feld rially apparaylid of tentis and paulyownys on bothe sidis, bothe for Engelisshe and Frensshe; and this fild was listid and palid alle rounde aboute in bothe sidis. ¶ And in the Frensshe side stode a pale dichid, for mistruste that they had of the Engelisshe pepuH,⁵ and on bothe sidis serteyne men of armys weren assyngnyd for to kepe the fild, and in the myddis of this felde stode a paulyowne rialle, with a large EguH gilte, for Kyng Henry of Engelond. ¶ And a tente stode aforne ayens it, for the Frensshe kyng. And in this paulyown and tente, by ordynaunce made, shuld no pepuH come but tho that werne sworn on bothe sidis to the Counseille, vp peyne of dethe.

¶ And on the Engelisshe partye was ffriste, Henry the King of Engelond, and Thomas his brothir, the Duke of Clarence, and Sir Vmfray, his othir brothir, Duke of Gloucestre, and Sir Thomas Beauford, Duke of Exetir, and the nobuH Erle of the Marche, and

¹ he A. ² þis A. ³ Erlis A. ⁴ langvile A.

⁵ And þe Engelish side was not but barrid A.

the Bisshop of Wynchestir, Sir Henry Beauford, the Kynges vnclē, and othir Bisshoppis, and erlis, barony and lordis, and othir clergie,¹ knyghtis and squyeris, that weren assyngnyd to the nombre of this trete. 4

¶ And on the Frensshe partye ther shuld be the Frensshe Kyngē; but he come not, for his infirmyte was come on hym, that he myght not come there at that tyme. ¶ But the Quene come, and Dame Kateryne hir doughtir, and the Duke of Burgoyne, and 8 xxvj ladyes in good aray, with othir lordis of the counseil of Fraunce. And vij dayes they tretid and they myght not accorde; and tho weren the² paulyonys and the tentis taken vp and born away, and the ffeld broken vp, and euyry man went his wey. 12

¶ And tho the Kyngē of Engelond, with alle³ his lordis and all his pepuē, turnyd ayen and come to Maunte. ¶ And thanne this Erle of Gascoigne toke his retenewe with othir Engelisshe men, and come be⁴ nyght, and stale the toune of Pounteyse of the 16 Frensshe men, and drof hem oute; and so thei fled; and so the toune was wonne; and there-ynne was myche rychesse. ¶ And whanne the Kyngē⁵ herd this, he sent his brothir Thomas, the Duke of Clarence, with his pepuē thidur to Pountese, and made 20 hym captayne there-of. And thanne he toke his pepuē and issewid oute, and come to-fore the Cite of paris with x. M^{ti}. men of armis;⁶ and there they lay two dayes and two nyghtis, and no pepuē proferid oute to hem; and tho they turnyd and went ayen to 24 Pounteyse.

¶ And thanne⁷ the Duke of Burgoyne, seyng⁸ that they myght not accorde with the Engelisshe party; tho the duke of Burgoyne and his counseile come to the Dolfyn, there he lay, to 28 trete with hym, to se and knowe how they myght beste voyde⁹ the Kyngē of Engelond with alle his pepuē oute of the Rewme of Fraunce by theyre good counseil. ¶ And thanne the Dolfyn and his counseil tho answerid and seide, “like as he had brought,¹⁰ he 32 shuld bryngē hem oute:” and so they fille in altercacion and strif with-ynne hem self; and there they sloue the Duke of Burgoyne and othir lordis that come with hym, in her counseil chambre.

¶ And whanne tydynges come to the Frensshe kyngē and to 36 his counseil, and to alle the Burgeysis of Paris, that the Duke of

¹ clergie & A. ² the A. the the G. ³ alle om. A. ⁴ by A.

⁵ leaf 144. ⁶ of armis om. A. ⁷ po A. ⁸ seyng bis A.

⁹ beste voyde A. beste G. ¹⁰ brought hem in A.

Burgoyne was thus slayne and dede, and his othir ffellowship, thanne were they sory and yveH payde, and weren tho redles, and wiste not what to don. ¶ And thanne the Frensshe kyngis counseih, 4 and the grete and worthiest Burgeysis of Parys token her counseih with aH the countre aboute Parys, and come and tretid with the Kyng of Englonde and his lordis and grauntid hem her askynge, that Henry the Kyng of Engelond shuld haue dame Kateryne the 8 Frensshe Kynges doughtir to wif, with aH his othir askyngis, and the Kyng of Engelond toke his lordis and othir of his men, and made grete puryaunce and ordynaunce that he wold haue for his maryage.

¶ And so the Kyng wente into¹ Troys in² Champeyne there 12 they shold byn weddid; and thedur was Dame Kateryne brought with grete rialte; and there they were worthiliche welcomed and resseyued of aH the pepuH there. ¶ And there the Erchebisshop of Caunturburi, Sir Henry Chichele, and othir Engelisshe Bisshoppis 16 and Frensshe Bisshoppis diden this solempne seruyce there, and weddid hem togederis there by ordynaunce of God and holy chirche, with honoure and grete ioye. And there he made a riale and a passynge worthi solempne feste to alle the pepuH that come, 20 the Monday nexte aftur the Trynyte day in the yere of his regne the vij^e.

¶ And aftur this riale and solempne weddyng, the Kyng and the Quene, with her pepuH, come doune to Rone, and there they 24 dullid a longe tyme, and in the contre aboute Roone, tiH he sawe his tyme to come in-to Engelond with Dame Kateryne the Quene, his wif; and ordeynyd, or he come oute of Normandy, Thomas his brother, the Duke of Clarence, to be his leef-tenaunte of Nor- 28 mandye, and of alle othir londis that he had in that contre of Fraunce, and lefte hym pepuH and stuffe ynow to maynteyne and kepe his right that he had goten, vnto his ayencomynge, and byraught hym to God.

¶ And tho aftur the Kyng and the Quene come to Caleys, and so ouyr the see into Engelond, and Dame Katerine his Quene with hym. And they landid at Douyre in Kente; and there come a grete multitude of men of the contre aboute, and in goode aray on hors- 36 backe, and welcomyd hem with alle honoure and reuerence that thei myght, and so brought hem to the cite of Caunturbury; and there were thei³ worthily welcomyd of alle the pepuH of alle the contre of Kent, and yoven vnto hir grete yeftis, and so come

¹ to A.

² in A. and G.

³ pay weren A.

ridyng with hem thorough Kente, and brought the Kyng and the Quene to his maner of Eltham, and there restid hem awhile tylle they wold come to London.

¶ And the meyre and aldremen, with alle the commnalte of the 4 Cite of London, lete ordeyne and make many¹ diuerse shewyngis and sightis thorough the high stretis in the Cite, with many othir presentis and yeftis, bothe² to Kyng and Quene at the comyng into the Cite. ¶ And that day that the Kyng and the Quene 8 remeuyd from the maner of Eltham, the Meyre and aldremen, and the communis of London, in good araye of white garmentis and rede hodis or rede kappis,—and euyry crafte, a dyuersite on her garnement to knowe euyry crafte be³ hym-self;—and aH on hors 12 backe, with clarionys and aH maner of⁴ lowde mynstrelsie, in honoure and comforte of the Kyng and of the Quene, and to the glorious and riaH sight of straungeris that come with hem ouyr from the see, and for the grete worship of the worthi Cite of 16 London, the Meyre and his aldremen, with the worthi pepuH of the cite, the nombre of xxx M^{ti}. men and moo, abyden and houyd on her hors on the Blake-Hethe in Kente, abydyng the Kyng and the Quenys comyng. ¶ And tho, whanne they were come, they 20 weren reseyuyd reuerently and worthyli, with alle humylite and obeysaunce of alle pepuH and men,⁵ with⁶ alle the melodye that they had, and so brought hem into the cite, and so to the Toure of London; and there the Kyng and the Quene restid hem. 24

And on the morow, aftur Quene Kateryne come fro the Toure to her coronacion to Westminster, and tho the Meyre and the⁷ aldremen and alle the Commnes of the cite,⁸ that is for to seye, euyry crafte in her beste clothyng, with alle her melodye and 28 mynstralsie, went alle on ffote tho, and brought the Quene thorough the Cite. And there was don and shewid to hir alle the rialte of sightis that myght be don to her comforte and plesaunce, and euyry strete hongid rychely⁹ with riche clothis of gold and silke, 32 and of velewettis and clothis of araas, the beste that myght be gotyn; and so the pepuH brought hir thorough the cite to Westminster, to the Kyngis paleys.

¶ And thanne the nexte day sewyng the Sunday aftur the 36 feeste of Seynt Mathy apostiH in lente, Dame Kateryne the Quene

¹ many riall A. ² leaf 144, back. ³ by A.

⁴ of oper A. ⁵ and men om. A. ⁶ & A. ⁷ and the om. A.

⁸ of the cite om. A. ⁹ richely hongid A.

was crounyd in the Abbey of Westeminster, with alle the grete and
worthi Bisshoppis of this londe, with alle the solempnite and rialte
that myght be don and ordeynyd; and the ffeste holden in the
4 paleis opyn to alle pepuH, straungeris and othir that wold come, of
alle maner rialteis of metis and drynkys.

¶ And on the efter-euyne nexte ¹⁴²¹⁻²² sewynge, Thomas, the Duke of
Clarence, tho issewid oute from the place there he lay, with a
8 lytuH meyne, to knowe and se the place and grounde where the
Dolfynnys pepuH, Armynackis and Scottis, had ordeynyd to mete
and to fight with the Engelisshe men, and to yeue bataiH. ¶ And
as the Duke of Clarence come with his folke by the watir of Leyre
12 vpon this eftur euyne aforn seide, the Erle of Armynacke with
the dolfynys meyne and his and a grete nombre of¹ Scottis
mette with the Duke of Clarence and his meyne by this watir of
Leyre; and there they foughten to-gederis; and at the laste there
16 was the Duke of Clarence slayne, and othir moo with hym; and
there was take prisoner the Erle of Huntyngdon and the Erle of
-Somersette and his brothir, and the Fytz-Watir, and othir moo.

¶ And aftur, the Bastard of Clarence come and gate his ffaderis
20 body, and did so brynge it into Engeland, and so to the abbey of
Criste-chirche of Caunturbury, and was there enterid and buried
-besides Kyng [Henry] the iiiij^e: his ffadir, on whos soule oure
Lord God haue mercy! Amen!

24 ¶ And also in the same yere, betwene Cristemesse and Candil-
masse, the toune of Milon was yolden to the Kyng; and all the
cheueteynys, with the soudiourys, were taken, and led to the Cite
-of Paris in the croke of the mone, theymyght sey; for of hem ther
28 scapid thens but a fewe on lyue. And sone aftur, Kyng Henry
the vj. was born in the castell of Wyndesore, the day of seynt Ni-
cholas the Bisshop, the yere of oure Lord Ihesu Criste .Mth. cccc. xxj.,
whos godfaderis and godmodris at the fontstone weren these: sir
32 Henry Beauford, Bisshop of Wynchestir, and Iohn, Duke of Bed-
ford; and the Duchesse of Holond was his godmodir; and at² his
-confirmacion the Erchebisshop of Caunterbury was his god ffadir.//

How whanne Kyng Henry herd of his brotheris dethe, Thomas,
36 the Duke ³ of Clarence, ordeynyd a newe retenewe, and
wente ouyr the see in grete haste, & leid sege to Mewis in
Bry, with his pepuH.//

¹ of meyne G. of A. ² and G. and at A. ³ leaf 145.

And in the vj. yere of Kynge Henryes regne the v÷, come tydyngis in-to Engeland how that Thomas his brothir, the Duke of Clarence, was sleyne by the watir of Leyre, wherefore the Kynge was heuy and wrothe; and in aH the haste that he myght, he ordeynyd hym a newe retenewe of men of armys and archeris, with alle maner of othir stuffis that bylongid therto at aH maner nedis, and went ouyr the se with his pepuH, and come into Fraunce, and bysegid Mewis in Bry, a grete toune and a stronge, with a 8 Castelle. And that Towne and the Castelle weren welle vitailid and eke mannyd; and grete strengthe they had with-ynne hem, and manly they deffendid hem, and kep[t]e Towne and CasteH longe tyme.¹ 12

¶ And in this tyme, while the Kynge hild his sege of Mewis yn Bry, ther come goode tydyngis oute of Engeland to the Kynge, how that Dame Kateryne his wif, the Quene, was dellyuyryd of a feyre sone, a lord and prynce, to² the Rewme ese, profite and worship, 16 and gladnesse in hert, whiche with high³ and grete worthynesse⁴ was brought forthe, and cristenyd in his colage withynne his Castelle of Wyndesore. And of this worthi tydyngis the Kynge was glad, and thankyd God, and so diden alle his pepuH whanne 20 they herd there-of: and that day of this worthi pryncis birthe was on Seynt Nycholas day in the yere of oure Lord God⁵ .M^{ti}. CCCC. xxj. and the Regne of the Kynge the ix^e. ¶ And aftur these good tydyngis, the Kynge, with alle his pepuH, busied sore 24 to gete this towne and CasteH, bothe by watir and by londe and leid therto his grete Gounnys, Trepgettis and Engenys, and bete adowne the wallis in dyuers placis; and so at the laste they entrid yn with strengthe, and gate the Towne; and there was 28 moche pepuH slayne and dede; and tho was the toune wonne and the casteH eke.// ¶ And there the Kynge toke many riche men prysoneris, and sent hem afturward into Engeland.

¶ And thanne the Kynge sent aftur the Quene, and aftur IoHn 32 his brothir, the Duke of Bedford, and that they shuld brynge with hem more stuffe of pepuH in all haste. And anon as these⁶ tydyngis come to, the Quene Kateryne went to Hampton, and the Duke of Bedford also, with a feyre meyne, and wente to Shippe, and come 36 ouyr the se, and landid at Hareflete in Normandye the vij. day of

¹ tyme for all her enemyes A.² to all A.³ hert whiche and with high G. hert with high A.⁴ worthynesse & solempnyte A.⁵ God om. A.⁶ these om. A.

May in saufte, and alle her pepuH,—thankyd be God!—and in alle haste reden forthe vp in the londe till thei come there as the Kyng was.// ¶ And sir Vmfrey, the Duke of Gloucestre, his othir 4 brothir, was tho made the Kyngis Lefetenaunte of Engeland in his absence, to kepe and gouerne the Rewme in alle degreis, in saufyng of the pepuH and of the lond, that God maynten and kepe in good pees and reste, with good loue and charite to endure! 8 Amen! //

¶ And in the lettur ende of the monythe of AprieH, in the .x. yere of Kyng Henry the V. is regne, was the toune and casteH of Mewis in Biri gotyn and wonne by¹ grete strengthe, by the Kyng 12 and his pepuH, oute of the Frensshe mennys hondis. ¶ And in the firste day of IuyH the same yere, the Kyng sent ouyr the see his prisoneris that he had take at Mewis in Bry, the ffuH nombre of xxviij. personys; and they weren brought in-to Engeland, and 16 londid at Hampton; and aH his prisoneris weren caryed in cartis to London, and so brought into the Toure of London, to kepe hem there-ynne saufly.//

¶ And tho anon the Kyng remouyd from Mewis in Bry, and 20 come ayen to Parys. And with ynne awhile aftur, the Kyng beganne to waxe sore sike, and tho remouyd hym to² haue the betir Eyre and hele of body; and his sykenesse come to hym so sore pat³ he myght not welle endure it. ¶ And so he sent aftur his lordis 24 that weren there, and his counsaiH, and deuysid his wille, and made his testament fuH, and sette his executoris, and deuysid his tresoure and his Iewellis to ben solde, and to pay⁴ hīs dettis, as well to his sowdyouris as to othir dettouris.//⁵ ¶ And he ordeynyd 28 Iohn, the Duke of Beedford, his brothir, to byn there Regent Gouernoure of Fraunce and of Normandie, vnto good gouernaunce and profite vnto Henry his⁶ sone, and good kepyng in reste and pees of his pepuH there, vnto the tyme the good Counseih of Enge- 32 lond myght dresse it and amende it, to set it in pessabuH poynte and reste.// ¶ And he comyttid thanne⁷ the kepyng of Henry, his yonge sone, to Syr Henry Beauford his vncl, the Bisshop of Wynchestire, and to Sir Thomas Beauford, his othir vncl, Duke 36 of Exetre, and⁸ charged hem bothe to his good gouernaunce and

¹ with A. ² forto A. ³ hym sore G. him so sore pat A.

⁴ to ben and to pay G. to ben solde to pais A. ⁵ leaf 145, back.

⁶ his yong A. ⁷ And þane he comyttid A.

⁸ & charged hem bothe to hie gouernaunce and kepyng A.

kepyng in his tendir age, for alle the louys that euyr were betwene hem, that no preiudise nor wronge were do to hym thorough noo fals couetous counseiH nor nede.// ¶ And tho the Kyng disposid hym to Godwardis, and toke aH his rightis of holy 4 chirche, and toke his leue of aH his ffre[n]dis, and comendid his soule to God, and deid, the xxix¹ of Auguste in the x. yere of his regne: on whos soule God haue mercy! amen!//

¶ And thanne was his body enbawmyd and dight with riche 8 Spicerie and oynementis, and closid in shire clothe, and closid faste in a cheste; and he was cariid doune to Rone, and there he had his dirige and his messes don for hym, with aH the moste solempnite that myght byn ordeynyd and doon in holy chirche; and from 12 thens he was brought doune by londe to Caleis. And with the Erchebisshop of Caunturbury² come the Quene of Engeland his wif, Dame Kateryne, and many othir grete lordis, and knyghtis and Squyeris, and brought the body ouyr the see into Engeland, 16 and come vp at Douir, and so to Caunturbury, and so thorough Kente to London.//

¶ And thanne³ the Meyre and aldremen, with aH the Craftis of London, weren clothid in blacke, abydyng the body of the kyng 20 on the Blacke-Hethe in Kente; and so come doune to seint Thomas Waterynge, withoute⁴ Soughwarke, and there met aH the religious pepuH with þe⁵ body, prystis and othir, and brought the cors to London, and so thorough the Cite to Seint Poulis. And there was 24 Dirige don ouyr euyr, and messe of Requyem on the morowe, and whanne the seruyce was doun at aftur mete, bothe the lordis and knyghtis and othir, with aH the Commnes of the Cite of London, brought hym from Seint Poulis to Westminster, and there was his 28 Dirige don ouyr euyr, and messe on the moroughe of Requyem,⁶ with aH the Bisshoppis; and there was he burye[d] by Seint Edwardis Shryne, the .viij^c day of the monythe of Nouembre, in the yere of oure Lorde Ihesu criste, Mⁱ. CCCC. xxij.// 32

¶ And yn that same yere it byfeH so that thoroughoute aH Engeland was a grete yere of ffrute. And in that same yere deiden the moste partye of alle the lory treis thorough aH Engeland.//

¹ xxix day A. ² with his herce A. ³ thanne *om.* A.

⁴ withoute *withoute* A. ⁵ the þe G.

⁶ messe of Requiem on þe morowe A.

How aftur the dethe of Kynge Henry the v^e, Regnyd his sone
Kynge Henry the vj^e, and was borne at the Casteñ of
Wyndesore.//

4 **A**Nd aftur the dethe of Kynge Henry the v ÷, Regnyd Henry
his sone, that was¹ borne in Wyndesore, that men callid
Kynge Henry the vj^e. And for his tendir and yonge age, Henry
his ffadir comyttid hym to the keypyng of Sir Henry Beauford,
8 Bisshop of Wynchestre, and to Sir Thomas Beauford, Duke of
Exetre, bothe his bele vnclys; and the keypyng of Fraunce and
Normandie to Iohn the Duke of Bedford, to ben regent and
gouvernoure of bothe there, till that Henry, his yonge sone, by
12 his good counseile wold set it in bettur gouernaunce.// ¶ And
the kepyng of Engelond to sir Vmfray, the Duke of Gloucestre,
to ben Proptectour and deffendour of the Rewme till that Henry
his yonge sone, by alle the good counseile of Engelond, wold set
16 and put it² into bettur gouernaunce, and to moste profite of³ the
Kynge and of the Rewme.

¶ And in the seconde yere of Kynge Henry the vj ÷ Sir
Iohn Mortymere, knyght, brake pryson oute of the Toure of
20 London, and was take ayen vpon the Toure-wharf; and there he
was foule woundid and bete, and brought on the morow to
Westeminstre byforn the Kyngis Iusticis; and there for his treson
Iuggid⁴ to byn brought ayen to the Toure of London, and there
24 leide vpon an⁵ hurduñ, and so drawe thoroughe the Cite to
Tibourne, and there⁶ hongid, and his hed smeton of, and sette
on London Brigge; and thus endid he his lif: on whos soule
God haue merci! //

28 ¶ And in the iij^e yere of Kynge Henrys Regne, Sir Edmonde
Mortymere, Erle of the Marche, wente oute of Engelond into
Wallis, and so ouyr into Irlond, to se his londis and lordshippis
there, And anon withynne a lituñ processe of tyme there, he deid
32 in Irlond.

And also in the same yere Vmfrey, the Duke of Gloucestre,
the Kyngis vncle, and the Duches of Holond, his wif, went ouer
the see oute of Engelond into Henaud, for to take there possession
36 of his wifis heritage of lordshippis and londis. ¶ Wherefore⁷
thei were worshipfully welcomyd and resseyuyd for chief lorde

¹ that was om. A. ² put G. put it A. ³ to G. of A.
⁴ Iuggid to þe deth A. ⁵ and G. ⁶ leaf 146. ⁷ where A.

and lady of the lond. But not longe aftur, hit happid so that he was fayne to retourne ayen into Engeland, and lefte his lady byhynd hym, with aH the tresoure that he¹ brought oute of Engeland with hym, in a toune that me callid Mouns in Heuland, 4 the whiche was sworn to hym to be goode and trewe, and to kepe this lady in sauf ward till he come ayen to here. But at the laste thei weren fals, for thei delyuyryd the lady to the Duke of Burgoyne; and he sent hir² to the cite of Gaunte yn Flaunderis, 8 to be kepte there.// ¶ But, as God wold, in a shorte tyme aftur she ascaped thens in mannys clothyng, and come to a toune of her owne in Selande, that is callid Seryse, and fro thens she went to a toune of her owne in Holand, that is callid Tragowe, where, 12 with help of her ffryndis that there were, she withstode the Duke of Burgoyne and alle his malice.//

¶ And in the iiij^e yere of Kynge Henryis regne the vj^e, there aros a grete debate³ betwene Sir Vmfrey, the Duke of Gloucestre, 16 and Sir Henry Beauford, Bisshop of Wynchestir; and this Henry⁴ bare tho heuy herte ayens the pepuH of the Cite of⁵ London; And pis debate bygan on þe day of þe Meyris tidynge of London,⁵ whanne thei come to Westminster paleis; and the Meyre of London 20 that tyme me callid Iohn Couentre, mercer. And on the nexte morow folowyng, the Bisshop of Wynchestre hadde gaderyd a grete pepull in Soughthewerke, of men of armys and archeris; and they of the Cite kept tho strongly London Brygge-gate with men of 24 armys [&] archeris, that no man myght⁶ in, nothir oute, for to kepe the pees in bothe partyes. ¶ And anon, vpon viij. of the klokke in the mornynge, alle the Cite was vp with her wepyn, and shette in her howsis, and drewe hem downward to Temyse- 28 side, and wold haue apassid ouyr the watir, forto haue taken the Bisshop. ¶ But the Erchebisshop of Caunturbury, Sir Henry Chichele, and the Bisshop of Bathe, Sir Iohn of Stafford, and the Prynce of Portyngale—that in the same tyme were in the Cite of 32 London—went betwene hem and the Cite, that aH was cessed and set in reste by none;⁷ blessid be⁸ God! //

¶ And in the same yere, the .x. day next aftur that Iohn the Duke of Bedford, and his lady, his wiff, that was the Dukis 36

¹ he þo A. ² hir þo A. ³ debate & dissencion A.

⁴ this sir henry A.

⁵⁻⁵ London A. And pis debate bygan on the day of þe Meyris tidynge of London A. om. G.

⁶ myght nor A. ⁷ noone y A. ⁸ by G. be A.

sustur of Burgoyne, come out of Fraunce ouyr the see into Engeland, to here and to¹ se the welfare of oure Kynge, and to se also the gouernaunce of this Rewme. and whanne he come
4 nygh London, the Meyre and Aldremen, and many crafty men of the Cite, riden ayens the Duke and the Duchesse, and welcomyd hem, and brought hem into the Cite. ¶ And at the Bisshoppis place of Dereham, there thei were herborowid; and with hem
8 tho come the Bisshop of Wynchestre ridynge thorough London, to right grete greuance of the pepuH, saue for the displesaunce and presence of the Duke.

¶ And in the .v. yere of Kynge Henry the vj^e., anon aftur
12 the Feste of Seint Hillary, the Kynge held his parlement at the toune of Leycestre. And at that parlement Sir Vmfray, the Duke of Gloucestre, and Sir Henry Beauford, Bisshop of Wynchestre, weren² made at on, and accordid, by the Kynge and the Duke
16 of Bedford, and othir lordis that weren there presente.// ¶ And in that same parlement the kynge made two Dukis: my Lord Sir Richardis³ sone of Caumbrigge, Duke of Yorke, and Sir Iohn⁴ of Mombray, Erle MarchaH, Duke of Northeffolke, and there the
20 kynge made also many knyghtis of the Bathe.

¶ And in this same yere deid Sir Thomas Beauford, Duke of Exetur, the kyngis beH vncke, in a place there he lay in the toune
of Grenewiche, iiij. myle oute of London; and thanne he was
24 brought into London to Seint Poulis, and there he had Dirige and messe; and from thens thei caried hym to Seint Edmondisbury; and there he was worthili enterid and buryid in Cristemesse woke
in the yere of oure Lord Ihesu criste, M^{ti}. CCCC. xxvj: on whos
28 soule God haue mercy! amen! //

¶ And in the same yere, aboute Shroftide, Iohn, the Duke of Bedford, and his lady the Duchesse, passid ouyr the [see] to Caleis. And a lituH byforne [they] passid ouyr the see to Caleis,
32 Henry the Bisshop of Winchestre, and vpon oure lady day⁵ the Anunciacion, the yere of Grace M^{ti}. CCCC. xxvij, the Bisshop of Wynchestre was made CardynaH in Seint Marye Chirche in Caleis fuH solempnely; where weren the same tyme the Duke of
36 Bedford, Regent of Fraunce, and his duchesse.// ¶ And byforne the messe was bygonne, whiche the Bisshop of Wynchestre shold do, tho the Popis cosyn brought the Cardynallis hatte, and with

¹ to *om.* A. ² wer þen A. ³ Richard þe Erlis A.

⁴ leaf 146, *back.* ⁵ lady G. lady day A.

grete reuerence he set it vpon the high auter, and there it stode
 aH the messe tyme.// ¶ And whanne the Bisshop had don his¹
 messe and wa[s] onreuersid, thanne was don on the Bisshop an
 abbite in maner of a fferis Cope of fyne Scarlet furrid with purid 4
 werke; and whanne he was thus arayid, he knelid there vpon his
 kneys befor the high auter; and there the Popis bullis weren
 radde to hym.// ¶ And the firste buH was his charge of his
 dyngnyte of Cardynalship; and the seconde buH was that he 8
 shuld haue the reioysynge of alle the Benefisis *Spirituall* and
TemperaH that he hathe in Engelond. And whanne this was don,
 the Duke of Bedford, Regent of Fraunce, went vp to the high
 auter, and toke the high Cardinallis hatte, and set it vpon the 12
 Bisshoppis hed of Wynchestre; and he bowid and obeyid the
 Bisshop, and toke hym byfore hym.

¶ And in the vj. yere of Kynge Henryis Regne the vj.^o, went
 the Erle of Salusbury, with a grete retenewe of men of armys and 16
 archeris, by comaundement of the Kynge and of alle the Counseile
 of Engelond, & made hym the Leftenaunt or alle the partyes of
 Fraunce and of Normandye, forto distroye the Kynge's enemyes,
 and to chastice the rebellis in the² pertyes by his strengthe, myght 20
 and power.// ¶ And so he depertid, and toke his leue oute of
 London, with aH his pepuH and ordynauncis, the morow aftur
 Mydsomyr Day, in the yere aboue seid, and come ouyr the see
 with alle his pepuH in sauft; thankid be God in aH his yeftis! 24
 and anon as he was come into Fraunce, he set sore on the Frensshe
 men that weren the kyngis Enemyes, and slowe and destroyid
 many of hem, and toke vilagis, Tounys and castelles, and made
 hem be suoren to the Kynge of Engelond. And afturward he 28
 leid sege to the toune of Orlyauce; and that sege endurid longe
 tyme, for the toune of Orliaunce was so stronge, and well ymannyd
 and vitailid, that it myght not be goten for no crafte of werre that
 was don therto; where[of] he was wond[er] heuy and wroth, for 32
 he myght note speede of his purpos.// ¶ And tho at the³ laste, as
 he was busi to sete and loke vpon his ordynauncis, forto gete it
 yf he myght, a fals thef, a traitour withynne the toune, shotte a
 —Gonne, and the stone smot this good Erle of Salusbury, that he was 36
 dede thorough the stroke; wherefore was made grete doole⁴ and
 sorow for his dethe longe tyme afturward, for the grete doughtynesse

¹ pe A.² po A.³ the om. A.⁴ grete G. grete doole A.

and manhode that was founde in hym, and in his gouernaunce at aH tymes. And thanne was his body¹ brought ouyr the see into Engeland, and his body was caryid and leid amonge his 4 aunseteris there as thei byn buryid of holde tyme: on whos soule oure God² haue mercy! Amen!

¶ And also in this same yere fro the begynnyng of the monythe of AppryeH into the feste of AH-Haloue, was so grete 8 haboundance of Reyne, where-thorough not only heigh was destroyed, but also aH maner of cornys, for it reynyd almoste euyry othir day, mo³re or lesse, duryng the tyme aforeseid.

¶ And forthirmore, duryng the sege of Orliaunce, at the 12 begynnyng of Lenton nexte ffolowyng, vij. Mth. of Frensshe men and moo, with many othir Scottis, fiH vpon oure men as they went toward the Toune with vitaiH that is callid 'yamuyle,' where Sir John Steward of Scotlond and his brothir, with moo thanne 16 vij. c. Scottis and they weren gouernouris they lighten on ffoote, and they weren, euyry modir sone, slayne by Sir John Folstalff and Sir Thomas Rampston, and othir Capitaynys of oure side, the whiche had not passyng .v. c. of ffightyng men with hem at aH, 20 with Carteris and aH othir.// ¶ But Charlis of Burgoyne and the Bastard of Orliaunce, with aH the Frensshe men sittyng on hors backe and seyng this Gouvernaunce, trussid hir packe and went her wey. Also a lituH beforne Witsontide nexte folowyng, was 24 the foreseide sege of Orliaunce broken vp by the Duke of Laansom and his power; and alle othir lordis and Capitaynys of the same sege weren disparkelid, that is so seye, the Erle of Suffolke and his brothir, and the Lord Talbot and the Lord Skalis, with many 28 moo of Engelisshe pepuH, the whiche sone afture weren taken euyrychone, at grete myschief, prysoneres.

¶ And in the vij. yere of Kynge Henry the vj^e the viij day of Nouembre, the Duke of Norfolke, with many gentiH men of 32 knyghtis and Squyeris and yemen, token a barge at Seint Mari Ouereyis Brygge, bitwene iiij. and .v. of the klokke ayens nyght; and they purposid tho to passe thorough London Brigge, where the foreseide barge, thorough mysgouernaunce of sterage, fiH vpon 36 the pilis thorough mysgouernaunce, and ouyrwelfid, the whiche was cause of distruccion of moche pepuH thereynne, that was the more rowthe.// ¶ But as God wold, the Duke hym-self, and .ij.

¹ body y A.² oure lord A.³ leaf 147.

or .iiij. othir gentiH men, tho seyyng that myschief, lept vpon the pilis, and so thei weren sauyd thorough help of hem that weren aboute the brygge, wyth castynge doune of ropis, blessid be God!

¶ And in this same yere, the firste day of the monith of 4 Septembre, Sir Henry Beauford, Bisshop of Wynchestre and beH-vncle to the Kyng, come to London fro the Pope of Rome. CardynaHes, and alle the prestis and religious of¹ London, and ney³ London, went ayens hym yn prosession withoute the Cite, 8 and there they met with hym, and did hym aH the² honour and reuerence as longith for³ siche estate to ben don.// ¶ And the Meyre and Aldremen, with many worthi craftis of London, met with hym on the Blake-Hethe in Kent; and there thei welcomyd 12 hym, and did hym reuerence and worship, and brought hym porugh þe Cite,⁴ and so to Charinge Crosse and there the Meyre and the men of London toke her leue of hym, and he rode forthe to the casteH of Wyndesore to the Kyng. 16

¶ And in the same yere, at the ffeste of Mydsomyr, Sir Henry Beauford, CardynaH, and Bisshop of Wynchestir, went⁵ ouyr the see into Fraunce for the Kyngis nedis; and Sir John Radclif, knyght, went ouyr the se that same tyme, with a grete compeny of 20 men of armis and archeris, to helpe and to strengthe John, the Duke of Bedford and Regent of Fraunce and of Normandie, and the Engelisshe pepuH that weren lefte there in the right of the Kyng of Engeland. 24

¶ And in the⁶ same yere was Henry Barton, Meyre of London. And tho was, thoroughoute Engeland, grete scarste of corne and of othir vitaiH, for oxen and shipe, deiden stronglyche, and a bussheH whete was at xx d^o. longe tyme: blessid be God in 28 alle his yeftis of amendement!

¶ And in the viij yere of Kyng Henryis regne the vj^e; was hold a grete parlement at Westeminster; and that beganne the morow aftur Michelmesse-Day, and it endurid tille Shroftid. And 32 on Seint Lethenardis day byforn Cristemesse, and that was on the —Sunday (and Sunday went by lettur A. that yere,) the Kyng was crownyd at Westeminster, with honoure, of Henry Chichele, Erchebisshop of Caunturbury, and with moo othir Bisshoppis, with 36 alle the solempnite that myght be made and doon. ¶ And in⁷ the

¹ in A. ² the om. A. ³ to A.

⁴ hym G. hym porugh þe Cite A. ⁵ om. G. went A.

⁶ bis A. ⁷ in om. A.

same day, come fro byyonde the see to his coronacion and feste, Sir Henry Beauford, CardynaH, and Bisshop of Winchestre, ¹ and the Prynce of Portyngale with a feyre meyne of pepuH, in reuerence 4 and worship of the Kyng; and byforne that weren come and abedyn at London a bisshop of Fraunce, and serteyn knyghtis and squyeris with her meyne, to se that rialte, and the Coronacions of the kyng. ² And the even bifore þe coronacion, þe kyng² lete 8 make xxxvj. Knyghtis of the Bathe, withynne the Toure of London. ¶ And in the same [time] in ³ Cristemesse wike, bi ordynaunce and comaundement of the Kyng and of his CounseH, the Bastard of Clarence and Sir Iohn Kyzelei, knyght, and moo 12 oper knyghtis and squyeris þat were made peti capteynes, with men of armes ande archeris, the nombre of a M^{ti} personys and moo, shippiden at dyuerse portes in Kente and in Southesex, and seilid ouyr into Normandie forto helpe and strengthe the Duke of 16 Bedford, Regent of Fraunce and of Normandie, and in releuyng and comforyng of aH the Kynges pepull that haue eny keypyng of Ceteis, townys, Castelles, or eny holdis tha[t] bilongen to the Kyng in the parties of Fraunce and of ⁴ Normandie: the whiche, 20 Criste maynteyne and kepe, for his high mercy!

¶ And in this same yere was a ⁵ bataiH doon in Smythffeld, at London, the Tewisday the xxiiij. day of Januare, betwene two men of the toune of Feuyrisham in Kente: that on me callid maistir 24 John Vpton, notarye, that was the appellaunte; and that othir, John of Downe, JentiHman, the defiendaunte. And thei two ffoughten togederis, armyd at aH poyntis, to the vtterist; but the Kyng, of his rialH power and grete grace, kryid 'pees,' and toke it 28 vp in his hand, and yaf hem bothe fre grace: and this was the cause of her bataiH, for this Maistur John Vpton put-of ⁶ on John of ⁷ Downe, that he and othir moo of his compeny ymagenid and purposid the Kyngis dethe at the day and tyme of his coronacion: 32 whom God kept and saue from aH mysauenturis. Amen!

¶ And in the same yere, the xxvij. day of Januare, Sir Henry Beauford, CardinaH, and Bisshop of Wynchestre, went ouyr the see to Caleis, and so to Bryggis in Flaundris, in embassitrie for 36 Henry, Kyng of Engelond and of Fraunce, vnto the Duke of Burgoyne, and also to se the mariage betwene the Duke of

¹ leaf 147, back.

²⁻² And the even bifore þe coronacion þe kyng A. om. G. ³ in þe A.

⁴ for G. of A. ⁵ a ki G. a A. ⁶ of om. A. ⁷ o A.

Burgoyne and the Kyng of Portyngalis doughtir, that is cosyn to the Kyng of Engelond.

¶ And in the same yere and day, Thomas of Borough, and Gray, two esquieris, by ordynaunce and comaundement of the 4 Kyng and of his Counseih, had a grete retenewe of pepuH, of men of armys and archeris, that weren sent ouyr the see into Fraunce, to the Duke of Bedford, Regent and Gouvernoure of the parties of Fraunce and Normundie, in releuyng and helpynge and strength-8 ing of the Kyngis pepuH in oure liege lordis right, Kyng¹ of² Engelond and of Fraunce.

¶ How that Kyng Henry the vj^e went ouyr the see into Fraunce, the viij yere of his regne; and of the whiche 12 [of] Fraunce that was callid the 'Pushed': how she was take prysonere.

And in the viij. yere of Kyng³ [Henry the sixt] his Regne, on Seint Mathi day the ApostuH, and that was on the Fryday, the 16 xxiiij. day of Feuyrere in the yere aboue seid, Kyng Henry the vj^e, aftur his coronacion at Westemⁱⁿster, and ende of his parlement holden the same tyme at Westemⁱⁿster, that the Kyng, by counseih and ordynaunce of aH the lordis and commu[n]es of Engelond, that 20 the Kyng shuld wende ouyr the see into Fraunce, to resseyue⁴ his heritage, and bere the Crowne as rightfuH lord and kyng of the londe.// ¶ And the Kyng, by his good and wise counseih, ordeynyd and made his vncler Sir Vmfrey, the Duke of Gloucestre, 24 Leftenaunte of Engelond aftur his passage ouyr the see, for to gouerne and kepe the londe ayen his enemyes of aH partyis, and to se that right and lawe be mayntenyd in alle degreis, in sauacion of his pepuH and good kepyng of his Rewme. 28

¶ And on Seint Mathi day the⁵ AppostiH, as is aforne seide, the Kyng come fro Westemⁱⁿster to London, with his lordis and his pepuH, and come to Seint Poulis, and there offrid, and toke his hors, and rode thourgh the Cite, and toke his leue of aH the 32 Commualte of London; and so he rode to his maner of Eltham in Kente, and there he duellid alle the Lenton tiH it was ayens Palme Sunday, and thanne he rode to Caunturbury, and abode there tiller estur was passid, tiH his retenewe was made and ordeynyd, that 36 shuld gon and passe ouyr the see with hym into Fraunce.

¹ kyng om. A. ² & A. ³ kyng om. A. ⁴ resseyue & A.

⁵ the om. A. ⁶ leaf 148.

¶ And thann the Kynge come to Douyre, and on Seint Georges
euyne, withynne nyght, the wethur and wynde was feyre and
menabuH, and the Kynge was brought to ship withoute Douyre in
4 the roode.// ¶ And whanne tyde of passage come, thei toke the
see, and passid ouyr, and come to Caleis, and landid there in the
mornynge at vij. of the clocke in Seint Georgis Day; and that was
on the Sunday; and the domynycal lettur went¹ by . A.// ¶ And
8 whanne he was landid, the Kynge went to the Castell of Caleis;
and there he abode till he aH his retenewe and ordynaunce were come
ouyr the see. And withynn iij. wikis aftur Estur aforne seid, aH
his pepuH, with alle his² ordynauncis, weren come ouyr to the
12 Kynge.// ¶ And the Kynge anon aftur, bi his CounseilH, sent
dyuerse lordis,³ knyghtis and capitainys, with her men of armys
and archeris and ordynauncis, to dyuers tounys, Castells and
Garnysonys of his in Fraunce and in Normandie, for kepyng and
16 strengthynge of his liege pepuH, and kepyng of his tituH and
right.

¶ And in the same yere, the xv. day of May, ther was made a
Journey in Fraunce bisidis the toune of Compyne; and at that
20 Journey were slayn of the Frensshe men, Armynakkis and Scottis
the nombre of .viij. c. of good mennys bodyes; and there were take
also of the⁴ Frensshe⁵ and of her compeny, many Cote armuris.
And at that same Journey was take the wicche of Fraunce that was
24 callid th[e] 'PussheH'; and she was take alle armyd as a man of
armys; and by her⁶ crafte of sorserie alle the Frensshe men and
her compeny trystid for to haue ouyrcome alle the Engelisshe
pepuH. But God was lord and maistir of that victorie and
28 scomfiture, and so she was take, and brought and kept in hold bi
the Kynge and his counseilH aH tymes at his comaundement and
wille.

¶ And at that Journey, of Englysshe men weren Capitaynys, Sir
32 John Monuntegomere and Sir John Steward, knyghtis of the
Kynge's houshold, with her retenewe. ¶ And there was Sir John
Mountegomere smyte his arme vn two; and Sir John Steward was
shotte unto the thye with a quareH, and yet God sent hem good
36 hele and welfare, and Scomfiture of aH her enemyes: blessid be
God!

¹ wente þat tyme A. ² þe A. ³ dyuerse G. diuerse lordis A.

⁴ þese A. ⁵ ffrensshe men A. ⁶ her & by hire A.

APPENDIX D.

ADDITIONAL MATTER FOR THE PERIOD 1420-28.

[MS. Hh. 6. 9, University Library, Cambridge.]

And þis was doon þe Monday next aftir the Trinity Sondag, In the yere of grace M^l IIII^e XX^{ti}. And anone aftir this mariage was done, the Kyng hym-self [Henry V], with his English lordes and Retenue, And þe Duke of Burgoigne with many grete lordes 4 of Fraunce, with his strength and gouernance of people, leyde sege to dyuers Citees townes & castelles which wer' holden of the Dolphynne, with strength of his meyney, And of the Armenakkis and Scottis. And the Kyng with his people gat theme, and had the 8 victorie of his enemyes.

And in this same yere, And in þe yere of grace a M^l IIII^e XX^{ti}, by-twene Cristemesse and Candilmasse, the Towne of Milloyne was yolden vp to the Kynge; And all þe Chiftains, with þe Souldeours, 12 were take and ledde to þe Cite of Parys, 'in þe Croke of þe mone' þei may say for theme; ffor þer escapede fro thens of þeme but a fewe on lyue, for þei of Paris did theme to dethe.

Willelmus Cambrigge,	}	Johannes Wellis,	} vic' VIII ^e [A.D.	16
M[ayor]		Johannes Botiller,		
		draper		

And in þis same yere [1 Hen. VI] þe Wednysday, þe XXI day of Octobre, in þe first yere of Kyng Henry þe VI, at þe houre 20 betwene VI & VII in þe mornyng, died Charles, þe French Kynge, In his Inne of saint Paules with-Inne þe Cite of Paris, And is buried in þe chirche of Saint Denyse withoute þe cite of Paris: On whos soule, God haue mercie! Amen! 24

And in þis same yere, in þe moneth of Februarie, James Steward, Kyng of Scottes, spoused Dame Joan, the Duchesse Doughter of Clarence, of hir first housbond, Erl of Somersette, in þe churche of Saint Marie Overey in Suthwerk. 28

And in þis same yere, Maister William Tailour, clerk of Oxenforde, was a-fore the clergie at Saint Paules in London, And þer

he was convicte in heresie; and aftir, by Temporall lawe he was brought into Smythfelde, & there was he brent for his heresie.

And in pis same yere, pe XVII day of Auguste, was done the
 4 bataill of Vernoun in Perche, betwene the Duk of Bedforde, pan
 Regent of Fraunce, & pe Armenakkis *with* Scottes; but, thanked
 be God! the victorie fell to pe Englishmen, for *per* were slain of our
 aduersaries the Erle of Bougham, pe Erle Douglas, pe Erle of Morre,
 8 pe Erle of Tonnare, pe Erle of Vendoun, the Vicounte of Narbone
 (*pat* traiterously slough the Duke of Burgoine knelyng be-fore the
 Dolphyn of Fraunce at pe towne of Monstrall,) & mony moo, pe
 nombre of X M^l moo. But pe moste vengeance fell vpon pe
 12 proude Scottes, for thei went to Dog-wash the same day, mo than
 XVII^c of cote Armoures of these proude Scottes; So that they
 may say wele "In the croke of pe mone went thei thidre warde,
 And in the wilde wanyende come pei homewarde."

16 William Crownes, M[ayor] Nicholas James A^o II. [A.D.
 Thomas Wandefford 1423-4.]

And in this same tyme the Kynge [Hen. VI], of two Erles
 made two Dukes: pe Erle of Cambrige he made the Duke of
 20 Yorke, & pe Erle Marshall Henaud, pe Duke of Northefolke.

And in pis same yere was Shedeswik draw and hangede &
 quartered at Tiborne, & his hede smyten of & sett vpon London
 Brigge, & his quartires vnto dyuers yatis of London, for his treason.

24 And whilles pe Duke of Bedforde was here in Englande, pe Erle
 of Warrewik was made Lieutenant of Fraunce & Normandye, for
 to kepe & garde both in werre and peace vn-to pe comyng of pe
 Duke of Bedforde again oute of England in-to Fraunce.

28 Johannes Reynowell, Robertus Arnold A^o V^{to}. [A.D.
 M[ayor] Johannes Hyngham. 1426-7.]

And pe Duke of Bedforde & pe Duchesse his wife went vp to
 Paris, And so to other dyuers partees of Fraunce *per* as hym list
 32 best to abide; And pan pe Erle of Warrewik come In-to Englande—
 again.

**Off the takyng off Will Wawe; And how he was done to
 dethe.**

36 And in this same yere was WiH Wawe take for an [a]rannt
 peef, and was brought to London to pe Kynges Bench, & so
 brought to Westmyenster a-fore pe kynges Justices, & *per* Jugede to

pe dethe. And so he was brought again from Westmyenster to Suthwerk, & *pen* he was put in a carte, stanndyng, & faste bounde; & so he was cariede thurgh pe Cite to Tiborne, that all men myght see hym & knowe hym, And so he was caried the thirde day of 4 Juyll, And there hangede for his trespass.

Johannes Gedney M[ayor] Robertus Oteley vic' A° VI.
Henricus Frowik [A.D. 1427-8.]

**How that there fill grete habundaunce off Rayn; And how 8
dyuers sowdiourz went ouer the see.**

And in this same yere, & in pe yere of *grace* Mⁱ IIII^o XXVII, from pe begynnyng of pe moneth of Aprile vnto the feste of All Halowen, was so abundaunce of Rayn that, not only hay was 12 distroied, but Also all maner of Cornes; for it Raynede all-moste euery day, more or lesse, duryng this terme a-for-said.

And anone aftir, as pe Erle of Warrewik, *ser* Thomas Beauchampe, was sennd oute of Fraunce from pe Duke of Bedforde 16 by all the worthy & discrete counsaill of Englande, he was made maister & gouernoure vn-to the Kyng duryng his non-age, & hym to goueren, teche & norish, as oweth to be done to such a worthy prince, to his lernyng of all maner worthynesse to good gouernance, 20 discretion and reason.

And in pis same yere, an old man, a girdeler of Norwiche, which counterfetede the Kynges grete seale, And escaled charters & protections *with* pat counterfeit seall, in disseit & preiudice of pe 24 Kyng & of his liege peple, was iugede to pe deth, to be drawe thurgh the Citee of London vnto Tiborne, and *per* hangede; & *pus* he died for his treason.

**How that A Breton had mordrede a widdow without Algat. 28
Ca II^o LXII.**

And in pe same yere, a fals Breton, betwen Ester and Witson-tyde, mordrede a good wedowe in hir bedde, the which hadde found hym, for Almesse, *withoute* Algate, In the suburbes of 32 London; & he bar a-way all that sche hadde, And after toke girth of holy churche at Saint Georges in Suthwerk; but at pe last he toke the Crosse, & for-suore pe Kyng land. And as he went his way, it

happid hym to come by the same place wher he did that cursede dede; And women of þe same parish come oute to hym with stones & *with* canell dong & þere made an ende of hym in þe high streit, so
 4 þat he went no ferþere, not-*with*-standyng þe Constablis & oper men also, which had hym in gouernaunce, to convey hym forth in his way; for þere was a grete companye of them; & on hym thei had neither mercie nor pite; & thus this fals thefe endede his life in þis
 8 worlde, for his falsnesse.

How that An Erytyk was take And conuicte; And how Kyng Henry ordeynyd to go in to Fraunce, to resceyue þe crown.
 Ca. II^o LXIII^o.

12 And in þis same yer, & in þe yer of *grace* a-foresaid, Richerde Woll-pakker, of Marc Lane, þat was conuicte a-for þe clergie, & dampned of heresie, was led to þe Tour-Hill of London; & ther he was brent for his fals & cursed opynions þat he helde & mayntened
 16 in presence of þe Duke of Gloucestre, & of þe Duke of Northfolk, & þe Erl of Warrewik, & þe Erle of Stafforde, & oper lordes & Jentilles, & afore all þe comuners þat were there present of þe roialme a grete multitude.

20 And in this same yere, þe Satirday, þe XXI Day of Februarie, one Fenables, a Jentilman of Chestre, & Thomas Clement a Draper of London was dampnede atte Westmynster for treason & for þift
 24 þat thei had done to þe Kynge & to his liege peple, to be drawe fro þe Toure of London thorough þe Citee to Tiborne, & þere hangede & quartrede, And there hedes sett vpon London Brugge.

And in þis same day & yere, Embassitoures of Spayne, þat is to say, a Bishoppe, with other grete & worthy clerkis, And an Erl
 28 *with* knyghtes & squyers,—& these people come to þe Kynge in to Westmynstre Hall the day aboue-saide.

And in þis same yere, on Saint Mathie day, Apostill, which was on a Friday, Kyng Henry the Sexte after his coronation & ende of
 32 his parlement holden at Westminster, by the advise of all the lordes & comons of England, was ordeyned in þis parlement a-for-said þat þe Kyng shulde wende ouer the see in to Fraunce for to resceyue the Crowne þere.

[E]

CONTINUATION OF THE BRUT FROM THE CAPTURE OF
ROUEN (1419) TO 1430.

[MS. Egerton 650.]

¹In þat same yere þe Kyng lay at þe sege of Roon; and þe xvij day of Ianuere it was yoldyn to oure Kyng. on Chyldermesse Day come tythyng to London þat the vj day of Feueryere the Duke of Bedford, Leuetenaunt of Englonð, and the Chauncelere, and many 4 oþer bysshoppis, and þe Maire and hys aldermen, with all þe Cetizins, made a generaH procession from Paules to Westmynstre, þonkyng God of the good and gracijs spede þat he had gyff to oure Kyng. 8

And in þat yere was Ludgate for-do, And aH the prisoners remeved from Newgate. And þer died lx and x with-in xv days. And þis was done for one Olyuer and iij false harlottes, And þer þai died. 12

And in þat same yere Quene Iahan was a-rested And broght to Retherhyde; And a gray frere was a-rested in Gernesie and lad to Chyrburgh, And sone aftre was broght before oure Kyng; and oure Kyng commaundit hym to the Toure of London, And þer he was 16 do in prisone.

Richard Whyttington Maior.	{	Wylliam Boteler ·	} Anno Ottauo H. V ^{ti} . [A.D. 1419-20.] 20
		Robertus Whytting-	
		ham	

In þat yere come þe Duke of Gloucestre in-to Englonð, and forth so to London; And þer was rescauyed and made Leuetenaunt of Englonð.

And þe Duke of Bedforth, with a fayr meyne, went to Hampton, 24 And þer he shyyppit and sayled ouer in-to Normandy.

And in þat yere our Kyng weddit Dame Kateryne, þe kynges Doghter of Fraunce, vpon þe Monday next afore þe Trinite Sunday.

And in þat yere was Pount Melayne wone, and oþer fortises 28 many moo: þonked be God!

Williamus Cambryge	Iohannes Welles	} Anno nono H. quin-
Maior.	Iohannes Boteller.	

¹ leaf 111, back.

In þat yere was a womman brent at Cotehyth for sleying of hyr husband.

And in þat yere oure Kyng and Dame Kateryne hys wyfe come 4 from Parise in-to Englund, and so forth to London; And þer were pai ressaued wurshypfully *with* þe Maire & þe Aldermen, and all þe Citezins of London.

And vppon þe xij day of Feueryere, þat feH vppon a Sunday in- 8 Lente, Dame Kateryne was crouned Quene at Westmynstre. And whene þe Solempnite was done in þe chyrche, sho was broght full solemply progh þe Paleis in-to the grete haH, where þe fest was holdyn Off þe Coronacion of Quene Katerine.

12 Off þe statis at þe Coronacion of Kateryne, þe Quene of Englund, And of þe seruyce þat was done in þe same fest.

Fyrst, þe Quene Sate in hyr estate;

The Archbyssshop of Cannctbury, The ¹Byssshop of Wynchestre, 16 vppon þe ryght syde of the Quene; And þai were *serued* next þe Quene, couerd at euery course;

The Kyng of Scotland in hys estate, vppon the left syde of þe 20 Quene, wech at euery course was *serued* next aftre þat þe Quene and the bysshoppes were *serued*.

The Duchesse of York, The Countesse of Hunttyngdon, The Duke of Gloucestre, vppon the same syde;

The Erle of Marche knelyng vppon þe desse on þe ryght syde 24 þe Quene, And held up a septre of the Quenes;

The Erle of Stafford, knelyng vppon þe left syde of the Quene vppon þe desse, and held a-noper Septre of the Quenes;

The Countesse of Kent was syttyng at the ryght fote vndur the 28 table;

Syr Ritchard Nevyle, keruere before þe Quene;

-The Erles broper of Southfolk, Copp-berrer;

Syr Iohn Steward, sewerer to the Quene;

32 The lord Clyfford, Panter, in the stede of Werwyke;

The Lord Wylloghby botelere, in þe stede of þe Erle of ArundaH, The Lord Grey Ryffyn, Napperer;

The Lord Audeley, Aumerer, In the stede of þe Erle of Caum- 36 bryge;

The Erle of Warwyke, Steward of Englund, *in* þe stede of þe-Duke of Clarence;

The Erle of Worcestre, MarchaH of Englonð, in þe stede of þe Erle MarchaH.

The nounbre and sitting in þe haH fyrst at þe tables :

The Barons of the .v. Portes begone þe table in þe haH on þe 4 ryght hand Of the Quene ; And be-neyth þaim, at þe same table, setten þe Bonchers of þe Chauncery ;

The Maire of London And hys Aldermen begone þe table in þe haH on þe left syde of þe Quene, with oþer commynners of 8 the cete ;

And beneth þaim at the same table, in þe myddyst of the haH, next þe table of þe .v. portys, vppon the ryght hand of the Quene, The Bysshop of London satt *withyn* þe table, The Bysshopp of 12 Bath, The Bysshop of Excester before hym, The Bysshop of NorwycH, The Bysshopp of Salesbury, The Bysshopp of Saynt Dauid, The Bysshopp of Bangore before hym.

The bysshop of Lyncolne, The Abbot of Waltham, The 16 bysshop of Carlyle before þaim.

And þen next þaim, at the same table syttyng, þe Iustices ; And afftre þe Iustices at þe same table Satt WurshyppfulH knyght and Sqwyers ; 20

And þe ladys beyone þe tables in þe myddys of þe haH, ffor agayns þe Maire and þe Aldermen of Londone, The Countesse of Stafforde, Doghtter of Sere Thomas, som tyme Duke of Gloucestre ; The Countesse of Marche, hyre doghtter ; The Countesse of Arun- 24 deH, ¹The Countesse of Westmerland, The Countesse of Northumberland, hyr doghtter ; The Countesse of Oxenford ; The lady NeveH, some tyme þe Lordys wyfe NeveH, doghtter of the Erle of Somersette ; Dame Margarete, þe Dukes doghter of 28 Northfolk ; The Lady Clyfford, Suster of the Erlè of Northumberlande ; The lady Burgeyne ; The lady Talbot ; The lady Wylloghby ; The lady Manley ; The wyfe of Syr Richard Nevyle, doghtter of the Erle of Salesbury, and no mo ladys of estate. And 32 þat table was ocupied *with* ladis and damesels, and a quarter of the bysshoppis table also.

There lordys sewyng were assigne to do þe ryaH seruyce to the Quene : 36

The Erle of Northumberland	The Erle of Westmerland.
The Lord Fehughe	The Lord FurnevaH.

¹ leaf 112, back.

The Lord Feris of Groby	The Lord Gray of Wyltton.
The Lord Poynynges	The Lord Haryngton.
The Lord Darcy	The Lord Dacrys.
4 The Lord Delaware.	

The *seruyce* of þe ffyrst course.

Brawne wyth mustard	Dedelys in Burueux.
ffirment <i>with</i> Baleyne	Pyke.
8 Lamprey Poudered.....	Troute.
Codlyng	Plays.
Merlyng ffryed	Grete Crabys.
Leych lumbard	A bake mete in past.
12 Tartis	A Sodelte.

The *seruyce* of the secund course.

Gele	Blaundesore.
Breme.....	Cungre.
16 Soles	Millet.
Chevan	BarbeH.
Roche	ffreche Samon.
Halybut	Gurnard rosted.
20 Roget broyled.....	Smelt ffryed.
Lopsters	Leyche Damask.
Laumpray in past	fflampaun ryaH.
	A Sotelte.

24 ¹A Panter and a damesseH before The *seruyce* of þe þryde course.

Dates in Composte.....	Grene motteley.
Carpe dere	Turbutt.
Tenche	Perche.
28 Gogenos [Gudgeons]	Sturgeon frech and powderd.
Welkys	Porpas rosted.
Munse fryde	Crevis douse.
Grete Scrympmys	Elys and lampryns rosted.
32 A leyche called 'whyte leyche'	A bake mete in past, <i>with</i> iiij Angels.

A Sotelte : a tyger, and Saynt George ledyng it.

And in þe Ester weke foloyng, þe Duke of Clarence was slayne
36 in Fraunce, fast by the water of Leyre, wyth Scottes, Frenche men,
Armynakkys, be-cause he wold not be gouerned, and haue take hys-

ost with hym. And þer was take þe Erle of Hunttyngton, The
 -Erle of Somersette and hys broþer. And þer was lost þat day in-to
 a ^{xx}iiij good knyghttes: on whos soules God haue mercy! Amen!

And in þe same yere our Kyng, vppon the thred Day of Iune, 4
 Schyppit at Douere, And londit at Caleis, and rode forth in-to
 Fraunce.

And in þat yere was grete queraunce in London for vsures;
 And some of þaim left money, Iohn Sadeler, Water Chyrche, and 8
 many oþer; And in þat tyme money was skarse.

Robert Chycheley, maior. *Wilhelmus Weston. Anno decimo h. v^{ti}*
Ricardus Crosby. [A.D. 1421-2.]

In þat tyme, vppone saynt Nicholas evyn, come tythynges from 12
 Wyndyssore to þe Maire, þat oure Quene, Dame Kateryne, had
 borne a prince, a fayre sone. And a-none aH þe belles in London
 were re[n]gon; 'Te Deum' was songone at Paules; And þer was
 the Chauncelere and many bysshoppys, And þe Maire and hys 16
 Aldermen, And aH þe craftes of the Cite.

And in þat tyme þe gold of þe realme went by weght; And
 euery man had a payr ballaunce And weghttes in hys sleve for
 þe gold. 20

And in þat yere Qwhenne Kateryne went to Hampton, And
 þer made hyr redy to go ouer the see vn-to þe Kyng. And with
 hyr went þe Duke of Bedforthe with a fayre meyne; And þe viij
 day of Maij sho landit at Hereflete, And so went forth vn-to oure 24
 Kyng.

And in þat same tyme Mewes Embry was gotten in þe last
 -ende of ApryH. And fyrst day of Iule oure kyng sent to the Toure
 of Londone xvij Cartes chargit with Frenche men þat were hys 28
 þresoners, þat he toke in Mewes ^{xx}Embry: the nombre of þaim
 into viij. *copyist*

And in þat yere þer come a² wrytte from þe Kyng vn-to the
 Maire of London, for to a-rest certayne persones þe which were 32
 found defectyfe in certayne poyntes of Erysy and Lollardy, And
 þeis bene þaire names: Eston, Mercer, and oþer moo.

And þat yere died Kyng Henry the fyft in Fraunce, vppon þe
 -evyn of þe decollacion of Saynt Iohn Baptyst; And þen was hys 36
 sone Henri made Kyng.

¹ leaf 113, back.

² MS. and a

And in pat yere þe Shryves of London went by barche to Westmynstre, And dyuerse craftes of London *with þaim*; And in þis maner þai come home agayne, all in blak. And þis was done be-
4 cause of our Kynges deth: on whos soule, God haue mercy! Amen!

And on þe Monday before Saynt Symond Day and Iude, The Bysshop of London, Mayster Iofin Kempt, was stalled at Paules.

Thes ben þe names of Maire and Shrevis of London in þe tyme
-8 of Kyng Henri þe vj, in þe age of hym not xij monethys fulli:

Wylelmus Walderne, Iohannes Tedershaft. } Anno primo Henrici
Maire. Thomas Estfelde. } vi^{ti} [A.D. 1422-3.]

In pat yere þe Maire and þe Aldermen and aH þe craftes went
12 to Westmynstre by barge, aH in blak, þe v. day of Nouember; And
-þer he toke hys oth in þe eschekere, as þe maner is. And whene
he had done, he toke hys barge *with* aH þe craftis, And come home
agayne.

16 þe vj day of Nouember, The cors of Kyng Henri the .v. was
brought to London; And a-none the Maire and þe Aldermen & aH
þe Citezins reseceyved hym, aH in blak, and brought hym to Paules;
And þer he had hys dryge and masses, and was entered, as it feH
20 for a kyng. And þis was done vpon þe Fryday. And afre mete
he was brought to Westminster; And vpon þe Setterday he was
beryd before Saynt Edwardys shryne: on whose soule Almyghtti
God haue mercy! Amen!

24 And in pat yere, come Frenche bysshoppys oute of Fraunce;
And oper Frenche lordys and worthy knyghttes of Fraunce come
to þe Kyng to do homage to hym, as for heyre of Englund and
Fraunce: And þis was afre Crystynmasse foloyng.

28 And þat same yere, þe secund day of Marche, þer was brent in
Northfolk a prest pat was dysgated of hys clergy for hys mys-byleue
and hys heresy. And hys name was Master Wyllyam Tayloure.

Also Richard Whyttington, mercer, died þe xiiij day of Marche:-
32 on whos saule Almyghtti God haue mercy! Amen!

Wylelmus Crowmere, Thomas Wandeford, } Anno ij^{do} H. sexti.
Maire. Nicholas Iames. } [A.D. 1423-4.]

¹ at xxli þe parysshesens shuld pay xls; And yf it were of
36 more valewe, þen pay more.

And in þe same yere, on Saynt Gylis day, come þe CardinaH,
þe Bysshop of Wynchestre, to London; And þe maire and þe

Shryves and þe Alderdirmen, *with* aH the craftes of the cite, ryddyn agaynst hym, and wurshypfully ressaued hym And Welecommed hym, and breght hym to Paules, And from Paules to Westmynstre ; And þer he a-bode aH þat nyght. And on þe morow he toke hys 4 hors and rode to Wyndysore vn-to our Kyng.

Henricus Barton maior. Iohannes Abbot. Anno vij^{ti}o henrici vj^{ti}
Thomas Duffons. [A.D. 1428-9.]

In þis yere was þe good Erle of Salesbury, Sere Thomas Moun- 8
tague, slayn at the sege of Orlyauce *with* a gonne, wheche was a noble lord and a worthy werreor emong aH Crystyn men: On whose saule, God, for hys pete, haue mercy! Amen! And he ys
bered at Bryssham. 12

And in þis same yere, at Mydsomertyde, Henry Beauford, Cardinale, And also bysshop of Wynchestre, went ouer þe see in-to Fraunce *with* a fayre meyne of Archers and men of Armes; And þe Lord Wylloghby was made Capten of hys werris. The wheche 16
Cardynale was ordined and purpast for to haue gone in-to Prage, to haue dystroyed and gyf batayle vn-to the fals herytykes and Lollordys. And whene he was rydy, tydynges come þat þe sege of Orlyauce was brokyn, And þe Lord Talbot takyn, and oper worthy 20
lordys. And a-none, in aH þe hast, þe CardinaH *with* hys meyne,
—And Ser Iohn Ratelyff *with* hys meyne, þat was purposed for to haue gone in-to Gyene, went ouer in-to Fraunce to help and strenghe þe Regente, The Duke of Bedford, in þe Kynges rygt of England. 24

And in þe same yere fell sodanly a dertth of whete, þat a BussheH of whete was at xx^d; And xxiiij Days, brede was ryght skantt in London, in-so-moch þat vnneth Any myght be gete; bot in short tyme,—þonked be Almyghtti God!—hit was a-mendit; 28
And befe and motun, and Al maner of fleshe, þat same tyme was ryght dere and scarce vn-to Lammasse; And þen sone aftre,—þonked be Ihesu, of hys zeftis!¹—it was a-mendid.

Wilelmus Est- { Wilelmus Rous, } Anno Octauo h. 32
feld, Maior. { Radulphus Holand, schereffyes. } vj^{ti}. [A.D. 1429
-30.]

^{from 454}

²The fi[f] day of Nouember, þe Kyng, wyth hys lordys, ryally rode frome Kyngstone ouer London Bryge, And so forth Fenchyrche strete, evyn vn-to the Toure, to hys mete. And þe 36
Maire and þe Aldermen, aH in Scarlete hodys, rode to mete the

¹ MS. pestis.

² leaf 114, back.

Kyng, And so rode forth *with* hym to þe Toure The Seterday next aftre; wher-of were þe Erle of Denshyre, þe Lord Spencer sone, the Erle of Warwyk, þe Lord Beamounde. And aftre none, 4 þe Kyng, in a riaff araye, *with* aH hys lordys Ryally a-rayed in cloth of gold for þe most part, *with* the said xxiiij newe knyghtes aH in blew, the prestes rode a-fore þe Kyng ij and ij, from þe Toure to Westmynstre. And þe Maire and þe Aldermen, aH in 8 Scarlet, rode also, and broght þe Kyng to Westmynstre. And at London Bryge was made a toure full of Angels And þe grete Condyte and þe lytiH Condite in þe Chepe, rially arayed, rynnnyng bothe rede wyne and whyte. And at the Crosse in þe Chepe was 12 made a riaff casteH, And *perin* was grete Wurshyp shewed to þe Kyng.

On þe morne, þe Sunday, þe vj day of Nouember, þe Kyng was crowned at Westmynstre full rially. And aH Bysshoppys and 16 Abbotes Copitt and mytred rially; And aH temperaH lordys rode in paire estate; And aH oper knyghtes (for most perty) aH in clotin of gold rially. And Henri of Wynchestre, Cardinale, as a CardenaH sate in a sete by þe ryght hand of the Kyng. And *per* was 20 Quene Kateryne, moder of the Kyng, And a grete noumbre of ladis and gentiH-wemmen rially arayed. And also *per* come sodanly to þe coronacion one of þe kinges sones of Porttyngale, And he was Wurshypfully receyved. And þat day was a fare day and a clere, 24 blessed be God!

Also þat yere þe perlement was eniourned tiH aftre Crystynmasse. Also þe Fryday, þe xx day of Ianuere, Richard Hunden, wolpakker, was brent at þe Toure-hyH for hys Lollardy and herysye. 28 The Tuysday next aftre, Iohn Vpton, þe appellaunte, and Iohn Downe of Feueressham, defendaunt, Armed, faght *with-yn* lystis in Smythfelde nyghe an oure. And þen þe Kyng toke it in-to hys awne hand; And þe Seterday aftre, at Kenyngton, þe Kyng made 32 an¹ ende be-twene *paim* bothe; And so þai rode at large.

The perlement began agayn þe Monday aftre, þe xij day. And in þe meyne tyme The CardinaH went ouer þe see on þe Kynges message.

36 And also þe same yere, in Estre Weke, þe Kyng went to Caleis, And so to Roon, *with* the substance of aH þe lordes and gentyls of Englund, And left *per* þe Duke of Glaucestre, Leuetenaunte.

Nicholas Watton maior.

(M. cccc. xxxi.)

¹ MS. and

APPENDIX E.

ANOTHER VERSION OF THE TIME FROM 1422-31.

[*MS. Rawlinson, B. 173. Bodleian Library.*]

¹And in that yere [Nov. 1422] come Frienssh Bisshoppes oute of Fraunce, & þis was Cristmas folowyng^t.

¶ William Crowmere, Maire

¶ Thomas Sandeford² } ¶ Shreues, anno ij^o. 4

¶ Nicholas Iames } [1 *Sept.* 1423 to 31 *Aug.* 1424.]

¶ And in that yere the King was brought fro Windesore in a chare to Londoñ, and his modre the Quene sitting in the same chare, and he in her armes, and so he was brought to Westminster. 8 and on the morue bigañ the parliament. And in that same yere, on the Wednesday bifore Seint Mathewes day, Syr Ioñn Mortymere, knight, brake prison, and went oute off the Toure of Londoñ; but sone he was take vpon p^o Toure-wharfe, bitwene the 12 Toure & the Temysse, & there he was euyh wounded. And forthwith-añ he was brought forth bifore the Duke of Gloucestre; And vpon the Saturday he was brought to hys answeare, and there he was dampned to be drawe & honged, And his hede smetyn of at 16 Tyborne. And thañ his hede was take and sett vpon Londoñ Brygge, and his body was beried at Iones, bicause he ³was a knight of the Sepulcre; And hys hede was take downe, & beried with the body: & þat licence gate freier Winchilsey. 20

¶ Ioñn Micheh, Maire.

¶ Ioñn Bithewater } ¶ Shreues, anno iij^o.

¶ Symkyñ Semañ } [1 *Sept.* 1424 to 31 *Aug.* 1425.]

¶ And in that yere was a generañ processioñ, And a pardoner 24 Riding vpon an horse, and his face to the horse taile, and his billes hanging a-bought hys necke by-hynde and bifore. And whañ he

¹ leaf 225.

² *i.e.* Wandesford.

³ leaf 225, back.

come to p^e South dore of Poules, there was Made a grete fire, and aH his billes were brent.

¶ Ioĥn Couentre, Maire.

4 ¶ William Mildrede } ¶ Shreues, Anno iiij^{to}.

¶ Ioĥn Brockeley } [1 Sept. 1425 to 31 Aug. 1426.]

¶ And in that yere was a grete discencioĥ bitwene the Duke of Gloucestre and the Bisshop of Wynchestre; And this was on
 -8 the same day that p^e Maire rode. And on the Tuesday was mekle of the bisshoppes retenewe gadered in Southwerke, *with* bowes and arowes and other herneys. And thaĥ the Brige gate was kept *with* strength of meĥ of armes. And sone after, vppoĥ viij of the
 12 clocke, aH the Cite was vp, and drewe hem to the water-side, and wolde haue passed oury Thamyse. But the Prince of Portingale, - the Bisshop of Caunterbury, the Bisshop of Bath, entreted, ponked be God, aH was cesed, or none. And the x day of Ianyvere next, -
 16 p^e Duke ¹ of Bedford and his wiffe the Duchesse come to London; and the Maire and aH the Aldermen, & the craftes, ridde a-yenst him, and welcomed him vnto the Cite, And the Bisshope of Winchestre come with him. And in this same yere was the parliament
 20 at Leicester.

¶ Ioĥn Reynewe,² Maire.

¶ Robert Arnolde } ¶ Shreues, Anno quinto.

¶ Ioĥn Higham } [1 Sept. 1426 to 31 Aug. 1427.]

24 And in the same yere, in the latter end of December, died the goode Duke of Excestre. and in the same yere were founde many false vessels of Romeneŷ, the whiche were made by gadered Galgenet, into the nombre of vj buttes, the which the hedes were
 28 smyt oute of in diuerse places of the Cite: the falsest gode that eyr any maĥ see.

¶ Ioĥn ReyneweH,³ Maire.

¶ Robert Otele } ¶ Shreues, anno vj^{to}.

32 ¶ Henry Frowyke } [1 Sept. 1427 to 31 Aug. 1428.]

¶ In his tyme there was a lone of iij þousand marke; And it was for the Erle of Salesbury for-to meyntene the Kinges werres in Fraunce; And therto payed diuerse peple, asweH p^e mene as the
 36 riche; som more, som lasse; but the leste was x s. ¶ And after that, was graunted bi the parliament, þat aH the chirches of the ralme shulde be stent at a somme; and the Chirche were at xx ti,

¹ leaf 226.

² i. e. Raynwell.

³ i. e. John Gedney.

the pairesshens shulde paye xls.: and iff it were of more valewe, than¹ to paye more.

²¶ Henry Bartoñ, Maire.

¶ Ioñn Abbot } ¶ Shreues, Anno vij^o.

4

¶ Thomas Duffons } [1 Sept. 1428 to 31 Aug. 1429.]

¶ And in this yere was the gode Erle of Salesbury, Sir Thomas Mountague, slayne at the sege of Orliaunce with a Gonne; the whiche was a noble lorde, and a worthi werrioure amonge aH Cristeñ 8 meñ: On whos soule God for his pite haue mercy! amen! And he was beried at Brisham. In this same yere, at Midsomertide, Henry Benford, CardinaH, and also Bisshop of Winchestre, went ouyr the see into Fraunce with a faire meyne of Archers and meñ 12 of armes; ¶ And the Lorde Welouby was made Capteñ of his werres; the whiche CardinaH was purposed and ordeyned for-to haue go into Prage, to haue distroyed and yeue bataile vnto the false heretikes and lollars. And whañ he was redy, tidinges come 16 that the sege of Orliaunce was brokeñ, and the Lorde Talbot take, and other worthi lordes. And anone in aH haste, the CardinaH with his meyne, and Sir Ioñn Radclyff with his meyne, pat was purposed to haue go into Gienne, went ouer into Fraunce to helpe 20 and strength p^e Regent, the Duke off Bedford, in the Kingis right of England.

¶ William Estfelde, Maire.

¶ William Rouse } ¶ Shreues, anno viij^o.

24

¶ Richard Holand } [1 Sept. 1429 to 31 Aug. 1430.]

¶ The Friday, the iij^{de} day of Nouember, the King with ³his lordes, Rialli rode fro Kingeston ouer London Brige, And so forth Fanchirch strete, even to the Toure, to his mete. And the Maire 28 and the Aldermeñ, aH in scarlet hodes, Rode to mete the King, and rode forth with him to the Toure. the Saturday next after, the King made xxxiiij knightes of the Bath, in the Toure of London; wherof were the Erle of Deuenyssñ-shire, the Lorde Spencers sonne, 32 the Erle of Warrewike, the Lorde Beaumont. and after none, the King, in riaH aray, with aH his lordes rialli arayed in clothes of golde for the moste partie, with the saide xxxiiij knightes aH in blewe like prestes, rode afore the King ij and ij fro the Toure to Westminster. 36 And the Maire & p^e Aldermeñ aH in scarlet, rode also, and brought the King to Westminster. And on the Morue, the Sunday, the vj

¹ MS. has pañ than with the first pañ underlined for erasure.

² leaf 226, back.

³ leaf 227.

day of Nouembre, the King was crown'd at Westminster rialli; and Henry of Winchester, CardinaH, as a CardinaH sate in a sete by, on the right honde of the King. And there was Quene Katerin, 4 moder of the King, And a grete nombre of ladies and gentilwemeñ rially arayed. And ther come sodenly at þ^e Coronacioñ, one of the -Kinges sonnes of Portingale; and he was worshipfully resceyued. And that daye was a fayre day, & a clere, blessid be God!

8 ¶ Nicholas Wotton, Maire.

¶ Water Chirtesey } ¶ Shreues, anno ix^o.

¶ Robert Large } [1 Sept. 1430 to 31 Aug. 1431.]

12 ¶ In that yere come the CardinaH oute of Normandy from Roañ; And there was the King, and helde Cristmasse. ¶ and -after Cristmas, after Seint Hillaries day, bigañ the parliament at Westmynstre. and in that yere come to Londoñ the Ambassiatours of Spayne, to trete of pees.

¹ leaf 227, back.

London; and the Friday, the xiiijth day of Aprell then¹ next folowing, the same shirreffes fette oute of Newgate, by the false suggestion and compleynt of oon² Iohn Kyngescote, Gaolere of 4 Neugate, .xviij. presoners of fremen. And the³ oon half of these xvij. presoners were ledde to the⁴ oon Counter, and þat oþer half to⁵ þat other Compter, by⁶ malice and compleynt of þe seid Iohn Kyngescote. And these⁷ were ledde to the Compters, braced as 8 though⁸ they had be⁹ felons and theves, openly in euery manny sight.

And in this same yere, vpon þe Whitsunday, a man of the towne of Abyngdon þat is in Oxenfordshire, þat called hym-self 12 Iak Sharp, was take, with oþer mo of his company, for risers and distourbours of þe Kynges peple, and for his false ymaginacion and treson þat he¹⁰ began to make and werk in that Cuntre aboute; and þerfore he was drawe, and hanged and quartered at Abyngdon, 16 and his hede smyten of, and set vpon London Brigge, by the¹¹ comaundment of the Duke of Gloucestre, Lieutenaunt of England, an[d]¹² by alle the good and worthy lordes of the Kinges Consayle beinge that¹³ tyme in the Reame.

20 And in this same yere, the xvj. day¹⁴ of Iune, the preson of Ludgate was made, and opened ageyn¹⁵ for fremen þat be presoners for dette. And the¹⁶ same day they entred in first¹⁷ ageyn by ordynauce and comaundment of the Maire, alder¹⁸men and 24 comyners. And Herry Dene, Tayloure, was¹⁹ made keper of Ludgate prison, by the Maire and all the *communialte* in the Guyldhall.

And in þis same yere, the .xiiij. day of Iuyll, John Russell, 28 wollepakkere, was dampned at Westmynstre, and brought to the Kynges Benche, and leyde on a²⁰ hirdell, and drawn thurgh the Cite to Tybourne, and quartered; and his quarters set vpon dyuers gates of London, and his hede²¹ set vpon London Brigge.

32 John Welles, Maior. Stephanus Broun } *vicecomites anno x^o. [1 Sept.*
John Athirley } *1431 to 31 Aug. 1432.]*

And þen Kyng Henry was brought from Caleys, þurgh

¹ then *om.* U. ² y^e said U. ³ y^t one U. ⁴ y^t U.

⁵ vnto U. ⁶ by y^e malice U. ⁷ þese prisoners U.

⁸ though *om.* U. ⁹ bene for felonie & thefte U. ¹⁰ he he U.

¹¹ the *om.* U. ¹² and U. ¹³ beyng in the roialme at y^t tyme U.

¹⁴ day *om.* U. ¹⁵ and ageyn Tr. and opened again U. ¹⁶ y^t U.

¹⁷ first *om.* U. ¹⁸ leaf 208. ¹⁹ was *om.* U. ²⁰ an U.

²¹ hede smytt of and set U.

Normandy, to þe Cite of Roan, *with* strenght of his lordes, and *with* men of armes and archers; and there the kyng abode, and rested hym in the Castell and¹ the Cite of Roan, from Seint Iames tyde the Apostell,² vnto the secund day of Decembre.² And when⁴ he come first into Rone, he was receyued and welcomed for theire liege lord and Kyng, *with* all reuerence, solempnite, gladnesse and worship, þat myght be ordeyned and made; and also they presented hym *with* ryche and roiall giftes, and thanked God of his comyng.⁸ And in the tyme of his abidyng in þe Cite of Roan, there were many *iourneyes* done in *dyuers* partyes of Fraunce and Normandy, which he not tited in this boke; for y haue not full conusauunce of theym, how, ne in what place nor where they were doon.⁸ 12

⁴ Here is the begynnyng of Kyng Herries comyng the Sext, from Roan to Parys; and how worthely they of Parys receyued the Kyng in his first comyng thider.⁴

And when Kyng Henry the Sext was goon from the Cite of 16 Roan toward þe Cite of Parys, and first to Seint Denys the .ij. day of Decembre; and þere he was worthely receyued as euer was any kyng to any Cite; and þe village cleped 'Chapell,' betwene Seint Denys and⁵ Parys, there mette with the Kyng and his lordes, the 20 Provost of Parys, *with* the Marchauntez, and .iiij. other estates *with* hem,⁶ clothed in oon sute, in rede fyne saten crymsyn⁷ furred *with* Martrons, and *with* blewe hodes, to a grete⁸ notable nombre. And whan the Kyng was passed the village, þere mette *with* hym the 24 Provost of Parys aforeseid,⁹ in a blewe gowne of velwet, and¹⁰ the .iiij. Maisters of the chastlet *with* theym, alle clothed in blewe *with* blak hodes; and next after theym¹¹ come¹² the ix worthy Emperoures, *with* Kynges and Quenes, and iche of¹³ them armed, 28 sauf the Quenes, and theire horses¹⁴ trapped *with* theire armes,¹⁵ and the quenes hors trapped *with* theire armes;¹⁵ and then come the Maister of the Chamber, *with* the acomptes all clothed in violet, ermyn,¹⁶ scarlet hodes, a notable number; and after come the 32 President, *with* alle the maysters of þe parlement, all clothed in

¹ and in y^e U. ²⁻² om. U.

³ deon. And y⁸ for I leue theme vn writynne. U. ⁴⁻⁴ om. U.

⁵ leaf 208, back. ⁶ hym all clothede U. ⁷ and crymsyn U.

⁸ grete om. U. ⁹ aforeseid om. U. ¹⁰ and all the U.

¹¹ hym U. ¹² come ridyng U. ¹³ of Tr. of theme U.

¹⁴ horses U. ¹⁵⁻¹⁵ om. U. ¹⁶ violet Tr. *with* crymsyn. U.

scarlet, with furred hodes, and round standynge cappes of Trype; and these were the iiij estates with alle the ix worthies.

And at comyng to þe gate of Seint Denys of Parys, there was
 4 afore¹ the fronte of the gate þe armes of the towne in gowles, a
 chieff of asure, with the flourdelice of gold in asure; and also þer
 was a verrey shippe, with alle the appurtenaunce;² þerto belongyng,
 couered with siluer foyle, and certeyne persones standing þerin.
 8 And at the Kynges comyng to the gate, they henge ouer the shippe
 borde iij. bloody hertys like vnto mennys hertys, bot þey were
 gretter. And as the Kyng come to the gate, these thre hertes
 opened; and oute of hem³ flewe white dovyys and oper briddes, and
 12 certeyn scriptures made, shewyng vnto the Kyng þat they⁴ receyued
 hym with alle hertys, and for there souereyn Lorde and Kyng.
 And at the comyng in of⁵ the gate was ordeyned a clothe of gold,
 and vj men beryng it⁶ vpon vj. spere-shaftes, and eche of the men
 16 bare heded; and on there hodes,⁷ garlaundes of gode⁸ foyle, and
 they clothed in blewe. And in the⁹ same strete was a condit, and
 iij. meremaydes swymmyng aboue on¹⁰ the water; ¹¹and oute of
 the condite come rennyng ¹²dyu[er]s wyne; oon ypocras; the
 20 second rede wyne, the thridde, with mylke.¹² And euery Englissh
 man þat wold drynk ypocras, had ynough; and alwey men redy to
 serue them with cuppes and pecis. And iij wodewoses playing
 vpon the toppe¹³ of þe condyte; and other wodewoses benethe,¹⁴
 24 playing to kepe this¹⁵ condite.

And then in the same strete was made a scaffold; and þerupon
 men disgysed after the weddyng of oure Lady, and of the birthe of
 oure Lorde Ihesu Crist, fro the begynnyng to the ende. And þere
 28 was neyder man nor childe þat any wight myght perceyue, þat
 euer chaunged any chere or countenaunce alle the tyme duryng;
 bot held there contaunce, as they had been ymages peynted; so
 þat all peple þat sawe hem, seyde þat they sawe neuer in þeire lyves
 32 suche a-noder sight.

And after that, comyng in at¹⁶ þe Inner gate of Seint Denys
 wh[er]e þat he was in Chatere, there was made the life of Seint
 Denys, and of many other dyuers persons in grete estate aboue hym,

¹ afore at U. ² appurtenaunce U. ³ theme U. ⁴ the U.

⁵ at U. ⁶ it vp vpon U. ⁷ hedes U. ⁸ golde U. ⁹ this U.

¹⁰ vpon U. ¹¹ leaf 209.

¹²⁻¹³ iij stremes one of ypocraers an oper with rede wyne and ye thrid
 with mylk.

¹³ Cupp U. ¹⁴ playing bynethe U. ¹⁵ the U. ¹⁶ of U.

bothe spirituall and temporall, after¹ Cristen men and hethen, as they were in theyre tyme þat is passed. And so comyng to the founteyn of Seint Innocentz, there was made a hegge of grene holme-busshes; and þerout stert an hert, and houndes rennyng⁴ after hym, couered in þe armes of England and² Fraunce. And at þe Chastelet, þere was made a stately ordynaunce of scaffoldes, hanged with clothes of golde and with arras, with the Kinges armes of England and of Fraunce; and a man lykened to þe Kyng⁸ sitting in a sete, keyng a state in scarled³ with a furred hode and with .ij. buylhons made with the armes of England and of Fraunce; and vpon the right hande, knelyng, my Lord of Bedford,⁴ my⁵ Lord of Gloucestre, my Lord Cardynall,⁶ and many oþer lordes¹² of England, iche man⁸ after his degre, armed with his cote of armes vpon hym;⁹ and then the Duke of Burgoyne, knelyng¹⁰ on the lifte hande, offeryng vp the armes of Fraunce, and alle the other lordes of Fraunce in their degre, knelyng, and offeryng¹¹ vp¹⁶ their armes; and dyuers scriptures made, þat all they requyre the Kyng of rightwisnesse. And after was presented to þe Kyng a wyld hert, trapped with the armes of the towne.

And so þe Kyng rode forth to oure Lady Chirche, and made²⁰ his offryng. Alle¹² the stretes from Seint Denys Gate were hanged with clopes of arras and with clothes of tapisserie werk; and for þe most party all the stretes were couered with linnen clothes.

And so from thens the Kyng that same tyme¹³ went to Tourney,²⁴ and¹⁴ because it was ill¹⁵ ridyng, for the grete froste þat was that tyme in the towne, and the stretes were strawed thurghout for slidyng of their horses vnto þey come to Tourney; and there the¹⁶ Kyng souped with my Lorde of Bedford, and lay there all nyght,²⁸ and dynd there on the morowe ere [he] passed any ferther.

And so vpon the morowe the Kyng went to¹⁷ speke with his grandmoder, þe Quene of Fraunce. And there she made hym¹⁸ chere, and welcomed hym with all the dalyaunce, countenaunce,³² and chere þat she coude or¹⁹ myght; and seid þat 'she was neuer so gladde as she was then, sith she sawe þe Kyng of Fraunce in

¹ and aftir U. ² and of U. ³ in a sete of Estate in Scarlet U.

⁴ my Lord of Bedford knelyng U. ⁵ and my U. ⁶ the Cardinall U.

⁷ leaf 209, back. ⁸ man om. U. ⁹ theme U. ¹⁰ sitting U.

¹¹ Fraunce kneling in ther degre and offeryng U. ¹² and all U.

¹³ y^t same tyme þe Kyng U. ¹⁴ and for U. ¹⁵ parillous U.

¹⁶ there Tr. þere the U. ¹⁷ and spak. ¹⁸ hym grete U.

¹⁹ and U.

good plyte.' And so from the Quene he rode streight to Boys in Vyncent; and there he rested hym¹ vnto þe tyme of hys Coronacion, þe which shuld be holden and ²doon on þe Sunday, the .viiith day
4 afore Cristmasse, by the grace of God.

And þen the Saterdag, the xv. day of Decembre, the Kyng come on the after-none from Boys in Vyncent vnto þe palays of Parys; and he rested hym there all þat nyght. And þe next
8 morowe, the Sunday, was he brought worthely from the palyce to the Chirche of oure Lady in Parys; and there he was crowned Kyng of Fraunce by the Cardynall, þe Bisshop³ of Winchestre and
oper Englissh Bisshoppes, and by .vj. of þe worthiest Bisshoppes
12 of Fraunce. And this coronacion was worthely doon, with all the solempnite þat myght be doon and ordeyned.

And when the Kyng was crowned, and the seruice doon, then the Kyng was brought ageyn to his palyse, and there set to mete
16 with all delicacye of metes and drynkes þat myght be ordeyned, and open fest to all men þat wold com, bothe pore and riche. And after his coronacion at Parys, the Kyng come doun to þe Cite of Roan. And so, by candelmasse next, the Kyng came to Caleys.
20 And the Marchauntes of the Staple, with the peple of the towne, welcomed hym with all reuerence and honoure, and presented hym with giftes.

And within .xiiij. dayes after, the Kyng come ouer the see
24 into England, and landed at the towne of Dover in Kent; and there were redy the Burgeys of the .v. Portes, and bare the Kyng on lande. And then come moche peple of Kent and Sussex, of good gentelmen and yomen on horsbak and in good aray, and they
28 welcomed the Kyng, and brought hym to Caunterbury; and þere þe Kyng rested hym a day. And then the peple of all the Cuntre aboute come on horsbak and good aray to þe Kyng, and welcomed the Kyng with all theire hertys, and brought the King fro⁴
32 Caunterbury vnto his Maner of Eltham þat is .v. myle oute of London. And there the Kyng rested hym .v. or .vj. dayes, vnto his comyng to the Cite of London.

And in this same yere the xxjth day of Februare, Kyng Henry
36 the .vj. come from his Maner of Eltham toward the Cite of London; and the Maire and aldermen, with the comynalte of

¹ hym all nyght U.

² There is a break in U here from *doon* on p. 461 to *fuloyng* on p. 462, l. 8.

³ leaf 210. ⁴ for Tr.

London, roode ayenst the Kyng on horsbak, in the best aray þat they myght, in the reuerence of the Kyng and in worship and gladnesse of the worthy name of the Cite of London, thurghout the world in worthynesse commended and praysed. For the Maire 4 hym-self was clothed in rede Crymsyn velwett, and a grete velwet hatte furred royally, and a girdell of gold aboute his mydell, and a bawdrik of gold aboute his neck, trillyng down behynde hym; and his .iij. hensmen on ¹.iij. grete Coursoures ² foloyng hym, in oon 8 sute of a good aray, in rede,³ all spangled in siluer; and then all the Aldermen in gownes of scarlet,⁴ *with* sangwyn cappes. And all the *communialte* of the Cite were ⁵ clothed in white; bot euery craft *with* dyuers devices enbrowded⁶ vpon the white gownes, þat 12 euery craft myght be knowen, oon from a-nother, *with* scarlet hodes or cappes. And all they hoved still on horsbak on⁷ the Blak-Heth in Kent, on both sides, as a strete, vnto the Kynges comyng.

And when they sawe the Kyng come, the Maire *with* the 16 aldermen rode to the Kyng, and welcomed hym *with* all reuerence, honour and obeysaunce.⁸ And the Kyng thanked hem, and⁹ he come ridyng thurgh all the peple; and they obeyed, and seid, “Welcom oure liege¹⁰ and Kyng! welcom!¹¹ and thanked be God 20 in all his giftes, þat we se you in good quart!” and so the Kyng rode streight the high wey to London.

And when the Kyng had riden thurgh Suthwerk, and come to the stulpes *without*¹² London Brigge, *pere* stode a gyaunt in¹³ a 24 toure, *with* his swerd drawe in his hande, shewed *with* countenaunce, doth manace all foreyn enemyes to the death *without* mercy, þat seith or doth¹⁴ ayenst the¹⁵ Kynges right. “And y, the Kynges Champyon, in full myght and power.” 28

And then the Kyng come to London Brigge; and there was made a roiall hevenly toure; and therin was shewed .iij. ladyes as Emperice, worthely apparaylled in their aray, which were called by name ‘Nature, Grace, and Fortune.’ And their girdelles were 32 blewe, shynyng like to sapheres, which shewed to the Kyng, in his comyng, all goodnesse and gladnesse in¹⁶ vertuouus lyvyng; and *with* oper .vj.¹⁷ virgynes celestial, in tresses of gold, and *with*

¹ leaf 210, back.² U begins again.³ in rede om. U.⁴ scarlet gownes U.⁵ all U.⁶ enbrandrede U.⁷ vpou U.⁸ honour, reuerence and obeysaunce U.⁹ and so U.¹⁰ liege lorde U.¹¹ welcom om. U.¹² porugh U.¹³ with Inne U.¹⁴ doth or saith U.¹⁵ his U.¹⁶ and U.¹⁷ vij. U.

coronalles on their hedes, all clothed in white, as virgines, with sonnys¹ of golde on their garmentes, shewyng as heavenly creatures, mekely salewyng the Kyng, and gaf hym .vij. giftes, þat were 4 toknes of our Lord God of heven, þat were² white dowves, betokenyng the giftes of the Holy Gost, a spirite of intelligence, a spirite of sapience, and a spirite of strenght and of connyng, and of consayle, pite, drede, and lowlynesse. And on the lifte side of 8 these .iiij. Emperesses, were .vij. oper virgyns, clothed³ all in white, with sterres of gold on⁴ their garmentes, with coronalles on their hedes, which presented the Kyng with⁵ royall giftes: first, they endewed the Kyng with the crowne of glorye, and with the septre 12 of mekenesse⁶ and of pite; a swerd of myght and victorie, a mantell of prudence, a shelde of feith, a helme of helth, a girdell of love and of parfite peas. And all these ladyes and virgines welcomed the Kyng with all honoure and reuerence.⁷

16 And then the Kyng procedyng forth to the Condyte in Cornhill; and þere was made in serkelwyse a Trone; and in the myddes sitting, a yonge child arayed as a kyng, whom to gouerne were .iiij. ladyes, Mercy, Trouthe and the Lady⁸ Clennesse; and 20 .ij. Iuges of lawe, and .viij. sergeauntes, to shewe the kyngdom lawe and right. And then the Kyng rode forth, and entred into Chepe, and come to the grete Conduit, þat ranne plente of good wyne, bothe white and rede, to all peple þat wold drynk. And 24 aboue, ouer the Condyte, was a royall toure likned to Paradyse, with many dyuers trees⁹ beryng eueryche dyuers frutes. And in this same gardeyn was dyuers welles of dyuers wyne, with bokettes; and .iiij. glorious virgines wounde vp the wyne, pro- 28 feryng the Kyng there full habundaunce, fulsomnesse, and high plente. And the names of these virgines been 'Mercy, Grace, and Pite.' And in the ende of this gardeyn þere appered to the Kyng .ij. olde men,—þat oon, Enok; and þat oper, Ely,—þat shewed the 32 Kyng chere and grete preysing¹⁰ ministryng his gouernance.

And¹¹ the Kyng passed forth, and come to the Crosse in Chepe;

¹ soñs U. ² were vij U. ³ all clothede U. ⁴ vpon U.

⁵ leaf 211. ⁶ clennesses U.

⁷ with alle melodie & roalte of songe. And than ye Kyng rode forth, comes to redenhall in Cornhill, & þere was made a roiall thyng like vnto a tabernakle & þere in satt þat ladye sapience with the vij sciences euery in þere degre shewyng þere craftis werkis & konnynges & made grete Ioie melodie & songe vnto ye Kyng & welcomed hym with all honoure & reuerence U.

⁸ lady of U. ⁹ dyuers thynges and trees U. ¹⁰ praisyng and U.

¹¹ and þan U.

and there was made a castell roiall ; and on the Est syde stode .ij. grene treez, which bare the armes of England and of Fraunce, the libardes and the flouredelice, which been the Kinges right and trewe armes be lyne. And vpon this castell, toward Seint Paules, 4 there was the tree of Iesse, *with* all the braunches, shewyng the kynrede of oure Lorde Ihesu¹ and of our Lady,² Seint Marye, to the comfort of the Kyng, and for the grete solempnite of þe worthy cite of London. 8

And then they³ passed forth from þe⁴ Castell and come toward Seint Paules at the Litell Conduit ; and þere was made an heven indivisible of the Trinite ; and a trone compassed his roiall See *with* a grete multitude of angellys hym aboute, *with* dyuers 12 melodyes and songe, to hertly ioye and ⁵comfortyng of the Kyng and all his peple. And whan he was come to Seint Paules, there⁶ he alight doun of his hors ; and þere come þe Archebisshop of Caunterbury, and the Archebisshop of York,⁷ and þe Bisshop⁸ of 16 Lincoln, and the Bisshop[es] of Bathe, Salesbury, Norwich, Ely, and Rochestre, and the Dene of Paules *with* his couent, in procession, in their best araye of holy Chirche, and met *with* hym, and did hym obseruaunce as bylongeth⁹ to hym, and censed hym at his 20 comyng in ; and so brought the kyng to the high autere, *with* roiall songe. And there the kyng offred ; and then he come oute ageyn, and toke his hors, and come to Westminster ; and thider brought hym the Maire, Aldermen, and all the *communialte* of the 24 Cite of London.

And when the kyng was come to Westminster *with* all his peple, the Abbot and all the Couent come oute, coped roially, in procession, *with* high solempnite and gladnesse. And the Abbot 28 brought to the Kyng, Seint Edwardes septre ; and so he come into the Abbay *with* all solempnite, ioye and songe, and offred to Seint Edward ; and then come oute ageyne, and went to his palace. And then the Maire and Aldermen, *with* all the *communialte* of London, 32 toke their leve of the Kyng and of the lordes, and thanked God highly of his welfare and comyng.

And on the Seturday next suyng, the Maire and þe Aldermen come ageyn to Westminster to the palays, *with* a riche hanaper of 36 gold, and presented it to the Kyng, and a M^t .ii. of gold therin, to

¹ Ihesu Criste U. ² of his moder U. ³ the Kyng U. ⁴ that U.

⁵ leaf 211, back. ⁶ there om. U. ⁷ yorke his chaunceler U.

⁸ byshoppis of lyncolne Bathe U. ⁹ bylongede to theme U.

his bien venewe and welcom hoom; and prayed hym of his high myghty grace, lordship and love to his Chambre.

And pen anon after Ester next folowyng,¹ the Kyng held his
4 parlement at Westminster; and it lasted till seint Jametyde þe
Appostell. and at þe begynnyng of the parlement, the Cardynall,
the Bisshop of Wynchestre, come ouer the see into England, and so
to London to þe Kyng, to excuse hym of the offence; and blames
8 þat were put vpon hym for thinges² doon in Fraunce, by the com-
pleynt of certeyn lordes; wherof he hath worthely excused hym to
the Kyng and to his consayle; and so he was³ fully excused, and
the parties at oon.

12 And also to this parlement come Frenssh lordes, bothe spirituall
and temporell and ambassatours of Spayne, and oper diuers lordes
of dyuers⁴ landes, to trete for peas and other certeyn maters. And
the xxvj. day of Juyn come the Dukes son of Bretayn ouer the
16 see into England, and so to London⁶ to the Kyng; and with hym
come a Bisshop of that lande, and certeyn knyghtes and Squyers
and their meny.

20 Johannes Parneys, Maior. Johannes Olney } vicecomites
Johannes Paddesley } anno xj^o
[A.D. 1432-3.]

And this⁷ same yere, the Lord Camoys,⁸ Sir Waltere Hunger-
ford son, went ouer the see into Normandy, with knyghtes,
24 squyers, men of arme; and archers, to the Nombre of xv^e. peple
and mo, by ordynaunce of the Kyng and his Consayle of⁹ the
Reame, in strengthing and helpyng of the Duke of Bedford,
Regent in tho partie; and of all the Kynges liege peple, and for
28 keping of the Kynges title and right.

And in þis same yere the Kynges sonne of Naverne, with oper
dyuers peple with hym, come in ambassiatry to the Kyng and to¹⁰
his Consayle.

32 And in þis same yere the Kyng let intere the Duchesse¹¹ of
Bedford, which deyed in Fraunce,¹² at Seint Paules in London,¹²
with moche royalte and solempnite as myght be doon in holy Chirche.

And in this same yere, anon after Cristmasse, þe Bisshop of
36 Acres in the land of Navern, come to the Kyng in ambassiatry.

¹ next folowyng om. U. ² thinges Tr. for thinges U. ³ is U.

⁴ and of other dyuers U. ⁵ leaf 212.

⁶ into þis lande over the see and so to london U. ⁷ in this U.

⁸ Cannys and U. ⁹ and of U. ¹⁰ to om. U.

¹¹ entre at saint paules in london the duchesse U. ¹²⁻¹² om. U.

And in þis same yere on Seint Wolstans day, Sir Robert Fitzhugh was stalled Bisshop of London in the see¹ of Seint Paules.

And in this same yere, anon after Cristmasse, the grete conuocation and consayle of all the landes² in Cristendom, and also of all 4
oper seculer lordes, and Clerkes,—þat is to say, Bisshoppes and other³ consayle began in the Cite of Basyle in Duchelande, for to make vnite and peas among all Cristen peple, and for to destroye heretikes and erresye þat then reigned emong the peple.² 8

And in this same yere, anon after Ester,⁴ þe Archebisshop of Caunterbury and oper⁵ Bisshoppes with othere clergy, and the Duke of Gloucestre with oper lordes, knyghtes and squyers, went ouer the see to Caleys, for treti, and made pere a consayle⁶ betwene⁷ þe 12
Frenssh and þe Englissh. And þider come out of Fraunce þe Duke of Bedford, Regent, with many other Frenssh⁸ lordes, bothe spirituall and temporall; and also þider come þe Cardynall, þe
Bisshop of Wynchestre. 16

And in this same yere, the xxijth day of Aprell, the Erle of Huntynghon, with other dyuers lordes, knyghtes and⁹ squyers, with¹⁰ men of armes and archers, shipped at Hampton, and went ouer the see into¹¹ Normandy and so¹² to Fraunce, for to mayntene, 20
kepe and gouerne the right of cure Kyng and þe parties of Fraunce and Normandy.

And in this same yere, Herry Beauford, Cardynall, Bisshop of Wynchestre, come¹³ ouer the see into England, and so to London, 24
the xth day of Iuyn, to his Maner of Seint Mary Ouerey in Suthwerk.

And¹⁴ in this same yere was the Clipse in þe after-None, þat Asshewell þe white frere, and oper clerkes, spake of longe tyne 28
before; which all peple dowted and were sore aferd of, thurgh the speche of þe seid frere.¹⁵ And this clipse was the xvij.¹⁶
day of Iuyn.

And in this same yere come Iohn, Duke of Bedford, with his 32

¹ chirch U.

²⁻² of Cristiance of all ye spiritualte & temporallte and of all secular lordes and clerkis þat is to say Bisshoppis & other was holden & begonned in ye Citie of basile in Ducheland for to make peace & vnite betwix all cristen peple & for to destroye heretikes & heresie þat now reigneth amonge the peple U.

³ other which Tr. ⁴ Ester om. U. ⁵ oper om. U. ⁶ leaf 212, back.

⁷ to trete of peace and made a counsaill at Caleis betwene U.

⁸ grete U. ⁹ and om. U. ¹⁰ with om. U.

¹¹ to Caleis and so into U. ¹² so om. U. ¹³ come frome.

¹⁴ In U the next few lines down to *xix of June* are transposed.

¹⁵ þer of þorgh the freres speche. ¹⁶ xix U.

newe wedded wife, þe Erles daughter of Seintpoule; and they come from Fraunce ouer the see into England, and so come to London, the xxijth day of Iuyn, þat was Mydsomer Even. And 4 þe Mayre and aldermen, with many worthy comouns of London, brought theym from the Blak-Heth in Kent, and so to London into Fletestrete, vnto þe Bisshoppes Inne of Salesbury, with all honoure and reuerence.

8 John Brokley, Maior. Thomas Charlton } vicecomites
John Lynge vicecomes } Anno xij^o
[A.D. 1433-4.]

And in this same yere, and in the yere of grace M^t ccccxxxiiij^{ty}, þe viij. day of Iuyn, Iohn, Duke of Bedford, and his lady þe 12 Duchesse,¹ went ageyn² ouer þe see to Caleys, and so into Normandy and Fraunce, with a grete nombre of peple, in³ strengthing and mayntenynge of oure⁴ Kynges right in⁵ Fraunce and Normandy.

And in þis same yere was⁶ a grete pestilence in London, bothe 16 of men, women and childern; and namely of worthy men, as aldermen and oper worthi communiars; and also thurgh England þe peple deyed sore, bothe pore and riche,⁷ which was grete hevynesse to all peple.⁸

20 Robertus Otley, Maior. Thomas Bernewell } vicecomites anno
Symon Eyre } xiiij^o [A.D. 1434-5.]

And in this yere, and in þe yere of grace M^t. cccc. xxxv^{ty}, þe xxijth day Nouember, the grete and hard frost bygan; and it 24 endured vnto the fest of Candelmasse next, which destroyed þe olde peple, bothe men and women, and also yong childern. And also in that same tyme deyed many bay trees, and rosemary, Sauge, tyme, and many oper herbes.

28 And in this same yere, Sir Herrye Beauford, Cardynall, Bisshop of Wynchestre, and Maister Iohn Kemp, Archebisshop of York, and the Erle of Huntyngton, with oper lordes, knyghtes, and Squyers, and Clergye, went ouer the see into Fraunce, to þe Cite 32 of Reynes, to trete for a fynall peas betwene England and Fraunce. Bot it was sone disquat, for þe grete highnesse, pride, and couetyse of þe Frenssh party. For oure Englissh peple abode there from Midsomer till it was nygh Michelmasse. And so they departed 36 from hem, and come ageyne into England in saufte, thanked be God!

¹ & the Duchesse his wife U. ² ageyn *om.* U. ³ in the U. ⁴ the U.

⁵ leaf 213. ⁶ þer was U. ⁷ both men women & children U.

⁸ Here closes U [=MS. Un. Libr. Camb. Hh. VI. 9].

And in this same yere, anon after these lordes comyng out of Fraunce from this trefy of peas, Iohn, Duk of Bedford, was seke, and deyed in the Roan in Normandy; and there he is buryed: vpon whos soule, God haue mercy! amen! 4

Henricus Frowyk, Maior. Robertus Clopton } *vicecomites anno*
Thomas Catworth } *xiiiij^o [A.D. 1435-6.]*

And in this same yere, and in the yere of *grace* M^t ccccxxxvj^{ti}, Kyng Henre þe vjth held his parlement at Westmynster. And in 8 þis parlement was graunted a ¹disme for holy chirche, and a xvth thurghout the Reame, to mayntene þe Kynges werres and to deffende oure Enemyes. And also they graunted to þe Kyng in this parlement, of all peple, pore and riche, both of *spirituell* and 12 *temporell*, to pay of theire landes and rentes, and of all freheld þat they haue *within* this Reame of England, vj d. of þe pound; and þis treuly to fecche and geddre, to help in þe Kynges nedes as at this tyme. 16

And anon, in the begynnyng of Lent next folowyng, þe King, *with* his conseyle, borrowed a somme of gold purghout þe Reame, of temporall peple, þat amounted a c. M^t marc of money, to sende his peple *ouer* the see; to kepe, mayntene, and gouerne his landes 20 byyonde the See: of which somme, the peple of London lent x M^t marc in olde and in newe, þat is to sey, .iiij. M^t v^c marc of olde, and iiij M^t v^c marc of newe prest. So these ij. *sommes* drawen x M^t marc and more, *ouer* the good peple of þe Cite of London, þat 24 is to sey, certeyn craftes found both men of armes and archers to Caleys, forto kepe the towne in saufgarde from oure enemys, þat is to say, the Duke of Burgoyne and his strenght. And also the Cite of London sent stuff to Caleys, as Gones, Gonnepouder, *with* 28 other *commoditees* for the werre, to kepe þat place sauf, to þe worship of oure Kyng and of þe Reame, and to þe welfare and *profite* of all England.

And this same yere, deyed iiij bisshoppes in England, þat is to 32 say, the Bisshop of Ely, the Bisshop of London, the Bisshop of Lincoln, and the Bisshop of Bangore, and *oper* mo prelatz of worthynesse and state, in dyuers partyes of the Reame of England.

And in this same yere, the Erle of Morteyner went *ouer* þe see 36 to Caleys *with* a grete peple of men of armes and archers, in þe Passion Weke, in the defence of oure Kyng, and to destroye oure enemys.

¹ leaf 213, back.

And in this same yere, the iiijth day of Maye, the Erle of Salesbury, and his broder the Lord Faukonberge, went ouer the see into Normandy *with* a fayre company of knyghtes and squyers, 4 *with* men of armes and archers, in defence of þe Kyng and of þe Reame of England, for to destroye oure enemys.

And in this same yere, in þe Moneth of Maye, the Duke of York and þerle of Suffolk, *with* oþer lordes, ¹knyghtes and squyers, 8 men of armes and archers, and all oþer stuff and necessaryes þat *per*teyneth to werre, went ouer the see into Normandy and Fraunce, as lieftenaunt vnder the Kyng of England, forto gouerne and kepe þe landes of Fraunce and Normandy ageyns the Kynges 12 enemys, and in saluacion of the Kynges peple.

And in this same yere aboute Midsomer, the Duke of Burgoyne, *with* all his pusanace of peple, bothe of Fraunce and of Flaundes, and of oþer dyuers contreys, come and byseged þe towne of Caleys, 16 and þe garrysons þat belongen þerto. And þere they destroyed both Mark and Oye, and of þe Kynges peple many oon. And þey come thider *with* so grete strenght and ordynaunce of werre, þat it was impossible any creatures to conquere theym, sauf þe grace of 20 God oonly; wherfore þat the Kyng of England, with his consayle, let ordeyn and send ouer þe see to Caleys, for þe Rescues therof, and for his peple lying þere, and for his right, his vncler þe Duke of Gloucestre, the Duke of Norffolk, þe Erle of Warwyk, and þe Erle 24 of Stafford, and þe Erle of Ewe, his broder, and þe Erle of Huntingdon, and þe lord Fawnehope, Sir John Cornwayle knyght, and many oþer lordes, knyghtes and Squyers, and many oþer men of armes and archers, to þe nombre of Lx. M^t peple, *with* many 28 dyuers wepenys þat belongeth to batayle. And then come the Navy of Spayne, *with* oþer dyuers shippes, which were grete vessels, and stronge and well-manned, and byseged þe towne of Caleys by water. Then come þe Erle of Devenshire *with* his 32 Navye out of the west costes, and *with* oþer dyuers shippes of England well-manned; and they herd of his commyng, and they voided, and went theire wey thens, and wold no lenger abide. And then the Erle of Morteyner and þe Lorde Camoys, *with* a certeyn 36 of theire peple, issued oute of Caleys, and brake the sege þat the Duke of Burgoyne had ordeyned ayenst the towne of Caleys, and come to þe Bastyle of strength, and slewe þe most party þat were *perin*, and destroyed moche peple, and toke his ordynaunce, and

¹ leaf 214.

the remenaunt fledde away. And this was doon ere the Duke of Gloucestre come ouer þe see to Caleys ¹with his Navye and people.

And after this, aboute our Lady Day þe assumpcion, the Duke of Gloucestre, the Duke of Norffolk, *with* Erles and lordes, *with* all 4 theire oper people and ordynaunces, come vnto Caleys forto rescue it, and forto destroye the sege; bot it was doon and ended ere they come, thanked be God of his grace! And þen þe Duke of Gloucestre, *with* all his people, abode in Caleys till he had take his 8 consayle what was best to doon. And þen he toke all his people and went into Flaundres, and slowe and brent all *pat* they myht, and toke .ij. townes, Poperying and Bell. And anon when this was doon, he comanded all his peple to *turne* ageyn to Caleys, vpon 12 peyn of deth, in all haste. And so pey taryed not longe there, bot come ageyn in all hast into England.

And in pis same yere, whils all this doying was at Caleys and in Flaundrez, the Kyng of Scottes come *with* an huge powere of peple 16 and ordynaunce, and biseged þe towne of Berwik, and after, the Castell of Rokesburgh, and did moche harme *pere* as he come. And þen come þe Erle of Northumberland and þe Erle of Westmerland, *with* lordes and peple of the Cuntrees, and distroyed and 20 brake his seges; and he fledde *with* his peple, and turned ageyn into Scotland.

Johannes Mychell, Maior.	Thomas Mustum	{ Vicecomites Anno xv ^o 24 [A.D. 1436-7.]
	Willelmus Gregory	

And in this same yere, and the yere of grace M^t CCCC. xxxv^{ti} the grete, hard, bityng frost bygan the vij. day of Decembre, and endured vnto þe xxij. day of Feuerere next, which greved þe peple 28 wonder sore; and moche pepel deyed in *pat* tyme, for colde and for skarcite of wode and cole. And tender herbes were slayne *with* pis frost, *pat* is to say, Rosemary, sauge, tyme, and many oper herbes. 32

And in pis same yere deyed good Quene Kateryn, *pat* was moder to Kyng Henre the Sext, and wife to Kyng Henre the .vth, 36
 the þursday þe .iij. day of ²Ianuaire, in þe Abbey of Bermondesey without Suthwerk, in þe counte of Surre. And the Friday, the 36
 viij. day of Feuerere next after, the body of the Quene was brought to Seint Kateryns beside the Toure, and so thurgh London to Seint Paules, *with* lordes and ladyes, and *with* the Maire and Aldermen,

¹ leaf 214, back.

² leaf 215.

and the Craftes in London and *with* all the religious peple, as chanons, prestys and freres; and there was a solempne dirige and masse on the morowe. And from thens she was brought to West-
4 mynstre, and pere was hir terement holden and doon rially; and pere buried in the Chapell of oure Lady, on whos soule, God haue mercy! Amen!

And in this same yere, duryng the hard frost, pe Monday the
8 ^{Wed. in 1437} ^{14 Jan} ^{Monday} xxiiij. of Ianuare, the gate of pe Cite at London Brugge ouer-threwe-
and fell doun into Tamys to pe hard ground, and drewe the houses
after hym, bothe within and without, to grete harm to pe Cite and
to pe brigge.

12 And in this same yere, the walles of chirches, howses, and of Selers, *pat* were made of chalke, broke in many places, and fell in smale pecys to the grounde as dust.

And in this yere pe Kyng held his *parlement* at Westmynstre; and it byganne at pe Fest of Seint Hillary, and ended at Ester next folowyng. And in pe begynnyng of Lent, tydynges come to pe Kyng and to the Reame, how *pat* pe Kyng of Scottes, Sir Iames Steward, was slayn at Seint Johnes Towne *with* treson, by a Squyer
20 of Scotland. And to this *parlement* come many dyuers straungers, somme of Aragon in Spayne, somme of Spruce, somme of Beam, and somme of Fraunce and Normandy. And pe Bisshop of Tyrwyn, *with* dyuers knyghtes and Squyers, come to this same
24 *parlement*.

And in this same yere, the ixth day of Iuyll, deyed Quene Iohan in the Maner of Haueryng-at-Bour in Essex, which was wife to Kyng Henry the iiijth; and from thens she was brought to
28 Caunterbury, and there is she buried: on whose soule, God haue mercy! Amen!

And in this yere, anon after Midsomer, the Lord Willoughby, and other lordes *with* hym, knyghtes and squyers, men of armes
32 and archers, were sent ouer the see into Fraunce, forto strenght, mayntene, and kepe the Kynges title and right *pat* he hadde in Fraunce and Normandy.

And in this same yere, at pe Natiuite of oure Lady Seint Mary,
36 pe Erle of Warwik was ordeyned ¹ and comaunded ouer the see into Fraunce and Norma[n]dy, forto be lieftenaunt and gouernour in the Kynges name, *with* strenght of all pe *partyes* and landes *pat* the King hath byyonde the see, as in Fraunce, Normandy, and

¹ leaf 215, back.

Gascoyne. And then the Duke of York come hoom ageyn, *pat* longe tyme had been there; and so the same tyme he toke his journey *with* lordes, knyghtes and squyers, men of armes and archers, a royall and a worthy company, and toke *with* hym *pe* 4 lady his wife, and the yonge Lord Spencer, his sonne and his heire, and shipped in Goddes name, and toke the see. And when they were forth in the see, there arose grete tempestes, stormes and wyndes; and then they stode in perill of deth; and so, as God 8 wold, he was dryven ageyn into England costes, and were saved; and so, at Allhalowentyde next, the good Erle of Warwyk toke his shipping ageyn, and passed ouer the see, and come *with* his peple to Roan in saufte, thanked be God! 12

Willelmus Estfeld, Maior.	Willelmus Hales	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{vicecomites} \\ \text{anno xvj}^{\circ} \\ \text{[A.D. 1437-8.]} \end{array} \right.$
	Willelmus Chapman	

And in this same yere, and in the yere of grace M^t CCCC 16 xxxviiij, a woman of Highgate, *pat* was a tayllours wife, lete sle hir husbond; and *perfore* she was Iuged to be brent at the Toure hill, *pe* Monday *pe* xxvijth day of Ianuare.

And in this same yere, on Esterday, a gardyner *pat* wonned at 20 Seint Mary at Nax in London, receued *pe* glorious sacrament oure Lordes body, and toke it oute of his mouth, and hidde it in a clowte, and wold haue brent it. And the *parson* took the sacrament, and receuyed it reuerently, and brought it to *pe* high auter ageyn, and 24 sent *pe* gardyner to prison. And *pe* Bisshop of London and *oper* Bisshoppes and clergye sate vpon hym, and Iuged hym, for lollardry and erresye, to be brent in Smythfeld.

And in this same yere, the xiiij. day of Iuyn, .v. men of the 28 Cuntre of Tynderden in Kent, were founden and taken for heresyes and destroyers of the Kinges peple; and so they were brought to ¹ Maidston in Kent, and there Iuged to deth, to be drawe, hanged, *quarterd*, and theire hedes smyten of. 32

And in this same yere, the Erle of Morteyn went ouer the see into Fraunce by the Kynges comaundment and consayle, forto strenght and kepe in the Kinges name *certeyn* partyes in Fraunce and Normandy, *with* knyghtes, squyers, men of armes and archers. 36

And all this yere duryng, was grete scarcite of corn; for a busshell whete was at xx d. and ijs., and in the last ende of the yere at xxvj d. *pe* busshell; and a busshell of rye was at xvjd. and

¹ leaf 216.

xviii d., and barley at x d. and xij d.; and then was right feble brede made for þe comon peple; and a galon of rede wyne at x d., and all oper swete wyne at xvj d., as Romney, Malvesyne, Clarry, Tyre; 4 and flessch and fyssh was longe tyme at an high price, which was grete charge to all the comons purghout þe Reame. And in all þe North Cuntre a busshel of whete was at x d. the most part of þe yere. And moche worthy peple deyed in the yere of pestilence, 8 and of oper *commune* peple of men, women and childern, thurghout þe Ream, and principally at York and in the North Cuntre; on whos soules God haue mercy! amen!

And in that same yere, in the Moneth of Iuyll, were made .vij. 12 Sergeauntez of Lawe; and they held their generall fest the day of the Translacion of Seint Thomas, in the Bisshoppes Inne of Ely in Holbourne.

16 Stephen Broun, Maior. Hugo Dyke } *vicecomites*
Nicholaus Yoo } *anno xvij^o*
[A.D. 1438-9].

And in this same yere, and the yere of *grace* M^t CCCC xxxix^{ti}, 23 Nov on Seint Clementes day, betwene .iij. and .iiij. after None, þer 20 fell such wedring of wynde and rayne, thondyr and lightnynges; and a grete smoke of the lightnynge, þat all peple were sore agast þerof, for þe hydous noyse þat was herd in the Reame. And þerwith an erthquake, þat shoke all the grounde.

24 And in this yere on Seint Georges Even, ^{so 24 Apr} 1 the holy Martir, from .ij. after mydnyght vnto .v. of the klok in þe mornyng, þer was so huge and so grevous wedryng of thundir and lightnyng, hale, wynde and Rayne, þat the peple were hugely agast and dred of it; 28 bot oure Lord God and his blessed Moder, oure Lady Seint Marye, saved and kept all his hande-werk at all tymes,—blessed myght He and she be! amen!

And in this same yere, on the Monday next after Trinite 32 Sondag, the Erle of Huntingdon, *with* oper lordes, knyghtes and Squyers, men of armes and archers, went out of London toward the see for to gouerne and kepe the Cite of Burdeux, and also the Cuntreyes of Gascoyne and Guyan, to the profite of oure liege Lorde 36 the Kyng, and to the welfare of the Reame of England.

And in this same yere deyed Sir Richard Beauchamp, Erle of Warwyk, in Normandy; and his bonys were brought into England,

and buried at the towne of Warwik: on whos soule, God haue mercy! amen!

And in this same yere, the .v. day of Iuyn, the Erle of Stafford, *with* lordes, knyghtes, squyers, men of armes and archers, 4 in good aray, went ouer the see to Caleys, for tretice betwene England and Fraunce. And *within* .ij. dayes after, went ouer the see to Caleys, the Archebissshop of York, pe Bisshop of Norwiche, and the Bisshop of Seint Dauy, *with* a grete meyne of clerkes, and 8 moche *oper* peple *with* theym, in good arraye, to Caleis, to this same tretice. And the Friday next after that, went the Cardinall, the Bisshop of Wynchestre, *with* a grete multitude of peple, *ouer* the see to Caleys, to the same tretice. And the Seturday next, 12 went out of the Cite of London toward Caleis, to that same tretice, the Duke of Norffolk, *with* *oper* grete lordes, knyghtes and squyers, and moche *oper* peple *with* hym, in good arraye; And Sir Richard Wodevyle, knyght, and Sir Roger Chamberlayn, knyght; and 16 many *oper* worthy states of knyghtes and Squyers, *with* men of armes and archers, went *ouer* the see into Normandy, to kepe the Kynges title and right. And pere pe Cardynall and these Bisshoppes, and the Duke of Norffolk, abode pere, and treted *with* 20 the Frenssh party vnto pe *terme* of Michelmasse ¹ next folowyng.

And in all this yere, all greynes of corne were at an high price; for whete was at xxxij d., barly at xvj d., and rye at .ij. s., vnto the *terme* of Michelmasse next; and then was whete at xvij d., barly 24 at x d., and Rye at xiiij d.

Robertus Large, Maior.	Robertus Marchall	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{vicecomites} \\ \text{anno xvij}^{\circ} \\ \text{[A.D. 1439-40]}. \end{array} \right.$	28
	Philippus Malpas		

And in this same yere, and in the yere of *grace* M^t CCCC xl., a *seruaunt* pat was with a man of Hakney, .ij. myle from London, come *with* his mayster to London, and bought vitayle and must for deynthe, forto sende hoom to his wife, for she was grete *with* childe. 32 And the fals creature, when he come hoom, slewe pe wife and the child *within* her, and an *oper* damysell and a noper yong felawe pat was *within* his hous, and robbed theym of all their Iewels and tresoure pat they hadde within theym. And so he fledde, and wold 36 haue goon his weye; but God wold not so; for murdour woll comoute; and so he was take and brought to London, and so to Westminster; and pere he had his dome, to be brought to pe Toure of

¹ leaf 217.

London, and pere leide on a hirdell, and drawn thurgh the Cite to Tyburn, and pere hanged for his falshede.

And anon after in this same yere, pe Cardynall and oper 4 Bishoppes, and the Duke of Norffolk, with all oper lordes, bothe spirituall and temporall, had ended their trete, and made a trewes betwene England and Fraunce and Flaundes for iij. yere; and thus was this matere ended.

8 And in this same yere, Pope Eugeny, of the high grace and gifte of God, and of his grete avise and gouernance, conuerted and brought all the land of Grece, and oper provynces and kyngdoms, into Cristen lawe and feith, and to hold the lawe and feith of Rome -12 and of the Pope, as we doon at all tymes.

And in this same yere, on the morne after Seint Martyns Day, Kyng Henry the Sext held his parlement at Westminster, ¹ and it endured there vnto Cristmasse next, and myght not acorde. And 16 the morowe after xij. day, the Kyng and his lordes removed it to pe towne of Redyng; and pere the parlement was holden and ended, to the welfare of the King and of the Reame, as we trust and hope in oure Lord God, in tyme comyng.

20 And in this same yere, aboute Cristmasse, went the Erle of Somersett ouer the see into Fraunce and Normandy, with a roiall peple of lordes, knyghtes, Squyers, men of armes and archers, forto gouerne there pe Kynges peple and landes, and to strenght the 24 lordes and their peple pat hadde been pere long tyme, savyng and mayntenyng the Kynges right and title.

And in pis same yere, the Duchesse of Clarence deyed in the Abbey of Bermondsey without Suthwerk in Surre. And sho was 28 caried to Caunterbury, and buried beside the Lord Thomas hir husband, which was Duke of Clarence, on whos soule, God haue mercy! amen!

And in this same yer deyed the Countesse of Warwik, and is 32 buried beside hir lord, Sir Richard Beauchamp, Erle of Warwik: on whos soules, God haue mercy! amen!

And this same yere, in the tyme of Lent, come .vj. persones with their shippes from byonde the see, with dyuers fyssh forto 36 vitayle the Cite of London. And when they were delyuerd, and goyng homward, per come a company of fals men, and pursued them in a barge, and come vpon them in the nyght, as pey were aslepe in their vesseles and rode by anker in Tamys, and slewe all

¹ leaf 217, back.

pat were there in the shippes, and cutte peir throtes and cast theym in the water, and after drowned theire shippes,—and the shippes sank in the water,—for no man shuld espye theire falsnesse. And so, *within* a while after, two of these theves were take and 4 dampned, for theire trespasse, *pat* they brake the Kynges trewes and peas, to be ledde to Seint Katerins byyonde the Toure of London, and *pere* a payre of Galowes to be sett vp, and hanged *with* cheynes and colers of Iron, till they be wasted and spent. 8 And this was doon on a Friday, in the mornyng, *pe* xixth day of Aprell.

And in pis same yere, ¹a fuller of Shordiche apeched of treson many worthy men of Kent, bothe Squiers, and *oper* worthy men of 12 gentelmen; wherof he was atteint, and proved fals of his fals apechement; And so he was brought afore the lawe, and dampned to be drawe and hanged, and his hede smyten of, and sett on London Brigge, and his *quarters* set on .iiij. gates of London: and 16 this was doon the iiijth day of Maye.

And in this same yere, Sir Richard Wyche, vicar of Hermondesworth in *Middlesex*, *pat* somtyme was vicar of Depford in Kent; and oon Roger Norman, of Normandy born, was take and brought 20 before the Bisshop of London, and tofore the clergie, in the Chapitre hous of Seint Paules; and there they bothe were conuicte in heresy. And then there come a writte from the Chaunceller to the Maire and Shirrefs of London, to do execucion on theym; and 24 so they were brought to the Towre Hill on Seint Botulphes Day, and *pere* brent, bothe in oon tonne; and thus they ended their lives in this world. And *pe* peple *pat* sawe theym dye, had grete compassion on theym, for the confession and ende *pat* they made 28 in their good byleve, and thanked God of his sonde.

And in this same yere, the xij. day of August, *per* fell such wederyng of rayn, thunder and lightnyng in *pe* after None, *pat* it was hydous, and wonder to se; wherof the peple were sore agast; 32 for the lightnyng fell in Bredstrete, on *pe* Inne *pat* is called the Sterre; and there it did moche harme, for it fell in a hey hous where *per* was .L. cartfull of heye, and more; and it was all lost and destroyed, and was caried into Chepe; and had not been the 36 high mercy and grace of God, and the grete Rayn, the peple dred it shuld haue brent moche of the Cite and destroyed moche good in that partye.

¹ leaf 218.

were sore agast, and aferd of the grete tempest. And so it was spoken emonges the peple, *pat per* were som wikked fendes and spirites arered out of helle by coniuracion, forto noy pe peple in the Reame, and to put theym to trouble, discencion ¹ and vnrest. An 4
 pen was it knowen *pat* certeyn clerkes, and women *pat* ar called 'wicches,' had made theire operacion and theire craft to destroy men and women, or whom they list, vnto deth by theire fals craft and worching. Wherof Dame Alianore Cobham, which was pe 8
 Duchesse of Gloucestre, was named principally of these actes and fals dedes forto destroy the Kyng, whom God saue and kepe! Bot as God wold saue his hande-werk and *seruaunt*, made it be knowen openly, all theire fals werkys and tresoun *pat* they ymagyned and 12
 wrought, which was openly shewed afore all peple *pat* wold com to Seint Paules Crosse on the Sonday, the xxij. day of Iuyll, by Roger *pat* was hir Clerk, a Nigromancier, by the deuels crafte and ymaginacion in his worching, which was shewed openly in pe 16
sermon-tyme, the day aboueseyd, to all peple *pat* wold come to se it, of here scriptures, ymages of siluer, of *wexe*, and of *oper* metalles, and swerdys, *with* many *oper* dyuers instrumentes of this fals craft of Nigromancy and the deuels powere. And pere Roger, this 20
 Clerk, stode vpon an high stage, *with* all his Instrumentes about hym, spoyling of his garment; and did vpon hym a surplyce, *with* a crowne of papir vpon his hede, forto forsake all his fals craft of the devell, and for to relapse all *pat* he had doon and wrought by 24
 the devyll and his powere, in presence of the Archebisshop of Canterbury, the Cardynall, pe Bisshop of Wynchestre, pe Bisshop of London, the Bisshop of Salesbury, and many *oper* grete clerkys beyng there present; and of *oper* lordes temporalles, therle of 28
 Huntingdon, therle of Northhumberland, and therle of Stafford, and moo *oper* lordes of the Kynges Consayl, and the Maire and Aldermen, *with* pe Comons of the Cite of London, and many moo people of dyuers partyes, and straungers of the Reame, and aliens 32
 of *oper* straunge landes beyond the see, beyng in pe ² Cite of London *pat* tyme.

And on pe Tewesday, which was Seint James Day pe Apostell, Dame Alianore Cobham come out of the seintwary at Westminster 36
 into the Kinges Chapell which is within the Kinges paleys, to the high autere of the same Chapell, which is of Seint Stephen, before the principall clergye of the Reame which were pere present, *pat* is

¹ leaf 219.¹ leaf 219, back.

to sey, the Archebisshop of Caunterbury, *primate* of all England, the Cardynal of Wynchestre, the Cardynal of York, the Bisshops of London, Bathe, and Salesbury, and of other many principall
4 Clerkes of the Reame which were there present, and examyned Dame Alianore Cobham of xxviij. dyuers poyntes, bothe of felony and of treson, which pey opened and shewed there to hir. And she ansuered to the Clergye, and sayde 'not gilty'; and so they let
8 hir go sauf ageyn to the Seintwary vnto the morowe, pat was Seint Anne day. And thider she come ageyn as she was charged of the Bisshops; and there was Roger hir Clerk, present, and vouched all these poyntes vpon hir pat were shewed the day aboueseyd to hir,
12 wherof she knowleched *somme* poyntes at that tyme, the nombre of .v.,—and so she went ageyn into Westmynstre for a certeyn tyme tyll pat the Kyng, with his Consayll, wold do correccion and remedy of all this fals actys and dedys, thus ymagyned and doon
16 to his *persone*, and his lordes and lieges.

And on pe same day the Kyng sent to London to the Maire and Aldermen and Comons of the Cite, and also to therle of Huntingdon, pe Erle of Stafford, therle of Northumberland, the
20 Tresorer of England, Sir Rauf Cromwell, the Lord Fawnehop, Sir John Cornwayle, Sir Walter Hungerford, and oper knyghtes and Squyers, to fele and see what was to be doon to amende and destroy this fals dede and cursed ymagynacion to the Kyng and to pe
24 Reame. And they, of their good discrecion and wysedom, as trewe liege peple ordeyned .iiij. enquestes *within* the Cite, of substantiall peple; to brynge and shewe trewe inquisicion of all crymes and trespasses pat she was accused of. And they found hir
28 gilty bothe ¹of treson and of felony; and so, thurghout Middelsex, the questes were charged at Westminster of knyghtes and Squyers, to brynge in their *verдите*; and they indited her in the same poyntes, bothe of felony and of treson. And so, the .xj. day of
32 August, Dame Alianore was take into the handes and ward of Sir John Steward and Sir William Wolff, knyghtes, and to oper persones as the Kyng and his consayle ordeyned and devised to her, and to oper of hir consayle and affinite, as they haue deserued,
36 after his tyme and leyser; and she to be kept in holde strongly in the Castell of Ledes in Kent, vnto pe wille of the Kyng and of his Consayle, and all pe oper persones, bothe men, women wicches, and oper, to be kept in the Toure of London to his likyng, leyser, and

tym to do to theym as they haue deserued. And so, the ^{TR-25}.xix. day of Octobre next, by the Kynges comaundment, and his Consayl, Sir Iohn Steward, knyght, *with strenght of peple*, brought Dame Alianore Cobham from the Castell of Ledes to Westminster, into 4 the Kynges paleys; and there she was put and kept in warde of pe Constable vnto hir answeere and examynacion. And the Friday next she was brought into Seint Stephens Chapell, called 'the Kynges chapell,' and 'the Kynges college,' afore the Clergye; and 8 pere was examyned of hir sorcery, and wicheckcraft and treson. And so all the poyntes were opened and shewed there to hir by certeyn Bisshops and clerkys, *pat* is to sey: the Bisshop of London, pe Bisshop of Lincoln, the Bisshop of Salesbury, and the Bisshop 12 of Norwiche, *with moo oper doctours* and maysters of diuinite, beying pere present. And then she *withneyed* and *withseyd* all the poyntes; *pat* were put and shewed to hir *pat* tyme. And than she had respite and day of ansuere till the Monday next. And pere 16 she come ageyn to the same chapell, tofore all the Clergye and Bisshops and doctours, and maystres of diuinite. And then come Roger, hir Clerk, *with* all his Instrumentes *pat* were shewed at Seint Paules Crosse aforetyme, and they were shewed to Dame 20 Alianore Cobham; and she *withneyed*, and seyde 'it was not so; +bot *pat* she did it forto haue borne a child ¹ by hir lord, the Duke of Gloucestre,' and pere was Maister Thomas Suthwell, parson of Seint Stephens in Walbroke, and Chanon of pe Kynges Chapell, 24 *pat* was of hir craft and consayle ayenst hir; and the wicche of Eye, beside Westminster, ayenst Dame Alianore Cobham; and seide *pat* she was causer and doer of all this werk and dede; And so they were all put vp ageyn as for that tyme. And the xxvjth day 28 of Octobre next suyng, deyed the seide Mayster Thomas Suthwell, in the Toure of London. And the Friday next, the wicche of Eye was brought from the Towre of London into Smythfeld, and there brent for hir fals beleve and wicheckcraft *pat* she had vsed of longe 32 tyme.

Robertus Clopton, Maior.	Willielmus Combes	} vicecomites } anno xx ^o } [A.D. 1441-42.] 36
	Ricardus Riche	

And in this same yere, and the yere of grace M^oCCCC xliij., the vj. day of Novembre, the Archbisshop of Canterbury and the .ij. Cardynalles of Wynchestre and of York, and pe Bisshops of

¹ leaf 220, back.

London, Lincoln, Salesbury and Norwiche, with dyuers doctors
and maistres of diuinite, deuorsed and departed the Duke of
Gloucestre and Dame Alianore Cobham, as for matrimony made
4 before betwene theym two. And so Dam Alianore Cobham, by
ordynaunce and charge of the Archebisshop of Canterbury and his
brethern, was Joyned to hir penaunce for þe grete offence and
trespasse þat she had doon ayenst God and holy Chirche, and for
8 the fals sorcery and wicchecraft þat she vsed and longe tyme had
wrought, þat she shuld go from Westminster to London .iij.
market dayes in the weke, Monday, Wednesday, and Friday, with
a taper brennyng in her hande: oon to Seint Paules, an other to
12 Cristchirch, and þe thridde to Seint Michelles in Cornhill. And
the Monday, the xiiijth day of Nouembre, Dame Alianore Cobham
come by water from Westminster to the Temple brigge, forto do hir
charge of penance, on fote thurgh Fletestrete ¹ to Seint Paules;
16 and þere she offred hir first taper. And the Wednesday next she
come from Westminster by Water to the Swanne in Tamystrete,
and come on fote with a taper in hir hande, and come vp Tamystrete
to Seint Magnus corner, and vp Briggestrete, and Eschepe and
20 Graschirch, and so to the Corner of Leden-Hall, and so to Crist-
chirch; and there offred the secund taper. And the Friday next,
she come from Westminster by water to the Quene-Hithe, and so
vp purgh Bredstrete into Chepe; and thurgh Chepe into Cornhill,
24 to Seint Michelles chirch, and þere offred a taper of a pound wexe;
And then was she brought ageyn to Westminster, into the Constable-
ward.

And the Seturday next, þe ^{for xviii = only chronological error} xvij. day of Notembre, Roger
28 Bultyngbrok, Dame Alianore Cobhams Clerk of Nigromancy and
sorcery, was brought to the Guyldhall of London, and þere dampned
for his fals treson, and for his fals tresoun, and sorcery and
Nigromancy ayenst all holy Chirch; wherthurgh he was dampned
32 to deth by landes lawe. And he was ledde to the Toure of London,
and leyd vpon a hirdell, and drawen thurgh the Cite to Tybourne
galowes, and þere hanged, and let downe ageyne all quyk, and his
bowelles cutte out of his body, and brent afore hym. And then was
36 his hede smyten of, and his body quartered; and oon sent to
Oxenford, the secund sent to Cambrigge, the thridde to Bristowe,
and the fourth to []²; and his hede was set vpon London
Brigge: and pus he ended his life in pis world.

¹ leaf 221.

² Blank space left in MS.

And Dame Alianore Cobham yet kept in ward in þe Constableness of Westminster, vnto the Wednesday, the xxiiij. day of Ianuare; and then she was brought thens to þe Maner of Neyte, which is the Abbotes of Westminster; and þere she was kept 4 Wednesday, Thursday, and Friday till noon. And when she was brought first out of Westminster, þere was such wedryng of thonder, lightnyng, hayll and rayne, þat the peple were sore adredde and agast of the grete noyse and hydous of þe weder, ¹ þat sodenly was 8 doon and shewed þere at their passage at þat tyme. And on the Friday at after-None, she was had at the Kynges comaundment and wille, forth to the Cite of Chestre, in an hors-bere, with strenght of peple; and fro Chestre into þe Ile of Man, to be kept þere in sauf 12 gard, etc.

And in this same yere was a batell doon, the xxxth of Ianuare, in Smythfeld, betwene .ij. worthy men, and bold in armes and fight: þat oon man called Sir Philipe Beef, a knyght of Catelyne; 16 and on þat oþer party, a Squyere of þe Kynges of England, þat men called Iohn Astley. And at þe comyng to þe feld, eyþer of theym toke their tent; and then was þe knyghtes son of Catelyne brought to the Kyng, and the Kyng made hym knyght; and then he was 20 brought ageyn to his faders tent. And then, *within* a while after, the heraudes of armes called theym bothe oute, to do their fight; and so þey come in bothe armed *with* all their wepen about theym; bot the knyght come *with* his swerd drawe, and the Squyere *with* 24 his spere. And the Squyer cast his spere to þe knyght; and the knyght avoyded it *with* the swerd, and cast it to the ground; and the Squyer hent his axe, and went to the knyght at onys, and smote many strokes hard and sore vpon his Basenet and on his 28 hande, and made hym lese his axe. And it fell from hym to þe grounde, and brast vp his vmbre .ij. tymes, and kaught his daggere, and wold haue smyten hym in the face forto haue slayne hym in the feld. And then the Kyng cryed 'hoo!' and so they 32 were departed; and eyþer of theym went hoom ageyn to his tent. And then the Kyng sent for his squyere Iohn Astley, and made hym to be dubbed knyght, for his worthy and good Iourney þat he did and wrought at þat tyme on his enemy in his noble presence, 36 etc.

And in this same yere, the xviiijth day of Maye, began a huge storme of sodeyn wederyng, anon after .iiij. of þe clok at after-None,

¹ leaf 221, back.

vnto .vj. of the clok, of hayle, rayne, thundre and lightnyng, *pat* the peple wondred *pervpon*. And *pe* hayle bete down all the blossomes of trees, *pat* the frute was all goon for this yere, at
 4 London and aboute London, for *pe* multitude of watere ¹*pat* come of *pe* hayle and rayne.

And in this yere, the xxv day of Maye, the Lord Talbot toke his *iourney* fro London toward Normandy and Fraunce, for to help
 8 to gouerne and kepe vnder the Duke of York, the *partyes* byyond the see, *with* knyghtes, Squyers, men of armes and archers, and all *maner* stuff *pat* longed to werre: which, Almyghty God gouerne, save, and kepe, and all *pe* Kynges trewe peple, bothe in that party
 12 and in oures! And er he toke his *iourney* out of this lande, *pe* Kyng made the Lord Talbot, Erle of Shrovesbury, and his son and heire Lord Talbot.

16 *Johannes* Atherley, Maior. Thomas Beaumont { *vicecomites*
 Ricardus Nordon { *anno xxj*^o
 [A.D. 1442-43.]

And in this same yere, and the yere of *grace* M^t CCCC xliij., *pe* Tewesday the xiiij. day of Maye, oon Botiler Steynour, and a
 20 Baker, and two *oper* men and a preest, which were strong, errant theves, robbing and *quellyng* the Kynges peple, were dampned at Westminster to be ledde in a Cart standyng vpright from the Kynges Benche in Suthwerk, and so thurgh the Cite of London,
 24 tyll they come to Tyburn, and there to be hanged. And so they deyed, all .v. *persones*; and at the comyng of *pem* into the Cart, *pere* fell suche wedryng from the skye, *pat* folke were sore adredde and agast, it was so horrible and grete, what of rayne, thondere and
 28 lightnyng and hayll, in their passage to *pe* deth. And on the Tewesday next suyng, two strong theves, and a woman thefe, were hanged at Tyborn for their fals offences and trespassez, and murdryng of the Kynges peple.

32 And in this same yere, *pe* Monday next folowyng, the woman of Kent *pat* met *with* the Kyng at *pe* Blak-Heth in Kent, and spake to hym boldly, and reviled hym vngoodly and vnwisely for Dame Alianore Cobham, *pat* he shuld haue hir hoom ageyn to hir
 36 husbond, the Duke of Gloucestre. And *with* these wordes the Kyng wexe wroth, and toke it to hert; and ²she was arested and brought into prison by the lawe, and so brought to Westminster afore the Iusticez of the Kynges Benche. And *pere* she was reprevd

¹ leaf 222.

² leaf 222, back.

for hir vngoodly langage, and sole-hardynesse to speke so to hir liege lorde, the Kyng. And she ansuered not, bot asked the Kynges grace. And fro pat day she was put vp ageyn in the Kynges Benche till Wednesday next, and then was brought ageyn 4 to Westminster afore the Iustices. And when she was examyned, she wold not speke ne ansuere; and perfore þe Iustices gafe hir dome, pat she shuld stand in a cart vpright, from the Kynges Benche, and so thurgh London, pat all peple myght se hir, with a 8 paupire about hir hede, of hir proude and lewed langage pat she had spoke and shewed to þe Kyng. And so she was caryed ageyn þurgh London and Suthwerk, in þe same Cart, tyll she come to þe Blak-Heth þere as she seide these wordes vnto þe King; and then 12 was caryed ageyn to Suthwerk, and delyuerd ageyn to þe keepers of þe Kynges Benche, for to haue hir Iugement as þe Iuge had ordeyned it for her offence, forto lay as moche yron vpon hir body till she be deed: and thus she ended in this world, for hir proude 16 langage to hir Kyng and souerayn lord.

And in this yere the Kyng made the Erle of Somerset, Markes—? Dorset, and ordeyned hym with a grete Navy of peple, of lordes, knyghtes, Squyers, men of armes and archers; with all maner stuff 20 of werre, forto gouerne, kepe and mayntene his landes in Fraunce, Normandy, and Guyan. And he abode longe tyme after in England, vpon the coostes, to abide for shipping and peple pat were not come to hym. And so, the xxj. day of Iuyll, he toke his 24 shipping ouer the see into Fraunce and Normandy, with his Retenew in good aray and in good spede, þurgh the grace of God and his Moder, oure Lady Seint Mary, and by the comfort of Seint George. And in this yere, the vj. day of August, Gyles, the Dukes 28 broder of Bretayn, come to London, and so to þe Kyng, as for his souerayn lord and best beloued frende, forto play and sporte hym here in this lande, for a tyme, ¹ and bysought þe Kyng of his grace and good lordship at all tymes. And so he and his were loeged at 32 the Crowne in Fanchirch Strete, for the tyme of his abidyng here, and of the Kynges grace and gode wille.

Thomas Catworth, Maior.	Nicholaus Wyfold	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{vicecomites} \\ \text{anno xxij}^{\text{do}} \\ \text{[A.D. 1443-44.]} \end{array} \right.$	36
	Johannes Norman		

And in this same yere, and the yere of grace M^t CCCC xliij^{ti},
^{12 Aug 1444}
 anon after Ester, the Duke of Somerset come out of Fraunce and—

¹ leaf 223.

Normandy into England, and deyed at a Maner of his owne in the west cuntre: vpon whos soule, God haue mercy! amen!

And in pis same yere, on the Wednesday in the Whitson weke, 4 þe Kyng made the Erle of Huntyngdon, Duke of Excestrè, in the Castell of Wyndesore; and in the fest of the Exaltacion of the Holy Crosse next folowyng, the Kyng made the Erle of Stafford, Duke of Bokyngham, and the Erle of Suffolk, Markeys of Suffolk
!-8 and of Norffolk.

And in this same yere, the ambassiatours come out of Fraunce, and oper partyes byyonde the see, vnto the Kyng, for a mariage for hym, which was a worthy Kynges daughter, þat is called 12 Kyng of Cisile and of Ierusalem. And then the Kyng sent his ambassiatours ouer the see, which was þe Markes of Suffolk, with
-oper lordes, Clerkys, knyghtes and Squiers, out of England, to knowe of this worthy mariage, and forto make a finall peas betwene 16 the Reames of England and Fraunce.

And in this yere, the xxijth day of August, Iohn Kerver of Redyng, gentleman, vntruely and vngoodly, and ayenst feith and -lawe, depraued the Kyng; wherfore he was take and brought 20 before þe Kynges Consayle, and pere examyned of his vngodely -speche and wordes. And he ansuered, and knowleched hym guilty; wherfore the Kynges Consayle Jugged hym to deth as a traytour. And this was his full dome: þat he shuld be ledde ageyn to the 24 towne of Redyng, and drawen and hanged, and let downe ageyn all quyke, and then brought ageyn to þe Cite of London, to þe Toure, and from ¹thens drawen to Tyborn galowes, and hanged, and let downe ayen all quyke, and then bowayled and quartered, and his 28 bowayls brent, and þen his hede smyt of, and set on London Brigge; and oon quartere to be set vp at Redyng, and the oper in dyuers townes in þe Reame. And then the Kyng, of his grete grace and mercy, sent in all haste his Charter of pardon of his 32 offence and trespasse þat he had doon ayenst his persone, and so delyuerd hym quyte, and sent hym to Redyng in sauf garde.

And then the xxv. day of Maye next suyng, þe Kyng of Cisyll and of Ierusalem, with the Quene his wife, brought with theym 36 Dame Margaret their daughter, to þe Cite of Toures in Turyn, in Fraunce, and pere met the Kyng of Fraunce and the Quene his wife. And the Kyng of Fraunce toke the Kyng of Cisill and of Ierusalem by the hande; and so they yede forth togeder; and the

¹ leaf 223, back.

Quene of Fraunce toke the Quene of Cisill and of Ierusalem by the
 hande, and so they yede forth togeder thurgh the Cite till they
 come to the chief Chirch of pe Cite of Tours in Tureyn. And then
 come this Dame Margarete as for Quene of England, and ledde 4
 betwene the Dolphyn of Fraunce and an-*oper* grete Prince of
 Fraunce; and they ledde Dame Margaret to pe chief Chirche,
 which is of Seynt Martyn, *with* .vij. dukes and .xiiiij. Erles, *with*
oper grete lordes and ladyes folowing theym, into the same Chirche. 8
 And pen come pe Markeys of *Suffolk*, and all pe *oper* ambassatours
 of England. And *pere* Dame Margaret made suraunce to pe
 Markeis of *Suffolk*, and principally to the Kyng of England, and
 to all these ambassatours; and she was made *pere* Quene of England. 12
 And pe Markeis of *Suffolk* and pe *oper* ambassiatours made suraunce
 to Dame Margaret, in presencé of pe kynges and quenens, dukes,
 Erles, lordes and ladyes, and also in presencé of a legate of Rome
 there beyng at *pat* tyme. And then the Dolphyn and the *oper* 16
 prince[s] ledde Dame Margerete, as Quene of England, to pe place
pat was ordeyned for hyr worship at that tyme, and these kynges,
 and pese .ij. quenens folowyng theym, *with* all the dukes, Erles,
 lordes and ladyes, *with* pe ambassiatours of England. And *pere* 20
 Quene Margarete was set in pe ¹myddes of the halle, as principall
 of this fest, and ryally by hir oone, as Quene of England. And
 these .ij. *oper* quenens were at a table togedir vpon the right side
 of Quene Margarete. And lordes and ladyes were worthely served 24
 thurgh all the Court; and all pe peple of comons *pat* folowed theym
 had grete chere of mete and drynke; and they made ioye and
 myrth, and song (all with high voyce) Nowell! Nowell! Nowell!
 and peas, peas, peas be to vs! Amen! 28

Henricus Frowyk, Maior.

Stephanus Forster { *vicecomites*
 Hugo Wyche. { *anno xxiii*^{cio}
 { [A.D. 1444-45.]

And in this same yere, and the yere of grace M^t.CCCC. xlv., 32
 pe vjth day of Nouembre, whan all maner stuff of ordynaunce was
 made and doon for the Quenes comyng into England, *pat* is to sey,
 mete, hors, harnesse, chares, *with* all stuff *pat* belonged to theym,—
 and pen pe Markeis of *Suffolk* and pe lady his wife, *with* *oper* 36
 ladyes and gentelwomen, lordes, knyghtes and squyers, and all *oper*
seruitours *pat* bylonged to theym, and to pe ordynaunce, for oure
 Kynges honure and worship went out of London to pe see-costes,

¹ leaf 224.

forto shippe theym and all theirè ordynaunces, forto mete *with* Quene Margaret and *with* hir company, beyng in Fraunce, and condite hir into England in sauf gard to hir lord, Kyng Henry of 4 England and Fraunce, by the gift and *grace* of oure Lord Ihesu Crist. Amen!

And in this yere, the first day of Februare, was grete wedryng of wynde, hayle, snowe, rayne, thunder and lightnyng, at the after- 8 None; and it endured .iiiij. oures; and it did grete harme to þe Cite of London, for it brent Seint Paules grete steple, bothe on þe west syde and on þe south syde. And þe peple espied þe fyre, and come to Seint Paules forto quenche the fyre in þe steple. And goodly 12 they laboured, and quenched þe fyre as ferre as they kouth serche and fynde. And it was quenched *with* vyneger. And so the Maire herd of this grete hurte, and come *with* grete peple to Seint Paules, to here and se how it stode there, and to help þem, if nede 16 had been. And þen þe peple *withdrowe* theym, and went hoom ageyn, and trusted to God it had been in rest and peas.

And then anon after, betwene viij. and ix. of þe clok, þe fyre brast ¹oute ageyn of the steple, more feruent þen it did before, and 20 did moche harme to the lede and tymber of the steple. And anon come þe Mayre and moche peple, and *with* vynyger, and staunched þe fyre þat was right fervent,—blessed be God of all his giftes! Amen! And þen after, at the Ledenhall in Cornhill of London, a 24 standard of tre was set in myddys of the pavement fast in the grounde, nayled *with* holme and Ive, for disport of Cristmasse to þe peple of the Cite. And it was þat tyme torne vp and cast downe *with* þe malign spirite, and the stones of the pavement all about 28 cast in þe strete to dyuers houses, so þat the peple were sore agast of the grete fervent tempestes þat shewed that tyme.

And in this yere, the xvijth day of Feuerere, þere was a bataylle ordeyned in Smythfeld, and set to fight *within* lystes for life and 32 deth, betwene Thomas Fitz-Thomas, Pryoure of Kylmayn in Ireland, which appeled Sir Iames Botillere, Erle of Ormond, of treson þat he did in þe Cuntre of Ireland ayenst hym. And this Prioure *withdrowe* hym, and come not to batayle, where thurgh, as 36-leude, he was convict. And the Erle of Ormond was redy in his tent to ansuere hym; bot the Prioure come not.

And in this yere, the .xxij. day of Feuerere, the Kyng held his parlement at Westminster, to Archbisshops, bisshops, abbotes

and Priours, and to dukes, Erles, lordes and Barons, knyghtes, squyers, and to Citezens, Burgeises, and comons. And this parlement endured vnto Palme-Sunday; and then it was adiourned by þe King, and his Consayle of his lordes of the parlement, vnto the 4 fest of Seint George was passed. And then, the .xxixth day of Aprell, þe parlement bygan ageyn at Westminster with archbisshops and oper lordes, as is beforeseid.

And in this same yere, about Midlent, they brought Quene 8 Margaret out of high, douce Fraunce, into the partyes of Normandy by hir frendes; and the Frenssh partye was there as well as þe Englissh lordes, and abode hir with their peple, with all worship and reuerence þat myght be doon in worship and reuerence of oure 12 Kyng. And so þey brought hir into the Cite of Roan in sauf garde; and þere she abode vnto þe fest of Estere and lenger, by .xiiij. dayes, with these lordes and ladys of England, þat is to say, the Duke of York, the Duchesse his wife, þe Markes of Suffolk, the 16 lady his wife, the Erle of Shrovesbury, þe Countesse his wife, with oper lordes and ladyes þat abode in Fraunce and Normandy, with knyghtes, squyers, men of armes and archers, þat abode þere to kepe 1 the Kynges right in all landes of the partyes in Fraunce and 20 Normandy.

And then, after hir restyng þere in þe Cite, she was conueyed to þe towne of Houndflete by lande, þere to haue shipping to com into England to hir lord þe Kyng, hir husband; and with hir come 24 the Markeys of Suffolk, with lordes and ladys, knyghtes, squyers, and gentelwomen, men of armes and archers, and oper peple, and brought Margarete sauf into the Reame of England. And she landed at þe towne of Hampton; and þere she was worthely 28 receyued of þe peple of Hampton and of þe peple of the Cuntre aboute, with all reuerence and worship þat they couthe do. And after, oure Kyng come, and met with Dame Margarete, the Quene, and brought hir to an abbey in þe newe Forest, þat men calle þe 32 abbey of []²; and there þe Kyng was wedded to Dame Margarete the Quene, with the Bisshop of Salesbury þat men called Maister William Ascū. And then the Kyng and his lordes departed from hir, and then met þe Cardinall of Wynchestre with 36 the Quene, and conueyed hir with all reuerence and honoure þat he kouth do, to a Maner of his; and there she abode all nyght with all hir peple. And there was doon grete chere, with chargeable

¹ leaf 225.² Blank space left in MS.

costes, to hir and to all the peple *pat* come with hir *pat* tyme, in reuerence and worship of *pe* Kyng. And so Quene Margaret was conveyed in the Cuntreyes of Sussexe and Surre till she come to *pe* 4 Archbisshop of Canterburyes Maner in Croydon, in Surre; and there she rested hir all nyght with grete worship and reuerence, and with all the chere *pat* myght be doon to hir persone as for *pat* tyme. And on *pe* morowe after, she went to *pe* Maner of Eltham; and 8 *pere* she restid her after hir grete iournay and travayle .viij. dayes, till she wold com to se the Cite of London.

And *pe* Friday, *pe* xxvjth day of Maye, the Mayre of London, with the aldermen and Shirrefs and comons of the Cite rode to *pe* 12 Blake-Heth in Kent; and *pere* they abode and hoved on horsbak vnto the Quenes comyng. And so they come with hir to London; and she was brought to *pe* Toure of London; and *pere* she rested hir all nyght. And *pere* the Kyng, at the reuerence of *pe* Quene, 16 and the first comyng, made .xlvj. Knyghtes of the Bath. And *pen* on *pe* morowen at after None, the Quene come from the Toure in a *hors-bere*, with .ij. stedes trapped all in white damask poudred with gold; and so was the vesture *pat* she had on; and *pe* pylowes 20 and all *pe* bere in oon sute; and hir here combed downe about hir shulders, with a coronall of gold, riche perles and precious stones, with all lordes on horsbak, and ladyes in chares, *pat* is to sey, xix. chares of ladyes and their¹ gentelwomen, and all the craftes of the 24 Cite of London goynge on fote in their best aray vnto Seint Paules. And by *pe* wey, as she come purgh *pe* Cite, there were shewed and made many devises and stories, with angeles and oper heavenly thinges, with songe and melody in dyuers places; and *pe* 28 condites ran wyne, bothe white and rede, for all peple *pat* wold drynk. And then she was had oute of *pe* bere, and went on fote vp to *pe* high auter of Seint Paules; and *pere* she offred, and come oute ageyn to the bere at the west dore of Seint Paules; and so she 32 passed forth till she come to Westminster, with lordes and ladyes, and with the Maire and Aldermen and Comons of *pe* Cite of London. And there they toke their leve, and went hoom ageyn.

And on *pe* morowe, *pat* was Sunday, *pe* .xxx. day of Maye, ^{ok} 36 was *pe* Coronacion and fest rially and worthely holden at Westminster in *pe* Kynges palays; and iij. dayes after, hold open Iustes and revell within *pe* seintwary, of lordes, knyghtes, and oper *pat* wold com at *pe* reuerence of this fest royal.

¹ leaf 225, back.

And in this yere, þe .xvij. day of Iuyll, come þe ambassatours of Fraunce to London, forto trete for peas betwene England and Fraunce, þat is to say, the Archbisshop of Reynes, þe Erle of Gudoam,¹ with oþer lordes, knyghtes, squyers and clerkes of Fraunce, by the grace of God for a fynal peas.

Simon Eyre, Maior.	Johannes Derby	{	vicecomites	8
	Galfrid Feldyng		anno xxiiij ^{to}	
			[A.D. 1445-46.]	

¹ ? MS. Gudoam, Eudoam, Endoam.

[G]

FROM THE CAPTURE OF ROUEN (1419) TO THE ACCESSION
OF EDWARD IV (1461).

[*Addit. MS., Brit. Mus. 10,099, leaf 181.*]

**How þe king of Englonð, Henry þe v^{te},¹ was made heritier
& Regent of Fraunce, & how he weddid Quene Katerine.
ca. ccxlv.²**

4 Anone³ after þat Rone was goten, Depe, & many other townes
in baas Normandie yafe þeme ouer *with*-out stroke or siege, when
þei vnderstode þat þe Kyng had goten Rone. Also þis same yere
had bene A pees made & sworen bitwen þe Duke of Burgoyne &
8 þe Dolphyn, which wer sworne vpon⁴ our Lordes body þat þei⁵
shold love & Assist eche other ayenst þer enmyse. ⁶And after þis,
contrary to þis othe, þe Duke Iohn of Burgoyne was slayn &
pitously murthred in⁷ presence of þe Dolphyn; wherfor þe Frensh
12 men wer gretly devided, & of veray necessite labored to haue A
traitie *with* þe King of Englonð, ffor þe King of Englonð wan
dayly of þame, townes, casteles & fortresses. Also þis same yere
was Quene Iane Arested & brought to þe Castel of Ledys in Kent,
16 and one, frere Randolf, A doctour of Divinitie, hir confessor, which
afterward was slayn by þe person of þe Tour falling at wardes &
debate. And after Quene Iane was delyuered, In⁸ þe vij^{te} yeer,
bothe þe⁹ kinges of Englonð & of Fraunce¹⁰ wer Accorded; &
20 Kyng Henry was made Heir & Regent of France, & wedded
dame Kateryn, þe Kyng of Fraunce Doughter,¹¹ at Troyes in
Champayn, on Trinite Sondag. And þis was made bi þe mean
of Philipp, newly made Duke of Burgoyne, which was sworn to
24 King Henry for tavenge his fadre deth, & was become Englisshe.
And þan þe King, *with* his new wife, went to Paris, wher he was
rially receyved. And fro thens he, *with* his lordes & þe Duke of
Burgoyne, & many other lordes of Fraunce, laid seige to diuerse

¹ henry þe v^{te} *om.* HC. ² ca. ccxlv. *om.* H.

³ And A non H. and anone C. ⁴ of H. ⁵ þe H.

⁶ leaf 181, *back.* ⁷ in þe H. in the C. ⁸ Also H. ⁹ þe *om.* C.

¹⁰ kynges of fraunce & of Englonð C.

¹¹ þe kinges Doughter of fraunce H. the kynges doughter of fraunce C.

townes & Castels pat held of þe Dolphyns part, & wan þam); bot þe town¹ of Melun held long, for þe King was gode defenders.

In þe viij yere of his regn,² þe King & Quene came ouer þe³ see, & landed on Candelmasse day in þe morow, at Dover; and [the] 4 xiiij⁴ day of Feueryere, þe King com to London; & þe xxi day of þe same moneth þe Quene come thider⁵; And þe⁶ xxiiij day of the same,⁷ she was crowned at Westmynster. Also þe same yeer, Anon after Ester, þe King held a parlement at Westmynster, 8 at which⁸ it was ordeyned pat þe gold in Englissþ coygne shuld be weyed, & none receyved but by weght. And Anone after Wittsontyde, þe King sayled to⁹ Caleys, & so forth passed¹⁰ in-to Fraunce. And in Marche, þe xxij day, before þe King come ouer, 12 þe Duke of Clarence was slayn in Fraunce, diuerse¹¹ other lordes take prisoners, as þe King of Huntyngdon, þe King of Somersett, with diuerse other: & al was because þei wold not take Archers with þam,¹² bot thought to haue do¹³ with þe Frenshmen þe¹⁴ self, 16 without¹⁵ thame. And¹⁶ yett, when he was slayn, þe Archiers come & rescued þe body of þe Duke, which þei wold haue caried with þame: God haue mercy of¹⁷ his soul; for¹⁸ he was A valiant man! And¹⁹ þe same yeer, bitwene Criste'mas & Candelmas, 20 þe town of Melun was yholden to þe Kyng.

In²⁰ þe ix yere of his regn,²¹ vpon²² saynt Nicholas Day in December, was borne Henry, þe Kynges first begoten son²³ at Windesore, whose god-fadres at fount-stone was Henry, Bisshop 24 of Wynchestre, & Iohn, Duke of Bedford; & þe Duches of Holande was²⁴ god-moder; And Henry Chicheley,²⁵ Erchebisshop of Canterbury, was²⁶ god-fader at confirmyng. And in þe x yere of his regn,²¹ þe Cite of Mewes, in Brie,²⁷ was gotten, which hadd 28 bene longe besegied. And þis same yeer þe Queen shipped at Hampton, and sayled ouer to þe King in Fraunce, wher she was worsshyppfully receyved of þe King, & also of þe Kyng of Fraunce, hir fadir, & of hir modir. And thus Kinge Henry wan 32

¹ tour H. ² of his regn om. HC. ³ þe om. HC.

⁴ xiiij Ad. the xiiij C. ⁵ thider om. HC. ⁶ þe om. H.

⁷ same moneth H. ⁸ which parlement H. which perlement C.

⁹ sayld in to H. ¹⁰ & passed so forth HC.

¹¹ & many H. and diuerse C.

¹² take with þame Archers H. take with hem Archers C. ¹³ do om. H.

¹⁴ them HC. ¹⁵ leaf 182. ¹⁶ Bot H. ¹⁷ on C. ¹⁸ for om. HC.

¹⁹ in An) And H. ²⁰ And in H. ²¹ of his regn om. HC.

²² on HC. ²³ henry the kinges fyrst begoten son was born H.

²⁴ hys H. ²⁵ Chicheley the H. ²⁶ was hys H.

²⁷ in Brie om. H.

fast in Fraunce, & held gret Astate, & satte at Dyner at A gret feste in Parys, crowned, & þe Queen also, which had nat ben seen to¹-fore; And al² peple resorted vnto his court. But as 14 for³ þe Kyng of Fraunce, he held none Astate né reule, but was left almoste Allone.

Also pis yeer þe weder-cokk was sett vpon Poules staple at London.⁴ And pis yeer, in⁵ þe moneth of Auguste, þe Kyng 8 wex sike at Boys de Vincent. And when he saw he shold dye, he made his testament, and ordeyned many thinges nobley for his soul, And Devoutly receyved al þe rightes of holy church, in so fer-forth, þat⁶ whan he⁷ was enoynted, he said þe service with 12 þe preste; And at þe verse of þe psalme 'Miserere mei deus' þat was "Benigne fac dunc in bona voluntate tua, Syon, ut edificentur 16 muri Ierusalem," he bad tarie þer, and said þus: "O good Lorde, pou knowest þat⁸ myne entent hath bene, & yet is,⁹ if I might 16 lyve, to reedify þe walles of Ierusalem." & þen þe preest proceded forth, & made An end; & Anone aftre, þis moste noble prince & victorouse kyng, flour in his tym of Cristen chivalrie, whom al þe¹⁰ world dovypted, gaf his soul in-to þe handes of God, & died, 20 & made An end of his naturel lif, at þe said Bois de Vincent beside¹¹ Parys, þe xxxvj yere of his Age: on whose soul, God haue mercy!¹² þan was þe body enbawmed & cered, & laid in A rial chare, & an ymage like unto him was leyd vpon þe corps, 24 open, with diuerse baners & horse couered rychely with¹³ Armes¹⁴ of Englonde & Fraunce,¹⁵ and also¹⁶ tholde Armes of seynt Edwardes, seynt Edmond, & oper; And with gret multitude of torches; with whome went þe Kyng¹⁷ of Scotland; & many oper lordes,¹⁸ which 28 accompayned þe body til it come to¹⁹ Westmynster, bi London, in Englonde. And in euery town by þe way he had solempny his Dirige on þe evyn, & masse on þe morne²⁰; & moche Almesse was giffen to²¹ þe²² pore peple bi þe way. And þe vijth day of Nouembre after, 32 þe corps was brought to²³ London with²⁴ gret reuerence & solemp- nice,²⁵ & had²⁶ to Westmynster, wher he²⁷ now lieth: it was

¹ A H. ² at the H. ³ to C.

⁴ was sett up a poulys steeple at london the wethereock H.

⁵ in om. H. ⁶ þai Ad. that C. ⁷ þat whan he om. H. ⁸ wel H.

⁹ is yett H. ¹⁰ this H. ¹¹ leaf 182, back.

¹² mercy Amen HC. ¹³ with the H. ¹⁴ tharmes C.

¹⁵ & Fraunce om. H. ¹⁶ also om. H.

¹⁷ kyng HC. ūyng Ad. (scribe's blunder). ¹⁸ lordes the H.

¹⁹ vn to C. ²⁰ morow H. ²¹ vnto H. ²² þe om. C.

²³ thurgh H. through C. ²⁴ was H. ²⁵ for solempnite?

²⁶ & had om. HC. ²⁷ he om. H.

worshipfully¹ buried; & after, was² leyd on his tumber A rial ymage like to him-self, of siluer & gylt, which was made at pe³ cost of Quene Katerine. And thus ended, & was⁴ enteiored & buried, pe noble King Henry pe Fyft: on whose soul,⁵ God have 4 mercy!⁶

Of pe lawds of King Henry pe Fyft, & what he ordeyned for Kyng Richard & for him self after his deth. *Capitulum* CC xlvj.⁷

8

HEre is to be noted pat pis King Henry pe Fyft, was A noble prince after he was King & crowned. how-be-it, tofore⁸ in his youth he had bene wilde &⁹ recheles, & spared nothing of his lustes &¹⁰ desires; but Accomplished þam) after his lykyngs; but as sone as he¹² was crowned, enoynted & sacred,¹¹ Anon) sodenly he was chaunged into A new man), & sett al his entent to lyve vertuously, in mayntenynge of holy church, destroyng of heretikes, keping Iustice, & defending of his Reame and¹² subgettes. And for-as-myche as his¹⁶ fader had deposed by his labour¹³ pe¹⁴ gode King Richard, & pitously made him to dye, & for pe offense done to hym Ayens his legeance, he had sent to Rome to be Assoiled per-of, for which offense, our holy fader [the] Pope¹⁵ enioned hym to²⁰ make him be prayed-for perpetuelly, &, like as he gert¹⁶ be taken from him his¹⁷ naturel lyfe, perfor he shold do fynd iiij tapers to bren) perpetuelly Aboute his body, pat, for pe extinccon of his bodely life, his soul may¹⁸ be remembred and lyve in heven²⁴ in spiriuel lufe; & also pat he¹⁹ sholde, euery weke, on pe day as it cometh About of his deth, have A solempn) masse of Requiem on pe Eveynd), to-fore A dirige with ix lessons, and A dole to poure peple²⁰ al-wey on pat day, of²¹ xj^s viij^d, to be delyd penny²⁸ mele. At²² ones in pe yere, at his Anniuersarie, his entierment to be holden) in pe moste honest wise; & to be delyd pat day²³ xx^{ti}²⁴ in pens to poure peple; And to²⁵ euery monk to haue xxs.: which al this thinges performed²⁶ pis noble Kynge, for his³²

¹ Rially H. ² ward H. ³ pe om. C. ⁴ & was om. H.

⁵ soule And all cristen soules HC. ⁶ mercy Amen HC.

⁷ CC xlvj om. H. ⁸ Afore H. ⁹ & om. HC. ¹⁰ ne HC.

¹¹ sacred and anoynted H. ¹² A H.

¹³ by hys labour has deposed H. ¹⁴ pe om. H.

¹⁵ the pope our holy fadyr H. the pope our holy fadre C.

¹⁶ had don to H. had done to C. ¹⁷ his his Ad. ¹⁸ may euer HC.

¹⁹ leaf 183. ²⁰ poure Ad. poure peple H. poure peple C.

²¹ of om. H. ²² And HC. ²³ pat day om. H. ²⁴ xx pounce C.

²⁵ toke Ad. to HC. ²⁶ with all performyd thes thinges H.

fader¹ King Henry þe Fowrt, seth he² performed it³ nat during his life, whom, as it is seyð, God towched, & was A lepre er he died.

4 Also þen þis noble prince lete do cañ al þabbottes & poures of Seynt Benett ordre in Englonð, & had þame in þe chapter house of⁴ Westmynster, for þe reformacion of þe ordre, wherin he had communicacion; And also with bisshoppes & men of þe spiritueltie, 8 in so fer⁵ forth þat þei doubted sore þat⁵ he wold haue had þe Temperalties out of þer handes; wherfor, by þauis, labour, & procuring of þe spiritueltie, [þei] Encoragied þe King to chalenge Normandy & his right in Fraunce, to þend to sett hym A werk þer, þat he 12 shold nat seke occasion) to entre in-to⁶ such matere; And þerfor⁷ al his life⁸ after, he labored in þe Werres,⁹ in conquering gret part of þe Reame of Fraunce, þat bi þe¹⁰ Agrement of þe¹⁰ King Charles had all¹¹ þe gouernaunce of þe Ream) of Fraunce, And was proclaimed 16 Regent & heir of Fraunce. And so, nat-with-standing al þis gret Werre þat he had, yett he remembred his soul, & also þat he was mortal, & must dye; for¹² which he ordeyned by his life, þe place of his sepulture, wher he is now buried; & euery day iij masses perpetuelly to be songen in A fair chapel ouer his sepulture, 20 of¹³ which þe middel masse,¹⁴ þe fyrst & þe last,¹⁵ shall be as is Assigned by him. As it Appereth by þise verse¹⁶ folowyng:—

Henrei misse quinti sunt hic tabulate,
 Que successiue sunt per monachos celebrate.
 Die dominica.¹⁷ Prima sit¹⁸ Assumpte de festo Virginis alme;
 Poscit *Christus* postremam¹⁹ de morte resurgens.
 Feria ij^a.²⁰ Prima salutate in²¹ festo Virginis extat;
 28 Nunciat Angelicis laudem postrema choris,
 22 Feria iij^a.²³ Esse Deum natum de Virgine, prima facetur,
 Commemorat natam, sic vltima missa Mariam.
 Feria iiij^a.²⁴ Prima celebretur ad honorem neupnatis Almi;
 32 Vltima conceptam denunciat esse Mariam;
 Feria v^{ta}.²⁵ Semper prima coli debet de corpore *Christi*.
 Vltima sit facta de Virgine purificata;

¹ fader for H. fadre for C. ² hys fader H. his fadre C.
³ it om. H. ⁴ at H. ⁵ lest H. ⁶ to om. H.
⁷ þerfor om. HC. ⁸ life om. H. ⁹ in þe Warres om. H.
¹⁰ þe om. H. ¹¹ at Ad. aH HC. ¹² for the H. ¹³ of the H.
¹⁴ masse & HC. ¹⁵ last messe HC. ¹⁶ these verses H.
¹⁷ Die dominica om. H. ¹⁸ sit affinite H. ¹⁹ xpc' postremā Ad.
²⁰ fferia ij^a om. H. ²¹ in om. C. ²² leaf 183, back.
²³ fferia iij^a om. H. ²⁴ fferia iiij^a om. H. ²⁵ fferia v^{ta} om. H.

Feria vj^{ta}.¹ Condecet ut prima celebretur de cruce sancta,
 Atque salutate fiet postrema Marie.
 Omnes alii sanctos est prima colenda supernos :
 Sabbato² Vltima de Requite pro defunctis petit esse ; 4
 Semper erit media de proprietate diei.

And yet þe Noble King Henry þe Fyft founded ij houses of Religion: one called Syon, beside Braynford³ of þe ordre of Seynt Brigitt, both of men &⁴ women; And on þat⁵ oþer side of þe 8 ryver of Tamyse, an house of monkes of⁶ Chartrehouse: In which ij places he is continually prayed for, night & day; for euer, when they of Syon rest,⁷ þei of þe Chartrehouse done þe⁸ seruice; And in⁹ like wise, whan þei of þe Chartrehouse rest, þe oþer gon to. 12 And bi þe ryngyng of þe¹⁰ belles of eyther place,¹¹ ayther¹² knowweth when þai¹³ haue ended þe seruice, which be nobly endowed, & done dayly þe great Almesse dedes; As in þe Charetrehouse certeyn childre be found to¹⁴ scole; & at Sion, certeyn Almesse 16 gyven dayly.

And yet beside al this, he had founded A recluse, which shal be alway A preste, to pray for him, by þe said¹⁵ Chartrehouse, which¹⁶ preste is wel & sufficiently endowed for him & A seruaunt. 20 Loo! here may al princes take ensample bi þis noble prince þat regned so lytel tyme, nat fully x yere, þat¹⁷ did so many noble Actes, as wel for his soul to be perpetually remembred & prayd fore, as in hys worldly conquestes. And he, beyng in his moste 24 lusty Age, despised & eschewed synn, & was vertuouse, & A gret Iustyser, in so mych þat al þe princes of Cristendome, & also of hethenes, dradd him,¹⁸ & had¹⁹ determyned in þe²⁰ self—if God wold haue spared him—þat he wold haue werred Ayenst þe 28 Sarazenes. And for to know þe Ayed of other princes, & al þe passage in þat Torney, he sent a knight²¹ of Henaude, named Ser Hugh Delanoy, vnto Ierusalem; but er he returned, he died at Boys du Vincent, in þe xxxvj^{te} yere of his Age, vn²² whose soul, 32 God haue mercy! Amen!²³

¹ fferia vj^{ta} om. H. ² Sabbato om. H. ³ Brayford Ad. Braynford C.
⁴ & of H. ⁵ the H. ⁶ of the H. ⁷ rest then H.
⁸ their C. ⁹ in om. H. ¹⁰ there H. ¹¹ of eyther place om. H.
¹² ech H. eche C. ¹³ oþer H. ¹⁴ to the H.
¹⁵ syde the H. ¹⁶ the which H. ¹⁷ þat om. HC.
¹⁸ Cristendome drad hym An also of heythenes H. Cristendome dradde him & also of hethenes C.
¹⁹ had om. H. ²⁰ hym HC. ²¹ knyght H. ²² of H. on C.
²³ Amen om. HC.

¹ ² **How King Henry þe Sixt regned, beyng A childe, nat one yere of age; And of þe batail of Vernoyl in Perche. Capitulum CC xlvij.**³

⁴ After King Henry þe Fyft, regned Henry þe Sixt⁴ his son,⁵ -A childe, & nat fully A yere olde; whose regn began þe first day of Septembre, the year⁶ of our Lord God⁷ Mⁱ iiiij^c xxij.⁸ This King, beyng in his⁹ Cradel, was moche doubted & dradd, ⁸ bicause of þe gret conquest of his fadre, & also of¹⁰ þe wisdom & guying of his vnclcs, þe Duke of Bedford & þe Duke of Gloucestre. This yeer, þe xxj day of Octobre, died Charles,¹¹ King of Fraunce, and was¹² buried at seynt Dionise¹³; And þan was ¹² þe Duke of Bedford made Regent of Fraunce, & þe Duke of Gloucestre was made protectour & defendour of Englonde. And the first day of Marche after,¹⁴ was Ser William Tailleur, preste, degraded of his prestede; and on þe morne after he was brent ¹⁶ in Smythfeld for heresie. þis yere Sir James Styward, King of Scottes, married Dame Iane þe Duches, Doughter of Clarence, of hir first housbond, þerle of Somersett, at seynt Mary Ouerays. Also þis yere, þe xvij day of August, was þe batail of Vernaiß in ²⁰ Perche, bitwene þe Duke of Bedford, Regent of Fraunce & the Duke of Alanson; which was A gret bataiß. þe Duke of Bedford had on his side *with* him þerle of Salesbury, Montagu, & þe Lorde Talbot, & al þe power þat þei couthe make in Normandie— ²⁴ þe garnisons kept,—And also many Capitaynes, *with* moche peple of þe Duke of Burgoyns. And on þat other side was þe Duke of Alaunson, þe Duke of Touron, þat was þerle Douglas, þerle of Boughan, *with* many lordes of Fraunce, & gret company of Scottes ²⁸ & Arminakes. And þan þerle Douglas¹⁵ called þe Duke of Bedford “Ioñn *with* þe¹⁶ leden swerd.” And he sent hym worde Ageyn þat he shuld fynd þat day þat hys swerd shold be¹⁷ off steel; And so þe batail Ioyned on both sides, & þei¹⁸ fought long, ³² so¹⁹ þat þe wist no man who shold haue þe better A gret while; but at þe last, as God wold, þe victorie fil vnto þenglish partie, for þe was slayn þerle Douglas, which A litel before²⁰ was made²¹

¹ leaf 184. ² Cap. iiiij. H. ³ Ca. cccxlvij om. H.

⁴ þe sixt om. HC. ⁵ son) but H. sone but C.

⁶ yere Ad. the yere H. the yere C. ⁷ A H. God om. C.

⁸ Ml cccc And xxij H. ⁹ in to Ad. in his HC. ¹⁰ of om. C.

¹¹ Charles the H. ¹² lyeth H. lieth C.

¹³ Denys in fraunce H. denys C. ¹⁴ after om. H.

¹⁵ Douglas om. H. ¹⁶ þe om. H. ¹⁷ swerd was H. ¹⁸ þei om. HC.

¹⁹ so om. HC. ²⁰ leaf 184, back. ²¹ made the H.

Duke of Tounar, perle of Bewghare, perle of Almarre, perle of Tounar, perle of Vaundore, & þe Vycount of Nerbornne,—which was one of þame þat slew Duke Iohn of Burgoyne, knelyng tofore¹ þe Dolphyn,—& many moo,² to³ þe nombre of xM^t & mo.⁴ And þer was taken prisoner þe Duke of Alaunson, & many oper lordes & gentiles of Fraunce; but Scottes þat day wer slaynd down right the⁴ s[u]bstaunce of þame aH.

In þe iij yere of King Henry þe vj^{te}, þe Duke of Gloucestre⁸ married þe Duches of Holand, & went ouer þe⁵ See *with* hir to⁶ Henaude, for to take possession of his wife enherytaunce; wher he was honorably taken & receyved⁷ for⁸ lorde of þat⁹ land. But sone after, he was faynd to retorne home Ageyn, & left his wife,¹² & his tresour þat he brought, *with*¹⁰ in a town þat¹¹ is called Mounse in Henaude, which promised for¹² to be¹³ trew to him; nat-*with*-standing, þei deliuered þe lady to þe Duke of Burgoyne, which sent hir to Gaunt; And fro þens she Ascaped in A mannes¹⁶ Aray, & come in to Zeland, to A town of his¹⁴ Awun called Zierixee. And fro þens she went to A town in Holand called þe Ghowde, & þer she was strong enough, & *with*stode þe said Duke of Burgoyne. And sone after, þe Duke of Gloucestre sent ouer²⁰ vnto¹⁵ Zeland þe lorde Fitz-Water, *with certeyn* men of Werre & Archiers, for to help & socour þe fore-said Duchesse of Holand, which loded at a place in Seland called¹⁶ Brewers-haven, wher þe¹⁷ lordes of þe contre come down & fought *with* him; & in²⁴ conclusion, he was faynd to *with*draw him & his meyney to þe see Ageyn. But yett he slew and hurt diuerse lordes & moche peple of þat same contre, And so returned home Ageyn *with* his meyne, & preualed nothing. 28

Also þis same yere perl of Salisbury, perle of Suthfolk, the Lorde¹⁸ Willeby & Lorde¹⁹ Scalys, *with þer* retenu, leid seige to þe Cite of Mauns, which²⁰ Cite was yholden to þem in short tym, *with* many oper strong townes & castels, to þe nombre of xxxvj. Thys³² tyme al Normandy & A gret part of Fraunce vnto Orliaunce, was vnder thobeiansce of the King²¹ of Englonde; And al þe remanent of Fraunce was in gret²² tribulacion & mischief.

¹ A fore H. ² & many moo om. H. ³ vnto C.

⁴ right Ad. rygt the H. right the C. ⁵ þe om. C. ⁶ in to C.

⁷ receyued and takyn H. honourably receyued and taken C. ⁸ of for H.

⁹ the HC. ¹⁰ *with* hym H. with hym C. ¹¹ þat om. CH. ¹² for om. H.

¹³ to haue ben H. ¹⁴ hir C. ¹⁵ into C. ¹⁶ called the H.

¹⁷ fore H. ¹⁸ Lorde Ad. the lorde H. the lord C. ¹⁹ the lord HC.

²⁰ the which HC. ²¹ king Ad. the kyng C. ²² gret om. H.

¹ How þer was A gret Affray like to haue bene² bituene the Cardinal & þe Duke of Gloucestre; And of þe Coronacion of King Henry þe vi^{te}, both in England & in Fraunce.

4 *Capitulum CCxlvij.*³

IN þe iij^{te} yere, þe same night þat þe Mair of London,⁴ Iohn Coventre, had taken his charge, was A gret watche in London for Affray þat was⁵ bitwene þe Bisshop of Wynchestre & þe Duke of 8 Gloucestre, *Protectour* &c'. ffor þe Mair, *with* þe peple of þe Cite, wold Abide by þe Duke of Gloucestre as *Protector* of þe Reame, but bi⁶ labour of lordes þat went bitwen), & in especial bi þe labour of þe Prince of Portyngale, þer was Apoyntment taken so þat þer⁷ 12 was no harme done. And after þe batail of Verneil in Perche, þe Duke of Bedford come ouer into Englonde; & on Witsunday þe⁸ same yere, at Leycestre, he dubbed King Henry knight; And forth-*with* þe said King Henry dubbed al thise⁹ knightes whose names 16 folowes, þat is to say¹⁰: Richard, Duke of York, Also þe sone & heir of þe Duke of Northfolk, þerle of Oxenforth, þerle of West-merland, þe sone and heir of þerle of Northumbreland, þe sone & heir of þerle Wormond,¹¹ þe lorde Rose, *Sir* Iames Botler, þe Lord 20 Natrauas,¹² *Sir* Henry Gray of Tankerulle, *Sir* William Nevile, Lorde Fawconbrigge, *Sir* George Nevyl, Lorde Latimer, Lord¹³ Welles, Lord¹³ Berkley, þe sone & heir of Lord¹³ Talbot, *Sir* Rauf Grey of Werk, *Sir* Robert Ver, *Sir* Richard Gray, *Sir* Edmond 24 Hungerforde, *Sir* Robert Wynkford, *Sir* Iohn Botler, *Sir* Reynold Cobham, *Sir* Iohn Passheley, *Sir* Thomas Tunstal, *Sir* Iohn Chydiok, *Sir* Rauf Langeford, *Sir* William Drury, *Sir* William Ap-Thomas, *Sir* Richard Carbonel, *Sir* Richard Wydeuill, *Sir* Iohn 28 Shirdelowe, *Sir* Nichol Blonket, *Sir* Rauf Ratelyff, *Sir* Edmond Trafford, *Sir* William Cheyne, *Sir* William Babyngton, *Sir* Iohn Iune, &¹⁴ *Sir* Gillebert Beauchampe. þan in þe v^{te}¹⁵ yere þe Duke of Bedford, *with* þe Duchesse his wife, went ouer þe¹⁶ see to Caleys, 32 & A litel tofore went¹⁷ ouer Henry,¹⁸ Bisshop of Wynchestre. & on our Lady day *Annunciacion*, in our Lady churche at Caleys, þe Bisshop of Winchestre, when¹⁹ he had songen masse, ²⁰ was made

¹ leaf 182.

² bene A grete Affraye H.

³ Cap. iij. H.

⁴ þe mair of London om. H. ⁵ þat was om. H. ⁶ bi the H.

⁷ þat Ad. þat þer H. that ther C. ⁸ this C. ⁹ þes H.

¹⁰ þat is to say om. H. Wite C. ¹¹ Ormond C.

¹² matrauas C. ¹³ the lord HC. ¹⁴ & om. HC.

¹⁵ Item my vth H. ¹⁶ þe om. C. ¹⁷ where H. ¹⁸ henry the H.

¹⁹ quen H. ²⁰ leaf 185, back.

Cardinal; &, he knelyng tofore¹ þe high Altare, þe Duke of Bedford sett þe hatt on his hede; & þer wer his bulles red, as wele of his charge As þe reioysing of his benefices spiritueſſ & tempereſſ.

And þis same yere was gret habondance of Rayn, þat þe substance of hey & of² corne was destroyed, for it rayned almoste euery other day. þis same yere þe gode Erle of Salesbury, Sir Thomas Mountagu, leyd Seiege vnto³ Orlyauce; at which segie he was slayn) *with* A gvn þat⁴ come out [of] þe town.⁵ And⁶ sith forth þat⁷ he was slayn), English men neuer gat ne preuailed in Fraunce, bot euer after⁸ began) to lefe, bi⁹ litel and lytel, til al was lost. ¹⁰Also þis same yere A Breton) murthered A gode wedow¹¹ *with*-out Al-gate, which wedow fond him for almesse; & he bare away ¹²al þat she had; And after þis he toke grith of holy church at Seynt Georges in Suthwerk, & þer toke þe crosse, & forswore þis land. And as he went, it happend þat he came bi þe place where he did þis cursed dede in þe subbarbis of London; & þe women of þe same ¹⁶parissĥ come out *with* stones and¹² Caneſſ dunge, & slew & made an ende of him, nat-*with*standing þe constable & many other men beyng present to kepe him; for þer wer many women, & had no pite.¹⁰ Also [t]his same yere þe Duke of Northfolk, *with* many ²⁰gentil men & yomen, toke his barge, þe viij day of Nouembre, at Seynt Mary Oueryes, for to haue go thugh London Brigg; & thugh misguydyng of þe barge, it ouer-threw on þe Pyles, & many men drowned; but þe Duke him-self, *with* ij or iij, lepe vpon) the piles, ²⁴and so wer saued *with*¹³ help of men þat wer Aboue þe brigge, which cast down) Roopes, by¹⁴ which þei saved þam)-self.

This same yere, on Seynt Leonarde day, King Henre, beyng vij yere old¹⁵ of Age, was crowned at Westmynster: at whose cora- ²⁸nacion) wer made xxxvj knightes. þis yere, on Seynt George day, he passed ouer þe see to¹⁶ Caleys, toward Fraunce. Aboute þis tyme & Afore, þe Reame beyng in gret ¹⁷misery & tribulacion), þe Dolphin, *with* his partie, began) to make Werr, & gett certeyn) ³²

¹ Afore H. ² of om. H. ³ to H. ⁴ which HC.

⁵ town on whos saule god haue mercy H. oute of the toune, on whos soule god haue mercy C.

⁶ for H. ⁷ þat om. H. sith that C.

⁸ after om. H. ⁹ bi om. HC.

¹⁰⁻¹⁰ Also þis same yere breton) murthered . . . many women & had no pite om. H.

¹¹ Wedowe in her bedde C. ¹² stones Ad. stones and C.

¹³ through H. ¹⁴ by the H. ¹⁵ old om. HC. ¹⁶ in to H.

¹⁷ leaf 186.

places, & make destres vpon Engliſh men by þe meand of his Capytayns, *pat* is to wete, La Heer and Potonde, Sayntralles, and especial A maid, which¹ they named “la PuceHe² de Dieu.” This
 —4 maid rode like A man, & was A valyant Capitayn Among þame, & take vpon hir many gret³ enterpryses, in so myche *pat* þei had A⁴ byleve to haue recouered al þer losses by hir; nat-*with*-standing, at þe last, after many gret feates, by þe help & prowesse of Sir Iohn
 8 Luxemburgh, which was A noble capitayn of þe Dukes of Burgoyne, & many English men, Pykerdes and Burgones, which wer of our *partie*, before þe town of Compyne, þe xxij day of May, þe forsaid
 —PuceH was taken in þe felde, Armed like A man, & many *oper*
 12 Capitaynes *with* hir, & wer al brought to Roan; & þer she was put in prison, & þer she was Iuged by þe law to be brent. And þen she said *pat* she was *with* childe, wherby she was respited A while; but in conclusion it was found *pat* she was not *with* child,
 16 & þen she was brent in Roane, & þe other Capitaynes wer put to raunson, & entreted as men of werre bene Acustomed &c’.

This same yere, About Candelmesse,⁵ Richard Hunder, A wollepacker,⁶ was dampned for an heritike, & brent at Tour-HiH. And
 20 About midlente, Sir Thomas Baggely, preest, & vicar of Mauen in Est-sexe, beside Walden, was disgraded & dampned for an herytike, & brent in Smythfeld. Also⁷ þis⁸ same yere, whiles þe King was in Fraunce, þer wer many heretikes & lollardes, *pat* had pur-
 24 posed to haue made A rysing; & þei⁹ casten billes in many place; but,—blessed be God almighty!—*per* Capitayn¹⁰ was takyn, which was called¹¹ William Maundeuil, A wever of Abyndon, & also¹² bayly of þe same town, which named him-self ‘Iack Sharp of
 28 Wigmoresland in Walis’; & after-ward¹³ he was beheded at Abendon in þe Wittsone weke, on þe Twesday.

This same yere, þe vj^{te} day of Decembre, ¹⁴Kyng Henry þe Sext was crowned King of Fraunce at Paris, in þe chirch of our
 32 Lady, *with* gret solempnite, *per* beyng present þe Cardinal of Englonde, þe Duke of Bedford & many *oper* lordes of Englonde & of Fraunce.¹⁵ And after þis coronacion, a¹⁶ gret fest holden at Paris,

¹ the which H. ² Puce Ad. pucelle H. pucelle C.

³ gret om. H. ⁴ had a om. H. ⁵ About Candelmess om. H.

⁶ packer about candelmasse H. ⁷ And also HC. ⁸ in this C.

⁹ þei om. HC. ¹⁰ þe Capteyn of theme H. the Capitayn of hem C.

¹¹ whos name was H. whos name was C. ¹² also om. HC.

¹³ ward om. H. ¹⁴ leaf 186, back.

¹⁵ of fraunce and of England H. of fraunce & of englonde C.

¹⁶ & C.

the King returned from thens to Roan, & so toward Caleys. And¹ pe ix day of Feueryer, he² landed at Dover, whom al pe comones of Kent met at Beramdon, bitwen Canterbury & Dover, al in rede hoodes; & so come forth til he come to pe Blak-Hethe, wher he⁴ was mett with pe Mayre of London,³ Iohn Wellis, with al pe craftes of London clad al in white; & so pei brought him to London pe xxj day of pe same moneth. This same yere⁴ was A restreynt of pe wolles of Caleys made by pe soudiours, by cause pei were nat⁸ payed of *per* waagies; wherfor pe Duke of Bedforth, Regent of Fraunce, beyng pan Capytain, come to⁵ Caleys pe Twesday in pe Ester weke; And on pe morne after, many⁶ sowdioures of pe town wer Arested & put in warde. And in⁷ pe same weke he rode to 12 Terewyne; & bi pe mean⁸ of⁸ Bisshop of Terewyn, he wedded perles doughter of Seynt Poul, & came ageyn to Caleys. And pe x⁹ day of Iune, on Seynt Barnabe day, *per* wer four¹⁰ soudioures of Caleys, pat wer chief Causers of pe restreynt, beheded, pat is to 16 say: Iohn Maddesley, Iohn Lunday, Thomas Palmer, & Thomas Talbot, & C & x¹¹ bannished pe town pat same¹² tyme: & before wer bannished C xx¹³ soudioures. And on¹⁴ Mydsommer evyn after,¹⁵ come pe Lorde Regent & his wife to London. 20

16 Of pe heresie of Praghe, & of [pe] Counsel of Aras. &c.¹⁶
Capitulum CC xlix.¹⁷

Aboute pis tyme Pope Martyn died; & After him, Eugeny pe Fourt was Pope, pat¹⁸ was pesably chosen in Rome by pe Cardinalles, 24 and was very & vndoubted Pope; but shortly after, he was put out¹⁹ & expulsed fro²⁰ Rome,²¹ in suche wise pat he was fayn to flee naked. In pis same tyme was pe Counsel of Basile, to which Counsel he was cited²² to come; And because he come nat, they 28 deposed hym; but he forsed²³ nat, ner sett²⁴ *per*by, but²⁵ gat pe Cite of Rome, & Abode Pope stil²⁶ xvij yere.

This yere, About Witsontide,²⁷ pe heretikes of Praghe wer destroyed; for at two Journeys wer destroyed of pame mo pan²⁸ 32

¹ And *per* H. ² he *om.* HC. ³ of London *om.* HC.
⁴ yere *per* H. ⁵ into H. ⁶ many of the H. ⁷ in *om.* H.
⁸ of the HC. ⁹ xi HC. ¹⁰ four principall H.
¹¹ Talbot and other H. Talbot And an Cx C. ¹² same *om.* H.
¹³ An C & xx H. and xx C. ¹⁴ of H. ¹⁵ after *om.* H.
¹⁶⁻¹⁸ *om.* HC. ¹⁷ Cap iij H. ¹⁸ bis H. This C. ¹⁹ out *om.* C.
²⁰ out of C. ²¹ he was expulsed out of Rome H. ²² leaf 187.
²³ rought HC. ²⁴ sett nought H. sette not C. ²⁵ but he H.
²⁶ styll pope H. still Pope C. ²⁷ about Witsontide *om.* H.
²⁸ mo pan *om.* H.

xxij M^t, with per¹ Capitayns, þat is to say,² Procapius, Saplico, & Lupus presbiter. Also per was taken on³ lyve, maister Piers, clerk, — an Engliſſhman &⁴ heretike. Also þis same yere was A gret
4 frost & A strong, during xj wekes; for it began on⁵ seynt Katerines evyn, & lasted vnto⁶ Seynt Scolastica Day in Februare: In which tyme þe vyntage þat come fro Burdeux come over Shotters Hiſ.

This yere was þe counsel of Aras, & A gret treaty bitwen þe
8 King of Englonð & þe King of Fraunce, wher was⁷ Assembled many gret lordes of bothe parties: At which counsel was offred to þe Kyng of Englonð, many gret thinges by þe meane of A legate þat come fro Rome, which was Cardinal of Seynt Crosse, which
12 offres wer refused by þe Cardinal of Englonð, & other lordes þat wer þer for þe Kinge. Wherefore þe Duke of Burgoyñ, which had bene long Engliſh sworne, forsoke oure partie, & retourned Frensh, by meane of þe said⁸ legate, & made A pees with þe Frensh kyng,
16 receyving of þe King, for recompense of his fader deth, the counte⁹ Pontien, þe lordeshipp of Macon, with mych other þat was¹⁰ specified in þe said⁸ treaty; And so our Embassatoures come home Ayen in wers case þan¹¹ þei¹² went forth,¹³ ffor þei lost per¹⁴ þe
20 Duke of Burgoyñ, which had bene, with his Burgoyñons & Pycardes, A singler help in al þe Conquest of Normandy & of Fraunce.

This same yere was A gret batail on þe See, bitwen þe
24 Ienewensez & þe King of Aragon; of which batail þe Ianeuenses had þe victori, for þei toke þe Kinge of Aragon, þe King of Naverne, & þe gret Maister of Seynt Iames in Galise, with iij^c knightes & squyers & moche other peple: & this was of¹⁵ seynt
28 Dominices day.

This same¹⁶ yeer wer seen thre¹⁷ ^{soles} Sonnes at ones, & Anone folowed þe threfolde gouernance¹⁸ in þe chirch, þat is to wete, of Eugeny þe Pope,¹⁹ of the Counsel, & of þe nevtalitie. Also þis same
32 yere M^t iij^c xxxiiij, was A passing gret wynd, by²⁰ which steples, houses &²¹ trees wer ouerthrowen. About þis tyme was an holy maid in Holand, called Lydwith, which lyued onely bi miracle, not etynge any mete. This yere þe Duke of Burgoyñ began his

¹ hir C. ² wete C. ³ of H. a C. ⁴ And an H.
⁵ of H. ⁶ tyH H. ⁷ was om. H. ⁸ same H. ⁹ counte of H.
¹⁰ as is HC. ¹¹ þan om. H. ¹² the H. ¹³ forth om. HC.
¹⁴ ffor þer þei lost H. ¹⁵ in HC. ¹⁶ same om. H.
¹⁷ leaf 187, back. ¹⁸ rule and gouernance H.
¹⁹ þe Pope om. HC. ²⁰ by the H. ²¹ & om. H.

ordre at Lyle of 'pe golden Flyes' & ordeyned certeyn knightes of pe ordre, & made statutes & ordinances moche Acordinge vnto¹ pe ordre of pe Garter. Also þis same yere pe Frenshe men had enterprised to have stolen Caleys in pe fysshing tyme, for many 4 botes of Fraunce held² saufe conduyt to come to Caleys for to take hering; And pe Sowdioures of pe town had A custome to come to³ chirch, & leve per staves standing at pe⁴ chirch dore, which staves⁵ pe Frenshemen, which wer Araied like fissheres, had purposed to⁶ haue taken so⁷ pere wepon, & wynn pe town. But one of pame lay with A comon woman⁸ pe night to⁹-fore, & he¹⁰ tolde to hir pere counsel; And she on pe morne told pe lieutenante, which forth¹¹-with commaunded pat euery man shold kepe his¹² wepon in his¹² hand, sacryng tyme and other. And when pei Aperceyved þis, pat¹³ pei wer mysпойnted, they sayled streght to¹⁴ Depe, & stale & toke pat town. And on¹⁵ Newyeres even after, pei toke Harflete; And thus Englishe men began to losse A litel¹⁶ and¹⁶ liteH in Normandy.

¹⁷How Caleys and Guyhenes wer beseged by pe duke of Burgoyne, & how pei wer rescued by pe duke of Gloucester.¹⁷
Capitulum CCL^{mo}.¹⁸

20

This yere was A gret noyse through aH Englund, how pe Duke of Burgoyne wolde come & besegie Caleys. Wherefore þerle of Mortayne, with his Army pat he had for to haue gone with¹⁹ in-to Fraunce, was contermaunded, & charged pat he shold go to Caleys, 24 which was at pat tyme wel vitailed & manned; ffor Sir Iohn²⁰ Ratcliff was lieutenant of pe King in pat town, And pe Baron of Dudlay, lieutenant of pe Castel. And pe ix day of IuyH, pe Duke of Burgoyne, ²¹with al pe power of Flaundres & moche other peple, 28 come before Caleys, & sett his²² sieg About pe town; & euery town of Flaundres had per tenttes bi pame self. And þis Sieg endured thre wekes. In pe mean while pe Duke of Gloucestre, beyng Protector of England, toke pe moste parte of pe lordes of Englund, 32 & went ouer pe See to Caleys, for to rescu pe town, or for²³ to fecht

¹ on to H. ² had HC. ³ to the H. ⁴ pe om. C.

⁵ which staves H. which stauis C. om. Ad.

⁶ so to H. ⁷ so om. H. ⁸ woman om. H. ⁹ be H.

¹⁰ he om. HC. ¹¹ for H. ¹² his om. H. ¹³ pat om. H.

¹⁴ forth H. ¹⁵ of H. ¹⁶ and a C. ¹⁷⁻¹⁷ om. H.

¹⁸ Cap. iij vice iij H. ¹⁹ on H. ²⁰ Iohn of H. ²¹ leaf 188.

²² sette his C. ²³ for om. HC.

with pe Duke & his hoste, if they wold haue bidden. This tyme, London & euery gode towun of Englonð sent ouer pe¹ See to pis rescuse certeyn peple wel Arayed, of pe best & chose men for pe 4 Werre. And pe ij day of August, the said Duke of Gloucestre Arriued at Caleys with al his Army & v^c shippes & moo. And pe Duke of Burgoyne² & al his ooste þat lay in pe³ Siegie, As sone as þei espyed pe Sayles in pe See, before þei⁴ Approched Caleys 8 haven, sodenly in A mornyng departed fro pe Siege, leuyng behind þame moche stuffe & vitales, & fled in-to Flaundes & Pycardy. And in likewise did pe Siege þat lay tofore Guynes, wher-as they of Guynes toke pe gret gonnes of brasse⁵ called Gedcon,⁶ & many 12 other gret gonnes & serpentines. And þen when pe Duke of Gloucestre was Arryved with aH his oost, he went into Flaundes, & was þerin xi dayes, & did but litel harme; except þat⁷ he brent ij fair villagies, Popering & Belle, & oper houses þat⁸ wer of no⁹ 16 strenght, & so he¹⁰ returned home Ageyn. Also þis same yere pe King of Scotland beseged Rokesburgh¹¹ with myche peple; but Sir Rauf Gray departed fro pe CasteH, & ordeyned for rescouse; but as sone as pe Kyng vnderstode his departyng, he sodenly brak his 20 sieg & went his way,¹² leuyng moche ordynnance¹³ behinde him; wher he gat no worsshipe.

This same yeer, pe ij Day of Ianier, Quene Katerine, þat¹⁴ was pe Kinges moder, & wife to Kyng Henry þe Fyft, dyed, & departed 24 out of þis world, & was brought rially thrughe London to¹⁵ Westminster; & þer she lyeth worsshippfully buryed¹⁶ in oure Lady Chapel. Also¹⁷ þis same yere, pe xiiij day of Ianiver, fiH down pe yate with þe¹⁸ towr on it,¹⁹ on London Brigg²⁰ towarde Southwerk, 28 with two Arches, & al þat stode þeron. This same²¹ yere was A gret treaty holden bitweene Grauenyng & Caleys, bitwen pe King²² & Duke of Burgoyne, In which was pe Cardinal of Englonð & pe Duke of Northfolk, for pe King, with²² many othir lordes. And 32 for pe Duke, was²³ pe Duchesse, having ful power of hir lorde as

¹ þe om. HC. ² of Burgoyne om. HC. ³ þat H. ⁴ the H.

⁵ brasse which was H. ⁶ Dygeon H. digeon C. digeo (in margin) Ad.

⁷ þat om. C. ⁸ which HC. ⁹ of Add. of no HC. ¹⁰ he om. H.

¹¹ Rokesbrught H. burgh Ad. ¹² way and C.

¹³ stoff H. ¹⁴ which HC. ¹⁵ And so to HC.

¹⁶ And þer lieth buryed worsshippfully H. ¹⁷ And H. And also C.

¹⁸ A H. ¹⁹ on it om. H. ²⁰ leaf 188, back. ²¹ same om. H.

²²⁻²² And the Duke of Burgoyne where for the king was displesyd And sent for þe Cardinatt of Englonð þe Duke of Norfolk And H. Bourgoyne where for the king was the Cardinatt of englonð the duke of norfolk and C.

²³ was duple H.

Regent & lady of his landis, wher¹ was taken, by trewes² of both parties, An Abstynence of Werre for A certeyn tyme in þe name of þe Duchesse, & nat of þe Duke, because he had gone from his othe & legeance þat he had made to King Henry; þerfor King Henre⁴ neuer wold³ write, ne Apoynt, ne⁴ haue to do with him after, but al in þe Duchesse name.

Also þis same⁵ yere, Quene Iane died, þe ij day of Iuyl, which had ben King Henry þe iiij^{te} wife; & was caried fro Carmondsey 8 vnto Caunterbury, wher she lieth buried by⁶ King Henry þe iiij^{te}, hir houseband. This same⁵ yere died al þe lions in þe Toure of London, which⁷ had nat ben seen many⁸ yeeris before out of mynde. 12

⁹ How Owayne, a squyer of Wales þat had wedded Quene Kateryne, was Arested; And of þe Scisme bitwene Eugeny & Felix.⁹ Capitulum cclj.¹⁰

IN þe xvj yere of King Henry, died Sigismond, þemperoure of 16 Almaign, & Knight of þe Garter; whos entierment þe Kyng kept at Seynt¹¹ Poules in London ryally, wher was made a ryall hercie; and¹² þe King in his Astate, clad in blew, was at even at dirige. & on¹³ þe morne at masse, &c.¹⁴ And after hym was elect &¹⁵ chosen 20 Albert,¹⁶ Duke of Ostrych, which had wedded Sigismond's daughter, forto be Emperour; &¹⁷ also was Albert¹⁸ taken & receyved to be Kinge of Beme & of¹⁹ Hungarie bi reson²⁰ of his wyfe; for he left²¹ after him none other heir. Þis Albert was Emperour bot 24 one yere, for he was poysond, ²²& died þerof.²² Some say he dyed of A fixx: but he was A vertuouse man & A²³ pitiful, so moche þat al þe peple þat knew him²⁴ said þat²⁵ þe world²⁶ was nat worthy to haue his presence.²⁷ 28

¹ which H. ² sadenes H.

³ the kyng neuer wold C. the king wold neuer H.

⁴ with hym bot ne H. ⁵ same om. H. ⁶ with H.

⁷ the wich H. the which C. ⁸ in many H.

⁹⁻⁹ How Owayn . . . Eugeny & Felix om. H. ¹⁰ Cap iij 21 H.

¹¹ Seynt om. H. ¹² in Ad. ¹³ in H. ¹⁴ &c'. om. H. ¹⁵ An H.

¹⁶ Albert om. H. ¹⁷ & om. C. & also om. H.

¹⁸ also was Ad. Albert was H. This was C.

¹⁹ of om. HC. ²⁰ bicause H. because C.

²¹ his wyfe þat was Sygysmonds daughter which lefte H. his wife that was Sigismundis daughter whiche lefte C.

²²⁻²² and so he died HC. ²³ A om. HC.

²⁴ him om. H. ²⁵ þat om. H. ²⁶ worde H.

²⁷ hys presence. In þis yere was þe Kyng of Scottes murthered in his chambor by night pytously which king had ben prisson xv yere in England And thei þat slew hym were takyn afterward and hade cruel Iustice H.

This same¹ yere, one Owayn, A squyer of Wales, A man of low
 byrth, which had many A day² to-fore secretly wedded Quene
 Katerine, & had by hir iij sonnes & a doughter, was taken &
 4 commaunded to Newgate, to prison, bi þe³ lorde of Glowcestre,
 Protectour of þe Reame. And þe same yere⁴ he brake prison by þe
 mean of A preest þat was his Chapelayn. And after, he was
 5 taken ageyn bi þe³ Lorde Bemond, & brought Ageyn to Newgate,
 8 which afterward was delyuered at large; & one of his sonnes after-
 ward was made Erle⁶ of Richemount, Another,⁷ Erle of Penbroke,
 & þe third, A monk of Westmynster, which monk died sone after.
 This same¹ yere also, on New-yere day, at Baynard CasteH, fiH
 12 down A stakk of wod sodenly at afternone, & slew iij men⁸
 mescieuously, & foul hurt othir. Also at Bedford, on Ash-
 tuesday,⁹ wer iij men¹⁰ murthred without strok, by falling doun of a
 steir, as þei come out of þer¹¹ comon haH, & many foul hurt. In
 16 þe xvij yere, Sir Richard Beauchamp, þe gode Erle of Warwick,
 died at Rone, he beyng þat tyme lieutenaunt¹² of þe King in
 Normandie; and fro pens his body was brought to Warthewick,
 where he lieth worsshipfully in a new chapel on þe South side of
 20 þe Queer. Also þis¹³ yere was A gret derth of Corne in al¹⁴
 Englonð; for I¹⁵ busshel of whet was worth iij^s iiij^d in many
 places of Englonð,¹⁶ & yet men might nat haue ynoghe¹⁷; wherfore
 Stephen Brown, þat tyme Mair of London, sent vnto¹⁸ Pruse, &
 24 brought to¹⁹ London certeyn shippes laden with Rye, which eased,
 & did myche gode to þe peple; for korne was so skarce in
 Englonð þat in some placez²⁰ pore peple made þame brede of
 braken
 ferne²¹ rotes.

28 This yere þe general Counsel of Basile deposed Pope Eugeny; &
 þei chese Felix, which was Duke of Sauoy; & þan began þe Scisme
 which²² endured vnto þe yere of oure Lord Ihesu Crist²³ M¹ iiij^c
 xlviij.²⁴ This Felix was A devout prince, & saw þe sonnes of his
 32 sonnes, & after, lyued An holy &²⁵ deuoute lyfe, & was chosen Pope

¹ same om. H. ² A day om. H. ³ my HC.

⁴ And þis yere H. And this yere C. ⁵ leaf 189. ⁶ the Erle H.

⁷ And on oþer the H. & anoþir C. ⁸ m¹ Ad. men HC.

⁹ schyrday H. a shireday C. ¹⁰ m¹ Ad. xvij men HC.

¹¹ the H. ¹² levtenannt þat tyme H. ¹³ þis same H.

¹⁴ al om. H. ¹⁵ a C. ¹⁶ for 1 busshel . . . of Englonð om. H.

¹⁷ thought H. ¹⁸ in to C. ¹⁹ in H.

²⁰ þat in some placez om. H. places of Englonð C.

²¹ braken om. HC. interlined as a gloss Ad. ²² the which H.

²³ Ihu crist om. H. ²⁴ M¹ CCCC & xlviij H.

²⁵ holy & om. H.

by¹ þe Counsel of Basile. Eugeny [was] deposed; & so þe Scisme was long tyme. And þis Felix had no² moche³ obedience, bi-cause of þe Nevtralite for þe moste parte; & wel nygh al Cristendome obeid & repute Eugeny for verey Pope:—God knoweth who was 4 þe⁴ verey Poper of þame both; for both occupied, during þe lyfe of Eugeny. This same⁵ yere, Sir Richard, which was⁶ vicare of Hermetesworth, was degraded of his prestehode at Poules, & brent at Tour⁷ Hill, as for an heretike, vpon⁸ Seynt Botulphe day; 8—how-be-it,⁹ at his deth he died A gode Cristen man; wherfor, after his deth moche peple come to þe place wher he was¹⁰ brent, & offred, & made an hepe of stones, & sett vp A crosse of tree,^{†GC173} & held him for A Seynt, til þe Mair &¹¹ shereves, by þe commaundment of þe 12 Kyng & of¹² bisshopes, destroyed it, & made þer A dong-hiH. Also þis same yere þe shyreves of London sett out of Seynt Martyns þe Grannt, þe sanctuarey, fyve persones, which afterward wer restored Ageyn to þe⁴ same¹³ sanctuarey by þe Kinges Iusticez. After 16 Albert þe iij, Frederike was chosen Emperoure. This Frederike, Duke of Osterike, was long Emperoure, & differred for to be crowned at Rome because of þe⁴ Scisme; but after þat vnion was had, he was crowned with Emperial Diademe, with gret¹⁴ glorie & 20 triumphé, of Pope Nicholas þe Fourt: this was A man peseble, &¹⁵ of singular pacience, nat hatyng þe chireh: he wedded þe King of Portyngale doughter &c'.

¹⁶ **How þe Duchesse of Gloucestre was Arested for treson, & 24 committed to perpetuel prison in þe Ile of Mann; And of þe deth of Maister Roger Bolingbroke.¹⁶ Ca. cclij.¹⁷**

IN this yere,¹⁸ Elianour Cobbam, Duches of Gloucestre, was Arested for certeyn poyntes of treyson leyd Ageynst hir, wher-vpon 28 she was examyned in Seynt Stephens Chapel at Westmynster, before perchebisshop of Caunterbury; & þer she was enioyned to open penance, forto go through Chepe, bering a tapere in hir hand, & aftir in¹⁹ perpetuel prison in²⁰ þe Ile of Man, vnder þe keping 32 of Sir Thomas Stanley. Also þat same tyme wer Arested Maister Thomas SouthweH, A chanon of Westmynster, Maister Iohn Hune,

¹ at H. ² not C. ³ grete H. ⁴ þe om. H.

⁵ same om. H. ⁶ was om. C. ⁷ leaf 189, back. ⁸ on HC.

⁹ how weH HC. ¹⁰ had been H. he had be C. ¹¹ & om. H.

¹² of om. H. ¹³ same om. HC. ¹⁴ gret om. H.

¹⁵ pesebly quiete and HC. ¹⁶⁻¹⁸ om. H.

¹⁷ Capitulum 22 H. ¹⁸ yere dame H. ¹⁹ to HC. ²⁰ into H.

¹A chappeleyn) of þe said ladys,¹ Maister Roger Bolynbroke, A clerk vsyng Nygromancie, & one Mariery Iurdeman), called 'þe wyche of Eye' (beside Westmynster.) Thise wer Arested as for beyng of
⁴counsel with þe sayd ²Duchesse of Gloucestre. And as for Maister Thomas Southwel, he died in þe Towr þe night before he³ shold have benne regned on þe morow⁴; for so he said him self þat he shold die in his bedd, & nat bi Iustice. And in þe⁵ xx yere,⁶
⁸Maister Iohn) Hune & Maister Roger Bolyngbroke wer brought to⁷ þe Guyldhalle in London, & þer, before þe Mayr, þe lordes & ⁸chief Iustice of Englond, wer þei⁹ rayned, & dampned both¹⁰ to be drawen, hanged & quartred; but Maister Iohn) Hune had his
¹²chartre, (& was pardoned by þe King; but) Maister Roger was drawen to Tiborne, wher he confessed þat he died gyltles, (& neuer had trespassed) in þat þat he died fore; nat-withstanding he was hanged,¹¹ heded, & quartred;¹² And Margery Iurdemain was brent in Smyth-
¹⁶felde. Also pis yere¹³ was A gret Affray in Flet Strete by night tyme, bitwen) men of court & men of London, & diuerse men slayn), & many¹⁴ hurt: & one Herbotel was chief¹⁵ cause of þe misgouernance & Affray. Also pis yere, at chesing of þe Mair of London, þe
²⁰commones named Robert Chaptoun), & Raulyne Holand, taylor. & þe Aldermenn toke Robbert Clapton, & brought him at þe¹⁶ right hond of þe Mair, as þe custome is. And þan certeyn) talyoures & other¹⁷ hand-crafty men cried "nay! nat þat¹⁸ man, but¹⁹ Raulyn
²⁴Holand!" Wherfor þe Mair, þat was Padesly,²⁰ sent þe þat cried so²¹ to Newgate, where they Abode a gret while, & wer wel²² ponysshed.

In this same²³ yere wer diuerse Embassatoures sent in to Guyan
²⁸for A mariage for þe King for þerles doughter of Arminak, which was concluded; but, by þe mean of²⁴ þerle of Suthfolk, it was lett & put Aparte. And after pis, þe said Erle of Southfolk went ouer þe
²⁵See vnto²⁶ Fraunce, & þer he treted þe mariage bitwen) þe King

¹⁻¹ om. H. ² leaf 190. ³ þat he H. ⁴ morne HC. ⁵ þis H.

⁶ yere þe xx H. the yere xx C. ⁷ into H. ⁸ and the H.

⁹ þei om. HC. ¹⁰ both om. H. ¹¹ hanged om. H.

¹² quartered, on whos saule God haue mercy H. quartred, on whos soule God haue mercy C.

¹³ yere the lord talbott leyde feire to Deype, But þe Dolphyn rescowed it And wan þe Bastell þat Englishman hade made. Also pis yere H.

¹⁴ som H. somme C. ¹⁵ chief om. H. ¹⁶ þe om. C.

¹⁷ other om. H. ¹⁸ this HC. ¹⁹ no H.

²⁰ þat was padesly H. that was padysly C. om. Ad. ²¹ so cried HC.

²² wel om. H. ²³ same om. H. ²⁴ þe mean of om. H.

²⁵ þe om. H. ²⁶ into HC.

of Englonde & ¹ þe Kinges doughter of Cecil & of Ierusalem. & þe next yere it was concluded fully, þis ² mariage; by which ³ mariage þe ⁴ Kyng shold delyuer to hir fader þe Duchie of Angeo & perldome of Mayn), which was þe key of Normandy. Then departed þe ⁴ Duke of Suthfolk, *with* his wife & diuerse lordes & knightes, in þe moste rial astate ⁵ þat might be, out of Englonde, *with* new charez & palfreys, which went thugh Chepe, & so went ouer þe See, & receyved hir, & sith brought hir in Lent ⁶ after to Hampton, wher ⁸ she landed, & was ryally receyved. And on Candelmes evyn) before, bi A gret tempest of thondre & lightenyng at afternone, Poules steple was sett A fire on þe middes of the ⁷ shafte in þe tymbre, which was quenched bi force ⁸ of ⁹ labour, ¹⁰ & specially bi ¹² þe labour ¹⁰ of þe morow masse preste of þe Bow in Chepe, which was thought impossible, saufe only bi ¹¹ þe grace of God.

This yere was þerle of Stafford made & create Duke of Bokynham; þerle of Warewik, Duke of Warwike; þerle of Dorsett, ¹⁶ Marques ¹² of Dorsett; & þerle of Suthfolk was ¹³ made ¹⁴ Marquys of Southfolk.

¹⁵ How King Henry þe Sext ¹⁶ wedded Quene Margaret; And of hir Coronacion).¹⁵ Capitulum CCl[i]ij.¹⁷ 20

IN this yere Kyng Henry maried at Southwyke Quene Margaret; & she come to London) [þe] ^x xvij day of May; And bi þe way al þe lordes of Englonde receyved hir worsshypfully in diuerse places, & in especial þe Duke of Gloucestre. And on þe ¹⁸ ²⁴ Blakhethe, þe Mair of London), ¹⁹ Aldermen, & al þe crafte-men ²⁰ in blew gownnes browdred *with* þe deuyse of his craft, þat þei might be biknowen, mett *with* hir, with rede hoodes, & brought hir to London), where were diuerse pagentis & conntinane of ²³ diuerse histories shewed in diuerse placez of þe Cite Rially, & castelles. And þe xxx day of May þe forsaied Quene was crowned at Westmynster; and þer was Iustes iij dayes during, *with-in* þe sayntuarie tofore pabbey. This yere þe Prior of Kilmain Appelled ³²

¹ And Marget H. ² þat H. that C. ³ the which H.
⁴ by the which the H. ⁵ leaf 190, back. ⁶ the lent H. the lente C.
⁷ of Ad. of the C. ⁸ bi force om. H. ⁹ by H.
¹⁰⁻¹⁰ and . . . labour om. H. ¹¹ bi om. HC. ¹² þe marques H.
¹³ was om. H. ¹⁴ þe H. ¹⁵⁻¹⁵ How . . . Coronacion) om. H.
¹⁶ þe sext om. C. ¹⁷ Capitulum 23 H.
¹⁸ þe om. H. ¹⁹ of London om. C.
²⁰ men om. HC.

perle of Vrmond of treson), which had A day Assigned to þame forto
 feght in Smythfeld. And þe listes wer made, & þe feeld dressed ;
 but when it came to poynt, þe King commaunded þat þei shold nat
 4 fight, but toke þe quarel in-to his own hond. & þis was¹ done at
 þe Instance & labore² of certeyn prechours & doctoures of London,
 as Maister Gilbert Worthington), parson³ of ⁴Seynt Andrews in
 Holborn), & other. Also þis same yere come A gret Enbassate into
 8 Englonde out of Fraunce, forto haue concluded A perpetual pees ;
 but in conclusion it turned vnto⁵ A trewes of A yere. About þis
 tyme dyed Seynt Bernardyne, A gray frere⁶ which began þe new
 reformacion of þat ordre in many places, In so myche þat þei þat
 12 wer reformed bene called 'Observantes,' which Observauntes bene
 encrecid gretly in Italie & in Almaigne. This Bernardin was
 canonized bi Pope Nicholas þe Fyft In þe yere M^t CCCCL.⁷ Iohannes
 de Capestrauo was his disciple, whiche profited moche⁸ to þe
 16 reformacion of þat ordre ; for whome God shewed many a fair⁹
 miracle. Also here is to be noted, þat fro þis tyme forward, King
 Henry neuer profited¹⁰ ne Went forward ; but Fortune began to turn
 fro him on al sides, als¹⁰ wel in Fraunce, Normandy, Guyan, as in
 20 Englonde. Some men hold opinion þat King Henry gaf commission
 plenerly¹¹ to Sir Edward HuHe, Sir Robert Roos, Dean¹² of Seynt
 Seuerynes, & oper, to conclude A mariage for him with perle of
 Arminakes suster, which was promysed (as it was seid) & concluded ;
 24 but afterward¹³ it was broken, & he wedded Quene Margarete, as
 A-fore is seid ; which was A dere mariage for þe reame of Englonde ;¹⁴
¹⁵ffor it is knowen verely þat, for to haue hir, was delyuered þe
 Duchie of Angeo & þe Erdome of Maign), which was þe key of
 28 Normandie, for þe Frensh men tentre. And Aboue þis, þe¹⁵ said¹⁶
 Marquys of Southfolk axed in playn parlement A fyftenth & an
 half for to feche hir out of Fraunce. Se now¹⁷ what A mariage was
 þis, as to þe comparison of þat oper mariage of Armynyke ! for þer
 32 shold haue ben delyuered so many castels & townes in Gwyhen) ;
 And so moche gode shold haue bene yiffen with hir, þat al Englonde
 shold haue bene enryched per-by,¹⁸ but contrary-wise feH. Wherfor

¹ was om. H. ² & labore om. H. ³ the person H. ⁴ leaf 191.

⁵ to H. ⁶ ? MS. frerer. ⁷ yere of our lord M^t CCCC and fyfty H.

⁸ moche om. H. ⁹ a fair om. H. ¹⁰⁻¹⁰ om. H. als = as C.

¹¹ plenerly om. H. ¹² þe Dean H.

¹³ afterward it was broken for by the mene of þe marquys of suffolke H.

¹⁴ englonde as it schewed before H. ¹⁵⁻¹⁵ om. H.

¹⁶ & for H. ¹⁷ lo HC.

¹⁸ ben þer by encreased H. per by om. C.

every gret¹ prince ought to kepe his promisses; ² for, bicause of breking of pis promisse,² & for mariage of Quene Margaret, what losse hath pe reame of *Englond* had,³ bi losyng of Normandy and Guyan, bi diuision of⁴ pe reame, pe rebelling of commines Ageynst⁴ per princes & lordes; what diuision Ayen⁵ pe lordes, what murdre & sleying of pame! what felde foughten & made! in conclusion, so many,⁶ that many a⁷ man hath lost his life; And in conclusion, pe King deposed, &⁸ pe Quene with hir son fayn to flee into⁸ Scotland, & fro pens to⁹ Fraunce, & so to Lorayn, pe place wher¹⁰ she come first¹¹ fro! Many men deme pat pe breking of¹² pe Kinges promisse to pe suster of perles of Armynak, was cause of this gret losse & Aduersite. 12

How pe gode Duke of Gloucestre, Humfrey, pe Kinges vncl, was Arested at pe parlement of Bury; And¹³ of his death; And how Anges in Mayn was deliuered.

In¹⁴ pe xxv^{te} yere¹⁵ of King Henry pe VI^{te},¹⁶ was A parlement¹⁶ at Bvry called seynt Edmundes Bury; About which was commaunded aH pe communes of pe cont[r]e to be per in per most defensable Aray, to¹⁷ A-wayt vpon pe King, to which¹⁸ parlement come pe Duke of Gloucestre, Humfrey, pe Kinges vncl, which had²⁰ bene pe¹⁹ protector of *Englond* al pe non-Age of pe King. And Anone after pat²⁰ he was come to²¹ his logyng, he was Arested bi pe Viscount Bemond, pe Constable of *Englond*, acompanyed²² with²³ pe Duke of Bokyngham & many oper lordes, and forth²⁴ with al²⁴ his²⁵ seruandes wer commaunded for to depart fro him; And xxxij of²⁶ pe chief of them wer arested also,²⁷ & sent to diuerse prisonnes. And anone, after pe²⁸ said Arest,²⁹ pe said Duke was on pe morn found³⁰ dede: on whos soul, God haue mercy, Amen!³¹ But how²⁸ he died, & in what maner, pe certentie is nat knowen to me.³² Some said he died for sorow; some said he was murthred bitwene ij

¹ leaf 191, back. ²⁻² om. H. ³ had om. HC. ⁴ in HC.

⁵ emong H. amonge C. ⁶ so many om. H. ⁷ a om. H.

⁸ and om. H. ⁹ into H. that C. ¹⁰ pat H.

¹¹ first om. H. ¹² of om. H. ¹³ of om. C. ¹⁴ Also in H.

¹⁵ yere xxv C. ¹⁶ pe vi^{te} om. HC. ¹⁷ for to HC. ¹⁸ to the which H.

¹⁹ pe om. C. ²⁰ pat om. C. ²¹ come in H. was in C.

²² whome Acompanyed H. whom accompanied C.

²³ with om. HC. ²⁴ for H. ²⁵ his om. H.

²⁶ also of H. ²⁷ also om. H. were also arested C. ²⁸ this C.

²⁹ And v or vj days after bis seid arest H.

³⁰ was . . . found om. H. found om. C. ³¹ Amen om. H.

³² to me om. H. to me knowen C.

federbeddes; other said *pat* an hote spytt was put in his foundement; & so,¹ how² he died, God knoweth, to whome is no thing³ hidd. And when⁴ he was thus⁵ dede, he was leid open, *pat* al 4 men might se him, And so both lordes & knightes of þe shires, with burgessers, come & saw him⁶ ded; but þai coud nat perceif wound ne token⁷ how he died. here may men mark what þis world⁸ is! this Duke was A noble man & A gret clerk, & had worsshippfully 8 rewled þis reame to þe Kinges behove, & neuer coude be found faute in⁹ him,¹⁰ but envy of þame *pat* wer gouernoures, & had promised¹¹ þe Duchis of Angas & perldome of Maign), caused¹² þe destruccion of þis noble man; for thei drad him, *pat* he wold haue 12 enpesshed *pat* deliuerance. And after, þei sent his body to seynt Albones¹³ with certeyn lightes for to be buried; And so Sir Geruase of Clifton had þan¹³ þe charge to convey þe corps¹⁴; & so it was buried at Seynt Albons in þe Abbey; & v persones of his household 16 wer sent to London, & *per* wer reyned & juged to be drawen, honged & quartred; Of wome. þe names wer Sir Roger Chammbrelayn), knight, one¹⁵ Midelton, A¹⁶ squyere, Herbard, A squyer, Arthur,¹⁷ A squyer, & Richard Nedham: which v persons wer drawen fro þe 20 Toure of London thugh Chepe to¹⁸ Tiburn), & *per* honged, & lat down) quyck, & þen striped for to have bene heded & quartred. -And þan þe Marquys of Southfolk shewed *per* for þame þe Kinges pardon) vnder his gret Seale; & so þei wer pardoned of þe rem- 24 anent of thexecucion, & had *per* lyues, & after¹⁹ war brought agen yn) to London, &²⁰ frely deliuered. this began þe trouble in þe reame of²¹ Englund for þe deth of þis noble Duke of Gloucestre; &²² al þe communes of þe reame began forto murmure²³ for it,²⁴ & 28 were nat contente.

After *pat*²⁵ Pope Eugeny was dede,²⁶ Nicholas þe Fyft was elect Pope. This Nycholas was chosen for Eugeny, yet honggyng þe

¹ but H. so om. C. ² leaf 192. ³ nothing is H.

⁴ þen when H. thenne whan C. ⁵ so HC.

⁶ him lye H. hym lye C.

⁷ but wond ne token colde the not *perceyue* H. but wounde ne token coude they *perceyue* C.

⁸ worde H. ⁹ to C. ¹⁰ found be hym Any faute H.

¹¹ promised to deliuer H. ¹² for thei caused H.

¹³⁻¹³ om. H. ¹⁴ in the charge of the corpus to convoy H.

¹⁵ And H. ¹⁶ A om. H. ¹⁷ or Archure H.

¹⁸ vnto H. ¹⁹ and so þei H. And so they C.

²⁰ And after H. and after C. ²¹ þe reame of om. H.

²² of Gloucestre & om. H. & om. C. ²³ to mourne H.

²⁴ for it om. H. ²⁵ *pat* om. HC. ²⁶ was dede om. H.

Scisme. notwithstanding he gat þe obedience of al Cristen Reames ; for after þat¹ he was electe & sacred² Pope, certayn lordes of Fraunce & of England wer sent vnto³ Sauoy, to Pope Felix, for to entrete him to cese of þe⁴ Pepecy. And bi þe special⁵ labour 4 of þe⁶ Bisshop of Norwich & þe lorde of Seynt Iohnes, he cessed þe ij^{de} yere after þat Pope Nicholas was sacred. And þe seid Felix was made Legate of Fraunce & Cardinal of Sauoye, & resigned þe hole papacy to⁷ Nicholas ; after,⁸ lyved an holy lyfe, & died 8 an holy man ; And as it is said, Almighty⁹ God shewed miracles for him. This was þe xxij Scisme bitwen Eugeny & Felix, & dured xvi yere. þe cause was þis : The¹⁰ general Counsel of Basil deposed Eugeny, which was only Pope & vndoubted, for- 12 as-myche as he obserued nat & kept¹¹ þe decrees & statutes of þe Counceyl of Constance, as it is A-fore¹² said ; nethir¹³ he rought not to gyve obedience to þat general Counseil in no maner wise ;¹⁴ wher-of Arose A gret Altercacion among Writeres of þis 16 mateer, *pro* & *contra*, which kan nat Accorde vnto¹⁵ þis day. one partie seith þat¹⁶ ‘ þe Counsel is Aboue þe Pope,’ þat oþer partie seith “ nay, but þe Pope is Aboue þe Counsel.” Godd, blessed Aboue all thinges, gif & graunt¹⁷ his pees in¹⁸ holy chirche, 20 spouse of Criste, Amen ! This Nicholas was comen of Iene,¹⁹ of low burth ; A doctour of dyvynite, an Actif man, he reedyfied many places þat wer broken & ruynouse, & did do²⁰ make A gret walf About þe Palays, & made þe²¹ wall new About Rome, 24 for drede of þe Turkes. And þe peple wondred of þe ering²² &²³ resignyng of Felix to²⁴ him, considering þat he was A man of so humble²⁵ burth ; And þat othir was of Affinite to al þe moste parte of Cristen princes ; wherof þer was A verse published in 28 Rome, þus :²⁶ *hic fulsit mundo ; cessit Felix Nicholas.*

27 How Sir Fraunceys Aragonoys toke Fogiers in Normandy ; & of þe losse of Constantinoble by the Turks.²⁷ Ca. ccliiij.²⁸

¹ þat *om.* H. ² leaf 192, back. ³ in to H. into C.

⁴ þe *om.* H. ⁵ special *om.* H. ⁶ þe *om.* H.

⁷ vnto H. ⁸ afterward H. ⁹ Almighty *om.* H.

¹⁰ þat the H. ¹¹ And kept not H.

¹² A-fore *om.* H. ¹³ Neuer H. ¹⁴ in no maner wise *om.* H.

¹⁵ on to H. ¹⁶ þat *om.* H. ¹⁷ send H. ¹⁸ among H.

¹⁹ was young of Iene comyn H ; was of Iene comen of C. ²⁰ to H.

²¹ A H. ²² ceysyng H. ceesing C. ²³ and of the H.

²⁴ vn to H. ²⁵ lowe H. ²⁶ in þis maner H. in this maner C.

²⁷⁻²⁷ *om.* H. ²⁸ *Capitulum* 25 H.

In þe xxvij yere of King Henry þe vj^{te},¹ beyng trewes bitwen England & Fraunce,² A knight of þe Engliſſh partie named Sir Fraunceys Aragonys, toke A town of Normandy, called³ Fogiere, 4 Ayens þe trewes; of which takyng began moche sorow & losse, for þis was þe occasion bi which⁴ þe Frenshmen gat al Normandy &c.⁵ 6 About þis tyme þe Cite of Constantinoble, which was Imperia^l 7 Cite in al Grece, was taken bi þe Turkes infideles, which was 8 betrayed (as some hold Opinion), & pemp[er]or taken & slayn, & þat ryal chirch of Sancta Sophia robbed & despoyled, & þe reliques & ymages & þe Rode drawn Aboute þe strete; which was done in despite of Cristen feith. And sone after, al Cristen feith in Grece 12 perissed & cessed. Ther wer many Cristen men slayn, & innumerable solde & put in Captiuite. by þe takyng of þis towne, þe Turkey gretly⁸ enhaused in pride; & it is A gret losse vnto al Cristendome.⁶

16 9 In þe xxvij yere¹⁰ was A parlement holden at Westmyenster, & fro pens Adiourned to þe Blakfreres of¹¹ London, And after Cristenmasse, to¹² Westmyenster Ageyn. And þis same yere, Robert of¹³ Cane, A man of þe West contre, with A few shippes, toke A 20 gret¹⁴ flote of shippes comyng out of þe baye, laden with salt,—which shippes wer of Prays, Flaundes, Holand & Zeland,—& brought þame to Hampton. Wherfor þe merchantes of England beyng in Flaundes, wer Arested in Bruges, Ippre, & oþer places, 24 & might nat be deliuered, ner þer dettes dischargied, til þei hadd made A poyntment for to pay for thamendes & hurtes of tho shippes; which was payed bi þe merchandes of þe staple, euery penny. And in like wise, þe merchauntez & godez beyng in 28 Danskę wer also Arested, & made gret¹⁵ Amendes.

This same yere the¹⁶ Frenshmen in A mornyng toke, bi A trayn,¹⁷ þe town of Ponteralargee, & þer-in þe Lorde Faucounbrigge was taken prisoner. And after þat,¹⁸ in Decembre, Roan was 32 taken & lost, beyng þer-in þe Duke of Somersett, Edmund, þerle¹⁹ of Shrewsbury, whiche bi A-poyntment left Pleges, & left al²⁰

¹ tho in the yere of kyng harry xxvij H. In the yere of kyng henry xxvij C.

² fraunce and Englund C. ³ named HC. ⁴ bi the which H.

⁵ &c om. H. ⁶⁻⁶ om. H. ⁷ leaf 193. ⁸ is gretly C.

⁹ This yere A squiere of Englund named Chalons duer armes with A knyzt of fraunce named Sir leuys de buyett to fore þe french kyng And ranne þe french knyght through wyth A spere And slew him in þe feld H.

¹⁰ yere xxvij C. ¹¹ at HC. ¹² on to H. ¹³ of om. H.

¹⁴ an hole H. ¹⁵ Agrete H. ¹⁶ the om. H. ¹⁷ by A trayn toke H.

¹⁸ þat om. H. ¹⁹ Erle H. ²⁰ lost H. loste C.

Normandy, &¹ come home. And during þe said² parlement þe Duke of Suthfolke was Arested & sent to³ þe Towre; & þer he⁴ was A moneth. And after, þe King did do feche him out, for which⁵ cause aH þe comunes of England wer in A gret rumor, what for⁶ 4 deliuerance of Anges & Maign, & after,⁷ losing of al Normandie, And in especial for þe deth of þe gode Duke of Gloucestre; In so myche pat, in some placez, men gadred togedre, & made þame capitaynes—as Blew-Berde & oþer, which wer resisted, taken, & 8 had Iustice, & died. And þen⁸ þe said Parlement was adiourned to Leycestre; and thidder þe King brought with him þe Duke of Southfolk. & when⁹ þe Comon house vnderstode þat he was oute of þe Toure, & come thider, þei desired to haue execucion on¹⁰ þem 12 þat wer cause of þe delyuerance of Normandy, & had bene cause of þe deth of þe¹¹ Duke of Gloucestre, & had sold Gascoygn & Guyhan, of which þei named to-be gylty, þe Duke of Southfolk as chief, þe — Lord Say, þe Bisshop of Salesbury, Danyel, & many moo. And 16 for to Apease þe comons, þe Duke of Southfolk was exiled out of Englonð v yere; & so, during þe Parlement, he went in to Northfolk, & þer toke shipping forto go out of þe Reame of Englonð¹² vnto¹³ Fraunce. And þis yere,¹⁴ as he sayled on þe See, A shipp of 20 Werre called¹⁵ Nicholas of þe¹⁶ Tour mett with þis¹⁷ shippe, & founde him þer-in; whome þei toke out, & brought hym into þere shipp tofore þe Maister & Capitayns; & þer he was examined, & at last Iuged to þe¹⁸ deth. And so þei put him in A Cabone, & his 24 chapeleyn for to shryve him; And þat done, þei brought him in to Dover Rood, & þer sett him in-to þe boot, & þere smote of his hede, & brought þe body Alonde, vpon þe sondes, & sett þe hede — per-by. And þis was done þe fyft day of Maye. loo! whatt 28 Availed him now, al his¹⁹ deliuerance of Normandy ꝑc.²⁰ And here yhe may leer²¹ how he was rewarded for þe deth of þe Duke — of Gloucestre. This began sorow vpon sorew, & deth for deth.²²

²³ How this yere was thensurrexion in Kent of þe communes, 32 of whome Iake Cade, On Irishman, was Capitayn.²³ Ca. cclv.²⁴

¹ A H. ² same H. ³ in to HC. ⁴ he om. H.
⁵ for which of Ad. of which HC. ⁶ for the HC. ⁷ after for H.
⁸ þen om. H. ⁹ leaf 193, back. ¹⁰ of H. ¹¹ þe om. H.
¹² of Englonð om. H. ¹³ into HC. ¹⁴ yere om. H.
¹⁵ called the HC. ¹⁶ þe om. HC. ¹⁷ hys H. his C. ¹⁸ þe om. H.
¹⁹ þis H. ²⁰ &c om. H. ²¹ se H. here C. ²² deth &c. C.
²³—²³ om. H. ²⁴ Capitulum 26 H.

This yere of our Lorde M^t cccc l, was þe gret grace of þe Iubilee at Rome; wher was gret pardon, in-so-mych þat, frome¹ al place; in² Cristendome, gret multitude of peple resorted thider.

4 þis yeere³ was A gret Assemblee &⁴ gadering togedre of þe⁵ comons of Kent in gret nombre, & made an Insurrexion, & rebelled Ageynst þe Kyng & his lawes, & ordeynd þame⁶ A capitayn called Iohn Cayd, An Irish man, which named him self Mortymer, Cosyn
8 to þe Duke of Yorke. And þis Capitayn held thise men togedre, & made ordinance; Among þame, & brought þame to Blak-Heth, wher he made A biH of peticiones to þe King & his Counsel, & shewed what iniuries & oppressions þe Poer comons suffred; & al
12 vnder colour forto come⁷ to his Abone; & he had A gret multitude of peple. And þe xvij⁸ day of Iunyn, þe King,⁹ many lordes,
10 Capitaynes & men of Werre, went toward him to þe Blakk-heeth. And when þe Capitayne of Kent vnderstode þe commyng of þe
16 King with so gret¹¹ puyssaunce, he¹² with-drew him with his peple to Seuenoke, A litel village. And þe¹³ xxvij¹⁴ day of Iun, he¹⁵
beyng with-drawn & gone, þe King come, with his Armees sett in ordre & enbatailed, to þe Blak-Heth, And, by Aduise of his Counsel,
20 sent Sir Vmfrey Stafford, knight, & William Stafford, squyer, two valiaunt Captanes, with certeyn peple, to fecht with þe Capytane, & to take¹⁶ & bryng him & his Accessories to þe King, which went to Seuenoke; & per þe Capytane with his felisshepe mett
24 with hem, & fought Ayenst þame,¹⁷ & in conclusion slew þame bothe, & as many as Abode & wold nat yheld þame ner flee. Duryng þis sharmysh fiH¹⁸ A grete variaunce Amonges þe¹⁹ lordes men, & þe²⁰ comon peple beyng on Blak-Heth Ayens þe²¹ lordes & Capitayns,
28 sayng playnly þat þei wold go to þe Capitayn of Kent, to Assist and help him,²² but if þei might haue execucion of þe traytours beyng²³ About þe King, to which²⁴ þe King said nay; And þei said playnly þat²⁵ þe Lorde Say, Tresourer of England, the Bisshope of
32 Salesbury, ²⁶ þe Baron of Dudley,²⁶ þabbot of Gloucestre, Danyel, & Trevillian, & many mo, wer traytours, & worthy to be dede.

¹ in H. ² of H.

³ yere was *sir* Thomas Oryell ouerthrown At Fermygny And many English men slayn and takyn prisoners This same yere H.

⁴ A H. ⁵ þe om. H. ⁶ hym C. ⁷ haue come H. ⁸ vij H.

⁹ king with H. ¹⁰ leaf 194. ¹¹ grete A H. ¹² he om. Ad.

¹³ þe om. H. ¹⁴ xxvij^{ti} H. ¹⁵ he om. H. ¹⁶ take hym HC.

¹⁷ them Ayenst H. ¹⁸ þe fell H. ¹⁹ þe om. H. ²⁰ þe om. H.

²¹ þe H. their C. ²² him om. H. ²³ beyng om. H.

²⁴ to where H. wher to C. ²⁵ þat om. H. ²⁶⁻²⁶ om. H.

herfore, forto¹ please þe lordes menys & also some of þe Kinges house, þe Lorde Say was Arested & sent to þe Toure of London. And þan þe King, hering tydynges of þe deth & ouerthrowing of þe Staffordes, *with-drew* him to London, & fro thens² to Kylling-4 worth; ffor þe King ne þe lordes durst nat trust þer own household meny &c.³ Then, after þat þe Capytan had þis victory vpon þise⁴ Staffordes, Anone he toke Sir Humfrey Salett, & his brigantines smytten ful of gylted nayles, & also his gilted spores, & 8 Araied him like A lorde & a Capi⁵tayn, & resorted *with* al his meyney, & also mo þan he had tofore, to þe Blak-Heth. Ageyn to whome come perchebisshope of Caunterbury & þe Duke of Bokyngham to þe Blak-Heth, and spake *with* him; &, as it was said, þei 12 found him ⁶witty in his talkyng & ⁷request; & so they departed.⁶ And þe third day of Iuyl he come & entred into London *with* al his peple, & ⁸did make A ⁹cry þer¹⁰ in þe Kinges name & in his name,¹¹ þat no man shold robb ne take no mannes gode bot if he 16 payd for it; & come ridyng thugh þe Cite in *gret pride*, & smote his swerde vpon London stone in Canwykstrete. And he, beyng in þe Cite, sent to þe Towre forto haue þe Lord Saye; & so þei sett him & brought him to þe Guyld-Hall before þe Mayre & þe 20 Aldremen, wher he was examined. And þe lorde¹² sayd þat¹³ he wolde & ought to bene Iuged by his peres. And þe communes of Kent toke him by force fro þe Mair &¹⁴ officers þat kept him, & toke him to A prest to shryve him. & er he might be half 24 shryven, þei brought him to þe Standard in Chepe, & þer smote of his hede: ¹⁵& thus died þe Lorde Say, Tresourer of Englonde. After þis, þei sett his hede on¹⁶ A spere, & bare it Aboute in þe Citee. And þe same day, Aboute¹⁷ þe¹⁸ Mylle-Ende, Crowmer was beheded. 28 And þe¹⁹ day before, at afternone, þe Capytan, *with certeyn* of his meyney, went to Philipp Malpas house, & robbed him, & toke Away moche gode. And fro thense he went to Seynt Margret Patyns, to one Cherstis hous, & robbed him, ²⁰& toke A way moche 32 gode.²⁰ Also, At which robberyng diuerse men of London of þer neghburse wer at it, & toke *part with* him.²¹ For þis robberyng þe

¹ to H. ² thens vn to A. ³ &c. om. H. ⁴ the HC.

⁵ leaf 194, back. ⁶⁻⁸ om. H. ⁷ and his C.

⁸ And þer H. and there C. ⁹ A om. HC. ¹⁰ þer om. HC.

¹¹ name om. H. ¹² And he HC. ¹³ þat om. HC. ¹⁴ And the H.

¹⁵ hede on whos saul god haue mercy Amen) H. hede on whos soule Almyghty god haue pite and mercy Amen. C.

¹⁶ vp on H. ¹⁷ Aboute om. H. ¹⁸ at H. ¹⁹ þe same H.

²⁰⁻²¹ om. H. ²¹ them H.

peples hertes fih fro him, & euery thryfty man was A-forde¹ forto² be serued in like wise. for per was many A man, in London þat Abbayted and wold fayn³ haue seen A comon robbery, which
 4 Almighty⁴ God for-bidd! for it is to suppose þat,⁵ if he had nat robbed, he might haue gone ferre er he had be with-stonde; ffor þe King & al the⁶ lordes of þe Reame of Englund wer departed, except the Lorde Scalez þat kept þe Toure of London.⁷ And þe
 8 fyft day of Iuyl he gert⁸ smyte of A mannes hede in Southwerk. And þe night after, þe Mair of London, þe Aldermen & þe⁹ communes of þe Cite, concluded to dryve Away þe Capytane & his hoste, and sent to þe Lorde Scales in¹⁰ þe Toure, & to Mathew
 12 Gogh, A Capitayn of Normandie, þat þei wold þat night Assail þe Capitayn with þem of Kent. & so þey did, & come to London Brigge, in to Southwerk, er þe Capitan had any knowleage þer-of; & þer¹¹ þei fought with þem þat kept¹² þe brigge. & þe Kentissh men
 16 went to harnoys, & come to þe brigge, & shott & fought with þame, & gát þe brigge, & made þame of Londone to flee, & slew many of þame, & þis endured al þe night, to & fro, til ix of þe⁹ clokk on þe morne. & at¹³ last þei brent þe drawbrigge, wher many of þame of
 20 London wer drowned. In which night, Sutton, an Alderman, was slayn; Roger Hesant, & Mathew Gogh, & many oper. And, after this, þe Chaunceler of Englund sent to þe Capytane A general pardone¹⁴ for him, & Another for all his meyney. And þan þei
 24 departed fro Southwerk, euery man home to his hous. And when þei wer al departed & gone, þer wer proclamacions made in Kent, Southsea, & in¹⁵ oper places, þat what man coude take þe Capytane, quyk or ded, shold have A m^t mark. And after þis, one Alexander
 -28 Iden, A squyer of Kent, toke him in A gardyn in Southsex; & in þe takyng þe Capytane, Iohn Cade was slayn, & after beheded, & his hede sett on London Brigge. And þan Anone after,¹⁶ þe King come in-to Kent, & did his Iustices sitt at Canterbury, & enquire
 32 who wer Accessories & chief cause of þis Insurreccion. And þer wer viij men Iuged to dethe in one day, & in othir places, mo. And fro þens þe King went vnto¹⁷ Sucessex, & so¹⁸ in-to þe West

¹ Arested H. ² to H. ³ fayn) om. H. ⁴ almighty om. H.

⁵ þat om. HC. ⁶ leaf 195. ⁷ of London om. H.

⁸ he did do H. he dide done C.

⁹ þe om. H. ¹⁰ to HC. ¹¹ þer om. H. ¹² And H.

¹³ at the H. ¹⁴ pardon generall H. pardon general C.

¹⁵ in om. H. ¹⁶ And Anon after then H. And anone after thenne C.

¹⁷ in to H. ¹⁸ so om. HC.

— contre, where A litel before was slayn þe Bisshop of Salisbury. And þis¹ yere so many wer² Iuged to deth, þat xxij hedes stode³ vpon⁴ London Brigge at ones.

⁵ Of þe felde þat þe⁶ Duke of York toke at Brenthethe in Kent; 4
And of þe birth of Prince Edwarde; And of þe first batail
of⁷ Seynt Albones, wher þe Duke of Somersett was slayn.⁵
Ca. cc lvi.⁸

1452 In þe xxx yere of King Henry þe vi^{te}, þe⁹ Duke of York came 8
out of þe Marche of Walys, with þerle of Devonshire &¹⁰ Lorde
Cobbam, &¹¹ gret puyssance, for reformacion of certayn Iniuries &
wronges, & also¹² to haue Iustice of¹³ certeyn lordes beyng¹⁴ About
þe King; and toke A¹⁵ felde at Brentheth beside Derthford in Kent, 12
which was A strong feld. For which cause þe King, with al þe lordes
of the land, went vnto¹⁶ Blakheth with A gret & A strong¹⁷ multitude
of peple, armed & ordeyned for þe werr in þe best wise. And when
pei had mustered on þe Blakheth, certeyn lordes wer sent to him 16
for to trete & make A-poyntment with him, which wer, þe Bisshope
of Ely &¹⁸ þe Bisshop of Wynchestre, & þe Erles of Salesbury & of
Warrewick. And þei concluded þat þe Duke of Somersett shold
be had to warde, & to Answer to such Articles as þe Duke of 20
York sholde put on¹⁹ him; and þan þe Duke of York shold brek
his felde, & come to þe King, which was²⁰ promised bi þe Kyng.
And so þe King commaunded þat þe Duke of Somersett shold be
had in warde; & þen þe Duke of York breke vp his felde, & come 24
to þe King. And when he was comen, contrary to þe promisses
tofore²¹ made, þe Duke of Somersett was present in þe felde,
Awayting & chief about þe King, & made þe Duke of York ride
tofore as A prisoner thugh London; & after pei wold haue put 28
him in holde. But A noyse Aroose þat perl of Marche, his son),
was commyng with²² x m³ men to London-ward, wher-of þe Kyng
& his counsel fered. And þan they concluded þat þe Duke of
York sholde departe at his wiþ. 32

¹ þis same H. this same C.

² were so many H. were soo many C. ³ leaf 195, back.

⁴ on H. at C. ⁵⁻⁵ om. H. ⁶ þat Ad. that the C. ⁷ at C.

⁸ Capitulum 27 H. ⁹ In the yere xxx the HC.

¹⁰ & þe H. and the C. ¹¹ with H.

¹² also om. H. ¹³ on HC. ¹⁴ beyng om. H.

¹⁵ An H. ¹⁶ vn to the H. vnto the C. ¹⁷ & A strong om. H.

¹⁸ and om. H. ¹⁹ to H. ²⁰ was att H. wa3 al C. ²¹ Afore HC.

²² Here H breaks off imperfect.

About þis tyme began gret diuision in Spriusse bitwene þe gret Maister & þe knightes of þe Duche ordre, which wer lordes of þat Contre; ffor þe communes & townes rebelled¹ Ageynst þe lordes, & made so gret werre þat, at þe last, þei called þe King of Pole to be þe lorde; which² King come, & was worsshipfully receyved, & laid siege to þe castel of Marienburgh (which was þe chief Castel & strenght of al þe land), & wan it, & drove out þe Maister of Dansk & al othir places of þat land. And so þei þat had bene lordes many yeres, lost al þe seygnorie & possessions in þo landes.

And in³ þe yere of þencarnacion of our Lord M^t iiij^c liij, vpon⁴ Seynt Edwardes day, Quene⁵ Margaret was delyuered of A fair prince, which was named Edwarde. þat same day Iohn Norman was chosen for to be Mair of London, And on⁶ þe day þat he shold take his othe at Westmynstre, he went thider by water with al þe craftes, wher Afore-tyme þe Mair, Aldremen, & al þe craftes rode on⁷ horse back: which was neuer vsed afore,⁸ but seth⁹ þat tyme þei haue gone euer bi water, in barges.

Yhe haue wel vnderstond before,¹⁰ how þat, contrary to the promise of þe King, & also þe conclusions taken bitween þe King & þe Duke of York at Brentheth, þe Duke of Somersett went nat to warde, but Abode about þe King, & had gret rewl. And Anone affir, he was made Capytayn of Caleys, & rewled þe King & his reame as he wold. Wherfor þe gret lordes of þe Reame, & also þe communes, wer nat pleased, for which cause þe Duke of Yorke, perles of Warrewick & of Salesbury, with many knyghtes & squyers & moche peple, come for to remeve þe said Duke of Somersett & othir fro þe Kyng. And þe King, hering of þe commyng, thought by his counsel forto haue gone Westward, & nat for to mete with þame: and he¹¹ had with him þe Duke of Somersett, þe Duke of Bokyngham, þe perle of Stafford, þe perle of Northumbreland, Lorde¹² Clifford, & many oþer. And what tyme þat þe Duke of York & his felisship vnderstode þat þe King was departed with þise said lordes fro London, Anone he chaunged þe¹³ way, & costed þe Contre, & come to Seynt Albons¹⁴ þe xxiiij day of May, &¹⁵ mett with þe Kyng, to whome the Kyng sent certayn lordes, & desired him to kepe þe peax, & departed, but in

¹ leaf 196.

² the which C.

³ in om. C.

⁴ on C.

⁵ the quene C.

⁶ on om. C.

⁷ a C.

⁸ after C.

⁹ syn C.

¹⁰ tofore C.

¹¹ he om. C.

¹² the lord C.

¹³ his C.

¹⁴ leaf 196; back.

¹⁵ & there C.

conclusion), whiles þei treted on þat one side, þerle of Warwik, with þe Marchemen & with othir, entred þe town on þat other side, & fought Ayenst þe King & his partie: & so began þe batail & feghtyng, which endured A gode while, but in conclusion þe Duke 4 of York apteyned & had þe victorie of þat Iorney; In which was slayn þe Duke of Somersett, þerle of Northumbreland & þe Lorde Clifford, with¹ many knightez & squyers, & many² hurt. And on þe morne after þei brought þe Kinge in gret Astate to London, and 8 he was³ looged in þe Bisshop paleys of London. And sone⁴ After was A gret parlement; In which parlement þe Duke of York was made Protector of Englonð, & þerl of Warwick Capytane of Caleys, & þerle of Salesbury Chaunceler of Englonð. And al suche 12 persones as had the rewl tofore About þe King, wer sett Aparte, & might nat reul as þei did Afore.⁵

In this same yeer died Pope Nicholas þe Fyft; & after him was Calixt þe Third. This Calist was A Çatalane, & au olde man 16 when he was chosen, & continually seek; wherfore he might nat performe his zele & desire þat he had conceyved Agenst þe Turke.⁶ & þe cause of lettyng þirow was his Age & sekeness. This Calixte instituted & ordeyned þe Feste of þe⁷ Transffiguracion of our Lorde 20 to be halowed on Seynt Sixt day in August, bicause of þe gret victory þat þei of Hungary had Ayenst þe Turkes þat same day he was chosen Pope, in þe yeer of our Lord Ml iiij^c lv, and died þe yere M[†] iiij^c lviiij, þat same day þat he ordeyned þe Fest of þe⁷ 24 Transfiguracion) to be halowed.

In þis same yere fiH A gret Affray in London Ayenst þe Lumbardes. The cause began for⁸ A yong man toke A dagger fro A Lumbard, & brake it; wherfor þe yong man on þe morne was 28 sent fore to come tofore þe Mair & Aldermen, & þer, for þe offense, he was commytted to warde. And⁹ then þe Mair departed fro þe GuyldhaH for to go home to his dyner, but in þe Chepe þe yong men of þe mercerie, for þe moste parte Apprentises, held þe Mair 32 & Shyreves stil in Chepe, & wold nat suffre him to departe vnto þe tyme þat þare felow, which was commytted to warde, wer delyuered; & so by force þei rescued þer felowe fro prisone, & þat done, þe Mair & Shyreves departed, & the prisoner was¹⁰ delyuered, 36 which, if he had be put to prisone, had be in Iubardie of his lyfe.

¹ And C. ² many mo C. ³ which was C. ⁴ anone C.

⁵ tofore C. ⁶ he had agenst the turke conceyued C.

⁷ of Ad. of the C. ⁸ bycause C. ⁹ leaf 197. ¹⁰ was om C.

And pan¹ began A Rumor in þe Cite Ayenst þe Lumbardes, And þe same evenyng þe handcrafty peple of þe town Arose, & come² to the Lumbardes houses, & dispoyled & robbed³ diuerse of þame; 4 wherfore þe Mair & Aldremen come *with* þe honest peple of þe town, & drofe þame thens, & sent some of thame þat had stollen, to Newgate. And þe yong man þat was rescued bi his felowes saw þis gret Rumor, Affray & robbery, folowed⁴ of his first mevyng to 8 þe Lumbard; he⁵ departed & went to Westmynster to sanctuary, or els it had cost him his lyfe, ffor Anone After come down An oper determyne for to do Iustice on al þame þat so rebelled in þe Cite Ayens þe Lumbardes, vpon⁶ which satt *with* þe Mayr þat 12 tyme William Marow, þe Duke of Bokyngham, & many oper lordes, for to se execucion done, bot þe comons of þe Cite secretly made þame redy, & did Arme þame in þer houses, & wer in purpose forto haue rongen þe comon beH which is named Bow BeH; but þei 16 wer lett bi sad men, which come to þe knowlege of þe Duke of Bokyngham & othir lordes. & forthwith⁷ þei Arose, for þei durst ne lenger Abide, for þei doubted þat þe hole Cite shold haue risen Ayenst þeme, but yett neuer-þe-lesse, ij or iij of þe Cite were Iuged 20 to deth for þis robbery, & wer honged at Tiburn.

Anone After, þe King, þe⁸ Quene, & othir lordes, rode to Covente, & *with*-drew þame fro London for this cause And a liteH⁹ to-fore, þe Duke of Yorke was sent fore to Grenewiche, & þer Feb 1454 was dischargied of þe protectorshipp, & þerle of¹⁰ Salesbury of þe¹¹ Chauncelershippe. And after þis þei wer sent for by priuey seal forto come to Covente, where þei wer almoste deceyved, & þerle of Oct 1455 Warwick also, And shold haue bene destroyed if þei had nat seen 28 wele too.

How Lord¹² Egremond was take by þerle of Salesbury sonnes. And of þe robberyng of Sandwyche. ca^m. cclvij.

This yere wer taken iij gret ffisshes bitwen Greth & London: 32 one¹³ was called 'mors marine,' þe secund, A 'swerd fyssh,' & þe other tweyn wer whalles. In þis same yere for certeyn, þer was An¹⁴ Affray in¹⁵ þe North contre bitwene Lorde¹⁶ Egremond & þerle of Salesbury sonnes; & when thay had taken him, was had to

¹ pan om. C.² ran C.³ & robbed & despoyled C.⁴ ensywed C.⁵ he om. C.⁶ on C.⁷ incontynent C.⁸ þe om. C.⁹ leaf 197, back.¹⁰ And my lord of C.¹¹ his C.¹² the lord C.¹³ that one C.¹⁴ was An om. C.¹⁵ done in C.¹⁶ the lord C.

London), & per¹ condempned in a gret somme of money to þe said Erle of Salesbury, & þerfor committed to prison in Newgate, in London, wher, whan he had be A certayn space, he brak þe prison, & iij prisoners with him, & ascaped & went his way. 4

Also þis yere þerle of Warrewikk & his wife went to Caleys with A fayr ffelaushipp, & toke possession of his office. About þis tyme was A gret reformacion of many monasteris of Religion, in diuerse parties of þe worlde, which wer reformed after þe first 8 Institucion), & continued in many Places. Also About þis tyme þe craft of enprinteng was fyrst found in Magvnce in Almaign, which craft is multiplied thurgh þe world in many places, & bokes ben had gret chepe & in gret nommbre, bicause of þe same 12 craft.

July 1456 This same yere was A gret batail in þe marches bitwen Hungary & Turkey, at A place called Septedrade, where innumerable Turkes wer slayn, more by miracle þan bi mannes hond, ffor onely 16 þe hondes of God smote þeme. Seynt Iohn of Capestrane was þer present, & prouoked þe Cristen peple, beyng þen Aferde after to pursew þe Turkes, wher ane Infinite multitude wer slayn & destroyed. þe Turkes said þat A gret nombre of Armed men 20 folowed þame, þat þei wer Aferde to turn Ageyn: ² they wer holy Aungels.

1456 067 This same yere þe prisoners of Newgate in London brake per prison, & ³ kept þe gate A long while; but at þe ⁴ last þe town gett 24 þe prison one them), & þen þei wer put in feteris & Irons, & were sore punisshed, in example of other. In this yere also was A gret erthquake in Naples, in-so-moche þat per perished xl M^t peple þat sanke þer into þerth. Item, in þe yeer xxxvj, Seynt Osmunde, 28 somtyme Bisshope of Salesbury, was Canonized at Rome bi Pope Calixt; & þe xvj day of Iuil he was translated at Salesbury bi þerchebisshope of Caunterbury & many other bisshopes. And in August after, Sir Piers ⁵ de Breisey seneschal of Normandy, with 32 þe Capytane of Depe & many oþer Capitaynes & men of Werre, went to þe See with A gret Navy, & come to Downes by night; & on þe morne erly, before day, þei loded & come to Sandwych, both bi land & water, & toke the town), & ryfled & dispoyled it, & 36

¹ sones, the sayd lord Egremond whome they had taken was C.

² leaf 198.

³ prison, & wente vpon the leedes / & fought agenst them of the cyte / & C.

⁴ þe om. C.

⁵ There is a gap in C from here to p. 527, line 1.

toke many prisoners, & left þe town al naked,—which was A rich town & mych gode per-in,—& had *with* þame many ryche prisoners. In this same yere, in many places of Fraunce, Almain, 4 Flaundes, Holand & Ze[land, men, women &] children gadred þame by *gret* Companyes forto go on pilgremage to Seynt Micheles Mount in Normandy, which come fro fer contrees; wherof þe peple *mer*vailed; & many supposed þat some wicked spirite meved þame 8 so to doo; but it endured nat long, by cause of þe long way, & also for lak of vitail as þei went.

In this yere Reynold Pecok, Bisshop of Chichester, was founden an heretike, & þe iij day of Decembre was Abiured at Lambeth, in 12 þe presence of perchebisshop of Caunterbury & many bisshoppes & doctoures & lordes *temperel*; & his bokes brent at Paules crosse.

Yhe haue herd tofore how *certayn* lordes wer slayn at Seynt Alboyns, wherfor was *euermore* A grutche & wrath had, by þe 16 ¹ heires of þame þat wer so slayn; Ayenst þe Duke of Yorke, þerles of Warwick & of Salesbury. Wherfor þe Kyng, by þavise of his Councel, sent for thame to London: to which place þe Duke of York came, þe xxvj day of Ianyuer, *with* iiij^c men, & logied at 20 Bernardes Castel in his own place, And þe xv day of Ianiuer come þerle of Salesbury *with* v^c men, & was logged in therber, his own place. And þen come þe Duke of Excetre & of Somersett, *with* viij^c men, & lay *without* Temple Barr. & þerl of Northumbreland, 24 Lord Clifford & Lord Egremond, *with* xv^c men, & loged *without* þe town. And þe Mayr þat tyme, Ieffray Boleyn, kept *gret* wache, *with* þe comons of þe Cite, & rode About þe Cite by Holborn & Flete Strete *with* a v M^t men wel Armed & Araied for to kepe þe 28 pees, And þe xiiij day of Feuerer, þerle of Warwick come to London fro Caleys, wel beseen & worsshypfully, *with* vj^c men in rede laquettes, browdred *with* A ragged staff behynd & Afore; & he was logged at þe Gray Freres, And þe xvij day of Marche þe 32 King come to London & þe Quene; & *per* was A concorde & pees made Among those lordes, & þei wer sett in pees. And vpon our Lady Day, þe xv day of Marche *per*² of our Lorde M^t iiij^c lvij, þe King, Quene, & al þise lordes went in procession at Poules in 36 London. And Anone after, þe King & þe lordes departed. In þis yere was A *gret* Affray in Flet Strete bitwen men of Court & men of þe same stret: In which Affray þe Quenes Attorney was slayn.

¹ leaf 198, back.

² per = the year.

How þe Kinges howshold mad Affray Ayenst þerle of Warrewikk; & of þe Journey at Bloreheth. Ca^m. cclviij.

Also þis same yeer, als þerle of Warwyk was at A CounceiH in Westmyenster, al þe Kinges houshold meyney gadred þame to-gedre 4 for to have slayn þe said Erle; bot, bi help of God & of his frendes, he recouered his barge, & escaped þare evyl enterprise, how wel þe Coques come renyng out *with* spyttes & pestelles Ayenst him. And þe same Day he rode to-ward Warrewik; And sone After he 8 gate him A comission, & went ouer þe see to Caleys. Sone after þis, þerle of Salesbury comyng to London, was encountred at Bloreheth ¹ *with* Lorde Awdeley, and moche oþer peple ordeyned forto haue destressed him; bot he, having knowlege þat he shold 12 be mett, was Accompanied *with* his ij sonnes, Sir Thomas & Sir Iohn NeviH, & A gret felawshipp of gode men. & so þei mett & fought to-gedre; wher þerle of Salesbury wand þe feld; And þe Lorde Awdley was slayn, & many gentilmen of Chesshire, & moche 16 peple hurt; And therles ij sonnes wer hurt; & goyng homeward afterward, þei wer taken, & had to Chestre bi þe Quenes meyney.

After, Calixt Pius was Pope, & was chosen þis yere M^t iiij^c lvii./ And he was called before, 'Eneas'; An Eloquent man & A 20 poete laureat; he was embassatoure of þemperor Afore tyme, & he wrote in þe Councel of Basile A noble tretise for þe Auctorite of þe same; Also he Canonized Seynt Katerine of Senys. This Pope ordeyned gret Indulgences & pardon to þem þat wold go Werre 24 Ayenst þe Turke, & wrote An Epistle to þe gret Turke, exorting him to be-come *Cristen*. & in þe ende he ordeynd A passage Ayenst þe Turks at Ancone, to which moche peple drew, out of al -parties of *Cristendome*; of which peple he sent many home Ayene, 28 be-cause þei suffised nat. And Anone after, he dyed at þe said Ankone, yere of our Lord M^t iiij^c lxiij, xiiij day of Auguste.

How Andrew Trollop & þe Soudioure of Caleys forsoke þe Duke of Yorke, & per Maister perl of Warrewik, in 32 the West contre. Cap. cclix.

The Duke of York, þerles of Warwik & of Salesbury, saw þat þe gouernance of þe Reame stode moste by þe Quene & hir Councel, & how þe gret princes of þe lond wer nat called to 36 Councel bot sett A-parte; & nat onely so, but þat it was seid

¹ leaf 199.

through þe reame þat the¹ said lordes shold be destroyed vtterly, as
it² openly was shewed att Bloreheth bi þame þat wold haue slayn
þerl of Salesbury, þan þei, for saluacion) of þer lyves, & also for
4 þe comon) wele of þe reame, thought forto remedie thise thinges,
Assembled þame to-gedre *with* moche peple, & toke A feld³ in þe
West *contre*; to which þerle of Warwik come fro Caleys, *with*
many of þe olde soudiours, as Andrew Trollop & other. In whose
8 wisdom, as for þe werre, he mych trusted. And when þei wer
thus Assembled, & made *per* feld, þe King sent out his commissions
& privey seales vnto al þe lordes of his realme, to come & Awayt
on him in þer moste defensable wise. And so euery man come, in
12 suche wise þat þe King was stronger, & had moche more peple þan
þe Duke of York & þerles of Warrewik & of⁴ Salesbury. For it
is here to be noted þat euery lord in *Englond* at þis tyme durst nat
disobey þe Quene, for she rewled pesibly al þat was done About þe
16 Kyng, which was A gode, simple, & Innocent man, And þan when
þe King was comen to þe place wher al⁵ þei were; þe Duke of
York & his felasship had made *per* felde in þe stronggest wise, &
had *proposed* verely to abyden & have foughten; bot in þe night
20 Andrew Trollop & al tholde soudiours of Caleys, *with* A gret
felasship, sodenly departed out of þe Dukes oost⁶ & went strayt
vnto þe Kinges feld, wher þei wer receyved joyously, for þei knew
þe entent of þe othir lordes, & Also þe *maner* of þer felde. And
24 þen þe Duke of York, *with* þe oper lordes, seyng þame so descevyd,
toke A councel shortly þat⁷ same night, & departed fro þe felde,
levyng behynde þame þe moste parte of þer peple to kepe þe feld til
on þe morne. Then þe Duke of York, *with* his second son),
28 departed thugh Walez toward Ireland, levyng his eldest son þerl
of⁸ Marche, *with* þerles of Warwyck & of⁹ Salisbury, which
to-gedre *with* iij or iiij persones, rode strait vnto Devenshyre, &
þar, bi help & Ayd of one Denham, A squyer, which gat for them
32 A shipp which cost xxx¹⁰ nobles, & *with* þe same shipp sayled fro
þens in to Garnesey, & þer refreshed þame, & fro þens sayled to
Caleys, wher þei wer receyved in-to þe Castel bi þe postern, er þei
of þe town) knew of it; & þe Duke of York toke ship in Wales, &
36 sayled ouer in-to Ireland, wher he was wel receyved.

¹ tho C.

² it om. C.

³ leaf 199, back.

⁴ of om. C

⁵ as C.

⁶ hooste C.

⁷ in that C.

⁸ of the C.

⁹ of om. C.

¹⁰ cc xx C.

¹ How therles of Marche, Warrewik & Salesbury, entred into Caleys; & how² perle of Warwik went in to Ireland. ca. cclix.³

Then King Henry, beyng *with* his oost in þe felde, nat knowing 4 of þis sodeyn departing, on þe morne fond none in þe felde of þe said lordes, sent forth in al haste men to folow & persue after, to tak þame; but þei mett nat *with* hem), as God wolde. Then⁴ þe King went to Ludlow, & despoiled the Castel & þe town), & sent 8 þe Duches of York, *with* hir childer, to þe⁵ Lady of Bokingham, hir suster, where she was kepte long aftir. & forth*with* þe King ordeynd þe Duke of Somersett Capitayn of Caleys; & thise othir lordes so departed as Afore is said, wer proclamyd rebelles & gret 12 traytours. Then the Duke of Somerset toke to him al þe sowdioures þat departed fro þe felde, & made him redy in al haste to go to Caleys, & take possession of his office. And when he come, he founde perl of Warwick þerin as Captayn), & þerles of Marche & 16 Salisbury also; & þan he loded by Scales, & went to Guysnes, & þer he was receyved. And it fortunyd þat some of þe shippes þat come ouer *with* him come in-to Caleys haven bi þer fre wiþ, for þe shipmen ought more favour to þerl of Warwick þan to þe Duke of 20 Somerset. In which shippes wer taken diuerse men, as Ieun Fynkhiþ, Iohn Felaw, Kaylles & Parser, which wer beheded sone after in Caleys. And after þis, dayly come men ouer þe⁶ See to pise lordes to Caleys, & began to wex strenger,⁷ And þei borowed 24 moche gode of þe Staple. And on þat othir side þe Duke of Somersett, beyng in Guysnes, gat peple to him, which come out & scarmusshed *with* þame of Caleys, & þei⁸ *with* þame; which endured many dayes; and⁹ moche peple dayly come ouer þe see 28 to¹⁰ these lordes. Then on A tyme, by thavyse of councel, þe lordes at Caleis sent ouer Maister Denham, *with* A gret felawship, to Sandwych, &¹¹ toke þe town), & þer-in þe Lorde Ryvers, & þe Lorde Scales his son, & toke many shippes in þe haven, & broght þam al 32 to Caleys; *with* which shippes,¹² many mariners of þer fre wiþ come to Caleys to serue perle of Warrewik.

And after þis, perle of Warwik, bi þavise of þe lordes, toke al

¹ leaf 200. ² as Ad. how C. ³ cclx C. ⁴ And thenne C.

⁵ my C. ⁶ þe om. C. ⁷ stronger & stronger C.

⁸ they of Caleys C.

⁹ many dayes / During thus this same scarmuchyng / C.

¹⁰ come over vnto C. ¹¹ which C.

¹² leaf 200, back.

his shippes, & manned þam wel, & sayled his¹-self into Ireland fro
to speke *with* þe Duke of York, & to take his Advice how þei shold
entre in-to England ageyn. And when he had ben *per*, & done his
4 erandes, he returned toward² Caleys, & brought with him his
moder, þe Countesse of Salesbury. Tho was³ comyng in þe west
contre, vpon þe See, þe Duke of Excestre, Admiral of England, beyng
in þe Grace of Dieu, Accompanied *with* many shippes of werre;
8 which⁴ mett *with* þe flete of perl of Warwik⁵; but þei fought nat,
for þe substance of þe peple beyng *with* þe Duke of Excestre ought
better wiþ & more fauor to perle⁶ þan to him; & þei departed &
come to Caleys in sauftē, blissed be God! Then þe Kinges councel,
12 seyng þat these lordes had goten these shippes fro Sandwiche, &
taken Lorde⁷ Ryvers & his son, ordeyned A Garnyson at Sand-
wich, to Abide & kepe þe town, & made one Mountforte, Capytan
of þe town, & warned⁸ þat no man, ne vitail, ne merchant þat
16 shold go vnto⁹ Flaundres, shold nat go vnto¹⁰ Caleys. Then þei of
Caleys seyng þis, made out Maister Denhame & many oþer, to go to
Sandwich. & so þei did, & Assayled þe town by water & by lond,
& gat it, & brought Mountforte *per* Capitayn ouer þe See to
20 Risebanke, & *per* smote of his hede; & yet dayly men come ouer
to þame fro¹¹ al parties of England.

**How perles of Marche, of Warwik & of Salesbury entred in
to England. And of Northampton felde¹² wher diuerse
24 lordes wer slayn. Cap^m. cclxj.**

After¹³ þis, þe said Erles of Marche, of¹⁴ Warwik & of Salisbury
come ouer to Dover *with* moche peple, & landed *per*¹⁵; to whome
al þe contrey drew, & come to London Armed; & for to lat þe
28 lordes of þe Kinges Councel know *per* entent & thought, þei¹⁶
assembled þame, & told þame þat þei entended no harme vnto the
Kinges person, sauf þat þei wold put fro him such persones as wer
About him, & so departed fro London *with* A. gret puyſaunce
32 toward Northampton, wher þe King was, Accompayned *with* many
lordes, & had made A strong felde *with*-out þe town. & ¹⁷there
bothe parties mett, & was foughten A gret batail, In which wer¹⁸

¹ hym C. ² ayenetoward C. ³ And C. ⁴ which *om.* C.

⁵ met with therle of Warwyck & his flote C.

⁶ therle of Warrewyk C. ⁷ the lord C. ⁸ warned *om.* C.

⁹ in to C. ¹⁰ in to C. ¹¹ out of C.

¹² And of the felde of Northampton C. ¹³ And after C. ¹⁴ of *om.* C.

¹⁵ ther lounded C. ¹⁶ knowe theyr trouth and also theyr entent C.

¹⁷ leaf 201. ¹⁸ batayll were C.

slayn þe Duke of Bokynham, þerl of Shrewesbury, Vicount¹ Beamont, Lorde² Egremont, & many knyghtes & squyers, & other Also; And þe King his³ self taken in þe feld, & afterward brought to London. And Anone After⁴ was A parlement at Westmynster,⁴ During which parlement þe Duke of York come out of Ireland, with þerle of Rutland rydyng with A gret ffelasship in-to þe paleys at Westmynster, & toke þe Kinges paleys, & come in-to þe parlement chamber, & þer toke þe Kinges place, & clamed þe⁸ Crown as his propre enheritance & right, & kast forth in writing his title, & also how he was rightful heyr; wherfor was moche to doo; but in conclusion it was Apoynted & concluded þat Kyng Henry shold regne & be King during his Naturel lyfe, for-as-myche¹² as he had be so long King, & was possessed; & after his deth þe Duke of York shold be King, & his heires after him; & forthwith he shold be proclaimed heyr Apparent, & shold also be Protectour of⁵ Englonde during þe Kinges lyfe, with many oþer things¹⁶ ordeyned in þe same parlement. And if King Henry during his life went fro þis Apoyntment, or any Article concluded in þe said parlement, he shold be deposed, & þe Duke shold take þe Crown & be Kyng: Al thise⁶ things wer enacted bi þe Auctorite of þe said²⁰ parlement. At⁷ which parlement þe commones of þe reame being Assembled in þe common house, comonyng & tretimg vpon þe title of þe said Duke of York, sodenly fiþ down þe crown which hang þan in⁸ myddes of þe said hous, which is the ffraytor of þe Abbey²⁴ of Westmynster, which was take for A prodige or token þat þe reign of King Henry was ended. And also þe Crown which stode on þe highest toure of þe steple in þe Castel of Dover, fil down þis same yere.

28

**How þe Duke of York was slayn; And of Wakefelde felde,⁹
& of þe ij^{te} journey at Seynt Albones bi þe Quene &
Prince. ca. cclxij.**

Then, for-as-moche as þe Quene with þe prince was in þe North,³² & Absented hir fro the King, & wold nat obey such thinges as was concluded in¹⁰ þe parlement, Itt was ordeyned þat þe Duke of York, as Protector, shold go Northward for to bring in þe Quene, & subdew such as wold nat obey; with whome went þerl of³⁶

¹ the Vysecounte C. ² the lord C. ³ hym C. ⁴ afterward C.

⁵ & regent of C. ⁶ whiche C. ⁷ at the C. ⁸ in the C.

⁹ and of the feld of Wakefeld C. ¹⁰ leaf 201, back.

Salesbury, Sir Thomas Nevile his son), *with* myche peple. And at Wakefeld, in Cristmasse weke, þei wer al ouerthrowen & slayn bi þe lordes of þe Quene partye, þat is to say,¹ þe Duke of York was 4 slayn, þerl of Rutland, Sir Thomas Nevil, & many mo. þerl of Salesbury was / taken² Alyve, & other, as Iohn Harow of London, Capitayn of þe foot-men, & Hanson of Hull, which wer brought to Pountfret, & after þer beheded, & þer hedes sent to York, & þer 8 sett vpon þe yates, &c.

And þis tyme, þerl of Marche beyng in Shrewesbury, hering þe deth of his fadre, desired Assistance & Ayd of þe town for tavenge his fadres deth; & fro þense went to Walys, wher, at Candelmasse 12 after, he had A batail at Mortimesse Crosse Ayenst þerles of Penbrok & of Wilshire, where þerl of March had victorie. Than þe Quene, *with* lordes of þe north, After þei had destressed & slayn þe Duke of York & his fellowship, come southward *with* A gret multitude 16 of peple & A gret puissance of peple, for to come to þe King, to defect such conclusions as had bene taken before bi þe parlement. Ageynst whos commyng, þe Duke of Northfolk, þerle of Warewick, *with* moche peple & ordinaunce, went vnto Seynt Albones, & lad 20 King Henry *with* þame; & þer encountred to-gedre in suche wise, & fought, þat þe Duke of Northfolk & þerl of Warewick, *with* other of þat partie, fledd & lost þat felde; wher King Henry was takyn, & went *with* þe Quene, & Prince his son, which tho had 24 goten þat felde. Than þe Quene & hir partie, beyng at þer Above, sent Anone to London, which was on Asshwodenesday, þe fyft day of Lent, for vitail, which þe Mayr ordeynd, bi chanes of þe Aldremen, þat certayn cartes laden *with* vitail shold be sent to 28 Seynt Albones to þame. And when þo Cartes come to Crepilgate, þe commones of þe Cite þat kept þat gate,³ toke þe vitailles fro þe Carters, & wold not suffre it to passe. Then wer þer certeyn Aldermen & comoners Apoynted to go to Barnett forto speke *with* 32 þe Quenes Counsel for treatie, þat þe Northeryn men shold be sent home vnto þer contre Ageyn; ffor þe Cite of London dred fore to be robbed & dispoyled if þei shold come. And thus, during þis trefte, tydinges come þat þerle of Warrewick mett *with* þerle of 36 Marche on Cotteswold, comyng fro Walys *with* a gret meyney of Walessmen, & þat þei both wer commyng to London ward.

¹ wete C.

² Here is a gap in C from *taken to men þat wer þer* (page 533, line 5).

³ leaf 202.

Anone as thise tydinges wer knowen, þe treaty was broken; for þe King, Quene, Prince, & al þe othir lordes þat wer *with* þame, departed fro Seynt Albones northward, *with* al þer peple yet or þei departed fro þens. þei beheded þe Lorde Bonevil & Sir Thomas 4 Kyriel, which wer taken in þe Iourney done on Shroft-Tuesday. Then þe Duches of York beyng at London, & hering of þe losse of þe felde at Seynt Albones, sent ouer þe See hir ij yong sonnes, George & Richard, which went to Vtrecht; & Philip Malpas, a 8 riche merchant of London, Thomas Vaghan, Squyer, & William Hatteclif, & many oper, fering of þe commyng of þe Quene to London, toke a-shipp of Andwarpe for to haue gone in-to Zeland; And on þat other coste wer taken of one colompne of Frenshmen, 12 A shipp of Werre; & he toke þame prisoners, & brought þame in-to France, wher þei payd gret godes for þer raunson; & þer was myche gode & rychesse in þat shippe.

Of þe deposicʒon of Kyng Henry þe vj^{te}; And how King 16 Edward þe Fourt toke possession; And of þe batail of Palme Sunday; and how he was crowned. Cap. cclxiiij.

Than when þerle of Marche & þerl of Warwick had mett togedre on Cotteswold, In-continent they concluded to go to 20 London, & sent worde Anone ¹to þe Mair & to þe Cite þat þei shold come. Anone þe Cite was glad of þer commyng, hoping to be releued bi thame. And when þei wer commyn to London, & had spoken *with* þe lordes & Astates þat wer ther, þei concluded, 24 for-as-mych as King Henry was gone *with* þame Northward, þat he had forfeled his Crown, & ought forto be deposed, According to þe Actes made and passed in þe last parlement. And so, by thavice of þe lordes *spirituel* & *temperel* þen beyng At London, 28 þerle of Marche, Edward, bi þe grace of God þe oldest son of Richard, Duke of Yorke, As rightful heir & next enheritour to his fadre, þe iiij^{te} day of Marche, þe yere of oure Lorde God M^l cccclix, toke possession of þe Reame of England at Westmynster in þe gret 32 haH, & after, in þabbey church; & offred as King, bering þe Sceptre ryal, to whome al þe lordes, both *spirituel* & *temperel*, did homage & obeisaunce, to þer souereyn liege & lawful lord & Kyng; & forthwith it was proclamed thurgh þe Cite, Kinge Edwarde, þe 36 Fourt of þat name. And Anone after, þe King rode in his royall Astate Northward, *with* al his lordes, to subdue his subgettes þat

¹ leaf 202, back.

tyme beyng in þe North, & tavenge his fadre deth, And vpon
Palme Sondag after, he had A gret batail in þe north contre at A
place called Towton, nat ferre fro Yorke, where, bi þe help of
4 God, he gat þe felde & had þe victorie; & þer wer slayn of his
Aduersaries xxx^m men & moo, As it was said by men þat wer þer.
In which batail was slayn þerle of Northumbreland, þe Lorde
Clifford, Sir Iohn Nevil, þerle of Westmerlandes broper, Andrew
8 Trowlopp, & many oþer knightes & squyers.

Then King Henry, þat had be King, beyng *with* þe Qvene &
Prynce at York, hering þe losse of þat felde, & so moch peple slayn
& ouerthrowen, Anone forthwith departed al thre, with þe Duke
12 of Somerset, þe lorde Roos & other, toward Scotland. And þe
next day King Edward, with al his Army, entred into York, &
was þer proclamed King, & obeyed as he ought to be; And þe
Mair & þe¹ Aldremen come in, &² swore to be his liege men. And
16 whan he had taried A while in þe North^e, &³ þat al þat contre
was⁴ turned to him, he retorned Southwarde, levying þerle of
Warrewyck in þoo parties, for to kepe & gouerne þat contre. And
About Midsommer after, þe yere of our Lord God⁵ M^t iiii^c lx, &
20 þe first yere of his regne, he was crown'd at Westmynster, &
ennoynted King of Englonde, having þe hole possession of al þe
hole reame; whome I beseche⁶ God to preserue,⁷ & send him þe
Accomplishment of þe remanent of his rightful enheritance beyonde
24 þe see, so⁸ þat he may regn in þame to þe pleyasor of Almighty
God, helth⁹ of his soul, honor & worsship in þis present life, &
wel & profet of al his subgettes, And þat þer may be A verry final
pees in al Cristen reames, þat þe Infidelis & miscreantes may be
28 withstanden & destroyed, & our feith enhaunced, which in these
dayes is sore mynnshed by þe puissaunce of þe Turkes & hethen
men; And þat after þis present & short life we may come to þe
euer-lastyng life.¹⁰ Amen!

¹ & þe om. C. ² & aldermen & comyns C. ³ leaf 203.

⁴ & that al the countre ther had C. ⁵ God om. C. ⁶ pray C.

⁷ god saue & kepe C. ⁸ & C. ⁹ hath Ad. helthe C.

¹⁰ lyfe in the blysse of heuen / C. ¹¹ Explicit om. C.

[H]

EXTRACTS FROM HARLEIAN MS. 53.

I.

[*The Foundation of Battle Abbey by William the Conqueror.*]

¹ When William Bastard had² conquest all England, and was crownet kyng, and had receyvet his homages and stablisshet his pees, he passet ouer see ageyn in-to Normauudy. And att Ester next folowyng he come ageyn in-to England, and landit at Dover, 4 and brought with hym Maude his wif, and many faire ladies and gentiHwemen with hir, and from thens so to London, with gret nobley. and on the Wittesonday after folowyng³, she was crownet be the Archbisshope of Euerwik at Westemynster, with gret 8 solempnyte and wurshipe. And þe³ Kyng⁴ William, by counsail of his baronry, ordeynt how his Reame shuld be gouernet for the wele of the land. And he bethought hym howe he had causet gret shedyng of bloode wrongfully; wherfore he foundet an Abbay in 12 the same place where-as the batail was, & made for to clepe it þe Abbay of Bataile; and he gave there-to gret lordshippes, londes and rentes, for to pay for al the sawles that were slayn ther for his love.

¶ And after the discomfiture of the batail, ich wurthy knyght 16 of Normauudy that was there, laft a scochon of his armes, with his name peyntet, in a place of the batail clepit Southope, which was clepit 'the peyntit chamber,' in remembraunce of their⁴ honour and wurshipe⁵ ⁶for euer; and there thei stode so long, tiH þei feH 20 doune to the erth, and many of hem were lost.⁶ And In that same tyme there was one Thomas Sayntlegerd, squyer, dwellyng with the Abbot of Batail, and sawe þe gret myschef and perih that myght aftirward fall of disherytyng of hem of whome the Armes 24 were lost.⁷ And of all the scochons and names that were lafte clere, and not lost, he made for to make a faire boke, and peyntet hem therin, for cause they shuld be there founden in remembraunce for euer,⁸ that al men myght fynde there their armes if thei hem not 28 knewe. And that same boke was kept in the Abbay of Bataile vnto the tyme that Kyng⁴ Henry the .V^{te}. shuld passe in-to Normauudy,

¹ leaf 76. ² duke of Normandy had L. ³ there L.

⁴ the L. ⁵ wurship & honour that they had there L.

⁶⁻⁸ om. L. ⁷ were falle doune & lost L.

⁸ be fonden therein euremore in remembrance L.

to conquere his right, and toke with hym al the gentiH-men which had forgeton their armes; wherfore þe said Kyng sent vnto the Abbot of Bataile for to sende hym that boke of Armes; And the
 4 Abbot sent to hyme the boke at his comaundement, the which boke was neuer brought ageyn; and the chambre where þe armes were was not repeiret, nor none hede taken to hem; wherfore a gret part of the Armes feH doune, and was lost and forgeten; 8 but then aH the names and armes that were founden clere were writton¹ in a table which is of recorde in the Abbay of Batail, the which names ben rehersit in this table next folowynge in ordre. that is to say: *

12	[<i>-ard</i>]	PurceH	BaywaH ⁸	Hanet
	B astard	ChameH	MeyniH	Lynet
	Baynard ²	RideH	DariH	Hachet
	Brassard	RusseH	RochesH	Haket
16	Maignard ³	BloundeH	—	Truret
	Berard	MaunceH	[<i>-et, -ot</i>]	Burdet
	Maureward	TorchappetH	Toret	Bret
	Beygnard ⁴	CharneH	Tanet	Trevet
20	Hansard	TireH	Tupet ⁹	Bigot
	Hasard	ToreH	Bratet	Bagot
	Ayelard	OreH ⁷	Boynet	Tallebot
	Achard	SaintbrenetH	Malet	Tibot
24	Swyward ⁵	TrameH	Bluet	Tabot
	Saylard	ClareH	Brachet	Lincot
	Bereward	FreseH	Belet	Lonetot
	Wishard	WadeH	Ledet	Pigot
28	Musard	TrusseH	Pilet ¹⁰	Tiptot ¹¹
	Lyard	CoudreH	Palet	—
	Giffard	BurneH	Tuchet	[<i>-aunt, -ent,</i> <i>-ount</i>]
	Picard	BusseH	Basset	
32	Pipard	PeveretH	Buket	Gaunt
	Gerard	AuenetH	Duket	Passaunaunt [col. 3]
	Fossard	VeeH	Piket	Niuelent
	—	SpigurnetH [col. 2]	Mulet	Duredent
36	[<i>-att, -ett, -itt</i>]	LoveH	Baret	Richemount
	MoreH	CrietH	Mounfichet	Nepount ¹²
	MartetH	FurnyvaH	Pouchet	Neyrount ¹²
	PameH	DrutaH	Pachet	—
40	PineH	SurdevaH	Corbet	[<i>-act</i>]
	DucetH ⁶	OrivaH	Birset	PountfracH

¹ leaf 76, back.

² Barnard L (Lambeth MS. 6).

³ Maynard L.

⁴ Boigmard L.

⁵ Swyraud L.

⁶ L. adds Putnell.

⁷ Torell L.

⁸ om. L.

⁹ Tapet L.

¹⁰ Pelet L.

¹¹ Tiptot comes 4th in the next list.

¹² These two come at the end of the *-court* list.

* The same names are given in alphabetical order on pp. 605–607.

• [-court]	Mansey	Audeville	Fitz ⁵ Piers	
Harecourt	Candrey	Dansterville	Fitz ⁵ Symond	
Bricourt	Sancey [col. 4]	Maundevile	Fitz ⁵ Vise	
Phanecourt	Curecy	Souppitt or Sou-	Fitz ⁵ Hu	4
Deynecourt	Anney	peitt	Fitz ⁵ Brian	
—	Bussey	—	Fitz ⁵ Garin	
[-y]	Lescey	[-ampe]	Fitz ⁵ Herbert	
Lucy	Moubray	Longchampe	—	8
Lacy	Gurnay	Nunchampe	[-ace, -ars, -as,	
Luncy	—	Feschampe	-aus; -eis, -ers,	
Darcy	[-ile, -ith]	Beauchamp	-es, -eus, -euse;	
Sunely	Morvile	—	-oris, -os, -urs,	12
Mounteny	Sechevile	[-er, -ere, -our]	-uce; -is, -oise,	
Barry	Bernevile	Passamere [col. 5]	-ose; -euges,	
Berry	Graynvile	Mortymere	-euse, -us, -ux]	
Curty	Bontvile	Poer	Curteis	16
Tracy	Frivile	Renger	Santemareis	
Bracy	Longevile	Roter	Beaumeis	
Aubeny	Fresvile	Beler	Bleis	
Perly	Folvile	Boner	Greis	20
Cunly	Berevile	Butteler	Wasteneis (or	
Curly	Canneville	Dispenser	-eils) ⁶	
Crecy	Carevile	Budler	Curteneis ⁷	
Arcy	Cardevile	Saucer	Mareis	24
Percy	Asprevile	Chancer [*]	Seygnes	
Vescy	Colvile	Ferrer	Raynes	
Verly	Torevile	Gorger	Keynes [cf. 77, col. 1]	
Soldeny	Barevile	Miler	Freynes	28
Mountanasy	Scutevile	Sauzaner	Roos	
Meisy ¹	Butevile	Gower	Curthose ⁸	
Gaugy	Vmframvile	Leverer	Trauers ⁴	
Hercy	Nevile	Sainteler	Matroners	32
Mongomery	Grenevile	Saintomer	Vilers	
Semery	Turbevile	Ascher ⁴	Prers ⁴	
Akeny	Arvile	Malynoler	Ferrers	
Pleisy	Sandervile	Hurfer	Moreus ⁹	36
Panely	Amondevile	Veer	Valeus ¹⁰	
Audeny	Spynevile	Saintleger	Chalurs	
Quincy	Widvile	Gunter	Saintclus	
Tuny	Wivile	Gamager	Saintmoris ¹¹	40
Massy	Ofvile	Gauter	Pus	
Welby	Gorunvile ³	Banaster	Bruce	
—	Abvile	Venour	Chalenges	
[-ay, -ey]	Somervile	Vauesour	Auerenges	44
Hay	Sonevile	—	Parles	
Say	Baskervile	[Fitz-]	Huscharles	
Aubray ²	Hanvile	Fitz ⁵ Geffray	Setvaus ¹²	
Morley	Hautevile	Fitz ⁵ Water	Taillois	48

¹ Mersy L. ² Ambray L. ³ Gounrvile L. ⁴ om. L. ⁵ Filz L.⁶ Wasteneis L. ⁷ Cartenais L. ⁸ See 537, 1, 3. ⁹ Morens ? L.¹⁰ Valens ? L. ¹¹ Saintmorioris L. ¹² Setvans ? L.

	Camois	[-an]	Veisyn	Plevien
	La Heuse	Brian	Mamelbarin ²	Saintmore
	Courtheuse ¹	Baucan	Comyn	—
4	Breuse	Truan	Warenne	Wildbef [col. 5]
	Chaundos [col. 2]	—	Dulapenne [col. 4]	Pantulf
	Sainterois	[-oun]	—	Bardulf
	Tailepas	Britoun [col. 3]	Meyne	Sanctelou
8	Marcimas	Frisoun	Cheyne §	Gantlou
	Ferebrace	Grauntsoun ²	Penire [or Pemre]	Mountegu
	Fetepace	Vernoun	Tenere	—
	Bars	Piroun ²	Lysle	Rosynis ²
12	Quatremars	Heiroun	Burle	Heris
	Fyneux	Peisoun ³	Rusak	Brok
	Punegis	Leoun	Murdak	—
	Eurons	Motoun ²	Gorge	Hubert
16	Manus (or	—	Saintgorge ²	Lambert
	Manns)	[-yn]	—	Foliambe ²
	Grace	Cosyn	Dalamare	—
	—	Rosyn	Mire	Escot
20	[-ayn, -eyn]	Sainthelyn)	Saunzire	Kirlecot
	Morteyn	Costentyn	Lunar	Trusbut
	Butvileyn	Formentyn	Orrewar	Ynogre
	Malemayn	Manyn ²	Clare	Saintnoyre
24	Foleyn	Iardyn	Savage	—
	Chambreleyn	Taryn	Neomarch	Zoochh [? MS.] ²
	Chastelleyn	Saintquintyn ²	SaintIohn)	Cornor
		Hamelyn	Chene § ²	

[The Lambeth MS., leaves 111–112, leaves out a few names, spells others with slight differences, and puts in 'Putrell.']

¹ See 536, iv, 30.

² om. L.

³ Tyson L.

II.

[*The battle of Crecy and the Siege of Calais*, A.D. 1346.]

28 ¶ And in the xix yere of his regne he went in-to Britayne, and
 into Gascoyne & Gian,⁵ & with hym the Erle of Hunt-
 yngtoun, þe Erle of Warrewik, þe Erle of Suffolk⁶ and
 þe Erle of ArundeH, and with many opire lordes, with CC
 32 and .xl^{ti}. shippes, onon after Mydsomer, to avenge hym on the
 wronges and harmes pat was done be Philippe Valoys,⁷ Kyng
 of Fraunce, agaynes þe truyce beforesaid made; which
 truis he falsly and vntrewly brake by cauelacioun. And he
 36 come ageyne in-to Englonde with-in the same yere.

⁴ leaf 138. The words in large type are underlined in red in the MS. In other pages of the text, no difference of type is made.

⁵ & Gian om. L.

⁶ leaf 138, back.

⁷ de Valoys L.

¶ Of the bataile of Cressy, and of the seege of Caleys; and of the bataile of Durham where-as the Kyng of Scottes was taken; and alle in one yere. [*This heading is underlined in red in the MS.*]

IN the yere of oure Lord. M^t. CCC. xlvj^{ti}. and in the xx^{ti} yere 4 of the regne of Kyng Edward of Wyndesore, he held a parlement at Westmynster, where-as were al the lordes of the reame, spiritueh and temperah.¹ At which parlement were proclame þe gret iniuries and wronges þat was done be the Kyng of 8 Fraunce and Frenshmen in the parties of be-yonde the see, and on þe see-costes in Kent, and specially be theym of Caleis. Werfore þe Kyng, be the counseil of his lordes spirituall and temperah, and of al his reame, ordeynt hym to passe ouer see 12 ageyne, to chastise the rebelles of Fraunce, and to lay seege to Caleis, which did gret harme about al þe see-cost; wherfore it was þat tyme kept *with* saudiours, to gret cost to þe King and the reame. And þerfore þe Kyng sent to al his frendes be-yonde the 16 see, þat were to hym assuret, as before is said, to mete with hym in Fraunce *with* al þeire power and Alliaunce. And the whiles he purveid hys navey, and made his retenewe in Englund, in al þe hast he myght; of which þe namez of the chef lordes and 20 capteyns, with their retenewe and the noumbre, folowith herafir in this table, that is for to say :

- ¶ Prynce Edward *with* xj banerettes, C. ij. knyghtes, CC lxiii. men of armes, CCC ^{xx}iiij ^{iiij} Archers on horsebak, ^{xx}ij ix. Archers 24 on foote, vj^c Walshmen, wherof on was a chapeleyn, & anoper a leche, and anoper a crier. And in his retenewe was xxv^{ti} 2 vynteners, & ^ciiij & ^{xx}iiij footmen, & v standart berers.
- ¶ Henre, Erle of Lancastre, *with* an Erle, xj banerettes, C. 28 ^{xx}iiij xiiij. knyghtes, v^c xiiij. men of Armes, and vj^c xij. Archers on horsebak.
- ¶ William Bohome, Erle of Northampton, *with* ij banerettes and xlvj^{ti} knyghtes, C and xij. men of Armes, And 32 C. lxj of Archers on horsebak.
- ¶ Thomas Beauchampe, Erle of Warrewik, *with* iij banerettes, and lxiiij knyghtes, and C and xxx^{ti} men of Armes, and C. xlvj^{ti} Archers³ on horsebak. 36

¹ lordes spirituall & temporal of þe reame. *spirituall* and *temperall om. L.*

² xxvj L. ³ men of armes L.

- 1 ¶ Richard, Erle of ArundeH, with iij banerettes, and xl^{ti}. knyghtes, and C and .vj. men of Armes, and C liij^{ti}. Archers on horsebak.¹
- 4 ¶ Robert Dufford, Erle of Suffolk, with on baneret, and xxvj^{ti} knyghtes, and lvij^{ti} men of Armes, and lxij Archers on horsebak.
- ¶ William Clynton, Erle of Huntingtoun, with ij. banerettes, and xxx^{ti} knyghtes, and ^{xx}iiij and xiiij. men of Armes, and ^{xx}iiij. viij. Archers on horsebak.
- 8 ¶ John Veer, Erle of Oxenford, with on baneret and xxij knyghtes, and xliij^{ti} men of Armes, and lxiiij Archers on horsebak.
- 12 ¶ Laurence Hastynges, Erle of Penbrok, with on baneret, and xxxvj^{ti}² knyghtes, and ^{xx}iiij³ vj men of Armes, And C xxij^{ti}⁴ Archers on horsebak.
- 16 ¶ The Erle of Kildare, with on baneret, and on knyght, and xxiiij^{ti}⁵ men of Armes, and xxvij^{ti} hobilers.
- ¶ Maistre Thomas Hattefeld, bisshope of Dureham, with iij banerettes, and xlviij^{ti}. knyghtes, C lxiiij men of Armes, and ^{xx}iiij and xv Archers on horsebak.
- 20 ¶ Hughe Spenser as an Erle, with .ij. banerettes, and xl^{ti} knyghtes, and ^{xx}iiij and xvj⁶ men of Armes, and ^{xx}iiij and xv Archers on horsebak.
- 24 ¶ ⁷Rauf, Baron of Stafford, with ij banerettes, and xx^{ti} knyghtes, & ^{xx}iiij and xij men of Armes, and ^{xx}iiij and xv Archers on horsebakke.
- ¶ Richard Talbot,⁸ Baroun, Stuard of þe Kynges house, with xiiij knyghtes, and lx of men of Armes, and lx Archers on horsebakke.
- 28 ¶ Iohn Darox⁹ the fadir, Baroñ, with xj knyghtes, and xlviij^{ti} of men of Armes, and lx Archers on horsebakke, and 32 xx^{ti} Archers on foote.
- ¶ Berthelemew Burewassh, Baneret, the Kynges Chamberleyn, with one baneret, and xxvj^{ti}¹⁰ knyghtes, lxxxj of men of Armes, & lvij^{ti} Archers on horsebak, & xix on foote.
- 36 ¶ Waulter Manny, with oper xxv^{ti}¹¹ banerettes, with theyre

¹⁻¹ om. L.

² xxvj^{ti} L.

³ C & L.

⁴ CC L.

⁵ xl^{ti} L.

⁶ xv L.

⁷ leaf 139.

⁸ Talbot om. L.

⁹ Barox L.

¹⁰ & vj & xx^{ti} L.

¹¹ xxxvj^{ti} L.

- retenets, that is to say, with C xxiiij^{ti} knyghtes, D¹ ^{xx}iiij xiiij of² men of Armes, and D ^{xx}iiij xij archers on horsebakke, and of hobillers and Pavysers, and C xix Archers on foote.
- ¶ Sir William Wareyne, knyghte, with opir ^{xx}iiij and xv⁴ knyghtes, CCC ^{xx}iiij xiiij³ pavisers and hobelers on horsbakke, and xvj archers on foote.
- ¶ Sir Waulter Wetewang, the Kynges wardroper, with ij knyghtes, and xxv^{ti} of men of Armes, and xxxvj^{ti} Archers on 8 horsbakke.
- ¶ Maistre Symond Islepe, Privey Seal, with xvij⁴ men of Armes, and xij Archers on horsebakke, and iiij Archers on foote. 12
- ¶ Philip Westoñ, Clerk, with iiij knyghtes, and xxvij^{ti} of men of Armes, and xxx^{ti} Archers on horsebakke.
- ¶ William Keldesby, Clerk, with iiij knyghtes, and lxxij of⁵ men of Armes, and lxvij Archers on horsbakke, and xij 16 Archers on foote.
- ¶ Sir William Daltoñ, Countroller of þe Kynges house, with oper xix Clerkes of dyuers officers, with an C xiiij vndir-Clerkes and squyers, and C xxv^{ti} Archers on horsebakke, and 20 ij Archers⁶ on foote.
- ¶ William at Wode, the Kynges banerer, with oper iiij banerers, and C xxxij^{ti} of *Sergiauntes* to meñ of Armes, Scutifers of þe Kynges house, *sergeauntes* of diuerse office, 24 and mynstrelles, CClxvij Archers, hobelers, banerers, mes-sagers and yemen of þe Kynges Chambre, and of diuerse offices in þe Kynges house.
- ¶ Sir Thomas Haukestoñ, knyght, with an C lxj of men of 28 Armes, and CCC xiiij Archers on horsbakke, and CC xlj^{ti} Archers on foote.
- ¶ Maistre Siluestre Benet, and oper CCC xiiij Masons, Carpenters, Smythes, pavylers, mynours, Armerers, Gunners, 32 and Artillers.
- ¶ Sir Iohñ Ward, knyght, with x Centenaries and l^{ti} men of Armes, and D⁷CC ^{xx}iiij, and viij vyntenaries, and CC ^{xx}iiij xvij⁸ Archers on horsbakke, and D hobilers, and xv⁹ M^t ^{xx}iiij 36 Archers on foote.

¹ and L (D = 500, misread as &). ² of *om.* L. ³ & xv L.

⁴ xxvj L. ⁵ of *om.* L. ^{xx} ⁶ on horsebakke and ij Archers *om.* L.

⁷ D (500) *om.* L. ⁸ viii viij L. ⁹ xvj L.

- ¶ Sir Howeñ Griffith, knyghte, with oper ij knyghtes, and ^{xx}iiij men of Armes of Walshemen of Northwales and Southwales, and ij C and iij vintenares, and iiij M^t CC Walshmen.
- 4 ¶ Maisters of Shippes, and Constables, maryners, and pages, þe nombre of DCC: þe nombre of maryners, bargers, and balyngers and vitailers, xvj M^t.
- ¶ And thes ben þe names of the Aliens which were þe
8 Kynges frendes, and in his Sande that same tyme, and halp hym in his werres in Fraunce. *scilicet* :—
- 1 ¶ Lodewik, the Emperoure of Rome, with a certeyn men of Armes.
- 12 ¶ Reynold, Duke of Gildre, with a certeyn-men of Armes.
¶ Iohn, Duke of Braban, with a certeyne men of Armes.
¶ William, Erle of Henawde, with a certeyne men of Armes.
¶ Tederik, lord Faukemand, with a certeyne men of Armes.
- 16 ¶ Corald of Marke, with a certeyne men of Armes.
¶ Bertold, Erle of Baiespath, *Maurchion de Brandesburghe*, and othir knyghtes and squyers, straungers, witholden with þe Kyng.
- 20 ¶ Baudewyñ, Archbisshope of Treeue, with a certeyn men.
¶ Archbisshope² of Magunenser with a certeyn men.
¶ Guilmyn, Marchion Iuliacen, with a certeyn men.
¶ The Erle of Helsteyn, with oper ^{xx}xxiiij^{ti} knyghtes alieyns,
24 clepit 'Nethirbandes,' and C ^{xx}iiij viij of men of Armes, and C lxxj pavisers.
- ¶ The Erle of Freyburghe, with oper ^{xx}xl^{ti} knyghtes alieyns, clepit 'Euerbandes,' &³ CC xxxiiij^{ti} of men of Armes and C
28 ^{xx}iiij ix⁴ pavisers.
- ¶ The nombre of þe retenue, without Alieyns, that is to say, of erles, barons, banerettes, knyghtes, men of armes, Constables, Centeners, capteyns, vynteners, Archers on horsbak, hobelers,
32 Archers of⁵ foote, and Walshmen, as þe rolles of þe retenu make mencion, is xxv^M. CC ^{xx}iiij. ¶ The nombre of Masone, carpenters, smythes, paviloners, Armerers, Gunners and artillers, is CCC xiiij.
- ¶ The nombre of þe maisteres of shippes, Constables, maryners
36 and pages of shippis, bargers, balyngers, and vitteilers is xvj. M^t.
- ¶ When Kyng Edward had made his retenu and his Armee

¹ leaf 139, back.

² The erchbisshop L.

³ & om. L.

⁴ clxvi L. ⁵ on L.

in þis wise as before is said, and his navey was redy, he shippit the xij^{te} day of Iule, the yere of our Lord M.^t CCC xlvj^{ti}, and saylet toward Normaundy, and londit at Hogges, and restet hym ther vj daies, and vnshippit his pepiſſ; and þen went he 4 toward Cane, breunnyng & distrying euer as he went by þe way. And þe xxviii^{ti} day of Iuyle, at þe brigge of Cane, that was strenghet be Normaundes, he had there a gret bataile, and longe duryng, thurgh e gret multitude of pepil þat was þer slaynd; and þer 8 was take þe Erle of Elbe,¹ the Lord Tankerville, and an C knyghtes and men of Armes, and vj^c footemen; and al þe subbarbes to þe hard walles was born and cariet away, al þat couth be cariet. And so þe Kyng passet forth in þe cuntrey, and wastet 12 and distryet xx^{ti} myle in brede.

¶ Philip of Valois, Kyng of Fraunce, was fast by *with* a gret host, and hard perof, and wold not come ouer þe water of Seyne, but brake al the brigges beyonde þe water, from Roan to Parise, 16 and fled *with* his host to Parise. ¶ When Kyng Edward come to þe water of Seyne, he fand al þe brigges broken; but *within* ij daies he made a brige ageyne. and on þe morowe affir oure Lady day Assumpcion, he passet ouer þe Water of Seyne, and 20 went toward Cressy, & distryet by þe way, townes, and þe pepiſſ in hem. And in þe Fest of Saynt Berthelemewe, he passet the water of Summe vnhurt, *with* al his host, where-as neuer was no passage before þat tyme; And yet þer ware ij M^t Frenshmen to 24 haue lette his passage. And þen, þe xxvj^{ti}² day of August, Edward faught beside Cressy, in a feld, havyng iij batayles of Englishmen, & Philipe of Valois iij batailes: þe lest batail passet þe number of Englishmen. And when þe ij hostes mette to-gedre, 28 ther ³fell in-with the host of Fraunce, the Kyng of⁴ Beame, þe Duk of Loryn, And oper Erles, as of Flaundes, Dalison, Blois, Harecourt, Aunard, and⁵ Navers, and many oper lordes and barons, knyghtes and men of Armes, the nombre of j 32 M^t CCCCC and xlij^{ti}, without footemen. And yette for al this, Phelip the Kyng⁶ withdrowe hym with the residew of aſſ his pepiſſ; wherfore it was said among his oune mewe “Nostre beal retreat,” that is to say, ‘Oure faire withdraweth hym.’⁷ 36 ¶ And thus Kyng Edward had þe Victory; and there he and his pepiſſ hem restet, and thanket God. and on þe morow after, þe

¹ þe Erle of Elbe *om.* L. ² vj L. ³ leaf 140. ⁴ kyng Ha. king of L.
⁵ Aunard and *om.* L. ⁶ þe king Phelipe L. ⁷ hym *om.* L.

Frenshe men come ageyne with a gret host to gyve Kyng Edward bataile; but the Erle of Warrewik mette with hem, and þe Erle of Norhamptoun, and þe Erle of Suffolke, with theire meyny, and
4 slowe of hem ij M^t, and toke many of the gentils prisoners; and al þe remenaunt fled iiij lekes thens. And thrid day after, the¹ Kyng Edwerd went toward Caleis, distrying al þe cuntrey as he rode, and laide² seege to Caleis³ þe iij^{de} day of Septembre, with
8 the CasteH, and contynuet þe sege still⁴ from that day vnto þe iij^{de} day of Aust the next yere folowyng.

¶ Whiles Kyng Edward lay at Seege of⁵ Caleys, a gret power of Scottes come in-to Englund, to Nevilcros, about Saint
12 Luyk day, wenyng to haue founden al þe land destitute and voide of men, because the Kyng was beyonde þe see with a gret host; ⁶þei wend þer had be non lafte at home, but prestes, men of religion, plowmen and laborers; ⁶ but, thanket be God! they fand⁷ enow to
16 wiststonde hem: they robbit and made gret distruccion; And so ther was a day of Batail sette betwene hem and certeyn lordes and meñ of holy chirch that were in that cuntrey, and þe comyn pepiH; at which batail, throw Goddes myghte, [the Scottes] were⁸
20 discomfit, notwithstanding they were iij meñ ageyne one of Englisshe meñ.⁹ And pere were slayne the chialry of Scotte-
lond; and there was Daudid, the Kyng of Scottes, taken fleying, smytte thrughe þe nose with an Arowe, be a yoman that was
24 callet Copeland; and there was take, the Erle of Moriss, Sir William Douglas, and many oþer gret meñ. And this batail was done beside Dereham, the xvij day of Octobre, the yere of oure Lord aboue-said. And when þe bataile was done, þe Englysshe
28 men hem restet a fewe dayes, and ordeynt kepers of the north country, and after came to London, and brozt with hem þe Kyng of Scottes, and oþer lordes that were take prisoners, and led hem to þe Toure, where-as they abode of þe comyng of Kyng Edward
32 out of Fraunce; and aftir that was raunsont at C M^t marcs, to be payde in x yere, ich yere x M^t marcs.

¹ the *om.* L. ² laide þerto L. ³ to Caleis *om.* L.

⁴ Septembre which seege continued still L. ⁵ att L.

⁶⁻⁶ *om.* L. ⁷ fandē men E. ⁸ were þe scottes L. were Ha.

⁹ of englysshe meñ *om.* L.

¶ Of the Conquest of Caleis by Kyng Edward of Wyndisore; and of the tresoun that was ordeynt for Caleis by one Sir Geoffrey Charney. [*Big writing underlined in red in the MS.*]

Edward, Kyng of Englonde contynuet at þe seege stiH aH the 4 wynter, and Philip Valois, Kyng of Fraunce, purpaset hym *with* some fraude to putte hym fro þe seege, and come the xxvij^{ti} day of Iuyle, þe yere of oure Lord Mt CCC xlvij^{ti} to CalkeweH, a myle and an half from Caleis, with a gret host; 8 and sent to Kyng Edward, and askit hym whedir he durst feight *with* hyme the iij^{de} day, about euensonge tyme, and leve þe seege. And Kyng Edward onon, *with*-out eny counsaile or avisement, acceptet gladly the day; and yette much of his pepiH wer seke and 12 ded on þe fflux. ¶ When þe Kyng of Fraunce wist verely that he wold feight, *with*-out eny avisement or long taryng he sette his loggynges on fyre, and went cowardly his way.

III.

[*From Bolingbroke's return, A.D. 1399, to A.D. 1405.*]

¶ When Kyng Richard had tithynges in Irlond, that Henry 16 of Boleynbroke, Duyke of Herford, was comyn into Englonde, he lafte al his ordynaunce in Irlond, and hastet hym into Englonde, in al that he myghte, and come vnto the casteH of ²Flynt in Wales, and there he abode, to take his counsaile what was best for to 20 done; but ther come no counsaile to hyme. And in the menewhile, Henry Boleynbrok ³come [to] Herford, and [þe] Erle of Derby³ come to Chestre, and loggit in the CasteH, ³with-in the Inner ward *perof*, which casteH Kyng Richard had riolly repeiret, and made 24 *with* hertes of frestone betwene ich lope, with crownes and cheynes about theire nekkes, for he lovit wele that place³ // And then was there sent vnto the casteH of Flynt, Maister Thomas ArundeH, Archbisshope of Caunterbury, and Sir Henry Percy, Erle of 28 Northumbrelond, and othir lordes, both spirituaH and temperaH; and there was much thyng spoken of betwene þe Kyng and hem, by gret othis and surtees made, that he shuld come vnto Chestre savely, and ⁴spek with the Duyk, and be delyuert savely ageyn to 32 the said casteH: which othis and surtees were not al parfowremet.

¹ leaf 152, at foot. The red underlines are not now markt by difference of type.

² leaf 152, back.

³⁻³ om. L.

⁴ to L.

And so come the Kyng ridyng vnto Chestre ¹and yong Henry with hyme, that was þe eldest sone of the said Duyk of Herford ¹// and was loggit in the vtterward of the casteH of Chestre.² Then
4 Kyng Richard vndirstood and knewe wele that it was not wele on³
heire⁴ syde. And the same nyght, after that⁵ Kyng Richard was
gone to Chestir, Sir Thomas Percy, Erle of Wirecstre and stuard of
the Kynges howsold, come into the haH amonges the pepiH, and
8 there he brak the rodde of his office, and bade enery mañ do his
best; And so went ich man his way.

¶ Then þe Kyng and⁶ the Duyk mette and spake to-gedirs in
þe haH of þe said CasteH, ¹that was in the vtterward,¹ a longe
12 while, and aftir departet; and in⁷ the departyng, Henry, the sonne
and heire of the said Duyk, come to his fadir, and knelit down
before hym, and welcomet hym, as hym aught to do; And there
forthwith his fadir hym charget the next day to come from the
16 Kyng, and waite vppon hym. ¶ Then this yong knyght Henry
brought þe Kyng to his chambre *with* a sorowfuH hert, for cause
he shuld depart from his godfadir and his Souerayne Lord, for he
louet hyme enterely. And when he come into the Kynges
20 chambre, he tolde the Kyng how he most, the next day aftir,
wayte vppon his fadir, be streyt and hard comaundement. And
then þe kyng said to hym the[s]e wordes: ¶ “Good sonne Henry, I
gyve the good⁸ leue to do thy fadirs comaundement; but I knowe
24 wele there is on Henry shal do me much harme; and I suppose it
is not thowe. Wherefore I pray the be my frende, for I wot now
howe it wil go.” And so on the next day aftir, Henry toke his
leue of þe Kyng his godfadir with an hevy hert, and went to his
28 fadir, Duyk of Herford. And after that, was the Kyng arestet in
the same CasteH by the said Duyk, and al his meyny that were
about hym put away; and such men were put about hym as the
Duyk wold. Then from thens he was broughte to London, and, by
32 assent of al þe lordes, putte in þe Toure. ¹And on Saint Laurence
even, þe hed of Perkyn of Lee was smyt of vnder the Iubet⁹ of
Chestre.¹

¹⁻¹ *om. L.* ² of Chestre *om. L.* ³ in L. ⁴ his L.

⁵ that *om. L.* ⁶ þe kyng and *om. L.* ⁷ at L.

⁸ good *om. L.* ⁹ gibbet L.

¹ ¶ Of the deth of Kyng Richard, and of othir dyuers Dukes, Erles, and barons moo. [*Big writing, underlined with red.*]

IN the first yere of the regne² of Kyng Henry the iiiij^{te}, Kyng Richard, which þat was put doune of³ his Rialte, was in þe 4 Casteñ of Pountfret vndir þe ward of Sir Robert⁴ of Watirton, knyght⁵; and þere he was ich day servet [as] a⁶ Kyng aught to he, that he myght se it; but he myght come to non þerof; wherfore sone aftir he deyð for honger in prisoñ in þe same Casteñ⁷; and so 8 he made his ende. ¶ And when Kyng Henry wist verely that he was ded, because much pepiñ said he was on lyve many a day after, he made to sere hym, and clope hym in⁸ lynnen Cloth, al saave onely the visage; and that was lafte open, that men myght se and 12 knowe his persone from al oper; and so was he brought with torch-light vnto Paulis at Londoñ, and had þere his masse and dirige, and þe same wise at Westemynster; and þen from Paules he was broughte to Langeley, and þere he was enteret. 16

¶ That same yere Kyng Henry the iiiij^{te} held his Cristemas in þe Casteñ of Wynnessore: and on the xij^{te} even come to hym the Duke of Awmarle, and told hym how þat he and þe Duke of Surry, þe Duk of Excestre, and þe Erle of Salesbury and þe Erle 20 of Gloucestre,⁹ and oper moo of theyre Affynyte, were accordit to make a mummyng vnto þe said Kyng Henry on xij^{te} day at nyght, in¹⁰ which mummyng þei purpaset to sle hym. ¶ When¹¹ Kyng Henry þe iiiij^{te} was thus warnet, he rode in hast þat same 24 nyght pryvely to London, to gete hym socoure and counsaile. But assone as þe forsaid lordes wist and knewe that their counsaile were discouert openly, they fled, euery man his way; And aftirward thei were taken in certeyn places of Englonð be þe comyns, and hedit, 28 and þeire hedis sette on London Brigge,¹² and their bodyes quartert, and sett vp in dyuers townes of Englonð.¹² Whos names folowen here aftir¹³ in þis table, and the places where þei wer taken, and hedit: 32

Att Circestre were taken with hem of þe toune	{ <table border="0"> <tr> <td>The Duke of Surry and Erle of Kent¹⁴</td> <td rowspan="3">} quarteret¹⁵ and hedit.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>The Erle of Salesbery</td> </tr> <tr> <td>The Erle of Oxenford</td> </tr> </table>	The Duke of Surry and Erle of Kent ¹⁴	} quarteret ¹⁵ and hedit.	The Erle of Salesbery	The Erle of Oxenford	36
The Duke of Surry and Erle of Kent ¹⁴		} quarteret ¹⁵ and hedit.				
The Erle of Salesbery						
The Erle of Oxenford						

¹ leaf 153. ² of the regne *om.* L. ³ from L. ⁴ Henry L.
⁵ knyght *om.* L. ⁶ a Ha. as a L. ⁷ in þe same Casteñ *om.* L.
⁸ on L. ⁹ and þe Erle of Gloucestre *om.* L. ¹⁰ on L.
¹¹ And when L. ¹²⁻¹² *om.* L. ¹³ aftir *om.* L.
¹⁴ and Erle of Kent *om.* L. ¹⁵ And þes thre were quartered L

4 At Oxenford were take
with hem of þe toune

{	Sir Thomas Blount	} knyghtes	} quateret and hedit.
	Sir Rauf Lunnay		
	Sir Benet Sely		
	Thomas ¹ WyntersshiH squyer		

At PritweH in a mylne
was take by th[e]

{	Sir Iohn Holand	} And quateret, ² and hedit at Plasshe in Essex.
	Duyk of Excestre	

8 At Bristow was take
by hem of þe toune

{	The Erle of Gloucestre	} quateret and hedit. ³
	and Lord Spencer.	

4 And aftirward in that⁵ same yere, was Sir Bernard⁶ Brocas, knyght, ⁷and Sir Iohn Shelley, knyghte, And Sir Iohn Mawde-
12 leyne and Ferby, parsones of Kyng Richard ChapeH,⁷ take, and put in þe Toure of Londone; and there they were iuged to the deth⁸, ⁷theire hedes to be smyttoñ of, and sette on Londoñ Brigge: and so they were. ¶ That same yere, Queene IsabeH, that was the
16 wiff of Kyng Richard the Secunde, was dischargit of hir dowery, and sent home in-to Fraunce ageyne with many rich gyftes.⁷

¶ Of the werre of Wales betwene the Lord Gray of Rithen and Oweyn of Glyndore of Wales, and of the bataile of
20 **Shrewisbury.** *[Big writing, underlined with red.]*

IN the secunde yere of the regne of Kyng Henry the iiij^{te}, was Sire Roger of Claryntoun, knyght, and the Pryoure of Launde, and viij Freres Mynoures,—⁷ wherof somme were maisters of
24 dyvinite⁷—and oper moo, were, for tresone, drawe and hanget at Tiburne.⁹ ¶ That same yere ther began a gret discencion and a debate in Wales betwene þe Lord Gray of þe Rithyn and Oweyne of Glyndore, Squyer of Wales, for bying of an hare in the market. !
28 This Oweyne Arerit a gret nombre of Wa[l]sshe-men, and distroyet þe lordeshipes of the Lord Gray, and of þe Kynges also, and did much harme through-out Wales, and robbet and slowe the Kynges pepiH, both Engliish and Walsh. and the Lord Gray distroyet, on
32 his party, al pat held with þe said Oweyne; And this werre endurit xij yere. ¶ And at last this Oweyne toke the Lord Grey, Prisoner, —and were raunsont for V^c¹⁰ prisoners of Walsh-men of the March¹¹;

¹ And Thomas L. ² And quateret om. L.
³ quateret and hedit om. L. ⁴ leaf 153, back. ⁵ þe L.
⁶ Thomas L. ⁷⁻⁷ om. L. ⁸ Iuged & put to deth L.
⁹ at Tiburne om. L. ¹⁰ vj C L. ¹¹ of the March om. L.

and þe Lord Gray at last to wedde his doughter, and kept hym there with his wiff; and sone after he dyet. ¶ Then went the Kyng in-to Wales with a gret power, to distry this Oweyne and þe rebelles of Wales; but þe Walssh mēn fled vp on hye mounteynes, 4 where-as þe Kyng couth in no wise come to hem; and so þe Kyng sped not þere; wherfore he retournet home ageyne. ¹And þat same yere was a gret drouzth and a scariste of whete, so that a quarter was wurth xvj^s. 8

¶ That same yere Sir William Sawtre, preest, was brent in Smythfeld, for esy; and that yere Sir Roger Waldeyne and Sir Richard Clidrowe qvytte² by a quest of men of Londoñ. and that same [yere] was a bataile on Halydoun Hylle betwene 12 Englyssh-men and Scottes, where-as was taken þe Erle Douglas, and his one ey smytte out, and þe Erle of Moriss, and many othir lordes, knyghtes and squyers; and so, as God wold, thenglyssh men had þe feld and þe victory.¹ 16

¶ In the iij^{de} yere of þe regne of Kyng Henry the iiij^{te},³ Apperit a sterre in þe firmament ¹in the west, in þe monyth of Feueryere,¹ which wes clepit the 'blasynge sterre,' ¹and of clerkes it was clepit 'stella Comata.'¹ Anon after, feH a debate betwene þe Kyng and 20 Sir Henry Percy, that was callet amonge þe Scottes 'Henry Hate-spurre.' This Syre Henry come vnto þe Kyng, and asket of hym certeyn wages that he was behynde, for þe kepyng and wardeynshipe of þe Marches, and þe kyng hym gave but a light Answare. 24 And Sir Henry Percy said 'he quyt hym not to hym as he shold do, for,' he said, 'ne had he ben, he had neuer be Kyng of Englund.' The Kyng then, with that word was sore mevyt, and with his fist stroke Sir⁴ Henry Percy on þe cheke. And þen Sir Henry, sore 28 aggrevid, said the[s]e wordes vnto the Kyng: "In faith, this shal be the derrest-boght buffet that euer was in Englund"; and with þat word ¹turnet the bakke, and ¹toke his hors, and rode his way with his meyny ¹that come with hym.¹ When þe Kyng had smytten 32 Sir Henry thus, as before is said, yet he was sory þerof, and hym repentet, and sent for Sire Henry ageyne; but he wold come to þe Kyng in no wise, but rode forth, and rayset a gre[te] pepif of diuers shires, and specialy of Chestre-shire; and on Saynt Mary 36 Mawdeleyne eueñ next folowyng, the yere of owre⁵ Lord I .M^t. CCCC. iij,⁶ was a gret bataile besydes Shrewesbery, betwene Kyng

¹⁻¹ *om. L.* ² qvytte = were acquitted. ³ the iiij^{te} *om. L.*

⁴ Sir *om. L.* ⁵ *om. Ha.* owre *L.* ⁶ & iij *L.*

Henry þe iiiij^{te}¹ and þe said Sir Henry Percy, by false counsaile and
-wikket steryng of Sir Thomas Percy, Erle of Wircestre, and vnclē
vnto the said Henry Percy. in which bataile was slayne, first, Sir
4 Henry Percy hym self,² and þe moost party of his pepiH; and Sir
Thomas Percy, Erle of Wircestre³ was taken,⁴ and was kept ij
dayes, and after was drawe⁴ and⁵ hanget,⁴ and his hed smytton
of, and sette on Londoñ Brugge. And in that same batayle,⁴ on⁶
8 þe Kynges party, was slayne The Erle of Stafford, and Sir Waltere
Blount in þe Kynges cote Armure ⁴vnder þe Kynges baner,⁴ &
⁷many othir wurthy knyghtes and Squyers and good yemen.⁸ And
in that same bataile þe Prynce was smytte thurgh þe hed with an
12 Arowe; and yet God fortunet that he lyvit. ⁴And Sir Iohn of
Stanley, knyght, was smytte in the throte with an Arowe; and
when þe bataile was done, the Kyng sent to hym, and to wete of
hym what he shuld do with Chestirshire, for-as-much [as] they
16 were ageynes hym. And he Ansuarð þe messenger, so as he myght
speke rattelyng in þe throte, and said, “ Brenne and sle! Brenne
and sle!” And þe Kyng asket what he said; and he þat was sent
-to hym said to þe Kyng that he shuld take hem to grace; and so
20 the Kyng þen hem toke to grace; and al þat wold ask grace þat
were taken, had grace and forgyvenes; but aftir þe bataile the
Kynges meyny come into Chestirshire, and dispoylet þe cuntre in
euey part, and bare away the goodes that couth be caryet.⁴
24 ¶ This bataile was þe heviest, and vnkyndest and sorest batail þat
euer was before that tyme in Englonð; for ther was þe sonne
-ageynes þe fadir, and the brothir ageynes brothir,⁹ and kynne
-ageynes kynne; ⁴and þer was beriet in on pitte xj^o men; in which
28 place is nowē a ChapeH of oure Lady, & prestes syngyng for the + So aft
sawles. And thys bataile was the yere of oure Lord aboue-sayd,
wherof a versifier makith mencion, And sayth on thys wyse :

Anno Milleno quadracenteno-que trino,

32 Bellum Salopie fuerat in Mag[ne] Mari[e] nocte.

**How Dame Iahne, Duchess of Britayne, come into Englonð, and
weddit vnto Kyng Henry the iiiij^{te}. And of the comyng of
þe Emperoure in-to Englonð.⁴ [*Big writing, underlined with red.*]**

¹ MS. þerte. ² and hym self Ha. hym self *om.* L.

³ Erle of Wircestre *om.* L. ⁴⁻⁴ *om.* L. ⁵ And aftirward L.

⁶ And on L. ⁷ leaf 154. ⁸ and good yemen *om.* L.

⁹ the broþer L.

IN the iiij^{te} yere of þe regne of Kyng Henry the iiij^{te} [the] Emperoure of Constaigynðnople come in-to Englonð, to se þe gouernaunce and þe conveyaunce of þe land, and þe comoditees, on þe Kynges cost; and when he had seyne al þat he wolde, he went 4 ageyne. And þat same yere, Dame Iahne, Duches of Britayne, come into Englonð, and landet at Falmouthe in Cornewaile, and was weddit vn-to Kyng Henry þe iiij^{te} at Wynchester, in the Abbay of Saynt Swithyn, and sone aftirward was crownet at 8 Westemynster. ¶ And þat same yere, Dame Blaunche, the eldest daughter of Kyng Henry þe iiij^{te},¹ was sent *with* Sire Iohn Beaufort, Erle of Somerzed, hir vncler, and with Maistre Richard Clifford, that tyme Bysshope of Londone, and oper notable persones, vnto 12 Coleyne; and þer was she weddit vnto þe sone of þe Duke of Barry; and after þe ffest of þe mariage was done, þe saide Erle and Bisshope come into Englonde ageyne.

Of the bataile of Mark. [*Big letters, red undertines.*] 16

¶ In þe v^{te} yere of þe regne of Kyng Henry þe iiij^{te}, þe Lord Thomas, þe sonne of Kyng Henry, and þe Erle of Kent, with many oper wurthy men, went to þe see; and they landit at Scлуys, and made pere a gret assaut, and brent² in þe Ile of Cageant, and token² 20 iiij karrikkes of Geene, lade³ *with* diuerse⁴ Marchaundise, and hem brouzt into þe Cambre⁵ before Winchilsey; ²and pere þe goodes were cantet, and one of þe karrikkes was sodanly brent; and so þe said lordes went no ferther at þat tyme.² 24

¶ And that yere, in þe xxiiijth day of Iuni, the Erle of Saynt Paule laide seege to þe CasteH of Mark, iiij myle out of Caleys, *with* iiij M^t men, and diket hem stronge with-in þe toune of Mark,⁶ Iohn⁷ Beaufort, Erle of Somerzed, that tyme beyng Capteyn of Caleis,² and 28 Sir Richard of Asshtoñ, knyghte, his leotenaunt; which Richard,² *with* the garison of Caleis, allonely⁸ went to Mark, and faught with þe Frensshmen long, and entirt in on hem at þe Northgappe,² and at þe west gappe,² and slow and toke al that wolde abide. And þe 32 Erle of Saynt Paule hym-self fled his way,⁹ be þe marreys; and oper þe bateH wes done, Sir Iohn Beaufort, Erle of Somerzed and Capteyne of Caleys, come out of Englonð, and landit at Caleys,

¹ þe eldest doughtir of king henry dame Blanch L.

²⁻² *om. L.* ³ *with lade Ha.* ⁴ *diuerse om. L.*

⁵ *into þe Cambre om. L.* ⁶ *of Mark om. L.* ⁷ *But Iohn L.*

⁸ *of Caleis allonely om. L.* ⁹ *om. L. to line 2, next page.*

and went to Mark, and come to þe ende of þe discumfiture of þe Frenssh-meñ⁹: And þer was taken the Lord Hanget and¹ many wurthy prisoners of² knyghtes, squyers, ³and meñ of Armes. and 4 þis bataile was done þe yere of oure Lorde aboue [said, M†] CCCC v, 7 and on saynt Crispyne and Crispianes day, as a versifier makes þerof mencion, and saith³: [*No verses follow in the MS.*]

IV.

[*From the first year of Henry V, 1413, to the third year, 1415.*]

⁴And in þat same yere, on Twelft Night, certeyne lollardes were 8 arested at the signe of þe Ax, without Cripilgate, at London, which had purposet, through þeire false treson, to haue made a mummyng at Eltham, where þe Kyng was; and vnder þe coloure of the mummyng, they wold have distryet þe Kyng, and þe lordes spirit- 12 ual and temperal, and all þe clergy of þe Reame. And þey had cast to haue taken þe feld be-side Saint Giles; but, as God wold, þe Kyng þerof had warnyng, and come to London, and with hym þe Bisshope⁵ of Caunterbery, and toke þe feld beside Saint Iones 16 and Clerkyn-welle, and made to kepe al þe hye wayes to London; and so were thei taken ay as they come thidirward. And in London was tak Sire Roger Acton, knyghte, and was drawe & hanget be-side Saint Giles, where þe Kyng lete do make iiii paircs 20 of gallous, þat were callet 'þe lollers galowes.' And þer wes take, Syre Iohn Beuerlay, a prest, and Iohn Broune, a squyere, and many oþer moo, þe nombre of xxxviii persons and moo, and were draw, hanget and brent. ¶ And Sir Iohn Oldcaste, þe Lord 24 Cobbam, was arest at Wyndesore for heresy, and was sent to þe Toure of London; and sone after, he was examynt at þe⁶ ffrere prechours, before al the⁷ clergy of þe wurthiest of religion, and bisshoppes, and doctours of dyvinite; and þer were temperal lordes 28 to here hys opynions. and after, he was sent vnto þe Toure ageyn; but sone after he brake out of þe Toure, and went in-to Walis. ¶ And þat same yere Iohn Sere, a squyer, slowe Tibey,⁸ a prest in ⁹London, beside Aldrichgate,¹⁰ and þen toke the chirch of Saint

¹ the Lord Hanget and *om. L.*

² prisoners of *om. L.*

³⁻³ *om. L.* ⁴ leaf 155, back.

⁵ erchbisshop L.

⁶ þe *om. L.* ⁷ al Ha. al the L.

⁸ Tibey *om. L.*

⁹ leaf 156.

¹⁰ beside Aldrichgate *om. L.*

Anne; wherefore þe Kyng made þe Cite to wach hym *per*, day and nyght, duryng iij wokes; and þen was he muret vp in the church: þen he and iij of his mene forswore þe londe, and went in-to Fraunce, and there he dyet. 4

¶ And in þe seconde yere of his regne, he helde a gret counsaile at Westmyn[s]ter, with al þe lordes of his Reame, spirituall and temperall: where it was tretit and spoken of his title pat he had to Normaundy, Gascoyne and Gyan, which was his enheritaunce of 8 righte. and after, he held a gret parlement at Leicestre, where, be thavice of al his lordes of his Counsaile, and of þe comyns of his land, he sent in-to Fraunce his embassatours, to þe Kyng there and to his Counsaile, requiryng hem to yelde vp to him his said 12 enheritaunce, or elles he lete hem wete he wold it gete with þe sword, by þe helpe of Ihesu Crist. ¶ Then þe Dolfyn of Fraunce, Charles, ansuad to þe Kynges embassatours, and said: "youre Kyng of Englund is ouer¹ yong and tendre of age to be a good 16 werrioure, and not like to make such a conquest on Fraunce."

¶ Then þe Kynges embassatours, heryng this scornfull ansuare, retournet in-to Englund ageyne, and told þe Kyng and his Counsaile the ansuare and þe entent of þe Dolfyn and of þe Counsaile of 20 Fraunce. ¶ The Kyng then was þerwith sore amevide; and onon in al hast made redy his ordinaunce necessary for þe werre, and lete make .iij. gret shippes—one of xv^c tonne pat was clepit þe 'Gracedieu,' and þe 'gost' and þe 'trynite,' smaller shippes. and 24 he lete ordeyne and make gret gunnes, and al oþer ordynaunces, and made his retenewe, And comaundet his lordys, dukes, erles and² barons, knyghtes, squyers,³ and al oþer comyners, masons, carpenters, and al⁴ artificers, to make hem redy to go with hym 28 into Fraunce, to help hym wyne his heritage and his righte, and to mete with hym on Lammas Day at Southampton, where he ordeynt his navye to be *per*, redy to abide his comyng: ⁵whidir come many shippes out of Holynd.⁵ And when þe kyng was redy, 32 he come to Southampton on Lammas day,⁶ where-as mette hym al his pepill; and *per* was he redy⁷ to take his viage ⁵in-to Normandy.

At which day⁵ it was puplisshit, and openly knowen, pat iij 36 lordes, pat is to say, Richard, Erle of Cambrigg, broþer to Edward,

¹ ou Ha. ouer L. ² and om. L.

³ & squyers L. ⁴ al oþir L. ⁵⁻⁵ om. L.

⁶ on Lammas day om. L. ⁷ And as he was redy L.

Duyk of York, and þe Lord Scrope, Tresourer of Englonð, and Sir Thomas Gray, knyght, had receyuet a gret somme of money, þat is to say, a M^t pounde of gold,¹ and had sold þe Kyng vnto þe
4 Frensshmen and his brether.² Wherefore they were onon taken and Iugit, their hedis to be smytton of; and so they were, ³without þe Southgates at Southampton.³ And when that was done, þe Kyng shippit with his host, and so saylet in-to Normaundy⁴ with
8 xv^c shippes, gret and smafl, And arryvet at Kittance one oure Lady even, þe Assumpeion. And from thens he went streight to Harflewe, and besegit þe toune be londe and be watir.

12 **How kyng Henry the V^{te} wanne Harflewe; and of the bataile of Agincourt, and how the Emperoure come into Englonð.**

WHen Harflewe was besegit be londe and be water, þer were in þe toune viij^c men of werre, with-out lordes and states. And thes were þe names of þe lordes: Sir Iakes de Harecourt, capteyn,
16 þe Lord Gawcourt, the Lord of Hakryse, the Lord of Florry, the Lord of Bleynvile, the Lord of Tiptot, the Lord of Combrevyle, the Lord of Beushvyle, and opir moo which shal be reherset hereafter ¶ The Kyng þen sent to Sir Iakes de Harecourt, Capteyn of Har-
20 flewe, and hym comaundit to delyuer þe toune. And Sire Iakes ansuard and said, 'he toke hym none to kepe; nor none he shuld haue pere.' And when this ansuare was brought vnto þe Kyng, he made to lay 'goodgrace,' his gret gunne, and al his oper gunnes, on
24 ich a side, and comaundit his gunners to bete doune þe walles. and so thei shotte on ich side, and brak doune þe walles, and þe houses with-in the toune. ¶ When thay of þe toune þat saw, they sent to Kyng Henry, besechyng hym of viij dayes of respite, if eny maner
28 rescouse myght come to hem in þe menewhile. and if so were there come none rescouse to hem with-in þe viij^{te} dayes, they wold deliuer to hym the keyes and þe toune: and þer-vppon þai wold deliuer hym xxiiij lordes in hostage, and of the wurthyest men of
32 þe toune.

¶ The Kyng then grauntet wele perto; and so ⁵they delyuert xxiiij^{ti} hostages, whos names ben writton in this table ³next folowyng, þat is to say: ³—

¹ receyued the somme of M^l li of gold L.

² and his brether *om.* L. ³⁻³ *om.* L.

⁴ shipped & sailed toward Normandy L. ⁵ leaf 156, back.

-The Lord Tutteville,	Thomas de Asses,	
The Lord of Clere,	Iohn Malherbe,	
The Lord of Chasteleyn, } De Beauvise, ¹	Iohn Harrard,	4
The Lord Blowset,	Stephan Heuband,	
The Lord Burnet, } of Langchampe, ²	Guilliam Buchier,	
The Lord Iohn ³ of Maleville,	Laurence Robyn,	
The Lord Charles ⁴ de Saint Claleyn,	Iohn Buchier	8
The Lord Caradouse ⁵ Deske- sewis,	Aleyne Ligne,	
The Lord Iakes ⁶ de Bankvyle,	Iohn Graunt,	
Guilliam de Pount,	Robyn Walkyle,	
	Iohn le Mare,	12
	Ianyne le Duyk,	
	Guilmot Guillias.	
	Colyn ⁷ Langloys,	

¶ And when thes xxiiij^{te} hostages were sent out of þe toune to þe Kyng, al thoo viij dayes after they of þe toune loket after 16 rescouse; but *per* come none. Wherefore Sir Iakes de Harecourt,⁸ pat was Capteyn of þe toune of Harflew,⁸ *with lordes and states* of þe toune, brough[t] þe⁹ Kyng þe keys at the viij^{te} dayes ende, and deliuert hym þe toune. ¶ Then þe Kyng made þe Erle of 20 Dorset, Beaufort his vnkill, capteyn of þe toune, and hym comaudit to put out al the Frensshe pepiH pat were *within*, man woman and child, and stuff þe toune *with* Englisshemen, and so he did. ¶ Then þe Kyng remevit from þens with his pepiH, and 24 come doun to Caleis-ward be land, to þe noubre of viij M^t.; but þe Frensshe-men hade breken alle the brigges where he shuld haue passit ouer. Wherefore he sought his way in *oper* places, and come downward to a place clepit Agincourt; where-as al þe power 28 of Fraunce wer gedirt, and redy to stoppe hym þe way, and to gyve hym bataile. ¶ And when þe Kyng this sawe, he praid God be his helpe; and with þe pepiH þa[t] he had, which was but scarse viij M^t, made hym redy, and hym enbatailt. ¶ The Kyng pat 32 tyme had a mys-trust in Edward, Duyk of York; and pat the Duyke wele *perceyuet*, and come to þe Kyng, and hym besoughte that he myght haue þe vaward pat day. and þe Kyng hym

¹ De Beauvise *om. L.* ² of Langchampe *om. L.*

³ Iohn *om. L.* ⁴ Charles *om. L.*

⁵ Caradouse *om. L.* ⁶ Iakes *om. L.* ⁷ And Colyn *L.*

⁸⁻⁸ *om. L.* ⁹ to þe *L.*

graunted. Then þe Duyk went forth, and comaundit and charget
 euery man to ordeyne hym a stake of tre, sharpet at both endys,
 and pight an ende asslope in þe ground before hem), that þe
 4 Frenshemen shuld not ouerride hem; for thair purpose was to
 haue ouerriden) hem; for they were nombret ^{xx} vj M^t and moo. And
 þe Frenshmen, al þe nyghte before or þat the bataile was, made
 muche reveH, and cryeng and shoutyng,¹ al þe nyghte, and plaiet
 8 Englisshemen at þe² dyce, euery archer for a blank. ¶ And on þe
 morowe about pryme, þe Kyng comaundit euery man to make hym
 redy to bataile, and said thes wordes: "Sirres! thenkes this day
 to quyte youe as men, and feightes for þe righte of Englonde! and,
 12 in the name of Almyghty God, avaunt baner! and Saynt George,
 this day thyn helpe!" Then oure men knelit doune al attones,
 and made a cros on þe grounde, and kissit it, and put hem in þe
 mercy of God.

16 ¶ The Frenshmen þen come with³ gret pride ferisly, and oure
 archers shotte frely; and att last, both þe battailes Ioynet and
 mette, and sore foughton) togedirs. And þe Frenshe men) presit so
 fast and so thikke on oure pepiH, þat they felt on þe stakes þat
 20 were pighte in the ground, horse and man), so thikke, ich ouer⁴
 othir, þat gret pepiH of hem were slayne with-out eny stroke. And
 þe Kyng þat day fuH manfully faughte ⁵ that same day, his oune
 handys⁵; so that 1 pece of his croune was broken, which afterward
 24 was foznden and⁶ broughte to hym). and so at last, Almyghty God
 gaue grace that he had þe victory of hys enmys, for al there pride,
 and slowe xij M^t; of the which, þe lordes and þe states of name,
 there names folowen in þis table herafter :

28	The Bisshope of Sayntis,	The Erle of Brene,
	The Duyk of Brabane,	The Erle of Sannes,
	The Duyk of Barry,	The Erle of Grauntpre,
	The Duyke of Launson),	The Erle of Fallyngberge,
32	The Erle of Douers,	The Lord Dalabret,
	The Erle of Marle,	The Lord Heyle,
	The Erle of Russe,	The Constable of Fraunce,
	The Erle of Almartyne,	The Lord of Dampiere,
36	The Erle of Vandemound,	The Lord of Beaufremound,

¹ and shoutyng *om. L.*
⁴ on L. ⁵⁻⁵ *om. L.*

² þe *om. L.* ³ in L.
⁶ founden and *om. L.*

The Lord of Danssy, ¹	The Lord Colard of Fessenis,	
The Lord Damnery, ²	The Lord Cheyny,	
The Lord Robert ³ Frere,	The Lord of Beauford ⁴ ,	
The Lord of Ranavile,	The Lord of Branen,	4
The Lord Waryn ⁵ ,	The Lord Raulond of Grotuse,	
The Lord of Kemeram,	The Lord Philipe of Lens,	
The Lord of Bakevyle,	The Lord William Eriche,	
The Lord Senal of Henawe,	The Lord of Saint Clos,	8
The Lord of Mongangies,	⁸ The Lord Iohn of Poys, ⁸	
⁴ The Lord Coursy,	The Lord Iakes of Coriamble,	
The Lord Oudard of Rant,	The Lord of Cauzkesy,	
The Lord of Hemes,	⁸ The Lord Colard Somanyng, ⁸	12
The Lord Symond of FragneH,	The Lord Colard of Frenys, ^[col. 2]	
The Lord of Cramys,	The Lord Gaumot of Burnvile,	
The Lord Robert ⁵ Monerigny,	The Lord Ronale of Flaundes,	
The Lord of Quemes,	The Lord Bidamue of Lannoys,	16
The Lord Daunchy,	The Lord Iohn of Garonns,	
The Lord Gerard of Herbanes,	The Lord Dacoy,	
The Lord Iohn of Gres,	The Lord Colenchet,	
The Lord of Soile,	The Lord Doo,	20
The Lord Dauphyan,	The Lord Iohn of Beaumont,	
The Lord Mounteney,	The Lord Iohn of Drouy,	
The Lord Burcy and his sonne,	⁸ The Lord Charles, ⁸	
The Lord Reynold Dagincourt,	The Lord Philipe Lynberk ¹⁰	24
The Lord Mayhewe ⁶ of Humes,	and his sonne,	
The Lord Philipe of Fosseins,	The Lord Iohn of Calkevile,	
The Lord Burian ⁷ of Rubenpre,	The Lord of Bryoile,	
The Lord of Poys,	The Lord William of Granevile,	28
The Lord Launcelet of Clarre,	The Lord Humers,	
The Lord of Hemedede,	The Lord Iohn of Monteney,	
The Lord of Coresques,	The Lord of Harlyn and his	
The Lord of Marquet,	broper,	32
The Lord Robert of Poys,	The Lord Malare of Gurnay,	
⁸ The Lord of Noel, ⁸	The Lord of Cankers,	
The Lord Robert of Waryn,	⁸ The Lord of Houncious of	
The Lord Haucon ⁹ of Croan,	Poys, ⁸	36
The Lord of Eroun and hissonne,	The Lord of Long,	

¹ Any L. ² Amery L. ³ lord of L. ⁴ leaf 157.⁵ lord of L. ⁶ Mayhewe om. L. ⁷ Burian om. L. ⁸⁻⁸ om. L.⁹ Haucon om. L. ¹⁰ Lynberk om. L.

	The Lord of Tenys and his sonne,	Fort-escu, Robert of ¹ Savage,
	The Castelyn of Lens,	Brian of Geromes,
4	The Baron of Mary,	Iohn of ¹ Gardyn,
	The Stuard of Henawde,	Dorn dez Pres,
	The Baily of Dauneus,	Iohn of Sempy,
	Iohn Guryñ,	Pier Bonenfaunt,
8	Damset Dannay,	² Burgu of Rony, ²
	Iohn of Lesele,	Pers of Fossenis.

And many othir moo, as before is saide. And thes were pe names of pe Frenssh lordes pat were take prisoners in pat batail :—
 12 The Duyk of Orlyaunce, The Duyk of Burboyn, ²The Erle of Eawe,² The Erle of Richemond, The Erle of Vandome, Sir Iohn of Bare, pe ²Dukes broper of Bare, Sir Bursigaunt,² stuard of Fraunce, ²Sir Iohn de Roche,² And many oper³ moo, to pe nombre
 16 of viij^c.

And pes were pe names of pe lordes pat were slayñ on oure party :—The good and noble Edward, Duyk of York, in pe vaward, The Erle of Suffolk, and oper moo yemen to pe nombre of xxvij^{ti}.
 20 and pis bataile was done pe xxv^{ti} day of Octobre, on Saint Crispyn and Crispians day, the yere of oure Lord, M^t CCCC xv. ²¶ Of which a versifier makes mencion, and saith “Crispini multos strauit gens anglica Francos.” ¶ Then come tithynges to pe Kyng
 24 pat a newe bataile of Frenshmen were redy to feight with hym ageyn. Then pe Kyng onon chargit and comaundet euery man to sle his prisoner. And when the Frensh men pat sawe, they withdrowe hem, and went their way.²

28 ¶ Then come pe Kyng to Caleys with his prisoners, and thankit God of pat gloriose victory, ⁴and Saint George, which halpe hym to fighte, and was seyne abouen in pe eyre, pat day they fau3t. And when pe Kynge come to Caleys, he restet hym pere awhile,
 32 and after shippit, and come into Englund, and landet at Dovor, and passit so forth to Berehamdoun, where-as mette with hym pe v portes, with x M^t men clenly harnesshit and arrayet. And pen said pe Duyk of Orlyaunce: “¶ what! shal we now go ageyne to
 36 bataile?” And pe Kyng hym ansuard, and said: “Nay: thes ben childer of my cuntre come to welcome me home.” And there⁵ pe

¹ of om. L. ²⁻² om. L. ³ oper om. L.
⁴ leaf 157, back. ⁵ their Ha. there L.

v portes presentit þe Kyng with a shippe, & gold therin. And so rode he forth to Caunterbery, where-as þe procession hym mette with-out þe toun, and hym broght to Cristischirche; and the Kyng offert at Saint Thomas shryne. And from thens he rode to Eltham. 4
¹And fro thens he toke his way to London; ¹ and on Blakke-Heth mette with hym þe Meyre and the Aldermen, with al the craftes of þe Cite clothet al in rede, to þe nombre of xx^{ti} M^t; and þer they welcomet hym home, and þe Kyng hem thanket. And so rode he 8
 forth to London ¹on Saint Clement day,¹ where-as he was riolly receyuet with precession, And song “Aue Anglorum flos, mundi miles *Christi!*” And when he come to London Brigge, where-as were ij turrets on þe draw-brige, and a gret Geaunt, and on þe 12
 turrets stondyng a lyon and a Antlope, with many angeles syngyng “*Benedictus qui venit in nomine Domini!*” And so rode he forth in-to London; and þe stretes were rially hanget with rich clothes; ¹And in Cornhyß was made a rioß toure, full of patri- 16
 arches syngyng “*Cantate Domino canticum nouum! laus laus eius, in ecclesia sanctorum!*” and kest doun quyk briddes, which flawe thikke about þe Kyng.¹ And when he come into Chepe, þe Condites ranne wyne. And on þe gret condit were xij Apposteles, 20
 syngyng “*Benedic, Anima mea, Domino!*” and xij kynges knelyng, castyng doune oblays, and welcomet hym home. And þe cros in Chepe was riolly arrayet like a Casteß, with toures pight full of baners, and þer-in Angeles syngyng ‘*Noweß, noweß!*’ gyvyng 24
 besandes of gold to þe Kyng. And so rode he forth to Paules, where-as mette hym xiiij² bisshopes; and al þe belles ronge agaynes hym; and þere he alight and went to þe hye awter. And there þei song “*Te Deum laudamus.*” And from thens he rode 28
 forth to his palice at Westmynster; And after, he rode about in the land on pilgremage, and ordeynt þe holy Chirch þat Saint George day shuld be kept hye and holy: and so was it neuer before þat day. 32

¶ In þe iij^{de} yere of þe reyne of Kyng Henry þe v^{te}, Segewyn, þe Emperoure of Almayn, come in-to Englund, and was right wurshiply receyuet at London ¹with þe Meyre, alderme[n] and craftes,¹ and broughte to þe Kynges paleys at Westmynster, where-as 36
 was þe gret haß assignet to hym, which was ryolly hanget with clopes of gold and of Arras. And euery Angeß in þe haß-rof

¹⁻¹ om. L.² xij L.

holdyng a torche in his honde; ¹and iiij angeles at þe hye decee,
ich holdyng iiij torches.¹ And þe Kyng gave þe Emperoure þe
Gartour. And sone aftir, þe Duyke of Holand come in-to Englonde,
4 and was loggit in Holborn, and abode a long tyme in þe lond, on
þe Kynges cost; and after, they went home. And þe Kyng went
with the Emperoure to Caleys, where-as was a Counseyle; at
which Counseyle was both þe Kyng and þe Emperoure, and per
8 taried to haue ansuare of þe Frenssh party. And thider come the
Duyk of Burgoyne; but he wold not come per til Humfrey, Duyk
of Gloucestre, lay plegge for hym. And after, the Emperoure
went home in-to his cuntre, ¹and many Englissh men with hym
12 made officers, for he trustid hem better þen his oune nacion.¹
¶ And when þe Kyng had his ansuare of þe Frensshe party, þat
liket hym not, he come in-to Englonde ageyn, and ordeynt a gret
army.

V.

[*From the Capture of Rouen, 19 Jan. 1419, to the Defeat of the Ghent
men at Calais, and the Death of Watkin RUSKIN, A.D. 1436.*]

16 ²And then þe Kyng entret in-to þe toune of Roane, and hym
restit in þe Casteil till þe toune was sette in ruyle and in gourn-
aunce; and after þat, was Caudebek, and oper garisons pernegh,
yolden to þe Kyng ¹vnder the same appoyntement.¹

20 ¶ Of the trefy of pees þat was betwene Kyng Henry of
Englonde and Kyng Charles of Fraunce; and of þe mariage
of Kyng Henry þe V^{te} and Dame Kateryn, þe Kynges
doughter of Fraunce; and so þe pees was made³ and
24 fynysshit. [*Big writing, with red underlines.*]

When Kyng Henry of Englonde had goten Roane, as before is
said, the Dolfyns embassatores, as it was accordit before—
with full power to do al thynges, as he were þere hymself present,—
28 comen to þe Kyng to þe said Cite of Roane; and after many tretise
had, thus it was appoyntet: þat a certeyn day sette, þe Dolfyn shuld
come to þe toune of⁴ Dreux, and Kyng Henry to Aueraunchis, and

¹⁻¹ om. L.

² leaf 158, back.

³ made Ha. was made L.

⁴ toun Ha. toun of L.

pere chese a mene place betwene both assent, where they myghte peashely tret of pe pees. Which appoyntement truly to be kept, pe Kyng and the said Ambassatoures sette-to paire seales. at which day pe Kyng come; but pe Dolfyn com not: wherfore pe pees was 4 broke as for that tyme.

¶ In this mene while, Iohn, Duyk of Burgoyne, which had pe ruyle of pe Kyng of Fraunce because of his sekenes, be letteres and ambassatouris sought Kyng Henry grace; and pe Kyng sent 3 Ambassatoures ageyn to Charles, Kyng¹ of Fraunce, and to pe said Duyk, to Province, of which ambassatours pe Erle of Warrewik was chef;² and in pe way as he shuld go, lay a gret busschement of Frenshe men, to take hym, and let hym pe way and his purpose; 12 but he slogh and toke the moost party of hem, and come to Province, and purposet his ambassiat. And so was it pere appoyntet and accordit, that Henry of Englonde and Charles of Fraunce, with pe Quene his wif, and pe Duyk of Burgoyne, shuld 16 come to a mene place, & trete of pe pees. And to do pis message, pe Erle of Saint Paule, and pe sonne and heire of pe Duyk of Burgoyne, come to pe Kyng as Ambassatours. ¶ Then Kyng Henry of Englonde, of pe mater be relacion of Ambassatoures of 20 both partyes, appoyntet *with* his enmys that, at a certeyn day, he shulde come to Maunt, and Charles, Kyng of Fraunce, and Iohn, Duyk of Burgoyne, shuld come to Pounteys; and pe mene place of this tetry should be Melan sus Sayn; to pe which, *oper* party 24 shuld come with moo pen M^t v^c men; and in pe mene tyme truyce shulde be on both parties: which mene place was aftirward arayet betwene ij villages, and lymytit and market betwene ij gret diches, where-in no man shuld come, but onely such as shuld trete. 28 And *per* pe Kynges tentes were riolly pighte and arrerit, and pe Kynges tentes of Fraunce. And Kyng Henry lete arere ij tentes betwene .ij. diches, where-in both pe Kynges myght trete apart with theirre secret Counsaile, ³and pe astate of bope Kynges observet and 32 kept.³ and a stake was pighte in pe myddes of a faire playn, to pe which, and no ferther, eythir Kyng shuld come to *oper*. And pe day appoyntet,⁴ Kyng Henry come to Maunt, And Kyng Charles, because of his acustumet sekenes, came not; but pe Quene his wif, 36 and pe Duke of Burgoyne, with *oper* notable prynces of theirre

¹ Ambassatours to the king L.

² the king made chef the erle of Warrewik L.

³⁻³ om. L.

⁴ assigned L.

alliaunce, and with¹ M^t v^c men), comen to Pounteys, and aftir, to þe mene place. And Kyng Henry first kisset þe Quene, and þen Dame Kateryn), hir doughter,² for at þat tyme þe Kyng sawe hir 4 first.² ¶ Then Kyng Henry, þe Quene and hir doughter, and þe Duyk of Burgoyñ), with oper, went into a tent to trete of pees, where they were almost iij dayes; but it toke non ende³ at that tyme.

In the menewhile, the Dolfyn), with letters and messagers, 8 sterid the Duyk of Burgoyñ) that he, nor non of his, shuld assent to þe pees. And at þe v^{te} nonas of August, in þe which þe said Kynges shuld haue semblet, þe Kyng of Fraunce, þe Quene, þe Duyk of Burgoyñ), nor non of hem, come. Wherfor it was 12 openly knawe that þe Frensh party was cause⁴ þat the pees was not endit at that tyme.

Then Kyng Henry went vnto Pounteys, and gat it. And sent Thomas his broþer, Duyk of Clarence, with a notable power, to 16 Parise, and gate it, And retournet ageyn to þe Kyng. And þen þe Kyng went to Bokend-villers and⁵ Gysours, and gate hem.⁶ And whiles this was in doying, þe Duyk of Burgeyn), þat first sought þe Kynges grace, went to þe Dolfyn) to Motreux, vnder 20 sav-condit of comyng and goyng, and pere, by þe said Dolfyn), was traytosely and vnmanly slayne, As he knelit before hym, and after, put in-to a pitte, botit and spurret. ¶ And when Philip, his soune and his heire, perof had knowlege, he sought Kyng Henry grace, 24 and become his man). ¶ The same tyme, certeyn ambassatours of Kyng Charles and of þe Duyk of Burgoyñ), & of Citizyns of Parise, come to Kyng Henry vnto Maunt, to trete of pees; but because the Kyng was so besily occupiet in his werres, and also he supposet 28 þat the Frenshmen were not fully enclynet to þe pees as than, þis tetry toke non ende at þat tyme,⁷ but aftirward at Roan it was fully fynesshit.

¶ Aftirward, whiles Kyng Henry held his Cristenmas in⁸ 32 Roan, the Ambassatours of Kyng Charles and of þe Dukes of Burgoyñ) come pidir to hym; to whom Kyng Henry⁹ sent ageyn Richard, Erle of Warrewik, with oper wise men, and a notable power of men of armes,¹⁰ wip full power to concludye the pees; 36 and aftir many wise tretise had, pees was on both sides concludit, by þe affinite and wedlok of Kyng Henry and Dame Kateryn),

¹ with a L. (Ha has 'M^t. M^t.' for 1000.) ²⁻² om. L. ³ leaf 159.

⁴ cause om. L. ⁵ Bokend-villers and om. L.

⁶ it L. ⁷ at þat tyme om. L. ⁸ att L. ⁹ þe king L.

¹⁰ of men of armes om. L.

Kyng Charles daughter. But be-cause certeyn thynges were necessary, for þe which þe presence of both þe Kynges most nedis be had, what for setting-to of their seales, what for the mariage sewing, And also Charles was so feblet for age, and oft tymes was 4 vexit with his sekenes. ¶ Thus it was betwene hem appoyntet, þat Kyng Henry shuld come at a day lymyt, vnder truyce, with suche puysshauce as hym liket, to Nogent vpon Sayn, to perfourm fynally al thyng that to þe pees was nedfuH; and if he 8 come not, al thyng shuld be had as for noughte. Aftir this appoyntement þus made, þe Erle retournet to þe Kyng, notifying vnto hym in wrytyng al þe affecte of his enbassiat. ¶ Then þe Kyng from thens went to Nogent; and þer mette with hym 12 Philipe, Duyk of Burgoyne, with a gret company of men of Armes. Then, after many and diuerse tretise, þe xij^{te} kalendes of Iune, þe xli^{ti} yere of þe regne of Kyng Charles, in þe CathedraH chyrch þer, Kyng Henry, with Thomas, Duyk of Clarence, his broþer, and oþer 16 princes and nobles, and IsabeH, Quene of Fraunce, with þe Duyk of Burgoyne beyng þer for Kyng Charles laboring þen in his forsaid affirmite; and in þeir oune names, and þe iij states of Fraunce, pees betwene þe ij remes of Englonde and of Fraunce was made, 20 and with certeyn condicions approvit. And Kyng Charles charget al his legemen, on payn of fforfeture of þaire legeaunce, to kepe þe said pees; And þerto þai mad their gret oth, and plight þeir trouthis in þe handes of Kyng Henry. And onon, Quene IsabeH 24 of Fraunce, & Philipe, Duyk of Burgoyne, in þe name of Kyng Charles, swore vpon þe Euangelistes to kepe this pees, þus concludit, for theym, for their heires, & their¹ successoures, withouten fraude or male engyne, for euermore. And this same othe 28 made Quene IsabeH, and the Duyk of Burgoyne, and þe iij states of Fraunce, to Kyng Henry, his heires and his successoures. And at the ix^{te} kalendes of Iune, before Quene IsabeH and Kyng Charles Counsaile in þe parlement, and þe iij states of Fraunce, and oþer 32 Englysshe prynces and lordes, contracte of Maternony be present wordes, betwene Kyng Henry and Dame Kateryn, Kyng Charles daughter, there was solempnet and made. And as sone as this was enditet in wrytyng, as it was accordit, Kyng Henry, Kyng Charles, 36 and þe ij Quenes, ² IsabeH and Kateryn, and þe Duyk of Burgeyn, went to Saynluys and gate it; and fro thens vnto Melon, and beset þe tounce. and þe seege enduret from þe first Idus of Iuyle vnto

¹ their Ha. & for þeyre L.² leaf 159, back.

Nouembre aftir. and at that seege, lay *with* Kyng Henry, Iames, Kyng of Scottes, as *presoner*. And *pei* within *pe* toune suffert gret duresse; but at last, for diffault of vitaille, thei yolde 4 vp the toune. ¶ Then *pe* Kynges and *pe* Quenes, and Philipe, Duyk of Burgoyne, with theire hostes, went to Parise; and the Citizyns of *pe* Citee mette *with* hem in¹ full noble array, and riolly hem receyued. ¶ And at *pe* viij^{te} Idus of Ianuare, Kyng Henry 8 and Dame Kateryne comen in-to Englonde, and laft at Parise Thomas Beaufort, Duyk of Excestre, his vncler, and Thomas, Duyk of Clarence, his broþer, Regent of Normaundy. And *pe* xiiij day of Feueryere, ²pat feH on *pe* Sunday,² Dame Kateryn was crounet at 12 Westemynster with gret solempnyte.

¶ And in this while Thomas, Duyk³ of Clarence, with *oper* certeyn lordes, made a iournay, and lefte at home *pe* yomanry, but toke *with* hym gentels and speris; at which iournay he was 16 slayn with *pe* Scottes, and al *pat* come *with* hym; and *pe* Erle of Huntynghton was *per* take, and *oper* moo, ²and *pat* was gret routh.² ¶ And when tithinges *perof* come to Kyng Henry, he was sorowful and hevy, and made hym redy to go ouer see; and at 20 Mydsomer next aftir the coronacion,⁴ he went ouer⁵ into Fraunce ageyn, ²and left the Quene in Englonde,² and gat certeyn garisons *pat* were rebeH, and besegit *pe* toune of Meux; at which seege tithynges come to *pe* Kyng *pat* *pe* Quene was deliuert of a sonne 24 at Wyndesore *pat* was clepit Henry. ¶ And whene *pe* Quene⁶ was purifiet, she went ouer into Fraunce to *pe* Kyng. And after *pat* Meux was yoldon, Kyng Henry went to Parise, makyng ordynaunce to be-seege *pe* toune of Cane. And *pen* a sore and a fervent malady 28 hym toke, and fro day to day hym vexit til he deyed in *pe* CasteH of Bois de Vincent, the last day of August, when *pat* he had regnet ix yere, v monithis, iij. weekes and iij days; and aftirward he was brought in-to Englonde Riolly, and enterid at Westemynster.

[*The Accession of Henry VI.*]

32 **A**fter the noble⁷ victoriose prynce, Kyng Henry the vth, regnet his sonne, Henry the vj^{te}, ²that was bore at Wyndesore in the fest of Saint Nycolace the Confessoure,² and began to regne in *pe* age of ix monithes and xv dayes. And to Richard, Erle of

¹ *with* L. ²⁻² *om.* L.

⁴ the coronacion *om.* L.

⁷ noble & L.

³ Duyk Ha. duyk of L.

⁵ ouer *om.* L.

⁶ quene Ha. *pe* queene L.

-Warrewik, was commyttit pe kepyng of hym, for-as-much he was countet and hold pe best-nurturet man of Englonde; and pe Bisshope¹ of Caunterbery and the Bisshope of Wynchester were his godfaders; and pe Duches of Holand was his godmoder; ²and ⁴so forth-with-al he was sette to howsold. and pat same yere pe Duches of Holand was weddit to Humfrey, Duyk of Gloucestre.² and the first yere of his regne, dyet Charles, pe Kyng of Fraunce, ²att Bois de Vyncent, and was entered at Parise,² and pe Quene ⁸his wif with³ ²hym). And pat same yere was one Sir William Tailoure, prest, brent in Smythfeld for heresy.

¶ And pe second yere of his regne, Sir Roger Mortymer, knyght, brak out of pe Toure of London, be counsaile of certeyn) persones ¹²of pe same Toure, and was tak ageyn) on pe Toure-wharf, and after brought to Westmynster: and pere was he iuget to pe deth, and was draw and hanget at Tiburn), and quartert, and his hed set on London) Brigge; and his hert and his bowelles were beryet in ¹⁶pe Grey Freris in London, on the north side of pe chirch.²

¶ **Of the Bataile of VernuH in Perche be Iohn), Duyk of Bedford, and Regent of Fraunce.** [*Big letters, red underlines.*]

In the second yere of pe reyne of Kyng Henry the vj^{te} aboue- ²⁰said, Iohn), Duyk of Bedford and Regent of Fraunce, & ⁴the Erle of Salisbery; Mountegu,⁵ the Erle of ArundeH, the Lord Scales, the Lord Poynnynges,⁶ with pe nombre of xij M^t of Englysshe men, laid seege to Ivory in Normaundy. And whiles they lay att that ²⁴seege, the Duyk of Launson) gadert a gret host of Frensshmen), and Scottes and lumbardes, pe nombre of lij M^t, to rescowe Ivory, and to give bataile to pe said Duyke of Bedford. But when they herd that pe Duyk of Bedforde had with hym) xij M^t men), thay ²⁸laste Ivory, and come to VerniH in Perche, which was pat tyme in pe handes of Englysshe-men), ²And the Lord Scales therof beyng capteyn), and was att pe said seege of Ivory.² ¶ Then pe Frensshe men) chargit pe Englysshe men) to delyuer pe toun) of VerniH vp to ³²hem), And ⁷the said Duyke of Bedford and aH his power were ouerthrawe and slayn) before Ivory. And they of the toun) of VerniH wend it had ben trewe, And gave vp pe toune to pe Frenshmen. And pus⁸ by this trayn), VerniH was lost, vnknowyng of ³⁶

¹ Archbysshop L. ²⁻² om. L. ³ also L.

⁴ & om. L. ⁵ Mountegu om. L. ⁶ the Lord Poynnyng om. L.

⁷ leaf 160. ⁸ pus om. L.

the Duyke of Bedford and þe lordes which lay att þe said^d seege of Ivory¹; neuerþeles at last it was yolden vp to hem. ¶ Then iij M^t. men toke theire leve of the Duyk of Bedford and Regent of 4 Fraunce,² and departet from thens³ hom to their garisons. And they were not passet thens xij lekes, but tithynges come to þe Duyk how þe Frensshe had geten VernyH, and were therin. Wherefore he onon, with þe Erle of Salesbery, Mountegu, þe Erle 8 of ArundeH, þe Lord Scaldis, and þe Lord Poynynges, with⁴ ix M^t Englissh men, retournet⁵ to VernyH, and toke thair feld a myle from the toune, to gyve the Frensshe men bataile; but þe Frensshe men nor þe Scottes⁶ wold^d not beleve pat the English men 12 wold^d⁷ feight with hem, for they had redy knowlege pat iij M^t men were gon hom to their garisons, and þey were⁸ but ix M^t men, and they were lij M^t: notwithstanding, a day of batail was sett. ¶ Then oure Englissh men pichet theire stakes; 16 and on þe day of batail when þai shuld feight, they knelit doune and kissit the ground; and þen the Duyke of Bedford bade ‘auaunt baner!’ And so they Ioynet to-gedris and faughte; and the Duyk of Bedford faughte pat day manfully with his oune 20 hondis. And whilis they were besy feightyng, the Lumbardes of þe Frensshe host comen behynde the batail of þe Englissh men, and slowe theire pages, and went away with thaire horses. And on Yong, an Englissh Capteyn, fledde away with v^e men in his 24 felissh[ip]e, and told how Englissh men had lost the feld; which was aftir taken, and was hanget, drawe and quartert, as he was wele wurthy; for God fortunet so, that þe Duyke of Bedford had the vi[c]tory and the felde⁹ of his enmyse, and put þe Frensshe 28 men to the flight, and chasit hem to þe toune dikes of VernyH, where-as many of hem were drownet. ¹⁰And when þey retournet agayn to the bataile, thay fand þe Scottes feightyng stiH with þe 32 men. And so then onon þe Scottes were aH discomfit and slayne, þe Englissh men crynge “A Clarens, A clarans!” for cause þe Scottes before that tyme [ferede] þe Duyk of Clarans. ¶ And the[s] were þe names of þe lordes, knyȝtes and swyers, and men of 36 name of þe Scottes pat were slayne in pat batail: that is to say,

¹ Bedford pat lay before Ivory L. ² and Regent of Fraunce *om.* L.

³ Ivory L. ⁴ Salisbury the lord of Arundel & þe lord Scaldis *with* L.

⁵ went L. ⁶ nor þe Scottes *om.* L. ⁷ durst L.

⁸ were 11a. þey were L. ⁹ and the felde *om.* L.

¹⁰ There is a gap in L from here to *batail* on p. 567, l. 15.

The Erle Douglas, þat was att þe bataile of Shrewisbery new made
Duyke of Turreyn),

The Erle of Bugham,	Sir Gauter Lynnesey,	
James Douglas,	Alexander Hume,	4
The Lord Sauyton),	Adam Dalgleis,	
The Lord Dondas,	Alexandre Stuard,	
Sir William of Seton,	James Lunieston),	[col. 3]
Sir Thomas of Murray,	Robert Serand,	8
Sir Gye Ferard,	Andrewe Murray,	
Sir Iohn Saintclere,	Thomas Grenston),	[col. 2]
Sir Archbald Goumerston)	Huchon Candy,	
Sir Gauter Berton),	Dauid Murray.	12

¶ And many oþer Scottes moo of gentilmen), and þe men) were
there slayne that ben not namet here.

¶ And þes ben þe names of þe lordes and men of name of þe
Frensshe men that were slayne in þat same bataiH before the toun) 16
of VernyH in Perche : that is for to say :

The Erle of DaumaH),	Sir Lewis de Trye,	
The Erle Bendtadom),	Sir Charles de Guesines,	
The Erle Romier,	Sir Iohn) de Murrak,	20
The Erle DaubinaH),	Sir Gyles Deschavile,	
The Lord Manny),	Sir Iohn) Bonnestablez,	
The Lord Gravile,	Sir Giles de Camegez),	[col. 2]
The Lord Flenogin,	Sir Boit de Turnbur,	24
¹ The Lord Mountenay,	Sir Tristrem) Coiseron),	
The Lord Camelhart,	Sir Charles DesneuaH),	
The Lorde Chageron),	Sir Robert de Layre,	
The Lord Mesilate,	Sir Charles de Bruyne,	28
The Lord Dauterme,	Sir Iohn) Poyngaunt,	
The Lord de la Frait,	Sir Peris de Bellay,	
The Lorde de Cathemagez,	Sir Peris BottereH	
The Lord de le Forge,	And his brother,	32
The Lord de Bellay,	Sir Fraunceis de Gryngoux,	
The Lord de le Champayn),	Sir Emery de la GrissiH),	
The Lord Gamagez,	Sir Pruncle Fraunceis,	
The Lord Dassail Raboule,	MarshaH de la Fait,	36
The Vicont of Nerborn),	Peris de Guyssay,	

¹ leaf 160, back.

	Peris de Trussellez,	Heton de Guesmez,
	Robynet de Cleremount,	Geffrey Paillam,
	Louis de Osternard,	Regnaulton Grenault,
4	Colville le Vieont, [col. 3]	Godffray de Soubres,
	Druet Desson,	Hewe de Beaussault,
	Geffray de la GressiH,	Le Camus de Frisendy,
	Andrewe Poyngaunt,	Guylliam Remon de la Maiser,
8	Iohn de Tonevile,	Louis de Bagard,
	Moriard de la Mote,	Peron de Luppe,
	Iohn Frere,	Ion de Puche.
	Iohn de la Famruner,	

12 Thes were þe names of lordes, knyghtes, squiers, and gentilmen
of name þat were slayn in þe said bataile, of Frensshmen, and
many oþer moo þat ar not here namet. And the nombre of al þe
Frensshemen and Scottes that were slayn in þat batail, be¹
16 herawdes accompted, xij M^t v^c xxx, with² hem þat were drounet
in þe dikes of VernyH. ¶ And thes were the names of hem þat
were taken prisoners:³ The Duyke of Launson, Iohn Boutevile,
Sir Peris Henson, Vidain Lannoye.⁴ ¶ And when þis bataile was
20 don⁵ and þe Englissh men had þe victory, they lovid⁶ and⁷ thanket
God gretely of his grace, And forthwith went to þe toun of
VernyH, which was onon⁷ deliuert vpe⁸ to hem, ⁹and had aH þe
stuff that þe Frensshmen ther-in hade.⁹ And þen went þe Duyke
24 of Bedford and Regent of Fraunce peasably to Roon, thankyng
God of þat victoriose battaile.

¶ In the iij^{de} yere of þe Regne of Kyng Henry þe vj^{te}, the
Prince of Portyngale come in-to Englonde; which was of þe Kyng
28 and þe¹⁰ lordes wurshyly receyuet. And aftirward, at Saynt
George Fest att Wyndesore,¹¹ the said Prince was made¹² Knyght of
þe Garture. ¶ In the iiij^{te} yere of his regne þer fiH a gret discord
betwene Humfrey, Duyke of Gloucester, and Henry, Bisshope of
32 Wynchester; wherfore the Comyns of London aros with þe said
Duyke, which lay þat tyme at his own place ⁹at Baynardes CasteH,
ageynes þe saide bisshope, which lay þat tyme in his place⁹ besides
saynt Mary-ouerheis in Suthwerk. but the Prince of Portyngale,
36 beyng that tyme¹³ in Englonde, labourt so betwene hem, as God

¹ And in this taile were slayn be L. ² with out L.

³ And there was taken L. ⁴ Lannson and many moo gret lordes L.

⁵ don Ha. was don L. ⁶ lovid and om. L. ⁷ anon up L.

⁸ vpe om. L. ⁹⁻⁹ om. L. ¹⁰ of þe L. ¹¹ att Wyndesore om. L.

¹² made att Wyndesore L. ¹³ same tyme L.

wold, to kepe þe pees; wherthurge þere was non harme done,—thanket be God!—¹ And so were the comyns of London pesite.¹ And þat same yere come Iohn, Duyk of Bedford and Regent of Fraunce, in-to Englonð, with þe Duches his wif, ¹þat was the suster ⁴ of Philipe, Duyke of Burgoyne; and was full rially receuet of þe Maire and of þe Citizins of London.¹

¶ In the v^{te} yere of his regne a parlement was holden att Leycestre; att which parlement the Duyke of Bedford made ²yong ⁸ Kyng Henry the Sixt, knyghte; and xxiiij knyghtes were made with hym. And when þe Kyng wes made knyght, he made with his oune handes other xxiiij knyghtes. And att þat parlement were made many statutes and ordynaunces, and many newe officers. ¹² ¹And in þat same yere there was one William Wawe, an Outlawe, taken out of þe sayntuary of the Abbey of Bewley, and broughte to London to the Kynges-benche, and after, to Westemynster, and was pere dampnet, and had into Southwert, and sette in a cart, and ¹⁶ was broughte so thurgh-out London, and so forth to Tyburn, and þer was hanget; And after, his hed smytten of and sette on London Brigge.¹

¶ In the vj^{te} yere of his regne, Herry, Bisshope of Winchester, ²⁰ went ouer see to Caleys, and so forth to Rome, where-as þe Pope hym made CardynaH, and gave to hym þe cros, to be born before hym alway where he went; but it was afterward taken away and laide down by commaundement of þe Pope, for cause he shulde ²⁴ haue comyn into Praage with a certeyn number of men of werre, whiche cuntre was out of beleue of Christen faith. but he faillet his promyse, and come not there, but changet his purpos for þe wele and þe worshippe of al the Reame of Englonð, and went into ²⁸ Normaundy with a notable meyny of Archers, the best þat couth be geton in eury place of Englonð ¹for ix^d on þe day, euery archer ij or iij bawes in a cace.¹ And so, by his comyng theder, was sauid aH that lande; and elles þat tyme it shuld haue ben lost. ¶ Then ³² afterward, he come ageyn into Englonð, and was there wurshiply receyvide ¹with the Meire, Aldermen, and craftes of London, and brought so forthe to Westemynster, and lay þer in the Abbottes place within the Abbay.¹ ¶ In the vij^{te} yere of his regne þer was ³⁶ a great derth of corne. for a bussheH of whete was at iij^s sterling; and aH oþer cornes were dere þat yere.

¹— om. L.² leaf 161.

How Kyng Henry the VI^{te} was crownet att Westemynster;
And after, be counseil of his lordis of Engeland, was
crownet Kyng of Fraunce att Paryse.¹ [*Underlined with red.*]

4 I N the viij^{te} yere of the regn of the said² Kyng Henry the
vj^{te}, he was crownet at Westemynster in Nouembre, on Saynt
Lethenardes day; and on pe nyghte before, he made xxiiij^{ti}
Knyghtes of the Bath in pe Toure of London, which rode before
8 hym on the morowe, al in blewe, toward his coronacion, to his
paleis att Westemynster. Att which coronacion was gret rialte
seyn; for al pe condites in Chepe ranne both of rede wyn and
white; and the condite Also in pe palice of Westemynster rann
12 with rede wyn; take therof, who-so wolde. And pat same yere,
sone after, he went ouer see into Fraunce with a faire felesshipe of
dukes, erlis and barons, ³in the monythe of May, and with the
nombre of iiij M^t men,³ and landet att Caleis, and went so forth be
16 londe thrughe Pikardy to Roane, where-as he was righte Rially
recevid and welcomet. ¶ In the ix^{te} yere of his regne, the Erle of
Perch, the Erle of Morteyn, the Lorde Fitz-Hewe, and pe Lord of
Audelay, shippit att Sandewiche with iiij M^t men, and landet att
20 Caleis, and went so forth thrughe Picardy⁴ to Roane. And onon
after, Henry, CardinaH, Bisshope of Wynchester, the Lord Clynton⁵
and Sir Thomas Donstable, shippit then att Portesmouth, and
sailt so to Kittecaux, Harflewe, and to Roane. ¶ And in pe x
24 yere of his regne he was crownet att Paris, Kyng of Fraunce, ³on
oure Lady day pe Conception, in Decembre; where-as was hold as
riah a fest as euer was had of eny kyng.³ And in pat same yere
was Louers geton, & the ⁶walles beton down, and made an open
28 village, for all maner of pepiH, both Englisshe and Frensshe.

And pat same yere the Kynge come to Caleys out of Fraunce,
and shippit there, and londet att Dovor, and was wurshiply
receyuet with the barons of the v portes. And⁷ ³so was he
32 brought forth vnto London, and receyuet by pe Meire and Alder-
men, the first day of Marche; and so broughte to Eltham: And
ich crafte of Londen had his liuerey braudert, that every crafte
myght be knowen from othir.³ ¶ In the xj yere of his regne, the
36 Duches of Bedford, pat was that tyme clepit Madame Regent, and

¹ kyng of Engeland and after in Parise kyng of Fraunce L.

² the said *om.* L. ³⁻³ *om.* L. ⁴ thrughe Picardy *om.* L.

⁵ the Lord Clynton *om.* L. ⁶ leaf 161, back.

⁷ And fro thens he com to London L.

suster to the Duyk of Burgoyne, dyet att Roan; whos deth turnett Englissh men aftirward to much trouble; for al pe whiles *pat* she was on lyue, hir brothir, Duyk of Burgoyne, was euer holdyng vpon the Englissh party; but sone after *pat* she was ded, his 4 hert was cast clene away from Englissh men, and turnet to pe Frensshe party, and become enemy to Engeland, as ye shaH here aftirward. ¶ In the xij^{te} yere of his regne, the Duyk of Bedford and Regent of Fraunce weddit the doughter of the Erle of Saynt 8 Paule, a faire lady.¹ And *pat* same yere fiH a gret discord betwene Sir William OldhaH, Knyghte, Leotenaunt of Caleys vnder pe said Duyke, and sawdiere of Caleys, for askyng of paire wages; where pe said sawdioures were to-gedirs sworn, and kept hym out 12 of the toune, and wold not suffere hym to come with-in, ² notwithstanding[ng] his wiff beyng within the toune.² And so went he then to Roan, and compleynet hym to pe Duyk of Bedford, and capteyn of pe said toune,³ Caleis, and made hym hevy lord toward⁴ pe said 16 sawdioures⁵; in so much *pat* he come doun out of Normaundy, with his lady pe Duches, the Erle of Saint Paules doughter, and pe Bisshope of Tirrewyn her vncler, and Sir William OldhaH his leotenaunt, to pe CasteH⁶ of Balyngham, a myle from pe toune of 20 Arde. And there he lay vnto⁷ Richard Bukkeland, Tresourer of Caleis, and Capteyn of the said CasteH of Balyngham, had entretid pe saudiours of Caleis, and aggreit with hem, and gyven hem obligacions of customs. And when he had made agrement with 24 hem, the Duyke and Capteyn come in Peasably to Caleis, with his lady the Duches, her vncler, and Sir William OldhaH his leotenaunt, and was⁸ rixt wurchiply recevid of pe burgeis, marchaundes, and sawdioures, ²and brought to pe CasteH with al the Sawdioures of 28 pe toune.²

¶ On pe next morawe after, he sent for pe porters, and for pe keys of al pe gates of the toune, into pe CasteH. And after sent forth sergeautes, and arestit dyuers Constables and vinteners, and 32 putte some in prison in the CasteH, and some in the MarshaH prison; and made onon also to Arest all the obligacions of Custome that couth be founden in eny Saudioures handes, and toke hem from hem. ¶ And after, made Richard Veere, *pat* tyme beyng Meire, to 36

¹ a faire lady *om.* L. ²⁻² *om.* L. ³ toune of L.

⁴ to L. ⁵ sawdioures of Caleys L.

⁶ Normaundy with pe said Oldhall to pe CasteH L.

⁷ vnto pe [? time that] Ha. vnto L.

⁸ with pe said leotenaunt and was L.

gyue Iugement on¹ iiij Soudeoures to be hedyt vnder þe pillery ; for the which was made gret mone amonges the pepiſh. And after, he come to the toun haſt hym ſelf, and ſate there with þe Maire, 4 and þe Kynges ſwerd^d beyng *per* present, and hade al the ſaudioures of þe toun before hym). And al þat were billet, ſtoode before hym vngird^d; at whiche tyme ^{xx}iiij were banſhit, and al their wages forfette. And they ſtoode on þe liſte ſyde ; and al þat abode within 8 the toun) ſtoode on þe right ſyde ; but a gret part² of hem were putte out of wages, ³and loſt al that hem) was owyng.³ And when al this was done, he went to Roan) ageyn) with his lady the Duches,⁴ and had neuer after bodily hele till he dyet.

12 ¶ Of the trefy of Arras, and howe the Duyke of Burgoynd turnet to the Frenſſhe party ; and howe he laide Seege to Caleis, ³And howe he withdroughe hym in-to Flaundes or þat Ony reſcouſ come, in the nyghte.³

16 **I**N the xiiij^{the} yere of the regne of Kyng Henry the vj^{te}, was the grettest froſte that was in many a day before ; for it began vppon Saynt Kateryn) even), and laſtit to þe iiij^{te} day of Marche, the ſpace of xvj wekes. And Temmes þat tyme was ſo ſore froſen, 20 that the vintage of Burdeux went ouer Shoters Hiſt : for þe ſhippis with wyne myght come no nerre then Sandewiche. ³and þat froſte þat tyme diſtroyet oiſters, and muſkelles, and freſſhe-water fiſſh, through þe moost party of Englonde.³ ¶ In þat ſame yere was þe 24 trefy of Arras betwene the Kyng of Englonde, Henry the vj^{te}, And Philipe, Duyke of Burgoynd) ; and Charles de Valoice, Dolfyn) of Fraunce, that tyme beyng there in enbaſſhat for þe Kyng of Englonde, Henry, Cardynaſt of Englonde, Biſſhops of Wynchesteſ, Iohn) 28 Kempe, Erchbiſſhops of York, Iohn), Erle of Huntyngton) ; Pole,⁵ Erle of Suffolk, ³Prevey Seale, Sir Waulter Hongerford, Sir Iohn) Poppahm,³ with a faire feleſhip^e with hem), to þe number of viij^c men). att which trefy, þai wold^d the Kyng of Englonde) ſhuld^d have 32 putte out þe floure de lice out of his Armes ; and many *oper* thynges was ſpoken) of ; but to ſay ſhortly, þei couth not accord^d ; wherfore they departit thens, and come home ageyn) into Englonde. but thay of þe toun) of Popperyng in Flaundes demenet hem) 36 vngentilly, and entretid hym) vnmanerly as he⁶ come rydyng

¹ to L. ² leaf 162.

³⁻³ om. L. *Heading in big letters, underlined with red.*

⁴ with his lady the Duches om. L. ⁵ & Paule L. ⁶ þey L.

thrughe the toun) from the saide trefy of Arras¹; wherfore he² was sore amovid and grevid with hem, for they made his men³ to bere out of toun peyr horses dong, mawegre their tetter; neuerpeles he⁴ suffirt it, and rode on his⁵ way; but he² quytte hem that foule 4 and gret dispite, as ye shaH here afterwardes.

¶ Then, as sone as thenbassetoures were departet from) Arras, and home,⁶ the Dolfyn) and the Duyke of Burgoyne) were accordet, and made att one⁷ for deth of the Duyk of Burgoyns fader, pat was 8 slayn) att Muttereux by pe same Dolfyn); and perwith endit aH that trefy.⁷ And then onon) after, pe Duyk tok in-to his handes Abvyle and Amyas, and oper tounes and Castelles; and after, by a kyng of heroudes, he sent the Kynges lyueray to Caleis, [and, by]⁸ the 12 counsail of his lordes and hem) of Flaundres, he made⁹ redy his ordynaunce and his pepiH,¹⁰ to come and lay seege to Caleis. And pe Flemmynges were pen so proude and hawteyn) pat they sette by none Englysshe men, but hem) hade in gret despite, thrughe-out aH 16 Flaundres. And grete noice pere was of comyng of pe seege; neuerpeles Marchaundes yette went al this while into Flaundres to and fro, but thai hade eviH chere in al plases. And they of Brigges made payntet clothes, howe¹¹ pe Flemmynges were att seege att 20 Caleis, and howe pai wann) pe toun; and hanget out Englysshe men) by the helis out at lopes: and weH was hym) pat myght by of pes clothes! And pai made entirledes and plaies in Brigges, of pe CardynaH of Wynchester And of the Dolfyn), of thaire purposyng 24 and Ansuaryng att the trefy of Arras, And aH in dispite and hoker¹² of Englyssh men); thei were so glad and fayn) pat they shuld lay seege to Caleis, and wyne the wulles of pe staple of Caleis,¹³ and to departe it amonges hem); And bostet and said pat 28 pe steevan Caleis was but a¹⁴ male tyde, pat is to say, A mele tyde; And mony othir scornefuH wordes thai had that tyme Amonges hem). And that same yere, in pe heryng tyme, pere come iij C botes out of Normaundy to Caleis on fisshyng fare, as they were wont ich 32 yere; and euery bote hade in xvj¹⁵ men). and they come as ffisshers, and in ffisshers clothyng; but a gret part of hem were men) of werre, and had cast to haue geton) pe toun. but att last, as God wolde, the[y] were aspriet by their fyne smale shirtes and by 36

¹ of Arras *om. L.* ² pey L. ³ made an englyssh yemen L.

⁴ they L. ⁵ peir L. ⁶ and hom) *om. L.* ⁷⁻⁷ *om. L.*

⁸ Sir so Ha. ⁹ and made L. ¹⁰ and his pepiH *om. L.* ¹¹ who L.

¹² and hoker *om. L.* ¹³ of Caleis *om. L.* ¹⁴ leaf 162, back.

¹⁵ xv L.

their poyntes; wherfore Richarde Woodvile, Squyer, leotenaunt of
pe said toun of Caleis vnder the Duyke of Bedford,¹ charget euery
souldioure to bere his staff in his hand, as wele in pe cherche and
4 att sacryng tyme as in pe market, and not to leue stondyng att pe
chirch durre, as they were wont to do; and so thaie bare thaire
stavis in peire handes in pe chirch, and ouer al. Then the Frensshe
men vnderstood wele pat they were aspriet, and sawe wele pey²
8 couth not brynge theire entent³ nor purpos about; And wenth
their way out of Caleis hauen in a tide, and went streight to pe
toun of Deepe, and come in pere as ffisschers, and so gate pe toun.
And in pat same yere dyet the Duyke of Bedford in Roan,⁴ on
12 Holy-Rode even in May, which had layn longe seeke;⁴ for whos
deth was made muche mone amonges Englysshe men that were pat
tyme in Normaundy; for as long as he leuit, he was doutet and
dred amonges the Frenssh men.

16 ¶ In the xiiij yere of the⁵ regn of pe said Henry the vj^{te}, Hum-
frey, Duyke of Gloucester, Protectour and Dessendour of Englonde,
was made Capteyn of Caleis; and he was Capteyn of Guysnes before
that tyme; ⁴And so he was both Capteyn of Caleis and of Guysnes.⁴
20 And he made Sir Iohn Radcliffe his Leotenaunt of Caleis,⁶ and
sent hym thedir⁷; which was a wurshipful knyzt, and was wel-
belouet amonges pe sawdiours⁴ there: for he kept and helde A gud
and open housold to who pat wolde come, and welcome.⁴ ¶ Then
24 come tithynges ich day more and more of pe seege comyng to Caleis,
Then Sir Iohn Radecliff, pe Leotenaunt of pe toun, Robert
Clidrowe pe Meyre, and Thomas Thirland, Leotenaunt of pe staple
of Caleis,⁶ with pe sawdioures, marchaundes, and burgeses and
28 comyners, kest vp a faire brode dike on pe south side of the toun,
and made iij stronge buhtwerkes of erthe and cley, one att pe
corner of pe CasteH with-out pe toun, ano^{per} att Bulleyn gate, and
ano^{per} att pe postern be pe Princes Inne; And att Mylke gate was
32 a faire bulwerk made of breke, pat Richard Woodevile had do make
or he was discharget of his leotenauntshippe. And pai fortifiet pe
walles, toures, and dikes on ich a side of the toun, with-in and with-
out, And dresset theire lopes and theire gunnes to shote both hie
36 and lawe. ⁴And the vj CasteH in the Marche; pere pat Englysshe
men were in hem, fortifiet as strongly as they couthe, that is to say,

¹ vnder the Duyke of Bedford *om.* L. ² pou Ha. pat pey L.

³ not brynge theire entent *om.* L. ⁴⁻⁴ *om.* L. ⁵ of Ha. of pe L.

⁶ of Caleis *om.* L. ⁷ to Caleis L.

the CasteH of Guysnes, the CasteH of Balyngham, the CasteH of Hamnes, the CasteH of Sandgat, the CasteH of Marke, and the CasteH of Oye. And Sir Iohn Radcliff, Leotenawnt, warnet and charget al þe cuntre þat was of þe Englysshe pale, [þat pey] shuld⁴ come and bring a[l] thaire goodes, and breke doun thaire houses; and so, many of hem did, and many of hem stale away, some into Picardy and some into Flaundes. And þere¹ was a cry made in þe market-place² of Caleis, þat al maner of men beyng in Caleis, or 8 lyvyng vnder biH vnsword, þat they shuld³ come to þe toune-haH, and³ there to be sword the Kynges trewe leege men; And þai that wold³ not be sword, to take þeire goodes and go thaire way where þay wold³. And so þere come many, and were there sword; and many 12 went thaire way into Flaundes, and wold³ not be sword. ¶ And on Saynt George day, Sir Iohn Radcliff sent word prevely to þe Daywach of þe toune in þe nonetye to ryng⁴ out the larom beH, vnwetyng to the sawdioures of þe⁵ toune. And so þer was a grete 16 Alarom, and saudioures were onon in thaire harneys, and comyners with hem, And wende þat enmys hade comen to haue fechet the bestys þat were pasteryng about the toun; but þere was non; for Sir Iohn Radclif did it for a sport, because it was Saint George 20 day; And for þat he wolde se howe saudioures wold³ bokkeH and dresse hem to þeire harneys.

¶ And sone afterward, Edmond, Erle of Morteyn, and the Lord Camys, Sir William of Asshton, knyghte,⁶ And Sir Geffrey 24 Werburton, knyghte,⁶ shuld³ haue shippit att Wynchilsey to haue gon into Fraunce with the number of iij M^t men of speres and Archers; but because there was so gret a noys of þe seege comyng to Caleis, þei⁷ were contirmaudit be þe Kyng⁶ and þe Duyke of 28 Gloucestre⁶ to go thider, and strenghe þe toun tiH rescous myght be had. And so went þe Erle with his Armee to Caleis. ¶ Then Humfrey, Duyke of Gloucestre, Protectoure and Deffendoure of Englon, and Capteyn⁶ of Caleis and of Guysnes,⁶ send for al þe 32 lordes of the Reame, both spiritueH and tempereH, and for al his feede men, and desired of hem an eyde for þe rescowe of þe saide toune of Caleis. And þe lordes temperaH hym graunted to go with hym hem-self in propur person, and fynde a certeyn meyny with 36 hem vppon þeire oune cost; And bisshoppis, Abottes and priours also graunted to fynde a certeyn meyny to go with hym; And al

¹ And sone aftir there L. ² place om. L. ³ and om. L.

⁴ leaf 163. ⁵ of Ha. of þe L. ⁶⁻⁶ om. L. ⁷ that þei Ha. þei L.

his feede men) hym) graunted eke to go with hym) ; And he thonket
 aH. And then was it criet in al pe port tounes and haven) tounes
 in Englonde, pat al maner shippis pat were able to saile be pe see¹
 4 shuld come into² Sandewich haven) be a certeyn) day ; and so thei
 were pe number of ij^c³ sailes and moo. ¶ Philipe, Duyke of
 Burgoyne, made hym) redy, and the Flemmynges, al this while, and
 toke dyuerse marchaundes prisoners, as they come homward) out of
 8 Flaundes to Caleis, and specially they of Dunkirke.⁴ And when
 pe Erle of Morteyn) was comyn) with his Armee to Caleis, as before
 -is saide, he made a iournay of Bulleyn), xx^{ti} myle from) Caleis, and
 brent the subbarbes of pe toune, and come to Caleis ageyn) on pe
 12 next day after, vnfoghten) withe, and broughte with hem) paire pray .
 of bestes and their pillage. And onon) after, he made anothis
 -iournay in-to West Flaundes, to a place clepit pe Lawe. And
 whiles they ryfelt and spoilet that cuntre, and praiet in cateH, al
 16 pat cuntre gedert, and come doune to Gravenyng, to mete with hym
 there. And when) pe Erle and his meyny come dryvyng their
 pray of bestes before hem), on pe sandes betwene pe toune of
 Gravenyng and pe see, thay issuet out of pe toune prudly, and
 20 faught with hym) ; but pai were sone discomfit, & slayn) of hem) iiij^c
 and moo : then thai fledde in-to pe toun), and pe Englyshe men) hem)
 foloet, and toke many prisoners. ⁴ And per was an Englysshe man),
 a gentill man), and a spere on) horsebake, folowet pe chase of hem)
 24 right to pe hard) gates of pe toun), so nere that his hors bare hym)
 into pe toun) of Gravenyng, wheder he wold) or no ; which after
 ward was delyuert be raunson).⁴ ¶ The Erle pen, with his pepill,
 drove ouer pe havon) of Gravenyng thaire pray of bestes, att lowe
 28 water, in spite of al pe Flemmynges, and brought hem) with al
 thaire prisoners to Caleis, and lost neuer a man ; thonket be God !
 and ⁴ pai brought so gret plente of Cowes with hem), pat a man
 myght haue pe best melche cowe pat was, for xij^d sterlyng.⁴ ¶ And
 32 when) pe Kyng and pe lordes had) tithynges of his iournay of
 Gravenyng, the Kyng sent to pe saide Erle of Morteyn) to Caleis,
 the Gartur. And onon) aftirward, the Lord Camys, Sire William
 Asshton), And Sir Geffrey Weckton), with pe garnyson) of Caleis and
 36 of Guysnes, made pe iij^{de} iournay, both of horsemen) and ⁵footemen,
 and rode before the toune of Arde, and ryfelt aH the cuntre about
 pe said toun). And in the mene while, Sire Robert Savoys, Capteyn)

¹ be pe see *om.* L.² and in Ha. into L.³ ij^c L.⁴⁻⁴ *om.* L.⁵ leaf 163, back.

of Fynes, had gedirt of Pykardes to þe nombre of iiij M^t speris on horsbake, And laide hem pryvely in Campe Grove besides the CasteH of Balyngham. And when þe Lord Camoys with his peple was comyng homward in the felde be-syde the said grove, 4 the[i] stert iij hares, and perwith pay gave a gret showte; And so both horsemen and footemen, *with* huntyng of hem, were stragelt abrode ouer aH þe feldys, and were al out of array, and wist nothyng of þe Pikardes þat lay in þe grove besides hem, but euer 8 stiH showtet and huntet after þe hares, which were att last slayn amonges hem. ¶ And as pay were so stragelt and out of Array, the Pikardes soðeynly brake out of þe Grove, and rode thrughe oure meyny, in and out agayn, and smote doum many fotemen. 12 and þen, many of oure horsemen, seyng this, fledde to þe CasteH of Balyngham; but the Lord Camoys and þes ij knyghtes kept þe feld; And as God wold, the fote-mene relevid ageyn to þe standart, And, þe horse-men also, And sett frely on þe Pikardes, and hem 16 discomfyt, and slowe many of hem, and drof hem to the gates of Arde, ¹ where-as one Lucas, a squyer, folowet hens *with*in their barreers, and was slayn; for whome was made much mone.¹ And þus,—thonket be God!—þe Lord Camoys had þe victory of his 20 enmys, ¹ þe Pikardes, in a feld callet þe Golden Dale, beside þe CasteH of Balyngham,¹ And come to Caleys, with þeir pray.

¶ Onon after, the Duke of Burgoyne, Phelipe, was redy, and come doune to Gravenyng with his ordynaunce, and Flemmynges, 24 þe nombre of an CL M^t, and xij M^t cartes; and ¹ ich cart had his cokke to cawe amonges the host.¹ ¶ Then pai made a brigge ouer þe water of Gravenyng, ¹ into a place callet þe Hoke, þat was partenyng to þe saide Duyke.¹ And so come þey ouer, and shewet 28 hem before þe CasteH of Oye, and sent to Nicolas Horton, squier, and Capteyn of þe same CasteH, an heraude, charyng hym to delyuer vp þe CasteH. And he sent hym worde agayn, and said he toke hym non to kepe; nor non he wold delyuer: Neuerþeles, 32 afterward, by a fals tretim, pai had hym out of þe CasteH to come speke with þe Duyke. And in þe mene while þe CasteH was wonnen by a grate of Iron, þat was lafte open in þe buttery, where-as a gune lay whiles þe saudiers were in þe haH aboven, 36 tretim of a poyntement with an heraud of þe said Duykes; And soðeynly þe Flemmynges come in, and toke hem in þe haH, and

-hanget lvj on þe gallows vnder þe CasteH,¹ without eny pite, And
slowe al þe remenaunt, except Nicolas Horton), Capiteyn) of þe said
CasteH, and one William Bullion),² Constable, And William
4 Bullion), his cosynd²: thes iij³ were prisoners, but² Nicolas Horton)
þe Capteyn) was long afterward⁴ raunsonet, and come home in-to
Englond; And þe Constable dyet in prison) for sorowe; And his
cosynd William² Bullyon)⁵ was so beknowe and welebelouet with þe
8 Pikardes, þat thay gave hym) his raunson), and lete hym go where
he wold, so þat he shuld go to Caleys, and espy when þe Duyk of
Gloucester shuld come ouer with his Navey from Sandewich, And
sende hem) worde. ¶ When this William Bullyon) come to Caleis,
12 þe pepiH had gret mervaille þat he was letton) go without paying of
eny rownson); wherfore Edmond, Erle of Morteyn), made to arest
hym), and put hym) in prison), and bare hym) on) hond þat he was a
spy. And þer⁶ he knowlegit þat he promyset hem) to give hem)
16 warnyng of þe comyng of þe Duyk of Gloucester, because of his
deliueraunce, but he sware he thoughte neuer to haue warnet hem);
neuertheles, for þat he was broughte vnder þe pillery in þe market
of Caleis, and there his hed) was gird of: for whome muche mone
20 was made, for he was a gud Archer.

¶ When þe Flemmynges had pus wonnen) þe CasteH of Oye be
a trayne, as before is said,² which was on Saynt Petirs even) in
Iuyne,² thai brake vp al þe lede of the halle and of þe toures, and
24 brent vp euery stykke; And after, vndermynet þe walles and⁷ þe
toures, and sette shores vnderneþe, And after, sette þe same shores
on fyre, and brent hem), and so lete þe walles and toures⁸ faH
doune⁹ into þe dikes. ¶ Then, þe second) day of Iuyle, the
28 Flemmynges laide seege to þe CasteH of Mark, þat was next þe
CasteH of Oye; but þe Erle of Morteyn) had sent thider before,
Christofer of Barton), squyer, with a certeyn) felesshipe with hym,
to helpe¹⁰ to strenghe þe CasteH. ¶ The Flemmynges laid peire
32 gonnes to þe walles,² & beete down) þe vawmures and þe walles,²
and gave þe Englisshe men with-in many stronge assawtes; and
they manfully hem) diffendit, and beet hem) of, and fortifiet þe
walles ageyn) with tymbre and donge, & with such thyng as they
36 had within hem), And kept it be strenghe vj dais. And when pay
sawe þai couth haue no rescowe, thay gave it ouer, and yolde hem)-

¹ vnder þe CasteH *om.* L. ²⁻² *om.* L. ³ ij L.

⁴ afterward was Ha. ⁵ þis Bullion L. ⁶ þei Ha. *per* L.

⁷ leaf 164. ⁸ toures & walles L. ⁹ doune *om.* L.

¹⁰ to helpe *om.* L.

self prisoners. ¶ Then þe Flemmynges spoilet þe CasteH, and brake of al þe lede, and brent it, and vndermynet þe walles and toures^{1, 2} and sette shores *per-vnder*; and after brent hem, and lete þe walles and toures faH into þe dike, as þai hade done þe CasteH 4 of Oye.² ¶ Then, þe ix^{te} day of Iuyle, In þe yere of oure Lord-Ihesu Crist M^t iiij^c xxxvj, Philipe, Duyk of Burgoyne, with þe Flemmynges, come to Caleis, and laid seege *perto* be land, and pight his tentis³ before þe toune, on þe playne of Saint Peters, a 8 myle nere out of þe toun. And þe Duyk hym-self lay a litiH from Newname brigge, And þai of Gaunt beside hym, And þey of Brugges, with þe comyntee of Flaundes, lay besides Saynt Peters Chirche. but the Duyke lay not þere but ij days, but þat he 12 remeved from thens, and al þe Gaunteners with hym, to þe Est ende of þe toun, And þere he pichet his tentes; for he wold ly no lenger att þe west ende of þe toun, for cause a gune shotte thugh his tent. And then þei of Gaunt onon made a strong bulwerk on an 16 high hiH of þe downe, of pipis & tymber, betweene þaire loggynges and þe toun, and shott gunnes in-to þe toun; and many tymes þai shot al ouer þe toun; but al þeire gunshot did neuer harm, thanke be God² and þe Holy Virgyn Saint Barbara!² ¶ In þe mene 20 whiles, whil þe Duyke lay att seege at Caleis, with þe Flemmynges,⁴ Sir Robert Savoys, knyght,⁵ with iiij M^t Picardes, come before þe CasteH of Balyngham. And one Richard Sellyng, beyng *perof* leotenaunt vnder Richard Bokelond, Squier, and Capteyn of þe 24 same CasteH; which Richard Sellyng gave ouer þat⁶ CasteH shamefully, without eny stroke, vpon apoyntement to go to þe Castell of Guysnes in thaire doublettes; and so thai did; and lafte al their goodes, and þe stuff of þe CasteH behynde hem, which was 28 þe⁷ best-stuffet place in al þe marches.

— And when Richard Sellyng come þus to Guysnes with his feleshippe, William Picton, Leotenaunt of Guysnes² vnder Humfrey, Duyke of Gloucester,² putte hym in prison in þe said CasteH 32 of Guysnes. And when þe Picardes had þis CasteH, þe[i] spoilet it, and brake of þe lede, and brant al þe place, and vndermynet þe walles⁸ and toures, and lete hem faH in þe dike, as the Flemmynges hade done with þe Castelles of Oye and Mark. ¶ Then þe Picardes 36 come before þe CasteH of Guysnes, and laide seege *perto*, and

¹ toures so þat al þe Castel fell to þe grounde L. ²⁻² *om.* L.

³ tentis L. *om.* Ha. ⁴ with þe Flemmynges *om.* L. ⁵ knyght *om.* L.

⁶ þe same L. ⁷ þe be Ha. þe L. ⁸ places L.

broughte *with* hem a gret brasen gune of Dogeon,¹ with iij chambers, and ij othir grete gunnes of Iron callet bumbardes; and paye laide þe brasen gune in A seller of þe toune of Guysnes, on þe 4 dikeside of þe CasteH, and shotte att a ward next a toure callet þe Faanetoure, and brake it doune in-to þe dike. but William Picton, Leotenaunt of þe CasteH, with his felesshipe with-in, fuH manfully and discretely hym gidet, and it fortifiet ageyn with tymber and 8 dong. ¶ And in this while, anoþer meyny of Picardes come before þe CasteH of Sandgate, and bade hem deliuer vp þe CasteH; for þai said aH oþer Castelles were gyven ouer. Wherefore Sir Thomas Knevet, [that] was sent thidir with A crewe, and made þerof 12 leotenaunt be þe Kyng,² Wist not what for to do; And so,² ³ by ⁴ þe counsaile of one Sir Thomas Heneley, Preest, A traitour, he gave vp þe CasteH of Sandgate, shamefully and cowardly, with-oute eny stroke, and hym-self and all þat were with-in þe CasteH, prisoners, 16 except þe fals preest, which was letton go where he wold; but ⁵ he went vp into Fraunce, and neuer man wist after where þat he become. ¶ And when þai had þe CasteH, þai brake doun þe lede, and sette fyre on al þe place, and vndermynet þe walles; but þe 20 Dongeon was so strong, þay couth not vndermyne it, but brake it a litiH abouen; and so þey lefte it, and lete it stande.

¶ Philipe, Duyk of Burgoyne, lay stiH all this while, *with* his host of Flemmynges, before Caleis; and þei of þe toune had letten 24 in þe see, and drownet al þe cuntre about hem). And ich day þai of þe toune and þe Flemmynges skarmysshed to-gedirs. And when þai had leyn þer xiiij daies, þe Duyke lete ordeyn .xx. shippis out of Flaundes, wherof vj old shippes were lade with hard ston, 28 chalke, and brekes masont in hem with mortar, to droune hem in þe haven of Caleis, þat no shippis shuld come þer-in. And when it was fuH see, about noone, þey bulgit hem, some in þe haven-mouthe, and some be-sides the haven, to no purpos; for þei durst 32 not tary, nor þei had no gret leysere to droun hem, for fere of gun-shotte; And so þei went þeire way ageyn; and on þe next day after, at lawe water, wel was hym of þe toun þat myght bring an Ax to breke þe shippis; and so þai did, al to peces, and broughte 36 hem in-to toune, and refresshid wele þe pouer pepil; and al þe brekstones were gyven to Saynt Mary Chirch; ² and so were þai al cariet in-to toun.² And whilis þis was in doying .I. thowsand

¹ of Dogeon om. L.

²⁻² om. L.

³ leaf 154, back.

⁴ but be L.

⁵ and L.

Flemmynges stoden on þe downes and beheld it, and were full sory in þeire hertes, and were full gretely *perwith*¹ abasshit; for þai had wend^t *per* shuld^t no shippis haue comen in þe haven afterward. ¶ Sone after *pat*, it fell *pat* they of Brugges that lay at Saint 4 Petirs, come from þeire tentes down to Bulleyngate ward, some *with* pavis, and some with crossebawes, a grete meyny stragelynge. And þei of þe toune ordeynt speres on horsebakke prevely in Bulleyngat bulwerk, so *pat* they were not seyn; and sent out 8 certeyn fotemen to scarmysshe *with* hem, til þey sawe theyre tyme to breke out on hem. And when þe horsemen sawe þaire tyme, þei sodenly prikkit to hem; and þen þe Flemmynges fledde to þe tentes; but or þai couth come there, þai were ouerthrawn, and 12 brought in-to þe toune, xxxvj^{ti} of hem prisoners; and þe host with-in þe tentes fled^t out at þe est side,² and wend^t al þe worlde had comyn on hem: And þis was on a Thursday; ^{26 July? or 19?} wherfore þe Flemmynges it clepit the 'Quade Thursdagh.' ¶ When þis Journey 16 wes done vppon hem *pat* were of Brugges,³ and of þe comynte of Flaundes,³ the Gaunteners *pat* lay *with* þe Duyke at þe est ende of þe toune, *loghe* hem to scorn; for þe which fi^h⁴ a gret debate amonges hem, and faught with-in hem-self, so *pat* no^{er} party 20 come to othir after *pat* tyme. ¶ And on þe Setirday sevennyght, & ? ij daies afterward, they of þe toune of Caleis, *with* certeyn horsemen & fotemen, Issuyt out sodenly on þe afternoone, and went streight to their bullewerk on the hye hi^h in þe dounes, and man- 24 fully it wanne and toke, and slowe al *pat* euer were in *hit*, and brake doune þe bullewerk, and went hamward^t with þeir prisoners; but þe Erle of Morteyn mette hem without þe toune, and made to sle al þe prisoners, for cause of one Watkyn Ruskyn, a genti^h man 28 and a gud spere, was slayn at þe wynnyng of þe same bullewerk. And when þis bullewerk was þus wonne vppon hem of Gaunt, they of Brugges were glad, and *logh* hem of Gaunt to scorn.⁵

¹ *perwith* full gretly L. ² ende L. ³⁻³ om. L. ⁴ fell L.

⁵ Gaunt Ha (*last word of the incomplete MS.*). Gaunt to scorn L.

[I]

[Lambeth MS. 6, col. 2.]

[The Siege of Calais abandoned. The Englishmen's Mocking
Song against the Flemings.]

¹And þis Seturday at night, the Lord Welles wes sent ouer to
Caleis by the Duyk of Gloucestre *with* a certeyn meyny, to
strength the toun till he come *with* his nauy; And he landed
4 behynd þe toure of Ryesbank. And his peple made so gret noice
in þe londyng, that þe Duk of Burgoyne & they of Gaunt, which
lay at þe Est ende of the town, wend the Duk of Gloucester had
londid *with* his nauy þat sam nyght; wherfore þe Duk & they of
8 Gaunt brake vp þeire tentes sodeynly & priuely, & went ouer
Grauenyng watir þat same nyght, and lafte behynd hem much of
þeire vitaille & of þeir ordynaunce; and gunnes were founden
beried vnder þe erthe. And thay of Brugges, þat lay at Saynt
12 Petirs with þe comynte of Flaundres, knewe noþyng of their
goyng til þe Sonday in the mornyng aftir; on which Sonday, at
the releuyng, iiii. Englissh trumpettes blewe vp on hye vpon
Milkgate toure, as ²they were wont to do euery day at þe releuyng
16 of the wach duryng the seege. And then they aspyed þat aH þe
Gaunteners were gon; but þey at Saynt Petirs lay stiH. but as
sone as they sawe þat the Duyk, þeire lord, & they of Gaunt, were
gon, þey brake doune þeire tentes, & sette þeire loggynges on fyre,
20 and fled þeir way in aH that euer þey myght, and laft behynd hem
much of þeir vitailles for hast. And they of the towne wold haue
folowed aftir; but þe Lord Welles had brought a priuey seal from
þe King, charyng, on payn of their lyues, the[y] shuld not passe
24 gunneshotte *with*out toun til þe Duyk of Gloucestre come *with* his
power; And ne had þat ben, there had ben gret good geton þat
tyme.

¶ AH þis while þe Pycardes lay at seege at Guysnes, and had
28 smytte doune þe ward next þe Faane toure, *with* þe gret brasen
gunne, as before is said. And when they of the CasteH sawe þe

¹ leaf 255, back.

² leaf 256.

Flemmynges sette þeire loggynges on fyre, thay made to ryng the larome beĥ in al that þey myȝt. Wherfore the Pycardes were sore abasshid, and wend the Duke of Gloucestre had ben landed with his power, & wes comyng to rescowe the Castel, And anon ¹brake 4 þe seege, and carted þeire ordynaunce, & fled in al that euer þey myȝt. And they of þe Castel yssued out, both on horsebak & on foote, aftir hem, and ouertoke the gret brasen gunne carted, & two opir gret bombardes of yron; but the iij. chambres of þe brasen 8 gunne were scaped from hem with þe hoost. Then they of Guysnes hewed in sonder the cartwheles, and aftir, with strengĥ of men & horses, they wer brought into þe said Castel of Guysnes; & aftir they were brought in-to the toune of Caleis. ¶ And on this wise, 12 Phelip, Duk of Burgoyne, & the Flemmynges, departid from Caleis, and þe Pycardes from þe Castel of Guysnes, with gret shame & gret -diswurship, & with gret losse. Wherfore amonges Englisshmen were made many rymes of þe Flemmynges; among the which, one 16 -is here sette for a remembraunce, that saith on this wise:—

WHen þe Flemmyng wer fressh, florisshid in your flouris,
 And had we[l]th at your will, ye wolde be conquerouris
 Of Caleis, þat litill toune: as it come in your mynde; 20
 But ye, to conquere Caleis, it comeþ you not of kynde.

²Remembres on þat wurship ye wann the first day,
 When the Erle of Mortein come passing with his pray
 Before youre toune of Grauenyng, wher ye, as men bold, 24
 Come rennyng on hym fersli, as lyons of Cotteswold,
 With habirgeons & hounsculles, & rusti kettiĥ hattes,
 With long pykes, goden daghes for to stikke the rattes,
 With messis & meskins, & eke with side Iakes, 28
 Doune vnto mydde þe leg, of kanuas lyke to sakes;
 Stoppid al with hempen tawe, and þat in straunge wise,
 Stiched like a matrace, al of þe newe gyse,
 Ye laid vpon þenglisshmeñ so myghtily with your handes, 32
 Til of you iij. hundrid lay strechid on the sandes.
 Ye fled þen in-to Grauenyng, and wold no lenger bide,
 And gaue þe Erle leue to passe ouer that same tyde
 In saafte with his prisoners, & lost neuer a man: 36
 This was þe first wurship, of Caley that ye wan.

¹ col. 2, leaf 256, Lambeth MS. 64.² leaf 256, back.

Remembres how ye laide seege, with gret pryde & bost,
1 To Caleis, pat littil toun: the noumbre of youre host
Was a hundrid thousand & fifty, to reken by þe pollis;
4 As it was þat same tyme founden by youre rollis;
And yette, for al youre gret host, erly nothir late,
Caleis was so ferd of you, þey shitte neuer a gate.

Remembres how ye drownéd att full see for þe nones,
8 With shippes, Caleis hauen, massoned *with* stones,
And how that þe Calisers hem brake the next day,
When it was lawe watir, and bare lxiixi clene away,
Euery stikke & stone, & lafte not ther one log.

12 Remembres eke on Goby, the watir-bailiffes dog,
How he scarmyssshed *with* you *twyes* vpon the day,
And among you, on þe sandes, made many a fray.

Remembres ye of Brugges; how ye *ferst* wan youre shone,
16 How ye come forth to scarmysssh vpon an aftirnone
With pauyses & crossebowes, on Saynt Petirs playne,
And how sone the Calisers made you to turne agayne,
2 And ouerthrewe you sodeynly, or euer that ye wist,
20 And brought you in-to Caleis, tyed fast by the fist.

Remembres ye of Gaunt eke: for al youre pride & bost,
Wonneñ was youre bulwerk, beside your gret host,
And slayne all that was therin: & ye, that same night,
24 Fled ouer Grauenyng watir; but go þat go myght,
And youre lord *with* you, for *dreed* and for fere
Of the Duyk of Gloucester; & yette was he not *per*.
Wel was hym might go before *with* pisone & *with* paunce,
28 And *laft* behind you, for hast, al youre ordynaunce.

Remembres, ye Picardes, at *seege* eke as ye lay
Of Guysnes, that strong Castel, how ye fled away
For ryngyng of the larume beñ, shamfulli in a morowe,
32 As ferd as þe Flemmynges, *with* hertes full of sorowe.
Ye lost there your ordynaunce, of gunnes that was cheff:
To you & to al Pycardis, shame and gret repreff.

Remembres now, ye Flemmynges, vpon youre owne shame;
36 3 When ye laide seege to Caleis, ye wer right still to blame;

¹ col. 2, leaf 256.

² leaf 257.

³ col. 2, leaf 257.

For more of reputacioun, ben Engliſshmeñ þen ye,
 †And comen of more gentiſh blode, of olde antiquite ;
 For Flemmynges come of Flemmed men) ye ſhal wel vndirſtand,
 †For flemmed men & banſhid men enhabit firſt youre land. 4

Thus proue I þat Flemmynges is but a flemmed man,
 And Flaunders, of Flemmynges, the name firſt began.
 And þerfore, ye Flemmynges, þat Flemmynges ben named,
 To compare *with* Engliſshmen, ye aught to be aſhamed ! 8
 Ye be nothing elles worth, but gret wordes to camp ;
 Sette ye ſtiſh, & biſh in pees : God gyue you quadenramp !

¶ Such & many opir rymes were made amonge Engliſshmeñ,
 aftir the Flemmynges were thus ſhamfully fled frome Caleis, & þe 12
 Picardis from Guisnes fledd, & gon þeire way, for drede & fere of
 þe comyng of the Duyk of Glouceſtre, whiche by þat tyme was redy
 at London *with* his power & armee to come to þe reſcows of Caleis,
 & to ſhippe at Sandwich, wher-as lay redy in þe hauen iij^c ſailes 16
 to abyde his comyng.

[*End of the MS.*]

[K]

[*Extracts from the unique Lambeth MS. 84.*]

I.

[*How Havelok's son, Curan, became King of Denmark and England.*]

¹How Kyng Edelf married Argentyl to a knave of his Kechyn.

ANd Kyng Edelf, þat was vnclē to þe damoyseH Argentil, bethought him how he myght *with* some tresoun have þe lande frō hire þat was his Nece, for euermore; and, false forsworne ayenst his othe, thouht how he myght disceyue þe damoyseH; And so he married here to a knaue of his kechyn þat men callyd Curan. And this Curan becam þe worthiest man of body þat ony 8 man wist in ony lande; for he was þe lengest man & highest of aH þe Kynges householde, or in ony oþer place þat men knew þat tyme. And Kyng Edelfe supposed to haue maryed hire shamfully & vnworthily, for enchesoun þat he thought to haue alle here 12 lande, as he had & heelde before þat tyme, but he was disceyued; ffor this Curan was Hauelokes sone, þat was Kyng of Kirkeland in Denmark, as ye shul here. ¶ Hauelok,² þat was Kyng of Kirkelonde in Denmark, spousyd þe Kyngis doughtir of þis londe, 16 whiche was ryght eyre of þis lande, þat men callyd Gildeburghe, & he begat on hire this forseide Curan, whiche was his eyre. And whan Hauelok vnderstode þat he shulde deye, he betoke his sone Curan to a lorde of his londe to kepe, þat he louyd & trustid 20 moche vnto; and þat this lorde shulde mary his sone Curan to some worthi gentylwoman, whan he were come to age, & to make kym Kyng of his landis. This lorde grauntyd hym þat he wolde so do, & toke þe childe *with* hym, & kepte hym. ¶ But aftyrward, 24 this lorde bethouhte hym how he myght put this childe Curan from his enerytaunce, and þat alle the lordis of Denmark dred hym, & many of them had hym in gret fauour; and therupon, he leete crowne hym-selfe Kyng of aH Denmark, and toke homage &

¹ leaf 48.

² Marginal rubric: How Curan, þat was Hauelokis sone, kyng^t of Denmark, weddid þe Kyngis douhetir of Ingelond.

feaute of aH þe lordis & peple of Denmark. And anon he betoke
 Curan, þat was riht eneritour to þe crowne of Denmark, vnto a
 fissher, prevely, þat no man vndirstode, & gaue þe fissher gret good,
 & also chargyd hym, on payne of deethe, þat he shulde take þe 4
 childe Curan *with* hym, & priuely drowne hym in þe see, so þat
 he may neuer se nor here more of hym. The fissher seyde it
 shulde be doon, & toke þe childe priuely *with* hym. And whan he
 was in þe brode see, & purposid to doon this deede, he had gret pite 8
 & compassioun vpon this young childe, and thouht it were gret pite
 to drowne so faire a childe; & so he *withdrew* his euil purpose, &
 saued þe childis lyfe, & toke þe younge childe *with* hym, ¹and
 forsoke þe lande, & dwellyd in another countre *with* þe childe, for 12
 drede off þe Kyng þat vsurped þe lande. And this man kept tys²
 childe tyl he was wox moche, and of a resonable age; and alwey
 þe childe callyd hym 'fadyr,' wenyng to hym þat he had so be;
 tyl vpon a tyme, tis² fissher callid þe childe vnto hym, and tolde 16
 hym how he was nat his fadyr, but seide þat Hauelok, whiche was
 Kyng of Denmark, was his fadyr; & whan he shulde dye, he
 prayde a lorde of his londe to kepe his sone Curan; "& whan ye
 were come to natural age, to make yow Kyng of þe lande, as 20
 rightful enerytour. And he toke yow to me, & gaue me gret good,
 & also charged me, vp payne of deede, þat I shulde drowne yow in
 þe see. and I fulfillyd nad his *commaundment*, but sparid youre
 lyf, & kept yow hidyr-to *with* tho goodis þat he gaue me; & *perfor* 24
 I durste not abide in þat londe, but fledde *with* yow in-to this
 countre; for he regneth nõw for kyng of Denmarke, & vsurpeth þe
 crowne. And *perfor* I counseile yow to drawe to som pryncis
 courte, þat ye may haue eyde & helpe to enerite youre londe ayen." 28
 ¶ Than this young Ientylman thankid this fissher of his gret
 charite, & toke his leue, & cam to þe Kyngis courte of Ingelond,
 and was a sqwiler in þe kechyn: þe whiche kynge þat regnyd tho
 in Ingelonde was Edelf, whiche vsurpyd þe lande wrongfully, from 32
 his owne cosyn, whiche was kyng Adelbrightis doughtir, & riht
 eneritur, þat men callyd ArgentyH. ¶ And þis Kyng Edelf
 thouhte to mary her shamfully & vnworthely, for enchesoun to
 haue her londe from her; & so he maryed her to Curan, þat was 36
 sqwiler of his kechyn. ¶ And than Curan toke his wife ArgentiH,
 & went in-to Denmarke, and as God wolde, whiche helpith aH
 good men in ther right, conueyed Curan & his wife to þe howse of

¹ leaf 48, back. Lambeth MS. 84.² sic MS.

a worthi knyhte of Denmarke, þe whiche lovyd wel þe fadyr of þe seide Curan. And whan this Curan was come thedyr, þe knyhte was glad to holde hym, because þis Curan was so hye a man of stature, 4 & wel made *with*-alle; & þe knyght comaundid his serwauntis to make hym & his wife goode chere; for they semyd onest foke. And aftyr, whan þe nyght was come, þei were asyngned where þei shulde lye. And in þe dede tyme of þe nyght, whan alle folkis 8 were a-bedde, & be lyklyode a-slepe, there was a gret lyght in þere chambre, whiche oon of þe knyghtis seruauntis aspied, & preuely went vnto þe chambre to wete what yt ment. & whan he come thedyr, he sye a wonder grete stre^lme of lyhte com from þe mannys 12 side, & also a-noper from þe womannys side, þei beyng fast aslepe, þat alle þe chambyr was lyght *pere-with*. And þis man yede softly vnto his maistryr þe knyht, & tolde hym what he sye. & þe knyht rose hym vp & yede thedyr, & fonde yt sothe as his man had seide. 16 & þe knyht maruelyd sore what it shulde mene, & yede a-yen to his bed, & musid sore ther-on. ¶ And on þe morw þe knyht arose, & sent for this man Curan; and anon þe knyht axyd hym what man he was; who was his fadyr; & where he was born. Than Curan seyde: 20 “syrre, I wot nevyr where I was born, nor who was my fadyr, but be þe seyng of a man þat was a fissher, whiche kept me vp of yowthe; & I knew none oþer but þat he was my fadyr. & whan I was growen moche, & vndirstode resoun, he seide to me that he 24 was not my fadyr, but seyde þat þe Kyng of Denmark was my fadir, þat men callyd Havelok, & Gildeburghe my modyr, whiche was þe Kyngis douhtir of Ingelond. & whan my fadyr shulde dye, he betoke me to kepe to a lorde of his, & prayde hym þat he shulde 28 make me kyng, whan I come to lawful age. & that lorde betoke me to a man þat was a fissher, & gaue hym gret good, & also chargyd hem, vp payne of dethe, þat he shulde drowne me in þe see; but þe man, of pite, cowde not fynde it in his herte.” Thanne seyde 32 þe knyht: “if it be thus, I shal knowe be sertayne fetures & tokenys þat is on youre body, þe whiche þat I & othyr knyhtis were comaundid to se & take hede of, when ye were ryht younge.” Than Curan stripte hym nakyd; & anon þe knyht sye þe markis 36 on his body þat he knew ful wel. And than þe knyht knelyd doun & did hym worship, & seide, ‘forsothe he was þe sone of his wurshipful lorde Havelok, & rihtful ayre of Denmarke.’ And in alle þe hast, þe knyght wrote vnto dyuerse lordis of þat lande,

seyng, þat 'Curan, þe sone of Haueloke, & rihtful eyre, was founde, & was *with* hym, in his place.' ¶ And whan þe lordys herde this, & vndirstode þe trowthe, anon thei assemblyd a gret power, & cam thedyr, & did homage & fewte vnto hym. and aftyr 4 þat, thei yede & gaue batayle vnto þe Kyng þat vsurpyd, whom þe seyde Curan slew, his own hondis. And aftyr þat, thei crownyd hym Kyng of Denmarke, & so he enjoyed his enheritaunce. ¶ And in þe nexte yere folwyng, this seid Curan cam in-to 8 Ingelonde, & conqueryd his wives lande, and slowe Kyng Edelfe in þe xx. yere of his regne. In whois tyme deyde Seint Ethelburga, þe first abbes of Berkyng, In þe yere of oure Lorde v^olxviij. And this Edelf was þe last kyng of þe trew Brytouns. 12

Anno domini v^olxx: Regned Curan, þat was ¹Hauelokis son, Kyng of Denmark, whiche reynyd be his wives titel, & not be his owne. *Capitulum lxxvij.*

Aftyr Kyng Edelf, þat was þe laste kyng of þe trewe Brytouns, 16 Regned Curan In þe yere of oure Lorde. v^olxx. & pis Curan was Hauelokis sone, Kyng of Denmark, þat was a Dane; & he regned be his wivis title, & nat be his owne; & he was a good man, & wel rewlyd þe lande. And he ne regned but 20 iiij. yeris, for þe Saxons & þe Danys slewe hym; & þat was gret hurte to alle Britayne; ²& so he deyde withoute yssu; & þe Britouns bare his body to Stonehenge, & þere entered hym *with* moche solempnite. 24

II.

[*The Quarrel between Richard II & his uncle, the Duke of Gloster.*]

³ In þe xx^{ti} yer Kyng Rychard heelde a grete feste at Westmenstre. At whiche feste arruyed þe Sowdyours þat had kepte a tounse callyd Breste, & satte at dyner in þe halle, whiche tounse Kyng Rycharde had delyueryd by appoyntemente to þe Duke of 28 Brytayne, wherof bygan moche trouble & sorwe, whiche dured vnto Kyng Richardys dethe. And aftyr dyner þe Duke of Gloucetre, his vncl, Sir Thomas of Woodstoke, sayde to þe Kyng: "Syre! haue ye not seen tho felawes þat sate at dyner in youre halle?" 32 and þe Kyng demaunded who they were: and he sayde, "they been

¹ leaf 49, back. ² Rubric in margin: This kyng deyde *withoute* yssu.

³ Slip of vellum between leaf 181 and 182, written on one side only. At the top of leaf 182 is "John Stoughton is a littel wantton."

your folke þat haue seruyd yow, & ben come from Breste, & now wote not what to doo, & haue ben euyl payde." Thenne þe Kyng sayde þat they shal be payde. Then seyde þe Duke in a grete
4 furye: "Syre! ye oughte fyrste to put your body in deuore to gete a tounne or a Castel be feet of warre vpon your enemyes, er ye shulde selle or delyuer ony townes þat your predecessours, Kynges of Englund, haue goten & conquestyd." To þe whiche þe Kyng
8 ausweryd ryght angrely: "how saye ye that?" Thenne þe Duke sayd it ageyn. Then þe Kyng byganne to wex wrothe, & sayde: "wene ye þat I be a marchaunt or a foole, to selle my londe? by Saint Johan Baptist, nay! but trouthe it is, þat oure Cosyn of
12 Brytayne hathe rendryd & payde to vs þe somme þat my predecessours hadde lente vpon þe sayde tounne of Breste; and sith he haue payed, it is reasoun þat this tounne be delyueryd to hym ageyne." Thus beganne þe wrathe bytwene þe Kyng & his vncl.
16 And aftyrward, at Arondele, was a Counseylle of certeyne lordes, as þe Duke of Gloucetre, þe Archebisshop of Canterbury, þe Erles of Arondele, Warwyk & Marchalle, & oper, for to refourme þe rewle aboute þe Kyng; whyche lordes promysed eche to abyde by oper,
20 & so departed. And anone aftyr, þe Erle Marchal, whiche was Captayne of Calays, bewrayed, & lete þe King haue knowleche of all þere counselle.

III.

[*The Deposition of Richard II & Election of Henry IV. The Prophecy that Richard II should be destroyed by a Toad.*]

¹Than in the begynnyng of þe xxiiijth yer, the lordys of þe
24 reavme, with þe Comouns assent, chose this worthy lorde, Syr Herry Bolyngbrook, Erle of Derby, Duke of Herforde & Duke of Lancastre be ryht lyne & herytage, and for his myhtful manhood, þat þe peple fonde in hym before al othyr, they chose hym, &
28 made hym Kyng of Engelond amonges hem, And put asyde Richarde, Erle of Cambrygge, whiche was sone to Edmunde Langeley, Duke of York. And this sayde Richarde, Erle of Cambrygge, had weddyd Anne, þe douhetyr & Ayre of Roger
32 Mortymer, Erle of Marche & of Wulster, whiche was proclamyd, in þe ix. yer of þe regne of Kyng Richarde, heyre apparaunt to þe Crowne of Engelond aftyr Kyng Richarde. For þe sayde Roger was sone & Ayre to Edmunde Mortymer, and to Philyppe,

¹ leaf 185, one-third down. Lambeth MS. 84.

douhetyr & Ayre of Sir Lyonel, þe .iij. sone of Kyng Edward þe .iij.; And thus was þe Ayre Ieneral put asyde. ¹Also ther was, yn Kyng Richardys courte, a worshipful clerke þat was an Astronomier, whiche knewe & vndyrstode be his counnyng þat Kyng Richarde ⁴ shulde be slayne & destroyed be a Toode. And vpon a tyme, he warnyd þe Kyng therof, & bad hym 'be ware of Todys; for a Toode shulde destroye hym;' and than þe Kyng thouhte & mervayled in his mynde, how þat shulde be. And vpon a tyme he ordeyned ⁸ & made a ryal feest in Cristmasse, & comaundyd al his lordys to come thedyr. And they cam thedyr, euery lorde in þe gayest desgysyng þat they coude devyse. And among hem alle, Sir Herry, Erle of Derby, cam in a Gounne broydneyd ²al abowte with Toodyys. ¹² & whan Kyng Richard syhe yt, he remembryd þe prophecii of Toodyys þat his clerke tolde hym, þat he shulde be destroyed by. And euer aftyr he had this Herry, Erle of Derby, yn Ielwsy & mystruste, supposyng þat yt shulde be he þat shulde destroy hym; ¹⁶ & fayne þe Kyng wolde an had hym destroyed; but at þe last he exiled hym for x yer.

IV.

[*The Murder and Burial of King Richard II. His Vision and his Treasure.*]

³ ¶ In þe same yere, Syr Barnarde Brokeis, Sir Iohn Selly, Syr Iohn Mawdelyn, & Syr William Ferby, were takyn & sette in ²⁰ þe Toure, & aftyr, by iugement, were hanged & by-hedyd, & ther hedys sette on London Brigge. ¶ And whan Kyng Herry sawe þat these lordys thus had rysen, & assemblyd grete peple to haue put hym to dethe, & for to restore Kyng Richard ageyne to ²⁴ his crowne & to his Reame, he thoughte teschue suche peryls.⁴
 — ¶ And a-none he commaunded Sir Pyers of Exston, þat he shulde goo streyte to Pounfreyte, & delyuer þe worlde of Kyng Rychard. ¶ And so hē departed fro þe Kyng, and wente to þe Castel of ²⁸ Pountfrete, where-as Kyng Richard was in prisoune, þe whiche was sette at table for to dyne. ¶ And anon aftyr, Sir Pyers cam in-to þe chambre where þe Kyng was; and he broughte viij. men with hym, & eche man an axe in his honde. ¶ And whan ³² þe Kyng sawe Sir Pyers with his felausshippe entre in-to þe chambre defensably arayed, he shoof þe table from hym, and

¹ Side rubric: A prophesi of Kyng Richards dethe. ² leaf 185, back.

³ leaf 186.

⁴ Side rubric: How kynge Richard deyde.

sprange in-to þe myddys of them, & raughte an axe out of one
theyr hondes, and sette hymself valyauntly at defence. ¶ And
hym-self defendyng, he slewe foure of þe eyghte. And whanne þe
4 sayde Peers sawe þe Kyng so defende hym, he was soore abashed
& gretly aferde, and sterte vpon þe place where-as Kyng Richard
was wonte to sytte. & as Kyng Richard foughte & defendyd
hym-self goynge bacwarde, the sayde Syr Peers smote hym on þe
8 hede *with* his axe, þat he fylle to grounde. ¶ Than cryed Kyng
Richard “God, mercy!” & thenne he gaue hym a-*noþer* stroke
on þe hede, & soo he deyde. ¶ And thus was this noble Kyng
slayne and murthred. And whan þe Kyng was deede, þe knyghte
12 þat had thus slayne hym, sette hym down be þe deede bodye of
Kyng Richard, & byganne to wepe, saynge: “Allas! what thyng
haue we doone? we haue putte to dethe hym þat hath been oure
Kyng & souerayne lorde, two & twenty yere! Now haue I lost
16 myn honoure! I shal neuer come in place, but I shal be
reproched, for I haue doone ayenst myn honour.” ¶ After this,
moche peeples in Englonde, & other countrees also, wolde not
beleue þat Kyng Richard was deede, but sayde þat he was alyue
20 many yerys aftyr. ¶ Wherefor Kyng Herry, whan he wist verryly
þat he was deede, he leete cere hym in þe best maner, & *with*
dyuers spices and baumes, & in a fayre cheste, cloyd alle in lynyn
clothe, saaf his visage, whiche was lefte opyn, þat men myht see
24 & know his persone from alle othir men. ¶ And thus he was
broughte thurgh London to Powlus; & his body was leyd on a
Charyotte coueryd *with* black, and iiij. baners, whereof ij. were of
þe armes of Saint George, & ij. of þe armys of Seint Edward; &
28 & þere were an C. men clothed in blak, eche beryng a torche;
¶ And þe Cyte of London had thyrty men in whyte, eche beryng
also a torche; and þe visage of þe dede body was leyde opyn, þat
euery man myght see and knowe þat it was his body, & þat he
32 was soo deede; for many men beleued it not. ¶ And from
Powlus he was had to Westmenster, & þere he hadde his hole
masse, & diryge also. ¶ And fro thens he was caryed to þe
Frerys of Langley, & þere he was buryed: on whois sowe God
36 haue mercy! Amen! ¶ The comyn oppynyon of Englysshmen is,
þat Kyng Richard deyde not ¹aftyr þe maner a-foresayde, but þat
he deyde & was famynyed, & lakkyd bothe mete and drynke, & yet
he was dayle seruyd þereof lyke a Kyng, but he myht not towche

¹ leaf 186, back.

yt, but only see hyt, & perefors his [hunger] was þe more. And on a tyme, as he lay on his bed of estaate, hym thouhte þere come a fayre womman vnto hym, and brought a kercher ful of white Rosys, & bestruyd aH his bed therwith; & he fed hym of the Rosys, þat his 4 gret hungre was withdrawe; & whan he woke, hym thoughte his apyted was wel satsyfied, & þerby his lyf contynuyd a day or tweyne the lenger. And some sayeth thus, That whan he herde saye þat his lordys, þe Duke of Excetre, þe Duke of Surrey, þe 8 Erle of Salysbury, & þe oper lordis were deede, he was so angry & so sorowful þat he swore þat he wolde neuer ete mete, & soo abode iiij. dayes withoute etyng, as they saye. And whan Kyng Herry vndirstode þat he wolde not ete, he sente to hym ij prelatys for to 12 comforte hym; And whan they wère come, he confessyd hym to one of them, þe whiche gaue hym in penaunce, þat he shulde ete his mete. And whan he supposed to haue etyn, þe mete myght not goo doune ne auale in-to his stomake, ffor þe conduytys of 16 his bodye were shronken to-geder. And than sayde þe noble Kyng Rychard, 'þat it was doon, & þat he must nedis deye.' But certys, wheper he deyde this way or þat other, certainly dede he is, & was buryed at Langley: God haue mercy on his soule! 20 Amen! And then was Kyng Herry peasbly King. Then he fonde in Kyng Richardes tresory nyne honderde thousande noblys, withoute Iewellys and vessellys whiche was as moche worthe, or more. And þere was founden in þe Tresorers kepyng of Englonde, 24 an honderde and fyfty thousand noblys, & Iewels & vessell as moche or more: and thus Kyng Herry had alle his goodys. Aboute this same tyme, þe Duke of Orleauce sente an herode of armys with lettres vnto Kyng Herry, by which he chalengyd for 28 to fyght with hym withynne lystes at Burdeux, or in some oper metely place, with an C gentylmen withoute reproche, ageynste as meny gentlemen withoute reproche. wherto þe ¹King answeyrd ageyne by lettres worshipfully, rehersyng þat at suche tyme as 32 it shulde plesse hym, he wolde come with suche nombre as it apperteyneth to a Kyng, and conquere his ryght; at whiche tyme he shulde be answeyrd atte fulle; & so þe mater fynysshed.¹

¹⁻¹ This is in the margin.

V.

[*The Causes of the Battle of Shrewsbury, A.D. 1403.*]

1 ¶ And than Syr Thomas Percy was Iugged to be dede, pat is
to sey, drawe & hangyd, and his hede smytyn of, at Shrewes-
bury, & his hede to be set on London Brygge, for his fals tresone ;
4 for he causyd þe gret devisioun betwene the Kyng and Syr Herry
Percy ; for þe Kyng wolde an had pees, & so wolde Syr Herry
Percy ful fayne ; But Syr Thomas Percy went betwene them, &
bare fals talys, othyrwyse than they sayde or ment, & causyd that
8 batayle. Vnde *versus* : Praxedis taurus nomine campo Blewyk.

M. quetuor C. ter .I.² obit certamine Percy.

¶ Also anoper princypal cause was : what tyme þat Syr Herry
Derby was exilyd be Kyng Richarde, he cam ayen out of Fraunce,
12 & entryd vp in-to Engelond at Rauensport in Yorkshyre ; & pere
cam ayenst hym, to put hym of, Syr Herry Percy, othyrwise callyd
Syr Herry Hote-spour. but Syr Herry Derby was sworyn pere to
hym & to othyr lordys, þat he shulde make no chalange vnto þe
16 Crowne, but only vnto his enerytaunse, þe Dukedom of Lancastre ;
& vppon þat othe they suffryd hym to go fourthe. And than
aftyр þat, Syr Herry Derby toke vppon hym þe Crowne. and whan
they vndyrstode þat, Syr Herry Hotspur cam to þe Kyng to
20 Westmenstyr, and seyde : “Syr, this was not couienaut nor
promise.” “What seyest thow, horsson ?” quod the Kyng ; &
stert to hym, & gaue hym a gret buffet. “Wel,” quod Syr Herry
Hotspur, “this shal be þe shrewdest bofet þat euer thow yovyst.”
24 & streyte he toke his horse, and rode home into his cowntre ; &
here-vpon began the batel of Srewesbury.

VI.

[*King Henry V : his Riot in his Youth : his Change when
made King.*]

3 [A]ftyр the dethe of Kyng Herry the Fourthe, Regnyd his
sone Herry of Monmothe, whiche was born at Monmothe in
28 Walyes, whiche was Herry the Fyfte aftyr þe conquest. And he
began to Regne on þe xxj^{ti}. day of Marche, In þe yer of our lorde

¹ on leaf 187.

² ? for 1403, July 23. Battle fought on St. Praxed's day, near a manor house named Berwick.—J. H. Wylie, who suggests 'ter I,' thrice one, for the t .I. or t .I. of the MS.

³ leaf 191. Lambeth MS. 84.

M. CCCC xij; And in þe same yer he was crownyd Kyng of Englon[d] at Westmenster on the nynthe day of Aprill; and he was a worthy kyng, & a gracious man, & a worthy conquerour. ¶ And before he was Kyng, what tyme he regnyd Prince of Walyes, he 4 fyllē & yntendyd gretly to ryot, and drew to wylde company; & dyuers Ientylmen and Ientylwommen folwyd his wylle & his desire at his commaundment; & lykewyse aH his meyne of his housolde was attendyng & plesyed with his gouernaunce, out-sept 8 iij. men of his howsolde, whiche were ful hevy and sory of his gouernaunce; and they counseyld hym euer contrary, and fayne wolde an had hym to doon wele, & forsake ryot. and þerfor he hatyd them iij. most of al men in his house, vnto þe tyme þat his 12 fadyr was dede. And thanne he beganne to regne for Kyng, & he remembryd þe gret charge & wourship þat he shulde take vpon hym; And anon he comaundyd al his peple þat were attendaunt to his mysgouernaunce afore tyme, & al his housolde, to 16 come before hym. And whan they herde þat, they were ful glad, for they subposyd þat he wolde a promotyd them in-to gret offices, & þat they shulde a stonde in gret favyr & truste with hym, & neerest of counsel, as they were afore tyme. & trustyng here- 20 vpon, they were þe homlyer & bolder vnto hym, & nothyng dred hym; ynsomoche, þat whan they were come before hym, some of them wynkyd on hym, & some smyld, & thus they made nyse semblaunte vnto hym, meny one of them. But for al þat, þe 24 Prynce kept his countynaunce ful sadly vnto them, And sayde to them: “Syr, ye are þe peple þat I haue cherysyd & mayntynyd in Ryot & wylde gouernaunce; and here I geue yow aH in commaundment, & charge yow, þat from this day forward þat 28 ye forsake al mysgouernaunce, & lyve aftyr þe lawys of Almyhety God, & aftyr þe lawys of oure londe. And who þat doyth contrarye, I make feythful promys to God, þat he shal be trewly ponisid accordyng to þe lawe, withoute eny favour or grace.” And 32 chargyd them, [on] payn of deth, þat they shulde neuer geve hym comforte nor counsel to falle to ryot no more; for he had takyn a charge on hym, þat alle his wittis & power were to lytyl, withoute þe helpe of God & good gouernaunce. And so he rewardyd 36 them richely with gold & syluer, & othyr Iuelys, and chargyd them alle to voyde his housolde, & lyve as good men, & neuer more to come in his presence, be-cause he woold haue noon occasioun nor remembraunce wherby he shulde falle to ryot ayen. And thus he 40

voydyd al his housolde, savyng tho iij. per^lsonys pat he hatyd most, whiche were ful sory of his gouernaunce; & them he lovyd aftyrward best, for pere good counsaile and good gouernaunce, & 4 made them aftyrward gret lordys; And thus was lefte in his housolde nomo but tho iij. men. And menyone of them pat were eydyng & consentyng to his wyldnes, fyl aftyrward to gret myschefe and sorw.

8 ¶ Than Kyng Herry sent to Dame Kateryn Swynfor, Countesse of Herforde, whiche was tho a wel-gouerned woman, & kept pe most worshipful housolde, & pe best rewlyd pat was within pe londe; and to her he sent for men pat were of good disposicyoun; 12 & she sent hym xij Ientylnen of sad gouernaunce. and so this gracious Kyng forsoke al wyldnes, and toke hym to good gouernaunce, and kept streytly his lawys with ryghtwisnes & Iustise. For, in pe first yere of his regne, ther were ij knyhtis at 16 gret debate: pe tone was of Lankestyr-shire, & pe tothyr of York-shire; & they made them as stronge of people as they cowde, & scarmysshid togedyr; and men were slayne & hurte on bothe partyes. ¶ And whan pe Kyng herde therof, he sent for 20 them: & they cam to pe Kyng to Wyndelysore, as he was goyng to his dyneer. and whan the Kyng vndirstode that they were come, he commaundyd them to come before him; And than he axyd them, ‘whois men they were.’ and they seyde, his lege men. 24 “and whois men be tho pat ye haue a-reysyd up to fyhte for youre quarel?” and they seyde, ‘his men.’ “& what awtoryte or comaundement had ye, to reyse vp my men or my people, to fyght & sle eche othyr for your quarel? yn this ye ar worthy to dye.” 28 And they coude not askewse them, but besowhte pe Kyng of his grace. And than pe Kyng seyde, “be pe feith pat he owte to God & to Seint George, but yf they agreyd & accordyd, be pat tyme pat he had etyn his owystrys, they shulde be hangyd bothe two or 32 evyr he sopyt.” And than they yede a-parte, & agreyd be themselfe, and cam in ayen whan pe Kyng had etyn his owistris. And than pe Kyng sayde: “Syr, how stonyth yt with yow?” And than they knelyd downe, and seyde: “yf it plese your good 36 grace, we be agreyd & accordyd.” And than the Kyng seyde, ‘be the feythe pat he owte to God & to Seint George, pat & evyr they made eny more Insurreccioun or dethe of his lege peple, they, or ony othyr lordys withynne his reawme, withowte his

¹ leaf 191, back.

commaundment, whatsomeeuer they were, they shulde dye, acording to pe lawe.' And so, aftyr *pat*, ther durst no lorde make no party nor stryf; and thus he beganne to kepe his lawis and Iustise, & therfor he was belouyd & bedred.

VII.

[*The Battle of Agincourt.*]

¹ ¶ Than pe morwe roos, pe day gan sprynge, & pe Kyng be good avyce leet araye his batayle & his weengys; & chargyd euery man to keepe hem hole to-gedrys, & preyde hem alle to been of good cheer. And whanne they were redy, he askyd what tyme of 8 pe day it was, & they sayde prime. Than seyde oure Kyng: "now is it good tyme, for alle Engelond prayeth for vs. And in remembraunce *pat* God dyed on pe Crosse for vs, let euery man make a crosse on pe erthe, & kys hyt, & in tokenyng *pat* we wole 12 radyr dye on this erthe than flee." ¶ And whan pe King of Fraunce sawe oure Kyng & his peeple fal down to pe erthe, he axyd: "what meen they now?" & a Frenche knyght stode by, & seyde, "forsothe, Syre, they purpose hem this day to dey on *pat* 16 grounde, rathir than to flee." And than oure Kyng, *with* alle his peple, roos hym vp ayen; and than he seyde *with* an hye voyce, "In pe name of Almyhty God and of Seint George, Avaunt baner! & Seint George, this day thyn helpe!" And therwith pe 20 Trumppetys blew vp. ¶ And than pe Frenche men come prykyng down, as they wolde haue ovirryden alle oure meyne. But God & oure Archerys made hem sone to stomble. for oure archeris shot neuer oon arwe amys, but it persshid & brouht to grounde man or 24 hors; for they shottyn *pat* day for a waiour; And oure stakys made hem ouer-terve, eche on othyr, *pat* they lay on hepys. And oure Kyng, *with* his meyne & *with* men of armys, leyde on, for it behovyd hem to fyght *pat* day, his owne handys. & oure good 28 Archerys *pat* lakkyd ² arwys, leyde on *with* stakys. And *pat* day pe Frenche men syhe Seint George in pe eyre ouer pe hoste of pe Englysshe men, fyghtyng ayenst pe Frenche men; and therfor they worship & holde of Seint George, in Engelond, more than in any 32 oper londe. ¶ And thus Almyhti God & Seint George brouht oure enemyes to grounde, & yaf us pe victory *pat* day. And *pere* were slayne of Frensshe men *pat* day in pe feelde of Agyncort xj. Mt., *withoute* prysonerys *pat* were takyn. And ther were noumbryd 36

¹ leaf 194.² leaf 194, back.

pat day of Frensshe men yn þe feelde, mo than Sixti score M^t.
And of Englisshen men but vij. M^t; but God & Seint George pat
day favt for vs. But þe Frensshe men pat were in þe Cyte of
4 Parys, had went pat oure Kyng had been ouer-throuhe a day
before; for þe prekers of þe Frensshe men pat kept þe owte-wacche,
met *with* some of oure Kyngis kartys, & ryfelyd them, & gat out
oure Kyngis koronet, & bare it in-to Parys; & wenyng to them of
8 þe Cite pat oure Kyng had been ouerthrouhe, & bare this koronet
about þe cyte in processiou for ioye. And aftyrward, whan they
syhe þe Frensshemen come home sore woundyd, they marvayled
sore, & askyd them ‘what chere?’ & they seyde, “No som to
12 mors”: we be dede & ouerthrouhe. And than an hewge peepel of
women & oper folke yede thedyr to þe feelde þere þe batayle was,
to beholde whiche party were ouerthrouhe; and they stode vpon
an hylle besydys þe feelde þere þe batayle was. ¶ And whan þe
16 Englisshen hoste syhe this, they had wende pat tho peepel had been
a-noper host of Frensshe men. And anon com tydyngis to oure
Kyng pat þere was a newe batayle of Frensshemen, al in aray,
ordeyned redy to stele on hym. And anon oure Kyng leet krye
20 pat euery man shulde sle his prysoner pat he had take: & pat was
a myghty losse to Engelond, & a gret sorw to Fraunce. and whan
pat was doon, oure Kyng arayed his batayle ayen, redy to fihte
with þe Frensshe men. ¶ And whan þe Frensshmen sawe pat oure
24 men kyllid her prysonerys, than they *withdrew* hem, & brak her
batayle & here aray. And thus oure Kyng, as a worthy conquerour,
had pat day þe victorye in þe feelde of Agyncourt in Pykkardye,
thankyd be God!

28 And than oure Kyng retournyd ayen there þe batayle was, to
se what peepel were dede of Frensshe men, and also of Englisshen
men, or yf ony were hurte pat myht be holpe. And þere were
dede of Frensshe men in þe feelde: þe Duke of Barry, þe Duke
32 of Launsom, þe Duke of Braban, þe Erle of Navern, þe Chief
Counstable of Fraunce, & viij. othir Erlys; & þe Archebisshop of
Saunce; & of good Barouns .C. & mo; & of worthy knyhtis of
gret alliaunce of cote armures, a M & v^c. ¶ And of Englisshen
36 men was dede pat day: þe good Duke of Yorke,¹ Ser Edmunde, &
deyde *without* yssu. And aftyr hym, was made Duke of Yorke
his broderys sone, Richarde, pat ²was sone to Richard, Erle of
Caumbrygge, pat was behedyd at Southamptone, as aftyrward ye

¹ Rubric in margin: ‘there was slayne þe Duke of Yorke.’ ² leaf 195.

shul here more opynly. And also there was dede, þe Erle of Suffolke; & of al oper of Englysshe men, were dede nat passyng xxvj. bodyes, thankyd be God! And this batayle was on a Friday, whiche was Crispines & Crispamanes day, in þe month of Octobre. 4

versus: an Mil C quatuor Synk Domini dato.

henrici terno Regis quin iure paterno.

harflet fest Maurik deuicta que prelia.

crispinum Agencourt nomen, vbi Cristus ei dedit omen. 8

VIII.

[*The Siege of Rouen. Every eldest Son a King on St. Dennis' Eve.*]

¹ ¶ And yn þat tyme þere was a custom in þe Cite of Rone, & also in þe Subarbys þere-of, that on Seint Denys evyn to make a kyng in euery house. And so þe grete heerys of þe subarbis cam to þe seyde Kyng Herry, & besouht hym to take noon displeasure 12 of þere customable vsage. and þe Kyng askyd them what it was. And they answeyrd & seyde 'yt was þe vsage of Roon to make, in euery hous therof, þe eldest sone a kyng on þat nyht.' And anon þe Kyng grauntyd them ther askyng, so þat it were nat doon in 16 despyte of hym. And at Nyhte ther cam woorde to þe Kyng, þat þere were neuer seen so many kyngis to-gedyr in oon place. And anon þe Kyng comaundyd them to be brouht afore hym. And than spake an olde Frenche knyht, and seyde: "I trowe now is þe 20 tyme come þat Rone shalbe won, aftyr þe profecye." And when þe Kyng herd þe knyht thus sey, he askyd hym, 'what was þe profecie.' And þe knyht seyde, 'yf he woold pardon hym, he woold tel hym þe profecie perof.' And tho þe Kyng pardonid 24 hym. ¶ "Syr," quod þe knyht, "this toun of Roon shall neuer be wonne, tyl ther come a Kyng þat shulde be boryn of a woman, And in a Nonnys habyte, & .xxx. kynggis at his retynew, to ley seege ther-to." And there-with þe Kyng seyde: "In verbo tuo 28 relaxabo rethe." And anon he comaundyd everyche of þe kyngis to be set in dyuers garisons ayenst þe Toun. And on þe next day was þe Toun of Roon yolde vp vnto oure Kyng, as ye shul here.

IX.

[*King Henry VI's youth, and the quarrel with the Flemings.*]

²a Nd yn þe yer of our Lorde, M^t CCCC & xxiiij, On þe last 32 day of August, Herry of Wyndelysore, þe sone of Herry þe Fyfthe,

¹ leaf 198, back. Rubric in margin: 'how xxx^{ti} kyngis leyde seege to Roon.'

² leaf 201.

—began to Reyne, when he was but ix monthis of age. ¶ And as
some men sey, on *pat* day of his byrthe, there sat a stronger *with*
pe *parsoun* of *Monmothe*, *pat* prophesied at dyner, seyng on this
4 wyse: “In these xxiiij. ourys passyd, othyr *with-yn* xxiiij. ourys
to come, is born, or shalbe. born, a new Kyng of Engelond, pe
whiche shal begynne his reyne *withynne* pe first yer of his byrthe.”
¶ Than seyde pe tothyr: “*pat* is pe Erle of Marche.” he seyde
8 ayen: “nay, nat so.” than seyde pe tothyr, “what troyst thou *pat*
pere shal fal here-aftyr?” he seyde: “In pe fyrst vij yer of his
Reyne, *pere* shalbe gret aboundaunce of al maner of ffrutys.”
“And what in pe next vij yerys?” he seyde: “*pere* shalbe thre
12 wyse men *pat* shulbe able to gouerne eny reme.” And in pe vj.
yer aftyr, on pe vj day of A Nouembre, Herry pe vj^{te} was
crownyd at Westmenster, of Herry Chychile, Archebisshop of
Cauntirbury, at whois Coronacioun pe sone of pe Duke of
16 *Hostryche*, *with* many *oper*, were made knyhtis. ¶ And in pe
x^{the} yer of his reyne he was crownyd ayen at Parys in Fraunce, of
his vnclē pe Cardina^{ll} of Wynchestre. And in pe yer aftyr *pat*, on
pe xx^{ti} day of Maij, on a Weddenysday, fro pe oure of None to iij.
20 on pe klok at aftyrnoon, ther aperyd a Blasyng sterre in pe firma-
ment, toward pe est, fast be pe Mone.

And in pe yer folwyng, the Dewke of Burgoyne began to meve
werre ayenst Engelond, & wolde an had Caleys. And thedyr was
24 sent in bassetre, pe Duke of Exetyr, *with oper* lordys; & as he cam
homward ayen, his hors doungyd in pe tounne of Poperyng; and
pe Flemyggis rysyn vp, & woolde nat suffyr hym to passe tyl his
men were fayne to bere away his hors dounge, & make clene pe
28 stretys. ¶ And whan pe Duke was come ayen in-to Engelond, he
enformyd pe Kyng & his lordys *perof*; and they were sore amevyd
ther*with*. And anon *Sir* Humfray, Duke of Gloucestre, & *Sir*
!—Thomas Bewfourde, Duke of Exetyr, his brothyr, *with oper* lordys,
32 made a gret power, and yede ayen in-to Flaundrys, & destroyed
moche peple, and brent meny tounnys, & dyd moche harme; & pe
Duke of Burgoyne fled *with* his peple. And pe Duke of Exetyr
yede & brent vp Popryng & meny mo tounnys *pere* abouhte, & dyd
36 moche harme, ynsomoche *pat* they brent pe whete & corne *pat*
grewe in pe feelde: & *pat* was an evyl deade, ffor, sen *pat* tyme
hydyrward, our whete & corn haue be brent in Engelond, yn on
place or in othyr, as it growyth in pe feelde, be pe hande of God;
40 whiche brennyng, men callyth ‘Ablastid or seynte.’ ¶ And at pe

last, þe Duke of Burgoyne was fayne to mede þe Duke of Gloucestre & oure lordis, & gave them a myty thyng of good to turne ayen & seese ther warre, & do no more harme. & than þey turny[d] ayen in-to Engelond. And in despyte of þe Flemynges, an Englysshe man made this Englyshe, yn Baladdys :

(1)

¹⁰ ff stryvys new, & fraudulent falsnesse,
 Who-so lyst to seek out þe cheef occasioun,
 Late hym resorte, & his wey dresse
 In-to Flaundrys, streyght to the Blak Lyoun, 9
 Whiche hathe compassed, be fals collusioun,—
 Lyk in his standard as betyn is the signe,—
 That meved his countre of presumpcioun,
 Ageyn Ingelond frowardly to malygne. 13

(2)

Fyrst to remembre, the deede beryth wytnesse,
 Of his fadyr mowrdred be tresoun,
 How Herry the Fyfthe, of knyghtly gentylnesse,
 Had of his dethe manly compassioun, 17
 Leete digge hym vp, stank for corrupcioun,
 Of a prynce a mercyable sygne. !
 But thou ageynward, be fals decepcioun,
 Madest Flaundrys ageyn Ingelond to malygne. 21

(3)

Thou madist an oothe, be gret avisynesse,
 Vppon the sacrament at Amyas, in that toun,
 Ay to be trewe, voyde of dobylnesse.
 But vndyr the courteyne of fals collusioun, 25
 Thou gat at Araas an absolucioun,
 Thy feyned feythe vp falsly to resygne,
 Causyng Flaundrys, to ther confusioun,
 Ageyn Ingelond prowldly to malygne. 29

(4)

The pees purposyd at Araas in soothnesse,
 Whan our¹ embassatourys, of hool affeccioun,
 Cam goodly thedyr, dyd ther bysinesse,
 To haue concluded a parfyt vnyoun 33

¹ leaf 201, back.

Twyxt to reavmus, for ful conclusioun,
Thou, shewyng there a face ful benyg[n]e,
Vndyr a veyle of fals decepcioun,
Record of Flaundrys, whiche falsly dothe malygne. 4

(5)

What hast thou wonne *with* al thy bysinesse
And alle thy tentys to Caleys caryed down,
Thyn ordynauncys, whiche cost gret rychesse,
Bastyle, and cartys of fagot gret foysoun, 8
Of thy gounnys the dredful noyse and soun ?
Peyse al to-gedyr, *with* many anothyr sygne,
Thy cowardly flyght, cokeney of a chaumpyoun,
Whyche darst not fyght, and canst so wel malygne. 12

X.

[*The Battles of St. Alban's I and II, of Blore Heath, Ludlow,
Northampton, Wakefield, and Wigmore.*]

¹ They dyd moche harme, & many a man was slayne; & they
woolde neuer sese, tyl þe drawbrygge was set on fyre betwene hem.
And aftyrward þere captayn was take in a gardyn in Kent, & þere
16 he was slayne; & aftyr þat, his body was quarteryd; & his hede
smytyn of, & set on Londen Brygge. ¶ And in þe xxiiij. yer of
his regne was þe first batel of Seint Albons; & þere Kyng Herry
was shotte in þe nekke *with* an Arrwe. And ayenst hym cam
20 Rycherde Plantagynet, Duke of Yorke, & Richard Nevel, Erle of
Salisbury, & his sone Richard Nevel, Erle of Warwyk. And þere
was slayne of þe Kingis party, Sir Edmunde, Duke of Somyrset,
þe Erle of Northombyrland, & Lord Clyfford; & Humfray, Duke
24 of Bokyngham, was sore hurte, whom they caryed *with* hem to
Londen.

And in þe xxxvij yer was þe batel at Bloorheth, & of Ludlowe;
& þere was slayne be þe Erle of Salisbury, Lord Avdele, & xiiij.
28 knyghtes new made; & þe Baroun of Dudle was take & led *with*
hem. ¶ And in þe .xxxviiij. yer was þe batayle of Northamptoun;
where cam on þe ton party, Edward þe Erle of Marche, þe eldest
sone of þe Duke of Yorke, & þe Duke of Northfolke, & Richard

¹ leaf 202. It follows the Ballad.

Nevyle, Erle of Warwyk. And þere was slayne of þe Kyngis party be them : Sir Humfray, Duke of Bokyngham, & Sir Iohā Talbot, Erle of S[h]rewisbury, & Vicount Bemounde ; & þere was take Kyng Herry, & brouht *with* them to Londen. 4

And in þe same yer was þe batayle of Wakefeelde, whiche was on þe ton party, þe Duke of Somyrset, þe Erle of Northumbirlond, Lord Clifford, & Sir John Nevyl of Westmerland, which was þe Erles sone of Westmerland. And þere was slayne be them : 8 Richard, Duke of Yorke, Edmunde, Erle of Rutlond, his sone ; & Richarde Nevyle, Erle of Salysbury, was take þere, & behedyd at Pounfret. ¶ And in þe same yer was þe ij^{de} batayle of Seint Albonis : & þere com in on þe ton party : Kyng Herry, þe Duke of 12 Northfolke, þe Erle of Warwyk, Lord Facounbryge, & Vicound Bowser. And ayenst them cam Queen Margeryt, & Prince Edward her sone, [L]ord Wellis, Lord [C]lyfford, & ouerthrewe þe tothyr party, & toke away King Herry from them ; and, be the commaund- 16 ment of þe young Prince, þere was behedyd þere, Lord Bonvyld, & Thomas Kyrel, knyht of Kent ; & they led *with* hem in-to þe Northe, Lord Mountegew, [a]nd toke hym to [p]e Mayre of [Y]orke to kepe. 20

And in þe same yer was þe bateyle of Wygmore, be Edward, Erle of Marche ; wher fled, Sir Herry Bewforde, Duke of Exestyr, & Iamys Ormond, Erle of Wylshyre, & Iasper, Erle of Penbrook ; & his fadyr, Owen Tedder, was takyn, & behedyd at Herforde ; 24 and ther was takyn þe Baroun of Burforde ; & pardounde of his lyfe. An[d] aftyr this, Edward, Erle of Marche, *with* þe lordys on his party, yede to Londen ; and on þe iiij. day of Marche he toke vpon hym þe Regimen, *with* þe wyll of þe lordys & þe comouns 28 bothe.

XI.

[*K. Edward IV (1461) ; the Battle of Barnet (14 April, 1471) ; and the Death of Henry VI (20 June, 1471).*]

¹a Nd aftyr this, In þe yer of our Lord Mt. CCCC lx, And in þe regne of Kyng Herry .xxxix. ; Edward, Erle of Marche, *with* þe lordys *pat* were on his party, yede to Londen ; and on þe .iiij. 32 day of Marche he took vpon hym þe Regimen, *with* þe wyll of þe lordys & þe commouns also. ¶ And aftyr *pat*, Kyng Edward toke

his lordys, & yede Northeward; and on Palmisson evyn was Tauntoun feelde, callyd York feelde. And *pere* was on Kyng Edwardys party, *pe* Duke of Northfolke, *pe* Erle of Warwyk, Lord 4 Acrys of *pe* southe, Lord Faucounbrygge, & many *oper* lordys & knyhtis moo. And ayenst *hym* cam Prynce Edward, Kyng Herryes sone, *pe* Duke of Somyrset, *pe* Erle of Northumbyrlond, whiche was slayne *pere*, & many *oper* lordis & knyhtes also. And 8 King Herry, with Queen Mergeret, lay in York; & *pey* toke *pe* Prince her sone, & be mydnyght they were fledde to Berewyk; & they *yaf* *pat* toun to *pe* Scottis, to haue socour & helpe of them, whiche toun was Englysshe befor. ¶ And thus Kyng Edward, *pe* 12 sone of Richard Plantagenet, Duke of York, ouercam his enemyes, & put them to flyght, & returnyd ayen to Londen, & *pere* he was crownyd at Westmester, ryghtful Kyng of Engelond & of Fraunce, Castylle, & Legyoun. ¶ And sone aftyr, he weddyd Dame Elysa- 16 beth, *pe* Erle Ryuers douhtyr, on whom he begat, Elysbeth, Marie, Cicile, Edwarde Prince, Margarete, Richard, Duke of York & of Northfolke, Anne, George.

And aftyr this, Herry, *pat* was Kyng, was take in Yorkshire, 20 in *pe* Abbey of Furnes; & put in *pe* Toure of Londen. ¶ And aftyr *pat*, *pere* aperyd in *pe* firmament a gret sterre, *pat* *yaf* out vij stremys, whiche synified gret sorw, & mysche[f] *pat* fylle aftyrward; & also ther wer sene in *pe* Temys at Londen, many whyrlepolys, & 24 anoper tyme a whale, *pat* signyfyed not good. For aftyrward fylle gret devisyoun betwene *pe* Kyng & his lordys; & *pey* kept a gret batayle on Estyr day, whiche is callyd 'Barnet Feeld.' & *pere* was slayne Richard Nevyle, Erle of Warwik, & Markys Montegew, his 28 brothir; & *pe* Erle of Oxynford fled. And from thens *pe* Kyng yede to Tewkysbery; & *pere* was slayn, Edward, *pe* sone of Kyng Herry; & Queen Margarete, his modyr, was take, whiche were come out of Fraunce. And thus Kyng Edward ouercam all his enemyes, 32 thankyd be God! And in alle *pese* batayles, was *pe* sone ayenst *pe* fadyr, and brother aye[n]st brother. ¶ And anon aftyr, deyde Kyng Herry in *pe* Toure of Londen; & is beryed at Chercheshey. And he foundyd *pe* Coleges of Etoun & of Cambrygge, callyd *pe* 36 'newe Colege': on whois soule, God haue mercy! Amen!

And aftyr this, Kyng Edward yed ouer beyon the se into Fraunce, & chalengyd Gascoyne & Gyen. And *pe* Kyng of Fraunce was fayne to desyre trewys with *hym*, & agreyd to pay yerly to 40 oure Kyng, X M^l. li. for Gascoyne & Gyen: & he payd it long

after. And in *pat* Iorney our Kyng lost many a man *pat* fylle to
 þe lust of women, & wer brent be them; & *pere* membrys rotyd
 away, & þey dyed. ¶ And aftyr *þat*, ther fylle a gret dissese in
 Engelond callyd þe ‘*stych*e,’ *þat* moche peep^e deyde sodeynly 4
þerof. And also an *oper* dissese reyned aftyr *þat*, callyd þe ‘*filyx*,’
þat neuer was seen in Engelond before; & peple deyde hogely
 therof iij yer togedyr, *in* on place or *oper*. And aftyr *þat*, ther
 bred a Raven on Charyng Crosse at Londen; & neuer was seen 8
 noone brede *pere* before. & aftyr *þat*, cam a gret dethe of Pesti-
 lence, *þat* lastyd iij. yer; & peple dyed myhtely in euery p[^l]ace,
 man, woman & chyld: on whois soulys, God haue mercy!
 Amen! [*end.*]

APPENDIX TO H.

ALPHABETICAL LIST OF THE BATTLE ABBEY ROLL OF 371
NAMES OF NORMAN KNIGHTS. [See p. 535-537].

[Harl. MS. 53, collated with Lambeth 6.]

	Abvile	BaywaH (29) ¹	Bruce (58)	Colvile (86)
	Achard	Beauchamp	Budler	Comyn
	Akeny	Beaumeis	Buket	Corbet
4	Amondevile	Beler	Burdet	Cornor
	Anney	Belet	Burle	Costentyn
	Arcy	Berard	BurneH	Cosyn
	Arvile	Berevile	BusseH	CoudreH
8	Ascher ¹	Bereward	Bussey	Courthouse
	Asprevile	Bernevile	Butevile	Crecy
	Aubeny	Berry	Butteler	CrieH
	Aubray	Beygnard ³	Butvileyn (68)	Cunly
12	Audeny	Bigot		Curecy
	Audevile	Birset	Camois	Curly
	AueneH	Bleis	Candrey	Curteis
	Auerenges	BloundeH	Cannevile	Curteneis ⁴
16	Ayelard (16)	Bluet	Cardevile	Curthose
		Boner	Carevile	Curty (102)
	Bagot	Bontvile	Chalenges	
	Banaster	Boynet	Chalurs	Dalamare
20	Bardulf	Brachet	Chambreleyn	Danstervile
	Baret	Bracy	ChameH	Darcy
	Barevile	Brassard	CharneH	DariH
	Barry	Bratet	Chastelleyn	Despenser
24	Bars	Bret	Chaucer *	Deynecourt
	Baskervile	Breuse	Chaundos	DrutaH
	Basset	Brian	Chene ¹	DucreH
	Bastard	Bricourt	Cheyne	Duket
28	Baucan	Britoun	Clare	Dulapenne
	Baynard ² (28)	Brok (57)	ClareH (85)	Duredent (113)

¹ om. L.

² Barnard L.

³ Boigmard L.

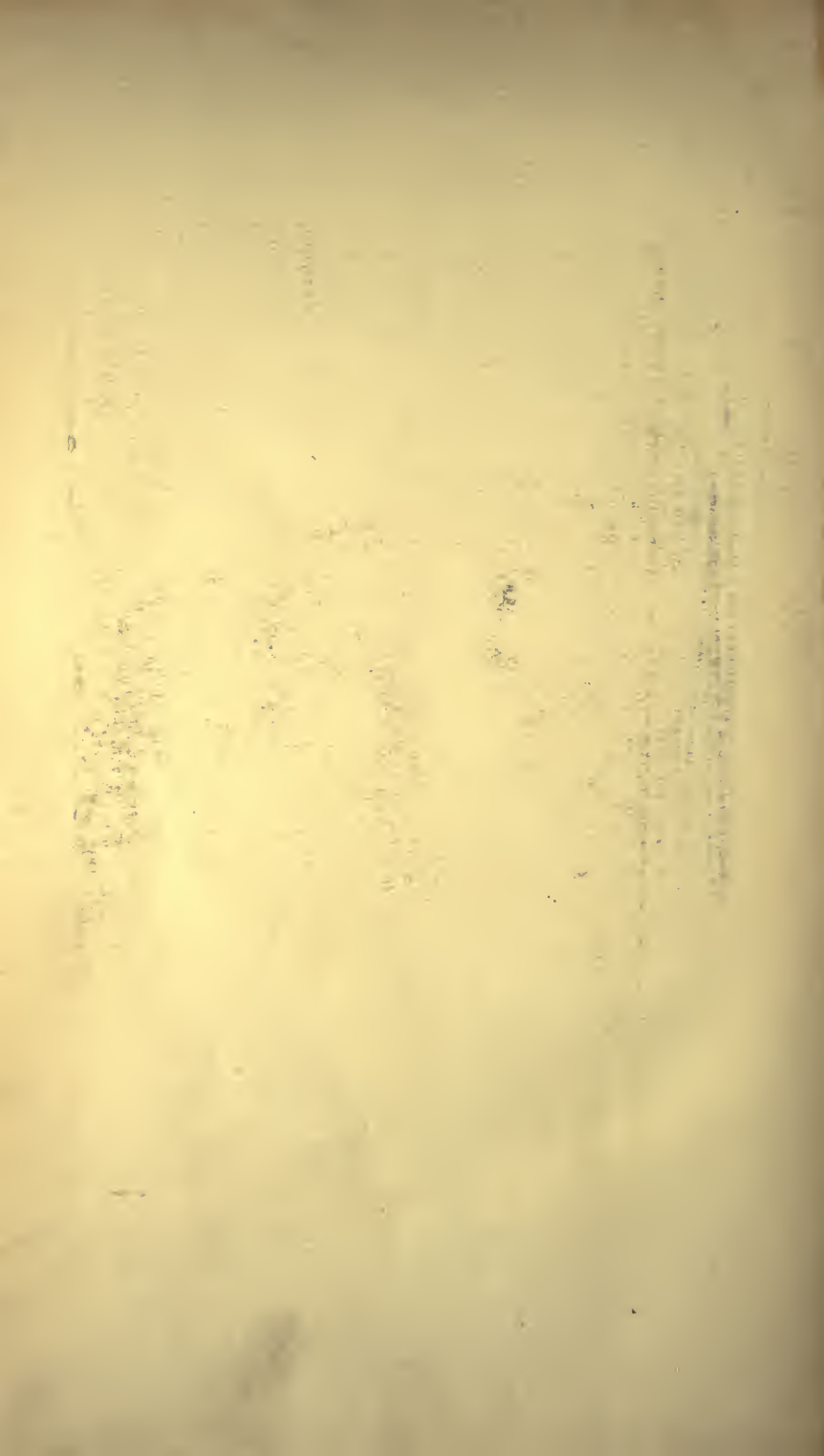
⁴ Carteneis L.

Escot (114)	Gorger (150)	Lescy (184)	Moreus ⁶ (220)
Eurons	Gorunvile ³	Leverer	Morley
	Gower	Lincot	Morteyn
Ferebrace	Grace	Lonetot	Mortymer 4
Ferrer	Grauntsoun ²	Longchampe	Morvile
Ferrers	Graynvile	Longevile	Motoun ²
Feschampe	Greis	LoveH	Moubray
Fetepace	Grenevile	Lucy	Mounfichet 8
Fitz ¹ Brian	Gunter	Lunar	Mountanasy
Fitz ¹ Garin	Gurnay (159)	Luncy	Mountegu
Fitz ¹ Geffray		Lyard	Mounteny
Fitz ¹ Herbert	Harecourt	Lynet	Mulet 12
Fitz ¹ Hu	Hachet	Lysle (196)	Murdak
Fitz ¹ Piers	Haket		Musard (233)
Fitz ¹ Symond	Hamelyn	Maignard ⁴	
Fitz ¹ Vise	Hanet	Malemayn	Neomarch 16
Fitz ¹ Water	Hansard	Malet	Nepount
Foleyn	Hanvile	Malynoler	Nevile
Foliambe ²	Hasard	Mamelbarin ²	Neyrout
Folvile	Hautevile	Mansey	Niuelent(238) 20
Formentyn	Hay	Manus (<i>or</i>	Nunzchampe .
Fossard	Heiroun	Manns)	
FreseH	Hercy	Manyn ²	Ofvile
Fresvile	Heris	Marcimas	OreH ⁷ 24
Freynes	Hubert	Mareis	OrivaH
Frisoun	Hurfer	MarteH	Orrewar (243)
Frivile	Huscharles	Massy	
FurnyvaH		Matroners	Pachet 28
Fyneux (141)	Iardyn (176)	MaunceH	Palet
		Maundevile	PameH
Gamager	Keynes	Maureward	Panely
Gantlou	Kirlecot (178)	Meisy ⁵	Pantulf 32
Gaugy		Meyne	Parles
Gaunt	Lacy	MeyniH	Passamere
Gauter	La Heuse	Miler	Passauaznt
Gerard	Lambert	Mire	Peisoun ⁸ 36
Giffard	Ledet	Mongomery	Penire (<i>or</i>
Gorge (149)	Leoun (183)	MoreH (219)	Pemre) (253)

¹ Filz L. ² *om.* L. ³ Gonurville L. ⁴ Maynard L.⁵ Mersy L. ⁶ Morens ? L. ⁷ Torell L. ⁸ Tyson L.

	Percy (254)	Rosynis ² (284)	Soldeny (316)	Tuchet (347)
	Perly	Roter	Somerville	Tuny
	PevèreH	Rusak	Sonevile	Tupet ⁷
4	Phanecourt	RusseH (287)	SouppiH (or SoupeiH)	Turbeville [Tyson, <i>see</i> Pei- soun]
	Picard	SaintbreneH	SpigurneH	
	Pigot	Saintclus	Spynevile	
8	Pilet ¹	Sainteler	Sunely	Valeus ⁸ (351)
	PineH	Sainterois	SūrdevaH	Vauesour
	Pipard	Saintgorge ²	Swyward ⁶ (324)	VeeH
	Piroun ²	Sainthelyn		Veer
12	Pleisy	SaintIohn	Tabot	Weisyn
	Plevien	Saintleger	Taillepas	Venour
	Poer	Saintmore	Taillois	Verly
	Pouchet	Saintmoris	Tallebot	Vernoun
16	Pountfract	Saintnoyre	Tanet	Vescy
	Prers ²	Saintomer	Taryn	Vilers
	Punegis	Saintquintyn	Tenere	Vmframvile
	PurceH	Sancey (301)	Tibot	
20	Pus	Sanctclou	Tiptot	WadeH (362)
	[Putnell] ³	Sandervile	TireH (334)	Warrenne
	Putrell (274)	Santemareis ⁴	TorchappeH	Wasteneis
		Saucer	ToreH	Welby
24	Quatremars	Saunzaner	Toret	Widvile
	Quincy (276)	Saunzire	Torevile	Wildbef
		Savage	Tracy	Wishard
	Raynes	Say	TrameH	Wivile
28	Renger	Saylard	Trauers ²	
	Richemount	Scutevile	Trevet	Ynogre
	RideH	Sechevile	Truan	
	RocheH	Semery	Truret	Zoochh ⁹ (371)
32	Roos	Setvaus ⁵	Trusbut	
	Rosyn (283)	Seygues (315)	TrusseH (346)	

¹ Pelet L. ² *om.* L. ³ *only in* L. ⁴ Saintrioris ? L.
⁵ Setvans ? L. ⁶ Swyand L. ⁷ Tapet L. ⁸ Valens ? L.
⁹ [?] *om.* L.



PR Early English Text
1119 Society
A2 [Publications]
no.131 Original series. no. 131,136

PLEASE DO NOT REMOVE
CARDS OR SLIPS FROM THIS POCKET

UNIVERSITY OF TORONTO LIBRARY

CIRCULATE AS MONOGRAPH

